

2nd Edition



# R

## IN A NUTSHELL

*A Desktop Quick Reference*

O'REILLY®

*Joseph Adler*



R

---

## IN A NUTSHELL

Second Edition

*Joseph Adler*

O'REILLY®

Beijing • Cambridge • Farnham • Köln • Sebastopol • Tokyo

## **R in a Nutshell, Second Edition**

by Joseph Adler

Copyright © 2012 Joseph Adler. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America.

Published by O'Reilly Media, Inc., 1005 Gravenstein Highway North, Sebastopol, CA 95472.

O'Reilly books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. Online editions are also available for most titles (<http://my.safaribooksonline.com>). For more information, contact our corporate/institutional sales department: 800-998-9938 or [corporate@oreilly.com](mailto:corporate@oreilly.com).

**Editors:** Mike Loukides and Meghan Blanchette

**Indexer:** Fred Brown

**Production Editor:** Holly Bauer

**Cover Designer:** Karen Montgomery

**Proofreader:** Julie Van Keuren

**Interior Designer:** David Futato

**Illustrators:** Robert Romano and Re-

becca Demarest

September 2009: First Edition.

October 2012: Second Edition.

### **Revision History for the Second Edition:**

2012-09-25 First release

See <http://oreilly.com/catalog/errata.csp?isbn=9781449312084> for release details.

Nutshell Handbook, the Nutshell Handbook logo, and the O'Reilly logo are registered trademarks of O'Reilly Media, Inc. *R in a Nutshell*, the image of a harpy eagle, and related trade dress are trademarks of O'Reilly Media, Inc.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and O'Reilly Media, Inc., was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in caps or initial caps.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher and author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

ISBN: 978-1-449-31208-4

[LSI]

1348585490

# Table of Contents

|               |      |
|---------------|------|
| Preface ..... | xiii |
|---------------|------|

---

## Part I. R Basics

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>1. Getting and Installing R .....</b>      | <b>3</b>  |
| R Versions                                    | 3         |
| Getting and Installing Interactive R Binaries | 3         |
| Windows                                       | 4         |
| Mac OS X                                      | 5         |
| Linux and Unix Systems                        | 5         |
| <b>2. The R User Interface .....</b>          | <b>7</b>  |
| The R Graphical User Interface                | 7         |
| Windows                                       | 8         |
| Mac OS X                                      | 8         |
| Linux and Unix                                | 9         |
| The R Console                                 | 11        |
| Command-Line Editing                          | 13        |
| Batch Mode                                    | 13        |
| Using R Inside Microsoft Excel                | 14        |
| RStudio                                       | 15        |
| Other Ways to Run R                           | 17        |
| <b>3. A Short R Tutorial .....</b>            | <b>19</b> |
| Basic Operations in R                         | 19        |
| Functions                                     | 21        |
| Variables                                     | 22        |

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Introduction to Data Structures             | 24        |
| Objects and Classes                         | 27        |
| Models and Formulas                         | 28        |
| Charts and Graphics                         | 30        |
| Getting Help                                | 35        |
| <b>4. R Packages .....</b>                  | <b>37</b> |
| An Overview of Packages                     | 37        |
| Listing Packages in Local Libraries         | 38        |
| Loading Packages                            | 40        |
| Loading Packages on Windows and Linux       | 40        |
| Loading Packages on Mac OS X                | 40        |
| Exploring Package Repositories              | 41        |
| Exploring R Package Repositories on the Web | 42        |
| Finding and Installing Packages Inside R    | 42        |
| Installing Packages From Other Repositories | 45        |
| Custom Packages                             | 45        |
| Creating a Package Directory                | 45        |
| Building the Package                        | 47        |

---

## Part II. The R Language

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>5. An Overview of the R Language .....</b> | <b>51</b> |
| Expressions                                   | 51        |
| Objects                                       | 52        |
| Symbols                                       | 52        |
| Functions                                     | 52        |
| Objects Are Copied in Assignment Statements   | 54        |
| Everything in R Is an Object                  | 55        |
| Special Values                                | 55        |
| NA  | 55        |
| Inf and -Inf                                  | 56        |
| NaN   | 56        |
| NULL  | 56        |
| Coercion                                      | 56        |
| The R Interpreter                             | 57        |
| Seeing How R Works                            | 59        |
| <b>6. R Syntax .....</b>                      | <b>63</b> |
| Constants                                     | 63        |
| Numeric Vectors                               | 63        |
| Character Vectors                             | 64        |
| Symbols                                       | 65        |
| Operators                                     | 66        |
| Order of Operations                           | 67        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Assignments                                    | 69         |
| Expressions                                    | 69         |
| Separating Expressions                         | 69         |
| Parentheses                                    | 70         |
| Curly Braces                                   | 70         |
| Control Structures                             | 71         |
| Conditional Statements                         | 71         |
| Loops  | 72         |
| Accessing Data Structures                      | 75         |
| Data Structure Operators                       | 75         |
| Indexing by Integer Vector                     | 76         |
| Indexing by Logical Vector                     | 78         |
| Indexing by Name                               | 79         |
| R Code Style Standards                         | 80         |
| <b>7. R Objects .....</b>                      | <b>83</b>  |
| Primitive Object Types                         | 83         |
| Vectors  | 86         |
| Lists  | 87         |
| Other Objects                                  | 88         |
| Matrices                                       | 88         |
| Arrays   | 89         |
| Factors  | 89         |
| Data Frames                                    | 91         |
| Formulas                                       | 92         |
| Time Series                                    | 94         |
| Shingles                                       | 95         |
| Dates and Times                                | 95         |
| Connections                                    | 96         |
| Attributes                                     | 96         |
| Class  | 99         |
| <b>8. Symbols and Environments .....</b>       | <b>101</b> |
| Symbols  | 101        |
| Working with Environments                      | 102        |
| The Global Environment                         | 103        |
| Environments and Functions                     | 104        |
| Working with the Call Stack                    | 104        |
| Evaluating Functions in Different Environments | 105        |
| Adding Objects to an Environment               | 107        |
| Exceptions                                     | 108        |
| Signaling Errors                               | 108        |
| Catching Errors                                | 109        |
| <b>9. Functions .....</b>                      | <b>111</b> |
| The Function Keyword                           | 111        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Arguments                                    | 111        |
| Return Values                                | 113        |
| Functions as Arguments                       | 113        |
| Anonymous Functions                          | 114        |
| Properties of Functions                      | 115        |
| Argument Order and Named Arguments           | 117        |
| Side Effects                                 | 118        |
| Changes to Other Environments                | 118        |
| Input/Output                                 | 119        |
| Graphics                                     | 119        |
| <b>10. Object-Oriented Programming .....</b> | <b>121</b> |
| Overview of Object-Oriented Programming in R | 122        |
| Key Ideas                                    | 122        |
| Implementation Example                       | 123        |
| Object-Oriented Programming in R: S4 Classes | 129        |
| Defining Classes                             | 129        |
| New Objects                                  | 130        |
| Accessing Slots                              | 130        |
| Working with Objects                         | 131        |
| Creating Coercion Methods                    | 131        |
| Methods                                      | 132        |
| Managing Methods                             | 133        |
| Basic Classes                                | 134        |
| More Help                                    | 135        |
| Old-School OOP in R: S3                      | 135        |
| S3 Classes                                   | 135        |
| S3 Methods                                   | 136        |
| Using S3 Classes in S4 Classes               | 137        |
| Finding Hidden S3 Methods                    | 137        |

---

## Part III. Working with Data

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>11. Saving, Loading, and Editing Data .....</b> | <b>141</b> |
| Entering Data Within R                             | 141        |
| Entering Data Using R Commands                     | 141        |
| Using the Edit GUI                                 | 142        |
| Saving and Loading R Objects                       | 145        |
| Saving Objects with save                           | 145        |
| Importing Data from External Files                 | 146        |
| Text Files   | 146        |
| Other Software                                     | 154        |
| Exporting Data                                     | 155        |
| Importing Data From Databases                      | 156        |
| Export Then Import                                 | 156        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Database Connection Packages                     | 156        |
| RODBC  | 157        |
| DBI  | 167        |
| TSDBI  | 172        |
| Getting Data from Hadoop                         | 172        |
| <b>12. Preparing Data .....</b>                  | <b>173</b> |
| Combining Data Sets                              | 173        |
| Pasting Together Data Structures                 | 174        |
| Merging Data by Common Fields                    | 177        |
| Transformations                                  | 179        |
| Reassigning Variables                            | 179        |
| The Transform Function                           | 179        |
| Applying a Function to Each Element of an Object | 180        |
| Binning Data                                     | 185        |
| Shingles   | 185        |
| Cut  | 186        |
| Combining Objects with a Grouping Variable       | 187        |
| Subsets  | 187        |
| Bracket Notation                                 | 188        |
| subset Function                                  | 188        |
| Random Sampling                                  | 189        |
| Summarizing Functions                            | 190        |
| tapply, aggregate                                | 190        |
| Aggregating Tables with rowsum                   | 193        |
| Counting Values                                  | 194        |
| Reshaping Data                                   | 196        |
| Data Cleaning                                    | 205        |
| Finding and Removing Duplicates                  | 205        |
| Sorting  | 206        |

---

## Part IV. Data Visualization

|                           |            |
|---------------------------|------------|
| <b>13. Graphics .....</b> | <b>213</b> |
| An Overview of R Graphics | 213        |
| Scatter Plots             | 214        |
| Plotting Time Series      | 220        |
| Bar Charts                | 222        |
| Pie Charts                | 226        |
| Plotting Categorical Data | 227        |
| Three-Dimensional Data    | 232        |
| Plotting Distributions    | 239        |
| Box Plots                 | 242        |
| Graphics Devices          | 246        |
| Customizing Charts        | 247        |

|                                       |            |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| Common Arguments to Chart Functions   | 247        |
| Graphical Parameters                  | 247        |
| Basic Graphics Functions              | 257        |
| <b>14. Lattice Graphics .....</b>     | <b>267</b> |
| History                               | 267        |
| An Overview of the Lattice Package    | 268        |
| How Lattice Works                     | 268        |
| A Simple Example                      | 268        |
| Using Lattice Functions               | 270        |
| Custom Panel Functions                | 272        |
| High-Level Lattice Plotting Functions | 272        |
| Univariate Trellis Plots              | 273        |
| Bivariate Trellis Plots               | 297        |
| Trivariate Plots                      | 305        |
| Other Plots                           | 310        |
| Customizing Lattice Graphics          | 312        |
| Common Arguments to Lattice Functions | 312        |
| trellis.skeleton                      | 313        |
| Controlling How Axes Are Drawn        | 314        |
| Parameters                            | 315        |
| plot.trellis                          | 319        |
| strip.default                         | 320        |
| simpleKey                             | 321        |
| Low-Level Functions                   | 322        |
| Low-Level Graphics Functions          | 322        |
| Panel Functions                       | 323        |
| <b>15. ggplot2 .....</b>              | <b>325</b> |
| A Short Introduction                  | 325        |
| The Grammar of Graphics               | 328        |
| A More Complex Example: Medicare Data | 333        |
| Quick Plot                            | 342        |
| Creating Graphics with ggplot2        | 343        |
| Learning More                         | 347        |

---

## Part V. Statistics with R

|                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| <b>16. Analyzing Data .....</b> | <b>351</b> |
| Summary Statistics              | 351        |
| Correlation and Covariance      | 354        |
| Principal Components Analysis   | 357        |
| Factor Analysis                 | 360        |
| Bootstrap Resampling            | 361        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>17. Probability Distributions .....</b>                | <b>363</b> |
| Normal Distribution                                       | 363        |
| Common Distribution-Type Arguments                        | 366        |
| Distribution Function Families                            | 366        |
| <b>18. Statistical Tests .....</b>                        | <b>371</b> |
| Continuous Data   | 371        |
| Normal Distribution-Based Tests                           | 372        |
| Non-Parametric Tests                                      | 385        |
| Discrete Data   | 388        |
| Proportion Tests  | 388        |
| Binomial Tests  | 389        |
| Tabular Data Tests  | 390        |
| Non-Parametric Tabular Data Tests                         | 396        |
| <b>19. Power Tests .....</b>                              | <b>397</b> |
| Experimental Design Example                               | 397        |
| t-Test Design   | 398        |
| Proportion Test Design                                    | 398        |
| ANOVA Test Design   | 400        |
| <b>20. Regression Models .....</b>                        | <b>401</b> |
| Example: A Simple Linear Model                            | 401        |
| Fitting a Model   | 403        |
| Helper Functions for Specifying the Model                 | 404        |
| Getting Information About a Model                         | 404        |
| Refining the Model  | 410        |
| Details About the lm Function                             | 410        |
| Assumptions of Least Squares Regression                   | 412        |
| Robust and Resistant Regression                           | 414        |
| Subset Selection and Shrinkage Methods                    | 416        |
| Stepwise Variable Selection                               | 416        |
| Ridge Regression  | 417        |
| Lasso and Least Angle Regression                          | 418        |
| elasticnet  | 419        |
| Principal Components Regression and Partial Least Squares |            |
| Regression  | 420        |
| Nonlinear Models  | 420        |
| Generalized Linear Models                                 | 421        |
| glmnet  | 424        |
| Nonlinear Least Squares                                   | 427        |
| Survival Models   | 428        |
| Smoothing   | 433        |
| Splines   | 433        |
| Fitting Polynomial Surfaces                               | 435        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Kernel Smoothing                               | 436        |
| Machine Learning Algorithms for Regression     | 437        |
| Regression Tree Models                         | 439        |
| MARS   | 450        |
| Neural Networks                                | 455        |
| Project Pursuit Regression                     | 459        |
| Generalized Additive Models                    | 462        |
| Support Vector Machines                        | 464        |
| <b>21. Classification Models .....</b>         | <b>467</b> |
| Linear Classification Models                   | 467        |
| Logistic Regression                            | 467        |
| Linear Discriminant Analysis                   | 472        |
| Log-Linear Models                              | 476        |
| Machine Learning Algorithms for Classification | 477        |
| k Nearest Neighbors                            | 477        |
| Classification Tree Models                     | 478        |
| Neural Networks                                | 482        |
| SVMs   | 483        |
| Random Forests                                 | 483        |
| <b>22. Machine Learning .....</b>              | <b>485</b> |
| Market Basket Analysis                         | 485        |
| Clustering                                     | 490        |
| Distance Measures                              | 490        |
| Clustering Algorithms                          | 491        |
| <b>23. Time Series Analysis .....</b>          | <b>495</b> |
| Autocorrelation Functions                      | 495        |
| Time Series Models                             | 496        |

---

## Part VI. Additional Topics

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>24. Optimizing R Programs .....</b>  | <b>503</b> |
| Measuring R Program Performance         | 503        |
| Timing                                  | 503        |
| Profiling                               | 504        |
| Monitor How Much Memory You Are Using   | 505        |
| Profiling Memory Usage                  | 506        |
| Optimizing Your R Code                  | 507        |
| Using Vector Operations                 | 507        |
| Lookup Performance in R                 | 509        |
| Use a Database to Query Large Data Sets | 516        |
| Preallocate Memory                      | 516        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Cleaning Up Memory                             | 516        |
| Functions for Big Data Sets                    | 517        |
| Other Ways to Speed Up R                       | 518        |
| The R Byte Code Compiler                       | 518        |
| High-Performance R Binaries                    | 520        |
| <b>25. Bioconductor .....</b>                  | <b>525</b> |
| An Example                                     | 525        |
| Loading Raw Expression Data                    | 526        |
| Loading Data from GEO                          | 530        |
| Matching Phenotype Data                        | 532        |
| Analyzing Expression Data                      | 533        |
| Key Bioconductor Packages                      | 537        |
| Data Structures                                | 541        |
| eSet   | 541        |
| AssayData                                      | 543        |
| AnnotatedDataFrame                             | 543        |
| MIAME  | 544        |
| Other Classes Used by Bioconductor Packages    | 545        |
| Where to Go Next                               | 546        |
| Resources Outside Bioconductor                 | 546        |
| Vignettes                                      | 546        |
| Courses  | 547        |
| Books  | 547        |
| <b>26. R and Hadoop .....</b>                  | <b>549</b> |
| R and Hadoop                                   | 549        |
| Overview of Hadoop                             | 549        |
| RHadoop  | 554        |
| Hadoop Streaming                               | 568        |
| Learning More                                  | 571        |
| Other Packages for Parallel Computation with R | 571        |
| Segue  | 571        |
| doMC   | 572        |
| Where to Learn More                            | 572        |
| <b>Appendix: R Reference .....</b>             | <b>573</b> |
| <b>Bibliography .....</b>                      | <b>673</b> |
| <b>Index .....</b>                             | <b>675</b> |





---

## Preface

It's been over 10 years since I was first introduced to R. Back then, I was a young product development manager at DoubleClick, a company that sold advertising software for managing online ad sales. I was working on inventory prediction: estimating the number of ad impressions that could be sold for a given search term, web page, or demographic characteristic. I wanted to play with the data myself, but we couldn't afford a piece of expensive software like SAS or MATLAB. I looked around for a little while, trying to find an open-source statistics package, and stumbled on R. Back then, R was a bit rough around the edges and was missing a lot of the features it has today (like fancy graphics and statistics functions). But R was intuitive and easy to use; I was hooked. Since that time, I've used R to do many different things: estimate credit risk, analyze baseball statistics, and look for Internet security threats. I've learned a lot about data and matured a lot as a data analyst.

R, too, has matured a great deal over the past decade. R is used at the world's largest technology companies (including Google, Microsoft, and Facebook), the largest pharmaceutical companies (including Johnson & Johnson, Merck, and Pfizer), and at hundreds of other companies. It's used in statistics classes at universities around the world and by statistics researchers to try new techniques and algorithms.

## Why I Wrote This Book

This book is designed to be a concise guide to R. It's not intended to be a book about statistics or an exhaustive guide to R. In this book, I tried to show all the things that R can do and to give examples showing how to do them. This book is designed to be a good desktop reference.

I wrote this book because I like R. R is fun and intuitive in ways that other solutions are not. You can do things in a few lines of R that could take hours of struggling in a spreadsheet. Similarly, you can do things in a few lines of R that could take pages of Java code (and hours of Java coding). There are some excellent books on R, but

I couldn't find an inexpensive book that gave an overview of everything you could do in R. I hope this book helps you use R.

## When Should You Use R?

I think R is a great piece of software, but it isn't the right tool for every problem. Clearly, it would be ridiculous to write a video game in R, but it's not even the best tool for all data problems.

R is very good at plotting graphics, analyzing data, and fitting statistical models using data that fits in the computer's memory. It's not as good at storing data in complicated structures, efficiently querying data, or working with data that doesn't fit in the computer's memory.

Typically, I use a scripting language like Perl, Python, or Ruby to preprocess files before using them in R. (If the files are really big, I'll use Pig.) It's technically possible to use R for these problems (by reading files one line at a time and using R's regular expression support), but it's pretty awkward. To hold large data files, I usually use Hadoop. Sometimes I use a database like MySQL, PostgreSQL, SQLite, or Oracle (when someone else is paying the license fee).

## What's New in the Second Edition?

This edition isn't a total rewrite of the first book. But I have tried to improve the book in a few significant ways:

- There are new chapters on `ggplot2` and using R with Hadoop.
- Formatting changes should make code examples easier to read.
- I've changed the order of the book slightly, grouping the plotting chapters together.
- I've made some minor updates to reflect changes in R 2.14 and R 2.15.
- There are some new sections on useful tools for manipulating data in R, such as `plyr` and `reshape`.
- I've corrected dozens of errors.

# R License Terms

R is an open-source software package, licensed under the GNU General Public License (GPL).<sup>1</sup> This means that you can install R for free on most desktop and server machines. (Comparable commercial software packages sell for hundreds or thousands of dollars. If R were a poor substitute for the commercial software packages, they might have limited appeal. However, I think R is *better* than its commercial counterparts in many respects.)

## Capability

You can find implementations for hundreds (maybe thousands) of statistical and data analysis algorithms in R. No commercial package offers anywhere near the scope of functionality available through the Comprehensive R Archive Network (CRAN).

## Community

There are now hundreds of thousands (if not millions) of R users worldwide. By using R, you can be sure that you're using the same software your colleagues are using.

## Performance

R's performance is comparable, or superior, to most commercial analysis packages. R requires you to load data sets into memory before processing. If you have enough memory to hold the data, R can run very quickly. Luckily, memory is cheap. You can buy 32 GB of server RAM for less than the cost of a single desktop license of a comparable piece of commercial statistical software.

# Examples

In this book, I have tried to provide many working examples of R code. I deliberately decided to use new and original examples, instead of relying on the data sets included with R. I am not implying that the included examples are not good; they are good. I just wanted to give readers a second set of examples. In most cases, the examples are short and simple and I have not provided them in a downloadable form. However, I have included example data and a few of the longer examples in the `nutshell` R package, available through CRAN. To install the `nutshell` package, type the following command on the R console:

```
> install.packages("nutshell")
```

1. There is some controversy about GPL licensed software and what it means to you as a corporate user. Some users are afraid that any code they write in R will be bound by the GPL. If you are not writing extensions to R, you do not need to worry about this issue. R is an interpreter, and the GPL does not apply to a program just because it is executed on a GPL-licensed interpreter.

If you are writing extensions to R, they might be bound by the GPL. For more information, see the GNU foundation's FAQ on the GPL: <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gplfaq>. However, for a definite answer, see an attorney. If you are worried about a specific application, see an attorney.

# How This Book Is Organized

I've broken this book into parts:

- Part I, *R Basics*, covers the basics of getting and running R. It's designed to help get you up and running if you're a new user, including a short tour of the many things you can do with R.
- Part II, *The R Language*, picks up where the first section leaves off, describing the R language in detail.
- Part III, *Working with Data*, covers data processing in R: loading data into R, transforming data, and summarizing data.
- Part IV, *Data Visualization*, describes how to plot data with R.
- Part V, *Statistics with R*, covers statistical tests and models in R.
- Part VI, *Additional Topics*, contains chapters that don't belong elsewhere: tuning R programs, writing parallel R programs, and Bioconductor.
- Finally, I included an *Appendix* describing functions and data sets included with the base distribution of R.

If you are new to R, install R and start with [Chapter 3](#). Next, take a look at [Chapter 5](#) to learn some of the rules of the R language. If you plan to use R for plotting, statistical tests, or statistical models, take a look at the appropriate chapter. Make sure you look at the first few sections of the chapter, because these provide an overview of how all the related functions work. (For example, don't skip straight to “[Random forests for regression](#)” on page 448 without reading “[Example: A Simple Linear Model](#)” on page 401.)

## Conventions Used in This Book

The following typographical conventions are used in this book:

### *Italic*

Indicates new terms, URLs, email addresses, filenames, and file extensions.

### **Constant width**

Used for program listings as well as within paragraphs to refer to program elements such as variable or function names, databases, data types, environment variables, statements, and keywords. (When showing input and output on the R console, I use constant width text to show prompts and other information produced by the R interpreter.)

### **Constant width bold**

Shows commands or other text that should be typed literally by the user. (When showing input and output on the R console, I use constant width bold text to show you what I typed, including comments.)

### **Constant width italic**

Shows text that should be replaced with user-supplied values or by values determined by context.



This icon indicates a tip, suggestion, or general note.



This icon indicates a warning or a caution.

In this book, I will sometimes show commands that I entered on my operating system prompt (i.e., in a Bash shell on Linux), and sometimes show commands that I entered in the R console. For commands that I entered in the operating system shell, I use a \$ character to show the prompt; for commands entered in the R console, I will use > or + to show the prompt. (In either case, don't type the prompt character.)

## Using Code Examples

This book is here to help you get your job done. In general, you may use the code in this book in your programs and documentation. You do not need to contact us for permission unless you're reproducing a significant portion of the code. For example, writing a program that uses several chunks of code from this book does not require permission. Selling or distributing a CD-ROM of examples from O'Reilly books does require permission. Answering a question by citing this book and quoting example code does not require permission. Incorporating a significant amount of example code from this book into your product's documentation does require permission.

We appreciate, but do not require, attribution. An attribution usually includes the title, author, publisher, and ISBN. For example: “*R in a Nutshell* by Joseph Adler. Copyright 2012 Joseph Adler, 978-1-449-31208-4.”

If you feel your use of code examples falls outside fair use or the permission given above, feel free to contact us at [permissions@oreilly.com](mailto:permissions@oreilly.com).

## Safari® Books Online

**Safari** Books Online [www.safaribooksonline.com](http://www.safaribooksonline.com) is an on-demand digital library that delivers expert [content](#) in both book and video form from the world's leading authors in technology and business.

Technology professionals, software developers, web designers, and business and creative professionals use Safari Books Online as their primary resource for research, problem solving, learning, and certification training.

Safari Books Online offers a range of [product mixes](#) and pricing programs for [organizations](#), [government agencies](#), and [individuals](#). Subscribers have access to thousands of books, training videos, and prepublication manuscripts in one fully searchable database from publishers like O'Reilly Media, Prentice Hall Professional,

Addison-Wesley Professional, Microsoft Press, Sams, Que, Peachpit Press, Focal Press, Cisco Press, John Wiley & Sons, Syngress, Morgan Kaufmann, IBM Redbooks, Packt, Adobe Press, FT Press, Apress, Manning, New Riders, McGraw-Hill, Jones & Bartlett, Course Technology, and dozens [more](#). For more information about Safari Books Online, please visit us [online](#).

## How to Contact Us

Please address comments and questions concerning this book to the publisher:

O'Reilly Media, Inc.  
1005 Gravenstein Highway North  
Sebastopol, CA 95472  
800-998-9938 (in the United States or Canada)  
707-829-0515 (international or local)  
707-829-0104 (fax)

We have a web page for this book where we list errata, examples, and any additional information. You can access this page at [http://oreil.ly/r\\_in\\_a\\_nutshell\\_2e](http://oreil.ly/r_in_a_nutshell_2e).

To comment or to ask technical questions about this book, send email to [bookquestions@oreilly.com](mailto:bookquestions@oreilly.com).

For more information about our books, courses, conferences, and news, see our website at <http://www.oreilly.com>.

Find us on Facebook: <http://facebook.com/oreilly>

Follow us on Twitter: <http://twitter.com/oreillymedia>

Watch us on YouTube: <http://www.youtube.com/oreillymedia>

## Acknowledgments

First, I'd like to thank everyone who read the first book. I wrote *R in a Nutshell* to be useful. I tried to write the book that I wanted to read; I tried my best to share as much useful information as I could about R. That's an ambitious goal, and I wrote an imperfect book. I appreciate all the feedback, suggestions, and corrections that I have received from readers and have tried my best to improve the book in the second edition.

I'd like to thank the team at O'Reilly for their support. Tim O'Reilly has said that he follows three guiding principles: work on something that matters to you more than money, create more value than you capture, and take the long view.<sup>2</sup> I tried to follow these principles when writing this book. As an author, I felt like the team at O'Reilly followed these principles. My goal in writing *R in a Nutshell* was to write the best book I could write. I hope that when people read this book, they learn something new and use what they learned to solve important problems.

2. See <http://radar.oreilly.com/2009/01/work-on-stuff-that-matters-fir.html>.

Many people helped support the writing of this book. First, I'd like to thank all of my technical reviewers. These folks check to make sure the examples work, look for technical and mathematical errors, and make many suggestions on writing quality. It's not possible to write a quality technical book without quality technical reviewers: Peter Goldstein, Aaron Mandel, and David Hoaglin are the reason that this book reads as well as it does.

For the past two years, I've worked at LinkedIn, ground zero for the data revolution. I've learned a huge amount working side by side with people like DJ Patil, Monica Rogati, Daniel Tunkelang, Sam Shah, and Jay Kreps. I've had the chance to discover interesting patterns, figure out how to share them with other people, and figure out how to scale my programs to work for hundreds of millions of users. I hope the second edition of this book reflects some of the lessons that I've learned on data, and helps other people learn the same things.

I'd like to thank Randall Munroe, author of the xkcd comic. He kindly allowed us to reprint two of his (excellent) comics in this book. You can find his comics (and assorted merchandise) at <http://www.xkcd.com>.

Additionally, I'd like to thank everyone who provided or suggested improvements. Aaron Schatz of [Football Outsiders](#) provided me with play-by-play data from the 2005 NFL season (the field goal data is from its database). Sandor Szalma of Johnson & Johnson suggested GSE2034 as an example of gene expression data. Jeremy Howard of Kaggle suggested adding glmnet.

Finally, I'd like to thank my wife, Sarah, my daughter, Zoe, and my son, Zeke. Writing a book takes a lot of time, and they were very understanding when I needed to work. They were also very understanding when I dragged them to the San Diego Zoo to look at the harpy eagles.



---

## R Basics

This part of the book covers the basics of R: how to get R, how to install it, and how to use packages in R. It also includes a quick tutorial on R and an overview of the features of R.





# 1

---

## Getting and Installing R

This chapter explains how to get R and how to install it on your computer.

### R Versions

Today, R is maintained by a team of developers around the world. Usually, there is an official release of R twice a year, in April and in October. I've checked the code in this book against 2.15.1, but if you have an earlier or later version of R installed, don't worry.

R hasn't changed that much in the past few years: usually there are some bug fixes, some optimizations, and a few new functions in each release. There have been some changes to the language, but most of these are related to somewhat obscure features that won't affect most users. (For example, the type of `NA` values in incompletely initialized arrays was changed in R 2.5.) Don't worry about using the exact version of R that I used in this book; any results you get should be very similar to the results shown in this book. If there are any changes to R that affect the examples in this book, I'll try to add them to the official errata online.

Additionally, I've given some example filenames below for the current release. The filenames usually have the release number in them. So don't worry if you're reading this book and don't see a link for *R-2.15.1-win32.exe* but see a link for *R-2.73.5-win32.exe* instead; just use the latest version and you should be fine.

### Getting and Installing Interactive R Binaries

R has been ported to every major desktop computing platform. Because R is open source, developers have ported R to many different platforms. Additionally, R is available with no license fee.

If you're using a Mac or a Windows machine, you'll probably want to download the files yourself and then run the installers. (If you're using Linux, I recommend using

a port management system like Yum to simplify the installation and updating process; see “[Linux and Unix Systems](#)” on page 5.) Here’s how to find the binaries.

1. Visit the [official R website](#). On the site, you should see a link to “Download.”
2. The [download link](#) actually takes you to a list of mirror sites. The list is organized by country. You’ll probably want to pick a site that is geographically close, because it’s likely to also be close on the Internet, and thus fast. I usually use the link for the [University of California, Los Angeles](#), because I live in California.
3. Find the right binary for your platform and run the installer.

There are a few things to keep in mind, depending on what system you’re using.

## Building R from Source

It’s standard practice to build R from source on Linux and Unix systems, but not on Mac OS X or Windows platforms. It’s pretty tricky to build your own binaries on Mac OS X or Windows, and it doesn’t yield a lot of benefits for most users. Building R from source won’t save you space (you’ll probably have to download a lot of other stuff, like LaTeX), and it won’t save you time (unless you already have all the tools you need and have a really, really slow Internet connection). The best reason to build your own binaries is to get better performance out of R, but I’ve never found R’s performance to be a problem, even on very large data sets. If you’re interested in how to build your own R, see “[Building your own](#)” on page 521.

## Windows

Installing R on Windows is just like installing any other piece of software on Windows, which means that it’s easy if you have the right permissions, difficult if you don’t. If you’re installing R on your personal computer, this shouldn’t be a problem. However, if you’re working in a corporate environment, you might run into some trouble.

If you’re an “Administrator” or “Power User” on Windows XP, installation is straightforward: double-click the installer and follow the on-screen instructions.

There are some known issues with installing R on Microsoft Windows Vista. In particular, some users have problems with file permissions. Here are two approaches for avoiding these issues:

- Install R as a standard user in your own file space. This is the simplest approach.
- Install R as the default Administrator account (if it is enabled and you have access to it). Note that you will also need to install packages as the Administrator user.

For a full explanation, see [http://cran.r-project.org/bin/windows/base/rw-FAQ.html#Does-R-run-under-Windows-Vista\\_003f](http://cran.r-project.org/bin/windows/base/rw-FAQ.html#Does-R-run-under-Windows-Vista_003f).

Currently, CRAN releases only 32-bit builds of R for Microsoft Windows. These are tested on 64-bit versions of Windows and should run correctly.

## Mac OS X

The current version of R runs on both PowerPC- and Intel-based Mac systems running Mac OS X 10.5 (Leopard) and higher. If you’re using an older operating system, or an older computer, you can find older versions on the website that may work better with your system.

You’ll find three different R installers for Mac OS X: a three-way universal binary for Mac OS X 10.5 (Leopard) and higher, a legacy universal binary for Mac OS X 10.4 and higher *with* supplemental tools, and a legacy universal binary for Mac OS X 10.4 and higher *without* supplemental tools. See the CRAN download site for more details on the differences among these versions.

As with most applications, you’ll need to have the appropriate permissions on your computer to install R. If you’re using your personal computer, you’re probably OK: you just need to remember your password. If you’re using a computer managed by someone else, you may need that person’s help to install R.

The universal binary of R is made available as an installer package; simply download the file and double-click the package to install the application. The legacy R installers are packaged on a disk image file (like most Mac OS X applications). After you download the disk image, double-click it to open it in the finder (if it does not automatically open). Open the volume and double-click the R.mpkg icon to launch the installer. Follow the directions in the installer, and you should have a working copy of R on your computer.

## Linux and Unix Systems

Before you start, make sure that you know the system’s root password or have sudo privileges on the system you’re using. If you don’t, you’ll need to get help from the system administrator to install R.

### Installation using package management systems

On a Linux system, the easiest way to install R is to use a package management system. These systems automate the installation process: they fetch the R binaries (or sources), get any other software that’s needed to run R, and even make upgrading to the latest version easy.

For example, on Red Hat (or Fedora), you can use Yum (which stands for “Yellowdog Updater, Modified”) to automate the installation. For example, on a 64-bit x86 Linux platform running Linux, open a terminal window and type:

```
$ sudo yum install R.x86_64
```

You’ll be prompted for your password, and if you have sudo privileges, R should be installed on your system. Later, you can update R by typing:

```
$ sudo yum update R.x86_64
```

And, if there is a new version available, your R installation will be upgraded to the latest version.

If you’re using another Unix system, you may also be able to install R. (For example, R is available through the FreeBSD Ports system at <http://www.freebsd.org/cgi/cvsweb.cgi/ports/math/R/>.) I haven’t tried these versions but have no reason to think they don’t work correctly. See the documentation for your system for more information about how to install software.

### **Installing R from downloaded files**

If you’d like, you can manually download R and install it later. Currently, there are precompiled R packages for several flavors of Linux, including Red Hat, Debian, Ubuntu, and SUSE. Precompiled binaries are also available for Solaris.

On Red Hat–style systems, you can install these packages through the Red Hat Package Manager (RPM). For example, suppose that you downloaded the file *R-2.15.1.fc10.i386.rpm* to the directory *~/Downloads*. Then you could install it with a command like:

```
$ rpm -i ~/Downloads/R-2.15.1.fc10.i386.rpm
```

For more information on using RPM, or other package management systems, see your user documentation.



# 2

---

## The R User Interface

If you’re reading this book, you probably have a problem that you would like to solve in R. You might want to:

- Check the statistical significance of experimental results
- Plot some data to help understand it better
- Analyze some genome data

The R system is a software environment for statistical computing and graphics. It includes many different components. In this book, I’ll use the term “R” to refer to a few different things:

- A computer language
- The interpreter that executes code written in R
- A system for plotting computer graphics described using the R language
- The Windows, Mac OS, or Linux application that includes the interpreter, graphics system, standard packages, and user interface

This chapter contains a short description of the R user interface and the R console and describes how R varies on different platforms. If you’ve never used an interactive language, this chapter will explain some basic things you will need to know in order to work with R. We’ll take a quick look at the R graphical user interface (GUI) on each platform and then talk about the most important part: the R console.

### The R Graphical User Interface

Let’s get started by launching R and taking a look at R’s graphical user interface on different platforms. When you open the R application on Windows or Max OS X, you’ll see a command window and some menu bars. On most Linux systems, R will simply start on the command line.

## Windows

By default, R is installed into %ProgramFiles%R (which is usually C:\Program Files\|R) and installed into the Start menu under the group R. When you launch R in Windows, you'll see something like the user interface shown in [Figure 2-1](#).<sup>1</sup> Inside the R GUI window, there is a menu bar, a toolbar, and the R console.

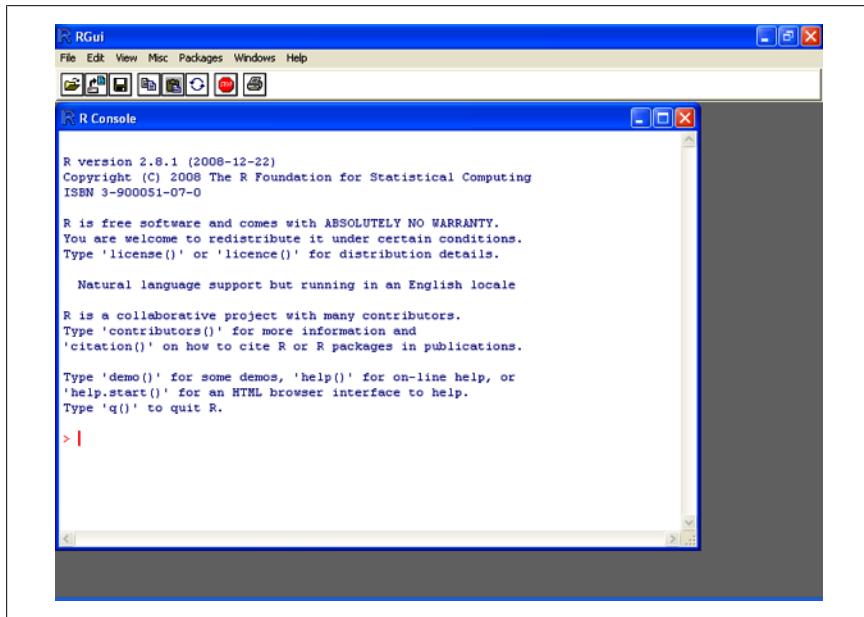


Figure 2-1. R user interface on Windows XP

## Mac OS X

The default R installer will add an application called R to your Applications folder that you can run like any other application on your Mac. When you launch the R application on Mac OS X systems, you'll see something like the screen shown in [Figure 2-2](#). Like the Windows system, there is a menu bar, a toolbar with common functions, and an R console window.

On a Mac OS system, you can also run R from the terminal without using the GUI. To do this, first open a terminal window. (The terminal program is located in the Utilities folder inside the Applications folder.) Then enter the command “R” on the command line to start R.

1. Yes, these are old screen shots. R has not changed very much, so we kept these the same in the second edition.

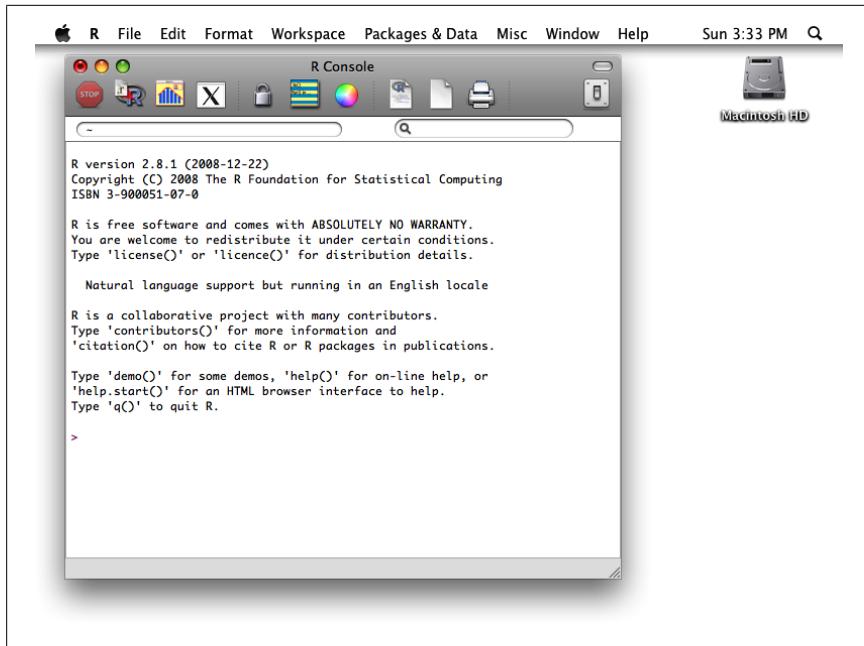


Figure 2-2. R user interface on Mac OS X

## Linux and Unix

On Linux systems, you can start R from the command line by typing:

```
$ R
```

Notice that it's a capital "R"; filenames on Linux are case sensitive. (And don't type the "\$" character; that's just the Unix prompt.)

Unlike the default applications for Mac OS and Windows, this will start an interactive R session on the command line itself. If you prefer, you can launch R in an application window similar to the user interface on other platforms. To do this, use the following command:

```
$ R -g Tk &
```

This will launch R in the background running in its own window, as shown in [Figure 2-3](#). Like the other platforms, there is a menu bar with some common functions, but unlike the other platforms, there is no toolbar. The main window acts as the R console.

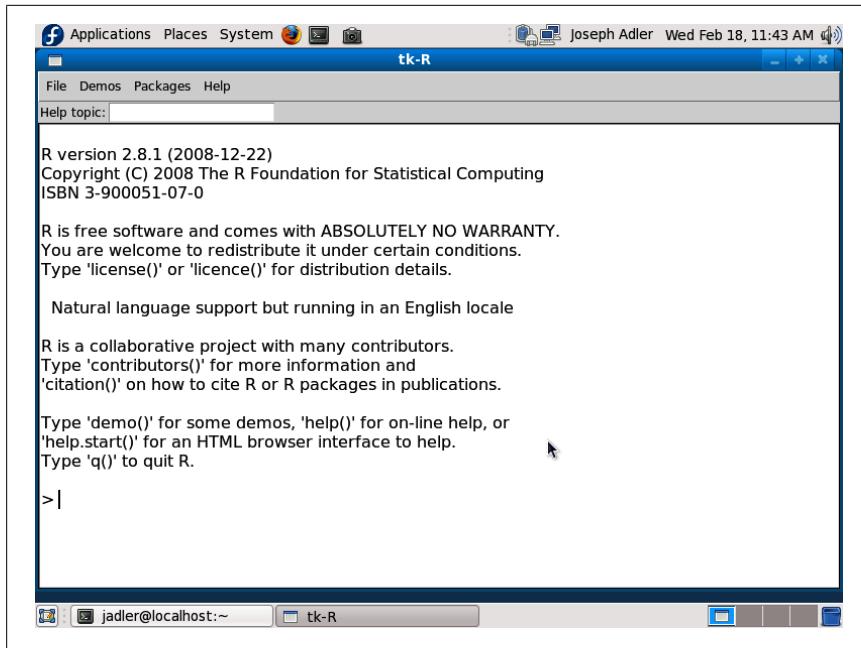


Figure 2-3. The interface for R on Fedora

## Additional R GUIs

If you're a typical desktop computer user, you might find it surprising to discover how little functionality is implemented in the standard R GUI. The standard R GUI implements only very rudimentary functionality through menus: reading help, managing multiple graphics windows, editing some source and data files, and some other basic functionality. There are no menu items, buttons, or palettes for loading data, transforming data, plotting data, building models, or doing any interesting work with data. Commercial applications like SAS, SPSS, and S-PLUS include UIs with much more functionality.

Several projects are aiming to build an easier-to-use GUI for R:

### Rcmdr

The Rcmdr project is an R package that provides an alternative GUI for R. You can install it as an R package. It provides some buttons for loading data and menu items for many common R functions.

### Rkward

Rkward is a slick GUI front end for R. It provides a palette and menu-driven UI for analysis, data-editing tools, and an IDE for R code development. It's still a young project and currently works best on Linux platforms (though Windows builds are available). It is available from <http://sourceforge.net/apps/mediawiki/rkward/>.

## R Productivity Environment

Revolution Computing recently introduced a new IDE called the R Productivity Environment. This IDE provides many features for analyzing data: a script editor, object browser, visual debugger, and more. The R Productivity Environment is currently available only for Windows, as part of Revolution R Enterprise.

### RStudio

RStudio is a popular, open source IDE for working with R. To learn more, see “[RStudio](#)” on page 15.

You can find a list of additional projects at [http://www.sciviews.org/\\_rgui/](http://www.sciviews.org/_rgui/). This book does not cover any of these projects in detail. However, you should still be able to use this book as a reference for all of these packages because they all use (and expose) R functions.

## The R Console

The R console is the most important tool for using R. The R console is a tool that allows you to type commands into R and see how the R system responds. The commands that you type into the console are called *expressions*. A part of the R system called the *interpreter* will read the expressions and respond with a result or an error message. Sometimes, you can also enter an expression into R through the menus.

If you’ve used a command line before (for example, the *cmd.exe* program on Windows) or a language with an interactive interpreter such as LISP, this should look familiar.<sup>2</sup> If not, don’t worry. Command-line interfaces aren’t as scary as they look. R provides a few tools to save you extra typing, to help you find the tools you’re looking for, and to spot common mistakes. Besides, you have a whole reference book on R that will help you figure out how to do what you want.

Personally, I think a command-line interface is the best way to analyze data. After I finish working on a problem, I want a record of every step that I took. (I want to know how I loaded the data, if I took a random sample, how I took the sample, whether I created any new variables, what parameters I used in my models, etc.) A command-line interface makes it very easy to keep a record of everything I do and then re-create it later if I need to.

When you launch R, you will see a window with the R console. Inside the console, you will see a message like this:

```
R version 2.15.1 (2012-06-22) -- "Roasted Marshmallows"
Copyright (C) 2012 The R Foundation for Statistical Computing
ISBN 3-900051-07-0
Platform: x86_64-apple-darwin9.8.0/x86_64 (64-bit)
```

R is free software and comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY.

2. Incidentally, R has quite a bit in common with LISP: both languages allow you to compute expressions on the language itself, both languages use similar internal structures to hold data, and both languages use lots of parentheses.

```
You are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions.  
Type 'license()' or 'licence()' for distribution details.
```

```
Natural language support but running in an English locale
```

```
R is a collaborative project with many contributors.  
Type 'contributors()' for more information and  
'citation()' on how to cite R or R packages in publications.
```

```
Type 'demo()' for some demos, 'help()' for on-line help, or  
'help.start()' for an HTML browser interface to help.  
Type 'q()' to quit R.
```

```
[R.app GUI 1.52 (6188) x86_64-apple-darwin9.8.0]
```

```
[History restored from /Users/jadler/.Rapp.history]
```

This window displays some basic information about R: the version of R you're running, some license information, quick reminders about how to get help, and a *command prompt*.

By default, R will display a greater-than sign (“>”) in the console (at the beginning of a line, when nothing else is shown) when R is waiting for you to enter a command into the console. R is prompting you to type something, so this is called a *prompt*.

For example, suppose that you typed **17 + 3** on the console. You would see something similar to this:

```
> 17 + 3  
[1] 20
```

This means:

- I entered “17 + 3” into the R command prompt.
- The computer responded by writing “[1] 20” (I’ll explain what that means in [Chapter 3](#)).

If you would like to try this yourself, then type “17 + 3” at the command prompt and press the Enter key. You should see a response like the one shown above. In this book, I will show text that I have typed in **boldface**. So, when you see an entry like this in the book:

```
> 17 + 3  
[1] 20
```

that means that I typed “17 + 3” into the console but that all the other text was generated by R. (Your terminal probably won’t display text you have entered in bold.)

Sometimes, an R command doesn’t fit on a single line. If you enter an incomplete command on one line, the R prompt will change to a plus sign (“+”). Here’s a simple example:

```
> 1 * 2 * 3 * 4 * 5 *  
+ 6 * 7 * 8 * 9 * 10  
[1] 3628800
```

This could cause confusion in some cases (such as in long expressions that contain sums or inequalities). On most platforms, command prompts, user-entered text, and R responses are displayed in different colors to help clarify the differences. [Table 2-1](#) presents a summary of the default colors.

*Table 2-1. Text colors in R interactive mode*

| Platform          | Command prompt | User input | R output |
|-------------------|----------------|------------|----------|
| Mac OS X          | Purple         | Blue       | Black    |
| Microsoft Windows | Red            | Red        | Blue     |
| Linux             | Black          | Black      | Black    |

## Command-Line Editing

On most platforms, R provides tools for looking through previous commands.<sup>3</sup> You will probably find the most important line edit commands are the up and down arrow keys. By placing the cursor at the end of the line, you can scroll through commands by pressing the up arrow or the down arrow. The up arrow lets you look at earlier commands, and the down arrow lets you look at later commands. If you would like to repeat a previous command with a minor change (such as a different parameter), or if you need to correct a mistake (such as a missing parenthesis), you can do this easily.

You can also type `history()` to get a list of previously typed commands.<sup>4</sup>

R also includes automatic completions for function names and filenames. Type the Tab key to see a list of possible completions for a function or a filename.

## Batch Mode

R's interactive mode is convenient for most ad hoc analyses, but typing in every command can be inconvenient for some tasks. Suppose that you wanted to do the same thing with R multiple times. (For example, you may want to load data from an experiment, transform it, generate three plots as Portable Document Format [PDF] files, and then quit.) R provides a way to run a large set of commands in sequence and save the results to a file. This is called *batch mode*.

One way to run R in batch mode is from the system command line (not the R console). By running R from the system command line, it's possible to run a set of commands without starting R. This makes it easier to automate analyses, as you can change a couple of variables and rerun an analysis. For example, to load a set of commands from the file `generate_graphs.R`, you would use a command like this:

3. On Linux and Mac OS X systems, the command line uses the GNU `readline` library and includes a large set of editing commands. On Windows platforms, a smaller number of editing commands is available.
4. As of this writing, the `history` command does not work completely correctly on Mac OS X. The `history` command will display the last saved history, not the history for the current session.

```
$ R CMD BATCH generate_graphs.R
```

R would run the commands in the input file *generate\_graphs.R*, generating an output file called *generate\_graphs.Rout* with the results. You can also specify the name of the output file. For example, to put the output in a file labeled with today's date (on a Mac or Unix system), you could use a command like this:

```
$ R CMD BATCH generate_graphs.R generate_graphs_`date "+%y%m%d"` .log
```

If you're generating graphics in batch mode, remember to specify the output device and filenames. For more information about running R from the command line, including a list of the available options, run R from the command line with the `--help` option:

```
$ R --help
```

One key disadvantage of running R using the command `R CMD BATCH` is that your scripts cannot access the system's standard input. Luckily, there is a second command for running R in batch mode: the `RScript` command. You can execute a script with a command like this:

```
$ RScript generate_graphs.R
```

Additionally, you can write executable scripts using `RScript`. Here's an example of how to do this (on Linux, Mac OS, or other Unix-like systems). First, create a file called *hello\_world.R* with the following contents:

```
#!/usr/bin/env RScript  
  
print("Hello world!");
```

Next, type the following command to make the script executable:

```
$ chmod +x hello_world.R
```

Now you can execute this command like any other command:

```
$ ./hello_world.R  
[1] "Hello world!"
```

We will use this ability in “[Hadoop Streaming](#)” on page 568.

Finally, you can also run commands in batch mode from inside R. To do this, you can use the `source` command; see the help file for `source` for more information.

## Using R Inside Microsoft Excel

If you're familiar with Microsoft Excel, or if you work with a lot of data files in Excel format, you might want to run R directly from inside Excel. The `RExcel` software lets you do just that (on Microsoft Windows systems). You can find information about this software at <http://rcom.univie.ac.at/>. This site also includes a single installer that will install R plus all the other software you need to use `RExcel`.

If you already have R installed, you can install `RExcel` as a package from CRAN. The following set of commands will download `RExcel`, configure the `RCOM` server, install `RDCOM`, and launch the `RExcel` installer:

```
> install.packages("RExcelInstaller", "rcom", "rsproxy")
> # configure rcom
> library(rcom)
> comRegisterRegistry()
> library(RExcelInstaller)
> # execute the following command in R to start the installer for RDCOM
> installstatconnDCOM()
> # execute the following command in R to start the installer for REXCEL
> installRExcel()
```

Follow the prompts within the installer to install RExcel.

After you have installed RExcel, you will be able to access RExcel from a menu item. If you are using Excel 2007, you will need to select the “Add-Ins” ribbon to find this menu, as shown in [Figure 2-4](#). To use RExcel, first select the R Start menu item. As a simple test, try doing the following:

1. Enter a set of numeric values into a column in Excel (for example, B1:B5).
2. Select the values you entered.
3. On the RExcel menu, go to the item Put R Var → Array.
4. A dialog box will open, asking you to name the object you are creating in Excel. Enter `v` and press the Enter key. This will create an array (in this case, just a vector) in R with the values that you entered with the name `v`.
5. Now, select a blank cell in Excel.
6. On the RExcel menu, go to the item Get R Value → Array.
7. A dialog box will open, prompting you to enter an R expression. As an example, try entering `(v - mean(v)) / sd(v)`. This will rescale the contents of `v`, changing the mean to 0 and the standard deviation to 1.
8. Inspect the results that have been returned within Excel.

For some more interesting examples of how to use RExcel, take a look at the Demo Worksheets under this menu. You can use Excel functions to evaluate R expressions, use R expressions in macros, and even plot R graphics within Excel.

## RStudio

One of the most popular ways to run R has become RStudio. RStudio is a free, open-source integrated development environment (IDE) for R. A screen shot of R Studio is shown in [Figure 2-5](#).

Unlike the standard R GUI, RStudio tiles windows on the screen and puts different windows in different tabs. Additionally, you can install RStudio on a Linux server and access R from a web browser! To learn more about RStudio and download a copy, see <http://www.rstudio.org>.

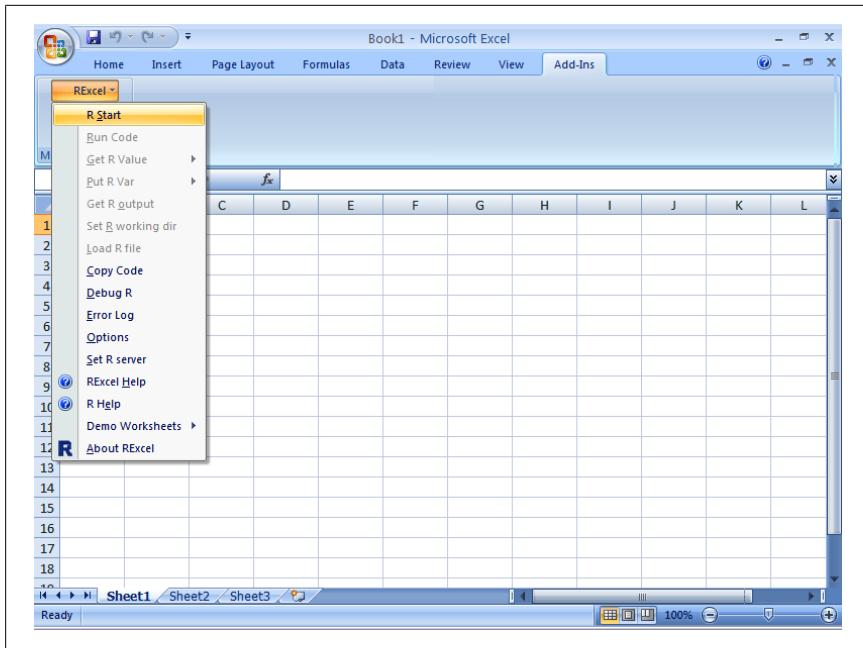


Figure 2-4. Accessing RExcel in Microsoft Excel 2007

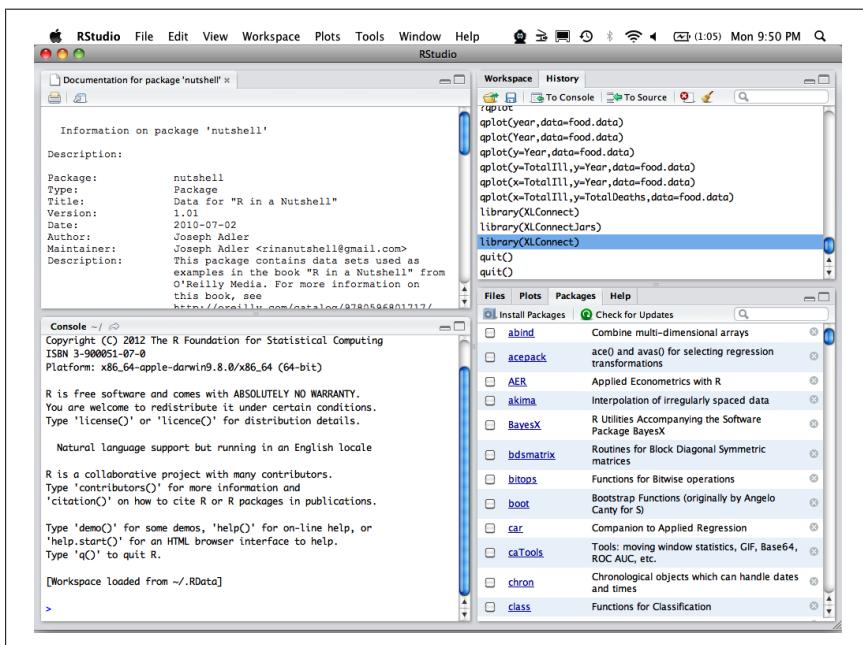


Figure 2-5. R Studio

# Other Ways to Run R

There are several open-source projects that allow you to combine R with other applications:

## *As a web application*

The rApache software allows you to incorporate analyses from R into a web application. (For example, you might want to build a server that shows sophisticated reports using R lattice graphics.) For information about this project, see <http://biostat.mc.vanderbilt.edu/rapache/>.

## *As a server*

The Rserve software allows you to access R from within other applications. For example, you can produce a Java program that uses R to perform some calculations. As the name implies, Rserve is implemented as a network server, so a single Rserve instance can handle calculations from multiple users on different machines. One way to use Rserve is to install it on a heavy-duty server with lots of CPU power and memory, so that users can perform calculations that they couldn't easily perform on their own desktops. For more about this project, see <http://www.rforge.net/Rserve/index.html>.

As we described above, you can also use R Studio to run R on a server and access it from a web browser.

## *Inside Emacs*

The ESS (Emacs Speaks Statistics) package is an add-on for Emacs that allows you to run R directly within Emacs. For more on this project, see <http://ess-project.org/>.





# 3

---

## A Short R Tutorial

This chapter contains a short tutorial of R with a lot of examples.

If you've never used R before, this is a great time to start it up and try playing with it. There's no better way to learn something than by trying it yourself. You can follow along by typing in the same text that's shown in the book. Or, try changing it a little bit to see what happens. (For example, if the sample code says "3 + 4," try typing 3 - 4 instead.)



If you've never used an interactive language before, take a look at [Chapter 2](#) before you start. That chapter contains an overview of the R environment, including the console. Otherwise, you might find the presentation of the examples—and the terminology—confusing.

## Basic Operations in R

Let's get started using R. When you enter an expression into the R console and press the Enter key, R will evaluate that expression and display the results (if there are any). If the statement results in a value, R will print that value. For example, you can use R to do simple math:

```
> 1 + 2 + 3  
[1] 6  
> 1 + 2 * 3  
[1] 7  
> (1 + 2) * 3  
[1] 9
```

The interactive R interpreter will automatically print an object returned by an expression entered into the R console. Notice the funny "[1]" that accompanies each returned value. In R, any number that you enter in the console is interpreted as a *vector*. A vector is an ordered collection of numbers. The "[1]" means that the index

of the first item displayed in the row is 1. In each of these cases, there is also only one element in the vector.

You can construct longer vectors using the `c(...)` function. (`c` stands for “combine.”) For example:

```
> c(0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8)
[1] 0 1 1 2 3 5 8
```

is a vector that contains the first seven elements of the Fibonacci sequence. As an example of a vector that spans multiple lines, let’s use the sequence operator to produce a vector with every integer between 1 and 50:

```
> 1:50
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22
[23] 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44
[45] 45 46 47 48 49 50
```

Notice the numbers in the brackets on the left-hand side of the results. These indicate the index of the first element shown in each row.

When you perform an operation on two vectors, R will match the elements of the two vectors pairwise and return a vector. For example:

```
> c(1, 2, 3, 4) + c(10, 20, 30, 40)
[1] 11 22 33 44
> c(1, 2, 3, 4) * c(10, 20, 30, 40)
[1] 10 40 90 160
> c(1, 2, 3, 4) - c(1, 1, 1, 1)
[1] 0 1 2 3
```

If the two vectors aren’t the same size, R will repeat the smaller sequence multiple times:

```
> c(1, 2, 3, 4) + 1
[1] 2 3 4 5
> 1 / c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
[1] 1.0000000 0.5000000 0.3333333 0.2500000 0.2000000
> c(1, 2, 3, 4) + c(10, 100)
[1] 11 102 13 104
> c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) + c(10, 100)
[1] 11 102 13 104 15
Warning message:
In c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) + c(10, 100) :
  longer object length is not a multiple of shorter object length
```

Note the warning if the second sequence isn’t a multiple of the first.

In R, you can also enter expressions with characters:

```
> "Hello world."
[1] "Hello world."
```

This is called a *character vector* in R. This example is actually a character vector of length 1. Here is an example of a character vector of length 2:

```
> c("Hello world", "Hello R interpreter")
[1] "Hello world"           "Hello R interpreter"
```

(In other languages, like C, “character” refers to a single character, and an ordered set of characters is called a *string*. A string in C is equivalent to a character value in R.)

You can add comments to R code. Anything after a pound sign (“#”) on a line is ignored:

```
> # Here is an example of a comment at the beginning of a line
> 1 + 2 + # and here is an example in the middle
+ 3
[1] 6
```

## Functions

In R, the operations that do all the work are called *functions*. We’ve already used a few functions above (you can’t do anything interesting in R without them). Functions are just like what you remember from math class. Most functions are in the following form:

```
f(argument1, argument2, ...)
```

Where `f` is the name of the function, and `argument1, argument2, ...` are the arguments to the function. Here are a few more examples:

```
> exp(1)
[1] 2.718282
> cos(3.141593)
[1] -1
> log2(1)
[1] 0
```

In each of these examples, the functions took only one argument. Many functions require more than one argument. You can specify the arguments by name:

```
> log(x=64, base=4)
[1] 3
```

Or, if you give the arguments in the default order, you can omit the names:

```
> log(64,4)
[1] 3
```

Not all functions are of the form `f(...)`. Some of them are in the form of operators.<sup>1</sup> For example, we used the addition operator (“+”) above. Here are a few examples of operators:

```
> 17 + 2
[1] 19
> 2 ^ 10
[1] 1024
> 3 == 4
[1] FALSE
```

- When you enter a binary or unary operator into R, the R interpreter will actually translate the operator into a function; there is a function equivalent for each operator. We’ll talk about this more in [Chapter 5](#).

We've seen the first one already: it's just addition. The second operator is the exponentiation operator, which is interesting because it's not a commutative operator. The third operator is the equality operator. (Notice that the result returned is FALSE; R has a Boolean data type.)

## Variables

Like most other languages, R lets you assign values to variables and refer to them by name. In R, the assignment operator is `<-`. Usually, this is pronounced as "gets." For example, the statement:

```
x <- 1
```

is usually read as "x gets 1." (If you've ever done any work with theoretical computer science, you'll probably like this notation: it looks just like algorithm pseudocode.)

After you assign a value to a variable, the R interpreter will substitute that value in place of the variable name when it evaluates an expression. Here's a simple example:

```
> x <- 1
> y <- 2
> z <- c(x,y)
> # evaluate z to see what's stored as z
> z
[1] 1 2
```

Notice that the substitution is done at the time that the value is assigned to `z`, not at the time that `z` is evaluated. Suppose that you were to type in the preceding three expressions and then change the value of `y`. The value of `z` would not change:

```
> y <- 4
> z
[1] 1 2
```

I'll talk more about the subtleties of variables and how they're evaluated in [Chapter 8](#).

R provides several different ways to refer to a member (or set of members) of a vector. You can refer to elements by location in a vector:

```
> b <- c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12)
> b
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
> # let's fetch the 7th item in vector b
> b[7]
[1] 7
> # fetch items 1 through 6
> b[1:6]
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6
> # fetch only members of b that are congruent to zero (mod 3)
> # (in non-math speak, members that are multiples of 3)
> b[b %% 3 == 0]
[1] 3 6 9 12
```

You can fetch multiple items in a vector by specifying the indices of each item as an integer vector:

```
> # fetch items 1 through 6
> b[1:6]
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6
> # fetch 1, 6, 11
> b[c(1,6,11)]
[1] 1 6 11
```

You can fetch items out of order. Items are returned in the order they are referenced:

```
> b[c(8,4,9)]
[1] 8 4 9
```

You can also specify which items to fetch through a logical vector. As an example, let's fetch only multiples of 3 (by selecting items that are congruent to 0 mod 3):

```
> b %% 3 == 0
[1] FALSE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE
[12] TRUE
> b[b %% 3 == 0]
[1] 3 6 9 12
```

In R, there are two additional operators that can be used for assigning values to symbols. First, you can use a single equals sign (“=”) for assignment.<sup>2</sup> This operator assigns the symbol on the left to the object on the right. In many other languages, all assignment statements use equals signs. If you are more comfortable with this notation, you are free to use it. However, I will be using only the `<-` assignment operator in this book because I think it is easier to read. Whichever notation you prefer, be careful because the `=` operator does not mean “equals.” For that, you need to use the `==` operator:

```
> one <- 1
> two <- 2
> # This means: assign the value of "two" to the variable "one"
> one = two
> one
[1] 2
> two
[1] 2
> # let's start again
> one <- 1
> two <- 2
> # This means: does the value of "one" equal the value of "two"
> one == two
[1] FALSE
```

In R, you can also assign an object on the left to a symbol on the right:

```
> 3 -> three
> three
[1] 3
```

2. Note that you cannot use the `<-` operator when passing arguments to a function; you need to map values to argument names using the `“=”` symbol. Using the `<-` operator in a function will assign the value to the variable in the current environment and then pass the value returned to the function. This might be what you want, but it probably isn't.

In some programming contexts, this notation might help you write clearer code. (It may also be convenient if you type in a long expression and then realize that you have forgotten to assign the result to a symbol.)

A function in R is just another object that is assigned to a symbol. You can define your own functions in R, assign them a name, and then call them just like the built-in functions:

```
> f <- function(x,y) {c(x+1, y+1)}  
> f(1,2)  
[1] 2 3
```

This leads to a very useful trick. You can often type the name of a function to see the code for it. Here's an example:

```
> f  
function(x,y) {c(x+1, y+1)}
```

## Introduction to Data Structures

In R, you can construct more complicated data structures than just vectors. An *array* is a multidimensional vector. Vectors and arrays are stored the same way internally, but an array may be displayed differently and accessed differently. An array object is just a vector that's associated with a dimension attribute. Here's a simple example.

First, let's define an array explicitly:

```
> a <- array(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), dim=c(3, 4))
```

Here is what the array looks like:

```
> a  
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]  
[1,]    1    4    7   10  
[2,]    2    5    8   11  
[3,]    3    6    9   12
```

And here is how you reference one cell:

```
> a[2,2]  
[1] 5
```

Now, let's define a vector with the same contents:

```
> v <- c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12)  
> v  
[1]  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10 11 12
```

A matrix is just a two-dimensional array:

```
> m <- matrix(data=c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12), nrow=3, ncol=4)  
> m  
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]  
[1,]    1    4    7   10  
[2,]    2    5    8   11  
[3,]    3    6    9   12
```

Arrays can have more than two dimensions. For example:

```
> w <- array(c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15,16,17,18),dim=c(3,3,2))
> w
, , 1

[,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]    1    4    7
[2,]    2    5    8
[3,]    3    6    9

, , 2

[,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]   10   13   16
[2,]   11   14   17
[3,]   12   15   18

> w[1,1,1]
[1] 1
```

R uses very clean syntax for referring to part of an array. You specify separate indices for each dimension, separated by commas:

```
> a[1,2]
[1] 4
> a[1:2,1:2]
[,1] [,2]
[1,]    1    4
[2,]    2    5
```

To get all rows (or columns) from a dimension, simply omit the indices:

```
> # first row only
> a[1,]
[1] 1 4 7 10
> # first column only
> a[,1]
[1] 1 2 3
> # you can also refer to a range of rows
> a[1:2,]
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,]    1    4    7   10
[2,]    2    5    8   11
> # you can even refer to a noncontiguous set of rows
> a[c(1,3),]
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,]    1    4    7   10
[2,]    3    6    9   12
```

In all the examples above, we've just looked at data structures based on a single underlying data type. In R, it's possible to construct more complicated structures with multiple data types. R has a built-in data type for mixing objects of different types, called *lists*. Lists in R are subtly different from lists in many other languages. Lists in R may contain a heterogeneous selection of objects. You can name each component in a list. Items in a list may be referred to by either location or name.

Here is an example of a list with two named components:

```
> # a list containing two strings
> e <- list(thing="hat", size="8.25")
> e
$thing
[1] "hat"

$size
[1] "8.25"
```

You may access an item in the list in multiple ways:

```
> e$thing
[1] "hat"
> e[1]
$thing
[1] "hat"
> e[[1]]
[1] "hat"
```

A list can even contain other lists:

```
> g <- list("this list references another list", e)
> g
[[1]]
[1] "this list references another list"

[[2]]
[[2]]$thing
[1] "hat"

[[2]]$size
[1] "8.25"
```

A *data frame* is a list that contains multiple named vectors that are the same length. A data frame is a lot like a spreadsheet or a database table. Data frames are particularly good for representing experimental data. As an example, I'm going to use some baseball data. Let's construct a data frame with the win/loss results in the National League (NL) East in 2008:

```
> teams <- c("PHI", "NYM", "FLA", "ATL", "WSN")
> w <- c(92, 89, 94, 72, 59)
> l <- c(70, 73, 77, 90, 102)
> nleast <- data.frame(teams,w,l)
> nleast
  teams   w   l
1   PHI  92  70
2   NYM  89  73
3   FLA  94  77
4   ATL  72  90
5   WSN  59 102
```

You can refer to the components of a data frame (or items in a list) by name using the `$` operator:

```
> nleast$w
[1] 92 89 94 72 59
```

Here's one way to find a specific value in a data frame. Suppose that you wanted to find the number of losses by the Florida Marlins (FLA). One way to select a member of an array is by using a vector of Boolean values to specify which item to return from a list. You can calculate an appropriate vector like this:

```
> nleast$teams=="FLA"
[1] FALSE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE
```

Then you can use this vector to refer to the right element in the losses vector:

```
> nleast$l[nleast$teams=="FLA"]
[1] 77
```

You can import data into R from another file or from a database. See [Chapter 11](#) for more information on how to do this.

In addition to lists, R has other types of data structures for holding a heterogeneous collection of objects, including formal class definitions through S4 objects.

## Objects and Classes

R is an object-oriented language. Every object in R has a type. Additionally, every object in R is a member of a *class*. We have already encountered several different classes: character vectors, numeric vectors, data frames, lists, and arrays.

You can use the `class` function to determine the class of an object. For example:

```
> class(teams)
[1] "character"
> class(w)
[1] "numeric"
> class(nleast)
[1] "data.frame"
> class(class)
[1] "function"
```

Notice the last example: a function is an object in R with the class `function`.

Some functions are associated with a specific class. These are called *methods*. (Not all functions are tied closely to a particular class; the class system in R is much less formal than that in a language like Java.)

In R, methods for different classes can share the same name. These are called *generic functions*. Generic functions serve two purposes. First, they make it easy to guess the right function name for an unfamiliar class. Second, generic functions make it possible to use the same code for objects of different types.

For example, `+` is a generic function for adding objects. You can add numbers together with the `+` operator:

```
> 17 + 6  
[1] 23
```

You might guess that the addition operator would work similarly with other types of objects. For example, you can also use the `+` operator with a date object and a number:

```
> as.Date("2009-09-08") + 7  
[1] "2009-09-15"
```

By the way, the R interpreter calls the generic function `print` on any object returned on the R console. Suppose that you define `x` as:

```
> x <- 1 + 2 + 3 + 4
```

When you type:

```
> x  
[1] 10
```

the interpreter actually calls the function `print(x)` to print the results. This means that if you define a new class, you can define a `print` method to specify how objects from that new class are printed on the console. Some functions take advantage of this functionality to do other things when you enter an expression on the console.<sup>3</sup>

I'll talk about objects in more depth in [Chapter 7](#) and classes in [Chapter 10](#).

## Models and Formulas

To statisticians, a *model* is a concise way to describe a set of data, usually with a mathematical formula. Sometimes, the goal is to build a *predictive* model with *training* data to predict values based on other data. Other times, the goal is to build a *descriptive* model that helps you understand the data better.

R has a special notation for describing relationships between variables. Suppose that you are assuming a linear model for a variable `y`, predicted from the variables `x1`, `x2`, ..., `xn`. (Statisticians usually refer to `y` as the *dependent* variable, and `x1`, `x2`, ..., `xn` as the *independent* variables.) In equation form, this implies a relationship like:

$$y = c_0 + c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \cdots + c_n x_n + \varepsilon$$

In R, you would write the relationship as `y ~ x1 + x2 + ... + xn`, which is a formula object.

3. A very important example of this is lattice graphics. Plotting functions in the `lattice` library return lattice objects but don't plot results. If you call a lattice function on the R console, the console will print the object, thus plotting the results. However, if you call a lattice function within another function, or in a script, R will not plot the results unless you explicitly print the lattice object.

As an example, let's use the `cars` data set (which is included in the `base` package). This data set was created during the 1920s and shows the speed and stopping distance for a set of different cars. We'll look at the relationship between speed and stopping distance. We'll assume that the stopping distance is a linear function of speed. So let's try to use a linear regression to estimate the relationship. The formula is `dist~speed`. We'll use the `lm` function to estimate the parameters of a linear model. The `lm` function returns an object of class `lm`, which we will assign to a variable called `cars.lm`:

```
> cars.lm <- lm(formula=dist~speed,data=cars)
```

Now, let's take a quick look at the results returned:

```
> cars.lm

Call:
lm(formula = dist ~ speed, data = cars)

Coefficients:
(Intercept)      speed
-17.579        3.932
```

As you can see, printing an `lm` object shows you the original function call (and thus the data set and formula) and the estimated coefficients. For some more information, we can use the `summary` function:

```
> summary(cars.lm)

Call:
lm(formula = dist ~ speed, data = cars)

Residuals:
    Min      1Q  Median      3Q     Max 
-29.069 -9.525 -2.272  9.215 43.201 

Coefficients:
            Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)    
(Intercept) -17.5791   6.7584  -2.601   0.0123 *  
speed        3.9324   0.4155   9.464 1.49e-12 *** 
---
Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1 

Residual standard error: 15.38 on 48 degrees of freedom
Multiple R-squared:  0.6511,    Adjusted R-squared:  0.6438 
F-statistic: 89.57 on 1 and 48 DF,  p-value: 1.490e-12
```

As you can see, the `summary` option shows you the function call, the distribution of the residuals from the fit, the coefficients, and information about the fit. By the way, it is possible to simply call the `lm` function or to call `summary(lm(...))` and not assign a name to the model object:

```
> lm(dist~speed,data=cars)

Call:
lm(formula = dist ~ speed, data = cars)
```

```

Coefficients:
(Intercept)      speed
-17.579        3.932

> summary(lm(dist~speed,data=cars))

Call:
lm(formula = dist ~ speed, data = cars)

Residuals:
    Min     1Q Median     3Q    Max 
-29.069 -9.525 -2.272  9.215 43.201 

Coefficients:
            Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)    
(Intercept) -17.5791    6.7584  -2.601   0.0123 *  
speed        3.9324    0.4155   9.464 1.49e-12 *** 
---
Signif. codes:  0 ‘***’ 0.001 ‘**’ 0.01 ‘*’ 0.05 ‘.’ 0.1 ‘ ’ 1

Residual standard error: 15.38 on 48 degrees of freedom
Multiple R-squared: 0.6511,   Adjusted R-squared: 0.6438 
F-statistic: 89.57 on 1 and 48 DF, p-value: 1.490e-12

```

In some cases, this can be more convenient. However, you often want to perform additional analyses, such as plotting residuals, calculating additional statistics, or updating a model to add or subtract variables. By assigning a name to the model, you can make your code easier to understand and modify. Additionally, refitting a model can be very time consuming for complex models and large data sets. By assigning the model to a variable name, you can avoid these problems.

## Charts and Graphics

R includes several packages for visualizing data: `graphics`, `grid`, and `lattice`. Usually, you'll find that functions within the `graphics` and `lattice` packages are the most useful.<sup>4</sup> If you're familiar with Microsoft Excel, you'll find that R can generate all of the charts that you're familiar with: column charts, bar charts, line plots, pie charts, and scatter plots. Even if that's all you need, R makes it much easier than Excel to automate the creation of charts and to customize them. However, there are many, many more types of charts available in R, many of them quite intuitive and elegant.

To make this a little more interesting, let's work with some real data. We're going to look at all field goal attempts in the National Football League (NFL) in 2005.<sup>5</sup> For those of you who aren't familiar with American football, here's a quick explanation. A team can attempt to kick a football between a set of goalposts to receive 3

4. Other packages are available for visualizing data. For example, the `RGobi` package provides tools for creating interactive graphics.
5. The data was provided by Aaron Schatz of *Pro Football Prospectus*. For more information, see the Football Outsiders website at <http://www.footballoutsiders.com/>, or you can find its annual books at most bookstores—both online and “brick and mortar.”

points. If it misses the field goal, possession of the ball reverts to the other team (at the spot on the field where the kick was attempted). We're going to take a look at kick attempts in the NFL in 2005.

First, let's take a quick look at the distribution of distances. R provides a function, `hist`, that can do this quickly for us. Let's start by loading the appropriate data set. (The data set is included in the `nutshell` package; see the [Preface](#) for information on how to obtain this package.)

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(field.goals)
```

Let's take a quick look at the names of the columns in the `field.goals` data frame:

```
> names(field.goals)
[1] "home.team"      "week"          "qtr"          "away.team"
[5] "offense"        "defense"       "play.type"    "player"
[9] "yards"          "stadium.type"
```

Now, let's just try the `hist` command:

```
> hist(field.goals$yards)
```

This produces a chart like the one shown in [Figure 3-1](#). (Depending on your system, if you try this yourself, you may see a differently colored and formatted chart. I tweaked a few graphical parameters so the charts would look good in print.) I wanted to see more detail about the number of field goals at different distances, so I modified the `breaks` argument to add more bins to the histogram:

```
> hist(field.goals$yards, breaks=35)
```

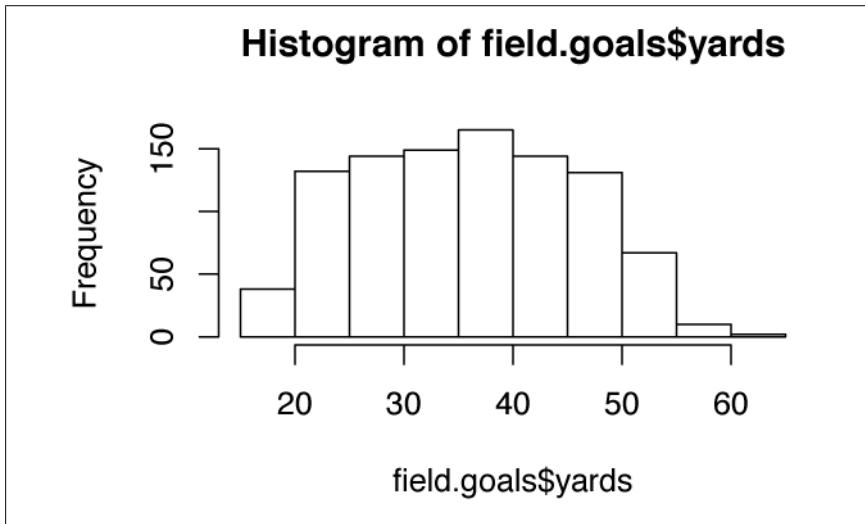
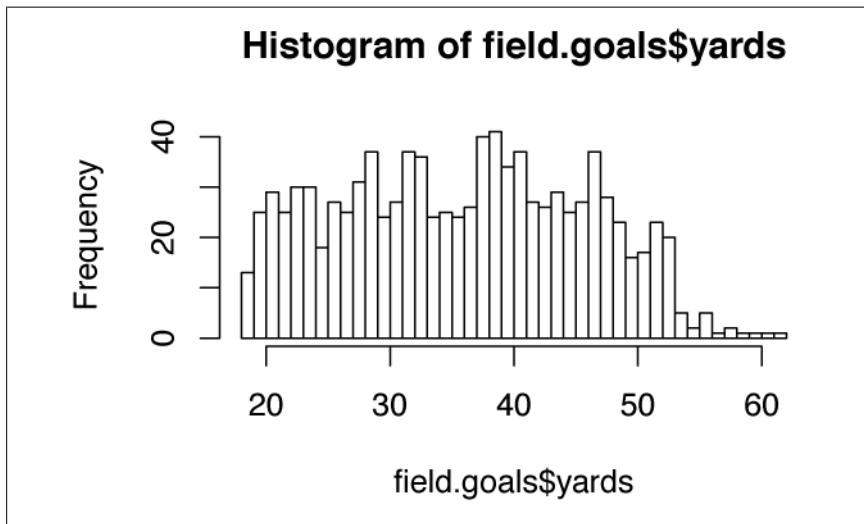


Figure 3-1. Histogram of field goal attempts with default settings

You can see the results of this command in [Figure 3-2](#). R also features many other ways to visualize data. A great example is a strip chart. This chart just plots one point on the  $x$ -axis for every point in a vector. As an example, let's look at the distance of blocked field goals. We can distinguish blocked field goals with the `play.type` variable in the `field.goals` data frame. Let's take a quick look at how many blocked field goals there were in 2005. We'll use the `table` function to tabulate the results:

```
> table(field.goals$play.type)
```

|            |            |         |       |
|------------|------------|---------|-------|
| FG aborted | FG blocked | FG good | FG no |
| 8          | 24         | 787     | 163   |



*Figure 3-2. Histogram of field goal distances, showing more bins*

Now we'll select only observations with blocked field goals. We'll add a little jitter so we can see individual points. Finally, we will also change the appearance of the points using the `pch` argument:

```
> stripchart(field.goals[field.goals$play.type=="FG blocked",]$yards,  
+             pch=19, method="jitter")
```

The results are shown in [Figure 3-3](#).

As a second example, let's use the `cars` data set, which is included in the `base` package. The `cars` data set consists of a set of 50 observations:

```
> data(cars)  
> dim(cars)  
[1] 50  2  
> names(cars)  
[1] "speed" "dist"
```

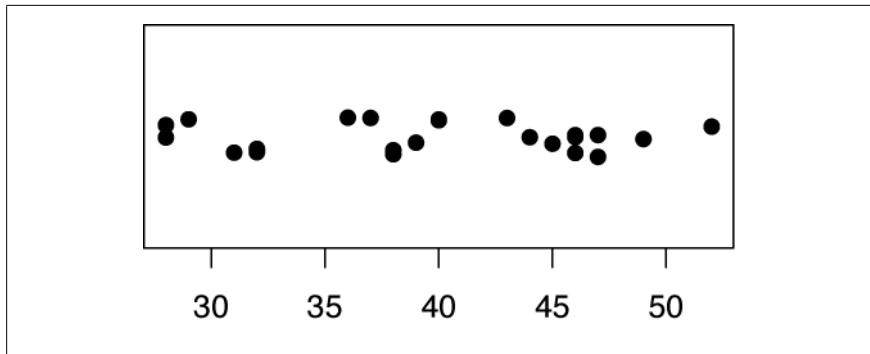


Figure 3-3. Strip chart showing field goal attempt distances

Each observation contains the speed of the car and the distance required to stop. Let's take a quick look at the contents of this data set:

```
> summary(cars)
      speed           dist
Min.   : 4.0   Min.   : 2.00
1st Qu.:12.0   1st Qu.: 26.00
Median :15.0   Median : 36.00
Mean   :15.4   Mean   : 42.98
3rd Qu.:19.0   3rd Qu.: 56.00
Max.   :25.0   Max.   :120.00
```

Let's plot the relationship between vehicle speed and stopping distance:

```
> plot(cars, xlab = "Speed (mph)", ylab = "Stopping distance (ft)",
+       las = 1, xlim = c(0, 25))
```

The plot is shown in Figure 3-4. At a quick glance, we see that stopping distance is roughly proportional to speed.

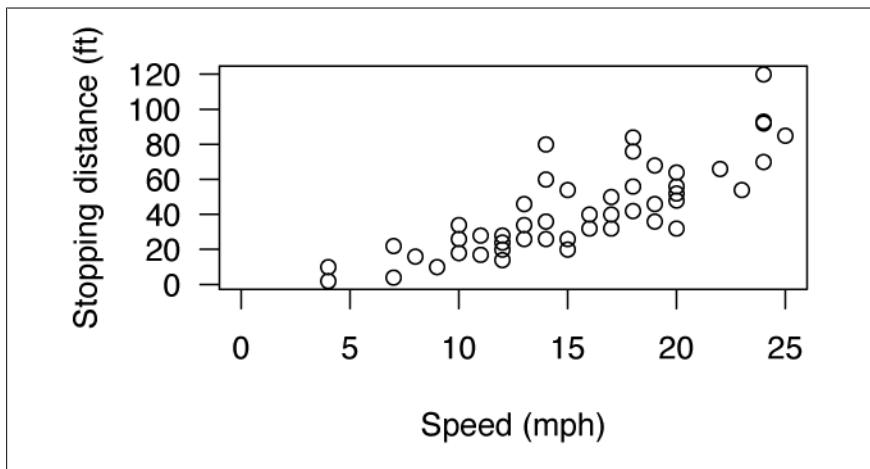


Figure 3-4. Plot of data in the cars data set

Let's try one more example, this time using lattice graphics. Lattice graphics provide some great tools for drawing pretty charts, particularly charts that compare different groups of points. By default, the `lattice` package is not loaded; you will get an error if you try calling a lattice function without loading the library. To load the library, use the following command:

```
> library(lattice)
```

We will talk more about R packages in [Chapter 4](#).

For example data, we'll look at how American eating habits changed between 1980 and 2005.<sup>6</sup>

The consumption data set is available in the `nutshell` package. It contains 48 observations, each showing the amount of a commodity consumed (or produced) in a specific year. Data is available only for years that are multiples of 5 (so there are six unique years between 1980 and 2005). The amount of food consumed is given by `Amount`, the type of food is given by `Food`, and the year is given by `Year`.

Two of the variables are numeric vectors: `Amount` and `Year`. However, two of them are an important data type that we haven't seen yet: factors. A *factor* is an R object type that is used to compactly represent a vector of categorical values. Factors are used in many modeling functions. You can create a factor from another vector (typically a character vector) using the `factor` function. In this data frame, the values `Food` and `Units` are factors. (We'll discuss vectors in more detail in [“Vectors” on page 86](#).)

To help reveal trends in the data, I decided to use the `dotplot` function. (This function resembles line charts in Excel.) Specifically, we'd like to look at how the `Amount` varies by `Year`. We'd like to separately plot the trend for each value of the `Food` variable. For lattice graphics, we specify the data that we want to plot through a formula, in this case, `Amount ~ Year | Food`. A *formula* is an R object that is used to express a relationship between a set of variables.

If you'd like, you can try plotting the relationship using the default settings:

```
> library(nutshell)
> library(lattice)
> data(consumption)
> dotplot(Amount~Year|Food, consumption)
```

I found the default plot hard to read: the axis labels were too big, the scale for each plot was the same, and the stacking didn't look right to me. So I tuned the presentation a little bit. Here is the version that produced [Figure 3-5](#):

```
> dotplot(Amount ~ Year | Food,data=consumption,
+   aspect="xy",scales=list(relation="sliced", cex=.4))
```

6. I obtained the data from the 2009 *Statistical Abstract of the United States*, a terrific book of data about the United States that is published by the Census Bureau. I took a subset of the data, keeping consumption for only the largest categories. You can find this data at [http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/cats/health\\_nutrition/food\\_consumption\\_and\\_nutrition.html](http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/cats/health_nutrition/food_consumption_and_nutrition.html).

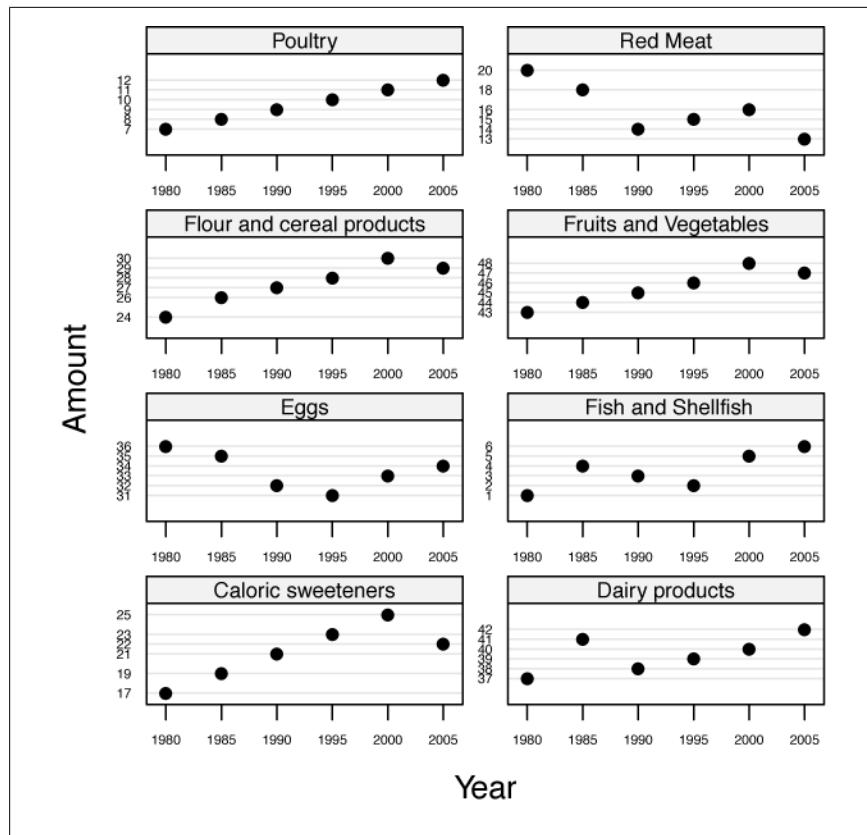


Figure 3-5. Lattice plot showing American changes in American eating habits, 1980–2005

The `aspect` option changes the aspect ratios of each plot to try to show changes from  $45^\circ$  angles (making changes easier to see). The `scales` option changes how the axes are drawn. I'll discuss lattice plots in more detail in [Chapter 14](#), explaining how to use different options to tune the look of your charts.

## Getting Help

R includes a help system to help you get information about installed packages. To get help on a function, for example `glm`, you would type:

```
> help(glm)
```

or, equivalently:

```
> ?glm
```

To search for help on an operator, you need to place the operator in backquotes:

```
> ?`+`
```

If you'd like to try the examples in a help file, you can use the `example` function to automatically try them. For example, to see the example for `glm`, type:

```
> example(glm)
```

You can search for help on a topic, for example "regression," using the `help.search` function:

```
> help.search("regression")
```

This can be very helpful if you can't remember the name of a function; R will return a list of relevant topics. There is a shorthand for this command as well:

```
> ??regression
```

To get the help file for a package, you can sometimes use one of the commands above. However, you can also use the `help` option for the `library` command to get more complete information. For example, to get help on the `grDevices` library, you would use the following function:

```
> library(help="grDevices")
```

Some packages (especially packages from Bioconductor) include at least one vignette. A *vignette* is a short document that describes how to use the package, complete with examples. You can view a vignette using the `vignette` command. For example, to view the vignette for the `affy` package (assuming that you have installed this package), you would use the following command:

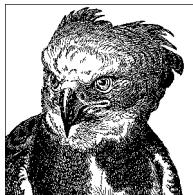
```
> vignette("affy")
```

To view available vignettes for all attached packages, you can use the following command:

```
> vignette(all=FALSE)
```

To view vignettes for all installed packages, try this command:

```
> vignette(all=TRUE)
```



# 4

## R Packages

A *package* is a related set of functions, help files, and data files that have been bundled together. Packages in R are similar to modules in Perl, libraries in C/C++, and classes in Java.

Typically, all the functions in the package are related: for example, the `stats` package contains functions for doing statistical analysis. To use a package, you need to load it into R (see “[Loading Packages](#)” on page 40 for directions on loading packages).

R offers an enormous number of packages: packages that display graphics, packages for performing statistical tests, and packages for trying the latest machine learning techniques. There are also packages designed for a wide variety of industries and applications: packages for analyzing microarray data, packages for modeling credit risks, and packages for social sciences.

Some of these packages are included with R: you just have to tell R that you want to use them. Other packages are available from public package repositories. You can even make your own packages. This chapter explains how to use packages.

## An Overview of Packages

To use a package in R, you first need to make sure that it has been installed into a local *library*.<sup>1</sup> By default, packages are read from one system-level library, but you can add additional libraries.

Next, you need to load the packages into your current session. You might be wondering why you need to load packages into R in order to use them. First, R’s help system slows down significantly when you add more packages to search. (I know this from personal experience: I loaded dozens of packages into R while writing this book, and the help system slowed to a crawl.) Second, it’s possible that two packages have objects with the same name. If every package were loaded into R by default, you might think you were using one function but really be using another. Even

1. If you’re a C/C++ programmer, don’t get confused; “library” means something different in R.

worse, it's possible for there to be internal conflicts: two packages may both use functions with names like "fit" that work very differently, resulting in strange and unexpected results. By loading only packages that you need, you can minimize the chance of these conflicts.

## Listing Packages in Local Libraries

To get the list of packages loaded by default, you can use the `getOption` command to check the value of the `defaultPackages` value:

```
>getOption("defaultPackages")
[1] "datasets"   "utils"      "grDevices"  "graphics"  "stats"
[6] "methods"
```

This command omits the `base` package; the `base` package implements many key features of the R language and is always loaded.

If you would like to see the list of currently loaded packages, you can use the `.packages` command (note the parentheses around the outside):

```
>(.packages())
[1] "stats"       "graphics"    "grDevices"   "utils"      "datasets"    "methods"
[7] "base"
```

To show all packages available, you can use the `all.available` option with the `packages` command:

```
>(.packages(all.available=TRUE))
[1] "KernSmooth"  "MASS"        "base"        "bitops"     "boot"
[6] "class"       "cluster"     "codetools"   "datasets"   "foreign"
[11] "grDevices"   "graphics"    "grid"       "hexbin"    "lattice"
[16] "maps"        "methods"    "mgcv"      "nlme"      "nnet"
[21] "rpart"       "spatial"    "splines"    "stats"     "stats4"
[26] "survival"    "tcltk"      "tools"     "utils"
```

You can also enter the `library()` command with no arguments, and a new window will pop up showing you the set of available packages.

### Included Packages

R comes with a number of different packages (see [Table 4-1](#) for a list). Some of these packages (like `base`, `graphics`, `grDevices`, `methods`, and `utils`) implement basic features of the R language or R environment. Other packages provide commonly used statistical modeling tools (like `cluster`, `nnet`, and `stats`). Other packages implement sophisticated graphics (`grid` and `lattice`), contain examples (`datasets`), or contain other frequently used functions. In many cases, you won't need to get any other packages.

Table 4-1. Packages included with R

| Package name | Loaded by default | Description   |
|--------------|-------------------|---|
| base         | ✓                 | Basic functions of the R language, including arithmetic, I/O, programming support   |
| boot         |                   | Bootstrap resampling  |
| class        |                   | Classification algorithms, including nearest neighbors, self-organizing maps, and learning vector quantization  |
| cluster      |                   | Clustering algorithms   |
| codetools    |                   | Tools for analyzing R code  |
| compiler     |                   | Byte code compiler for R  |
| datasets     | ✓                 | Some famous data sets   |
| foreign      |                   | Tools for reading data from other formats, including Stata, SAS, and SPSS files   |
| graphics     | ✓                 | Functions for base graphics   |
| grDevices    | ✓                 | Device support for base and grid graphics, including system-specific functions  |
| grid         |                   | Tools for building more sophisticated graphics than the base graphics   |
| KernSmooth   |                   | Functions for kernel smoothing  |
| lattice      |                   | An implementation of Trellis graphics for R: prettier graphics than the default graphics  |
| MASS         |                   | Functions and data used in the book <i>Modern Applied Statistics with S</i> by Venables and Ripley; contains a lot of useful statistics functions         |
| methods      | ✓                 | Implementation of formal methods and classes introduced in S version 4 (called S4 methods and classes)  |
| mgcv         |                   | Functions for generalized additive modeling and generalized additive mixed modeling   |
| nlme         |                   | Linear and nonlinear mixed-effects models   |
| nnet         |                   | Feed-forward neural networks and multinomial log linear models  |
| parallel     |                   | Support for parallel computation, including random-number generation.   |
| rpart        |                   | Tools for building recursive partitioning and regression tree models  |
| spatial      |                   | Functions for Kriging and point pattern analysis  |
| splines      |                   | Regression spline functions and classes   |
| stats        | ✓                 | Functions for statistics calculations and random number generation; includes many common statistical tests, probability distributions, and modeling tools |
| stats4       |                   | Statistics functions as S4 methods and classes  |

| Package name | Loaded by default | Description   |
|--------------|-------------------|---|
| survival     |                   | Survival analysis functions   |
| tcltk        |                   | Interface to Tk; used to create platform-independent UI tools   |
| tools        |                   | Tools for developing packages   |
| utils        | ✓                 | A variety of utility functions for R, including package management, file reading and writing, and editing |

## Loading Packages

By default, not all packages are loaded into R. If you try to use a function from a package that hasn't been loaded, you'll get an error:

```
> # try to use rpart before loading it
> fit <- rpart(Kyphosis ~ Age + Number + Start, data=kyphosis)
Error: could not find function "rpart"
```

To load a package in R, you can use the `library()` command. For example, to load the package `rpart` (which contains functions for building recursive partition trees), you would use the following command:

```
> library(rpart)
```

(There is a similar command, `require()`, that takes slightly different arguments. For more about `require`, see the R help files.)

If you're more comfortable using a GUI, you can browse for packages and load them using the GUI. If you choose to use this interface to find packages, make sure that you include the appropriate `library` command with your scripts to prevent errors later.

### Loading Packages on Windows and Linux

On Microsoft Windows, you can use the `library` function to load packages. Alternatively, you can select “Load package” from the Packages menu in the GUI. This will bring up a window showing a list of packages that you can choose to load.

### Loading Packages on Mac OS X

The Mac OS X R environment is a little fancier than the other versions. Like the other versions, you can use the `library()` function. Otherwise, you can select Package Manager from the “Packages & Data” menu. The Package Manager UI, as shown in [Figure 4-1](#), lets you see which packages are loaded, load packages, and even browse the help file for a package.

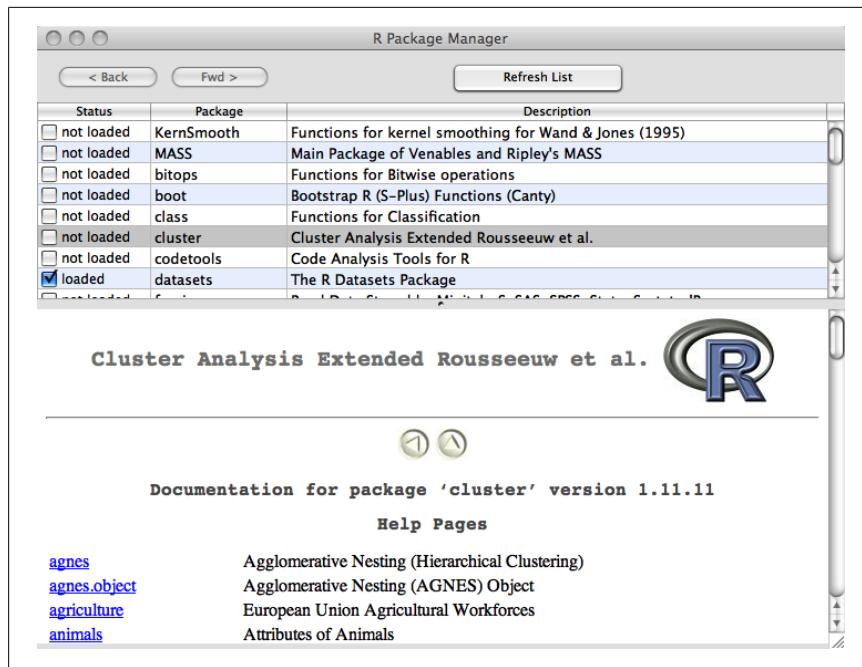


Figure 4-1. Mac OS X Package Manager

## Exploring Package Repositories

You can find thousands of R packages online. The two biggest sources of packages are CRAN (Comprehensive R Archive Network) and Bioconductor, but some packages are available elsewhere. (If you know Perl, you'll notice that CRAN is very similar to CPAN, the Comprehensive Perl Archive Network.) CRAN is hosted by the R Foundation (the same nonprofit organization that oversees R development). The archive contains a very large number of packages (there were 1,698 packages on February 24, 2009), covering a wide number of different applications. CRAN is hosted on a set of mirror sites around the world. Try to pick an archive site near you: you'll minimize download times *and* help reduce the server load on the R Foundation.

Bioconductor is an open-source project for building tools to analyze genomic data. Bioconductor tools are built using R and are distributed as R packages. The Bioconductor packages are distributed separately from R, and most are not available on CRAN. There are dozens of different packages available directly through the Bioconductor project.

R-Forge is another interesting place to look for packages. The R-Forge site contains projects that are in progress, and it provides tools for developers to collaborate. You may find some interesting packages on this site, but please be sure to read the disclaimers and documentation, because many of these packages are works in progress.

R includes the ability to download and install packages from other repositories. However, I don't know of other public repositories for R packages. Most R projects simply use CRAN to host their packages. (I've even seen some books that use CRAN to distribute sample code and sample data.)

## Exploring R Package Repositories on the Web

R provides good tools for installing packages within the GUI but doesn't provide a good way to find a specific package. Luckily, it's pretty easy to find a package on the Web.

You can browse through the set of available packages with your web browser. Here are some places to look for packages.

| Repository   | URL   |
|--------------|---|
| CRAN         | See <a href="http://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/">http://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/</a> for an authoritative list, but you should try to find your local mirror and use that site instead |
| Bioconductor | <a href="http://www.bioconductor.org/packages/release/Software.html">http://www.bioconductor.org/packages/release/Software.html</a>   |
| R-Forge      | <a href="http://r-forge.r-project.org/">http://r-forge.r-project.org/</a>   |

However, you can also try to find packages with a search engine. I've had good luck finding packages by using Google to search for "R package" plus the name of the application. For example, searching for "R package multivariate additive regression splines" can help you find the `mda` package, which contains the `mars` function. (Of course, I discovered later that the `earth` package is a better choice for this algorithm, but we'll get to that later.)

## Finding and Installing Packages Inside R

Once you figure out what package you want to install, the easiest way to do it is inside R.

### Windows and Linux GUIs

Installing packages through the Windows GUI is pretty straightforward.

1. (Optional) By default, R is set to fetch packages from the "CRAN" and "CRAN (extra)" categories. To pick additional sets of packages, choose "Select repositories" from the Packages menu. You can choose multiple repositories.
2. From the Packages menu, select "Install package(s)".

3. If this is the first time you are installing a package during this session, R will ask you to pick a mirror. (You'll probably want to pick a site that is geographically close, because it's likely to also be close on the Internet, and thus fast.)
4. Click the name of the package that you want to install and press OK.

R will download and install the packages that you have selected.

Note that you may run into issues installing packages, depending on the permissions assigned to your user account. If you are using Windows XP, and your account is a member of the Administrators group, you should have no problems. If you are using Windows Vista, and you installed R in your own directory, you should have no issues. Otherwise, you may need to run R as an Administrator in order to install supplementary packages.

### Mac OS X GUI

On Mac OS X, there is a slightly different user interface for package installation. It shows a little more information than the Windows version, but it's a little more confusing to use.

1. From the Package and Data menu, select Package Installer. (See [Figure 4-1](#) for a picture of the installer window.)
2. (Optional) In the top-left corner of the window is a menu that allows you to select the category of packages you would like to download. Initially, this is set to "CRAN (binaries)."
3. Click the Get List button to display the available set of packages.
4. You can use the search box to filter the list to show only packages that match the name you are looking for. (Note: you have to click the Get List button before the search will return results.)
5. Select the set of packages that you want to install and press the Install Selected button.

By default, R will install packages at the system level, making them available to all users. If you do not have the appropriate permissions to install packages globally, or if you would like to install them elsewhere, then select an alternative location. Additionally, R will not install the additional packages on which your packages depend. You will get an error if you try to load a package and have not installed other packages on which it is dependent.

### R console

You can also install R packages directly from the R console. [Table 4-2](#) shows the set of commands for installing packages from the console. As a simple example, suppose that you wanted to install the packages `tree` and `maptree`. You could accomplish this with the following command:

```
> install.packages(c("tree", "maptree"))
trying URL 'http://cran.cnr.Berkeley.edu/bin/macosx/universal/contrib/
2.9/tree_1.0-26.tgz'
Content type 'application/x-gzip' length 103712 bytes (101 Kb)
```

```

opened URL
=====
downloaded 101 Kb

trying URL 'http://cran.cnr.Berkeley.edu/bin/macosx/universal/contrib/
2.9/maptree_1.4-5.tgz'
Content type 'application/x-gzip' length 101577 bytes (99 Kb)
opened URL
=====
downloaded 99 Kb

The downloaded packages are in
  /var/folders/gj/gj60srEiEVq4hTWB51vMak+++TM/-Tmp-/RtmpIXUWDu/
downloaded_packages

```

This will install the packages to the default library specified by the variable `.Library`. If you'd like to remove these packages after you're done, you can use `remove.packages`. You need to specify the library where the packages were installed:

```
> remove.packages(c("tree", "maptree"), .Library)
```

*Table 4-2. Common package installation commands*

| Command                         | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>installed.packages</code> | Returns a matrix with information about all currently installed packages.                            |
| <code>available.packages</code> | Returns a matrix of all packages available on the repository.  |
| <code>old.packages</code>       | Returns a matrix of all currently installed packages for which newer versions are available.         |
| <code>new.packages</code>       | Returns a matrix showing all currently uninstalled packages available from the package repositories. |
| <code>download.packages</code>  | Downloads a set of packages to a local directory.  |
| <code>install.packages</code>   | Installs a set of packages from the repository.  |
| <code>remove.packages</code>    | Removes a set of installed packages.   |
| <code>update.packages</code>    | Updates installed packages to the latest versions.   |
| <code>setRepositories</code>    | Sets the current list of package repositories.   |

## Installing from the command line

You can also install downloaded packages from the command line. (There is actually a set of different commands that you can issue to R directly from the command line, without launching the full R shell.) To do this, you run R with the CMD INSTALL option. For example, suppose that you had downloaded the package `aplpack` (“Another Plotting PACKage”). For Mac OS X, the binary file is called `aplpack_1.1.1.tgz`. To install this package, change to the directory where the package is located and issue the following command:

```
$ R CMD INSTALL aplpack_1.1.1.tgz
```

If successful, you'll see a message like the following:

```
* Installing to library '/Library/Frameworks/R.framework/Resources/library'
* Installing *binary* package 'aplyr' ...
* DONE (aplyr)
```

## Installing Packages From Other Repositories

Not all packages are hosted on public R repositories. Luckily, you can get a package that makes it easy to install packages from other places. The `devtools` library includes tools for installing packages from popular git repositories and other URLs. (We'll use `devtools` later in the book to install R/Hadoop from GitHub.)

For example, Hadley Wickham uses GitHub to host the development version of `ggplot2`. To install the latest *development* version of `ggplot2`, you can use the following command:

```
> # if you haven't installed devtools, start with this command:
> install.packages("devtools")

> # otherwise just type this
> library(devtools)
> install_github("ggplot2")
```

For more information, see the help file for `devtools`.

## Custom Packages

Building your own packages is a good idea if you want to share code or data with other people, or if you just want to pack it up in a form that's easy to reuse. This section explains the easy way to create your own packages.

### Creating a Package Directory

To build a package, you need to place all the package files (code, data, documentation, etc.) inside a single directory. You can create an appropriate directory structure using the R function `package.skeleton`:

```
package.skeleton(name = "anRpackage", list,
                  environment = .GlobalEnv,
                  path = ".", force = FALSE, namespace = FALSE,
                  code_files = character())
```

This function can also copy a set of R objects into that directory. Here's a description of the arguments to `package.skeleton`.

| Argument          | Description  | Default  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| <code>name</code> | A character value specifying a name for the new package                | "anRpackage" (as a side note, this may be the least-useful default value for any R function) |
| <code>list</code> | A character vector containing names of R objects to add to the package |  |

| Argument    | Description   | Default                  |
|-------------|---|--------------------------|
| environment | The environment in which to evaluate <code>list</code>  | <code>.GlobalEnv</code>  |
| path        | A character vector specifying the path in the file system   | <code>"."</code>         |
| force       | A Boolean value specifying whether to overwrite files, if a directory name already exists at path | <code>FALSE</code>       |
| namespace   | A Boolean value specifying whether to add a namespace to the package                              | <code>FALSE</code>       |
| code_files  | A character vector specifying the paths of files containing R code                                | <code>character()</code> |

For this book, I created a package called `nutshell` containing most of the data sets used in this book:

```
> package.skeleton(name="nutshell", path="~/Documents/book/current/")
Creating directories ...
Creating DESCRIPTION ...
Creating Read-and-delete-me ...
Saving functions and data ...
Making help files ...
Done.
Further steps are described in
'~/Documents/book/current//nutshell/Read-and-delete-me'.
```

The `package.skeleton` function creates a number of files. There are directories named “man” (for help files), “R” (for R source files), and “data” (for data files). One of the most important is the `DESCRIPTION` file, at the root of the created directory. Here is the file that was generated by the `package.skeleton` function:

```
Package: nutshell
Type: Package
Title: What the package does (short line)
Version: 1.0
Date: 2012-03-13
Author: Who wrote it
Maintainer: Whom to complain to <yourfault@somewhere.net>
Description: More about what it does (maybe more than one line)
License: What license is it under?
```

Many of these items are self-explanatory, although a couple of items require more explanation. Additionally, there are a few useful optional items:

### `LazyLoad`

`LazyLoad` controls how objects (including data) are loaded into R. If you set `LazyLoad` to yes (the default), then data files in the packages are not loaded into memory. Instead, promise objects are loaded for each data package. You can still access the objects, but they take up (almost) no space.

### `LazyData`

`LazyData` works like `LazyLoad` but specifies what to do (specifically) with data files.

### Depends

If your package depends on other packages to be installed (or on certain versions of R), you can specify them with this line. For example, to specify that your package requires R 2.8 or later and the `nnet` package, you would add the line:

```
Depends: R(>= 2.8), nnet
```

R includes a set of functions that help automate the creation of help files for packages: `prompt` (for generic documentation), `promptData` (for documenting data files), `promptMethods` (for documenting methods of a generic function), and `promptClass` (for documenting a class). See the help files for these functions for additional information.

You can add data files to the data directory in several different forms: as R data files (created by the `save` function and named with either a `.rda` or a `.Rdata` suffix), as comma-separated value files (with a `.csv` suffix), or as an R source file containing R code (with a `.R` suffix).

## Building the Package

After you've added all the materials to the package, you can build it from the command line on your computer (not the R shell). To make sure that the package complies with CRAN rules and builds correctly, use the `check` command. For the previous example, we would use the following command:

```
$ R CMD check nutshell
```

You can get more information about the CMD check command by entering `R CMD CHECK --help` on the command line. To build the package, you would use the following command:

```
$ R CMD build nutshell
```

As above, help is available through the `--help` option. If you're really interested in how to build R packages, see the manual *Writing R Extensions*, available at <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-exts.pdf>.





---

## The R Language

This part gives an overview of the R programming language.

In keeping with the “Nutshell” theme, this isn’t an exhaustive explanation of the inner workings of R. It is a more organized and thorough overview of R than that given in the tutorial chapter with some useful reference tables.





# 5

---

## An Overview of the R Language

Learning a computer language is a lot like learning a spoken language (only much simpler). If you're just visiting a foreign country, you might learn enough phrases to get by without really understanding how the language is structured. Similarly, if you're just trying to do a couple of simple things with R (like drawing some charts), you can probably learn enough from examples to get by.

However, if you want to learn a new spoken language really well, you have to learn about syntax and grammar: verb conjugation, proper articles, sentence structure, and so on. The same is true with R: if you want to learn how to program effectively in R, you'll have to learn more about the syntax and grammar.

This chapter gives an overview of the R language, designed to help you understand R code and write your own. I'll assume that you've spent a little time looking at R syntax (maybe from reading [Chapter 3](#)). Here's a quick overview of how R works.

## Expressions

R code is composed of a series of *expressions*. Examples of expressions in R include assignment statements, conditional statements, and arithmetic expressions. Here are a few examples of expressions:

```
> x <- 1
> if (1 > 2) "yes" else "no"
[1] "no"
> 127 %% 10
[1] 7
```

Expressions are composed of objects and functions. You may separate expressions with new lines or with semicolons. For example, here is a series of expressions separated by semicolons:

```
> "this expression will be printed"; 7 + 13; exp(0+1i*pi)
[1] "this expression will be printed"
[1] 20
[1] -1+0i
```

# Objects

All R code manipulates *objects*. The simplest way to think about an object is as a “thing” that is represented by the computer. Examples of objects in R include numeric vectors, character vectors, lists, and functions. Here are some examples of objects:

```
> # a numerical vector (with five elements)
> c(1,2,3,4,5)
[1] 1 2 3 4 5

> # a character vector (with one element)
> "This is an object too"
[1] "This is an object too"

> # a list
> list(c(1,2,3,4,5), "This is an object too", " this whole thing is a list")
[[1]]
[1] 1 2 3 4 5

[[2]]
[1] "This is an object too"

[[3]]
[1] " this whole thing is a list"

> # a function
> function(x,y) {x + y}
function(x,y) {x + y}
```

# Symbols

Formally, variable names in R are called *symbols*. When you assign an object to a variable name, you are actually assigning the object to a symbol in the current environment. (Somewhat tautologically, an *environment* is defined as the set of symbols that are defined in a certain context.) For example, the statement:

```
> x <- 1
```

assigns the symbol “*x*” to the object “1” in the current environment. For a more complete discussion of symbols and environments, see [Chapter 8](#).

# Functions

A *function* is an object in R that takes some input objects (called the *arguments* of the function) and returns an output object. All work in R is done by functions. Every statement in R—setting variables, doing arithmetic, repeating code in a loop—can be written as a function. For example, suppose that you had defined a variable *animals* pointing to a character vector with four elements: “cow,” “chicken,” “pig,” and “tuba.” Here is a statement that assigns this variable:

```
> animals <- c("cow", "chicken", "pig", "tuba")
```

Suppose that you wanted to change the fourth element to the word “duck.” Normally, you would use a statement like this:

```
> animals[4] <- "duck"
```

This statement is parsed into a call to the [ $\leftarrow$ ] function. So you could actually use this equivalent expression:<sup>1</sup>

```
> `[<-`(animals,4,"duck")
```

In practice, you would probably never write this statement as a function call; the bracket notation is much more intuitive and much easier to read. However, it is helpful to know that every operation in R is a function. Because you know that this assignment is really a function call, it means that you can inspect the code of the underlying function, search for help on this function, or create methods with the same name for your own object classes.<sup>2</sup>

Here are a few more examples of R syntax and the corresponding function calls:

```
> # pretty assignment
> apples <- 3
> # functional form of assignment
> `<-`(apples,3)
> apples
[1] 3

> # another assignment statement, so that we can compare apples and oranges
> `<-`(oranges,4)
> oranges
[1] 4

> # pretty arithmetic expression
> apples + oranges
[1] 7
> # functional form of arithmetic expression
> `+`(apples,oranges)
[1] 7

> # pretty form of if-then statement
> if (apples > oranges) "apples are better" else "oranges are better"
[1] "oranges are better"
> # functional form of if-then statement
> `if`(apples > oranges, "apples are better", "oranges are better")
[1] "oranges are better"
> x <- c("apple", "orange", "banana", "pear")

> # pretty form of vector reference
> x[2]
[1] "orange"
```

1. This expression acts slightly differently, because the result is not printed on the R console. However, the result is the same:

```
> animals
[1] "cow"      "chicken"   "pig"       "duck"
```

2. See [Chapter 10](#) for more information on object-oriented programming using R.

```
> # functional form or vector reference  
> `[(x,2)  
[1] "orange"
```

## Objects Are Copied in Assignment Statements

In assignment statements, most objects are immutable. Immutable objects are a good thing: for multithreaded programs, immutable objects help prevent errors. R will copy the object, not just the reference to the object. For example:

```
> u <- list(1)  
> v <- u  
> u[[1]] <- "hat"  
> u  
[[1]]  
[1] "hat"  
  
> v  
[[1]]  
[1] 1
```

This applies to vectors, lists, and most other primitive objects in R.

This is also true in function calls. Consider the following function, which takes two arguments: a vector  $x$  and an index  $i$ . The function sets the  $i$ th element of  $x$  to 4 and does nothing else:

```
> f <- function(x,i) {x[i] = 4}
```

Suppose that we define a vector  $w$  and call  $f$  with  $x = w$  and  $i = 1$ :

```
> w <- c(10, 11, 12, 13)  
> f(w,1)
```

The vector  $w$  is copied when it is passed to the function, so it is not modified by the function:

```
> w  
[1] 10 11 12 13
```

The value  $x$  is modified inside the context of the function. Technically, the R interpreter copies the object assigned to  $w$  and then assigns the symbol  $x$  to point at the copy. We will talk about how you can actually create mutable objects, or pass references to objects, when we talk about environments.



Although R will behave as if every assignment makes a new copy of an object, in many cases R will actually modify the object in place. For example, consider the following code fragment:

```
> v <- 1:100
> v[50] <- 27
```

R does not actually copy the vector when the 50th element is altered; instead, R modifies the vector in place. Semantically, this is identical, but the performance is much better. See the [R Internals Guide](#) for more information about how this works.

## Everything in R Is an Object

In the last few sections, most examples of objects were objects that stored data: vectors, lists, and other data structures. However, everything in R is an object: functions, symbols, and even R expressions.

For example, function names in R are really symbol objects that point to function objects. (That relationship is, in turn, stored in an environment object.) You can assign a symbol to refer to a numeric object and then change the symbol to refer to a function:

```
> x <- 1
> x
[1] 1
> x(2)
Error: could not find function "x"
> x <- function(i) i^2
> x
function(i) i^2
> x(2)
[1] 4
```

You can even use R code to construct new functions. If you really wanted to, you could write a function that modifies its own definition.

## Special Values

There are a few special values that are used in R.

### NA

In R, the `NA` values are used to represent missing values. (`NA` stands for “not available.”) You may encounter `NA` values in text loaded into R (to represent missing values) or in data loaded from databases (to replace `NULL` values).

If you expand the size of a vector (or matrix or array) beyond the size where values were defined, the new spaces will have the value `NA`:

```
> v <- c(1,2,3)
> v
```

```
[1] 1 2 3  
> length(v) <- 4  
> v  
[1] 1 2 3 NA
```

## Inf and -Inf

If a computation results in a number that is too big, R will return `Inf` for a positive number and `-Inf` for a negative number (meaning positive and negative infinity, respectively):

```
> 2 ^ 1024  
[1] Inf  
> -2 ^ 1024  
[1] -Inf
```

This is also the value returned when you divide by 0:

```
> 1 / 0  
[1] Inf
```

## NaN

Sometimes, a computation will produce a result that makes little sense. In these cases, R will often return `NaN` (meaning “not a number”):

```
> Inf - Inf  
[1] NaN  
> 0 / 0  
[1] NaN
```

## NULL

Additionally, there is a null object in R, represented by the symbol `NULL`. (The symbol `NULL` always points to the same object.) `NULL` is often used as an argument in functions to mean that no value was assigned to the argument. Additionally, some functions may return `NULL`. Note that `NULL` is not the same as `NA`, `Inf`, `-Inf`, or `NaN`.

## Coercion

When you call a function with an argument of the wrong type, R will try to coerce values to a different type so that the function will work. There are two types of coercion that occur automatically in R: coercion with formal objects and coercion with built-in types.

With generic functions, R will look for a suitable method. If no exact match exists, then R will search for a coercion method that converts the object to a type for which a suitable method does exist. (The method for creating coercion functions is described in “[Creating Coercion Methods](#)” on page 131.)

Additionally, R will automatically convert between built-in object types when appropriate. R will convert from more specific types to more general types. For example, suppose that you define a vector `x` as follows:

```
> x <- c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
> x
[1] 1 2 3 4 5
> typeof(x)
[1] "double"
> class(x)
[1] "numeric"
```

Let's change the second element of the vector to the word "hat." R will change the object class to `character` and change all the elements in the vector to `char`:

```
> x[2] <- "hat"
> x
[1] "1"   "hat" "3"   "4"   "5"
> typeof(x)
[1] "character"
> class(x)
[1] "character"
```

Here is an overview of the coercion rules:

- Logical values are converted to numbers: `TRUE` is converted to `1` and `FALSE` to `0`.
- Values are converted to the simplest type required to represent all information.
- The ordering is roughly logical < integer < numeric < complex < character < list.
- Objects of type `raw` are not converted to other types.
- Object attributes are dropped when an object is coerced from one type to another.

You can inhibit coercion when passing arguments to functions by using the `AsIs` function (or, equivalently, the `I` function). For more information, see the help file for `AsIs`.

Many newcomers to R find coercion nonintuitive. Strongly typed languages (like Java) will raise exceptions when the object passed to a function is the wrong type but will not try to convert the object to a compatible type. As John Chambers (who developed the S language) describes:

In the early coding, there was a tendency to make as many cases “work” as possible. In the later, more formal, stages the conclusion was that converting richer types to simpler automatically in all situations would lead to confusing, and therefore untrustworthy, results.<sup>3</sup>

In practice, I rarely encounter situations where values are coerced in undesirable ways. Usually, I use R with numeric vectors that are all the same type, so coercion simply doesn't apply.

## The R Interpreter

R is an interpreted language. When you enter expressions into the R console (or run an R script in batch mode), a program within the R system, called the *interpreter*,

3. From [[Chambers2008](#)], p. 154.

executes the actual code that you wrote. Unlike C, C++, and Java, there is no need to compile your programs into an object language. Other examples of interpreted languages are Common Lisp, Perl, and JavaScript.

All R programs are composed of a series of expressions. These expressions often take the form of function calls. The R interpreter begins by parsing each expression, translating syntactic sugar into functional form. Next, R substitutes objects for symbols (where appropriate). Finally, R evaluates each expression, returning an *object*. For complex expressions, this process may be recursive. In some special cases (such as conditional statements), R does not evaluate all arguments to a function. As an example, let's consider the following R expression:

```
> x <- 1
```

On an R console, you would typically type `x <- 1` and then press the Enter key. The R interpreter will first translate this expression into the following function call:

```
`<-`(x, 1)
```

Next, the interpreter evaluates this function. It assigns the constant value `1` to the symbol `x` in the current environment and then returns the value `1`.

Let's consider another example. (We'll assume it's from the same session, so that the symbol `x` is mapped to the value `1`.)

```
> if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"
[1] "apple"
```

Here is how the R interpreter would evaluate this expression. I typed `if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"` into the R console and pressed the Enter key. The entire line is the expression that was evaluated by the R interpreter. The R interpreter parsed this expression and identified it as a set of R expressions in an if-then-else control structure. To evaluate that expression, the R interpreter begins by evaluating the *condition* (`x > 1`). If the condition is true, then R would evaluate the next statement (in this example, `"orange"`). Otherwise, R would evaluate the statement after the `else` keyword (in this example, `"apple"`). We know that `x` is equal to 1. When R evaluates the condition statement, the result is false. So R does not evaluate the statement after the condition. Instead, R will evaluate the expression after the `else` keyword. The result of this expression is the character vector `"apple"`. As you can see, this is the value that is returned on the R console.

If you are entering R expressions into the R console, then the interpreter will pass objects returned to the console to the `print` function.

Some functionality is implemented internally within the R system. These calls are made using the `.Internal` function. Many functions use `.Internal` to call internal R system code. For example, the graphics function `plot.xy` is implemented using `.Internal`:

```
> plot.xy
function (xy, type, pch = par("pch"), lty = par("lty"), col = par("col"),
           bg = NA, cex = 1, lwd = par("lwd"), ...)
.Internal(plot.xy(xy, type, pch, lty, col, bg, cex, lwd, ...))
```

```
<bytecode: 0x11949f828>
<environment: namespace:graphics>
```

In a few cases, the overhead for calling `.Internal` within an R function is too high. R includes a mechanism to define functions that are implemented completely internally.

You can identify these functions because the body of the function contains a call to the function `.Primitive`. For example, the assignment operator is implemented through a primitive function:

```
> `<-`
.Primitive("<-")
```

This mechanism is used for only a few basic functions where performance is critical. You can find a current list of these functions in [\[RInternals2009\]](#).

## Seeing How R Works

To end this overview of the R language, I wanted to share a few functions that are convenient for seeing how R works. As you may recall, R expressions are R objects. This means that it is possible to parse expressions in R, or partially evaluate expressions in R, and see how R interprets them. This can be very useful for learning how R works or for debugging R code.

As noted above, the R interpreter goes through several steps when evaluating statements. The first step is to parse a statement, changing it into proper functional form. It is possible to view the R interpreter to see how a given expression is evaluated. As an example, let's use the same R code fragment that we used in [“The R Interpreter” on page 57](#):

```
> if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"
[1] "apple"
```

To show how this expression is parsed, we can use the `quote()` function. This function will parse its argument but not evaluate it. By calling `quote`, an R expression returns a “language” object:

```
> typeof(quote(if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"))
[1] "language"
```

Unfortunately, the `print` function for language objects is not very informative:

```
> quote(if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple")
if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"
```

However, it is possible to convert a language object into a list. By displaying the language object as a list, it is possible to see how R evaluates an expression. This is the *parse tree* for the expression:

```
> as(quote(if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"), "list")
[[1]]
`if'
[[2]]
x > 1
```

```
[[3]]  
[1] "orange"
```

```
[[4]]  
[1] "apple"
```

We can also apply the `typeof` function to every element in the list to see the type of each object in the parse tree:<sup>4</sup>

```
> lapply(as(quote(if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"), "list"),typeof)  
[[1]]  
[1] "symbol"  
  
[[2]]  
[1] "language"  
  
[[3]]  
[1] "character"  
  
[[4]]  
[1] "character"
```

In this case, we can see how this expression is interpreted. Notice that some parts of the if-then statement are not included in the parsed expression (in particular, the `else` keyword). Also, notice that the first item in the list is a *symbol*. In this case, the symbol refers to the `if` function. So, although the syntax for the if-then statement is different from a function call, the R parser translates the expression into a function call before evaluating the expression. The function name is the first item, and the arguments are the remaining items in the list.

For constants, there is only one item in the returned list:

```
> as.list(quote(1))  
[[1]]  
[1] 1
```

By using the `quote` function, you can see that many constructions in the R language are just *syntactic sugar* for function calls. For example, let's consider looking up the second item in a vector `x`. The standard way to do this is through R's bracket notation, so the expression would be `x[2]`. An alternative way to represent this expression is as a function: ``[`(x,2)`. (Function names that contain special characters need to be encapsulated in backquotes.) Both of these expressions are interpreted the same way by R:

```
> as.list(quote(x[2]))  
[[1]]  
`[`
```

4. As a convenient shorthand, you can omit the `as` function because R will automatically coerce the language object to a list. This means you can just use a command like:

```
> lapply(quote(if (x > 1) "orange" else "apple"),typeof)
```

Coercion is explained in “[Coercion](#) on page 56.

```
[[2]]  
x  
  
[[3]]  
[1] 2  
  
> as.list(quote(`[`(x,2)))  
[[1]]  
'['  
  
[[2]]  
x  
  
[[3]]  
[1] 2
```

As you can see, R interprets both of these expressions identically. Clearly, the operation is not reversible (because both expressions are translated into the same parse tree). The `deparse` function can take the parse tree and turn it back into properly formatted R code. (The `deparse` function will use proper R syntax when translating a language object back into the original code.) Here's how it acts on these two bits of code:

```
> deparse(quote(x[2]))  
[1] "x[2]"  
> deparse(quote(`[`(x,2)))  
[1] "x[2]"
```

As you read through this book, you might want to try using `quote`, `substitute`, `typeof`, `class`, and `methods` to see how the R interpreter parses expressions.





# 6

## R Syntax

Every expression in R can be rewritten as a function call. However, R has some special syntax to write common operations like assignments, lookups, and numerical expressions more naturally. This chapter gives an overview of how to write valid R expressions. It's not intended to be a formal or complete description of all valid syntax in R, but just a readable description of how to write valid R expressions.<sup>1</sup>

## Constants

Let's start by looking at constants. Constants are the basic building blocks for data objects in R: numbers, character values, and symbols.

### Numeric Vectors

Numbers are interpreted literally in R:

```
> 1.1  
[1] 1.1  
> 2  
[1] 2  
> 2^1023  
[1] 8.988466e+307
```

You may specify values in hexadecimal notation by prefixing them with `0x`:

```
> 0x1  
[1] 1  
> 0xFFFF  
[1] 65535
```

1. You could write R code as a series of function calls with lots of function calls. This would look a lot like LISP code, with all the parentheses. Incidentally, the S language was inspired by LISP and uses many of the same data structures and evaluation techniques that are used by LISP interpreters.

By default, numbers in R expressions are interpreted as double-precision floating-point numbers, even when you enter simple integers:

```
> typeof(1)
[1] "double"
```

If you want an integer, you can use the sequence notation or the `as` function to obtain an integer:

```
> typeof(1:1)
[1] "integer"
> typeof(as(1, "integer"))
[1] "integer"
```

The sequence operator  $a:b$  will return a vector of integers between  $a$  and  $b$ . To combine an arbitrary set of numbers into a vector, use the `c` function:

```
> v <- c(173, 12, 1.12312, -93)
```

R allows a lot of flexibility when entering numbers. However, there is a limit to the size and precision of numbers that R can represent:

```
> # limits of precision
> (2^1023 + 1) == 2^1023
[1] TRUE
> # limits of size
> 2^1024
[1] Inf
```

In practice, this is rarely a problem. Most R users will load data from other sources on a computer (like a database) that also can't represent very large numbers.

R also supports complex numbers. Complex values are written as `real_part +imaginary_parti`. For example:

```
> 0+1i ^ 2
[1] -1+0i
> sqrt(-1+0i)
[1] 0+1i
> exp(0+1i * pi)
[1] -1+0i
```

Note that the `sqrt` function returns a value of the same type as its input; it will return the value `0+1i` when passed `-1+0i` but will return an `NaN` value when just passed the numeric value `-1`:

```
> sqrt(-1)
[1] NaN
Warning message:
In sqrt(-1) : NaNs produced
```

## Character Vectors

A character object contains all the text between a pair of quotes. Most commonly, character objects are denoted by double quotes:

```
> "hello"
[1] "hello"
```

A character string may also be enclosed by single quotes:

```
> 'hello'
[1] "hello"
```

This can be convenient if the enclosed text contains double quotes (or vice versa). Equivalently, you may also escape the quotes by placing a backslash in front of each quote:

```
> identical("\\"hello\\\"", "'hello'")
[1] TRUE

> identical('\\\'hello\\\'', "'hello'")
[1] TRUE
```

These examples are all vectors with only one element. To stitch together longer vectors, use the `c` function:

```
> numbers <- c("one", "two", "three", "four", "five")
> numbers
[1] "one"    "two"    "three"  "four"   "five"
```

## Symbols

An important class of constants is symbols. A symbol is an object in R that refers to another object; a symbol is the name of a variable in R. For example, let's assign the numeric value `1` to the symbol `x`:

```
> x <- 1
```

In this expression, `x` is a symbol. The statement `x <- 1` means “map the symbol `x` to the numeric value `1` in the current environment.” (We'll discuss environments in [Chapter 8](#).)

A symbol that begins with a character and contains other characters, numbers, periods, and underscores may be used directly in R statements. Here are a few examples of symbol names that can be typed without escape characters:

```
> x <- 1
> # case matters
> x1 <- 1
> X1 <- 2
> x1
[1] 1
> X1
[1] 2
> x1.1 <- 1
> x1.1_1 <- 1
```

Some symbols contain special syntax. In order to refer to these objects, you enclose them in backquotes. For example, to get help on the assignment operator (`<-`), you would use a command like this:

```
?`<-`
```

If you really wanted to, you could use backquotes to define a symbol that contains special characters or starts with a number:

```
> `1+2=3` <- "hello"
> `1+2=3`
[1] "hello"
```

Not all words are valid as symbols; some words are reserved in R. Specifically, you can't use `if`, `else`, `repeat`, `while`, `function`, `for`, `in`, `next`, `break`, `TRUE`, `FALSE`, `NULL`, `Inf`, `NaN`, `NA`, `NA_integer_`, `NA_real_`, `NA_complex_`, `NA_character_`, ..., `..1`, `..2`, ..`3`, ..`4`, ..`5`, ..`6`, ..`7`, ..`8`, or ..`9`.

You can redefine primitive functions that are not on this list. For example, when you start R, the symbol `c` normally refers to the primitive function `c`, which combines elements into vectors:

```
> c
function (... , recursive = FALSE) .Primitive("c")
```

However, you can redefine the symbol `c` to point to something else:

```
> c <- 1
> c
[1] 1
```

Even after you redefine the symbol `c`, you can continue to use the “combine” function as before:

```
> v <- c(1, 2, 3)
> v
[1] 1 2 3
```

See [Chapter 2](#) for more information on the `combine` function.

## Operators

Many functions in R can be written as operators. An *operator* is a function that takes one or two arguments and can be written without parentheses.

One familiar set of operators is binary operators for arithmetic. R supports arithmetic operations:

```
> # addition
> 1 + 19
[1] 20

> # multiplication
> 5 * 4
[1] 20
```

R also includes notation for other mathematical operations, including moduli, exponents, and integer division:

```
> # modulus
> 41 %> 21
[1] 20?

> # exponents
> 20 ^ 1
[1] 20
```

```
> # integer division  
> 21 %/% 2  
[1] 10
```

You can define your own binary operators. User-defined binary operators consist of a string of characters between two `%` characters. To do this, create a function of two variables and assign it to an appropriate symbol. For example, let's define an operator `%myop%` that doubles each operand and then adds them together:

```
> `%myop%` <- function(a, b) {2*a + 2*b}  
> 1 %myop% 1  
[1] 4  
> 1 %myop% 2  
[1] 6
```

Some language constructs are also binary operators. For example, assignment, indexing, and function calls are binary operators:<sup>2</sup>

```
> # assignment is a binary operator  
> # the left side is a symbol, the right is a value  
> x <- c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)  
  
> # indexing is a binary operator too  
> # the left side is a symbol, the right is an index  
> x[3]  
[1] 3  
  
> # a function call is also a binary operator  
> # the left side is a symbol pointing to the function argument  
> # the right side are the arguments  
> max(1, 2)  
[1] 2
```

There are also unary operators that take only one variable. Here are two familiar examples:

```
> # negation is a unary operator  
> -7  
[1] -7  
  
> # ? (for help) is also a unary operator  
> ?`?`
```

## Order of Operations

You may remember from high school math that you always evaluate mathematical expressions in a certain order. For example, when you evaluate the expression  $1 + 2 \cdot 5$ , you first multiply 2 and 5 and then add 1. The same thing is true in computer

2. Don't be confused by the closing bracket in an indexing operation or the closing parenthesis in a function call; although this syntax uses two symbols, both operations are still technically binary operators. For example, a function call has the form  $f(arguments)$ , where  $f$  is a function and  $arguments$  are the arguments for the function.

languages like R. When you enter an expression in R, the R interpreter will always evaluate some expressions first.

In order to resolve ambiguity, operators in R are always interpreted in the same order. Here is a summary of the precedence rules:

- Function calls and grouping expressions
- Index and lookup operators
- Arithmetic
- Comparison
- Formulas
- Assignment
- Help

[Table 6-1](#) shows a complete list of operators in R and their precedence.

*Table 6-1. Operator precedence, from the help(syntax) file*

| Operators (in order of priority) | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| ( {                              | Function calls and grouping expressions (respectively) |
| [ [                              | Indexing   |
| :: :::                           | Access variables in a namespace                        |
| \$ @                             | Component / slot extraction                            |
| ^                                | Exponentiation (right to left)                         |
| - +                              | <i>Unary</i> operators for minus and plus              |
| :                                | Sequence operator                                      |
| %any%                            | Special operators                                      |
| * /                              | Multiply, divide                                       |
| + -                              | <i>Binary</i> operators for add, subtract              |
| < > <= >= == !=                  | Ordering and comparison                                |
| !                                | Negation   |
| & &&                             | And  |
|                                  | Or   |
| ~                                | As in formulas   |
| -> ->>                           | Rightward assignment                                   |
| =                                | Assignment (right to left)                             |
| <- <<-                           | Assignment (right to left)                             |
| ?                                | Help (unary and binary)                                |

For a current list of built-in operators and their precedence, see the help file for `syntax`.

## Assignments

Most assignments that we've seen so far simply assign an object to a symbol. For example:

```
> x <- 1  
> y <- list(shoes="loafers", hat="Yankees cap", shirt="white")  
> z <- function(a, b, c) {a ^ b / c}  
> v <- c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8)
```

There is an alternative type of assignment statement in R that acts differently: assignments with a function on the left-hand side of the assignment operator. These statements replace an object with a new object that has slightly different properties. Here are a few examples:

```
> dim(v) <- c(2, 4)  
  
> v[2, 2] <- 10  
  
> formals(z) <- alist(a=1, b=2, c=3)
```

There is a little bit of magic going on behind the scenes. An assignment statement of the form:

*fun(sym) <- val*

is really syntactic sugar for a function of the form:

*`fun<-`(sym, val)*

Each of these functions replaces the object associated with *sym* in the current environment. By convention, *fun* refers to a property of the object represented by *sym*. If you write a method with the name *method\_name<-*, then R will allow you to place *method\_name* on the left-hand side of an assignment statement.

## Expressions

R provides different constructs for grouping together expressions: semicolons, parentheses, and curly braces.

### Separating Expressions

You can write a series of expressions on separate lines:

```
> x <- 1  
> y <- 2  
> z <- 3
```

Alternatively, you can place them on the same line, separated by semicolons:

```
> x <- 1; y <- 2; z <- 3
```

## Parentheses

The parentheses notation returns the result of evaluating the expression inside the parentheses:

```
(expression)
```

The operator has the same precedence as a function call. In fact, grouping a set of expressions inside parentheses is equivalent to evaluating a function of one argument that just returns its argument:

```
> 2 * (5 + 1)
[1] 12
> # equivalent expression
> f <- function (x) x
> 2 * f(5 + 1)
[1] 12
```

Grouping expressions with parentheses can be used to override the default order of operations. For example:

```
> 2 * 5 + 1
[1] 11
> 2 * (5 + 1)
[1] 12
```

## Curly Braces

Curly braces are used to evaluate a series of expressions (separated by new lines or semicolons) and return only the last expression:

```
{expression_1; expression_2; ... expression_n}
```

Often, curly braces are used to group a set of operations in the body of a function:

```
> f <- function() {x <- 1; y <- 2; x + y}
> f()
[1] 3
```

However, curly braces can also be used as expressions in other contexts:

```
> {x <- 1; y <- 2; x + y}
[1] 3
```

The contents of the curly braces are evaluated inside the current environment; a new environment is created by a function call but *not* by the use of curly braces:

```
> # when evaluated in a function, u and v are assigned
> # only inside the function environment
> f <- function() {u <- 1; v <- 2; u + v}
> u
Error: object "u" not found
> v
Error: object "v" not found
> # when evaluated outside the function, u and v are
> # assigned in the current environment
> {u <- 1; v <- 2; u + v}
[1] 3
```

```
> u  
[1] 1  
> v  
[1] 2
```

For more information about variable scope and environments, see [Chapter 8](#).

The curly brace notation is translated internally as a call to the `f` function. (Note, however, that the arguments are not evaluated the same way as in a standard function.)

## Control Structures

Nearly every operation in R can be written as a function, but it isn't always convenient to do so. Therefore, R provides special syntax that you can use in common program structures. We've already described two important sets of constructions: operators and grouping brackets. This section describes a few other key language structures and explains what they do.

### Conditional Statements

Conditional statements take the form:

```
if (condition) true_expression else false_expression
```

or, alternatively:

```
if (condition) expression
```

Because the expressions *expression*, *true\_expression*, and *false\_expression* are not always evaluated, the function `if` has the type `special`:

```
> typeof('if')  
[1] "special"
```

Here are a few examples of conditional statements:

```
> if (FALSE) "this will not be printed"  
> if (FALSE) "this will not be printed" else "this will be printed"  
[1] "this will be printed"  
> if (is(x, "numeric")) x/2 else print("x is not numeric")  
[1] 5
```

In R, conditional statements are not vector operations. If the *condition* statement is a vector of more than one logical value, then only the first item will be used. For example:

```
> x <- 10  
> y <- c(8, 10, 12, 3, 17)  
> if (x < y) x else y  
[1] 8 10 12 3 17  
Warning message:  
In if (x < y) x else y :  
  the condition has length > 1 and only the first element will be used
```

If you would like a vector operation, use the `ifelse` function instead:

```
> a <- c("a", "a", "a", "a", "a")
> b <- c("b", "b", "b", "b", "b")
> ifelse(c(TRUE, FALSE, TRUE, FALSE, TRUE), a, b)
[1] "a" "b" "a" "b" "a"
```

Often, it's convenient to return different values (or call different functions) depending on a single input value. You can code these as

```
> switcheroo.if.then <- function(x) {
+   if (x == "a")
+     "camel"
+   else if (x == "b")
+     "bear"
+   else if (x == "c")
+     "camel"
+   else
+     "moose"
+ }
```

but that is verbose. A better alternative is to use the `switch` function:

```
> switcheroo.switch <- function(x) {
+   switch(x,
+     a="alligator",
+     b="bear",
+     c="camel",
+     "moose")
+ }
```

The first argument is a character value to switch on, the named arguments specify what to do for each value of the argument, and an unnamed argument specifies the default value. As you can see, these two expressions are equivalent:

```
> switcheroo.if.then("a")
[1] "camel"
> switcheroo.if.then("f")
[1] "moose"
> switcheroo.switch("a")
[1] "camel"
> switcheroo.switch("f")
[1] "moose"
```

## Loops

There are three different looping constructs in R. Simplest is `repeat`, which just repeats the same expression:

```
repeat expression
```

To stop repeating the expression, you can use the keyword `break`. To skip to the next iteration in a loop, you can use the command `next`.

As an example, the following R code prints out multiples of 5 up to 25:

```
> i <- 5
> repeat {if (i > 25) break else {print(i); i <- i + 5;}}
```

```
[1] 5  
[1] 10  
[1] 15  
[1] 20  
[1] 25
```

If you do not include a `break` command, the R code will be an infinite loop. (This can be useful for creating an interactive application.)

Another useful construction is `while` loops, which repeat an expression while a condition is true:

```
while (condition) expression
```

As a simple example, let's rewrite the example above using a `while` loop:

```
> i <- 5  
> while (i <= 25) {print(i); i <- i + 5}  
[1] 5  
[1] 10  
[1] 15  
[1] 20  
[1] 25
```

You can also use `break` and `next` inside `while` loops. The `break` statement is used to stop iterating through a loop. The `next` statement skips to the next loop iteration without evaluating the remaining expressions in the loop body.

Finally, R provides `for` loops, which iterate through each item in a vector (or a list):

```
for (var in list) expression
```

Let's use the same example for a `for` loop:

```
> for (i in seq(from=5, to=25, by=5)) print(i)  
[1] 5  
[1] 10  
[1] 15  
[1] 20  
[1] 25
```

You can also use `break` and `next` inside `for` loops.

There are two important properties of looping statements to remember. First, results are not printed inside a loop unless you explicitly call the `print` function. For example:

```
> for (i in seq(from=5, to=25, by=5)) i
```

Second, the variable `var` that is set in a `for` loop is changed in the calling environment:

```
> i <- 1  
> for (i in seq(from=5, to=25, by=5)) i  
> i  
[1] 25
```

Like conditional statements, the looping functions `repeat`, `while`, and `for` have type `special`, because `expression` is not necessarily evaluated.

## Looping Extensions

If you've used modern programming languages like Java, you might be disappointed that R doesn't provide **iterators** or **foreach** loops. Luckily, these mechanisms are available through add-on packages. (These packages were written by Revolution Computing and are available through CRAN.)

Iterators are abstract objects that return elements from another object. Using iterators can help make code easier to understand. Additionally, iterators can make code easier to parallelize. To use iterators, you'll need to install the  **iterators** package. Iterators can return elements of a vector, array, data frame, or other object. You can even use an iterator to return values returned by a function (such as a function that returns random values). To create an iterator in R, you would use the  **iter** function:

```
iter(obj, checkFunc=function(...) TRUE, recycle=FALSE,...)
```

The argument  **obj** specifies the object,  **recycle** specifies whether the iterator should reset when it runs out of elements, and  **checkFunc** specifies a function that filters values returned by the iterator.

You fetch the next item with the function  **nextElem**. This function will implicitly call  **checkFunc**. If the next value matches  **checkFunc**, it will be returned. If it doesn't match, then the function will try another value.  **nextElem** will continue checking values until it finds one that matches  **checkFunc**, or it runs out of values. When there are no elements left, the iterator calls  **stop** with the message "StopIteration."

For example, let's create an iterator that returns values between 1 and 5:

```
> library(iterators)
> onetofive <- iter(1:5)
> nextElem(onetofive)
[1] 1
> nextElem(onetofive)
[1] 2
> nextElem(onetofive)
[1] 3
> nextElem(onetofive)
[1] 4
> nextElem(onetofive)
[1] 5
> nextElem(onetofive)
Error: StopIteration
```

A second extension is the  **foreach** loop, available through the  **foreach** package.  **Foreach** provides an elegant way to loop through multiple elements of another object (such as a vector, matrix, data frame, or iterator), evaluate an expression for each element, and return the results. Within the  **foreach** function, you assign elements to a temporary value, just like in a  **for** loop.

Here is the prototype for the  **foreach** function:

```
foreach(..., .combine, .init, .final=NULL, .inorder=TRUE,
       .multicombine=FALSE,
       .maxcombine=if (.multicombine) 100 else 2,
       .errorhandling=c('stop', 'remove', 'pass'),
```

```
.packages=NULL, .export=NULL, .noexport=NULL,  
.verbose=FALSE)
```

Technically, the `foreach` function returns a `foreach` object. To actually evaluate the loop, you need to apply the `foreach` loop to an R expression using the `%do%` or `%dopar%` operators. That sounds weird, but it's actually pretty easy to use in practice. For example, you can use a `foreach` loop to calculate the square roots of numbers between 1 and 5:

```
> sqrts.1to5 <- foreach(i=1:5) %do% sqrt(i)  
> sqrts.1to5  
[[1]]  
[1] 1  
  
[[2]]  
[1] 1.414214  
  
[[3]]  
[1] 1.732051  
  
[[4]]  
[1] 2  
  
[[5]]  
[1] 2.236068
```

The `%do%` operator evaluates the expression in serial, while the `%dopar%` can be used to evaluate expressions in parallel. For more about parallel computing with R, see [Chapter 26](#).

## Accessing Data Structures

R has some specialized syntax for accessing data structures. You can fetch a single item from a structure, or multiple items (possibly as a multidimensional array) using R's index notation. You can fetch items by location within a data structure or by name.

### Data Structure Operators

[Table 6-2](#) shows the operators in R used for accessing objects in a data structure.

*Table 6-2. Data structure access notation*

| Syntax              | Objects        | Description  |
|---------------------|----------------|--|
| <code>x[i]</code>   | Vectors, lists | Returns objects from object <code>x</code> , described by <code>i</code> . <code>i</code> may be an integer vector, character vector (of object names), or logical vector. Does not allow partial matches. When used with lists, returns a list. When used with vectors, returns a vector. |
| <code>x[[i]]</code> | Vectors, lists | Returns a single element of <code>x</code> , matching <code>i</code> . <code>i</code> may be an integer or character vector of length 1. Allows partial matches (with <code>exact=FALSE</code> option).  |
| <code>x\$n</code>   | Lists          | Returns object with name <code>n</code> from object <code>x</code> .   |
| <code>x@n</code>    | S4 objects     | Returns element stored in object <code>x</code> in slot named <code>n</code> .   |

Although the single-bracket notation and double-bracket notation look very similar, there are three important differences. First, double brackets always return a single element, while single brackets may return multiple elements. Second, when elements are referred to by name (as opposed to by index), single brackets match only named objects exactly, while double brackets allow partial matches. Finally, when used with lists, the single-bracket notation returns a list, but the double-bracket notation returns a vector.

I'll explain how to use this notation below.

## Indexing by Integer Vector

The most familiar way to look up an element in R is by numeric vector. As an example, let's create a very simple vector of 20 integers:

```
> v <- 100:119
```

You can look up individual elements by position in the vector using the bracket notation  $x[s]$ , where  $x$  is the vector from which you want to return elements and  $s$  is a second vector representing the set of element indices you would like to query. You can use an integer vector to look up a single element or multiple elements:

```
> v[5]
[1] 104
> v[1:5]
[1] 100 101 102 103 104
> v[c(1, 6, 11, 16)]
[1] 100 105 110 115
```

As a special case, you can use the double-bracket notation to reference a single element:

```
> v[[3]]
[1] 102
```

The double-bracket notation works the same as the single-bracket notation in this case; see “[Indexing by Name](#)” on page 79 for an explanation of references that do not work with the single-bracket notation.

You can also use negative integers to return a vector consisting of all elements except the specified elements:

```
> # exclude elements 1:15 (by specifying indexes -1 to -15)
> v[-15:-1]
[1] 115 116 117 118 119
```

The same notation applies to lists:

```
> l <- list(a=1, b=2, c=3, d=4, e=5, f=6, g=7, h=8, i=9, j=10)
> l[1:3]
$a
[1] 1
$b
[1] 2
```

```
$c  
[1] 3  
  
> l[-7:-1]  
$h  
[1] 8  
  
$i  
[1] 9  
  
$j  
[1] 10
```

You can also use this notation to extract parts of multidimensional data structures:

```
> m <- matrix(data=c(101:112), nrow=3, ncol=4)  
> m  
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]  
[1,] 101 104 107 110  
[2,] 102 105 108 111  
[3,] 103 106 109 112  
> m[3]  
[1] 103  
> m[3,4]  
[1] 112  
> m[1:2,1:2]  
[,1] [,2]  
[1,] 101 104  
[2,] 102 105
```

If you omit a vector specifying a set of indices for a dimension, then elements for all indices are returned:

```
> m[1:2, ]  
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]  
[1,] 101 104 107 110  
[2,] 102 105 108 111  
> m[3:4]  
[1] 103 104  
> m[, 3:4]  
[,1] [,2]  
[1,] 107 110  
[2,] 108 111  
[3,] 109 112
```

When selecting a subset, R will automatically coerce the result to the most appropriate number of dimensions. If you select a subset of elements that corresponds to a matrix, R will return a matrix object; if you select a subset that corresponds to only a vector, R will return a vector object. To disable this behavior, you can use the `drop=FALSE` option:

```
> a <- array(data=c(101:124), dim=c(2, 3, 4))  
> class(a[1, 1, ])  
[1] "integer"  
> class(a[1, , ])  
[1] "matrix"  
> class(a[1:2, 1:2, 1:2])
```

```
[1] "array"  
> class(a[1, 1, 1, drop=FALSE])  
[1] "array"
```

It is possible to create an array object with dimensions of length 1. However, when selecting subsets, R simplifies the returned objects.

It is also possible to replace elements in a vector, matrix, or array using the same notation:

```
> m[1] <- 1000  
> m  
[ ,1] [ ,2] [ ,3] [ ,4]  
[1, ] 1000 104 107 110  
[2, ] 102 105 108 111  
[3, ] 103 106 109 112  
> m[1:2, 1:2] <- matrix(c(1001:1004), nrow=2, ncol=2)  
> m  
[ ,1] [ ,2] [ ,3] [ ,4]  
[1, ] 1001 1003 107 110  
[2, ] 1002 1004 108 111  
[3, ] 103 106 109 112
```

It is even possible to extend a data structure using this notation. A special NA element is used to represent values that are not defined:

```
> v <- 1:12  
> v[15] <- 15  
> v  
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 NA NA 15
```

You can also index a data structure by a factor; the factor is interpreted as an integer vector.

## Indexing by Logical Vector

As an alternative to indexing by an integer vector, you can also index through a logical vector. As a simple example, let's construct a vector of alternating true and false elements to apply to v:

```
> rep(c(TRUE, FALSE), 10)  
[1] TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE  
[12] FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE TRUE FALSE  
> v[rep(c(TRUE, FALSE), 10)]  
[1] 100 102 104 106 108 110 112 114 116 118
```

Often, it is useful to calculate a logical vector from the vector itself:

```
> # trivial example: return element that is equal to 103  
> v[(v==103)]  
> # more interesting example: multiples of three  
> v[(v %% 3 == 0)]  
[1] 102 105 108 111 114 117
```

The index vector does not need to be the same length as the vector itself. R will repeat the shorter vector, returning matching values:

```
> v[c(TRUE, FALSE, FALSE)]  
[1] 100 103 106 109 112 115 118
```

As above, the same notation applies to lists:

```
> l[(l > 7)]  
$h  
[1] 8
```

```
$i  
[1] 9
```

```
$j  
[1] 10
```

## Indexing by Name

With lists, each element may be assigned a name. You can index an element by name using the \$ notation:

```
> l <- list(a=1, b=2, c=3, d=4, e=5, f=6, g=7, h=8, i=9, j=10)  
> l$j  
[1] 10
```

You can also use the single-bracket notation to index a set of elements by name:

```
> l[c("a", "b", "c")]  
$a  
[1] 1  
  
$b  
[1] 2  
  
$c  
[1] 3
```

You can also index by name using the double-bracket notation when selecting a single element. It is even possible to index by partial name using the exact=FALSE option:

```
> dairy <- list(milk="1 gallon", butter="1 pound", eggs=12)  
> dairy$milk  
[1] "1 gallon"  
> dairy[["milk"]]  
[1] "1 gallon"  
> dairy[["mil"]]  
NULL  
> dairy[["mil",exact=FALSE]]  
[1] "1 gallon"
```

Sometimes, an object is a list of lists. You can also use the double-bracket notation to reference an element in this type of data structure. To do this, use a vector as an argument. R will iterate through the elements in the vector, referencing sublists:

```
> fruit <- list(apples=6, oranges=3, bananas=10)  
> shopping.list <- list (dairy=dairy, fruit=fruit)  
> shopping.list  
$dairy
```

```
$dairy$milk  
[1] "1 gallon"  
  
$dairy$butter  
[1] "1 pound"  
  
$dairy$eggs  
[1] 12  
  
$fruit  
$fruit$apples  
[1] 6  
  
$fruit$oranges  
[1] 3  
  
$fruit$bananas  
[1] 10  
  
> shopping.list[[c("dairy", "milk")]]  
[1] "1 gallon"  
> shopping.list[[c(1,2)]]  
[1] "1 pound"
```

## R Code Style Standards

Standards for code style aren't the same as syntax, although they are sort of related. It is usually wise to be careful about code style to maximize the readability of your code, making it easier for you and others to maintain.

In this book, I've tried to stick to Google's R Style Guide, which is available at <http://google-styleguide.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/google-r-style.html>. Here is a summary of its suggestions:

### *Indentation*

Indent lines with two spaces, not tabs. If code is inside parentheses, indent to the innermost parentheses.

### *Spacing*

Use only single spaces. Add spaces between binary operators and operands. Do not add spaces between a function name and the argument list. Add a single space between items in a list, after each comma.

### *Blocks*

Don't place an opening brace ("{"}) on its own line. Do place a closing brace ("}") on its own line. Indent inner blocks (by two spaces).

### *Semicolons*

Omit semicolons at the end of lines when they are optional.

### *Naming*

Name objects with lowercase words, separated by periods. For function names, capitalize the name of each word that is joined together, with no periods. Try to make function names verbs.

### *Assignment*

Use `<-`, not `=` for assignment statements.

Don't be confused by the object names. You don't have to name objects things like "field.goals" or "sanfrancisco.home.prices" or "top.bacon.searching.cities." It's just convention.





# 7

## R Objects

All objects in R are built on top of a basic set of built-in objects. The *type* of an object defines how it is stored in R. Objects in R are also members of a *class*. Classes define what information objects contain, and how those objects may be used.

R provides some mechanisms for object-oriented programming (which doesn't just mean "programming with objects"). This chapter focuses on built-in objects and how to use them and not on the object-oriented programming system. We'll discuss object-oriented programming features like class definitions, inheritance, and methods in [Chapter 10](#).

### Primitive Object Types

[Table 7-1](#) shows all the built-in object types. I introduced these objects in [Chapter 3](#), so they should seem familiar. I classified the object types into a few categories to make them easier to understand.

#### *Basic vectors*

These are vectors containing a single type of value: integers, floating-point numbers, complex numbers, text, logical values, or raw data.

#### *Compound objects*

These objects are containers for the basic vectors: lists, pairlists, S4 objects, and environments. Each of these objects has unique properties (described below), but each of them contains a number of named objects.

#### *Special objects*

These objects serve a special purpose in R programming: `any`, `NULL`, and `....`. Each of these means something important in a specific context, but you would never create an object of these types.

#### *R language*

These are objects that represent R code; they can be evaluated to return other objects.

## *Functions*

Functions are the workhorses of R; they take arguments as inputs and return objects as outputs. Sometimes, they may modify objects in the environment or cause side effects outside the R environment like plotting graphics, saving files, or sending data over the network.

## *Internal*

These are object types that are formally defined by R but which aren't normally accessible within the R language. In normal R programming, you will probably never encounter any of the objects.

## *Bytecode Objects*

If you use the bytecode compiler, R will generate bytecode objects that run on the R virtual machine.

We'll explore what each of these objects is used for in this chapter.

*Table 7-1. Primitive object types in R*

| Category | Object type | Description   | Example  |
|----------|-------------|---|--|
| Vectors  | integer     | Naturally produced from sequences. Can be coerced with the <code>integer()</code> function.   | <code>5:5 integer(5)</code>                                |
|          | double      | Used to represent floating-point numbers (numbers with decimals and large numbers). On most modern platforms, this will be 8 bytes, or 64 bits. By default, most numerical values are represented as doubles. Can be coerced with the <code>double()</code> function. | <code>1 -1 2 ** 50 double(5)</code>                        |
|          | complex     | Complex numbers. To use, you must include both the real and the imaginary parts (even if the real part is 0).   | <code>2+3i 0+1i exp(0+1i * pi)</code>                      |
|          | character   | A string of characters (just called a string in many other languages).  | <code>"Hello world."</code>                                |
| Compound | logical     | Represents Boolean values.  | <code>TRUE FALSE</code>                                    |
|          | raw         | A vector containing raw bytes. Useful for encoding objects from outside the R environment.  | <code>raw(8) char ToRaw("Hello")</code>                    |
|          | list        | A (possibly heterogeneous) collection of other objects. Elements of a list may be named. Many other object types in R (such as data frames) are implemented as lists.   | <code>list(1, 2, "hat")</code>                             |
|          | pairlist    | A data structure used to represent a set of name-value pairs. Pairlists are primarily used internally but can be created at the user level. Their use is deprecated in user-level programs, because standard list objects are just as efficient and more flexible.    | <code>.Options pair list(apple=1, pear=2, banana=3)</code> |
|          | S4          | An R object supporting modern object-oriented paradigms (inheritance, methods, etc.). See <a href="#">Chapter 10</a> for a full explanation.  |  |

| Category   | Object type | Description   | Example   |
|------------|-------------|---|---|
| Special    | environment | An R environment describes the set of symbols available in a specific context. An environment contains a set of symbol-value pairs and a pointer to an enclosing environment. (For example, you could use <code>any</code> in the signature of a default generic function.) | <code>.GlobalEnv new.env(par<br/>ent = baseenv())</code>  |
|            | any         | An object used to mean that “any” type is OK. Used to prevent coercion from one type to another. Useful in defining slots in S4 objects or signatures for generic functions.  | <code>setClass("Something",<br/>representa<br/>tion( data="ANY" ) )</code>  |
|            | NULL        | An object that means “there is no object.” Returned by functions and expressions whose value is not defined. The NULL object can have no attributes.  | NULL  |
|            | ...         | Used in functions to implement variable-length argument lists, particularly arguments passed to other functions.  | N/A   |
| R language | symbol      | A symbol is a language object that refers to other objects. Usually encountered when parsing R statements.  | <code>as.name(x) as.symbol(x)<br/>quote(x)</code>   |
|            | promise     | Promises are objects that are not evaluated when they are created but are instead evaluated when they are first used. They are used to implement delayed loading of objects in packages.  | <code>&gt; x &lt;- 1;<br/>&gt; y &lt;- 2;<br/>&gt; z &lt;- 3<br/>&gt; delayedAssign("v",<br/>c(x, y, z))<br/>&gt; # v is a promise</code> |
|            | language    | R language objects are used when processing the R language itself.  | <code>quote(function(x) { x +<br/>1})</code>  |
|            | expression  | An unevaluated R expression. Expression objects can be created with the <code>expression</code> function and later evaluated with the <code>eval</code> function.   | <code>expression(1 + 2)</code>  |
| Functions  | closure     | An R function not implemented inside the R system. Most functions fall into this category. Includes user-defined functions, most functions included with R, and most functions in R packages.   | <code>f &lt;- function(x) { x + 1}<br/>print</code>   |
|            | special     | An internal function whose arguments are not necessarily evaluated on call.   | <code>if [</code>   |
|            | builtin     | An internal function that evaluates its arguments.  | <code>+ ^</code>  |
|            | bytecode    | Compiled R functions generated by the <code>compiler</code> package   | <code>cmpfun(function(x) {x^2})</code>  |
| Internal   | char        | A scalar “string” object. A character vector is composed of <code>char</code> objects. (Users can’t   | N/A   |

| Category | Object type              | Description   | Example |
|----------|--------------------------|---|---------|
|          |                          | easily generate a <code>char</code> object but don't ever need to.) |         |
|          | <code>bytecode</code>    | A data type reserved for a future byte-code compiler.               | N/A     |
|          | <code>externalptr</code> | External pointer. Used in C code.                                   | N/A     |
|          | <code>weakref</code>     | Weak reference (internal only).                                     | N/A     |

## Vectors

When using R, you will frequently encounter the six basic vector types. R includes several different ways to create a new vector. The simplest one is the `c` function, which *combines* its arguments into a vector:

```
> # a vector of five numbers
> v <- c(.295, .300, .250, .287, .215)
> v
[1] 0.295 0.300 0.250 0.287 0.215
```

The `c` function also *coerces* all of its arguments into a single type:

```
> # creating a vector from four numbers and a char
> v <- c(.295, .300, .250, .287, "zilch")
> v
[1] "0.295" "0.3"   "0.25"  "0.287" "zilch"
```

You can use the `c` function to recursively assemble a vector from other data structures using the `recursive=TRUE` option:

```
> # creating a vector from four numbers and a list of
> # three more
> v <- c(.295, .300, .250, .287, list(.102, .200, .303), recursive=TRUE)
> v
[1] 0.295 0.300 0.250 0.287 0.102 0.200 0.303
```

But beware of using a list as an argument, as you will get back a list:

```
> v <- c(.295, .300, .250, .287, list(.102, .200, .303), recursive=TRUE)
> v
[1] 0.295 0.300 0.250 0.287 0.102 0.200 0.303
> typeof(v)
[1] "double"
> v <- c(.295, .300, .250, .287, list(1, 2, 3))
> typeof(v)
[1] "list"
> class(v)
[1] "list"
> v
[[1]]
[1] 0.295

[[2]]
[1] 0.3
```

```
[[3]]  
[1] 0.25  
  
[[4]]  
[1] 0.287  
  
[[5]]  
[1] 1  
  
[[6]]  
[1] 2  
  
[[7]]  
[1] 3
```

Another useful tool for assembling a vector is the “`:`” operator. This operator creates a sequence of values from the first operand to the second operand:

```
> 1:10  
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
```

A more flexible function is the `seq` function:

```
> seq(from=5, to=25, by=5)  
[1] 5 10 15 20 25
```

You can explicitly manipulate the length of a vector through the `length` attribute:

```
> w <- 1:10  
> w  
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10  
> length(w) <- 5  
> w  
[1] 1 2 3 4 5
```

Note that when you expand the length of a vector, uninitialized values are given the `NA` value:

```
> length(w) <- 10  
> w  
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 NA NA NA NA NA
```

## Lists

An R *list* is an ordered collection of objects. Like vectors, you can refer to elements in a list by position:

```
> l <- list(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)  
> l[1]  
[[1]]  
[1] 1  
  
> l[[1]]  
[1] 1
```

Additionally, each element in a list may be given a *name* and then be referred to by that name. For example, suppose we wanted to represent a few properties of a parcel

(a real, physical parcel, to be sent through the mail). Suppose the parcel is destined for New York, has dimensions of 2 inches deep by 6 inches wide by 9 inches long, and costs \$12.95 to mail. The three properties are all different data types in R: a character, a numeric vector of length 3, and a vector of length 1. We could combine the information into an object like this:

```
> parcel <- list(destination="New York", dimensions=c(2, 6, 9), price=12.95)
```

It is then possible to refer to each component individually using the `$` notation. For example, if we wanted to get the price, we would use the following expression:

```
> parcel$price  
[1] 12.95
```

Lists are a very important building block in R, because they allow the construction of heterogeneous structures. For example, data frames are built on lists.

## Other Objects

There are some other objects that you should know about if you’re using R. Although most of these objects are not formally part of the R language, they are used in so many R packages, or get such special treatment in R, that they’re worth a closer look.

## Matrices

A *matrix* is an extension of a vector to two dimensions. A matrix is used to represent two-dimensional data of a single type. A clean way to generate a new matrix is with the `matrix` function. As an example, let’s create a matrix object with three columns and four rows. We’ll give the rows the names “r1,” “r2,” “r3,” and “r4,” and the columns the names “c1,” “c2,” and “c3.”

```
> m <- matrix(data=1:12, nrow=4, ncol=3,  
+               dimnames=list(c("r1", "r2", "r3", "r4"),  
+                               c("c1", "c2", "c3")))  
> m  
   c1 c2 c3  
r1  1  5  9  
r2  2  6 10  
r3  3  7 11  
r4  4  8 12
```

It is also possible to transform another data structure into a matrix using the `as.matrix` function.

An important note: matrices are implemented as vectors, not as a vector of vectors (or as a list of vectors). Array subscripts are used for referencing elements and don’t reflect the way the data is stored. (Unlike other classes, matrices don’t have an explicit class attribute. We’ll talk about attributes in “[Attributes](#)” on page 96.)

## Arrays

An array is an extension of a vector to more than two dimensions. Arrays are used to represent multidimensional data of a single type. As above, you can generate an array with the `array` function:

```
> a <- array(data=1:24, dim=c(3, 4, 2))
> a
, , 1

[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,]    1    4    7   10
[2,]    2    5    8   11
[3,]    3    6    9   12

, , 2

[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,]   13   16   19   22
[2,]   14   17   20   23
[3,]   15   18   21   24
```

Like matrices, the underlying storage mechanism for an array is a vector. (Like matrices, and unlike most other classes, arrays don't have an explicit class attribute.)

## Factors

When analyzing data, it's quite common to encounter categorical values. For example, suppose you have a set of observations about people that includes eye color. You could represent the eye colors as a character array:

```
> eye.colors <- c("brown", "blue", "blue", "green",
+ "brown", "brown", "brown")
```

This is a perfectly valid way to represent the information, but it can become inefficient if you are working with large names or a large number of observations. R provides a better way to represent categorical values, by using factors. A *factor* is an ordered collection of items. The different values that the factor can take are called *levels*.

Let's recode the eye colors as a factor:

```
> eye.colors <- factor(c("brown", "blue", "blue", "green",
+ "brown", "brown", "brown"))
```

The `levels` function shows all the levels from a factor:

```
> levels(eye.colors)
[1] "blue"  "brown" "green"
```

Printing a factor shows slightly different information than printing a character vector. In particular, notice that the quotes are not shown and that the levels are explicitly printed:

```
> eye.colors
[1] brown blue blue green brown brown brown
Levels: blue brown green
```

In the eye color example, order did not matter. However, sometimes the order of the factors matters for a specific problem. For example, suppose you had conducted a survey and asked respondents how they felt about the statement “melon is delicious with an omelet.” Furthermore, suppose that you allowed respondents to give the following responses: Strongly Disagree, Disagree, Neutral, Agree, Strongly Agree.

There are multiple ways to represent this information in R. You could code these as integers (for example, on a scale of 1 to 5), although this approach has some drawbacks. This approach implies a specific quantitative relationship between values, which may or may not make sense. For example, is the difference between Strongly Disagree and Disagree the same as the difference between Disagree and Neutral? A numeric response also implies that you can calculate meaningful statistics based on the responses. Can you be sure that a Disagree response and an Agree response average out to Neutral?

To get around these problems, you can use an ordered factor to represent the response of this survey. Here is an example:

```
> survey.results <- factor(
+   c("Disagree", "Neutral", "Strongly Disagree",
+     "Neutral", "Agree", "Strongly Agree",
+     "Disagree", "Strongly Agree", "Neutral",
+     "Strongly Disagree", "Neutral", "Agree"),
+   levels=c("Strongly Disagree", "Disagree",
+     "Neutral", "Agree", "Strongly Agree"),
+   ordered=TRUE)
> survey.results
[1] Disagree           Neutral          Strongly Disagree
[4] Neutral            Agree             Strongly Agree
[7] Disagree           Strongly Agree  Neutral
[10] Strongly Disagree Neutral          Agree
5 Levels: Strongly Disagree < Disagree < Neutral < ... < Strongly Agree
```

As you can see, R will display the order of the levels when you display an ordered factor.

Factors are implemented internally using integers. The levels attribute maps each integer to a factor level. Integers take up a small, fixed amount of storage space, so they can be more space efficient than character vectors. It’s possible to take a factor and turn it into an integer array:

```
> # use the eye.colors vector we used above
> eye.colors
[1] brown blue blue green brown brown brown
Levels: blue brown green
> class(eye.colors)
[1] "factor"
> # now create a vector by removing the class:
> eye.colors.integer.vector <- unclass(eye.colors)
> eye.colors.integer.vector
```

```
[1] 2 1 1 3 2 2 2  
attr(,"levels")  
[1] "blue" "brown" "green"  
> class(eye.colors.integer.vector)  
[1] "integer"
```

It's possible to change this back to a factor by setting the class attribute:

```
> class(eye.colors.integer.vector) <- "factor"  
> eye.colors.integer.vector  
[1] brown blue blue green brown brown brown  
Levels: blue brown green  
> class(eye.colors.integer.vector)  
[1] "factor"
```

## Data Frames

Data frames are a useful way to represent tabular data. In scientific contexts, many experiments consist of individual observations, each of which involves several different measurements. Often, the measurements have different dimensions, and sometimes they are qualitative and not quantitative. In business contexts, data is often kept in database tables. Each table has many rows, which may consist of multiple “columns” representing different quantities and which may be kept in multiple formats. A data frame is a natural way to represent these data sets in R.

A data frame represents a table of data. Each column may be a different type, but each row in the data frame must have the same length:

```
> data.frame(a=c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5), b=c(1, 2, 3, 4))  
Error in data.frame(a = c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5), b = c(1, 2, 3, 4)) :  
  arguments imply differing number of rows: 5, 4
```

Usually, each column is named, and sometimes rows are named as well. The columns in a data frame are often referred to as “variables.”

Here is a simple example of a data frame, showing how frequently users search for the word “bacon” in different cities around the world.<sup>1</sup>

This data set is included in the `nutshell` package. Alternatively, you can create it manually with the following statement:

```
> top.bacon.searching.cities <- data.frame(  
+   city = c("Seattle", "Washington", "Chicago",  
+           "New York", "Portland", "St Louis",  
+           "Denver", "Boston", "Minneapolis", "Austin",  
+           "Philadelphia", "San Francisco", "Atlanta",  
+           "Los Angeles", "Richardson"),
```

1. The data was taken from Google Insights, <http://www.google.com/insights/search/#q=bacon&cmt=q>. The query was run on September 5, 2009, for data from 2004 through 2009.

The fact that I could find this information is a sign that there is too much data in the world. It is probably good that you are learning to use R, or you would never be able to make sense of it all.

```
+     rank = c(100, 96, 94, 93, 93, 92, 90, 90, 89, 87,
+             85, 84, 82, 80, 80)
+   )
```

Here is what this data frame contains:

```
> top.bacon.searching.cities
  city rank
1 Seattle 100
2 Washington 96
3 Chicago 94
4 New York 93
5 Portland 93
6 St Louis 92
7 Denver 90
8 Boston 90
9 Minneapolis 89
10 Austin 87
11 Philadelphia 85
12 San Francisco 84
13 Atlanta 82
14 Los Angeles 80
15 Richardson 80
```

Data frames are implemented as lists with class `data.frame`:

```
> typeof(top.bacon.searching.cities)
[1] "list"
> class(top.bacon.searching.cities)
[1] "data.frame"
```

This means that the same methods can be used to refer to items in lists and data frames. For example, to extract the rank column from this data frame, you could use the expression `top.bacon.searching.cities$rank`.

## Formulas

Very often, you need to express a relationship between variables. Sometimes, you want to plot a chart showing the relationship between the two variables. Other times, you want to develop a mathematical model. R provides a *formula* class that lets you describe the relationship for both purposes.

Let's create a formula as an example:

```
> sample.formula <- as.formula(y~x1+x2+x3)
> class(sample.formula)
[1] "formula"
> typeof(sample.formula)
[1] "language"
```

This formula means “y is a function of x1, x2, and x3.” Some R functions use more complicated formulas. For example, in “[Charts and Graphics](#)” on page 30, we plotted a formula of the form `Amount~Year|Food`, which means “Amount is a function of Year, conditioned on Food.” Here is an explanation of the meaning of different items in formulas:

*Variable names*

Represent variable names.

*Tilde (~)*

Used to show the relationship between the response variables (to the left) and the stimulus variables (to the right).

*Plus sign (+)*

Used to express a linear relationship between variables.

*Zero (0)*

When added to a formula, indicates that no intercept term should be included.

For example:

$$y \sim u + w + v + 0$$

*Vertical bar (|)*

Used to specify conditioning variables (in lattice formulas; see “[Customizing Lattice Graphics](#)” on page 312).

*Identity function (I())*

Used to indicate that the enclosed expression should be interpreted by its arithmetic meaning. For example:

$$a + b$$

means that both  $a$  and  $b$  should be included in the formula. The formula:

$$I(a+b)$$

means that “ $a$  plus  $b$ ” should be included in the formula.

*Asterisk (\*)*

Used to indicate interactions between variables. For example:

$$y \sim (u+v)*w$$

is equivalent to:

$$y \sim u + v + I(u*w) + I(v*w)$$

*Caret (^)*

Used to indicate crossing to a specific degree. For example:

$$y \sim (u+w)^{^2}$$

is equivalent to:

$$y \sim (u+w)*(u+w)$$

*Function of variables*

Indicates that the function of the specified variables should be interpreted as a variable. For example:

$$y \sim \log(u) + \sin(v) + w$$

Some additional items have special meaning in formulas, for example `s()` for smoothing splines in formulas passed to `gam`. We’ll revisit formulas in [Chapter 14](#) and [Chapter 20](#).

## Time Series

Many important problems look at how a variable changes over time, and R includes a class to represent this data: time series objects. Regression functions for time series (like `ar` or `arima`) use time series objects. Additionally, many plotting functions in R have special methods for time series.

To create a time series object (of class "`ts`"), use the `ts` function:

```
ts(data = NA, start = 1, end = numeric(0), frequency = 1,  
    deltat = 1, ts.eps = getOption("ts.eps"), class = , names = )
```

The `data` argument specifies the series of observations; the other arguments specify when the observations were taken. Here is a description of the arguments to `ts`.

| Argument               | Description  | Default   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| <code>data</code>      | A vector or matrix representing a set of observations over time (usually numeric).   | <code>NA</code>   |
| <code>start</code>     | A numeric vector with one or two elements representing the start of the time series. If one element is used, then it represents a "natural time unit." If two elements are used, then it represents a "natural time unit" and an offset. | <code>1</code>  |
| <code>end</code>       | A numeric vector with one or two elements representing the end of the time series. (Represented the same way as <code>start</code> .)  | <code>numeric(0)</code>   |
| <code>frequency</code> | The number of observations per unit of time.   | <code>1</code>  |
| <code>deltat</code>    | The fraction of the sampling period between observations; <code>frequency=1/deltat</code> .  | <code>1</code>  |
| <code>ts.eps</code>    | Time series comparison tolerance. The frequency of two time series objects is considered equal if the difference is less than this amount.   | <code>getOption("ts.eps")</code>  |
| <code>class</code>     | The class to be assigned to the result.  | <code>"ts"</code> for a single series, <code>c("mts", "ts")</code> for multiple series      |
| <code>names</code>     | A character vector specifying the name of each series in a multiple series object.   | <code>colnames(data)</code> when not null, otherwise <code>"Series1", "Series2", ...</code> |

The print method for time series objects can print pretty results when used with units of months or quarters (this is enabled by default and is controlled with the `calendar` argument to `print.ts`; see the help file for more details). As an example, let's create a time series representing eight consecutive quarters between Q2 2008 and Q1 2010:

```
> ts(1:8, start=c(2008, 2), frequency=4)  
      Qtr1 Qtr2 Qtr3 Qtr4  
2008        1   2   3  
2009        4   5   6   7  
2010        8
```

As another example of a time series, we will look at the price of turkey. The U.S. Department of Agriculture has a program that collects data on the retail price of

various meats. The data is taken from supermarkets representing approximately 20% of the U.S. market and then averaged by month and region. The turkey price data is included in the `nutshell` package as `turkey.price.ts`:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(turkey.price.ts)
> turkey.price.ts
   Jan Feb Mar Apr May Jun Jul Aug Sep Oct Nov Dec
2001 1.58 1.75 1.63 1.45 1.56 2.07 1.81 1.74 1.54 1.45 0.57 1.15
2002 1.50 1.66 1.34 1.67 1.81 1.60 1.70 1.87 1.47 1.59 0.74 0.82
2003 1.43 1.77 1.47 1.38 1.66 1.66 1.61 1.74 1.62 1.39 0.70 1.07
2004 1.48 1.48 1.50 1.27 1.56 1.61 1.55 1.69 1.49 1.32 0.53 1.03
2005 1.62 1.63 1.40 1.73 1.73 1.80 1.92 1.77 1.71 1.53 0.67 1.09
2006 1.71 1.90 1.68 1.46 1.86 1.85 1.88 1.86 1.62 1.45 0.67 1.18
2007 1.68 1.74 1.70 1.49 1.81 1.96 1.97 1.91 1.89 1.65 0.70 1.17
2008 1.76 1.78 1.53 1.90
```

R includes a variety of utility functions for looking at time series objects:

```
> start(turkey.price.ts)
[1] 2001    1
> end(turkey.price.ts)
[1] 2008    4
> frequency(turkey.price.ts)
[1] 12
> deltat(turkey.price.ts)
[1] 0.08333333
```

We'll revisit this time series later in the book.

## Shingles

A shingle is a generalization of a factor to a continuous variable. A shingle consists of a numeric vector and a set of intervals. The intervals are allowed to overlap (much like roof shingles; hence the name “shingles”). Shingles are used extensively in the `lattice` package. Specifically, they allow you to easily use a continuous variable as a conditioning or grouping variable. See [Chapter 14](#) for more information about the `lattice` package.

## Dates and Times

R includes a set of classes for representing dates and times:

### Date

Represents dates but *not* times.

### POSIXct

Stores dates and times as seconds since January 1, 1970, 12:00 A.M.

### POSIXlt

Stores dates and times in separate vectors. The list includes sec (0–61)<sup>2</sup>, min (0–59), hour (0–23), mday (day of month, 1–31), mon (month, 0–11), year

2. This makes it possible to represent leap seconds.

(years since 1900), wday (day of week, 0–6), yday (day of year, 0–365), and isdst (flag for “is daylight savings time”).

When possible, it’s a good idea to store date and time values as date objects, not as strings or numbers. There are many good reasons for this. First, manipulating dates as strings is difficult. The date and time classes include functions for addition and subtraction. For example:

```
> date.I.started.writing <- as.Date("2/13/2009", "%m/%d/%Y")
> date.I.started.writing
[1] "2009-02-13"
> today <- Sys.Date()
> today
[1] "2009-08-03"
> today - date.I.started.writing
Time difference of 171 days
```

Additionally, R includes a number of other functions for manipulating time and date objects. Many plotting functions require dates and times.

## Connections

R includes a special object type for receiving data from (or sending data to) applications or files outside the R environment. (Connections are like file pointers in C or filehandles in Perl.) You can create connections to files, URLs, zip-compressed files, gzip-compressed files, bzip-compressed files, Unix pipes, network sockets, and FIFO (first in, first out) objects. You can even read from the system Clipboard (to paste data into R).

To use connections, you create the connection, open the connection, use the connection, and close the connection. For example, suppose you had saved some data objects into a file called *consumption.RData* and wanted to load the data. R saves files in a compressed format, so you would create a connection with the *gzfile* command. Here is how to load the file using a connection:

```
> consumption.connection <- gzfile(description="consumption.RData", open="r")
> load(consumption.connection)
> close(consumption.connection)
```

Most of the time, you don’t have to explicitly open connections. Many functions for reading or writing files (such as *save*, *load*, or *read.table*) will implicitly open connections when you provide a filename or URL as argument. Connections can be useful for reading data from nonstandard file types (such as bz-compressed files or network connections).

See the help file for *connection* for more information.

## Attributes

Objects in R can have many properties associated with them, called *attributes*. These properties explain what an object represents and how it should be interpreted by R. Quite often, the only difference between two similar objects is that they have

different attributes.<sup>3</sup> Some important attributes are shown in [Table 7-2](#). Many objects in R are used to represent numerical data—in particular, arrays, matrices, and data frames. So many common attributes refer to properties of these objects.

*Table 7-2. Common attributes*

| Attribute | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| class     | The class of the object.  |
| comment   | A comment on the object; often a description of what the object means.  |
| dim       | Dimensions of the object.   |
| dimnames  | Names associated with each dimension of the object.   |
| names     | Returns the names attribute of an object. Results depend on object type; for example, it returns the name of each data column in a data frame or each named object in an array. |
| row.names | The name of each row in an object (related to dimnames).  |
| tsp       | Start time for an object. Useful for time series data.  |
| levels    | Levels of a factor.   |

There is a standard way to query object attributes in R. For an object `x` and attribute `a`, you refer to the attribute through `a(x)`. In most cases, there is a method to get the current value of the attribute and a method to set a new value of the attribute. (Changing attributes with these methods will alter the attributes in the current environment but will not affect the attributes in an enclosing environment.)

You can get a list of all attributes of an object using the `attributes` function. As an example, let's consider the matrix that we created in “[Matrices](#)” on page 88:

```
> m <- matrix(data=1:12, nrow=4, ncol=3,
+               dimnames=list(c("r1", "r2", "r3", "r4"),
+                             c("c1", "c2", "c3")))
```

Now, let's take a look at the attributes of this object:

```
> attributes(m)
$dim
[1] 4 3

$dimnames
$dimnames[[1]]
[1] "r1" "r2" "r3" "r4"

$dimnames[[2]]
[1] "c1" "c2" "c3"
```

The `dim` attribute shows the dimensions of the object, in this case four rows by three columns. The `dimnames` attribute is a two-element list, consisting of the names for

3. You might wonder why attributes exist; the same functionality could be implemented with lists or S4 objects. The reason is historical: Attributes predate most of R's modern object mechanisms. See [Chapter 10](#) for a full discussion of formal objects in R.

each respective dimension of the object (rows then columns). It is possible to access each of these attributes directly, using the `dim` and `dimnames` functions, respectively:

```
> dim(m)
[1] 4 3
> dimnames(m)
[[1]]
[1] "r1" "r2" "r3" "r4"

[[2]]
[1] "c1" "c2" "c3"
```

There are convenience functions for accessing the row and column names:

```
> colnames(m)
[1] "c1" "c2" "c3"
> rownames(m)
[1] "r1" "r2" "r3" "r4"
```

It is possible to transform this matrix into another object class simply by changing the attributes. Specifically, we can remove the dimension attribute (by setting it to `NULL`), and the object will be transformed into a vector:

```
> dim(m) <- NULL
> m
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
> class(m)
[1] "integer"
> typeof(m)
[1] "integer"
```

Let's go back to an example that we used in “[Introduction to Data Structures](#)” on page 24. We'll construct an array `a`:

```
> a <- array(1:12,dim=c(3,4))
> a
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,]    1    4    7   10
[2,]    2    5    8   11
[3,]    3    6    9   12
```

Now let's define a vector with the same contents:

```
> b <- 1:12
> b
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
```

You can use R's bracket notation to refer to elements in `a` as a two-dimensional array, but you can't refer to elements in `b` as a two-dimensional array, because `b` doesn't have any dimensions assigned:

```
> a[2,2]
[1] 5
> b[2,2]
Error in b[2, 2] : incorrect number of dimensions
```

At this point, you might wonder if R considers the two objects to be the same. Here's what happens when you compare them with the `==` operator:

```
> a == b
 [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,] TRUE TRUE TRUE TRUE
[2,] TRUE TRUE TRUE TRUE
[3,] TRUE TRUE TRUE TRUE
```

Notice what is returned: an array with the dimensions of `a`, where each cell shows the results of the comparison. There is a function in R called `all.equal` that compares the data and attributes of two objects to show if they're "nearly" equal, and if they are not explains why:

```
> all.equal(a,b)
[1] "Attributes: < Modes: list, NULL >"
[2] "Attributes: < names for target but not for current >"
[3] "Attributes: < Length mismatch: comparison on first 0 components >"
[4] "target is matrix, current is numeric"
```

If you just want to check whether two objects are exactly the same, but don't care why, use the function `identical`:

```
> identical(a,b)
[1] FALSE
```

By assigning a dimension attribute to `b`, `b` is transformed into an array and the two-dimensional data access tools will work. The `all.equal` function will also show that the two objects are equivalent:

```
> dim(b) <- c(3,4)
> b[2,2]
[1] 5
> all.equal(a,b)
[1] TRUE
> identical(a,b)
[1] TRUE
```

## Class

An object's class is implemented as an attribute. For simple objects, the class and type are often closely related. For compound objects, however, the two can be different.

Sometimes, the class of an object is listed with `attributes`. However, for certain classes (such as matrices and arrays), the class is implicit. To determine the class of an object, you can use the `class` function. You can determine the underlying type of object using the `typeof` function.

For example, here is the type and class for a simple numeric vector:

```
> x <- c(1, 2, 3)
> typeof(x)
[1] "double"
> class(x)
[1] "numeric"
```

It is possible to change the class of an object in R, just like changing any other attribute. For example, factors are implemented internally using integers and a map

of the integers to the factor levels. (Integers take up a small, fixed amount of storage space, so they can be much more efficient than character vectors.) It's possible to take a factor and turn it into an integer array:

```
> eye.colors.integer.vector  
[1] 2 1 1 3 2 2 2  
attr("levels")  
[1] "blue" "brown" "green"
```

It is possible to create an integer array and turn it into a factor:

```
> v <- as.integer(c(1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 2, 3, 1))  
> levels(v) <- c("what", "who", "why")  
> class(v) <- "factor"  
> v  
[1] what what what who what who who why what  
Levels: what who why
```

Note that there is no guarantee that the implementation of factors won't change, so be careful using this trick in practice.

For some objects, you need to quote them to prevent them from being evaluated when the `class` or `type` function is called. For example, suppose that you wanted to determine the type of the symbol `x` and not the object to which it refers. You could do that like this:

```
> class(quote(x))  
[1] "name"  
> typeof(quote(x))  
[1] "symbol"
```

Unfortunately, you can't actually use these functions on every type of object. Specifically, there is no way to isolate an `any`, `...`, `char`, or `promise` object in R. (Checking the type of a promise object requires evaluating the promise object, converting it to an ordinary object.)



# 8

## Symbols and Environments

So far, we've danced around the concept of environments without explicitly defining them. Every *symbol* in R is defined within a specific environment. An *environment* is an R object that contains the set of symbols available in a given context, the objects associated with those symbols, and a pointer to a parent environment. The symbols and associated objects are called a *frame*.

Every evaluation context in R is associated with an environment. When R attempts to resolve a symbol, it begins by looking through the current environment. If there is no match in the local environment, then R will recursively search through parent environments looking for a match.

## Symbols

When you define a variable in R, you are actually assigning a symbol to a value in an environment. For example, when you enter the statement:

```
> x <- 1
```

on the R console, it assigns the symbol `x` to a vector object of length 1 with the constant (double) value 1 in the global environment. When the R interpreter evaluates an expression, it evaluates all symbols. If you compose an object from a set of symbols, R will resolve the symbols at the time the object is constructed:

```
> x <- 1
> y <- 2
> z <- 3
> v <- c(x, y, z)
> v
[1] 1 2 3
> # v has already been defined, so changing x does not change v
> x <- 10
> v
[1] 1 2 3
```

It is possible to delay evaluation of an expression so that symbols are not evaluated immediately:

```
> x <- 1
> y <- 2
> z <- 3
> v <- quote(c(x, y, z))
> eval(v)
[1] 1 2 3
> x <- 5
> eval(v)
[1] 5 2 3
```

It is also possible to create a promise object in R to delay evaluation of a variable until it is (first) needed. You can create a promise object through the `delayedAssign` function:

```
> x <- 1
> y <- 2
> z <- 3
> delayedAssign("v", c(x, y, z))
> x <- 5
> v
[1] 5 2 3
```

Promise objects are used within packages to make objects available to users without loading them into memory. Unfortunately, it is not possible to determine if an object is a promise object, nor is it possible to figure out the environment in which it was created.

## Working with Environments

Like everything else in R, environments are objects. Internally, R stores symbol mappings in hash tables. In [Chapter 24](#), I'll show how some tricks for using environment objects to write efficient R code.

[Table 8-1](#) shows the functions in R for manipulating environment objects.

*Table 8-1. Manipulating environment objects*

| Function    | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| assign      | Assigns the name <code>x</code> to the object <code>value</code> in the environment <code>envir</code> .  |
| get         | Gets the object associated with the name <code>x</code> in the environment <code>envir</code> .   |
| exists      | Checks that the name <code>x</code> is defined in the environment <code>envir</code> .  |
| objects     | Returns a vector of all names defined in the environment <code>envir</code> .   |
| remove      | Removes the list of objects in the argument <code>list</code> from the environment <code>envir</code> . (List is an unfortunate argument name, especially as the argument needs to be a vector.)          |
| search      | Returns a vector containing the names of attached packages. You can think of this as the search path in which R tries to resolve names. More precisely, it shows the list of chained parent environments. |
| searchpaths | Returns a vector containing the paths of attached packages.   |

| Function                   | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
| attach                     | Adds the objects in the list, data frame, or data file what to the current search path.   |
| detach                     | Removes the objects in the list, data frame, or data file what from the current search path.  |
| emptyenv                   | Returns the empty environment object. All environments chain back to this object.   |
| parent.env                 | Returns the parent of environment env.  |
| baseenv                    | The environment of the base package.  |
| globalenv<br>or .GlobalEnv | Returns the environment for the user's workspace (called the "global environment"). See " <a href="#">The Global Environment</a> " for an explanation of what this means. |
| environment                | Returns the environment for function fun. When evaluated with no arguments (or fun=NULL), returns the current environment.  |
| new.env                    | Returns a new environment object.   |

To show the set of objects available in the current environment (or, more precisely, the set of symbols in the current environment associated with objects), use the `objects` function:

```
> x <- 1
> y <- 2
> z <- 3
> objects()
[1] "x" "y" "z"
```

You can remove an object from the current environment with the `rm` function:

```
> rm(x)
> objects()
[1] "y" "z"
```

## The Global Environment

When a user starts a new session in R, the R system creates a new environment for objects created during that session. This environment is called the *global environment*. The global environment is not actually the root of the tree of environments. It's actually the last environment in the chain of environments in the search path. Here's the list of parent environments for the global environment in my R installation:

```
> x <- .GlobalEnv
> while (environmentName(x) != environmentName(emptyenv())) {
+   print(environmentName(parent.env(x))); x <- parent.env(x)}
[1] "tools:RGUI"
[1] "package:stats"
[1] "package:graphics"
[1] "package:grDevices"
[1] "package:utils"
[1] "package:datasets"
[1] "package:methods"
[1] "Autoloads"
[1] "base"
[1] "R_EmptyEnv"
```

Every environment has a parent environment except for one: *the empty environment*. All environments chain back to the empty environment.

## Environments and Functions

When a function is called in R, a new environment is created within the body of the function, and the arguments of the function are assigned to symbols in the local environment.<sup>1</sup>

As an example, let's create a function that takes four arguments and does nothing except print out the objects in the current environment:

```
> env.demo <- function(a, b, c, d) {print(objects())}
> env.demo(1, "truck", c(1,2,3,4,5), pi)
[1] "a" "b" "c" "d"
```

Notice that the `objects` function returns only the objects from the current environment, so the function `env.demo` only prints the arguments defined in that environment. All other objects exist in the parent environment, not in the local environment.

The parent environment of a function is the environment in which the function was created. If a function was created in the execution environment (for example, in the global environment), then the environment in which the function was called will be the same as the environment in which the function was created. However, if the function was created in another environment (such as a package), then the parent environment will *not* be the same as the calling environment.

## Working with the Call Stack

Although the parent environment for a function is not always the environment in which the function was called, it is possible to access the environment in which a function was called.<sup>2</sup> Like many other languages, R maintains a stack of calling environments. (A stack is a data structure in which objects can be added or subtracted from only one end. Think about a stack of trays in a cafeteria; you can only add a tray to the top or take a tray off the top. Adding an object to a stack is called “pushing” the object onto the stack. Taking an object off of the stack is called “popping” the object off the stack.) Each time a new function is called, a new environment is pushed onto the call stack. When R is done evaluating a function, the environment is popped off the call stack.

Table 8-2 shows the functions for manipulating the call stack.

1. If you're familiar with other languages and language lingo, you could say that R is a *lexically scoped* language.

2. This allows symbols to be accessed as though R were *dynamically scoped*.

Table 8-2. Manipulating the call stack

| Function                  | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>sys.call</code>     | Returns a language object containing the current function call (including arguments).   |
| <code>sys.frame</code>    | Returns the calling environment.  |
| <code>sys.nframe</code>   | Returns the number of the current frame (the position on the call stack). Returns 0 if called on the R console.               |
| <code>sys.function</code> | Returns the function currently being evaluated.   |
| <code>sys.parent</code>   | Returns the number of the parent frame.   |
| <code>sys.calls</code>    | Returns the calls for all frames on the stack.  |
| <code>sys.frames</code>   | Returns all environments on the stack.  |
| <code>sys.parents</code>  | Returns the parent for each frame on the stack.   |
| <code>sys.on.exit</code>  | Returns the expression used for <code>on.exit</code> for the current frame.   |
| <code>sys.status</code>   | Returns a list with the results of calls to <code>sys.calls</code> , <code>sys.parents</code> , and <code>sys.frames</code> . |
| <code>parent.frame</code> | Returns <code>sys.frame(sys.parent(n))</code> . In other words, returns the parent frame.                                     |

If you are writing a package in which a function needs to know the meaning of a symbol in the calling context (and not in the context within the package), you can do so with these functions. Some common R functions, like modeling functions, use this trick to determine the meaning of symbols in the calling context. In specifying a model, you pass a formula object to a modeling function. The formula object is a language object; the symbol names are included in the formula but not in the data. You can specify a data object like a data frame, but you don't have to. When you don't specify the objects containing the variables, the model function will try to search through the calling environment to find the data.

## Evaluating Functions in Different Environments

You can evaluate an expression within an arbitrary environment using the `eval` function:

```
eval(expr, envir = parent.frame(),
     enclos = if(is.list(envir) || is.pairlist(envir))
               parent.frame() else baseenv())
```

The argument `expr` is the expression to be evaluated, and `envir` is an environment, data frame, or pairlist in which to evaluate `expr`. When `envir` is a data frame or pairlist, `enclos` is the enclosure in which to look for object definitions. As an example of how to use `eval`, let's create a function to time the execution of another expression. We'd like the function to record the starting time, evaluate its arguments (an arbitrary expression) in the parent environment, record the end time, and print the difference:

```
timethis <- function(...) {
  start.time <- Sys.time();
  eval(..., sys.frame(sys.parent(sys.parent())));
  end.time <- Sys.time();
```

```
    print(end.time - start.time);
}
```

As an example of how this works, we'll time an inefficient function that sets 10,000 elements in a vector to the value 1:

```
> create.vector.of.ones <- function(n) {
+   return.vector <- NA;
+   for (i in 1:n) {
+     return.vector[i] <- 1;
+   }
+   return.vector;
+ }
> # note that returned.vector is not defined
> returned.vector
Error: object 'returned.vector' not found
> # measure time to run function above with n=10000
> timethis(returned.vector <- create.vector.of.ones(10000))
Time difference of 1.485959 secs
> # notice that the function took about 1.5 seconds to run
> # also notice that returned.vector is now defined
> length(returned.vector)
[1] 10000
```

The timing part is neat, but the point of this function is to show that it is evaluating the expression in the calling environment. Most important, notice that the symbol `returned.vector` is now defined in that environment:

```
> length(returned.vector)
[1] 10000
```

This is a little off the subject, but here is a more efficient version of the same function:

```
> create.vector.of.ones.b <- function(n) {
+   return.vector <- NA;
+   length(return.vector) <- n;
+   for (i in 1:n) {
+     return.vector[i] <- 1;
+   }
+   return.vector;
+ }
> timethis(returned.vector <- create.vector.of.ones.b(10000))
Time difference of 0.04076099 secs
```

Three useful shorthands are the functions `evalq`, `eval.parent`, and `local`. When you want to quote the expression, use `evalq`, which is equivalent to `eval(quote(expr), ...)`. When you want to evaluate an expression within the parent environment, you can use the function `eval.parent`, which is equivalent to `eval(expr, parent.frame(n))`. When you want to evaluate an expression in a new environment, you can use the function `local`, which is equivalent to `eval(quote(expr), envir=new.env())`.

As an example of how to use `eval.parent`, we can shorten the timing function from the example above:

```
timethis.b <- function(...) {
  start.time <- Sys.time();
```

```

eval.parent(...);
end.time <- Sys.time();
print(end.time - start.time);
}

```

Sometimes, it is convenient to treat a data frame or a list as an environment. This lets you refer to each item in the data frame or list by name as if you were using symbols. You can do this in R with the functions `with` and `within`:

```

with(data, expr, ...)
within(data, expr, ...)

```

The argument `data` is the data frame or list to treat as an environment, `expr` is the expression, and additional arguments in ... are passed to other methods. The function `with` evaluates the expression and then returns the result, while the function `within` makes changes in the object `data` and then returns `data`.

Here are some examples of using `with` and `within`:

```

> example.list <- list(a=1, b=2, c=3)
> a+b+c
Error: object 'b' not found
> with(example.list, a+b+c)
[1] 6
> within(example.list, d<-a+b+c)
$a
[1] 1

$b
[1] 2

$c
[1] 3

$d
[1] 6

```

## Adding Objects to an Environment

R provides a shorthand for adding objects to the current environment: `attach`. If you have saved a set of objects to a data file with `save`, you can load the objects into the current environment with `attach`.

Additionally, you can use `attach` to load all the elements specified within a data frame or list into the current environment. Often, operators like `$` are convenient for accessing objects within a list or data frame, but sometimes it can be cumbersome to do so:

```

attach(what, pos = 2, name = deparse(substitute(what)),
      warn.conflicts = TRUE)

```

The argument `what` is the object to attach (called a *database*), `pos` specifies the position in the search path in which to attach the element within `what`, `name` is the name to use for the attached database (more on what this is used for below), and

`warn.conflicts` specifies whether to warn the user if there are conflicts. The database can be a data frame, a list, or an R data file created with the `save` function.

When you're done, you can remove all the objects in a data frame from the current environment with the function `detach`:

```
detach(name, pos = 2, unload = FALSE)
```

In this function, the argument `name` specifies the name of the database to detach (which corresponds to the argument `name` from `attach`), `pos` is the position in the search path at which the database was attached, and `unload` specifies whether or not to unload the namespace and S4 methods when a database is detached.

Be careful using `attach`. Often, I find myself working with multiple data frames with identically named columns. Using `attach` can be confusing, because it is difficult to keep track of the data frame from which each object came. It is often better to use functions like `transform` to change values within a data frame or `with` to evaluate expressions using values in a data frame.

## Exceptions

You may have noticed that R sometimes gives you an error when you enter an invalid expression. For example:

```
> 12 / "hat"  
Error in 12/"hat" : non-numeric argument to binary operator
```

Other times, R may just give you a warning:

```
> if (c(TRUE,FALSE)) TRUE else FALSE  
[1] TRUE  
Warning message:  
In if (c(TRUE, FALSE)) TRUE else FALSE :  
  the condition has length > 1 and only the first element will be used
```

Like other modern programming languages, R includes the ability to signal exceptions when unusual events occur and catch to exceptions when they occur. If you are writing your own R programs, it is usually a good idea to stop execution when an error occurs and alert the user (or calling function). Likewise, it is usually a good idea to catch exceptions from functions that are called within your programs.

It might seem strange to talk about exception handling in the context of environments, but exception handling and environments are closely linked. When an exception occurs, the R interpreter may need to abandon the current function and signal the exception in the calling environment.

This section explains how the error-handling system in R works.

## Signaling Errors

If something occurs in your code that requires you to stop execution, you can use the `stop` function. For example, suppose that you had written a function called `dowork(filename)` to automatically generate some charts and save them to a file specified by the argument `filename`. Suppose that R couldn't write to the file,

possibly because the directory didn't exist. To stop execution and print a helpful error message, you could structure your code like this:

```
> doWork <- function(filename) {  
+   if(file.exists(filename)) {  
+     read.delim(filename)  
+   } else {  
+     stop("Could not open the file: ", filename)  
+   }  
+ }  
> doWork("file that doesn't exist")  
Error in doWork("file that doesn't exist") :  
  Could not open the file: file that doesn't exist
```

If something occurs in your code that you want to tell the user about, but which isn't severe enough to normally stop execution, you can use the `warning` function. Reusing the example above, if the file "filename" already exists, then the function will simply return the string "la la la". If the file does not exist, then the function will warn the user that the file does not exist.

```
> doNoWork <- function(filename) {  
+   if(file.exists(filename)) {  
+     "la la la"  
+   } else {  
+     warning("File does not exist: ", filename)  
+   }  
+ }  
> doNoWork("another file that doesn't exist")  
Warning message:  
In doNoWork("another file that doesn't exist") :  
  File does not exist: another file that doesn't exist
```

If you just want to tell the user something, then you can use the `message` function:

```
> doNothing <- function(x) {  
+   message("This function does nothing.")  
+ }  
> doNothing("another input value")  
This function does nothing.
```

## Catching Errors

Suppose that you are writing a function in R called `foo` that calls another function called `bar`. Furthermore, suppose that `bar` sometimes generates an error, but you don't want `foo` to stop if the error is generated. For example, maybe `bar` tries to open a file but signals an error when it can't open the file. If `bar` can't open the file, maybe you want `foo` to try doing something else instead.

A simple way to do this is to use the `try` function. This function hides some of the complexity of R's exception handling. Here's an example of how to use `try`:

```
> res <- try({x <- 1}, silent=TRUE)  
> res  
[1] 1  
> res <- try({open("file that doesn't exist")}, silent=TRUE)  
> res
```

```
[1] "Error in UseMethod(\"open\") : \n no applicable method for 'open'\napply to an object of class \"character\"\nattr(,\"class\")\n[1] \"try-error\"
```

The `try` function takes two arguments, `expr` and `silent`. The first argument, `expr`, is the R expression to be tried (often a function call). The second argument specifies whether the error message should be printed to the R console (or `stderr`); the default is to print errors. If the expression results in an error, then `try` returns an object of class "try-error".

A more capable function is `tryCatch`. The `tryCatch` function takes three sets of arguments: an expression to try, a set of handlers for different conditions, and a final expression to evaluate. For example, suppose that the following call was made to `tryCatch`:

```
tryCatch(expression, handler1, handler2, ..., finally=finalexpr)
```

The R interpreter would first evaluate `expression`. If a condition occurs (an error or warning), R will pick the appropriate handler for the condition (matching the class of the condition to the arguments for the handler). After the expression has been evaluated, `finalexpr` will be evaluated. (The handlers will not be active when this expression is evaluated.)



# 9

## Functions

Functions are the R objects that evaluate a set of input arguments and return an output value. This chapter explains how to create and use functions in R.

### The Function Keyword

In R, function objects are defined with this syntax:

```
function(arguments) body
```

where *arguments* is a set of symbol names (and, optionally, default values) that will be defined within the body of the function, and *body* is an R expression. Typically, the body is enclosed in curly braces, but it does not have to be if the body is a single expression. For example, the following two definitions are equivalent:

```
f <- function(x,y) x + y  
f <- function(x,y) {x + y}
```

### Arguments

A function definition in R includes the names of arguments. Optionally, it may include default values. If you specify a default value for an argument, then the argument is considered optional:

```
> f <- function(x, y) {x + y}  
> f(1,2)  
[1] 3  
> g <- function(x, y=10) {x + y}  
> g(1)  
[1] 11
```

If you do not specify a default value for an argument, and you do not specify a value when calling the function, you will get an error if the function attempts to use the argument:<sup>1</sup>

```
> f(1)
Error in f(1) :
  element 2 is empty;
  the part of the args list of '+' being evaluated was:
(x, y)
```

In a function call, you may override the default value:

```
> g(1, 2)
[1] 3
```

In R, it is often convenient to specify a variable-length argument list. You might want to pass extra arguments to another function, or you may want to write a function that accepts a variable number of arguments. To do this in R, you specify an ellipsis (...) in the arguments to the function.<sup>2</sup>

As an example, let's create a function that prints the first argument and then passes all the other arguments to the `summary` function. To do this, we will create a function that takes one argument: `x`. The arguments specification also includes an ellipsis to indicate that the function takes other arguments. We can then call the `summary` function with the ellipsis as its argument:

```
> v <- c(sqrt(1:100))
> f <- function(x,...) {print(x); summary(...)}
> f("Here is the summary for v.", v, digits=2)
[1] "Here is the summary for v."
      Min. 1st Qu. Median      Mean 3rd Qu.      Max.
      1.0      5.1      7.1      6.7      8.7     10.0
```

Notice that all of the arguments after `x` were passed to `summary`.

1. Note that you will get an error only if you try to use the uninitialized argument within the function; you could easily write a function that simply doesn't reference the argument, and it will work fine. Additionally, there are other ways to check whether an argument has been initialized from inside the body of a function. For example, the following function works identically to the function `g` shown above (which included a default value for `y` in its definition):

```
> h <- function(x,y) {
+   args <- as.list(match.call())
+   if (is.null(args$y)) {
+     y <- 10
+   }
+   x + y
+ }
```

In practice, you should specify default values in the function signature to make your functions as clear and easy to read as possible.

2. You might remember from [Chapter 7](#) that “...” is a special type of object in R. The only place you can manipulate this object is inside the body of a function. In this context, it means “all the other arguments for the function.”

It is also possible to read the arguments from the variable-length argument list. To do this, you can convert the object ... to a list within the body of the function. As an example, let's create a function that simply sums all its arguments:

```
> addemup <- function(x,...) {  
+   args <- list(...)  
+   for (a in args) x <- x + a  
+   x  
+ }  
> addemup(1, 1)  
[1] 2  
> addemup(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)  
[1] 15
```

You can also directly refer to items within the list ... through the variables ..1, ..2, to ..9. Use ..1 for the first item, ..2 for the second, and so on. Named arguments are valid symbols within the body of the function. For more information about the scope within which variables are defined, see [Chapter 8](#).

## Return Values

In an R function, you may use the `return` function to specify the value returned by the function. For example:

```
> f <- function(x) {return(x^2 + 3)}  
> f(3)  
[1] 12
```

However, R will simply return the last evaluated expression as the result of a function. So it is common to omit the `return` statement:

```
> f <- function(x) {x^2 + 3}  
> f(3)  
[1] 12
```

In some cases, an explicit return value may lead to cleaner code.

## Functions as Arguments

Many functions in R can take other functions as arguments. For example, many modeling functions accept an optional argument that specifies how to handle missing values; this argument is usually a function for processing the input data.

As an example of a function that takes another function as an argument, let's look at `sapply`. The `sapply` function iterates through each element in a vector, applying another function to each element in the vector and returning the results. Here is a simple example:

```
> a <- 1:7  
> sapply(a, sqrt)  
[1] 1.000000 1.414214 1.732051 2.000000 2.236068 2.449490 2.645751
```

This is a toy example; you could have calculated the same quantity with the expression `sqrt(1:7)`. However, there are many useful functions that don't work properly on a vector with more than one element; `sapply` provides a simple way to extend such a function to work on a vector. Related functions allow you to summarize every element in a data structure or to perform more complicated calculations. See “[Summarizing Functions](#)” on page 190 for information on related functions.

## Anonymous Functions

So far, we've mostly seen named functions in R. However, because functions are just objects in R, it is possible to create functions that do not have names. These are called *anonymous functions*. Anonymous functions are usually passed as arguments to other functions. If you're new to functional languages, this concept might seem strange, so let's start with a very simple example.

We will define a function that takes another function as its argument and then applies that function to the number 3. Let's call the function `apply.to.three`, and we will call the argument `f`:

```
> apply.to.three <- function(f) {f(3)}
```

Now let's call `apply.to.three` with an anonymous function assigned to argument `f`. As an example, let's create a simple function that takes one argument and multiplies that argument by 7:

```
> apply.to.three(function(x) {x * 7})  
[1] 21
```

Here's how this works. When the R interpreter evaluates the expression `apply.to.three(function(x) {x * 7})`, it assigns the argument `f` to the anonymous function `function(x) {x * 7}`. The interpreter then begins evaluating the expression `f(3)`. The interpreter assigns `3` to the argument `x` for the anonymous function. Finally, the interpreter evaluates the expression `3 * 7` and returns the result.

Anonymous functions are a very powerful tool used in many places in R. Above, we used the `sapply` function to apply a named function to every element in an array. You can also pass an anonymous function as an argument to `sapply`:

```
> a <- c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)  
> sapply(a, function(x) {x + 1})  
[1] 2 3 4 5 6
```

This family of functions is a good alternative to control structures. *Control structures* are language features like if-then statements, loops, and go-to statements. For example, suppose that you had a vector of numerical values and wanted to calculate the square of each element. You could do this using a loop:

```
> v <- 1:20  
> w <- NULL  
> for (i in 1:length(v)) {w[i] <- v[i]^2}  
> w  
[1] 1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 81 100 121 144 169 196 225 256 289 324 361 400
```

However, you can do the same thing using an “apply” statement like this:

```
> v <- 1:20
> w <- sapply(v, function(i) {i^2})
> w
[1] 1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 81 100 121 144 169 196 225 256 289 324 361 400
```

I think it's more clear what the second code snippet does: it applies the function to each element in `v`. (Additionally, the `apply` function will be faster. See “[Lookup Performance in R](#)” on page 509 for more information.)

By the way, it is possible to define an anonymous function and apply it directly to an argument. Here's an example:

```
> (function(x) {x+1})(1)
[1] 2
```

Notice that the function object needs to be enclosed in parentheses. This is because function calls, expressions of the form  $f(arguments)$ , have very high precedence in R.<sup>3</sup>

## Properties of Functions

R includes a set of functions for getting more information about function objects. To see the set of arguments accepted by a function, use the `args` function. The `args` function returns a function object with `NULL` as the body. Here are a few examples:

```
> args(sin)
function (x)
NULL
> args(`?`)
function (e1, e2)
NULL
> args(args)
function (name)
NULL
> args(lm)
function (formula, data, subset, weights, na.action, method = "qr",
model = TRUE, x = FALSE, y = FALSE, qr = TRUE, singular.ok = TRUE,
contrasts = NULL, offset, ...)
NULL
```

3. If you omit the parentheses in this example, you will not initially get an error:

```
> function(x) {x+1}(1)
function(x) {x+1}(1)
```

This is because you will have created an object that is a function taking one argument (`x`) with the body `{x+1}(1)`. There is no error generated because the body is not evaluated. If you were to assign this object to a symbol (so that you can easily apply it to an argument and see what it does), you will find that this function attempts to call a function returned by evaluating the expression `{x + 1}`. In order not to get an error or an input of class `c`, you would need to register a generic function that took as input an object of class `c` (`x` in this expression) and a numerical value (1 in this expression) and returned a function object. So omitting the parentheses is not wrong; it is a valid R expression. However, this is almost certainly not what you meant to write.

If you would like to manipulate the list of arguments with R code, then you may find the `formals` function more useful. The `formals` function will return a pairlist object, with a pair for every argument. The name of each pair will correspond to each argument name in the function. When a default value is defined, the corresponding value in the pairlist will be set to that value. When no default is defined, the value will be `NULL`. The `formals` function is available only for functions written in R (objects of type `closure`) and not for built-in functions.

Here is a simple example of using `formals` to extract information about the arguments to a function:

```
> f <- function(x, y=1, z=2) {x + y + z}
> f.formals <- formals(f)
> f.formals
$x
$y
[1] 1

$z
[1] 2

> f.formals$x

> f.formals$y
[1] 1
> f.formals$z
[1] 2
```

You may also use `formals` on the left-hand side of an assignment statement to change the formal argument for a function. For example:

```
> f.formals$y <- 3
> formals(f) <- f.formals
> args(f)
function (x, y = 3, z = 2)
NULL
```

R provides a convenience function called `alist` to construct an argument list. You simply specify the argument list as if you were defining a function. (Note that for an argument with no default, you do not need to include a value but still need to include the equals sign.)

```
> f <- function(x, y=1, z=2) {x + y + z}
> formals(f) <- alist(x=, y=100, z=200)
> f
function (x, y = 100, z = 200)
{
  x + y + z
}
```

R provides a similar function called `body` that can be used to return the body of a function:

```
> body(f)
{
  x + y + z
}
```

Like the `formals` function, the `body` function may be used on the left-hand side of an assignment statement:

```
> f
function (x, y = 3, z = 2)
{
  x + y + z
}
> body(f) <- expression({x * y * z})
> f
function (x, y = 3, z = 2)
{
  x * y * z
}
```

Note that the body of a function has type `expression`, so when you assign a new value it must have the type `expression`.

## Argument Order and Named Arguments

When you specify a function in R, you assign a name to each argument in the function. Inside the body of the function, you can access the arguments by name. For example, consider the following function definition:

```
> addTheLog <- function(first, second) {first + log(second)}
```

This function takes two arguments, called `first` and `second`. Inside the body of the function, you can refer to the arguments by these names.

When you call a function in R, you can specify the arguments in three different ways (in order of priority):

1. Exact names. The arguments will be assigned to *full* names explicitly given in the argument list. Full argument names are matched first:

```
> addTheLog(second=exp(4), first=1)
[1] 5
```

2. Partially matching names. The arguments will be assigned to *partial* names explicitly given in the arguments list:

```
> addTheLog(s=exp(4), f=1)
[1] 5
```

3. Argument order. The arguments will be assigned to names in the order in which they were given:

```
> addTheLog(1, exp(4))
[1] 5
```

When you are using generic functions, you cannot specify the argument name of the object on which the generic function is being called. You can still specify names for other arguments.

When possible, it's a good practice to use exact argument names. Specifying full argument names does require extra typing, but it makes your code easier to read and removes ambiguity.

Partial names are a deprecated feature because they can lead to confusion. As an example, consider the following function:

```
> f <- function(arg1=10, arg2=20) {  
+   print(paste("arg1:", arg1))  
+   print(paste("arg2:", arg2))  
+ }
```

When you call this function with one ambiguous argument, it will cause an error:

```
> f(arg=1)  
Error in f(arg = 1) : argument 1 matches multiple formal arguments
```

However, when you specify two arguments, the ambiguous argument could refer to either of the other arguments:

```
> f(arg=1, arg2=2)  
[1] "arg1: 1"  
[1] "arg2: 2"  
> f(arg=1, arg1=2)  
[1] "arg1: 2"  
[1] "arg2: 1"
```

## Side Effects

All functions in R return a value. Some functions also do other things: change variables in the current environment (or in other environments), plot graphics, load or save files, or access the network. These operations are called *side effects*.

## Changes to Other Environments

We have already seen some examples of functions with side effects. In [Chapter 8](#), we showed how to directly access symbols and objects in an environment (or in parent environments). We also showed how to access objects on the call stack.

An important function that causes side effects is the `<->`-operator. This operator takes the following form: `var <-> value`. This operator will cause the interpreter to first search through the current environment to find the symbol `var`. If the interpreter does not find the symbol `var` in the current environment, then the interpreter will next search through the parent environment. The interpreter will recursively search through environments until it either finds the symbol `var` or reaches the global environment. If it reaches the global environment before the symbol `var` is found, then R will assign `value` to `var` in the global environment.

Here is an example that compares the behavior of the `<-` assignment operator and the `<->` operator:

```
> x  
Error: object "x" not found  
> doesnt.assign.x <- function(i) {x <- i}  
> doesnt.assign.x(4)  
> x  
Error: object "x" not found  
> assigns.x <- function(i) {x <- i}  
> assigns.x(4)  
> x  
[1] 4
```

## Input/Output

R does a lot of stuff, but it's not completely self-contained. If you're using R, you'll probably want to load data from external files (or from the Internet) and save data to files. These input/output (I/O) actions are side effects, because they do things other than just return an object. We'll talk about these functions extensively in [Chapter 11](#).

## Graphics

Graphics functions are another example of side effects in R. Graphics functions may return objects, but they also plot graphics (either on screen or to files). We'll talk about these functions in Chapters [13](#) and [14](#).





# 10

---

## Object-Oriented Programming

At its heart, R is a functional programming language. But the R system includes some support for object-oriented programming (OOP). OOP has become the most popular paradigm for organizing computer software; it's used in most modern programming languages (Java, C#, Ruby, and Objective C, among others) and in quite a few old ones (Smalltalk, C++). Many R packages are written using R Objects, including the core statistics package, `lattice`, and `ggplot2`.

You don't need to use object-oriented programming techniques to work with R. Writing functional programs is a fine practice. Many people believe that it is easier to write programs using functional techniques, particularly when multiple parts of a program run concurrently; this has led to a resurgence of new functional languages like Scala and Clojure. I like functional programs but find object-oriented techniques convenient for representing complicated objects (such as statistical models or charts).

R includes two different mechanisms for object-oriented programming. As you may recall, the R language is derived from the S language. S's object-oriented programming system evolved over time. Around 1990, S version 3 (S3) introduced class attributes that allowed single-argument methods. Many R functions (such as the statistical modeling software) were implemented using S3 methods, so S3 methods are still around today. In S version 4 (S4), formal classes and methods were introduced that allowed multiple arguments, more abstract types, and more sophisticated inheritance. Many new packages were implemented using S4 methods (and you can find S4 implementations of many key statistical procedures as well). In particular, formal classes are used extensively in Bioconductor.

In this chapter, we'll begin with the newer mechanism, because it is more robust and flexible. I think it is wise to use S4 classes and methods for new software that needs to represent abstract concepts and that it is not a good idea to implement new S3 classes. However, you may want to change code that uses S3 classes and methods or use S3 classes and methods in new software. In “[Old-School OOP in R: S3](#)” on page 135, we'll talk about how the S3 system works and how to mix S3 and S4 classes.

# Overview of Object-Oriented Programming in R

Object-oriented programming is *not* the same thing as programming with objects. R is a very object-centric language; everything in R is an object. However, there is more to OOP than just objects. Here's a short description of what object-oriented programming means.

## Key Ideas

As an example of how object-oriented programming is used in R, we'll consider time series.<sup>1</sup> A time series is a sequence of measurements of a quantity over time. Measurements are taken at equally spaced intervals. Time series have some properties associated with them: a start time, an end time, a number of measurements, a frequency, and so forth.

In OOP, we would create a “time series” class to capture information about time series. A *class* is a formal definition for an object. Each individual time series object is called an *instance* of the class. A function that operates on a specific class of objects is called a *method*.

As a user of time series, you probably don't care too much about how time series are implemented. All you care about is that you know how to create a time series object and manipulate the object through methods. The time series could be stored as a data frame, a vector, or even a long text field. The process of separating the interface from the implementation is called *encapsulation*.

Suppose that we wanted to track the weight history of people over time. For this application, we'd like to keep all the same information as a time series, plus some additional information on individual people. It would be nice to be able to reuse the code for our time series class for objects in the weight history class. In OOP, it is possible to base one class on another and just specify what is different about the new class. This is called *inheritance*. We would say that the weight history class *inherits* from the time series class. We might also say that the time series class is a *super-class* of the weight history class and that the weight history class is a *subclass* of the time series class.

Suppose that you wanted to ask a question like “What is the period of the measurements in the class?” Ideally, it would be nice to have a single function name for finding this information, maybe called “*period*.” In OOP, allowing the same method name to be used for different objects is called *polymorphism*.

Finally, suppose that we implemented the weight history class by creating classes for each of its pieces: time series, personal attributes, and so on. The process of creating a new class from a set of other classes is called *composition*. In some

1. You may have noticed that I picked an example of a class that is already implemented in R. Time series objects are implemented by the `ts` class in the `stats` package. (I introduced `ts` objects in “[Time Series](#)” on page 94.) The implementation in the `stats` package is an example of an S3 class. We'll talk more about what that means, and how to use S3 and S4 classes together, next.

languages (like R), a class can inherit methods from more than one other class. This is called *multiple inheritance*.

## Implementation Example

If you’re familiar with object-oriented programming in other languages (like Java), you’ll find that most of the familiar concepts are included in R. However, the syntax and structure in R are different. In particular, you define a class with a call to a function (`setClass`) and define a method with a call to another function (`setMethod`). Before we describe R’s implementation of object-oriented programming in depth, let’s look at a quick example.

Let’s implement a class representing a time series. We’ll want to define a new object that contains the following information:

- A set of data values, sampled at periodic intervals over time
- A start time
- An end time
- The period of the time series

Clearly, some of this information is redundant; given many of the attributes of a time series, we can calculate the remaining attributes. Let’s start by defining a new class called “`TimeSeries`.” We’ll represent a time series by a numeric vector containing the data, a start time, and an end time. We can calculate units, frequency, and period from the start time, end time, and the length of the data vector. As a user of the class, it shouldn’t matter how we represent this information, but it does matter to the implementer.

In R, the places where information is stored in an object are called *slots*. We’ll name the slots `data`, `start`, and `end`. To create a class, we’ll use the `setClass` function:

```
> setClass("TimeSeries",
+   representation(
+     data="numeric",
+     start="POSIXct",
+     end="POSIXct"
+   )
+ )
```

The representation explains the class of the object contained in each slot. To create a new `TimeSeries` object, we will use the `new` function. (The `new` function is a generic *constructor* method for S4 objects.) The first argument specifies the class name; other arguments specify values for slots:

```
> my.TimeSeries <- new("TimeSeries",
+   data=c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6),
+   start=as.POSIXct("07/01/2009 0:00:00", tz="GMT",
+                   format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),
+   end=as.POSIXct("07/01/2009 0:05:00", tz="GMT",
+                  format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S")
+ )
```

There is a generic print method for new S4 classes in R that displays the slot names and the contents of each slot:

```
> my.TimeSeries
An object of class "TimeSeries"
Slot "data":
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6

Slot "start":
[1] "2009-07-01 GMT"

Slot "end":
[1] "2009-07-01 00:05:00 GMT"
```

Not all possible slot values are valid. We want to make sure that `end` occurs after `start` and that the lengths of `start` and `end` are both exactly 1. We can write a function to check the validity of a `TimeSeries` object. R allows you to specify a function that will be used to validate a specific class. We can specify this with the `setValidity` function:

```
> setValidity("TimeSeries",
+   function(object) {
+     object@start <= object@end &&
+     length(object@start) == 1 &&
+     length(object@end) == 1
+   }
+ )
Class "TimeSeries" [in ".GlobalEnv"]
```

Slots:

```
Name:      data    start    end
Class: numeric POSIXct POSIXct
```

You can now check that a `TimeSeries` object is valid with the `validObject` function:

```
> validObject(my.TimeSeries)
[1] TRUE
```

When we try to create a new `TimeSeries` object, R will check the validity of the new object and reject bad objects:

```
> good.TimeSeries <- new("TimeSeries",
+   data=c(7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12),
+   start=as.POSIXct("07/01/2009 0:06:00", tz="GMT",
+                     format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),
+   end=as.POSIXct("07/01/2009 0:11:00", tz="GMT",
+                  format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S")
+ )
> bad.TimeSeries <- new("TimeSeries",
+   data=c(7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12),
+   start=as.POSIXct("07/01/2009 0:06:00", tz="GMT",
+                     format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),
+   end=as.POSIXct("07/01/1999 0:11:00", tz="GMT",
+                  format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S")
+ )
Error in validObject(.Object) : invalid class "TimeSeries" object: FALSE
```

(You can also specify the validity method at the time you are creating a class; see the full definition of `setClass` for more information.)

Now that we have defined the class, let's create some methods that use the class. One property of a time series is its period. We can create a method for extracting the period from the time series. This method will calculate the duration between observations based on the length of the vector in the `data` slot, the `start` time, and the end time:

```
> period.TimeSeries <- function(object) {
+   if (length(object@data) > 1) {
+     (object@end - object@start) / (length(object@data) - 1)
+   } else {
+     Inf
+   }
+ }
```

Suppose that you wanted to create a set of functions to derive the data series from other objects (when appropriate), regardless of the type of object (i.e., polymorphism). R provides a mechanism called *generic functions* for doing this.<sup>2</sup> You can define a generic name for a set of functions (like “series”). When you call “series” on an object, R will find the correct method to execute based on the class of the object. Let's create a function for extracting the data series from a generic object:

```
> series <- function(object) {object@data}
> setGeneric("series")
[1] "series"
> series(my.TimeSeries)
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6
```

The call to `setGeneric` redefined `series` as a generic function whose default method is the old body for `series`:

```
> series
standardGeneric for "series" defined from package ".GlobalEnv"

function (object)
standardGeneric("series")
<environment: 0x19ac4f4>
Methods may be defined for arguments: object
Use showMethods("series") for currently available ones.
> showMethods("series")
Function: series (package .GlobalEnv)
object="ANY"
object="TimeSeries"
(inherited from: object="ANY")
```

As a further example, suppose we wanted to create a new generic function called “`period`” for extracting a period from an object and wanted to specify that the function `period.TimeSeries` should be used for `TimeSeries` objects, but the generic method should be used for other objects. We could do this with the following commands:

2. In object-oriented programming terms, this is called *overloading a function*.

```

> period <- function(object) {object@period}
> setGeneric("period")
[1] "period"
> setMethod(period, signature=c("TimeSeries"), definition=period.TimeSeries)
[1] "period"
attr(period, "package")
[1] ".GlobalEnv"
> showMethods("period")
Function: period (package .GlobalEnv)
object="ANY"
object="TimeSeries"

```

Now we can calculate the period of a `TimeSeries` object by just calling the generic function `period`:

```

> period(my.TimeSeries)
Time difference of 1 mins

```

It is also possible to define your own methods for existing generic functions, such as `summary`. Let's define a `summary` method for our new class:

```

> setMethod("summary",
+   signature="TimeSeries",
+   definition=function(object) {
+     print(paste(object@start,
+                 " to ",
+                 object@end,
+                 sep="", collapse=""))
+     print(paste(object@data, sep="", collapse=""))
+   }
+ )
Creating a new generic function for "summary" in ".GlobalEnv"
[1] "summary"
> summary(my.TimeSeries)
[1] "2009-07-01 to 2009-07-01 00:05:00"
[1] "1,2,3,4,5,6"

```

You can even define a new method for an existing operator:

```

> setMethod("[",
+   signature=c("TimeSeries"),
+   definition=function(x, i, j, ..., drop) {
+     x@data[i]
+   }
+ )
[1] "["
> my.TimeSeries[3]
[1] 3

```

(As a quick side note, this works for only some built-in functions. For example, you can't define a new `print` method this way. See the help file for `S4groupGeneric` for a list of generic functions that you can redefine this way, and “[Old-School OOP in R: S3](#)” on page 135 for an explanation on why this doesn't always work.)

Now let's show how to implement a `WeightHistory` class based on the `TimeSeries` class. One way to do this is to create a `WeightHistory` class that inherits from the `TimeSeries` class but adds extra fields to represent a person's name and height. We can do this with the `setClass` command by stating that the new class inherits from the `TimeSeries` class and specifying the extra slots in the `WeightHistory` class:

```
> setClass(  
+   "WeightHistory",  
+   representation(  
+     height = "numeric",  
+     name = "character"  
+   ),  
+   contains = "TimeSeries"  
+ )
```

Now we can create a `WeightHistory` object, populating slots named in `TimeSeries` and the new slots for `WeightHistory`:

```
> john.doe <- new("WeightHistory",  
+   data=c(170, 169, 171, 168, 170, 169),  
+   start=as.POSIXct("02/14/2009 0:00:00", tz="GMT",  
+     format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),  
+   end=as.POSIXct("03/28/2009 0:00:00",tz="GMT",  
+     format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),  
+   height=72,  
+   name="John Doe")  
> john.doe  
An object of class "WeightHistory"  
Slot "height":  
[1] 72  
  
Slot "name":  
[1] "John Doe"  
  
Slot "data":  
numeric(0)  
  
Slot "start":  
[1] "2009-02-14 GMT"  
  
Slot "end":  
[1] "2009-03-28 GMT"
```

R will validate that the new `TimeSeries` object contained within `WeightHistory` is valid. (You can test this yourself.)

Let's consider an alternative way to construct a weight history. Suppose that we had created a `Person` class containing a person's name and height:

```
> setClass(  
+   "Person",  
+   representation(  
+     height = "numeric",  
+     name = "character"  
+   ),  
+ )
```

Now we can create an alternative weight history that inherits from both a `TimeSeries` object and a `Person` object:

```
> setClass(  
+   "AltWeightHistory",  
+   contains = c("TimeSeries", "Person")  
+ )
```

This alternative implementation works identically to the original implementation, but the new implementation is slightly cleaner. This implementation inherits methods from both the `TimeSeries` and the `Person` classes.

Suppose that we also had created a class to represent cats:

```
> setClass(  
+   "Cat",  
+   representation(  
+     breed = "character",  
+     name = "character"  
+   )  
+ )
```

Notice that both `Person` and `Cat` objects contain a `name` attribute. Suppose that we wanted to create a method for both classes that checked if the name was “Fluffy.” An efficient way to do this in R is to create a virtual class that is a superclass of both the `Person` and the `Cat` classes and then write an `is.fluffy` method for the superclass. (You can write methods for a virtual class but can’t create objects from that class because the representation of those objects is ambiguous.)

```
> setClassUnion(  
+   "NamedThing",  
+   c("Person", "Cat")  
+ )
```

We could then create an `is.fluffy` method for the `NamedThing` class that would apply to both `Person` and `Cat` objects. (Note that if we were to define a method of `is.fluffy` for the `Person` class, this would override the method from the parent class.) An added benefit is that we could now check to see if an object was a `NamedThing`:

```
> jane.doe <- new("AltWeightHistory",  
+   data=c(130, 129, 131, 128, 130, 129),  
+   start=as.POSIXct("02/14/2009 0:00:00", tz="GMT",  
+     format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),  
+   end=as.POSIXct("03/28/2009 0:00:00", tz="GMT",  
+     format="%m/%d/%Y %H:%M:%S"),  
+   height=67,  
+   name="Jane Doe")  
> is(jane.doe,"NamedThing")  
[1] TRUE  
> is(john.doe,"TimeSeries")  
[1] TRUE
```

# Object-Oriented Programming in R: S4 Classes

Now that we've seen a quick introduction to object-oriented programming in R, let's talk about the functions for building classes in more depth.

## Defining Classes

To create a new class in R, you use the `setClass` function:

```
setClass(Class, representation, prototype, contains=character(),
         validity, access, where, version, sealed, package,
         S3methods = FALSE)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `setClass`.

| Argument       | Description   | Default   |
|----------------|---|---|
| Class          | A character value specifying the name for the new class. (This is the only required argument.)  |   |
| representation | A named list of the different slots in the class and the object name associated with each one. (You can specify "ANY" if you want to allow arbitrary objects to be stored in the slot.) |   |
| prototype      | An object containing the default object for slots in the class.   |   |
| contains       | A character vector containing the names of the classes that this class extends (usually called <i>superclasses</i> ).   | character()   |
| validity       | A function that checks the validity of an object of this class. (Default is no validity check.) May be changed later with <code>setValidity</code> .                                    |   |
| access         | Not used; included for compatibility with S-PLUS.   |   |
| where          | The environment in which to store the object definition.  | Default is the environment in which <code>setClass</code> was called.         |
| version        | Not used; included for compatibility with S-PLUS.   |   |
| sealed         | A logical value to indicate if this class can be redefined by calling <code>setClass</code> again with the same class name.   |   |
| package        | A character value specifying the package name for this class.   | Default is the name of the package in which <code>setClass</code> was called. |
| S3methods      | A logical value specifying whether S3 methods may be written for this class.  | FALSE   |

To simplify the creation of new classes, the `methods` package includes two functions for creating the representation and prototype arguments, called `representation` and `prototype`. These functions are very helpful when defining classes that extend other classes as a data part, have multiple superclasses, or combine extending a class and slots.

Some slot names are prohibited in R because they are reserved for attributes. (By the way, objects can have both slots and attributes.) Forbidden names include "class", "comment", "dim", "dimnames", "names", "row.names" and "tsp".

If a class extends one of the basic R types (as described in [Table 10-1](#)), there will be a slot called `.Data` containing the data from the basic object type. R code that works on the built-in class will work with objects of the new class; they will just act on the `.Data` part of the object.

You can explicitly define an inheritance relationship with the `setIs` function. (This is an alternative to using the `contains` argument for `setClass`.)

```
setIs(class1, class2, test=NULL, coerce=NULL, replace=NULL,
      by = character(), where = topenv(parent.frame()), classDef = ,
      extensionObject = NULL, doComplete = TRUE)
```

To explicitly set a validation function for a class, you use the `setValidity` function:

```
setValidity(Class, method, where = topenv(parent.frame()) )
```

Whenever you create a new object, R will execute the `initialize` method of the class (if the method is available). Programmers usually use the `initialize` method to calculate values or create additional objects and assign them to slots. See “[Methods](#)” on page 132 for information on how to add a method for the generic function `initialize`.

R also allows you to define a virtual class that is a superclass of several other classes. This can be useful if the virtual class does not contain any data by itself but you want to create a set of methods that can be used by a set of other classes. To do this, you would use the `setClassUnion` function:

```
setClassUnion(name, members, where)
```

This function takes the following arguments.

| Argument             | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>name</code>    | A character value specifying the name of the new superclass |
| <code>members</code> | A character vector specifying the names of the subclasses   |
| <code>where</code>   | The environment in which to create the new superclass       |

## New Objects

You can create a new object in R through a call to the class’s `new` method. (In object-oriented programming lingo, this is called a *constructor*.) Calling:

```
new(c,...)
```

returns a new object of class `c`. It is possible to fill data into the slots of the new object by specifying named arguments in the call to `new`; each slot will be set to the value specified by the corresponding named argument. If a method named `initialize` exists for class `c`, then the function `initialize` will be called after the new object is created (and the slots are filled in with the optional arguments).

## Accessing Slots

You can fetch the value stored in slot `slot_name` of object `object_name` through a call to the function `slot(slot_name, object_name)`. R includes a special operator for

accessing the objects stored inside another object that is a shorthand for the slot function: the @ operator. This operator takes the form `object_name@slot_name`.

It is also possible to set the object stored in a slot with the familiar assignment operator. For example, to set the “month” slot of a “birthdate” object to the value “June,” you would call:

```
> birthdate@month <- "June"
```

or, alternatively:

```
> slot(birthdate, month) <- "June"
```

By default, when changing a value in an object, R will check the validity of the new object. However, it is possible to override this check by using the `check=FALSE` option when calling `slot`:

```
> slot(birthdate, month, check=FALSE) <- "June"
```

Doing so is usually unwise and unnecessary.

## Working with Objects

To test whether an object `o` is a member of a class `c`, you can use the function `is(o, c)`. To test whether a class `c1` extends a second class `c2`, you can use the function `extends(c1, c2)`.

To get a list of the slots associated with an object `o`, you can use the function `slotNames(o)`. To get the classes associated with those slots, use `getSlots(o)`. To determine the names of the slots in a class `c`, you can use the function `slotNames(c)`. Somewhat nonintuitively, `getSlots(c)` returns the set of classes associated with each slot.

## Creating Coercion Methods

It is possible to convert an object `o` to class `c` by calling `as(o, c)`.

To enable coercion for a class that you define, make sure to register coercion methods with the `setAs` function:

```
setAs(from, to, def, replace, where = topenv(parent.frame()))
```

This function takes the following arguments.

| Argument             | Description  | Default                             |
|----------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| <code>from</code>    | A character value specifying the class name of the input object.   |                                     |
| <code>to</code>      | A character value specifying the class name of the output object.  |                                     |
| <code>def</code>     | A function that takes an argument of type <code>from</code> and returns a value of type <code>to</code> . In other words, a function that performs the conversion.   |                                     |
| <code>replace</code> | A second function that may be used in a replacement method (that is, the method to use if the <code>as</code> function is used as the destination in an assignment statement). This is a function of two arguments: <code>from</code> and <code>value</code> . |                                     |
| <code>where</code>   | The environment in which to store the definition.  | <code>topenv(parent.frame())</code> |

## Methods

In [Chapter 9](#), we showed how to use functions in R. An important part of a function definition in R is the set of arguments for a function. As you may recall, a function accepts only one set of arguments. When you assign a function directly to a symbol, you can only call that function with a single set of arguments.

Generic functions are a system for allowing the same name to be used for many different functions, with many different sets of arguments, from many different classes.

Suppose that you define a class called `meat` and a class called `dairy` and a method called `serve`. In R, you could assign one function to `serve` a `meat` object and another function to `serve` a `dairy` object. You could even assign a third function that took both a `meat` object and a `dairy` object as arguments and allowed you to `serve` both of them together. This would not be kosher in some other languages, but it's OK in R.<sup>3</sup>

The first step in assigning methods is to create an appropriate generic function (if the function doesn't already exist). To do this, you use the `setGeneric` function to create a generic method:

```
setGeneric(name, def= , group=list(), valueClass=character(),
           where= , package= , signature= , useAsDefault= ,
           genericFunction= , simpleInheritanceOnly = )
```

This function takes the following arguments.

| Argument                           | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code>name</code>                  | A character value specifying the name of the generic function.  |
| <code>def</code>                   | An optional function defining the generic function.   |
| <code>group</code>                 | An optional character value specifying the group generic to which this function belongs. See the help file for <code>S4groupGeneric</code> for more information.  |
| <code>valueClass</code>            | An optional character value specifying the name of the class (or classes) to which objects returned by this function must belong.   |
| <code>where</code>                 | The environment in which to store the new generic function.   |
| <code>package</code>               | A character value specifying the package name with which the generic function is associated.  |
| <code>signature</code>             | An optional character vector specifying the names of the formal arguments (as labels) and classes for the arguments to the function (as values). The class name "ANY" can be used to mean that arguments of any type are allowed. |
| <code>useAsDefault</code>          | A logical value or function specifying the function to use as the default method. See the help file for more information.   |
| <code>genericFunction</code>       | Not currently used.   |
| <code>simpleInheritanceOnly</code> | A logical value specifying whether to require that methods be inherited through simple inheritance only.  |

3. In technical terms, R's implementation is called *parametric polymorphism*.

To associate a method with a class (or, more specifically, a signature with a generic function), you use the `setMethod` function:

```
setMethod(f, signature=character(), definition,
          where = topenv(parent.frame()),
          valueClass = NULL, sealed = FALSE)
```

Here is a description of the arguments for `setMethod`.

| Argument   | Description   | Default                |
|------------|---|------------------------|
| f          | A generic function or the name of a generic function.   |                        |
| signature  | A vector containing the names of the formal arguments (as labels) and classes for the arguments to the function (as values). The class name "ANY" can be used to mean that arguments of any type are allowed. | character()            |
| definition | The function to be called when the method is evaluated.   |                        |
| where      | The environment in which the method was defined.  | topenv(parent.frame()) |
| valueClass | Not used; included for backward compatibility.  | NULL                   |
| sealed     | Used to indicate if this class can be redefined by calling <code>setClass</code> again with the same class name.  | FALSE                  |

## Managing Methods

The `methods` package includes a number of functions for managing generic methods.

| Function                   | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <code>isGeneric</code>     | Checks if there is a generic function with the given name.   |
| <code>isGroup</code>       | Checks if there is a group generic function with the given name.   |
| <code>removeGeneric</code> | Removes all the methods for a generic function and the generic function itself.  |
| <code>dumpMethod</code>    | Dumps the method for this generic function and signature.  |
| <code>findFunction</code>  | Returns a list of either the positions on the search list or the current top-level environment on which a function object for a given name exists. |
| <code>dumpMethods</code>   | Dumps all the methods for a generic function.  |
| <code>signature</code>     | Returns the names of the generic functions that have methods defined on a specific path.   |
| <code>removeMethods</code> | Removes all the methods for a generic function.  |
| <code>setGeneric</code>    | Creates a new generic function of the given name.  |

The `methods` package also includes functions for managing methods.

| Function   | Description  |
|--|--|
| <code>getMethod,</code><br><code>selectMethod</code> | Returns the method for a particular function and signature.            |
| <code>existsMethod,</code><br><code>hasMethod</code> | Tests if a method (specified by a specific name and signature) exists. |

| Function                 | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>findMethod</code>  | Returns the package(s) that contain a method for this function and signature. |
| <code>showMethods</code> | Shows the set of methods associated with an S4 generic.                       |

For more information on these functions, see the corresponding help files.

## Basic Classes

Classes for built-in types are shown in [Table 10-1](#); these are often called *basic classes*. All classes are built on top of these classes. Additionally, it is possible to write new methods for these classes that override the defaults.

*Table 10-1. Classes of built-in types*

| Category   | Object Type | Class       |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| Vectors    | integer     | integer     |
|            | double      | numeric     |
|            | complex     | complex     |
|            | character   | character   |
|            | logical     | logical     |
|            | raw         | raw         |
| Compound   | list        | list        |
|            | pairlist    | pairlist    |
|            | S4          |             |
|            | environment | environment |
| Special    | any         |             |
|            | NULL        | NULL        |
|            | ...         |             |
| R language | symbol      | name        |
|            | promise     |             |
|            | language    | call        |
|            | expression  | expression  |
|            | externalptr | externalptr |
| Functions  | closure     | function    |
|            | special     | function    |
|            | builtin     | function    |

The vector classes (integer, numeric, complex, character, logical, and raw) all extend the vector class. The vector class is a virtual class.

## More Help

Many tools for working with classes are included in the `methods` package, so you can find additional help on classes with the command `library(help="methods")`.

## Old-School OOP in R: S3

If you want to implement a complex project in R, you should use S4 objects and classes. As we saw above, S4 classes implement many features of modern object-oriented programming languages: formal class definitions, simple and multiple inheritance, parameteric polymorphism, and encapsulation. Unfortunately, S3 classes are implemented and used differently from S4 objects and don't implement many features that enable good software engineering practices.

Unfortunately, it's very hard to avoid S3 objects in R because many important and commonly used R functions were written before S4 objects were implemented. For example, most of the modeling tools in the `stats` package were written with S3 objects. In order to understand, modify, or extend this software, you have to know how S3 classes are implemented.

### S3 Classes

S3 classes are implemented through object attributes. An S3 object is simply a primitive R object with additional attributes, including a class name. There is no formal definition for an S3 object; you can manually change the attributes, including the class. (S3 objects are very similar to objects in prototype-based languages such as JavaScript.)

Above, we used time series as an example of an S4 class. There is an existing S3 class for representing time series, called “`ts`” objects. Let's create a sample time series object and look at how it is implemented. Specifically, we'll look at the attributes of the object and then use `typeof` and `unclass` to examine the underlying object:

```
> my.ts <- ts(data=c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5), start=c(2009, 2), frequency=12)
> my.ts
    Feb Mar Apr May Jun
2009   1   2   3   4   5
> attributes(my.ts)
$tsp
[1] 2009.083 2009.417   12.000

$class
[1] "ts"

> typeof(my.ts)
[1] "double"
> unclass(my.ts)
[1] 1 2 3 4 5
attr(,"tsp")
[1] 2009.083 2009.417   12.000
```

As you can see, a `ts` object is just a numeric vector (of doubles), with two attributes: `class` and `tsp`. The `class` attribute is just the name “`ts`,” and the `tsp` attribute is just a vector with a start time, end time, and frequency. You can’t access attributes in an `S3` object using the same operator that you use to access slots in an `S4` object:

```
> my.ts@tsp  
Error: trying to get slot "tsp" from an object (class "ts")  
      that is not an S4 object
```

`S3` classes lack the structure of `S3` objects. Inheritance is implemented informally, and encapsulation is not enforced by the language.<sup>4</sup> `S3` classes also don’t allow parametric polymorphism. `S3` classes do, however, allow simple polymorphism. It is possible to define `S3` generic functions and to dispatch by object type.

## S3 Methods

`S3` generic functions work by naming convention, not by explicitly registering methods for different classes. Here is how to create a generic function using `S3` classes:

1. Pick a name for the generic function. We’ll call this `gname`.
2. Create a function named `gname`. In the body for `gname`, call `UseMethod("gname")`.
3. For each class that you want to use with `gname`, create a function called `gname.classname` whose first argument is an object of class `classname`.

Rather than fabricating an example, let’s look at an `S3` generic function in R: `plot`:

```
> plot  
function (x, y, ...)  
UseMethod("plot")  
<bytecode: 0x106c21140>  
<environment: namespace:graphics>
```

When you call `plot` on a function, `plot` calls `UseMethod("plot")`. `UseMethod` looks at the class of the object `x`. It then looks for a function named `plot.class` and calls `plot.class(x, y, ...)`.

For example, we defined a new `TimeSeries` class above. To add a `plot` method for `TimeSeries` objects, we simply create a function named `plot.TimeSeries`:

```
> plot.TimeSeries <- function(object, ...) {  
+   plot(object@data, ...)  
+ }
```

So we could now call:

```
> plot(my.TimeSeries)
```

and R would, in turn, call `plot.TimeSeries(my.TimeSeries)`.

The function `UseMethod` dispatches to the appropriate method, depending on the class of the first argument’s calling function. `UseMethod` iterates through each class

4. If the attribute `class` is a vector with more than one element, then the first element is interpreted as the class of the object, and other elements name classes that the object “inherits” from. That makes inheritance a property of objects, not classes.

in the object's class vector, until it finds a suitable method. If it finds no suitable method, `UseMethod` looks for a function for the class "default." (A closely related function, `NextMethod`, is used in a method called by `UseMethod`; it calls the next available method for an object. See the help file for more information.)

## Using S3 Classes in S4 Classes

You can't specify an S3 class for a slot in an S4 class. To use an S3 class as a slot in an S4 class, you need to create an S4 class based on the S3 class. A simple way to do this is through the function `setOldClass`:

```
setOldClass(Classes, prototype, where, test = FALSE, S4Class)
```

This function takes the following arguments.

| Argument  | Description  | Default                   |
|-----------|--|---------------------------|
| Classes   | A character vector specifying the names of the old-style classes.  |                           |
| prototype | An object to use as a prototype; this will be used as the default object for the S4 class.   |                           |
| where     | An environment specifying where to store the class definition.   | The top-level environment |
| test      | A logical value specifying whether to explicitly test inheritance for the object. Specify <code>test=TRUE</code> if there can be multiple inheritance. | FALSE                     |
| S4Class   | A class definition for an S4 class or a class name for an S4 class. This will be used to define the new class.   |                           |

## Finding Hidden S3 Methods

Sometimes, you may encounter cases where individual methods are hidden. The author of a package may choose to hide individual methods in order to encapsulate details of the implementation within the package; hiding methods encourages you to use the generic functions. For example, individual methods for the generic method `histogram` (in the `lattice` package) are hidden:

```
> library(lattice)
> methods(histogram)
[1] histogram.factor* histogram.formula* histogram.numeric*
Nonvisible functions are asterisked > histogram.factor()
Error: could not find function "histogram.factor"
```

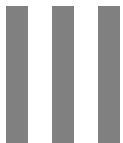
Sometimes, you might want to retrieve the hidden methods (for example, to view the R code). To retrieve the hidden method, use the function `getS3method`. For example, to fetch the code for `histogram.formula`, try the following command:

```
> getS3method(f="histogram", class="formula")
```

Alternatively, you can use the function `getAnywhere`:

```
> getAnywhere(histogram.formula)
```





---

## Working with Data

This part of the book explains how to accomplish some common tasks with R: loading data, transforming data, and saving data. These techniques are useful for any type of data that you want to work with in R.





# 11

---

## Saving, Loading, and Editing Data

This chapter explains how to load data into R, save data objects from R, and edit data using R.

### Entering Data Within R

If you are entering a small number of observations, entering the data directly into R might be a good approach. There are a couple of different ways to enter data into R.

### Entering Data Using R Commands

Many of the examples in Parts I and II show how to create new objects directly on the R console. If you are entering a small amount of data, this might be a good approach.

As we have seen before, to create a vector, use the `c` function:

```
> salary <- c(18700000, 14626720, 14137500, 13980000, 12916666)
> position <- c("QB", "QB", "DE", "QB", "QB")
> team <- c("Colts", "Patriots", "Panthers", "Bengals", "Giants")
> name.last <- c("Manning", "Brady", "Pepper", "Palmer", "Manning")
> name.first <- c("Peyton", "Tom", "Julius", "Carson", "Eli")
```

It's often convenient to put these vectors together into a data frame. To create a data frame, use the `data.frame` function to combine the vectors:

```
> top.5.salaries <- data.frame(name.last, name.first, team, position, salary)
> top.5.salaries
  name.last name.first    team position   salary
1 Manning      Peyton    Colts      QB 18700000
2 Brady        Tom       Patriots     QB 14626720
3 Pepper       Julius     Panthers    DE 14137500
4 Palmer       Carson    Bengals      QB 13980000
5 Manning      Eli      Giants      QB 12916666
```

## Using the Edit GUI

Entering data using individual statements can be awkward for more than a handful of observations. (That's why my example above included only five observations.) Luckily, R provides a nice GUI for editing tabular data: the data editor.

To edit an object with the data editor, use the `edit` function. The `edit` function will open the data editor and return the edited object. For example, to edit the `top.5.salaries` data frame, you would use the following command:

```
> top.5.salaries <- edit(top.5.salaries)
```

Notice that you need to assign the output of the `edit` function to a symbol; otherwise, the edits will be lost. The data editor is designed to edit tabular data objects, specifically data frames and matrices. The `edit` function can be used with other types of objects, such as vectors, functions, and lists, but it will open a text editor.

Alternatively, you can use the `fix` function. The `fix` function calls `edit` on its argument and then assigns the result to the same symbol in the calling environment. For the example above, here is how you would use `fix`:

```
> fix(top.5.salaries)
```

On Microsoft Windows, there is a menu item “Data Editor...” under the Edit menu that allows you to enter the name of an object into a dialog box and then calls `fix` on the object.

### Windows Data Editor

The data editor on Microsoft Windows is very intuitive. To edit a value, simply click in the cell. To change the name of a column (or to change it from numeric to character), click on the column name and a window will pop up allowing you to make those changes. You may add additional rows and columns simply by entering values into empty cells (see [Figure 11-1](#)).

### Mac OS X Data Editor

On Mac OS X, the edit window looks (and works) a bit differently. You may use the data editor with data frames or matrices (see [Figure 11-2](#)).

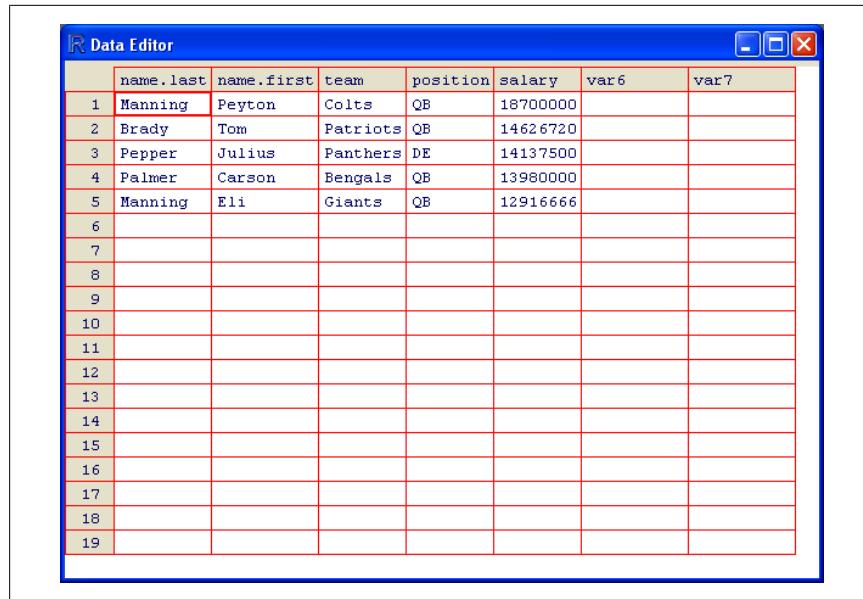


Figure 11-1. Editor window on Windows

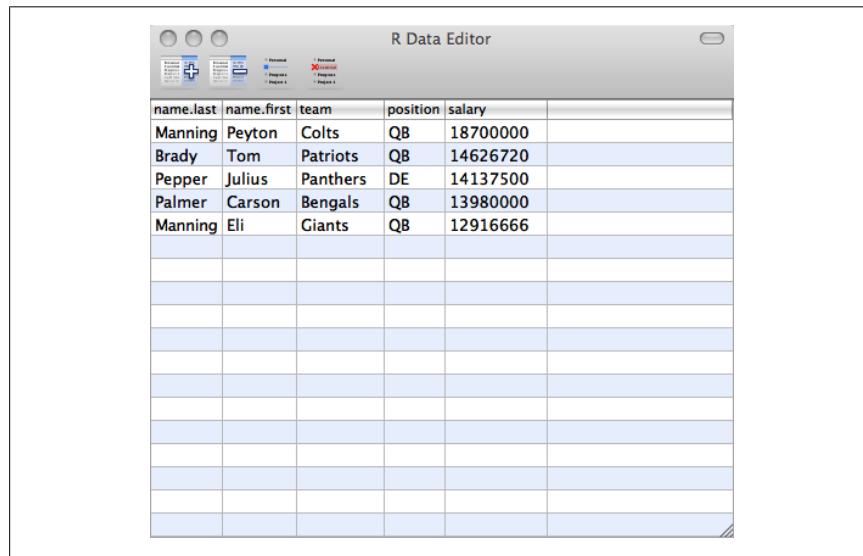


Figure 11-2. Editor window on Mac OS X

You can click on a data cell to edit the value. The buttons on the top have the following effects (from left to right): add a column, delete a column, add a row and delete a row. You can change a column's width by clicking on the lines separating

that column from its neighbor and dragging it. You cannot change variable types or names from this editor.

### X Windows (Linux) Data Editor

A data editor GUI is also available on X Windows systems. Like the Microsoft Windows version, you can edit the column names. For convenience, this editor includes Copy, Paste, and Quit buttons (see Figure 11-3).

|    | name.last | name.first | team     | position | salary   |
|----|-----------|------------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1  | Manning   | Peyton     | Colts    | QB       | 18700000 |
| 2  | Brady     | Tom        | Patriots | QB       | 14626720 |
| 3  | Pepper    | Julius     | Panthers | DE       | 14137500 |
| 4  | Palmer    | Carson     | Bengals  | QB       | 13980000 |
| 5  | Manning   | Eli        | Giants   | QB       | 12916666 |
| 6  |           |            |          |          |          |
| 7  |           |            |          |          |          |
| 8  |           |            |          |          |          |
| 9  |           |            |          |          |          |
| 10 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 11 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 12 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 13 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 14 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 15 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 16 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 17 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 18 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 19 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 20 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 21 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 22 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 23 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 24 |           |            |          |          |          |
| 25 |           |            |          |          |          |

Figure 11-3. Data editor on X Windows

### R Data Editor Versus Spreadsheets

The R data editor can be convenient for inspecting a data frame or a matrix or maybe for editing a couple of values, but I don't recommend using it for doing serious work. If you have a lot of data to enter, I recommend using a real spreadsheet or desktop database program. There are a few reasons for this.

First, the R data editor doesn't provide an Undo or Redo function.

Second, the R data editor doesn't make it very easy to save your work. There is no Save button. To save, you need to periodically close the editor, save your work, and then reopen the editor. Doing that is awkward and error prone; I would worry about losing my work if I used this editor.

Finally, spreadsheet programs often include data entry forms. (Desktop database programs also often have data entry forms.) If you’re entering a complicated set of data, filling out a form for each observation can be much easier than typing the results into a form.

## Saving and Loading R Objects

R allows you to save and load R data objects to external files.

### Saving Objects with `save`

The simplest way to save an object is with the `save` function. For example, we could use the following command to save the object `top.5.salaries` to the file `~/top.5.salaries.RData`:

```
> save(top.5.salaries, file="~/top.5.salaries.RData")
```

In R, file paths are *always* specified with forward slashes (“/”), even on Microsoft Windows. So, to save this file to the directory `C:\Documents and Settings\me\My Documents\top.5.salaries.rda`, you would use the following command:

```
> save(top.5.salaries,
+   file="C:/Documents and Settings/me/My Documents/top.5.salaries.RData")
```

Note that the `file` argument must be explicitly named. (Nine out of 10 times, I forget to do so.) Now you can easily load this object back into R with the `load` function:

```
> load("~/top.5.salaries.RData")
```

Incidentally, files saved in R will work across platforms. (For example, the data files for this book were produced on Mac OS X but work on Windows and Linux.) You can save multiple objects to the same file by simply listing them in the same `save` command. If you want to save every object in the workspace, you can use the `save.image` function. (When you quit R, you will be asked if you want to save your current workspace. If you say yes, the workspace will be saved the same way as this function.)

The `save` function is very flexible and can be used in many different ways. You can save multiple objects, save to files or connections, and save in a variety of formats:

```
save(..., list =, file =, ascii =, version =, envir =,
     compress =, eval.promises =, precheck = )
```

You can omit any argument except the filename. The defaults for `save` are very sensible: objects will be saved in a compressed binary format, and existing files won’t be overwritten.

Here is a detailed description of the arguments to `save`.

| Argument          | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>...</code>  | A set of symbols that name the objects to be saved. (This is a variable-length argument.) |
| <code>list</code> | Alternatively, you may specify the objects to be saved in a character vector.             |

| Argument      | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| file          | Specifies where to save the file. Both connections and filenames can be used.   |
| ascii         | A logical value that indicates whether to write a human-readable representation of the data (ascii=TRUE) or a binary representation (ascii=FALSE). Default is ascii=FALSE.  |
| version       | A numeric value that indicates the file version. For R 0.99.0 through 1.3.1, use version=1. For R 1.4.0 through (at least) 2.8.1, use version=2. Default is version=2.  |
| envir         | Specifies the environment in which to find the objects to be saved. Default is the environment in which save was called (to be precise, parent.frame()).  |
| compress      | A logical value that indicates whether to compress the file when saving it. (The effect is the same as running gzip on an uncompressed file.) Default is compress=TRUE for binary files (ascii=FALSE) and compress=FALSE for human-readable files (ascii=TRUE). |
| eval.promises | A logical value that indicates whether promise objects should be forced before saving. Default is eval.promises=TRUE.   |
| precheck      | A logical value that indicates whether the save function should check if the object exists before saving (and raise an error if it is). Default is precheck=TRUE.   |

## Importing Data from External Files

One of the nicest things about R is how easy it is to pull in data from other programs. R can import data from text files, other statistics software, and even spreadsheets. You don't even need a local copy of the file: you can specify a file at a URL, and R will fetch the file for you over the Internet.

### Text Files

Most text files containing data are formatted similarly: each line of a text file represents an observation (or record). Each line contains a set of different variables associated with that observation. Sometimes, different variables are separated by a special character called the *delimiter*. Other times, variables are differentiated by their location on each line.

#### Delimited files

R includes a family of functions for importing delimited text files into R, based on the `read.table` function:

```
read.table(file, header, sep = , quote = , dec = , row.names, col.names,
          as.is = , na.strings , colClasses , nrows = , skip = ,
          check.names = , fill = , strip.white = , blank.lines.skip = ,
          comment.char = , allowEscapes = , flush = , stringsAsFactors = ,
          encoding = )
```

The `read.table` function reads a text file into R and returns a `data.frame` object. Each row in the input file is interpreted as an observation. Each column in the input file represents a variable. The `read.table` function expects each field to be separated by a delimiter.

For example, suppose that you had a file called `top.5.salaries.csv` that contained the following text (and only this text):

```
name.last,name.first,team,position,salary
"Manning","Peyton","Colts","QB",18700000
"Brady","Tom","Patriots","QB",14626720
"Pepper","Julius","Panthers","DE",14137500
"Palmer","Carson","Bengals","QB",13980000
"Manning","Eli","Giants","QB",12916666
```

This file contains the same data frame that we entered in “[Entering Data Using R Commands](#) on page 141

. Notice how this data is encoded:

- The first row contains the column names.
- Each text field is encapsulated in quotes.
- Each field is separated by commas.

To load this file into R, you would specify that the first row contained column names (`header=TRUE`), that the delimiter was a comma (`sep=","`), and that quotes were used to encapsulate text (`quote=""`). Here is an R statement that loads in this file:

```
> top.5.salaries <- read.table("top.5.salaries.csv",
+   header=TRUE, sep=",", quote="")
```

The `read.table` function is very flexible and allows you to load files with many different properties. Here is a brief description of the options for `read.table`.

| Argument   | Description   | Default                        |
|------------|---|--------------------------------|
| file       | The name of the file to open or, alternatively, the name of a connection containing the data. You can even use a URL. (This is the one required argument for <code>read.table</code> .) |                                |
| header     | A logical value indicating whether the first row of the file contains variable names.   | FALSE                          |
| sep        | The character (or characters) separating fields. When “” is specified, any white space is used as a separator.  | “”                             |
| quote      | If character values are enclosed in quotes, this argument should specify the type of quotes.  | “”                             |
| dec        | The character used for decimal points.  | .                              |
| row.names  | A character vector containing row names for the returned data frame.  |                                |
| col.names  | A character vector containing column names for the returned data frame.   |                                |
| as.is      | A logical vector (the same length as the number of columns) that specifies whether or not to convert character values to factors.   | <code>!stringsAsFactors</code> |
| na.strings | A character vector specifying values that should be interpreted as NA.  | NA                             |
| colClasses | A character vector of class names to be assigned to each column.  | NA                             |
| nrows      | An integer value specifying the number of rows to read. (Invalid values, such as negatives, are ignored.)   | -1                             |

| Argument         | Description   | Default                                 |
|------------------|---|---|
| skip             | An integer value specifying the number of rows in the text file to skip before beginning to read data.  | 0                                       |
| check.names      | A logical value that specifies whether <code>read.table</code> should check if the column names are valid symbol names in R.  | TRUE                                    |
| fill             | Sometimes, a file might contain rows of unequal length. This argument is a logical value that specifies whether <code>read.table</code> should implicitly add blank fields at the end of rows where some values were missing. | <code>!blank.lines.skip</code>          |
| strip.white      | When <code>sep != ""</code> , this logical value specifies whether <code>read.table</code> should remove extra leading and trailing white space from character fields.  | FALSE                                   |
| blank.lines.skip | A logical value that specifies whether <code>read.table</code> should ignore blank lines.   | TRUE                                    |
| comment.char     | <code>read.table</code> can ignore comment lines in input files if the comment lines begin with a single special character. This argument specifies the character used to delineate these lines.                              | "#"                                     |
| allowEscapes     | A logical value that indicates whether escapes (such as "\n" for a new line) should be interpreted or if character strings should be read literally.  | FALSE                                   |
| flush            | A logical value that indicates whether <code>read.table</code> should skip to the next line when all requested fields have been read in from a line.  | FALSE                                   |
| stringsAsFactors | A logical value indicating whether text fields should be converted to factors.  | <code>default.stringsAsFactors()</code> |
| encoding         | The encoding scheme used for the source file.   | "unknown"                               |

The most important options are `sep` and `header`. You almost always have to know the field separator and know if there is a header field. R includes a set of convenience functions that call `read.table` with different default options for these values (and a couple of others). Here is a description of these functions.

| Function                 | header | sep | quote    | dec | fill | comment.char                       |
|--------------------------|--------|-----|----------|-----|------|------------------------------------|
| <code>read.table</code>  | FALSE  |     | \" or \' | .   | !    | #<br><code>blank.lines.skip</code> |
| <code>read.csv</code>    | TRUE   | ,   | \"       | .   | TRUE |                                    |
| <code>read.csv2</code>   | TRUE   | ;   | \"       | ,   | TRUE |                                    |
| <code>read.delim</code>  | TRUE   | \t  | \"       | .   | TRUE |                                    |
| <code>read.delim2</code> | TRUE   | \t  | \"       | ,   | TRUE |                                    |

In most cases, you will find that you can use `read.csv` for comma-separated files or `read.delim` for tab-delimited files without specifying any other options. (Except, I

suppose, if you are in Europe, and you use commas to indicate the decimal point in numbers. Then you can use `read.csv2` and `read.delim2`.)

As another example, suppose that you wanted to analyze some historical stock quote data. Yahoo! Finance provides this information in an easily downloadable form on its website; you can fetch a CSV file from a single URL. For example, to fetch the closing price of the S&P 500 index for every month between April 1, 1999, and April 1, 2009, you could use the following URL: <http://ichart.finance.yahoo.com/table.csv?s=%5EGSPC&a=03&b=1&c=1999&d=03&e=1&f=2009&g=m&ignore=.csv>.

Conveniently, you can use a URL in place of a filename in R. This means that you could load this data into R with the following expression:

```
> sp500 <- read.csv(paste("http://ichart.finance.yahoo.com/table.csv?",  
+ "s=%5EGSPC&a=03&b=1&c=1999&d=03&e=1&f=2009&g=m&ignore=.csv", sep=""))  
> # show the first 5 rows  
> sp500[1:5]  
    Date   Open   High    Low  Close   Volume Adj.Close  
1 2009-04-01 793.59 813.62 783.32 811.08 12068280000  811.08  
2 2009-03-02 729.57 832.98 666.79 797.87 7633306300  797.87  
3 2009-02-02 823.09 875.01 734.52 735.09 7022036200  735.09  
4 2009-01-02 902.99 943.85 804.30 825.88 5844561500  825.88  
5 2008-12-01 888.61 918.85 815.69 903.25 5320791300  903.25
```

We will revisit this example in the next section.

If you're trying to load a really big file, you might find that loading the file takes a long time. It can be very frustrating to wait 15 minutes for a file to load, only to discover that you have specified the wrong separator. A useful technique for testing is to load only a small number of rows into R. For example, to load 20 rows, you would add `nrows=20` as an argument to `read.table`.

Many programs can export data as text files. Here are a few tips for creating text files that you can easily read into R:

- For Microsoft Excel spreadsheets, you can export them as either comma-delimited files (CSV files) or tab-delimited files (TXT files). When possible, you should specify Unix-style line delimiters, not MS-DOS line delimiters. (MS-DOS files end each line with “\r\n,” while Unix-style systems end lines with “\n.”) There are two things to think about when choosing between CSV and TXT files.

CSV files can be more convenient because (by default) opening these files in Windows Explorer will open these files in Microsoft Excel. However, if you are using CSV files, then you must be careful to enclose text in quotes if the data contains commas (and, additionally, you must escape any quotation marks within text fields). Tab characters occur less often in text, so tab-delimited files are less likely to cause problems.

- If you are exporting data from a database, consider using a GUI tool to query the database and export the results. It is possible to use command-line scripts to export data using tools like SQL Plus, pgSQL, or MySQL, but doing so is often tricky.

Here are a few options I have tried. If you are using Microsoft Windows, a good choice is Toad for Data Analysts (available from <http://www.toadsoft.com/tda/tdaindex.html>); this will work with many different databases. If you are exporting from MySQL, MySQL Query Browser is also a good choice; versions are available for Microsoft Windows, Mac OS X, and Linux (you can download it from <http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/gui-tools/5.0.html>). Oracle now produces a free multi-platform query tool called SQL Developer. (You can find it at [http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/database/sql\\_developer/index.html](http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/database/sql_developer/index.html).)

## Fixed-width files

To read a fixed-width format text file into a data frame, you can use the `read.fwf` function:

```
read.fwf(file, widths, header = , sep = ,
         skip = , row.names, col.names, n = ,
         bufsize = , ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `read.fwf`.

| Argument  | Description   | Default |
|-----------|---|---------|
| file      | The name of the file to open or, alternatively, the name of a connection containing the data. (This is a required argument.)  |         |
| widths    | An integer vector or a list of integer vectors. If the input file has one record per line, then use an integer vector where each value represents the width of each variable. If each record spans multiple lines, then use a list of integer vectors where each integer vector corresponds to the widths of the variables on that line. (This is a required argument.) |         |
| header    | A logical value indicating whether the first line of the file contains variable names. (If it does, the names must be delimited by <code>sep</code> .)  | FALSE   |
| sep       | The character used to delimit variable names in the header.   | \t      |
| skip      | An integer specifying the number of lines to skip at the beginning of the file.   | 0       |
| row.names | A character vector used to specify row names in the data frame.   |         |
| col.names | A character vector used to specify column names in the data frame.  |         |
| n         | An integer value specifying the number of rows of records to read into R. (Invalid values, such as negatives, are ignored.)   | -1      |
| bufsize   | An integer specifying the maximum number of lines to be read at one time. (This value may be tuned to optimize performance.)  | 2000    |

Note that `read.fwf` can also take many arguments used by `read.table`, including `as.is`, `na.strings`, `colClasses`, and `strip.white`.

## Using Other Languages to Preprocess Text Files

R is a very good system for numerical calculations and data visualization, but it's not the most efficient choice for processing large text files. For example, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention publishes data files containing information on every death in the United States (see [http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data\\_access/Vitalstatsonline.htm](http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data_access/Vitalstatsonline.htm)). These data files are provided in a fixed-width format. They are very large; the data file for 2006 was 1.1 GB uncompressed. In theory, you could load a subset of data from this file into R using a statement like this:

```
> # data from ftp://ftp.cdc.gov/pub/Health_Statistics/  
NCHS/Datasets/DVS/mortality/mort2006us.zip  
> mort06 <- read.fwf(file="MORT06.DUSMCPUB",  
+ widths= c(19,1,40,2,1,1,2,2,1,4,1,2,2,2,1,1,1,16,4,1,1,1,1,  
+ 34,1,1,4,3,1,3,3,2,283,2,1,1,1,1,33,3,1,1),  
+ col.names= c("X0","ResidentStatus","X1","Education1989",  
+ "Education2003","EducationFlag","MonthOfDeath",  
+ "X5","Sex","AgeDetail","AgeSubstitution",  
+ "AgeRecode52","AgeRecode27","AgeRecode12",  
+ "AgeRecodeInfant22","PlaceOfDeath","MaritalStatus",  
+ "DayOfWeekofDeath","X15","CurrentDataYear",  
+ "InjuryAtWork","MannerOfDeath","MethodOfDisposition",  
+ "Autopsy","X20","ActivityCode","PlaceOfInjury",  
+ "ICDCode","CauseRecode358","X24","CauseRecode113",  
+ "CauseRecode130","CauseRecord39","X27","Race",  
+ "BridgeRaceFlag","RaceImputationFlag","RaceRecode3",  
+ "RaceRecords5","X32","HispanicOrigin","X33",  
+ "HispanicOriginRecode","X34")  
+ )
```

Unfortunately, this probably won't work very well. First, R processes files less quickly than some other languages. Second, R will try to load the entire table into memory. The file takes up 1.1 GB as a raw text file. Many fields in this file are used to encode categorical values that have a small number of choices (such as race) but show the value as numbers. R will convert these character values from single characters (which take up 1 byte) to integers (which take up 4 bytes). This means that it will take a lot of memory to load this file into your computer.

As an alternative, I'd suggest using a scripting language like Perl, Python, or Ruby to preprocess large, complex text files and turn them into a digestible form. (As a side note, I usually write out lists of field names and lengths in Excel and then use Excel formulas to create the R or Perl code to load them. That's how I generated all the code shown in this example.) Here's the Perl script I used to preprocess the raw mortality data file, filtering out fields I didn't need and writing the results to a CSV file:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl  
  
# file to preprocess (and filter) mortality data  
  
print "ResidentStatus,Education1989,Education2003,EducationFlag, ".  
      "MonthOfDeath,Sex,AgeDetail,AgeSubstitution,AgeRecode52, ".  
      "AgeRecode27,AgeRecode12,AgeRecodeInfant22,PlaceOfDeath, ".  
      "MaritalStatus,DayOfWeekofDeath,CurrentDataYear,InjuryAtWork, ".
```

```

"MannerOfDeath,MethodOfDisposition,Autopsy,ActivityCode," .
"PlaceOfInjury,ICDCode,CauseRecode358,CauseRecode113," .
"CauseRecode130,CauseRecord39,Race,BridgeRaceFlag," .
"RaceImputationFlag,RaceRecode3,RaceRecord5,HispanicOrigin," .
"HispanicOriginRecode\n";

while(<>) {
    my ($X0,$ResidentStatus,$X1,$Education1989,$Education2003,
        $EducationFlag,$MonthOfDeath,$X5,$Sex,$AgeDetail,
        $AgeSubstitution,$AgeRecode52,$AgeRecode27,$AgeRecode12,
        $AgeRecodeInfant22,$PlaceOfDeath,$MaritalStatus,
        $DayOfWeekofDeath,$X15,$CurrentDataYear,$InjuryAtWork,
        $MannerOfDeath,$MethodOfDisposition,$Autopsy,$X20,$ActivityCode,
        $PlaceOfInjury,$ICDCode,$CauseRecode358,$X24,$CauseRecode113,
        $CauseRecode130,$CauseRecord39,$X27,$Race,$BridgeRaceFlag,
        $RaceImputationFlag,$RaceRecode3,$RaceRecord5,$X32,
        $HispanicOrigin,$X33,$HispanicOriginRecode,$X34)
        = unpack("a19a1a40a2a1a1a2a1a4a1a2a2a2a1a1a1a16a4a1" .
                  "a1a1a1a34a1a1a4a3a1a3a2a283a2a1a1a1a1a33a3a1a1" ,
                  $_);
    print "$ResidentStatus,$Education1989,$Education2003,".
        "$EducationFlag,$MonthOfDeath,$Sex,$AgeDetail,".
        "$AgeSubstitution,$AgeRecode52,$AgeRecode27,".
        "$AgeRecode12,$AgeRecodeInfant22,$PlaceOfDeath," .
        "$MaritalStatus,$DayOfWeekofDeath,$CurrentDataYear," .
        "$InjuryAtWork,$MannerOfDeath,$MethodOfDisposition," .
        "$Autopsy,$ActivityCode,$PlaceOfInjury,$ICDCode," .
        "$CauseRecode358,$CauseRecode113,$CauseRecode130," .
        "$CauseRecord39,$Race,$BridgeRaceFlag,$RaceImputationFlag," .
        "$RaceRecode3,$RaceRecord5,$HispanicOrigin," .
        "$HispanicOriginRecode\n";
}

```

I executed this script with the following command (in an OS shell):

```
$ perl mortalities.pl < MORT06.DUSMC PUB > MORT06.csv
```

You can now load the data into R with a line like this:

```
> mort06 <- read.csv(file="~/Documents/book/data/MORT06.csv")
```

We'll come back to this data set in the chapters on statistical tests and statistical models.

## Other functions to parse data

Most of the time, you should be able to load text files into R with the `read.table` function. Sometimes, however, you might be provided with a file that cannot be read correctly with this function. For example, observations in the file might span multiple lines. To read data into R one line at a time, use the function `readLines`:

```
readLines(con = stdin(), n = -1L, ok = TRUE, warn = TRUE,
          encoding = "unknown")
```

The `readLines` function will return a character vector, with one value corresponding to each row in the file. Here is a description of the arguments to `readLines`.

| Argument              | Description   | Default                |
|-----------------------|---|------------------------|
| <code>con</code>      | A character string (specifying a file or URL) or a connection containing the data to read.                              | <code>stdin()</code>   |
| <code>n</code>        | An integer value specifying the number of lines to read. (Negative values mean “read until the end of the file.”)       | <code>-1L</code>       |
| <code>ok</code>       | A logical value specifying whether to trigger an error if the number of lines in the file is less than <code>n</code> . | <code>TRUE</code>      |
| <code>warn</code>     | A logical value specifying whether to warn the user if the file does not end with an EOL.                               | <code>TRUE</code>      |
| <code>encoding</code> | A character value specifying the encoding of the input file.  | <code>"unknown"</code> |

Note that you can use `readLines` interactively to enter data.

Another useful function for reading more complex file formats is `scan`:

```
scan(file = "", what = double(0), nmax = -1, n = -1, sep = "",  
quote = if(identical(sep, "\n")) "" else "'\"'", dec = ".",  
skip = 0, nlines = 0, na.strings = "NA",  
flush = FALSE, fill = FALSE, strip.white = FALSE,  
quiet = FALSE, blank.lines.skip = TRUE, multi.line = TRUE,  
comment.char = "", allowEscapes = FALSE,  
encoding = "unknown")
```

The `scan` function allows you to read the contents of a file into R. Unlike `readLines`, `scan` allows you to read data into a specifically defined data structure using the argument `what`.

Here is a description of the arguments to `scan`.

| Argument           | Description  | Default  |
|--------------------|--|--|
| <code>file</code>  | A character string (specifying a file or URL) or a connection containing the data to read.   | <code>""</code>                                      |
| <code>what</code>  | The type of data to be read. If all fields are the same type, you can specify logical, integer, numeric, complex, character, or raw. Otherwise, specify a list of types to read values into a list. (You can specify the type of each element in the list individually.) | <code>double(0)</code>                               |
| <code>nmax</code>  | An integer value specifying the number of values to read or the number of records to read (if <code>what</code> is a list). (Negative values mean “read until the end of the file.”)   | <code>-1</code>                                      |
| <code>n</code>     | An integer value specifying the number of values to read. (Negative values mean “read until the end of the file.”)   | <code>-1</code>                                      |
| <code>sep</code>   | Character value specifying the separator between values. <code>sep=""</code> means that any white space character is interpreted as a separator.   | <code>""</code>                                      |
| <code>quote</code> | Character value used to quote strings.   | <code>if(identical(sep, "\n")) "" else "'\"'"</code> |

| Argument         | Description   | Default   |
|------------------|---|-----------|
| dec              | Character value used for decimal place in numbers.  | "."       |
| skip             | Number of lines to skip at the top of the file.   | 0         |
| nlines           | Number of lines of data to read. Nonpositive values mean that there is no limit.  | 0         |
| na.strings       | Character values specifying how NA values are encoded.  | "NA"      |
| flush            | A logical value specifying whether to "flush" any remaining text on a line after the last requested item on a line is read into what. (Commonly used to allow comments at the end of lines or to ignore unneeded fields.)                                       | FALSE     |
| fill             | Specifies whether to add empty fields to lines with fewer fields than specified by what.  | FALSE     |
| strip.white      | Specifies whether to strip leading and trailing white space from character fields. Applies only when sep is specified.  | FALSE     |
| quiet            | If quiet=FALSE, scan will print a message showing how many lines were read. If quiet=TRUE, then this message is suppressed.   | FALSE     |
| blank.lines.skip | Specifies whether to ignore blank lines.  | TRUE      |
| multi.line       | If what is a list, allows records to span multiple lines.   | TRUE      |
| comment.char     | Notes a character to be used to specify comment lines.  | ""        |
| allowEscapes     | Specifies whether C-style escapes (such as \t for Tab character or \n for newlines) should be interpreted by scan or read verbatim. If allowEscapes=FALSE, then they are interpreted as special characters; if allowEscapes=TRUE, then they are read literally. | FALSE     |
| encoding         | A character value specifying the encoding of the input file.  | "unknown" |

Like `readLines`, you can also use `scan` to enter data directly into R.

## Other Software

Although many software packages can export data as text files, you might find it more convenient to read their data files directly. R can read files in many other formats. [Table 11-1](#) shows a list of functions for reading (and writing) files in other formats. You can find more information about these functions in the help files.

Table 11-1. Functions to read and write data

| File format                      | Reading       | Writing    | Saving, Loading, and Editing Data |
|----------------------------------|---------------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| ARFF                             | read.arff     | write.arff |                                   |
| DBF                              | read.dbf      | write.dbf  |                                   |
| Stata                            | read.dta      | write.dta  |                                   |
| Epi Info                         | read.epi.info |            |                                   |
| Minitab                          | read.mtp      |            |                                   |
| Octave                           | read.octave   |            |                                   |
| S3 binary files, data.dump files | read.S        |            |                                   |
| SPSS                             | read.spss     |            |                                   |
| SAS Permanent Dataset            | read.ssd      |            |                                   |
| Systat                           | read.sys.stat |            |                                   |
| SAS XPORT File                   | read.xport    |            |                                   |

## Exporting Data

R can also export R data objects (usually data frames and matrices) as text files. To export data to a text file, use the `write.table` function:

```
write.table(x, file = "", append = FALSE, quote = TRUE, sep = " ",
            eol = "\n", na = "NA", dec = ".", row.names = TRUE,
            col.names = TRUE, qmethod = c("escape", "double"))
```

There are wrapper functions for `write.table` that call `write.table` with different defaults. These are useful if you want to create a file of comma-separated values, for example, to import into Microsoft Excel:

```
write.csv(...)
write.csv2(...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `write.table`.

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| x        | Object to export.  |         |
| file     | Character value specifying a filename or a connection object to which you would like to write the output.  | ""      |
| append   | A logical value indicating whether to append the output to the end of an existing file (append=TRUE) or replace the file (append=FALSE).                         | FALSE   |
| quote    | A logical value specifying whether to surround any character or factor values with quotes, or a numeric vector specifying which columns to surround with quotes. | TRUE    |
| sep      | A character value specifying the value that separates values within a row.   | ""      |

| Argument  | Description   | Default  |
|-----------|---|----------|
| eol       | A character value specifying the value to append on the end of each line.   | "\n"     |
| na        | A character value specifying how to represent NA values.  | "NA"     |
| dec       | A character value specifying the decimal separator in numeric values.   | ". "     |
| row.names | A logical value indicating whether to include row names in the output or a numeric vector specifying the rows from which row names should be included.  | TRUE     |
| col.names | A logical value specifying whether to include column names or a character vector specifying alternate names to include.   | TRUE     |
| qmethod   | Specifies how to deal with quotes inside quoted character and factor fields. Specify qmethod="escape" to escape quotes with a backslash (as in C) or qmethod="double" to escape quotes as double quotes (i.e., " is transformed to ""). | "escape" |

## Importing Data From Databases

It is very common for large companies, healthcare providers, and academic institutions to keep data in relational databases. This section explains how to move data from databases into R.

### Export Then Import

One of the best approaches for working with data from a database is to export the data to a text file and then import the text file into R. In my experience dealing with very large data sets (1 GB or more), I've found that you can import data into R at a much faster rate from text files than you can from database connections.

For directions on how to import these files into R, see [“Text Files” on page 146](#).

If you plan to extract a large amount of data once and then analyze the data, this is often the best approach. However, if you are using R to produce regular reports or to repeat an analysis many times, then it might be better to import data into R directly through a database connection.

### Database Connection Packages

In order to connect directly to a database from R, you will need to install some optional packages. The packages you need depend on the database(s) to which you want to connect and the connection method you want to use.

There are two sets of database interfaces available in R:

- **RODBC.** The RODBC package allows R to fetch data from ODBC (Open DataBase Connectivity) connections. ODBC provides a standard interface for different programs to connect to databases.
- **DBI.** The DBI package allows R to connect to databases using native database drivers or JDBC drivers. This package provides a common database abstraction for R software. You must install additional packages to use the native drivers for each database.

Often, you can choose from either option. You might wonder which package is the better choice: RODBC or DBI? Here are a few features to consider.

- **Driver availability.** On Windows and Linux, you can easily find free ODBC drivers for most common databases. On Mac OS X, it can be difficult to find free ODBC drivers for a database. However, JDBC drivers are readily available for each platform.
- **Special features and performance.** A native database interface might take advantage of unique product features and be faster than a generic driver.
- **Package availability.** Not all packages will work on all platforms.
- **Code quality.** The DBI package is written using S4 objects and methods. Using the DBI package can help you write better code.

In this section, I'll show how to configure an ODBC connection to an SQLite database on Microsoft Windows and Mac OS X. SQLite is a tool for storing databases in files. It's completely contained in a C library. This means that you can try the examples in this section without installing a full database system.

For this example, we will use an SQLite database containing the Baseball Databank database. You do not need to install any additional software to use this database. This file is included in the `nutshell` package. To access it within R, use the following expression as a filename: `system.file("extdata", "bb.db", package = "nutshell")`.

## RODBC

The R package for accessing databases through ODBC is the RODBC package. Microsoft and Simba Technologies jointly developed ODBC in the late 1990s based on a design from the SQL Access Group. In ODBC, different data sources are labeled by database source names (DSNs).

### Getting RODBC working

Before you can use RODBC, you need to configure the ODBC connection. You only need to do this once; after you have configured R to communicate with your database, you are ready to use RODBC inside R.

1. Install the RODBC package in R.
2. If needed, install the ODBC drivers for your platform.
3. Configure an ODBC connection to your database.

Here are directions for completing each step.

**Installing the RODBC package.** A quick way to install the RODBC package (if it is not already installed) is with the `install.packages` function:

```
> install.packages("RODBC")
trying URL 'http://cran.cnr.Berkeley.edu/bin/macosx/universal/contrib/2.8/
  RODBC_1.2-5.tgz'
Content type 'application/x-gzip' length 120902 bytes (118 Kb)
opened URL
=====
```

downloaded 118 Kb

```
The downloaded packages are in  
/var/folders/gj/gj60srEiEVq4hTWB5lMak+++TM/-Tmp-/Rtmp2UFF7o/  
downloaded_packages
```

You will get slightly different output when you run this command. Don't worry about the output unless you see an error message. If you want to make sure that the package was installed correctly, try loading it in R:

```
> library(RODBC)
```

If there is no error message, then the package is now locally installed (and available). For information about other methods for installing RODBC, see [Chapter 4](#).

**Installing ODBC drivers.** If you already have the correct ODBC drivers installed (for example, to access a database from Microsoft Excel), then you can skip this step. [Table 11-2](#) shows some sources for ODBC drivers. (I haven't used most of these products and am not endorsing any of them.)

*Table 11-2. Where to find ODBC drivers*

| Provider               | Database   | Platforms   | Website   |
|------------------------|--|---|---|
| MySQL                  | MySQL  | Microsoft Windows,<br>Linux, Mac OS X, Solaris,<br>AIX, FreeBSD, others | <a href="http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/odbc/">http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/odbc/</a>                               |
| Oracle                 | Oracle   | Microsoft Windows,<br>Linux, Solaris                                    | <a href="http://www.oracle.com/technology/tech/windows/odbc/index.html">http://www.oracle.com/technology/tech/windows/odbc/index.html</a> |
| PostgreSQL             | PostgreSQL   | Microsoft Windows,<br>Linux, other Unix-like<br>platforms               | <a href="http://www.postgresql.org/ftp/odbc/versions/">http://www.postgresql.org/ftp/odbc/versions/</a>                                   |
| Microsoft              | SQL Server   | Microsoft Windows   | <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/data/aa937730.aspx">http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/data/aa937730.aspx</a>                       |
| Data Direct            | Oracle, SQL Server, DB2,<br>Sybase, Teradata, MySQL,<br>PostgreSQL, others | Microsoft Windows,<br>Linux, other Unix<br>platforms                    | <a href="http://www.datadirect.com/products/odbc/index.ssp">http://www.datadirect.com/products/odbc/index.ssp</a>                         |
| Easysoft               | Oracle, SQL Server, others   | Microsoft Windows, Linux  | <a href="http://www.easysoft.com/products/data_access/index.html">http://www.easysoft.com/products/data_access/index.html</a>             |
| Actual<br>Technologies | Oracle, SQL Server,<br>Sybase, MySQL,<br>PostgreSQL, SQLite                | Mac OS X  | <a href="http://www.actualtechnologies.com/">http://www.actualtechnologies.com/</a>   |

| Provider                  | Database   | Platforms                                  | Website   |
|---------------------------|--|--|---|
| OpenLink Software         | Oracle, SQL Server, DB2, Sybase, MySQL, PostgreSQL, others | Microsoft Windows, Mac OS X, Linux, others | <a href="http://uda.openlinksw.com/odbc/">http://uda.openlinksw.com/odbc/</a>         |
| Christian Werner Software | SQLite   | Microsoft Windows, Mac OS X, Linux         | <a href="http://www.ch-werner.de/sqliteodbc/">http://www.ch-werner.de/sqliteodbc/</a> |

Follow the directions for the driver you are using. For the example in this section, I used the SQLite ODBC driver.

**Example: SQLite ODBC on Mac OS X.** To use this free driver, you'll need to compile and install the driver yourself. Luckily, this process works flawlessly on Mac OS X 10.5.6.<sup>1</sup> Here is how to install the drivers on Mac OS X:

1. Download the latest sources from <http://www.ch-werner.de/sqliteodbc/>. (Do not download the precompiled version.) I used sqliteodbc-0.80.tar.gz. You can do this with this command:

```
% wget http://www.ch-werner.de/sqliteodbc/sqliteodbc-0.80.tar.gz
```

2. Unpack and unzip the archive. You can do this with this command:

```
% tar xvfz sqliteodbc-0.80.tar.gz
```

3. Change to the directory of sources files:

```
% cd sqliteodbc-0.80
```

4. Configure the driver for your platform, compile the driver, and then install it. You can do this with these commands:

```
% ./configure  
% make  
% sudo make install
```

Now you need to configure your Mac to use this driver.

1. Open the ODBC Administrator program (usually in /Applications/Utilities).
2. Select the Drivers tab and click Add.
3. Enter a name for the driver (like “SQLite ODBC Driver”) in the Description field. Enter “/usr/local/lib/libsqlite3odbc.dylib” in the Driver File and Setup File fields, as shown in [Figure 11-4](#). Click the OK button.
4. Now select the User DSN tab or System DSN tab (if you want this database to be available for all users). Click the Add button to specify the new database.

1. You may have to install Apple's development tools to build this driver. (It's a good idea to install Apple's developer tools anyway so that you can build R packages from source.) You can download these from <http://developer.apple.com/Tools/>.

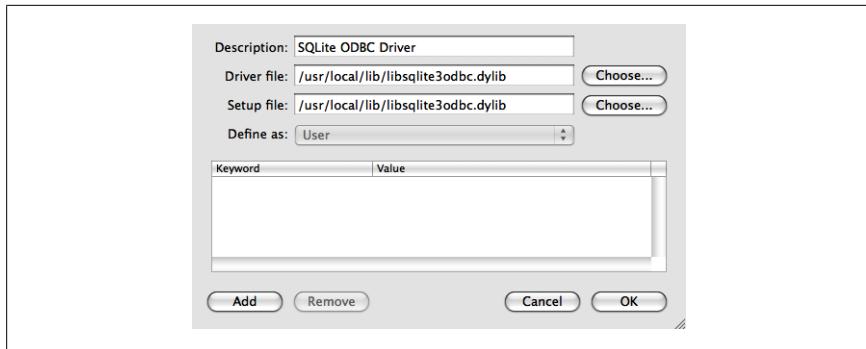


Figure 11-4. Mac OS X ODBC Administrator: driver settings

5. You will be prompted to choose a driver. Choose SQLite ODBC Driver (or whatever name you entered above) and click the OK button.
6. Enter a name for the data source, such as “bbdb.” You need to add a keyword that specifies the database location. Click the Add button at the bottom of the window. Select the Keyword field in the table and enter Database. Select the Value field and enter the path to the database. (I entered “/Library/Frameworks/R.framework/Resources/library/nutshell/extdata/bb.db” to use the example in the nutshell package.) [Figure 11-5](#) shows how this looks. Click OK when you are done.

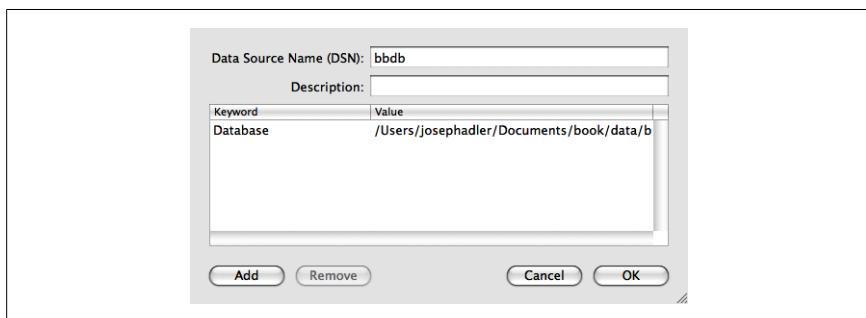


Figure 11-5. Mac OS X ODBC Administrator: adding a data source

The ODBC connection is now configured. You can test this with a couple of simple commands in R (we’ll explain what these mean below):

```
> bbdb <- odbcConnect("bbdb")
> odbcGetInfo(bbdb)
```

```
DBMS_Name
  "SQLite"
DBMS_Ver
  "3.4.0"
Driver_ODBC_Ver
  "03.00"
Data_Source_Name
```

```

"bbdb"
Driver_Name
"sqlite3odbc.so"
Driver_Ver
"0.80"
ODBC_Ver
"03.52.0000"
Server_Name
"/Library/Frameworks/R.framework/Resources/library/nutshell/bb.db"

```

**Example: SQLite ODBC on Windows.** On Windows, you don't have to build the drivers from source. Here is how to get it working:

1. Download the SQLite ODBC installer package from <http://www.ch-werner.de/sqliteodbc/sqliteodbc.exe>.
2. Run the installer, using the default options in the wizard.
3. Open the ODBC Data Source Administrator application. On Microsoft Windows XP, you can find this in Administrative Tools (under Control Panels). You can click the Drivers tab to make sure that the SQLite ODBC drivers are installed, as shown in Figure 11-6.
4. Next, you need to configure a DSN for your database. Go to the User DSN tab (or System DSN if you want to share the database among multiple users) and click the Add button. Select SQLite3 ODBC Driver and click Finish.
5. You will be prompted for configuration information as shown in Figure 11-7. Enter a data source name of your choice (I used "bbdb"). Enter the path of the database file or use the Browse button to browse for the file. (You can find the path for the file in R using the expression `system.file("extdata", "bb.db", package="nutshell")`.) Enter 200 ms for the Lock Timeout, select NORMAL as the Sync Mode, and click Don't Create Database. When you are done, click OK.

You should now be able to access the bbdb file through ODBC. You can check that everything worked correctly by entering a couple of commands in R:

```

> bbdb <- odbcConnect("bbdb")
> odbcGetInfo(bbdb)

DBMS_Name
"SQLite"
DBMS_Ver
"3.6.10"
Driver_ODBC_Ver
"03.00"
Data_Source_Name
"bbdb"
Driver_Name
"C:\\\\WINDOWS\\\\system32\\\\sqlite3odbc.dll"
Driver_Ver
"0.80"
ODBC_Ver
"03.52.0000"
Server_Name
"C:\\\\Program Files\\\\R\\\\R-2.10.0\\\\library\\\\nutshell\\\\data\\\\bb.db"

```

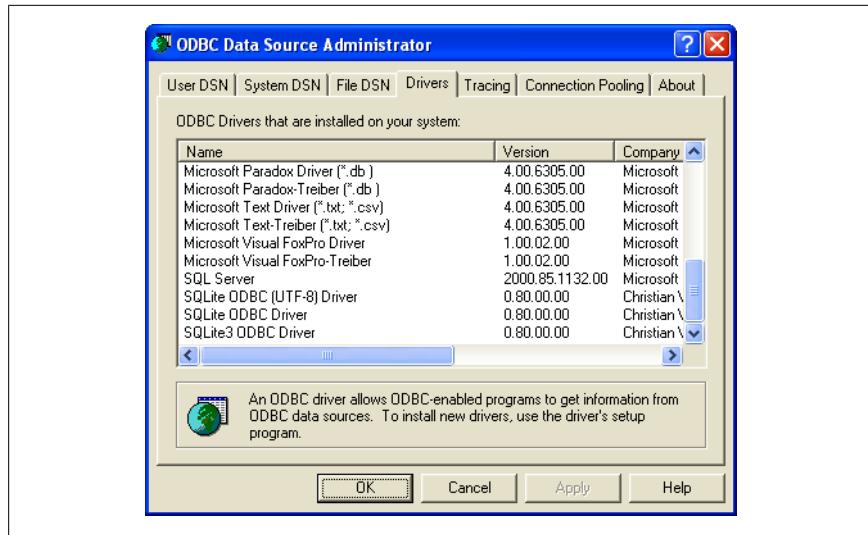


Figure 11-6. ODBC Data Source Administrator: Drivers tab

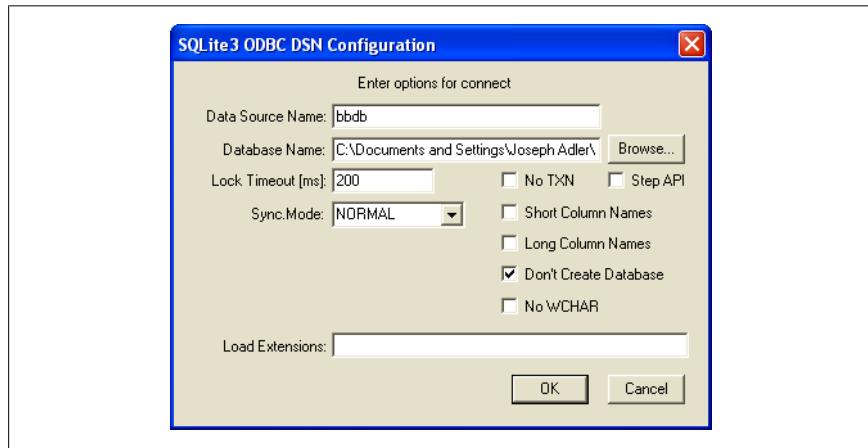


Figure 11-7. SQLite3 ODBC configuration

## Using RODBC

Connecting to a database in R is like connecting to a file. First, you need to connect to a database. Next, you can execute any database queries. Finally, you should close the connection.

**Opening a channel.** To establish a connection, use the `odbcConnect` function:

```
odbcConnect(dsn, uid = "", pwd = "", ...)
```

You need to specify the DSN for the database to which you want to connect. If you did not specify a username and password in the DSN, you may specify a username with the `uid` argument and a password with the `pwd` argument. Other arguments are passed to the underlying `odbcDriverConnect` function. The `odbcConnect` function returns an object of class `RODBC` that identifies the connection. This object is usually called a *channel*.

Here is how you would use this function for the example DSN, “`bbdb`”:

```
> library(RODBC)
> bbdb <- odbcConnect("bbdb")
```

**Getting information about the database.** You can get information about an ODBC connection using the `odbcGetInfo` function. This function takes a channel (the object returned by `odbcConnect`) as its only argument. It returns a character vector with information about the driver and connection; each value in the vector is named. Example output from this function is shown in “[Example: SQLite ODBC on Mac OS X](#)” on page 159 and “[Example: SQLite ODBC on Windows](#)” on page 161.

To get a list of the tables in the underlying database that the connected user can read, use the `sqlTables` function. This function returns a data frame with information about the available tables:

```
> sqlTables(bbdb)
   TABLE_CAT TABLE_SCHEMA      TABLE_NAME TABLE_TYPE REMARKS
1       <NA>      <NA>        Allstar     TABLE    <NA>
2       <NA>      <NA>  AllstarFull     TABLE    <NA>
3       <NA>      <NA> Appearances     TABLE    <NA>
4       <NA>      <NA> AwardsManagers     TABLE    <NA>
5       <NA>      <NA> AwardsPlayers     TABLE    <NA>
6       <NA>      <NA> AwardsShareManagers     TABLE    <NA>
7       <NA>      <NA> AwardsSharePlayers     TABLE    <NA>
8       <NA>      <NA> Batting      TABLE    <NA>
9       <NA>      <NA> BattingPost     TABLE    <NA>
10      <NA>      <NA> Fielding      TABLE    <NA>
11      <NA>      <NA> FieldingOF     TABLE    <NA>
12      <NA>      <NA> FieldingPost     TABLE    <NA>
13      <NA>      <NA> HOFold       TABLE    <NA>
14      <NA>      <NA> HallOfFame     TABLE    <NA>
15      <NA>      <NA> Managers      TABLE    <NA>
16      <NA>      <NA> ManagersHalf     TABLE    <NA>
17      <NA>      <NA> Master        TABLE    <NA>
18      <NA>      <NA> Pitching      TABLE    <NA>
19      <NA>      <NA> PitchingPost     TABLE    <NA>
20      <NA>      <NA> Salaries       TABLE    <NA>
21      <NA>      <NA> Schools        TABLE    <NA>
22      <NA>      <NA> SchoolsPlayers     TABLE    <NA>
23      <NA>      <NA> SeriesPost     TABLE    <NA>
24      <NA>      <NA> Teams         TABLE    <NA>
25      <NA>      <NA> TeamsFranchises     TABLE    <NA>
26      <NA>      <NA> TeamsHalf      TABLE    <NA>
27      <NA>      <NA> xref_stats     TABLE    <NA>
```

To get detailed information about the columns in a specific table, use the `sqlColumns` function:

```

> sqlColumns(bbdb, "Allstar")
  TABLE_CAT TABLE_SCHEMA TABLE_NAME COLUMN_NAME DATA_TYPE    TYPE_NAME
  1           Allstar     playerID      12  varchar(9)
  2           Allstar     yearID       5   smallint(4)
  3           Allstar     lgID        12   char(2)
  COLUMN_SIZE BUFFER_LENGTH DECIMAL_DIGITS NUM_PREC_RADIX NULLABLE
  1            9            9          10          0          0
  2            4            4          10          0          0
  3            2            2          10          0          0
  REMARKS COLUMN_DEF SQL_DATA_TYPE SQL_DATETIME_SUB CHAR_OCTET_LENGTH
  1 <NA>             12          NA        16384
  2 <NA>              0          5          NA        16384
  3 <NA>             12          NA        16384
  ORDINAL_POSITION IS_NULLABLE
  1            1          NO
  2            2          NO
  3            3          NO

```

You can also discover the primary keys for a table using the `sqlPrimaryKeys` function.

**Getting data.** Finally, we've gotten to the interesting part: executing queries in the database and returning results. RODBC provides some functions that let you query a database even if you don't know SQL.

To fetch a table (or view) from the underlying database, you can use the `sqlFetch` function. This function returns a data frame containing the contents of the table:

```
sqlFetch(channel, sqtable, ..., colnames = , rownames = )
```

You need to specify the ODBC channel with the `channel` argument and the table name with the `sqtable` argument. You can specify whether the column names and row names from the underlying table should be used in the data frame with the `colnames` and `rownames` arguments. The column names from the table will be used in the returned data frame (this is enabled by default). If you choose to use row names, the first column in the returned data is used for column names in the data frame (this is disabled by default). You may pass additional arguments to this function, which are, in turn, passed to `sqlQuery` and `sqlGetResults` (described below).

As an example, let's load the content of the Teams table into a data frame called "t":

```

> teams <- sqlFetch(bbdb, "Teams")
> names(teams)
 [1] "yearID"        "lgID"          "teamID"         "franchID"
 [5] "divID"          "Rank"          "G"              "Ghome"
 [9] "W"              "L"              "DivWin"         "WCWin"
[13] "LgWin"          "WSWin"         "R"              "AB"
[17] "H"              "2B"            "3B"            "HR"
[21] "BB"            "SO"            "SB"            "CS"
[25] "HBP"           "SF"            "RA"            "ER"
[29] "ERA"           "CG"            "SHO"           "SV"
[33] "IPouts"        "HA"            "HRA"           "BBA"
[37] "SOA"           "E"              "DP"            "FP"
[41] "name"          "park"          "attendance"    "BPF"
[45] "PPF"           "teamIDBR"      "teamIDlahman45" "teamIDretro"
> dim(teams)
[1] 2595   48

```

After loading the table into R, you can easily manipulate the data using R commands:

```
> # show wins and losses for American League teams in 2008
> subset(teams,
+   subset=(teams$yearID==2008 & teams$lgID=="AL"),
+   select=c("teamID", "W", "L"))
  teamID   W   L
2567    LAA 100  62
2568    KCA  75  87
2571    DET  74  88
2573    CLE  81  81
2576    CHA  89  74
2577    BOS  95  67
2578    BAL  68  93
2582    MIN  88  75
2583    NYA  89  73
2585    OAK  75  86
2589    SEA  61 101
2592    TBA  97  65
2593    TEX  79  83
2594    TOR  86  76
```

There are related functions for writing a data frame to a database (`sqlSave`) or for updating a table in a database (`sqlUpdate`); see the help files for these functions for more information.

You can also execute an arbitrary SQL query in the underlying database. SQL is a very powerful language; you can use SQL to fetch data from multiple tables, to fetch a summary of the data in one (or more) tables, or to fetch specific rows or columns from the database. You can do this with the `sqlQuery` function:

```
sqlQuery(channel, query, errors = , max = , ..., rows_at_time = )
```

This function returns a data frame containing the rows returned by the query. As an example, we could use an SQL query to select only the data shown above (wins and losses by team in the American League in 2008):

```
> sqlQuery(bbdb,
+   "SELECT teamID, W, L FROM Teams where yearID=2008 and lgID='AL'")
  teamID   W   L
1    BAL  68  93
2    BOS  95  67
3    CHA  89  74
4    CLE  81  81
5    DET  74  88
6    KCA  75  87
7    LAA 100  62
8    MIN  88  75
9    NYA  89  73
10   OAK  75  86
11   SEA  61 101
12   TBA  97  65
13   TEX  79  83
14   TOR  86  76
```

If you want to fetch data from a very large table, or from a very complicated query, you might not want to fetch all the data at one time. The RODBC library provides a mechanism for fetching results piecewise. To do this, you begin by calling `sqlQuery` (or `sqlFetch`), but specify a value for `max`, telling the function the maximum number of rows that you want to retrieve at one time. You can fetch the remaining rows with the `sqlGetResults` function:

```
sqlGetResults(channel, as.is = , errors = , max = , bufsize = ,
nullstring = , na.strings = , believeNRows = , dec = ,
stringsAsFactors = )
```

The `sqlQuery` function actually calls the `sqlGetResults` function to fetch the results of the query. Here is a list of the arguments for these two functions. (If you are using `sqlFetch`, the corresponding function to fetch additional rows is `sqlFetchMore`.)

| Argument         | Description  | Default                                 |
|------------------|--|---|
| channel          | Specifies the channel for the underlying database.   |   |
| query            | A character value specifying the SQL query to execute.   |   |
| errors           | A logical value specifying what to do when an error is encountered. When <code>errors=TRUE</code> , the function will stop and display the error if an error is encountered. When <code>errors=FALSE</code> , a value of -1 is returned.   | TRUE                                    |
| max              | An integer specifying the maximum number of rows to return. Specify 0 for no maximum.  | 0 (meaning no maximum)                  |
| rows_at_time     | An integer specifying the number of rows to fetch from the ODBC connection on each call to the underlying driver; not all drivers allow values greater than 1. (Note that this is a performance optimization; it doesn't mean the same thing as the <code>max</code> argument. For modern drivers, the package documentation suggests a value of 1,024.) | 1                                       |
| as.is            | A logical vector specifying which columns should be converted to factors.  | FALSE                                   |
| bufsize          | An integer used to specify the buffer size for the driver. (If you know the approximate number of rows that a query will return, you can specify that value to optimize performance.)  | 1000                                    |
| nullstring       | Character values to be used for null values.   | NA                                      |
| na.strings       | Character values to be mapped to NA values.  | "NA"                                    |
| believeNRows     | A logical value that tells this function whether the row counts returned by the ODBC driver are correct. (This is a performance optimization.)   | TRUE                                    |
| dec              | The character used as the decimal point in decimal values.   | <code>getOption("dec")</code>           |
| stringsAsFactors | A logical value that specifies whether character value columns not explicitly included in <code>as.is</code> should be converted to factors.   | <code>default.stringsAsFactors()</code> |

By the way, notice that the `sqlQuery` function can be used to execute any valid query in the underlying database. It is most commonly used to just query results (using `SELECT` queries), but you can enter any valid data manipulation language query (including `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `DELETE`, and `UPDATE` queries) and data definition language query (including `CREATE`, `DROP`, and `ALTER` queries).

## Underlying Functions

There is a second set of functions in the RODBC package. The functions `odbcQuery`, `odbcTables`, `odbcColumns`, and `odbcPrimaryKeys` are used to execute queries in the database but not to fetch results. A second function, `odbcFetchResults`, is used to get the results. The first four functions return status codes as integers, which is not very R-like. (It's more like C.) The `odbcFetchResults` function returns its results in list form, which can also be somewhat cumbersome. If there is an error, you can retrieve the message by calling `odbcGetErrMsg`.

Sometimes, it might be convenient to use these functions because they give you greater control over how data is fetched from the database. However, the higher-level functions described in this section are usually much more convenient.

**Closing a channel.** When you are done using an RODBC channel, you can close it with the `odbcClose` function. This function takes the connection name as its only argument:

```
> odbcClose(bbdb)
```

Conveniently, you can also close all open channels using the `odbcCloseAll` function. It is generally a good practice to close connections when you are done, because this frees resources locally and in the underlying database.

## DBI

As described above, there is a second set of packages for accessing databases in R: DBI. DBI is not a single package, but instead is a framework and set of packages for accessing databases. Table 11-3 shows the set of database drivers available through this interface. One important difference between the DBI packages and the RODBC package is in the objects they use: DBI uses S4 objects to represent drivers, connections, and other objects.

Table 11-3. DBI packages

| Database                        | Package     |
|---------------------------------|-------------|
| MySQL                           | RMySQL      |
| SQLite                          | RSQLite     |
| Oracle                          | ROracle     |
| PostgreSQL                      | RPostgreSQL |
| Any database with a JDBC driver | RJDBC       |

As an example, let's use the RSQLite package. You can install this package with the following command:

```
> install.packages("RSQLite")
```

When you load this package, it will automatically load the DBI package as well:

```
> library(RSQLite)
Loading required package: DBI
```

If you are familiar with SQL but new to SQLite, you may want to review what SQL commands are supported by SQLite. You can find this list at <http://www.sqlite.org/lang.html>.

## Opening a connection

To open a connection with DBI, use the `dbConnect` function:

```
dbConnect(drv, ...)
```

The argument `drv` can be a `DBIDriver` object or a character value describing the driver to use. You can generate a `DBIDriver` object with a call to the DBI driver. The `dbConnect` function can take additional options, depending on the type of database you are using. For SQLite databases, the most important argument is `dbname` (which specifies the database file). Check the help files for the database you are using for more options. Even arguments for parameters like usernames are *not* the same between databases.

For example, to create a driver for SQLite, you can use a command like this:

```
> drv <- dbDriver("SQLite")
```

To open a connection to the example database, we could use the following command:

```
> con <- dbConnect(drv,
+   dbname=system.file("extdata", "bb.db", package="nutshell"))
```

Alternatively, we could skip creating the driver object and simply create the connection:

```
> con <- dbConnect("SQLite",
+   dbname=system.file("extdata", "bb.db", package="nutshell"))
```

There are several reasons why it can be better to explicitly create a driver object. First, you can get information about open connections if you can identify the driver. Additionally, if you are concerned with resource consumption, it may be wise to explicitly create a driver object, because you can free the object later. (See “[Cleaning up](#)” on page 171 for more details.)

## Getting DB information

There are several ways to get information about an open database connection object. As noted above, DBI objects are S4 objects, so they have meaningful classes:

```
> class(drv)
[1] "SQLiteDriver"
```

```
attr(package)
[1] "RSQLite"
> class(con)
[1] "SQLiteConnection"
attr(package)
[1] "RSQLite"
```

To get the list of connection objects associated with a driver object, use the `dbListConnections` function:

```
> dbListConnections(drv)
[[1]]
<SQLiteConnection:(4580,0)>
```

You can get some basic information about a connection object, such as the database name and username, through the `dbGetInfo` function:

```
> dbGetInfo(con)
$host
[1] "localhost"

$user
[1] "NA"

$dbname
[1] "/Library/Frameworks/R.framework/Resources/library/nutshell/data/bb.db"

$conType
[1] "direct"

$serverVersion
[1] "3.6.4"

$threadId
[1] -1

$rsId
integer(0)

$loadableExtensions
[1] "off"
```

To find the set of tables that you can access from a database connection, use the `dbListTables` function. This function returns a character vector of table names:

```
> dbListTables(con)
[1] "Allstar"           "AllstarFull"        "Appearances"
[4] "AwardsManagers"   "AwardsPlayers"      "AwardsShareManagers"
[7] "AwardsSharePlayers" "Batting"            "BattingPost"
[10] "Fielding"          "FieldingOF"         "FieldingPost"
[13] "HOFold"             "HallOfFame"         "Managers"
[16] "ManagersHalf"       "Master"              "Pitching"
[19] "PitchingPost"        "Salaries"            "Schools"
[22] "SchoolsPlayers"     "SeriesPost"          "Teams"
[25] "TeamsFranchises"    "TeamsHalf"           "xref_stats"
```

To find the list of columns, use the List `dbListFields` function. This function takes a connection object and a table name as arguments and returns a character vector of column names:

```
> dbListFields(con, "Allstar")
[1] "playerID" "yearID" "lgID"
```

## Querying the database

To query a database using DBI and return a data frame with the results, use the `dbGetQuery` function. This function requires a connection object and SQL statement as arguments. Check the help files for your database for additional arguments.

For example, to fetch a list of the wins and losses for teams in the American League in 2008, you could use the following query:

```
> wlrecords.2008 <- dbGetQuery(con,
+   "SELECT teamID, W, L FROM Teams WHERE yearID=2008 AND lgID='AL'")
```

To get information on all batters in 2008, you might use a query like this:

```
> batting.2008 <- dbGetQuery(con,
+   paste("SELECT m.nameLast, m.nameFirst, m.weight, m.height, ",
+         "m.bats, mthrows, m.debut, m.birthYear, b.* ",
+         "FROM Master m INNER JOIN Batting b ",
+         "ON m.playerID=b.playerID WHERE b.yearID=2008"))
> names(batting.2008)
[1] "nameLast" "nameFirst" "weight" "height" "bats"
[6] "throws" "debut" "birthYear" "playerID" "yearID"
[11] "stint" "teamID" "lgID" "G" "G_batting"
[16] "AB" "R" "H" "2B" "3B"
[21] "HR" "RBI" "SB" "CS" "BB"
[26] "SO" "IBB" "HBP" "SH" "SF"
[31] "GIDP" "G_old"
> dim(batting.2008)
[1] 1384 31
```

This data set is used in other sections of this book as an example. For convenience, it is included in the `nutshell` package.

You might find it more convenient to separately submit an SQL query and fetch the results. To do this, you would use the `dbSendQuery` function to send a query and then use `fetch` to get the results. The `dbSendQuery` function returns a `DBIResult` object (actually, it returns an object from a class that inherits from `DBIResult`). You then use the `fetch` function to extract data from the results object.

The `dbSendQuery` function takes the same arguments as `dbGetQuery`. The `fetch` function takes a result object `res` as an argument, an integer value `n` representing the maximum number of rows to return, and additional arguments passed to the methods for a specific database driver. To fetch all records, you can omit `n`, or use `n=-1`.

For example, the following R statements are equivalent to the dbGetQuery statements shown above:

```
> res <- dbSendQuery(con,
+   "SELECT teamID, W, L FROM Teams where yearID=2008 and lgID='AL'")
> wlrecords.2008 <- fetch(res)
```

You can clear pending results using the dbClearResult function:

```
> # query to fetch a lot of results
> res <- dbSendQuery(con,"SELECT * from Master")
> # function to clear the results
> dbClearResult(res)
[1] TRUE
```

If an error occurred, you can get information about the error with the dbGetException function:

```
> # SQL statement that will generate an error.
> # Notice that an error message is printed.
> res <- dbSendQuery(con,"SELECT * from non_existent_table")
Error in sqliteExecStatement(conn, statement, ...) :
  RS-DBI driver: (error in statement: no such table: non_existent_table)
> # now, manually get the error message
> dbGetException(con)
$errorNum
[1] 1

$errorMsg
[1] "error in statement: no such table: non_existent_table"
```

Finally, DBI provides some functions for reading whole tables from a database or writing whole data frames to a database. To read a whole table, use the dbReadTable function:

```
> batters <- dbReadTable(con, "Batting")
> dim(batters)
[1] 91457    24
```

To write a data frame to a table, you can use the dbWriteTable function. You can check if a table exists with the dbExistsTable function, and you can delete a table with the dbRemoveTable function.

## Cleaning up

To close a database connection, use the dbDisconnect function:

```
> dbDisconnect(con)
[1] TRUE
```

You can also explicitly unload the database driver, freeing system resources, by using the dbUnloadDriver function. With some databases, you can pass additional arguments to this driver; see the help files for the database you are using for more information.

```
> dbUnloadDriver(drv)
```

## TSDBI

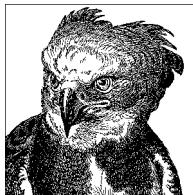
There is one last database interface in R that you might find useful: TSDBI. TSDBI is an interface specifically designed for time series data. There are TSDBI packages for many popular databases, as shown in [Table 11-4](#).

*Table 11-4. TSDBI packages*

| Database                         | Package      |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| MySQL                            | TSMYSQL      |
| SQLite                           | TSSQLite     |
| Fame                             | TSFame       |
| PostgreSQL                       | TSPostgreSQL |
| Any database with an ODBC driver | TSODBC       |

## Getting Data from Hadoop

Today, one of the most important sources for data is Hadoop. To learn more about Hadoop, including instructions on how to install R packages for working with Hadoop data on HDFS or in HBase, see “[R and Hadoop](#)” on page 549.



# 12

## Preparing Data

Back in my freshman year of college, I was planning to be a biochemist. I spent hours and hours in the lab: mixing chemicals in test tubes, putting samples in different machines, and analyzing the results. Over time, I grew frustrated because I found myself spending weeks in the lab doing manual work and just a few minutes planning experiments or analyzing results. After a year, I gave up on chemistry and became a computer scientist, thinking that I would spend less time on preparation and testing and more time on analysis.

Unfortunately for me, I chose to do data mining work professionally. Everyone loves building models, drawing charts, and playing with cool algorithms. Unfortunately, most of the time you spend on data analysis projects is spent on preparing data for analysis. I'd estimate that 80% of the effort on a typical project is spent on finding, cleaning, and preparing data for analysis. Less than 5% of the effort is devoted to analysis. (The rest of the time is spent on writing up what you did.)

If you're new to data analysis, you're probably wondering what the big deal is about preparing data. Suppose that you are getting some data off of your company's web servers, or out of a financial database, or from electronic patient records. It all came from computers, so it's perfect, right?

In practice, data is almost never stored in the right form for analysis. Even when data is in the right form, there are often surprises in the data. It takes a lot of work to pull together a usable data set. This chapter explains how to prepare data for analysis with R.

### Combining Data Sets

Let's start with one of the most common obstacles to data analysis: working with data that's stored in two different places. For example, suppose that you wanted to look at batting statistics for baseball players by age. In most baseball data sources (like the Baseball Databank data), player information (like ages) is kept in different files from performance data (like batting statistics). So you would need to combine

two files to do this analysis. This section discusses several tools in R used for combining data sets.

## Pasting Together Data Structures

R provides several functions that allow you to paste together multiple data structures into a single structure.

### Paste

The simplest of these functions is `paste`. The `paste` function allows you to concatenate multiple character vectors into a single vector. (If you concatenate a vector of another type, it will be coerced to a character vector first.)

```
> x <- c("a", "b", "c", "d", "e")
> y <- c("A", "B", "C", "D", "E")
> paste(x,y)
[1] "a A" "b B" "c C" "d D" "e E"
```

By default, values are separated by a space; you can specify another separator (or none at all) with the `sep` argument:

```
> paste(x, y, sep="-")
[1] "a-A" "b-B" "c-C" "d-D" "e-E"
```

If you would like all of values in the returned vector to be concatenated with one another (to return just a single value), then specify a value for the `collapse` argument. The value of `collapse` will be used as the separator in this value:

```
> paste(x, y, sep="-", collapse="#")
[1] "a-A#b-B#c-C#d-D#e-E"
```

### rbind and cbind

Sometimes, you would like to bind together multiple data frames or matrices. You can do this with the `rbind` and `cbind` functions. The `cbind` function will combine objects by adding columns. You can picture this as combining two tables horizontally. As an example, let's start with the data frame for the top five salaries in the NFL in 2008:<sup>1</sup>

```
> top.5.salaries
   name.last name.first      team position    salary
 1 Manning      Peyton     Colts      QB 18700000
 2 Brady        Tom       Patriots     QB 14626720
 3 Pepper       Julius     Panthers     DE 14137500
 4 Palmer       Carson    Bengals      QB 13980000
 5 Manning      Eli      Giants      QB 12916666
```

Now let's create a new data frame with two more columns (a year and a rank):

```
> year <- c(2008, 2008, 2008, 2008, 2008)
> rank <- c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
```

1. Salary data is from <http://sportsillustrated.cnn.com/football/nfl/salaries/2008/all.html>. The salary numbers are cap numbers, not cash salaries.

```
> more.cols <- data.frame(year, rank)
> more.cols
  year rank
1 2008    1
2 2008    2
3 2008    3
4 2008    4
5 2008    5
```

Finally, let's put together these two data frames:

```
> cbind(top.5.salaries, more.cols)
   name.last name.first      team position   salary year rank
1  Manning      Peyton     Colts      QB 18700000 2008    1
2   Brady        Tom       Patriots     QB 14626720 2008    2
3  Pepper        Julius    Panthers     DE 14137500 2008    3
4  Palmer       Carson    Bengals      QB 13980000 2008    4
5  Manning       Eli      Giants      QB 12916666 2008    5
```

The `rbind` function will combine objects by adding rows. You can picture this as combining two tables vertically.

As an example, suppose that you had a data frame with the top five salaries (as shown above) and a second data frame with the next three salaries:

```
> top.5.salaries
   name.last name.first      team position   salary
1  Manning      Peyton     Colts      QB 18700000
2   Brady        Tom       Patriots     QB 14626720
3  Pepper        Julius    Panthers     DE 14137500
4  Palmer       Carson    Bengals      QB 13980000
5  Manning       Eli      Giants      QB 12916666
> next.three
   name.last name.first      team position   salary
6   Favre       Brett     Packers      QB 12800000
7   Bailey      Champ    Broncos     CB 12690050
8  Harrison     Marvin    Colts      WR 12000000
```

You could combine these into a single data frame using the `rbind` function:

```
> rbind(top.5.salaries, next.three)
   name.last name.first      team position   salary
1  Manning      Peyton     Colts      QB 18700000
2   Brady        Tom       Patriots     QB 14626720
3  Pepper        Julius    Panthers     DE 14137500
4  Palmer       Carson    Bengals      QB 13980000
5  Manning       Eli      Giants      QB 12916666
6   Favre       Brett     Packers      QB 12800000
7   Bailey      Champ    Broncos     CB 12690050
8  Harrison     Marvin    Colts      WR 12000000
```

## An extended example

To show how to fetch and combine together data and build a data frame for analysis, we'll use an example from the previous chapter: stock quotes. Yahoo! Finance allows you to download CSV files with stock quotes for a single ticker.

Suppose that you wanted a single data set with stock quotes for multiple securities (say, the 30 stocks in the Dow Jones Industrial Average). You would need a way to bind together the data returned by the query into a single data set. Let's write a function that can return historical stock quotes for multiple securities in a single data frame. First, let's write a function that assembles the URL for the CSV file and then fetches a data frame with the contents.

Here is what this function will do. First, it will define the URL. (I determined the format of the URL by trial and error: I tried fetching CSV files from Yahoo! Finance with different ticker symbols and different date ranges until I knew how to construct the queries.) We will use the `paste` function to put together all these different character values. Next, we will fetch the URL with the `read.csv` function, assigning the data frame to the symbol `tmp`. The data frame has most of the information we want but doesn't include the ticker symbol. So we will use the `cbind` function to attach a vector of ticker symbols to the data frame. (By the way, the function uses `Date` objects to represent the date. I also used the current date as the default value for `to`, and the date one year ago as the default value for `from`.)

Here is the function:

```
get.quotes <- function(ticker,
                        from=(Sys.Date()-365),
                        to=(Sys.Date()),
                        interval="d") {

  # define parts of the URL
  base <- "http://ichart.finance.yahoo.com/table.csv?";
  symbol <- paste("s=", ticker, sep="");

  # months are numbered from 00 to 11, so format the month correctly
  from.month <- paste("&a=",
                      formatC(as.integer(format(from,"%m"))-1,width=2,flag="0"),
                      sep="");
  from.day <- paste("&b=", format(from,"%d"), sep(""));
  from.year <- paste("&c=", format(from,"%Y"), sep(""));
  to.month <- paste("&d=",
                     formatC(as.integer(format(to,"%m"))-1,width=2,flag="0"),
                     sep="");
  to.day <- paste("&e=", format(to,"%d"), sep(""));
  to.year <- paste("&f=", format(to,"%Y"), sep(""));
  inter <- paste("&g=", interval, sep(""));
  last <- "&ignore=.csv";

  # put together the url
  url <- paste(base, symbol, from.month, from.day, from.year,
               to.month, to.day, to.year, inter, last, sep="");

  # get the file
  tmp <- read.csv(url);

  # add a new column with ticker symbol labels
  cbind(symbol=ticker,tmp);
}
```

Now let's write a function that returns a data frame with quotes from multiple securities. This function will simply call `get.quotes` once for every ticker in a vector of tickers and bind together the results using `rbind`:

```
get.multiple.quotes <- function(tkrs,
                                    from=(Sys.Date()-365),
                                    to=(Sys.Date()),
                                    interval="d") {
  tmp <- NULL;
  for (tkr in tkrs) {
    if (is.null(tmp))
      tmp <- get.quotes(tkr,from,to,interval)
    else tmp <- rbind(tmp,get.quotes(tkr,from,to,interval))
  }
  tmp
}
```

Finally, let's define a vector with the set of ticker symbols in the Dow Jones Industrial Average and then build a data frame with data from all 30 tickers:

```
> dow.tickers <- c("MMM", "AA", "AXP", "T", "BAC", "BA", "CAT", "CVX",
+                   "CSCO", "KO", "DD", "XOM", "GE", "HPO", "HD", "INTC",
+                   "IBM", "JNJ", "JPM", "KFT", "MCD", "MRK", "MSFT", "PFE",
+                   "PG", "TRV", "UTX", "VZ", "WMT", "DIS")
> # date on which I ran this code
> Sys.Date()
[1] "2012-01-08"
> dow30 <- get.multiple.quotes(dow30.tickers)
```

We'll return to this data set below.

## Merging Data by Common Fields

As an example, let's return to the Baseball Databank database that we used in “[Importing Data From Databases](#)” on page 156. In this database, player information is stored in the `Master` table. Players are uniquely identified by the column `playerID`:

```
> dbListFields(con, "Master")
[1] "lahmanID"      "playerID"       "managerID"     "hofID"
[5] "birthYear"      "birthMonth"     "birthDay"      "birthCountry"
[9] "birthState"     "birthCity"      "deathYear"     "deathMonth"
[13] "deathDay"       "deathCountry"   "deathState"    "deathCity"
[17] "nameFirst"      "nameLast"      "nameNote"     "nameGiven"
[21] "nameNick"       "weight"        "height"       "bats"
[25] "throws"         "debut"         "finalGame"    "college"
[29] "lahman40ID"    "lahman45ID"    "retroID"      "holtzID"
[33] "bbrefID"
```

Batting information is stored in the `Batting` table. Players are uniquely identified by `playerID` in this table as well:

```
> dbListFields(con, "Batting")
[1] "playerID"      "yearID"        "stint"        "teamID"      "lgID"
[6] "G"              "G_batting"    "AB"          "R"           "H"
[11] "2B"            "3B"           "HR"          "RBI"         "SB"
[16] "CS"            "BB"           "SO"          "IBB"         "HBP"
[21] "SH"            "SF"           "GIDP"        "G_old"
```

Suppose that you wanted to show batting statistics for each player along with his name and age. To do this, you would need to merge data from the two tables. In R, you can do this with the `merge` function:

```
> batting <- dbGetQuery(con, "SELECT * FROM Batting")
> master <- dbGetQuery(con, "SELECT * FROM Master")
> batting.w.names <- merge(batting, master)
```

In this case, there was only one common variable between the two tables: `playerID`:

```
> intersect(names(batting), names(master))
[1] "playerID"
```

By default, `merge` uses common variables between the two data frames as the merge keys. So, in this case, we did not have to specify any more arguments to merge. Let's take a closer look at the arguments to `merge` (for data frames):

```
merge(x, y, by = , by.x = , by.y = , all = , all.x = , all.y = ,
      sort = , suffixes = , incomparables = , ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `merge`.

| Argument | Description   | Default                                    |
|----------|---|--|
| x        | One of the two data frames to combine.  |  |
| y        | One of the two data frames to combine.  |  |
| by       | A vector of character values corresponding to column names.   | <code>intersect(names(x), names(y))</code> |
| by.x     | A vector of character values corresponding to column names in x. Overrides the list given in by.  | by   |
| by.y     | A vector of character values corresponding to column names in y. Overrides the list given in by.  | by   |
| all      | A logical value specifying whether rows from each data frame should be included even if there is no match in the other data frame. This is equivalent to an OUTER JOIN in a database. (Equivalent to <code>all.x=TRUE</code> and <code>all.y=TRUE</code> .) | FALSE                                      |
| all.x    | A logical value specifying whether rows from data frame x should be included even if there is no match in the other data frame. This is equivalent to x LEFT OUTER JOIN y in a database.  | all  |
| all.y    | A logical value specifying whether rows from data frame y should be included even if there is no match in the other data frame. This is equivalent to x RIGHT OUTER JOIN y in a database.   | all  |
| sort     | A logical value that specifies whether the results should be sorted by the by columns.  | TRUE                                       |
| suffixes | A character vector with two values. If there are columns in x and y with the same name that are not used in the by list, they will be renamed with the suffixes given by this argument.   | <code>suffixes = c(".x", ".y")</code>      |

| Argument      | Description                                 | Default |
|---------------|---|---------|
| incomparables | A list of variables that cannot be matched. | NULL    |

By default, `merge` is equivalent to a NATURAL JOIN in SQL. You can specify other columns to make it use `merge` like an INNER JOIN. You can specify values of ALL to get the same results as OUTER or FULL joins. If there are no matching field names, or if `by` is of length 0 (or `by.x` and `by.y` are of length 0), then `merge` will return the full Cartesian product of `x` and `y`.

## Transformations

Sometimes, there will be some variables in your source data that aren't quite right. This section explains how to change a variable in a data frame.

### Reassigning Variables

One of the most convenient ways to redefine a variable in a data frame is to use the assignment operator. For example, suppose that you wanted to change the type of a variable in the `dow30` data frame that we created above. When `read.csv` imported this data, it interpreted the "Date" field as a character string and converted it to a factor:

```
> class(dow30$Date)
[1] "factor"
```

Factors are fine for some things, but we could better represent the date field as a `Date` object. (That would create a proper ordering on dates and allow us to extract information from them.) Luckily, Yahoo! Finance prints dates in the default date format for R, so we can just transform these values into `Date` objects using `as.Date` (see the help file for `as.Date` for more information). So let's change this variable within the data frame to use `Date` objects:

```
> dow30$Date <- as.Date(dow30$Date)
> class(dow30$Date)
[1] "Date"
```

It's also possible to make other changes to data frames. For example, suppose that we wanted to define a new midpoint variable that is the mean of the high and low price. We can add this variable with the same notation:

```
> dow30$mid <- (dow30$High + dow30$Low) / 2
> names(dow30)
[1] "symbol"      "Date"        "Open"        "High"        "Low"
[6] "Close"       "Volume"      "Adj.Close"   "mid"
```

### The Transform Function

A convenient function for changing variables in a data frame is the `transform` function. Formally, `transform` is defined as:

```
transform(`_data`, ...)
```

Notice that there aren't any named arguments for this function. To use `transform`, you specify a data frame (as the first argument) and a set of expressions that use variables within the data frame. The `transform` function applies each expression to the data frame and then returns the final data frame.

For example, suppose that we wanted to perform the two transformations listed above: changing the Date column to a Date format, and adding a new midpoint variable. We could do this with `transform` using the following expression:

```
> dow30.transformed <- transform(dow30, Date=as.Date(Date),
+   mid = (High + Low) / 2)
> names(dow30.transformed)
[1] "symbol"      "Date"        "Open"        "High"        "Low"
[6] "Close"        "Volume"      "Adj.Close"    "mid"
> class(dow30.transformed$date)
[1] "Date"
```

## Applying a Function to Each Element of an Object

When transforming data, one common operation is to apply a function to a set of objects (or each part of a composite object) and return a new set of objects (or a new composite object). The base R library includes a set of different functions for doing this.

### Applying a function to an array

To apply a function to parts of an array (or matrix), use the `apply` function:

```
apply(X, MARGIN, FUN, ...)
```

`Apply` accepts three arguments: `X` is the array to which a function is applied, `FUN` is the function, and `MARGIN` specifies the dimensions to which you would like to apply a function. Optionally, you can specify arguments to `FUN` as additional arguments to `apply` arguments to `FUN`.) To show how this works, here's a simple example. Let's create a matrix with five rows of four elements, corresponding to the numbers between 1 and 20:

```
> x <- 1:20
> dim(x) <- c(5, 4)
> x
     [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
[1,]    1    6   11   16
[2,]    2    7   12   17
[3,]    3    8   13   18
[4,]    4    9   14   19
[5,]    5   10   15   20
```

Now let's show how `apply` works. We'll use the function `max` because it's easy to look at the matrix above and see where the results came from.

First, let's select the maximum element of each row. (These are the values in the rightmost column: 16, 17, 18, 19, and 20.) To do this, we will specify `X=x`, `MARGIN=1` (rows are the first dimension), and `FUN=max`:

```
> apply(X=x, MARGIN=1, FUN=max)
[1] 16 17 18 19 20
```

To do the same thing for columns, we simply have to change the value of `MARGIN`:

```
> apply(X=x, MARGIN=2, FUN=max)
[1] 5 10 15 20
```

As a slightly more complex example, we can also use `MARGIN` to apply a function over multiple dimensions. (We'll switch to the function `paste` to show which elements were included.) Consider the following three-dimensional array:

```
> x <- 1:27
> dim(x) <- c(3, 3, 3)
> x
, , 1

[,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]    1    4    7
[2,]    2    5    8
[3,]    3    6    9

, , 2

[,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]   10   13   16
[2,]   11   14   17
[3,]   12   15   18

, , 3

[,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]   19   22   25
[2,]   20   23   26
[3,]   21   24   27
```

Let's start by looking at which values are grouped for each value of `MARGIN`:

```
> apply(X=x, MARGIN=1, FUN=paste, collapse="")
[1] "1,4,7,10,13,16,19,22,25" "2,5,8,11,14,17,20,23,26"
[3] "3,6,9,12,15,18,21,24,27"
> apply(X=x, MARGIN=2, FUN=paste, collapse="")
[1] "1,2,3,10,11,12,19,20,21" "4,5,6,13,14,15,22,23,24"
[3] "7,8,9,16,17,18,25,26,27"
> apply(X=x, MARGIN=3, FUN=paste, collapse="")
[1] "1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9"           "10,11,12,13,14,15,16,17,18"
[3] "19,20,21,22,23,24,25,26,27"
```

Let's do something more complicated. Let's select `MARGIN=c(1, 2)` to see which elements are selected:

```
> apply(X=x, MARGIN=c(1,2), FUN=paste, collapse="")
      [,1]      [,2]      [,3]
[1,] "1,10,19" "4,13,22" "7,16,25"
[2,] "2,11,20" "5,14,23" "8,17,26"
[3,] "3,12,21" "6,15,24" "9,18,27"
```

This is the equivalent of doing the following: for each value of  $i$  between 1 and 3 and each value of  $j$  between 1 and 3, calculate **FUN** of  $x[i][j][1]$ ,  $x[i][j][2]$ ,  $x[i][j][3]$ .

### Applying a function to a list or vector

To apply a function to each element in a vector or a list and return a list, you can use the function **lapply**. The function **lapply** requires two arguments: an object **X** and a function **FUNC**. (You may specify additional arguments that will be passed to **FUNC**.) Let's look at a simple example of how to use **lapply**:

```
> x <- as.list(1:5)
> lapply(x,function(x) 2^x)
[[1]]
[1] 2

[[2]]
[1] 4

[[3]]
[1] 8

[[4]]
[1] 16

[[5]]
[1] 32
```

You can apply a function to a data frame, and the function will be applied to each vector in the data frame. For example:

```
> d <- data.frame(x=1:5, y=6:10)
> d
   x  y
1 1  6
2 2  7
3 3  8
4 4  9
5 5 10
> lapply(d,function(x) 2^x)
$x
[1] 2 4 8 16 32

$y
[1] 64 128 256 512 1024
> lapply(d,FUN=max)
$x
[1] 5

$y
[1] 10
```

Sometimes, you might prefer to get a vector, matrix, or array instead of a list. To do this, use the **sapply** function. This function works exactly the same way as **apply**, except that it returns a vector or matrix (when appropriate):

```
> sapply(d, FUN=function(x) 2^x)
      x     y
[1,] 2    64
[2,] 4   128
[3,] 8   256
[4,] 16  512
[5,] 32 1024
```

Another related function is `mapply`, the “multivariate” version of `sapply`:

```
mapply(FUN, ..., MoreArgs = , SIMPLIFY = , USE.NAMES = )
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `mapply`.

| Argument               | Description  | Default |
|------------------------|--|---------|
| <code>FUN</code>       | The function to apply.   |         |
| <code>...</code>       | A set of vectors over which <code>FUN</code> should be applied.  |         |
| <code>MoreArgs</code>  | A list of additional arguments to pass to <code>FUN</code> .   |         |
| <code>SIMPLIFY</code>  | A logical value indicating whether to simplify the returned array.   | TRUE    |
| <code>USE.NAMES</code> | A logical value indicating whether to use names for returned values. Names are taken from the values in the first vector (if it is a character vector) or from the names of elements in that vector. | TRUE    |

This function will apply `FUN` to the first element of each vector, then to the second, and so on, until it reaches the last element.

Here is a simple example of `mapply`:

```
> mapply(paste,
+         c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5),
+         c("a", "b", "c", "d", "e"),
+         c("A", "B", "C", "D", "E"),
+         MoreArgs=list(sep="-"))
[1] "1-a-A" "2-b-B" "3-c-C" "4-d-D" "5-e-E"
```

## the `plyr` library

At this point, you’re probably confused by all the different `apply` functions. They all accept different arguments, they’re named inconsistently, and they work differently. Luckily, you don’t have to remember any of the details of these function if you use the `plyr` package.

The `plyr` package contains a set of 12 logically named functions for applying another function to an R data object and returning the results. Each of these functions takes an array, data frame, or list as input and returns an array, data frame, list, or nothing as output. (You can choose to discard the results.) Here’s a table of the most useful functions:

| Input             | Array Output | Data Frame Output | List Output | Discard Output |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------|----------------|
| <b>Array</b>      | aaply        | adply             | alply       | a_ply          |
| <b>Data Frame</b> | daply        | ddply             | dlply       | d_ply          |
| <b>List</b>       | lapply       | ldply             | llply       | l_ply          |

All of these functions accept the following arguments:

| Argument  | Description   | Default |
|-----------|---|---------|
| .data     | The input data object   |         |
| .fun      | The function to apply to the data   | NULL    |
| .progress | The type of progress bar (created with <code>create_progress</code> ); choices include "none", "text", "tk", and "win"                        | "none"  |
| .expand   | If .data is a data frame, controls how output is expanded; choose <code>.expand=TRUE</code> for 1d output, <code>.expand=FALSE</code> for nd. | TRUE    |
| .parallel | Specifies whether to apply the function in parallel (through <code>foreach</code> )   | FALSE   |
| ...       | Other arguments passed to .fun  |         |

Other arguments depend on the input and output. If the input is an array, then these arguments are available:

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| .margins | A vector describing the subscripts to split up data by |         |

If the input is a data frame, then these arguments are available:

| Argument                     | Description  | Default |
|------------------------------|--|---------|
| .drop (or .drop_i for daply) | Specifies whether to drop combinations of variables that do not appear in the data input | TRUE    |
| .variables                   | Specifies a set of variables by which to split the data frame                            |         |
| .drop_o (for daply only)     | Specifies whether to drop extra dimensions in the output for dimensions of length 1      | TRUE    |

If the output is dropped, then this argument is available:

| Argument | Description                                  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| .print   | Specifies whether to print each output value | FALSE   |

Let's try to re-create some of our examples from above using `plyr`:

```
> # (1) input list, output list
> lapply(d, function(x) 2^x)
$x
[1] 2 4 8 16 32
```

```
$y
[1] 64 128 256 512 1024
> # equivalent is llply
> llply(.data=d, .fun=function(x) 2^x)
$x
[1] 2 4 8 16 32

$y
[1] 64 128 256 512 1024
> # (2) input is an array, output is a vector
> apply(X=x,MARGIN=1, FUN=paste, collapse=",")
[1] "1,4,7,10,13,16,19,22,25" "2,5,8,11,14,17,20,23,26"
[3] "3,6,9,12,15,18,21,24,27"
> # equivalent (but note labels)
> aapply(.data=x,.margins=1, .fun=paste, collapse=",")
      1           2
"1,4,7,10,13,16,19,22,25" "2,5,8,11,14,17,20,23,26"
      3
"3,6,9,12,15,18,21,24,27"
> # (3) Data frame in, matrix out
> t(sapply(d, FUN=function(x) 2^x))
 [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5]
x     2     4     8    16   32
y    64   128   256   512 1024
> # equivalent (but note the additional labels)
> aapply(.data=d, .fun=function(x) 2^x, .margins=2)

X1   1   2   3   4   5
  x   2   4   8   16   32
  y 64 128 256 512 1024
```

## Binning Data

Another common data transformation is to group a set of observations into bins based on the value of a specific variable. For example, suppose you had some time series data where time was measured in days, but you wanted to summarize the data by month. There are several functions available for binning numeric data in R.

### Shingles

We briefly mentioned shingles in “[Shingles](#)” on page 95. Shingles are a way to represent intervals in R. They can be overlapping, like roof shingles (hence the name). They are used extensively in the `lattice` package, when you want to use a numeric value as a conditioning value.

To create shingles in R, use the `shingle` function:

```
shingle(x, intervals=sort(unique(x)))
```

To specify where to separate the bins, use the `intervals` argument. You can use a numeric vector to indicate the breaks or a two-column matrix, where each row represents a specific interval.

To create shingles where the number of observations is the same in each bin, you can use the `equal.count` function:

```
equal.count(x, ...)
```

## Cut

The function `cut` is useful for taking a continuous variable and splitting it into discrete pieces. Here is the default form of `cut` for use with numeric vectors:

```
# numeric form  
cut(x, breaks, labels = NULL,  
    include.lowest = FALSE, right = TRUE, dig.lab = 3,  
    ordered_result = FALSE, ...)
```

There is also a version of `cut` for manipulating `Date` objects:

```
# Date form  
cut(x, breaks, labels = NULL, start.on.monday = TRUE,  
    right = FALSE, ...)
```

The `cut` function takes a numeric vector as input and returns a factor. Each level in the factor corresponds to an interval of values in the input vector. Here is a description of the arguments to `cut`.

| Argument                     | Description   | Default |
|------------------------------|---|---------|
| <code>x</code>               | A numeric vector (to convert to a factor).  |         |
| <code>breaks</code>          | Either a single integer value specifying the number of break points or a numeric vector specifying the set of break points.   |         |
| <code>labels</code>          | Labels for the levels in the output factor.   | NULL    |
| <code>include.lowest</code>  | A logical value indicating if a value equal to the lowest point in the range (if <code>right=TRUE</code> ) in a range should be included in a given bucket. If <code>right=FALSE</code> indicates whether a value equal to the highest point in the range should be included. | FALSE   |
| <code>right</code>           | A logical value that specifies whether intervals should be closed on the right and open on the left. (For <code>right=FALSE</code> , intervals will be open on the right and closed on the left.)   | TRUE    |
| <code>dig.lab</code>         | Number of digits used when generating labels (if labels are not explicitly specified).  | 3       |
| <code>ordered_results</code> | A logical value indicating whether the result should be an ordered factor.  | FALSE   |

For example, suppose that you wanted to count the number of players with batting averages in certain ranges. To do this, you could use the `cut` function and the `table` function:

```
> # load in the example data  
> library(nutshell)  
> data(batting.2008)  
> # first, add batting average to the data frame:  
> batting.2008.AB <- transform(batting.2008, AVG = H/AB)  
> # now, select a subset of players with over 100 AB (for some  
  # statistical significance):  
> batting.2008.over100AB <- subset(batting.2008.AB, subset=(AB > 100))  
> # finally, split the results into 10 bins:  
> battingavg.2008.bins <- cut(batting.2008.over100AB$AVG, breaks=10)
```

```
> table(battingavg.2008.bins)
battingavg.2008.bins
(0.137,0.163] (0.163,0.189] (0.189,0.215] (0.215,0.24] (0.24,0.266]
               4          6         24         67        121
(0.266,0.292] (0.292,0.318] (0.318,0.344] (0.344,0.37] (0.37,0.396]
              132         70         11          5          2
```

## Combining Objects with a Grouping Variable

Sometimes you would like to combine a set of similar objects (either vectors or data frames) into a single data frame, with a column labeling the source. You can do this with the `make.groups` function in the `lattice` package:

```
library(lattice)
make.groups(...)
```

For example, let's combine three different vectors into a data frame:

```
> hat.sizes <- seq(from=6.25, to=7.75, by=.25)
> pants.sizes <- c(30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 36, 38, 40)
> shoe.sizes <- seq(from=7, to=12)
> make.groups(hat.sizes, pants.sizes, shoe.sizes)
  data      which
hat.sizes1  6.25  hat.sizes
hat.sizes2  6.50  hat.sizes
hat.sizes3  6.75  hat.sizes
hat.sizes4  7.00  hat.sizes
hat.sizes5  7.25  hat.sizes
hat.sizes6  7.50  hat.sizes
hat.sizes7  7.75  hat.sizes
pants.sizes1 30.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes2 31.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes3 32.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes4 33.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes5 34.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes6 36.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes7 38.00 pants.sizes
pants.sizes8 40.00 pants.sizes
shoe.sizes1   7.00  shoe.sizes
shoe.sizes2   8.00  shoe.sizes
shoe.sizes3   9.00  shoe.sizes
shoe.sizes4  10.00  shoe.sizes
shoe.sizes5  11.00  shoe.sizes
shoe.sizes6  12.00  shoe.sizes
```

## Subsets

Often, you'll be provided with too much data. For example, suppose that you were working with patient records at a hospital. You might want to analyze healthcare records for patients between 5 and 13 years of age who were treated for asthma during the past 3 years. To do this, you need to take a subset of the data and not examine the whole database.

Other times, you might have too much relevant data. For example, suppose that you were looking at a logistics operation that fills billions of orders every year. R can

hold only a certain number of records in memory and might not be able to hold the entire database. In most cases, you can get statistically significant results with a tiny fraction of the data; even millions of orders might be too many.

## Bracket Notation

One way to take a subset of a data set is to use the bracket notation. As you may recall, you can select rows in a data frame by providing a vector of logical values. If you can write a simple expression describing the set of rows to select from a data frame, you can provide this as an index.

For example, suppose that we wanted to select only batting data from 2008. The column `batting.w.names$yearID` contains the year associated with each row, so we could calculate a vector of logical values describing which rows to keep with the expression `batting.w.names$yearID==2008`. Now we just have to index the data frame `batting.w.names` with this vector to select only rows for the year 2008:

```
> batting.w.names.2008 <- batting.w.names[batting.w.names$yearID==2008,]
> summary(batting.w.names.2008$yearID)
  Min. 1st Qu. Median Mean 3rd Qu. Max.
  2008      2008    2008   2008    2008   2008
```

Similarly, we can use the same notation to select only certain columns. Suppose that we wanted to keep only the variables `nameFirst`, `nameLast`, `AB`, `H`, and `BB`. We could provide these in the brackets as well:

```
> batting.w.names.2008.short <-
+   batting.w.names[batting.w.names$yearID==2008,
+   c("nameFirst", "nameLast", "AB", "H", "BB")]
```

## subset Function

As an alternative, you can use the `subset` function to select a subset of rows and columns from a data frame (or matrix):

```
subset(x, subset, select, drop = FALSE, ...)
```

There isn't anything you can do with `subset` that you can't do with the bracket notation, but using `subset` can lead to more readable code. `Subset` allows you to use variable names from the data frame when selecting subsets, saving some typing. Here is a description of the arguments to `subset`.

| Argument            | Description  | Default |
|---------------------|--|---------|
| <code>x</code>      | The object from which to calculate a subset.                   |         |
| <code>subset</code> | A logical expression that describes the set of rows to return. |         |
| <code>select</code> | An expression indicating which columns to return.              |         |
| <code>drop</code>   | Passed to `[`.   | FALSE   |

As an example, let's recreate the same data sets we created above using `subset`:

```
> batting.w.names.2008 <- subset(batting.w.names, yearID==2008)
> batting.w.names.2008.short <- subset(batting.w.names, yearID==2008,
+      c("nameFirst", "nameLast", "AB", "H", "BB"))
```

## Random Sampling

Often, it is desirable to take a random sample of a data set. Sometimes, you might have too much data (for statistical reasons or for performance reasons). Other times, you simply want to split your data into different parts for modeling (usually into training, testing, and validation subsets).

One of the simplest ways to extract a random sample is with the `sample` function. The `sample` function returns a random sample of the elements of a vector:

```
sample(x, size, replace = FALSE, prob = NULL)
```

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| x        | The object from which the sample is taken                                  |         |
| size     | An integer value specifying the sample size                                |         |
| replace  | A logical value indicating whether to sample with, or without, replacement | FALSE   |
| prob     | A vector of probabilities for selecting each item                          | NULL    |

Somewhat nonintuitively, when applied to a data frame, `sample` will return a random sample of the columns. (Remember that a data frame is implemented as a list of vectors, so `sample` is just taking a random sample of the elements of the list.) So you need to be a little more clever when you use `sample` with a data frame.

To take a random sample of the observations in a data set, you can use `sample` to create a random sample of row numbers and then select these row numbers using an index operator. For example, let's take a random sample of five elements from the `batting.2008` data set:

```
> batting.2008[sample(1:nrow(batting.2008), 5), ]
   playerID yearID stint teamID lgID   G G_batting AB  R  H 2B 3B
90648  izardma01  2008     1    LAA   AL  79       79 290 44 78 14  2
90280  benijo01  2008     1    TEX   AL  44       3  0  0  0  0  0
90055  perci01  2008     1    TBA   AL  50       4  0  0  0  0  0
91085  getzch01  2008     1    CHA   AL  10      10  7  2  2  0  0
90503  willijo03 2008     1    FLO   NL 102      102 351 54 89 21  5
   HR RBI SB CS BB SO IBB HBP SH SF GIDP G_old
90648  3 37 11  2 26 27  0  1  2  2  9   79
90280  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0   3
90055  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0   4
91085  0  1  1  1  0  1  0  0  0  0  0   10
90503 15 51  3  2 48 82  2 14  1  2  7  102
```

You can also use this technique to select a more complicated random subset. For example, suppose that you wanted to randomly select statistics for three teams. You could do this as follows:

```
> batting.2008$teamID <- as.factor(batting.2008$teamID)
> levels(batting.2008$teamID)
```

```

[1] "ARI" "ATL" "BAL" "BOS" "CHA" "CHN" "CIN" "CLE" "COL" "DET" "FLO"
[12] "HOU" "KCA" "LAA" "LAN" "MIL" "MIN" "NYA" "NYN" "OAK" "PHI" "PIT"
[23] "SDN" "SEA" "SFN" "SLN" "TBA" "TEX" "TOR" "WAS"
> # example of sample
> sample(levels(batting.2008$teamID), 3)
[1] "ATL" "TEX" "DET"
> # usage example (note that it's a different random sample of teams)
> batting.2008.3teams <- batting.2008[is.element(batting.2008$teamID,
+   sample(levels(batting.2008$teamID), 3)), ]
> # check to see that sample only has three teams
> summary(batting.2008.3teams$teamID)
ARI ATL BAL BOS CHA CHN CIN CLE COL DET FLO HOU KCA LAA LAN MIL MIN
 0 0 0 0 0 0 48 0 0 0 0 0 0 41 0 44 0
NYA NYN OAK PHI PIT SDN SEA SFN SLN TBA TEX TOR WAS
 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

```

This function is good for data sources where you simply want to take a random sample of all the observations, but often you might want to do something more complicated, like stratified sampling, cluster sampling, maximum entropy sampling, or other more sophisticated methods. You can find many of these methods in the `sampling` package. For an example using this package to do stratified sampling, see “[Machine Learning Algorithms for Classification](#)” on page 477.

## Summarizing Functions

Often, you are provided with data that is too fine grained for your analysis. For example, you might be analyzing data about a website. Suppose that you wanted to know the average number of pages delivered to each user. To find the answer, you might need to look at every HTTP transaction (every request for content), grouping together requests into sessions and counting the number of requests. R provides a number of different functions for summarizing data, aggregating records together to build a smaller data set.

### `tapply`, `aggregate`

The `tapply` function is a very flexible function for summarizing a vector `X`. You can specify which subsets of `X` to summarize, as well as the function used for summarization:

```
tapply(X, INDEX, FUN = , ..., simplify = )
```

Here are the arguments to `tapply`.

| Argument           | Description   | Default |
|--------------------|---|---------|
| <code>X</code>     | The object on which to apply the function (usually a vector).   |         |
| <code>INDEX</code> | A list of factors that specify different sets of values of <code>X</code> over which to calculate <code>FUN</code> , each the same length as <code>X</code> . |         |
| <code>FUN</code>   | The function applied to elements of <code>X</code> .  | NULL    |
| <code>...</code>   | Optional arguments are passed to <code>FUN</code> .   |         |

| Argument | Description   | Default |
|----------|---|---------|
| simplify | If <code>simplify=TRUE</code> , then if <code>FUN</code> returns a scalar, then <code>tapply</code> returns an array with the mode of the scalar. If <code>simplify=FALSE</code> , then <code>tapply</code> returns a list. | TRUE    |

For example, we can use `tapply` to sum the number of home runs by team:

```
> tapply(X=batting.2008$HR, INDEX=list(batting.2008$teamID), FUN=sum)
ARI ATL BAL BOS CHA CHN CIN CLE COL DET FLO HOU KCA LAA LAN MIL MIN
159 130 172 173 235 184 187 171 160 200 208 167 120 159 137 198 111
NYA NYN OAK PHI PIT SDN SEA SFN SLN TBA TEX TOR WAS
180 172 125 214 153 154 124 94 174 180 194 126 117
```

You can also apply a function that returns multiple items, such as `fivenum` (which returns a vector containing the minimum, lower-hinge, median, upper-hinge, and maximum values) to the data. For example, here is the result of applying `fivenum` to the batting averages of each player, aggregated by league:

```
> tapply(X=(batting.2008$H/batting.2008$AB),
+ INDEX=list(batting.2008$lgID), FUN=fivenum)
$AL
[1] 0.0000000 0.1758242 0.2487923 0.2825485 1.0000000

$NL
[1] 0.0000000 0.0952381 0.2172524 0.2679739 1.0000000
```

You can also use `tapply` to calculate summaries over multiple dimensions. For example, we can calculate the mean number of home runs per player by league and batting hand:

```
> tapply(X=(batting.2008$HR),
+ INDEX=list(batting.w.names.2008$lgID,
+           batting.w.names.2008$bats),
+         FUN=mean)
      B          L          R
AL 3.058824 3.478495 3.910891
NL 3.313433 3.400000 3.344902
```

(As a side note, there is no equivalent to `tapply` in the `plyr` package.)

A function closely related to `tapply` is `by`. The `by` function works the same way as `tapply`, except that it works on data frames. The `INDEX` argument is replaced by an `INDICES` argument. Here is an example:

```
> by(batting.2008[, c("H", "2B", "3B", "HR")],
+     INDICES=list(batting.w.names.2008$lgID,
+                  batting.w.names.2008$bats), FUN=mean)
: AL
: B
      H          2B          3B          HR
29.0980392 5.4901961 0.8431373 3.0588235
-----
: NL
: B
      H          2B          3B          HR
29.2238806 6.4776119 0.6865672 3.3134328
```

```

: AL
: L
      H       2B       3B       HR
32.4301075 6.7258065 0.5967742 3.4784946
-----
: NL
: L
      H       2B       3B       HR
31.888372 6.283721 0.627907 3.400000
-----
: AL
: R
      H       2B       3B       HR
34.2549505 7.0495050 0.6460396 3.9108911
-----
: NL
: R
      H       2B       3B       HR
29.9414317 6.1822126 0.6290672 3.3449024

```

Another option for summarization is the function `aggregate`. Here is the form of `aggregate` when applied to data frames:

```
aggregate(x, by, FUN, ...)
```

`Aggregate` can also be applied to time series and takes slightly different arguments:

```
aggregate(x, nfrequency = 1, FUN = sum, ndeltat = 1,
          ts.eps =getOption("ts.eps"), ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `aggregate`.

| Argument   | Description   | Default  |
|------------|---|--|
| x          | The object to aggregate   |  |
| by         | A list of grouping elements, each as long as x                                    |  |
| FUN        | A scalar function used to compute the summary statistic                           | no default for data frames; for time series, FUN=SUM |
| nfrequency | Number of observations per unit of time   | 1  |
| ndeltat    | Fraction of the sampling period between successive observations                   | 1  |
| ts.eps     | Tolerance used to decide if nfrequency is a submultiple of the original frequency | getOption("ts.eps")                                  |
| ...        | Further arguments passed to FUN   |  |

For example, we can use `aggregate` to summarize batting statistics by team:

```
> aggregate(x=batting.2008[, c("AB", "H", "BB", "2B", "3B", "HR")],
+           by=list(batting.2008$teamID), FUN=sum)
  Group.1   AB   H   BB   2B   3B   HR
  1     ARI 5409 1355 587 318 47 159
  2     ATL 5604 1514 618 316 33 130
  3     BAL 5559 1486 533 322 30 172
  4     BOS 5596 1565 646 353 33 173
  5     CHA 5553 1458 540 296 13 235
```

```

6     CHN 5588 1552 636 329 21 184
7     CIN 5465 1351 560 269 24 187
8     CLE 5543 1455 560 339 22 171
9     COL 5557 1462 570 310 28 160
10    DET 5641 1529 572 293 41 200
11    FLO 5499 1397 543 302 28 208
12    HOU 5451 1432 449 284 22 167
13    KCA 5608 1507 392 303 28 120
14    LAA 5540 1486 481 274 25 159
15    LAN 5506 1455 543 271 29 137
16    MIL 5535 1398 550 324 35 198
17    MIN 5641 1572 529 298 49 111
18    NYA 5572 1512 535 289 20 180
19    NYN 5606 1491 619 274 38 172
20    OAK 5451 1318 574 270 23 125
21    PHI 5509 1407 586 291 36 214
22    PIT 5628 1454 474 314 21 153
23    SDN 5568 1390 518 264 27 154
24    SEA 5643 1498 417 285 20 124
25    SFN 5543 1452 452 311 37 94
26    SLN 5636 1585 577 283 26 174
27    TBA 5541 1443 626 284 37 180
28    TEX 5728 1619 595 376 35 194
29    TOR 5503 1453 521 303 32 126
30    WAS 5491 1376 534 269 26 117

```

## Aggregating Tables with `rowsum`

Sometimes, you would simply like to calculate the sum of certain variables in an object, grouped together by a grouping variable. To do this in R, use the `rowsum` function:

```
rowsum(x, group, reorder = TRUE, ...)
```

For example, we can use `rowsum` to summarize batting statistics by team:

```

> rowsum(batting.2008[,c("AB", "H", "BB", "2B", "3B", "HR")],
+   group=batting.2008$teamID)
      AB   H BB X2B X3B HR
ARI 5409 1355 587 318 47 159
ATL 5604 1514 618 316 33 130
BAL 5559 1486 533 322 30 172
BOS 5596 1565 646 353 33 173
CHA 5553 1458 540 296 13 235
CHN 5588 1552 636 329 21 184
CIN 5465 1351 560 269 24 187
CLE 5543 1455 560 339 22 171
COL 5557 1462 570 310 28 160
DET 5641 1529 572 293 41 200
FLO 5499 1397 543 302 28 208
HOU 5451 1432 449 284 22 167
KCA 5608 1507 392 303 28 120
LAA 5540 1486 481 274 25 159
LAN 5506 1455 543 271 29 137
MIL 5535 1398 550 324 35 198
MIN 5641 1572 529 298 49 111

```

|     |      |      |     |     |    |     |
|-----|------|------|-----|-----|----|-----|
| NYA | 5572 | 1512 | 535 | 289 | 20 | 180 |
| NYN | 5606 | 1491 | 619 | 274 | 38 | 172 |
| OAK | 5451 | 1318 | 574 | 270 | 23 | 125 |
| PHI | 5509 | 1407 | 586 | 291 | 36 | 214 |
| PIT | 5628 | 1454 | 474 | 314 | 21 | 153 |
| SDN | 5568 | 1390 | 518 | 264 | 27 | 154 |
| SEA | 5643 | 1498 | 417 | 285 | 20 | 124 |
| SFN | 5543 | 1452 | 452 | 311 | 37 | 94  |
| SLN | 5636 | 1585 | 577 | 283 | 26 | 174 |
| TBA | 5541 | 1443 | 626 | 284 | 37 | 180 |
| TEX | 5728 | 1619 | 595 | 376 | 35 | 194 |
| TOR | 5503 | 1453 | 521 | 303 | 32 | 126 |
| WAS | 5491 | 1376 | 534 | 269 | 26 | 117 |

## Counting Values

Often, it can be useful to count the number of observations that take on each possible value of a variable. R provides several functions for doing this.

The simplest function for counting the number of observations that take on a value is the `tabulate` function. This function counts the number of elements in a vector that take on each integer value and returns a vector with the counts.

As an example, suppose that you wanted to count the number of players who hit 0 HR, 1 HR, 2 HR, 3 HR, and so on. You could do this with the `tabulate` function:

```
> HR.cnts <- tabulate(batting.w.names.2008$HR)
> # tabulate doesn't label results, so let's add names:
> names(HR.cnts) <- 0:(length(HR.cnts) - 1)
> HR.cnts
 0  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22
92 63 45 20 15 26 23 21 22 15 15 18 12 10 12  4  9  3  3 13  9  7 10
23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45
 4  8  2  5  2  4  0  1  6  6  3  1  2  4  1  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
46 47
 0  1
```

A related function (for categorical values) is `table`. Suppose that you are presented with some data that includes a few categorical values (encoded as factors in R) and wanted to count how many observations in the data had each categorical value. To do this, you can use the `table` function:

```
table(..., exclude = if (useNA == "no") c(NA, NaN), useNA = c("no",
  "ifany", "always"), dnn = list.names(...), deparse.level = 1)
```

The `table` function returns a table object showing the number of observations that have each possible categorical value.<sup>2</sup> Here are the arguments to `table`.

---

2. If you are familiar with SAS, you can think of `table` as the equivalent to `PROC FREQ`.

| Argument      | Description  | Default                       |
|---------------|--|-------------------------------|
| ...           | A set of factors (or objects that can be coerced into factors).  |                               |
| exclude       | Levels to remove from factors.   | if (useNA == "no") c(NA, NaN) |
| useNA         | Indicates whether to include NA values in the table.   | c("no", "ifany", "always")    |
| dnn           | Names to be given to dimensions in the result.   | list.names(...)               |
| deparse.level | As noted in the help file: "If the argument dnn is not supplied, the internal function list.names is called to compute the 'dimname names'. If the arguments in ... are named, those names are used. For the remaining arguments, deparse.level = 0 gives an empty name, deparse.level = 1 uses the supplied argument if it is a symbol, and deparse.level = 2 will deparse the argument." | 1                             |

For example, suppose that we wanted to count the number of left-handed batters, right-handed batters, and switch hitters in 2008. We could use the data frame `batting.w.names.2008` defined above to provide the data and `table` to tabulate the results:

```
> table(batting.w.names.2008$bats)
```

|     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| B   | L   | R   |
| 118 | 401 | 865 |

To make this a little more interesting, we could make this a two-dimensional table showing the number of players who batted and threw with each hand:

```
> table(batting.2008[,c("bats", "throws")])
      throws
bats   L   R
  B  10 108
  L 240 161
  R  25 840
```

We could extend the results to another dimension, adding league ID:

```
, , lgID = AL
```

```
      throws
bats   L   R
  B    4   47
  L 109   77
  R   11  393
```

```
, , lgID = NL
```

```
      throws
bats   L   R
  B    6   61
  L 131   84
  R   14  447
```

Another useful function is `xtabs`, which creates contingency tables from factors using formulas:

```
xtabs(formula = ~., data = parent.frame(), subset, na.action,
      exclude = c(NA, NaN), drop.unused.levels = FALSE)
```

The `xtabs` function works the same as `table`, but it allows you to specify the groupings by specifying a formula and a data frame. In many cases, this can save you some typing. For example, here is how to use `xtabs` to tabulate batting statistics by batting arm and league:

```
> xtabs(~bats+lgID, batting.2008)
   lgID
bats AL NL
  B 51 67
  L 186 215
  R 404 461
```

The `table` function only works on factors, but sometimes you might like to calculate tables with numeric values as well. For example, suppose you wanted to count the number of players with batting averages in certain ranges. To do this, you could use the `cut` function and the `table` function:

```
> # first, add batting average to the data frame:
> batting.w.names.2008 <- transform(batting.w.names.2008, AVG = H/AB)
> # now, select a subset of players with over 100 AB (for some
> # statistical significance):
> batting.2008.over100AB <- subset(batting.2008, subset=(AB > 100))
> # finally, split the results into 10 bins:
> battingavg.2008.bins <- cut(batting.2008.over100AB$AVG,breaks=10)
> table(battingavg.2008.bins)
battingavg.2008.bins
(0.137,0.163] (0.163,0.189] (0.189,0.215] (0.215,0.24] (0.24,0.266]
               4          6         24         67        121
(0.266,0.292] (0.292,0.318] (0.318,0.344] (0.344,0.37] (0.37,0.396]
               132         70         11          5           2
```

## Reshaping Data

Very often, you are presented with data that is in the wrong “shape.” Sometimes, you might find that a single observation is stored across multiple lines in a data frame. This happens very often in data warehouses. In these systems, a single table might be used to represent many different “facts.” Each fact might be associated with a unique identifier, a timestamp, a concept, and an observed value. To build a statistical model or to plot results, you might need to create a version of the data in which each line contains a unique identifier, a timestamp, and a column for each concept. So you might want to transform this “narrow” data set to a “wide” format.

Other times, you might be presented with a sparsely populated data frame that has a large number of columns. Although this format might make analysis straightforward, the data set might also be large and difficult to store. So you might want to transform this wide data set into a narrow one.

## Transposing matrices and data frames

A very useful function is `t`, which transposes objects. The `t` function takes one argument: an object to transpose. The object can be a matrix, vector, or data frame. Here is an example with a matrix:

```
> m <- matrix(1:10, nrow=5)
> m
[,1] [,2]
[1,]    1    6
[2,]    2    7
[3,]    3    8
[4,]    4    9
[5,]    5   10
> t(m)
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5]
[1,]    1    2    3    4    5
[2,]    6    7    8    9   10
```

When you call `t` on a vector, the vector is treated as a single column of a matrix. So the value returned by `t` will be a matrix with a single row:

```
> v <- 1:10
> v
[1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
> t(v)
[,1] [,2] [,3] [,4] [,5] [,6] [,7] [,8] [,9] [,10]
[1,]    1    2    3    4    5    6    7    8    9   10
```

## Reshaping data frames and matrices

R includes several functions that let you change data between narrow and wide formats. Let's use a small table of stock data to show how these functions work. First, we'll define a small portfolio of stocks. Then we'll get monthly observation for the first three months of 2009:

```
> my.tickers <- c("GE", "GOOG", "AAPL", "AXP", "GS")
> my.quotes <- get.multiple.quotes(my.tickers, from=as.Date("2009-01-01"),
+                                     to=as.Date("2009-03-31"), interval="m")
> my.quotes
  symbol      Date  Open  High   Low Close Volume Adj.Close
1     GE 2009-03-02  8.29 11.35  5.87 10.11 277426300   10.11
2     GE 2009-02-02 12.03 12.90  8.40  8.51 19492881s00   8.51
3     GE 2009-01-02 16.51 17.24 11.87 12.13 117846700  11.78
4    GOOG 2009-03-02 333.33 359.16 289.45 348.06 5346800 348.06
5    GOOG 2009-02-02 334.29 381.00 329.55 337.99 6158100 337.99
6    GOOG 2009-01-02 308.60 352.33 282.75 338.53 5727600 338.53
7    AAPL 2009-03-02  88.12 109.98  82.33 105.12 25963400 105.12
8    AAPL 2009-02-02  89.10 103.00  86.51  89.31 27394900  89.31
9    AAPL 2009-01-02  85.88  97.17  78.20  90.13 33487900  90.13
10   AXP 2009-03-02 11.68 15.24  9.71 13.63 31136400 13.45
11   AXP 2009-02-02 16.35 18.27 11.44 12.06 24297100 11.90
12   AXP 2009-01-02 18.57 21.38 14.72 16.73 19110000 16.51
13    GS 2009-03-02  87.86 115.65  72.78 106.02 30196400 106.02
14    GS 2009-02-02  78.78  98.66  78.57  91.08 28301500  91.08
15    GS 2009-01-02  84.02  92.20  59.13  80.73 22764300  80.29
```

Now let's keep only the Date, Symbol, and Close columns:

```
> my.quotes.narrow <- my.quotes[,c("symbol", "Date", "Close")]
> my.quotes.narrow
  symbol      Date  Close
1    GE 2009-03-02 10.11
2    GE 2009-02-02  8.51
3    GE 2009-01-02 12.13
4   GOOG 2009-03-02 348.06
5   GOOG 2009-02-02 337.99
6   GOOG 2009-01-02 338.53
7   AAPL 2009-03-02 105.12
8   AAPL 2009-02-02  89.31
9   AAPL 2009-01-02  90.13
10  AXP 2009-03-02 13.63
11  AXP 2009-02-02 12.06
12  AXP 2009-01-02 16.73
13   GS 2009-03-02 106.02
14   GS 2009-02-02  91.08
15   GS 2009-01-02  80.73
```

We can use the `unstack` function to change the format of this data from a stacked form to an unstacked form:

```
> unstack(my.quotes.narrow, form=Close~symbol)
  GE   GOOG   AAPL   AXP   GS
1 10.11 348.06 105.12 13.63 106.02
2  8.51 337.99  89.31 12.06  91.08
3 12.13 338.53  90.13 16.73  80.73
```

The first argument to `unstack` specifies the data frame. The second argument, `form`, uses a formula to specify how to unstack the data frame. The right side of the formula represents the vector to be unstacked (in this case, `symbol`). The left side indicates the groups to create (in this case `Close`).

Notice that the `unstack` operation retains the order of observations but loses the Date column. (It's probably best to use `unstack` with data in which there are only two variables that matter.) You can also transform data the other way, stacking observations to create a long list:

```
> unstacked <- unstack(my.quotes.narrow, form=Close~symbol)
> stack(unstacked)
  values  ind
1   10.11  GE
2    8.51  GE
3   12.13  GE
4   348.06 GOOG
5   337.99 GOOG
6   338.53 GOOG
7   105.12 AAPL
8    89.31 AAPL
9    90.13 AAPL
10   13.63 AXP
11   12.06 AXP
12   16.73 AXP
13   106.02   GS
```

```
14 91.08 GS
15 80.73 GS
```

R includes a more powerful function for changing the shape of a data frame: the `reshape` function. Before explaining how to use this function (it's a bit complicated), let's use a couple of examples to show what it does.

First, suppose that we wanted each row to represent a unique date and each column to represent a different stock. We can do this with the `reshape` function:

```
> my.quotes.wide <- reshape(my.quotes.narrow, idvar="Date",
+   timevar="symbol", direction="wide")
> my.quotes.wide
  Date Close.GE Close.GOOG Close.AAPL Close.AXP Close.GS
1 2009-03-02    10.11     348.06    105.12     13.63    106.02
2 2009-02-02     8.51     337.99     89.31     12.06     91.08
3 2009-01-02    12.13     338.53     90.13     16.73     80.73
```

Parameters for `reshape` are stored as attributes of the created data frame:

```
> attributes(my.quotes.wide)
$row.names
[1] 1 2 3

$names
[1] "Date"      "Close.GE"    "Close.GOOG"  "Close.AAPL"  "Close.AXP"
[6] "Close.GS"

$class
[1] "data.frame"

$reshapeWide
$reshapeWide$v.names
NULL

$reshapeWide$timevar
[1] "symbol"

$reshapeWide$idvar
[1] "Date"

$reshapeWide$times
[1] GE  GOOG AAPL AXP  GS
Levels: GE GOOG AAPL AXP GS

$reshapeWide$varying
[,1]      [,2]      [,3]      [,4]      [,5]
[1,] "Close.GE" "Close.GOOG" "Close.AAPL" "Close.AXP" "Close.GS"
```

Alternatively, we could have each row represent a stock and each column represent a different date:

```
> reshape(my.quotes.narrow, idvar="symbol", timevar="Date", direction="wide")
  symbol Close.2009-03-02 Close.2009-02-02 Close.2009-01-02
1       GE          10.11          8.51         12.13
4       GOOG        348.06        337.99        338.53
7       AAPL        105.12        89.31         90.13
```

|    |     |        |       |       |
|----|-----|--------|-------|-------|
| 10 | AXP | 13.63  | 12.06 | 16.73 |
| 13 | GS  | 106.02 | 91.08 | 80.73 |

We could even go in the opposite direction:

```
> reshape(my.quotes.wide)
   Date symbol Close.GE
2009-03-02.GE 2009-03-02 GE 10.11
2009-02-02.GE 2009-02-02 GE 8.51
2009-01-02.GE 2009-01-02 GE 12.13
2009-03-02.GOOG 2009-03-02 GOOG 348.06
2009-02-02.GOOG 2009-02-02 GOOG 337.99
2009-01-02.GOOG 2009-01-02 GOOG 338.53
2009-03-02.AAPL 2009-03-02 AAPL 105.12
2009-02-02.AAPL 2009-02-02 AAPL 89.31
2009-01-02.AAPL 2009-01-02 AAPL 90.13
2009-03-02.AXP 2009-03-02 AXP 13.63
2009-02-02.AXP 2009-02-02 AXP 12.06
2009-01-02.AXP 2009-01-02 AXP 16.73
2009-03-02.GS 2009-03-02 GS 106.02
2009-02-02.GS 2009-02-02 GS 91.08
2009-01-02.GS 2009-01-02 GS 80.73
```

By the way, you can also use reshape to create columns for multiple data values at once:

```
> my.quotes.oc <- my.quotes[,c("symbol", "Date", "Close", "Open")]
> my.quotes.oc
  symbol      Date Close Open
1    GE 2009-03-02 10.11  8.29
2    GE 2009-02-02  8.51 12.03
3    GE 2009-01-02 12.13 16.51
4   GOOG 2009-03-02 348.06 333.33
5   GOOG 2009-02-02 337.99 334.29
6   GOOG 2009-01-02 338.53 308.60
7   AAPL 2009-03-02 105.12 88.12
8   AAPL 2009-02-02  89.31 89.10
9   AAPL 2009-01-02  90.13 85.88
10  AXP 2009-03-02 13.63 11.68
11  AXP 2009-02-02 12.06 16.35
12  AXP 2009-01-02 16.73 18.57
13  GS 2009-03-02 106.02 87.86
14  GS 2009-02-02  91.08 78.78
15  GS 2009-01-02  80.73 84.02
> # now, let's change the shape of this data frame:
> reshape(my.quotes.oc, timevar="Date", idvar="symbol", direction="wide")
  symbol Close.2009-03-02 Open.2009-03-02 Close.2009-02-02
1    GE        10.11       8.29        8.51
4   GOOG       348.06      333.33      337.99
7   AAPL       105.12      88.12      89.31
10  AXP        13.63      11.68      12.06
13  GS         106.02      87.86      91.08
               Open.2009-02-02 Close.2009-01-02 Open.2009-01-02
1            12.03       12.13       16.51
4          334.29      338.53      308.60
7            89.10       90.13       85.88
```

|    |       |       |       |
|----|-------|-------|-------|
| 10 | 16.35 | 16.73 | 18.57 |
| 13 | 78.78 | 80.73 | 84.02 |

The tricky thing about `reshape` is that it is actually two functions in one: a function that transforms long data to wide data and a function that transforms wide data to long data. The `direction` argument specifies whether you want a data frame that is “long” or “wide.”

When transforming to wide data, you need to specify the `idvar` and `timevar` arguments. When transforming to long data, you need to specify the `varying` argument.

By the way, calls to `reshape` are reversible. If you have an object `d` that was created by a call to `reshape`, you can call `reshape(d)` to get back the original data frame:

```
reshape(data, varying = , v.names = , timevar = , idvar = , ids = , times = ,
       drop = , direction, new.row.names = , sep = , split = )
```

Here are the arguments to `reshape`.

| Argument                   | Description   | Default                              |
|----------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| <code>data</code>          | A data frame to reshape.  |                                      |
| <code>varying</code>       | A list of variables in the wide format that should be assigned to unique rows in the long format. Usually given as a list of variable names, but can be a matrix of names or a vector of names. (You can also use integers in this argument, which are used to index names [data].) | NULL                                 |
| <code>v.names</code>       | Names of variables in the long format that should be assigned to columns in the wide format.  | NULL                                 |
| <code>timevar</code>       | The variable in the long format that identifies unique observations for the same group or individual (when going from the long to the wide format).   | "time"                               |
| <code>idvar</code>         | The variable in the long format that identifies unique groups or individuals (when going from the long to the wide format).   | "id"                                 |
| <code>ids</code>           | The values to use for a new <code>idvar</code> variable.  | <code>1:NROW(data)</code>            |
| <code>times</code>         | The values to use for a new <code>timevar</code> variable.  | <code>seq_along(varying[[1]])</code> |
| <code>drop</code>          | A vector of variable names to exclude from reshaping.   | NULL                                 |
| <code>direction</code>     | A character value that specifies the reshaping direction: “wide” reshapes long data to wide data, and “long” reshapes wide data to long data.   |                                      |
| <code>new.row.names</code> | A logical value. When reshaping long data to wide data, specifies whether to create new row names from the values of the <code>id</code> and <code>time</code> variables.   | NULL                                 |
| <code>sep</code>           | A character value. The <code>reshape</code> function will attempt to guess values for <code>v.names</code> and <code>v.times</code> when moving from wide to long data. This variable specifies the separator that is used in the variable names.                                   | "."                                  |

| Argument | Description  | Default   |
|----------|--|---|
| split    | As noted in the description for <code>sep</code> , <code>reshape</code> will attempt to split variable names into <code>v.names</code> and <code>v.times</code> . If the relationship between the variables is more complicated than just concatenation with a single value, <code>reshape</code> can still automatically guess values for <code>v.names</code> and <code>v.times</code> . See the help file for more information. | <pre>if (sep=="") { list(regexp= "[A-Za-z][0-9]",        include=TRUE) } else { list(regexp=sep,        include=FALSE,        fixed=TRUE) }</pre> |

## Using the Reshape Library

Many R users (like me) find the built-in functions for reshaping data (like `stack`, `unstack`, and `reshape`) confusing. Luckily, there's an alternative. Hadley Wickham (the author of `ggplot2`) has developed a library called `reshape` with a much more intuitive model for getting data into the right form. (Don't confuse the `reshape` library with the `reshape` function.)

**Melting and Casting.** `Reshape` uses an intuitive model to describe how to manipulate data tables. Hadley observed that if you had detailed transactional data, then you could easily manipulate that data into many different forms. Quite often, you could take an existing table of data, turn it into a list of transactions, and then shape it into a different form. He called the process of turning a table of data into a set of transactions *melting*, and the process of turning the list of transactions into a table *casting*.

**Examples of reshape.** Let's see how melting and casting work, using the same data that we used above to show how much easier the `reshape` library is. First, let's `melt` the quote data.

```
> # call melt using the default settings
> my.molten.quotes <- melt(my.quotes)
Using symbol, Date as id variables
> # just show the first few lines
> head(my.molten.quotes)
  symbol      Date variable  value
1   GE 2009-03-02    Open  8.29
2   GE 2009-02-02    Open 12.03
3   GE 2009-01-02    Open 16.51
4  GOOG 2009-03-02    Open 333.33
5  GOOG 2009-02-02    Open 334.29
6  GOOG 2009-01-02    Open 308.60
```

Now that we have the data into a molten form, it's very straightforward to transform it with `cast`. Here are a few examples:

```
> # prices by date for just GE
> cast(data=my.molten.quotes, variable~Date, subset=(symbol=='GE'))
  variable 2009-01-02 2009-02-02 2009-03-02
1   Open      16.51     12.03      8.29
2   High      17.24     12.90     11.35
3   Low       11.87      8.40      5.87
4   Close      12.13      8.51     10.11
5 Volume 117846700.00 194928800.00 277426300.00
6 Adj.Close     10.75      7.77      9.23
```

```

> # Closing prices for each stock by date
> cast(data=my.molten.quotes, symbol~Date, subset=(variable=='Adj.Close'))
  symbol 2009-01-02 2009-02-02 2009-03-02
1   GE     10.75      7.77      9.23
2   GOOG    338.53    337.99    348.06
3   AAPL     90.13     89.31    105.12
4   AXP      15.70     11.32     12.79
5   GS      77.85     88.31    102.79
> # Return a list of quotes by symbol and date
> cast(data=my.molten.quotes, Date~variable|symbol)
$GE
  Date Open High Low Close Volume Adj.Close
1 2009-01-02 16.51 17.24 11.87 12.13 117846700 10.75
2 2009-02-02 12.03 12.90  8.40  8.51 194928800  7.77
3 2009-03-02  8.29 11.35  5.87 10.11 277426300  9.23

$GOOG
  Date Open High Low Close Volume Adj.Close
1 2009-01-02 308.60 352.33 282.75 338.53 5727600 338.53
2 2009-02-02 334.29 381.00 329.55 337.99 6158100 337.99
3 2009-03-02 333.33 359.16 289.45 348.06 5346800 348.06

$AAPL
  Date Open High Low Close Volume Adj.Close
1 2009-01-02 85.88 97.17 78.20 90.13 33487900 90.13
2 2009-02-02 89.10 103.00 86.51 89.31 27394900 89.31
3 2009-03-02 88.12 109.98 82.33 105.12 25963400 105.12

$AXP
  Date Open High Low Close Volume Adj.Close
1 2009-01-02 18.57 21.38 14.72 16.73 19110000 15.70
2 2009-02-02 16.35 18.27 11.44 12.06 24297100 11.32
3 2009-03-02 11.68 15.24  9.71 13.63 31136400 12.79

$GS
  Date Open High Low Close Volume Adj.Close
1 2009-01-02 84.02 92.20 59.13 80.73 22764300 77.85
2 2009-02-02 78.78 98.66 78.57 91.08 28301500 88.31
3 2009-03-02 87.86 115.65 72.78 106.02 30196400 102.79

```

Cool, huh? I find reshape much easier to use than other functions for reshaping data. Now that we've seen how `melt` and `cast` work, let's dive into the two functions in more detail.

**melt.** `melt` is a generic function; the reshape package includes methods for data frames, arrays, and lists. Here's an overview of the arguments for each form.

```
melt.data.frame(data, id.vars, measure.vars, variable_name, na.rm,
  preserve.na, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `melt.data.frame`:

| Argument      | Description   | Default   |
|---------------|---|---|
| data          | The data frame to melt.   |   |
| id.vars       | ID variables (variables used to identify each unique observation).        | All non-measure variables. If neither id.vars nor measure.vars is specified, assumes all factor and character variables are measured.                       |
| measure.vars  | Measured variables (variables that describe the thing being measured).    | All non-ID variables. If neither id.vars nor measure.vars is specified, assumes all variables that are neither factor nor character variables are measured. |
| variable_name | The name of the variable that stores the names of the original variables. | "variable"  |
| na.rm         | Tells melt what to do with NA values.                                     | !preserve.na  |
| preserve.na   | Deprecated; opposite of na.rm.  | TRUE  |
| ...           | Other arguments are ignored.  |   |

For multi-dimensional arrays, `melt` is conceptually more simple. You simply need to specify the dimensions to keep, and `melt` will melt the array.

```
melt.array(data, varnames, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to the array form:

| Argument | Description                 | Default  |
|----------|-----------------------------|--|
| data     | The array to melt           |  |
| varnames | A vector                    | All dimensions ( <code>dimnames(data)</code> ) |
| ...      | Other arguments are ignored |  |

Finally, the list form of `melt` will recursively melt each element in the list, join the results, and return the joined form:

```
melt.list(data, ..., level)
```

| Argument | Description   | Default |
|----------|---|---------|
| data     | The list of items to melt                             |         |
| level    |   | 1       |
| ...      | Other arguments are passed to recursive calls to melt |         |

**Cast.** After you have melted your data, you use `cast` to reshape the results. Here is a description of the arguments to `cast`:

```
cast(data, formula, fun.aggregate=NULL, ..., margins, subset, df, fill,
add.missing, value = guess_value(data))
```

| Argument      | Description  | Default                        |
|---------------|--|--------------------------------|
| data          | A molten data frame (typically created by <code>melt</code> ).   |                                |
| formula       | A description of the output data frame as a formula, in the form<br><code>x_variable + x_2 ~ y_variable + y_2 ~ z_variable</code><br>~ ...   list_variable + ... Use an ellipsis to mean “all variables not otherwise mentioned in the formula” and “.” to represent “no variables.” | ... ~variable                  |
| fun.aggregate | An aggregation function. If you want to aggregate the molten data in the output, specify an aggregation function to describe how to aggregate the data.  | NULL                           |
| ...           | Arguments passed to <code>fun.aggregate</code> .   |                                |
| margins       | Variables on which to compute margins, specified as a vector of variable names, or TRUE to use all variables or FALSE to use none.   | FALSE                          |
| subset        | A logical vector that describes which observations in the molten data to include in the cast form.   | TRUE                           |
| df            | “An argument used internally,” according to the documentation.   | FALSE                          |
| fill          | Value with which to fill in missing combinations when <code>add.missing=TRUE</code>  | NULL                           |
| add.missing   | Fill in missing combinations.  | FALSE                          |
| value         | Name of value column.  | <code>guess_value(data)</code> |

## Data Cleaning

Even when data is in the right form, there are often surprises in the data. For example, I used to work with credit data in a financial services company. Valid credit scores (specifically, FICO credit scores) always fall between 340 and 840. However, our data often contained values like 997, 998, and 999. These values did not mean that the customer had really super credit; instead, they had special meanings like “insufficient data” or there might be duplicate records in the data. Again, suppose that you were analyzing data on patients at a hospital. Often, the same doctor might see multiple patients with the same first *and* last names, so multiple patients may be rolled up into a single record incorrectly. However, sometimes the same patient might see multiple doctors, creating multiple records in the database for the same patient.

Data cleaning doesn’t mean changing the meaning of data. It means identifying problems caused by data collection, processing, and storage processes and modifying the data so that these problems don’t interfere with analysis.

## Finding and Removing Duplicates

Data sources often contain duplicate values. Depending on how you plan to use the data, the duplicates might cause problems. It’s a good idea to check for duplicates in your data (if they aren’t supposed to be there).

R provides some useful functions for detecting duplicate values.

Suppose that you accidentally included one stock ticker twice (say, GE) when you fetched stock quotes:

```
> my.tickers.2 <- c("GE", "GOOG", "AAPL", "AXP", "GS", "GE")
> my.quotes.2 <- get.multiple.quotes(my.tickers.2, from=as.Date("2009-01-01"),
+   to=as.Date("2009-03-31"), interval="m")
```

R provides some useful functions for detecting duplicate values such as the `duplicated` function. This function returns a logical vector showing which elements are duplicates of values with lower indices. Let's apply `duplicated` to the data frame `my.quotes.2`:

```
> duplicated(my.quotes.2)
[1] FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE
[12] FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE TRUE TRUE
```

As expected, `duplicated` shows that the last three rows are duplicates of earlier rows. You can use the resulting vector to remove duplicates:

```
> my.quotes.unique <- my.quotes.2[!duplicated(my.quotes.2),]
```

Alternatively, you could use the `unique` function to remove the duplicate values:

```
> my.quotes.unique <- unique(my.quotes.2)
```

## Sorting

Two final operations that you might find useful for analysis are sorting and ranking functions.

To sort the elements of an object, use the `sort` function:

```
> w <- c(5, 4, 7, 2, 7, 1)
> sort(w)
[1] 1 2 4 5 7 7
```

Add the `decreasing=TRUE` option to sort in reverse order:

```
> sort(w, decreasing=TRUE)
[1] 7 7 5 4 2 1
```

You can control the treatment of NA values by setting the `na.last` argument:

```
> length(w)
[1] 6
> length(w) <- 7
> # note that by default, NA.last=NA and NA values are not shown
> sort(w)
[1] 1 2 4 5 7 7
> # set NA.last=TRUE to put NA values last
> sort(w, na.last=TRUE)
[1] 1 2 4 5 7 7 NA
> # set NA.last=FALSE to put NA values first
> sort(w, na.last=FALSE)
[1] NA 1 2 4 5 7 7
```

Sorting data frames is somewhat nonintuitive. To sort a data frame, you need to create a permutation of the indices from the data frame and use these to fetch the rows of the data frame in the correct order. You can generate an appropriate permutation of the indices using the `order` function:

```
order(..., na.last = , decreasing = )
```

The `order` function takes a set of vectors as arguments. It sorts recursively by each vector, breaking ties by looking at successive vectors in the argument list. At the end, it returns a permutation of the indices of the vector corresponding to the sorted order. (The arguments `na.last` and `decreasing` work the same way as they do for `sort`.) To see what this means, let's use a simple example. First, we'll define a vector with two elements out of order:

```
> v <- c(11, 12, 13, 15, 14)
```

You can see that the first three elements (11, 12, 13) are in order, and the last two (15, 14) are reversed. Let's call `order` to see what it does:

```
> order(v)
[1] 1 2 3 5 4
```

This means "move row 1 to row 1, move row 2 to row 2, move row 3 to row 3, move row 4 to row 5, move row 5 to row 4." We can return a sorted version of `v` using an indexing operator:

```
> v[order(v)]
[1] 11 12 13 14 15
```

Suppose that we created the following data frame from the vector `v` and a second vector `u`:

```
> u <- c("pig", "cow", "duck", "horse", "rat")
> w <- data.frame(v, u)
> w
   v     u
1 11   pig
2 12   cow
3 13   duck
4 15 horse
5 14   rat
```

We could sort the data frame `w` by `v` using the following expression:

```
> w[order(w$v),]
   v     u
1 11   pig
2 12   cow
3 13   duck
5 14   rat
4 15 horse
```

As another example, let's sort the `my.quotes` data frame (that we created earlier) by closing price:

```
> my.quotes[order(my.quotes$Close),]
   symbol      Date  Open  High   Low Close Volume Adj.Close
2     GE 2009-02-02 12.03 12.90  8.40  8.51 194928800    8.51
1     GE 2009-03-02  8.29 11.35  5.87 10.11 277426300   10.11
11    AXP 2009-02-02 16.35 18.27 11.44 12.06 24297100   11.90
3     GE 2009-01-02 16.51 17.24 11.87 12.13 117846700   11.78
10    AXP 2009-03-02 11.68 15.24  9.71 13.63 31136400   13.45
12    AXP 2009-01-02 18.57 21.38 14.72 16.73 19110000   16.51
15    GS 2009-01-02 84.02 92.20 59.13 80.73 22764300   80.29
8     AAPL 2009-02-02 89.10 103.00 86.51 89.31 27394900  89.31
9     AAPL 2009-01-02 85.88 97.17 78.20 90.13 33487900  90.13
14    GS 2009-02-02 78.78 98.66 78.57 91.08 28301500  91.08
7     AAPL 2009-03-02 88.12 109.98 82.33 105.12 25963400 105.12
13    GS 2009-03-02 87.86 115.65 72.78 106.02 30196400 106.02
5     GOOG 2009-02-02 334.29 381.00 329.55 337.99 6158100 337.99
6     GOOG 2009-01-02 308.60 352.33 282.75 338.53 5727600 338.53
4     GOOG 2009-03-02 333.33 359.16 289.45 348.06 5346800 348.06
8     AAPL 2009-02-02 89.10 103.00 86.51 89.31 27394900 89.31
9     AAPL 2009-01-02 85.88 97.17 78.20 90.13 33487900 90.13
7     AAPL 2009-03-02 88.12 109.98 82.33 105.12 25963400 105.12
11    AXP 2009-02-02 16.35 18.27 11.44 12.06 24297100 11.90
10    AXP 2009-03-02 11.68 15.24  9.71 13.63 31136400 13.45
12    AXP 2009-01-02 18.57 21.38 14.72 16.73 19110000 16.51
15    GS 2009-01-02 84.02 92.20 59.13 80.73 22764300 80.29
14    GS 2009-02-02 78.78 98.66 78.57 91.08 28301500 91.08
13    GS 2009-03-02 87.86 115.65 72.78 106.02 30196400 106.02
```

You could sort by symbol and then by closing price using the following expression:

```
> my.quotes[order(my.quotes$symbol, my.quotes$Close),]
   symbol      Date  Open  High   Low Close Volume Adj.Close
2     GE 2009-02-02 12.03 12.90  8.40  8.51 194928800    8.51
1     GE 2009-03-02  8.29 11.35  5.87 10.11 277426300   10.11
3     GE 2009-01-02 16.51 17.24 11.87 12.13 117846700   11.78
5     GOOG 2009-02-02 334.29 381.00 329.55 337.99 6158100 337.99
6     GOOG 2009-01-02 308.60 352.33 282.75 338.53 5727600 338.53
4     GOOG 2009-03-02 333.33 359.16 289.45 348.06 5346800 348.06
8     AAPL 2009-02-02 89.10 103.00 86.51 89.31 27394900 89.31
9     AAPL 2009-01-02 85.88 97.17 78.20 90.13 33487900 90.13
7     AAPL 2009-03-02 88.12 109.98 82.33 105.12 25963400 105.12
11    AXP 2009-02-02 16.35 18.27 11.44 12.06 24297100 11.90
10    AXP 2009-03-02 11.68 15.24  9.71 13.63 31136400 13.45
12    AXP 2009-01-02 18.57 21.38 14.72 16.73 19110000 16.51
15    GS 2009-01-02 84.02 92.20 59.13 80.73 22764300 80.29
14    GS 2009-02-02 78.78 98.66 78.57 91.08 28301500 91.08
13    GS 2009-03-02 87.86 115.65 72.78 106.02 30196400 106.02
```

Sorting a whole data frame is a little strange. You can create a suitable permutation using the `order` function, but you need to call `order` using `do.call` for it to work properly. (The reason for this is that `order` expects a list of vectors and interprets the data frame as a single vector, not as a list of vectors.) Let's try sorting the `my.quotes` table we just created:

```
> # what happens when you call order on my.quotes directly: the data
> # frame is interpreted as a vector
> order(my.quotes)
 [1] 61 94 96 95 31 62 77 107 70 76 106 46 71 40 108 63
[17] 116 32 86 78 47 115 85 72 55 41 33 117 87 48 56 42
[33] 102 57 105 101 97 98 104 103 100 99 75 73 69 74 44 120
[49] 90 67 45 39 68 43 37 38 83 113 84 114 89 119 60 54
[65] 59 53 82 112 88 118 52 58 93 92 18 21 24 27 30 17
[81] 20 23 26 29 16 19 22 25 28 91 66 64 36 65 34 35
[97] 80 110 81 111 79 109 51 49 50 7 8 9 10 11 12 1
[113] 2 3 4 5 6 13 14 15
> # what you get when you use do.call:
```

```
> do.call(order,my.quotes)
[1] 3 2 1 6 5 4 9 8 7 12 11 10 15 14 13
> # now, return the sorted data frame using the permutation:
> my.quotes[do.call(order, my.quotes),]
  symbol      Date  Open  High   Low Close Volume Adj.Close
3     GE 2009-01-02 16.51 17.24 11.87 12.13 117846700    11.78
2     GE 2009-02-02 12.03 12.90  8.40  8.51 194928800     8.51
1     GE 2009-03-02  8.29 11.35  5.87 10.11 277426300    10.11
6    GOOG 2009-01-02 308.60 352.33 282.75 338.53  5727600   338.53
5    GOOG 2009-02-02 334.29 381.00 329.55 337.99  6158100   337.99
4    GOOG 2009-03-02 333.33 359.16 289.45 348.06  5346800   348.06
9   AAPL 2009-01-02 85.88 97.17 78.20 90.13 33487900    90.13
8   AAPL 2009-02-02 89.10 103.00 86.51 89.31 27394900   89.31
7   AAPL 2009-03-02 88.12 109.98 82.33 105.12 25963400   105.12
12  AXP 2009-01-02 18.57 21.38 14.72 16.73 19110000    16.51
11  AXP 2009-02-02 16.35 18.27 11.44 12.06 24297100    11.90
10  AXP 2009-03-02 11.68 15.24  9.71 13.63 31136400    13.45
15   GS 2009-01-02 84.02 92.20 59.13 80.73 22764300    80.29
14   GS 2009-02-02 78.78 98.66 78.57 91.08 28301500   91.08
13   GS 2009-03-02 87.86 115.65 72.78 106.02 30196400   106.02
```



# IV

---

## Data Visualization

This part of the book explains how to plot data with R.





# 13

## Graphics

There are many different ways to plot graphics in R. In this book, we'll focus on the three most popular packages: `graphics`, `lattice`, and `ggplot2`.

The `graphics` package contains a wide variety of functions for plotting data. It is easy to customize or modify charts with the `graphics` package, or to interact with plots on the screen. The `lattice` package contains an alternative set of functions for plotting data. Lattice graphics are well suited for splitting data by a conditioning variable. Finally, `ggplot2` uses a different metaphor for graphics, allowing you to easily and quickly create stunning charts. This chapter gives an overview of the `graphics` package. We'll explain how to use lattice graphics in [Chapter 14](#), and `ggplot2` in [Chapter 15](#).

## An Overview of R Graphics

R includes tools for drawing most common types of charts, including bar charts, pie charts, line charts, and scatter plots. Additionally, R can also draw some less-familiar charts like quantile-quantile (Q-Q) plots, mosaic plots, and contour plots. The following table shows many of the charts included in the `graphics` package.

| Graphics package function                           | Description             |
|---|-------------------------|
| <code>barplot</code>                                | Bar and column charts   |
| <code>dotchart</code>                               | Cleveland dot plots     |
| <code>hist</code>                                   | Histograms              |
| <code>density</code>                                | Kernel density plots    |
| <code>stripchart</code>                             | Strip charts            |
| <code>qqnorm</code> (in <code>stats</code> package) | Quantile-quantile plots |
| <code>xplot</code>                                  | Scatter plots           |
| <code>smoothScatter</code>                          | Smooth scatter plots    |
| <code>qqplot</code> (in <code>stats</code> package) | Quantile-quantile plots |

| Graphics package function     | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <code>pairs</code>            | Scatter plot matrices                                       |
| <code>image</code>            | Image plots   |
| <code>contour</code>          | Contour plots   |
| <code>persp</code>            | Perspective charts of three-dimensional data                |
| <code>interaction.plot</code> | Summary of the response for two-way combinations of factors |
| <code>sunflowerplot</code>    | Sunflower plots   |

You can show R graphics on the screen or save them in many different formats. “[Graphics Devices](#)” on page 246 explains how to choose output methods. R gives you an enormous amount of control over graphics. You can control almost every aspect of a chart. “[Customizing Charts](#)” on page 247 explains how to tweak the output of R to look the way you want. This section shows how to use many common types of R charts.

## Scatter Plots

To show how to use scatter plots, we will look at cases of cancer in 2008 and toxic waste releases by state in 2006. Data on new cancer cases (and deaths from cancer) are tabulated by the American Cancer Society; information on toxic chemicals released into the environment is tabulated by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).<sup>1</sup>

The sample data is included in the `nutshell` package:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(toxins.and.cancer)
```

To show a scatter plot, use the `plot` function. `plot` is a generic function (you can “plot” many different types of objects); `plot` also can draw many types of objects, including vectors, tables, and time series. For simple scatter plots with two vectors, the function that is called is `plot.default`:

```
plot(x, y = NULL, type = "p", xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
log = "", main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
ann = par("ann"), axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes,
panel.first = NULL, panel.last = NULL, asp = NA, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `plot`.

1. Data from both can be found in the *Statistical Abstract of the United States*, available online at <http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/>.

| Argument    | Description  | Default                 |
|-------------|--|-------------------------|
| x, y        | The data to be plotted. You may specify two separate vectors, x and y. Otherwise, you may specify a time series, formula, list, or matrix with two or more columns; see the help file for <code>xy.coords</code> for more details.   |                         |
| type        | A character value that specifies the type of plot:<br><code>type="p"</code> for points, <code>type="l"</code> for lines, <code>type="o"</code> for overplotted points and lines, <code>type="b"</code> for points joined by lines, <code>type="s"</code> for stair steps, <code>type="h"</code> for histogram-style vertical lines, or <code>type="n"</code> for no points or lines. | "p"                     |
| xlim        | A numeric vector with two values specifying the x limits of the plot.  | NULL                    |
| log         | A character value that specifies which axes should be plotted with a logarithmic scale. Use <code>log=""</code> for neither, <code>log="x"</code> for the x-axis, <code>log="y"</code> for the y-axis, and <code>log="xy"</code> for both.   | ""                      |
| main        | The main title for the plot.   | NULL                    |
| sub         | The subtitle for the plot.   | NULL                    |
| xlab        | The label for the x-axis.  | NULL                    |
| ylab        | The label for the y-axis.  | NULL                    |
| ann         | If <code>ann=TRUE</code> , then axis titles and overall titles are included with plots. If <code>ann=FALSE</code> , then these annotations are not included.   | <code>par("ann")</code> |
| axes        | A logical value that specifies whether axes should be drawn.   | TRUE                    |
| frame.plot  | A logical value that specifies whether a box should be drawn around the plot.  | axes                    |
| panel.first | An expression that is evaluated after the axes are drawn but before points are plotted.  | NULL                    |
| panel.last  | An expression that is evaluated after the points are plotted.  | NULL                    |
| asp         | A numeric value that specifies the aspect ratio of the plot (as y/x).  | NA                      |
| ...         | Additional graphical parameters. (See <a href="#">"Graphical Parameters" on page 247</a> for more information.)  |                         |

Now let's try our first plot. Let's compare the overall cancer rate (number of cancer deaths divided by state population) to the presence of toxins (total toxic chemicals release divided by state area):

```
> # use with so that we don't have to keep typing the
> # data frame name
> attach(toxins.and.cancer)
> plot(total_toxic_chemicals/Surface_Area, deaths_total/Population)
```

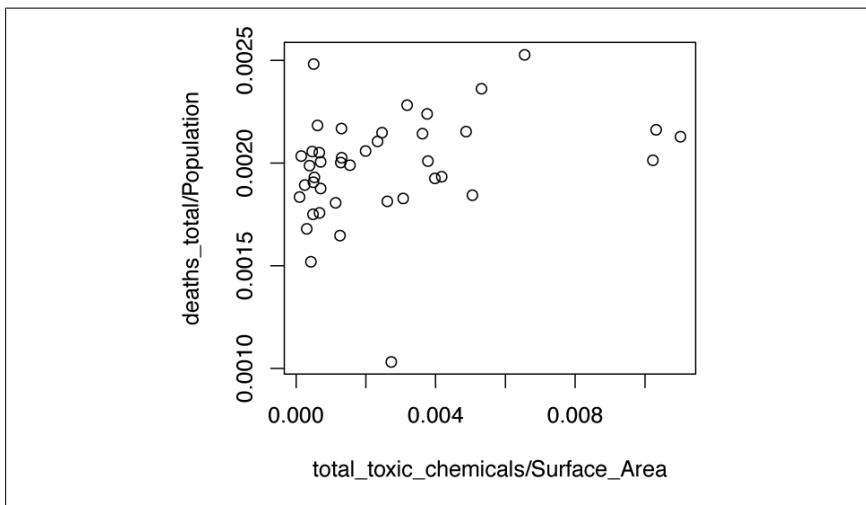
The chart is shown in [Figure 13-1](#). Perhaps there is a stronger correlation between airborne toxins and lung cancer:

```
> plot(air_on_site/Surface_Area, deaths_lung/Population)
```

This chart is shown in [Figure 13-2](#). Suppose that you wanted to know which states were associated with which points. R provides some interactive tools for identifying points on plots. You can use the `locator` function to tell you the coordinates of a specific point (or set of points). To do this, first plot the data. Next, type `locator(1)`. Then click on a point in the open graphics window. As an example, suppose that you plotted the data above, typed `locator(1)`, and then clicked on the point in the upper-right corner. You would see output like this in the R console:

```
> locator(1)
$x
[1] 0.002499427

$y
[1] 0.0008182696
```



*Figure 13-1. Total toxins and new cancer cases*

Another useful function for identifying points is `identify`. This function can be used to interactively label points on a plot. To use `identify` with the data above, you would enter:

```
> identify(air_on_site/Surface_Area, deaths_lung/Population,
+           State_Abbrev)
```

While this command is running, you can click on individual points on the chart, and R will label those points with state names.

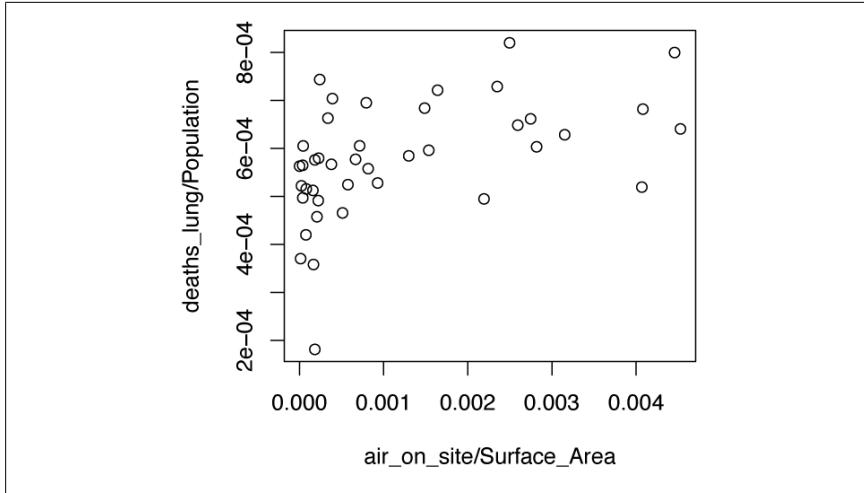


Figure 13-2. Toxins released by air and lung cancer deaths per capita

If you wanted to label all the points at once, you could use the `text` function to add labels to the plot. Here is how I drew the plot shown in Figure 13-3:

```
> plot(air_on_site/Surface_Area, deaths_lung/Population,
+      xlab="Air Release Rate of Toxic Chemicals",
+      ylab="Lung Cancer Death Rate")
> text(air_on_site/Surface_Area, deaths_lung/Population,
+       labels=State_Abbrev,
+       cex=0.5,
+       adj=c(0,-1))
```

Notice that I have added some extra arguments to refine the appearance of the plot. The `xlab` and `ylab` arguments are used to add labels to the  $x$ - and  $y$ -axes. The `text` function draws a label next to each point. I tweaked the size placement of the labels using the `cex` and `adj` arguments; see “[Graphical Parameters](#)” on page 247 for more information.

Is this relationship significant? It is actually statistically significant (see “[Correlation tests](#)” on page 384), but we don’t have enough information to make a good argument that there is a causal relationship.

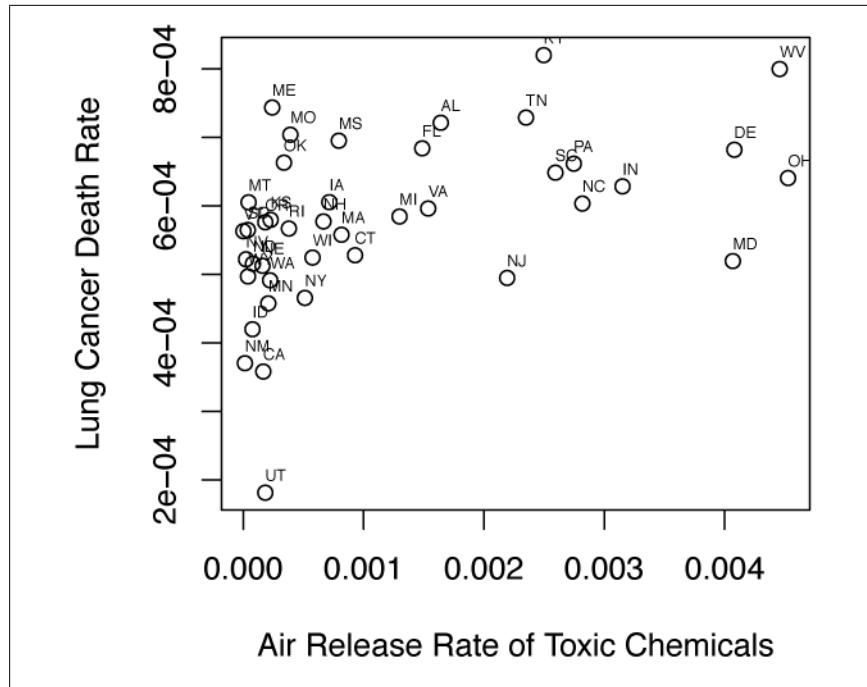


Figure 13-3. Toxins released by air and lung cancer deaths per capita, cleaned up

The `plot` function is a good choice if you want to plot two columns of data on one chart. However, suppose that you have more columns of data to plot, perhaps split into different categories. Or, suppose that you want to plot all the columns of one matrix against all the columns of another matrix. To plot multiple sets of columns against one another, you can use the `matplot` function:

```
matplot(x, y, type = "p", lty = 1:5, lwd = 1, pch = NULL,
        col = 1:6, cex = NULL, bg = NA,
        xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL,
        ..., add = FALSE, verbose = getOption("verbose"))
```

`Matplot` accepts the following arguments.

| Argument | Description  | Default  |
|----------|--|--|
| x, y     | Vectors or matrices containing the data to be plotted. The number of rows and columns should match.  | If x is not specified, then x=1:ncol(y). If y is not specified, then y=x; x=1:ncol(y). |
| type     | A character vector specifying the types of plots to generate. Use type="p" for points, type="l" for lines, type="b" for both, type="c" for the lines part alone of "b", type="o" for both overplotted points and lines, type="h" for histogram-like (or high-density) vertical lines, type="s" for stair steps, type="S" for other steps, or type="n" for no plotting. | "p"  |

| Argument   | Description  | Default                           |
|------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| lty        | A vector of line types. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details.                         | 1:5                               |
| lwd        | A vector of line widths. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details.                        | 1                                 |
| pch        | A vector of plotting characters. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details.                | NULL                              |
| col        | A vector of colors. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details.                             | 1:6                               |
| cex        | A vector of character expansion sizes. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details.          | NULL                              |
| bg         | A vector of background colors for plot symbols. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details. | NA                                |
| xlab, ylab | Character values specifying x- and y-axis labels.  | NULL                              |
| xlim, ylim | Numeric values specifying ranges for the x- and y-axes.  | NULL                              |
| ...        | Additional graphical parameters that are passed to <code>par</code> .  | NULL                              |
| add        | A logical value indicating whether to add to the current plot or to generate a new plot.   | FALSE                             |
| verbose    | A logical value indicating whether to write information to the console describing what <code>matplot</code> did.                   | <code>getOption("verbose")</code> |

Many arguments to `matplot` have the same names as standard arguments to `par`. However, because `matplot` generates multiple plots at the same time, these arguments can be specified as vectors of multiple values when called by `matplot`. For more details on standard arguments, see “[Graphical Parameters](#)” on page 247.

If you are plotting a very large number of points, then you may prefer the function `smoothScatter`, which plots the density of points by shading different regions of the plot different shades, depending on the density of points in each region:

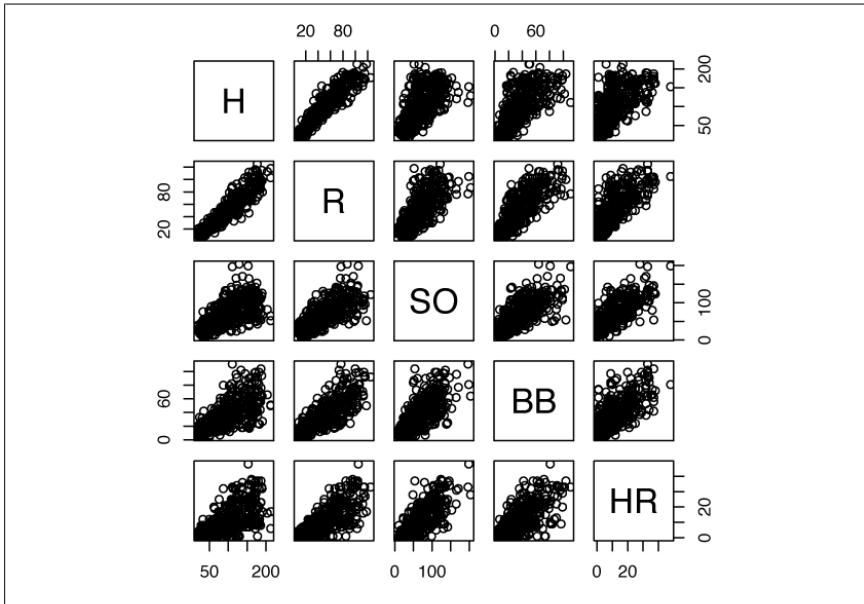
```
smoothScatter(x, y = NULL, nbin = 128, bandwidth,
               colramp = colorRampPalette(c("white", "blues9)),
               nropoints = 100, pch = ".", cex = 1, col = "black",
               transformation = function(x) x^.25,
               postPlotHook = box,
               xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, xlim, ylim,
               xaxs = par("xaxs"), yaxs = par("yaxs"), ...)
```

For an example of `smoothScatter`, see “[Correlation and Covariance](#)” on page 354.

If you have a data frame with  $n$  different variables and you would like to generate a scatter plot for each pair of values in the data frame, try the `pairs` function. As an example, let’s plot the hits, runs, strikeouts, walks, and home runs for each Major League Baseball (MLB) player who had more than 100 at bats in 2008. To do this, we would use the following R statement:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(batting.2008)
> pairs(batting.2008[batting.2008$AB>100, c("H", "R", "SO", "BB", "HR")])
```

The result is shown in [Figure 13-4](#).



*Figure 13-4. Pairs example*

## Plotting Time Series

R includes tools for plotting time series data. The `plot` function has a method for time series:

```
plot(x, y = NULL, plot.type = c("multiple", "single"),
      xy.labels, xy.lines, panel = lines, nc, yax.flip = FALSE,
      mar.multi = c(0, 5.1, 0, if(yax.flip) 5.1 else 2.1),
      oma.multi = c(6, 0, 5, 0), axes = TRUE, ...)
```

The arguments `x` and `y` specify `ts` objects, `panel` specifies how to plot the time series (by default, lines), and other arguments specify how to break time series into different plots (as in `lattice`). As an example, we'll plot the turkey price data:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(turkey.price.ts)
> plot(turkey.price.ts)
```

The results are shown in [Figure 13-5](#). As you can see, turkey prices are very seasonal. There are huge sales in November and December (for Thanksgiving and Christmas) and minor sales in spring (probably for Easter).

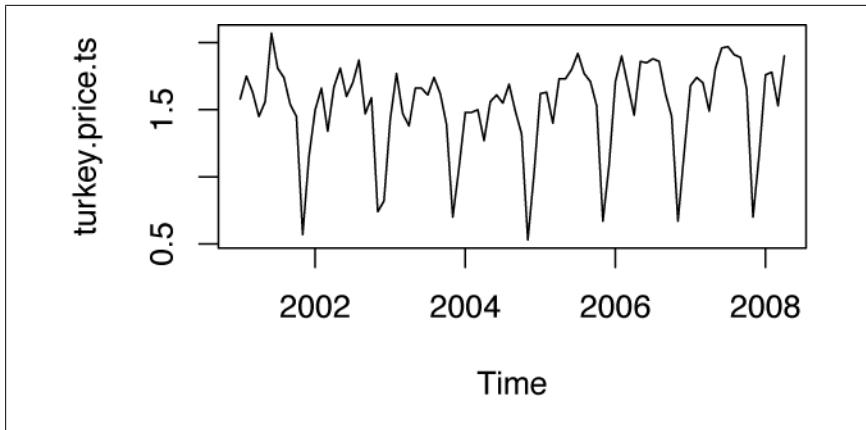


Figure 13-5. Time series plot

Another way to look at seasonal effects is with an autocorrelation plot (which is also called a [correlogram](#); see [Figure 13-6](#)). This plot shows how correlated points are with each other, by difference in time. You can also plot the autocorrelation function for a time series (which can be helpful for looking at cyclical effects). The plot is generated by default when you call `acf`, which computes the autocorrelation function. (Alternatively, you can generate the autocorrelation function with `acf` and then plot it separately.) Here is how to generate the plot for the turkey price data:

```
> acf(turkey.price.ts)
```

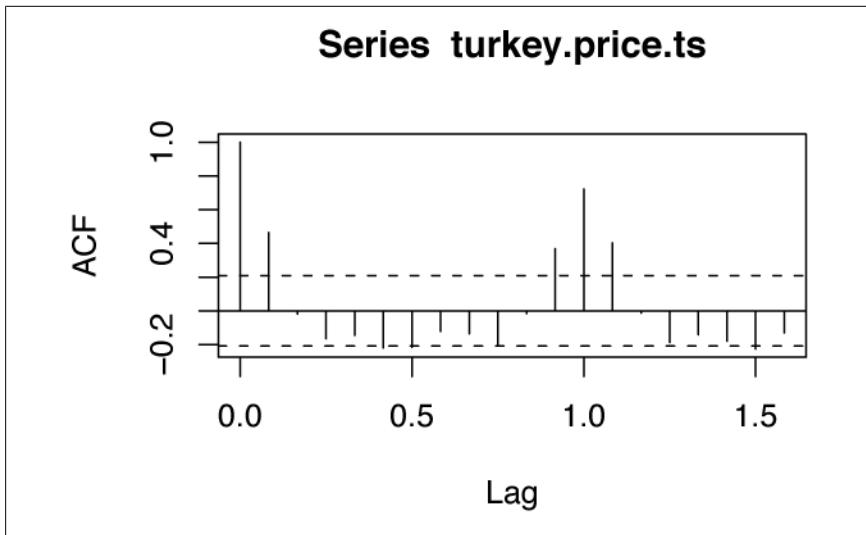


Figure 13-6. Autocorrelation function plot

As you can see, points are correlated over 12-month cycles (and inversely correlated over 6-month cycles). Time series analysis is discussed further in [Chapter 23](#).

## Bar Charts

To draw bar (or column) charts in R, use the `barplot` function.

As an example, let's look at doctoral degrees awarded in the United States between 2001 and 2006:<sup>2</sup>

```
> doctorates <- data.frame (
+   year=c(2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006),
+   engineering=c(5323, 5511, 5079, 5280, 5777, 6425),
+   science=c(20643, 20017, 19529, 20001, 20498, 21564),
+   education=c(6436, 6349, 6503, 6643, 6635, 6226),
+   health=c(1591, 1541, 1654, 1633, 1720, 1785),
+   humanities=c(5213, 5178, 5051, 5020, 5013, 4949),
+   other=c(2159, 2141, 2209, 2180, 2480, 2436)
+ )
```

Or, if you prefer, you can just load the data from the `nutshell` package:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(doctorates)
```

Now let's transform this into a matrix for plotting:

```
> # make this into a matrix:
> doctorates.m <- as.matrix(doctorates[2:7])
> rownames(doctorates.m) <- doctorates[, 1]
> doctorates.m
  engineering science education health humanities other
2001      5323    20643     6436    1591      5213  2159
2002      5511    20017     6349    1541      5178  2141
2003      5079    19529     6503    1654      5051  2209
2004      5280    20001     6643    1633      5020  2180
2005      5777    20498     6635    1720      5013  2480
2006      6425    21564     6226    1785      4949  2436
```

The `barplot` function can't work with a data frame, so we've created a matrix object for this problem with the data.

Let's start by just showing a bar plot of doctorates in 2001 by type:

```
> barplot(doctorates.m[1, ])
```

As you can see from [Figure 13-7](#), by default R shows the y-axis along with the size of each bar, but it does not show the x-axis. R also automatically uses column names to name the bars. Suppose that we wanted to show all the different years as bars stacked next to one another. Suppose that we also wanted the bars plotted horizontally and wanted to show a legend for the different years. To do this, we could use the following expression to generate the chart shown in [Figure 13-8](#):

```
> barplot(doctorates.m, beside=TRUE, horiz=TRUE, legend=TRUE, cex.names=.75)
```

2. As with many other examples in this book, this data was taken from the *Statistical Abstract of the United States*, 2009. This data comes from <http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/tables/09s0785.xls>.

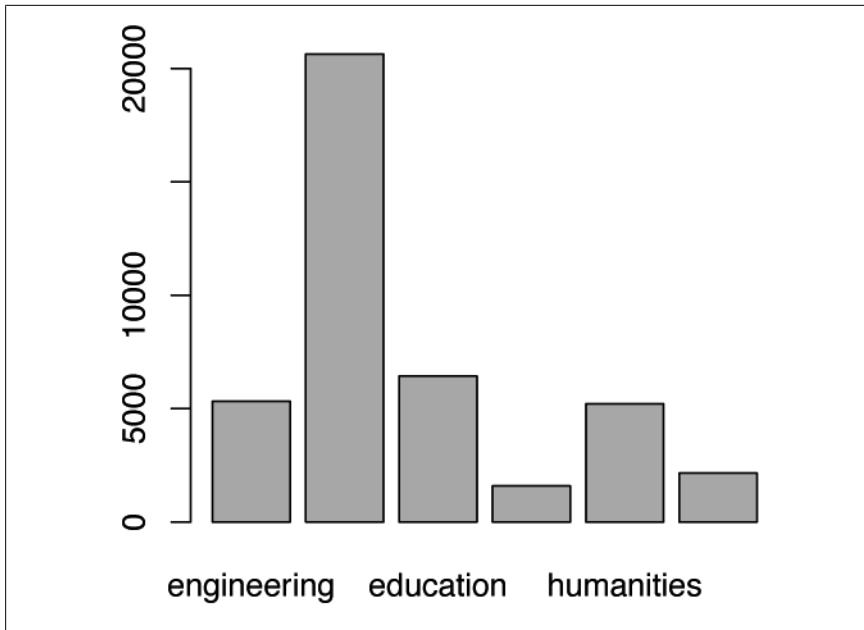


Figure 13-7. Simple bar plot example

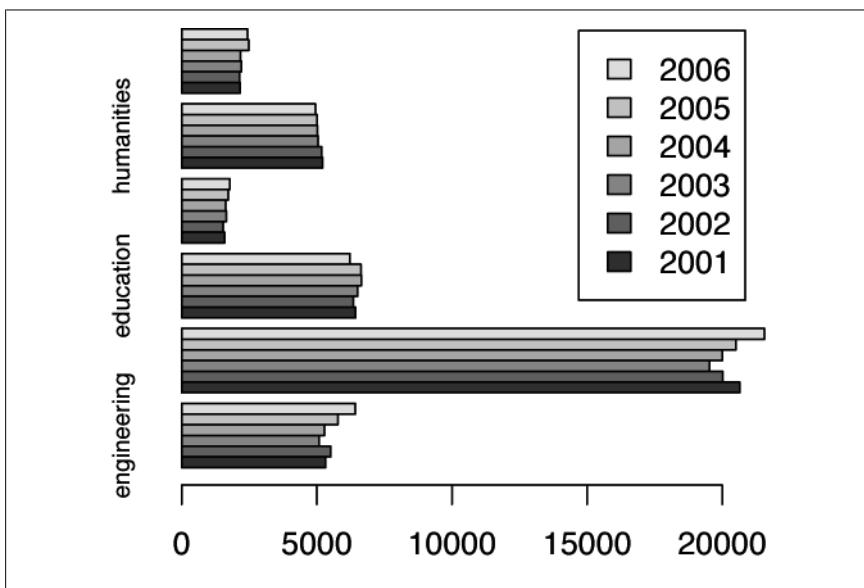


Figure 13-8. Horizontal juxtaposed bar plot example

Finally, suppose that we wanted to show doctorates by year as stacked bars. To do this, we need to transform the matrix so that each column is a year and each row is

a discipline. We also need to make sure that there is enough room to see the legend, so we'll extend the limits on the y-axis:

```
> barplot(t(doctorates.m), legend=TRUE, ylim=c(0, 66000))
```

The chart generated by this expression is shown in Figure 13-9.

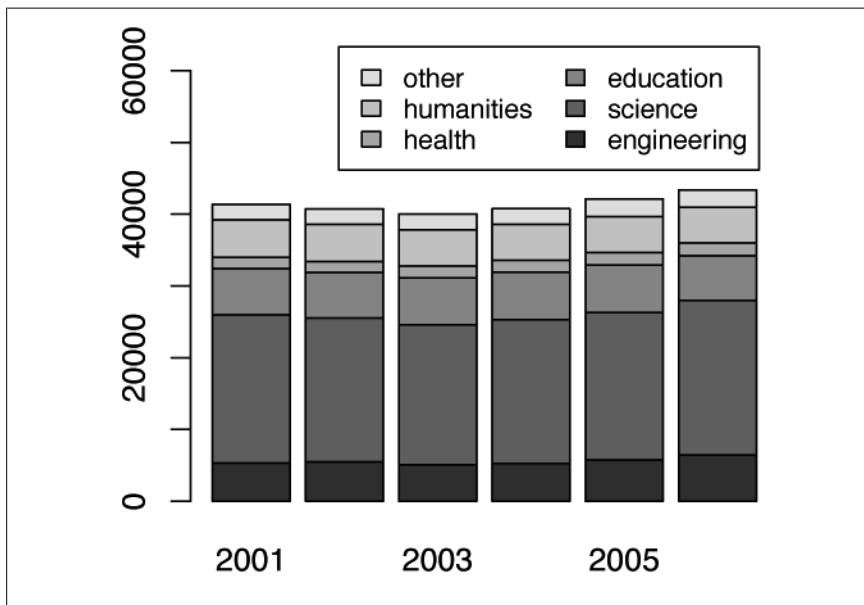


Figure 13-9. Stacked bar plot example

Here is a detailed description of `barplot`:

```
barplot(height, width = 1, space = NULL,
        names.arg = NULL, legend.text = NULL, beside = FALSE,
        horiz = FALSE, density = NULL, angle = 45,
        col = NULL, border = par("fg"),
        main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
        xlim = NULL, ylim = NULL, xpd = TRUE, log = "",
        axes = TRUE, axisnames = TRUE,
        cex.axis = par("cex.axis"), cex.names = par("cex.axis"),
        inside = TRUE, plot = TRUE, axis.lty = 0, offset = 0,
        add = FALSE, args.legend = NULL, ...)
```

The `barplot` function is very flexible; here is a description of the arguments to `barplot`.

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| height   | Either a numeric vector or a numeric matrix representing the values to be plotted. If values are given as a matrix and <code>beside=FALSE</code> , then the bars are stacked. If <code>beside=TRUE</code> , then the bars are plotted next to one another. |         |

| Argument    | Description  | Default   |
|-------------|--|---|
| width       | A numeric vector representing the widths of the bars.  | 1   |
| space       | If <code>beside=FALSE</code> , a numeric value indicating the amount of space between bars. You specify the space as a fraction of the average column width. If <code>beside=TRUE</code> , then you can specify a two-element vector, where the first element specifies the space within a group and the second represents the space between groups.     | <pre>if (is.matrix(height)) &amp; beside==TRUE) c(0, 1) else 0.2</pre>  |
| names.arg   | A character vector specifying the names to be plotted for each bar (or group of bars).   | <pre>if (is.matrix(height)) col.names(height) else names(height)</pre>  |
| legend.text | A character vector or a logical value. If a logical value is given, then a legend is generated using the row names of <code>height</code> . If a character vector is given, then those character values are used instead. This function is mostly useful when <code>height</code> is a matrix (and there are two different dimensions that need labels). | NULL  |
| beside      | A logical value indicating whether columns should be stacked or drawn beside one another. Meaningful only when <code>height</code> is a matrix.  | FALSE   |
| horiz       | A logical value specifying the direction to draw the bars. If <code>horiz=FALSE</code> , then bars are drawn vertically from left to right. If <code>horiz=TRUE</code> , then bars are drawn horizontally from bottom to top.  | FALSE   |
| density     | A numeric value that specifies the density of shading lines in lines per inch. <code>density=NULL</code> means that no lines are drawn.  | NULL  |
| angle       | A numeric value that specifies the slope of the shading lines (in degrees).  | 45  |
| col         | A vector of colors to use for the bars (or bar components).  | Gray is used if <code>height</code> is a vector; a gamma-corrected gray palette if <code>height</code> is a matrix. |
| border      | The color to be used for the border of the bars.   | <code>par("fg")</code>  |
| main        | A character value to be used as the overall title.   | NULL  |
| sub         | A character value to be used as a subtitle.  | NULL  |
| xlab        | A character value to use as the label for the x-axis.  | NULL  |
| ylab        | A character value to use as the label for the y-axis.  | NULL  |
| xlim        | Limits for the x-axis.   | NULL  |
| ylim        | Limits for the y-axis.   | NULL  |
| xpd         | A logical value indicating if bars should be allowed to go outside the region.   | TRUE  |
| log         | A character value specifying whether axis scales should be logarithmic.  | ""  |
| axes        | A logical value indicating whether axes should be drawn.   | TRUE  |
| axisnames   | If <code>axisnames=TRUE</code> and <code>names.arg</code> is not null, then the second axis is drawn and labeled.  | TRUE  |

| Argument    | Description   | Default         |
|-------------|---|-----------------|
| cex.axis    | A numeric value specifying the size of numeric axis labels relative to other text (cex.axis=1 means full size). | par("cex.axis") |
| cex.names   | A numeric value specifying the size of axis names relative to other text (cex.axis=1 means full size).          | par("cex.axis") |
| inside      | A logical value that indicates whether to draw lines separating bars when beside=TRUE.                          | TRUE            |
| plot        | A logical value indicating whether to plot the chart.   | TRUE            |
| axis.lty    | The line type for the axis.   | 0               |
| offset      | A numeric vector indicating how much bars should be shifted relative to the x-axis.                             | 0               |
| add         | A logical value indicating if bars should be added to an existing plot.   | FALSE           |
| args.legend | A list of arguments to pass to legend (if legend.text is used).   | NULL            |
| ...         | Additional arguments passed to other graphical routines used inside barplot (typically, arguments to par).      |                 |

## Pie Charts

One of the most popular ways to plot data is the pie chart. Pie charts can be an effective way to compare different parts of a quantity, though there are lots of good reasons not to use pie charts.<sup>3</sup> You can draw pie charts in R using the `pie` function:

```
pie(x, labels = names(x), edges = 200, radius = 0.8,
    clockwise = FALSE, init.angle = if(clockwise) 90 else 0,
    density = NULL, angle = 45, col = NULL, border = NULL,
    lty = NULL, main = NULL, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `pie`.

| Argument | Description   | Default  |
|----------|---|----------|
| x        | A vector of nonnegative numeric values that will be plotted.  |          |
| labels   | An expression to generate labels, a vector of character strings, or another object that can be coerced to a <code>graphicsAnnot</code> object and used as labels. | names(x) |
| edges    | A numeric value indicating the number of segments used to draw the outside of the pie.  | 200      |
| radius   | A numeric value that specifies how big the pie should be. (Parts of the pie are cut off for values over 1.)   | 0.8      |

3. A lot of people dislike pie charts. I think they are good for saying, “Look how much bigger this number is than this number,” and they are very good at taking up lots of space on a page. Pie charts are not good at showing subtle differences between the size of different slices; search for “why pie charts are bad” on Google, and you’ll come up with dozens of sites explaining what’s wrong with them. Or just check the help file for `pie`, which says, “Pie charts are a very bad way of displaying information. The eye is good at judging linear measures and bad at judging relative areas. A bar chart or dot chart is a preferable way of displaying this type of data.”

| Argument   | Description   | Default                  |
|------------|---|--------------------------|
| clockwise  | A logical value indicating whether slices are drawn clockwise or counterclockwise.  | FALSE                    |
| init.angle | A numeric value specifying the starting angle for the slices (in degrees).  | if (clockwise) 90 else 0 |
| density    | A numeric value that specifies the density of shading lines in lines per inch.<br>density=NULL means that no lines are drawn. | NULL                     |
| angle      | A numeric value that specifies the slope of the shading lines (in degrees).   | 45                       |
| col        | A numeric vector that specifies the colors to be used for slices. If col=NULL, then a set of six pastel colors is used.       | NULL                     |
| border     | Arguments passed to the polygon function to draw each slice.  | NULL                     |
| lty        | The line type used to draw each slice.  | NULL                     |
| main       | A character string that represents the title.   | NULL                     |

As a simple example, let's use pie charts to show what happened to fish caught in the United States in 2006:

```
> # 2006 fishery data from
> #   http://www.census.gov/compendia/statab/tables/09s0852.xls
> # units are millions of pounds of live fish
> domestic.catch.2006 <- c(7752, 1166, 463, 108)
> names(domestic.catch.2006) <- c("Fresh and frozen",
+   "Reduced to meal, oil, etc.", "Canned", "Cured")
> # note: cex=.6 setting shrinks text size by 40% so you can see the labels
> pie(domestic.catch.2006, init.angle=100, cex=.6)
```

As shown in Figure 13-10, most of the fish (by weight) was sold fresh or frozen.

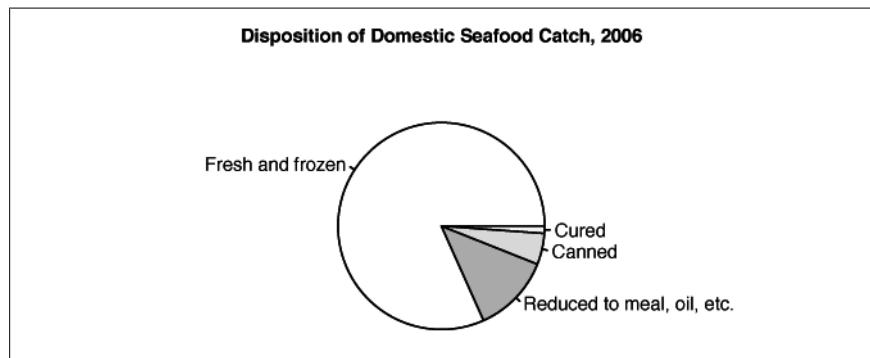


Figure 13-10. Pie chart

## Plotting Categorical Data

The `graphics` package includes some very useful, and possibly unfamiliar, tools for looking at categorical data.

Suppose that you want to look at the *conditional density* of a set of categories dependent on a numeric value. You can do this with a conditional density plot, generated by the `cdplot` function:

```
cdplot(x, y,  
       plot = TRUE, tol.ylab = 0.05, ylevels = NULL,  
       bw = "nrdo", n = 512, from = NULL, to = NULL,  
       col = NULL, border = 1, main = "", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,  
       yaxlabels = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = c(0, 1), ...)
```

Here is the form of `cdplot` when called with a formula:

```
cdplot(formula, data = list(),  
       plot = TRUE, tol.ylab = 0.05, ylevels = NULL,  
       bw = "nrdo", n = 512, from = NULL, to = NULL,  
       col = NULL, border = 1, main = "", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,  
       yaxlabels = NULL, xlim = NULL, ylim = c(0, 1), ...,  
       subset = NULL)
```

The `cdplot` function uses the `density` function to compute kernel density estimates across the range of numeric values and then plots these estimates. Here is the list of arguments to `cdplot`.

| Argument               | Description  | Default |
|------------------------|--|---------|
| x, y, formula,<br>data | Arguments used to specify the data to plot. You may specify either a numeric vector x containing data to plot and a factor vector y containing grouping information or a formula and a data frame (data) in which to evaluate the formula. |         |
| subset                 | A vector specifying the subset of values to be used when plotting. (Applies only when using a formula and a data frame.)   | NULL    |
| plot                   | Logical value specifying whether the conditional densities should be plotted.  | TRUE    |
| tol.ylab               | A numeric vector that specifies a “tolerance parameter” for y-axis labels. If the difference between two labels is less than this parameter, then they are plotted equidistantly.  | 0.05    |
| ylevels                | A character or numeric vector that specifies the order in which levels should be plotted.  | NULL    |
| bw                     | The “smoothing bandwidth” to use when plotting. See the help file for <code>density</code> for more details.   | "nrdo"  |
| n                      | A numeric value specifying the number of points at which the density is estimated.   | 512     |
| from                   | A numeric value specifying the lowest point at which the density is estimated.   | NULL    |
| to                     | A numeric value specifying the highest point at which the density is estimated.  | NULL    |
| col                    | A vector of fill colors for the different conditional values.  | NULL    |
| border                 | Border color for shaded polygons.  | 1       |
| main                   | Main title.  | ""      |
| xlab                   | x-axis label.  | NULL    |
| ylab                   | y-axis label.  | NULL    |
| yaxlabels              | Character vector for labeling different conditional variables.   | NULL    |
| xlim                   | Range of x variables to plot.  | NULL    |
| ylim                   | Range of y variables to plot.  | c(0, 1) |

| Argument | Description                                      | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| ...      | Other arguments passed to <code>density</code> . |         |

As an example, let's look at how the distribution of batting hand varies by batting average among MLB players in 2008:

```
> batting.w.names.2008 <- transform(batting.2008,
+   AVG=H/AB, bats=as.factor(bats), throws=as.factor(throws))
> cddplot(bats~AVG,data=batting.w.names.2008,
+   subset=(batting.w.names.2008$AB>100))
```

The results are shown in Figure 13-11. As you can see, the proportion of switch hitters (`bats=="B"`) increases with higher batting average.

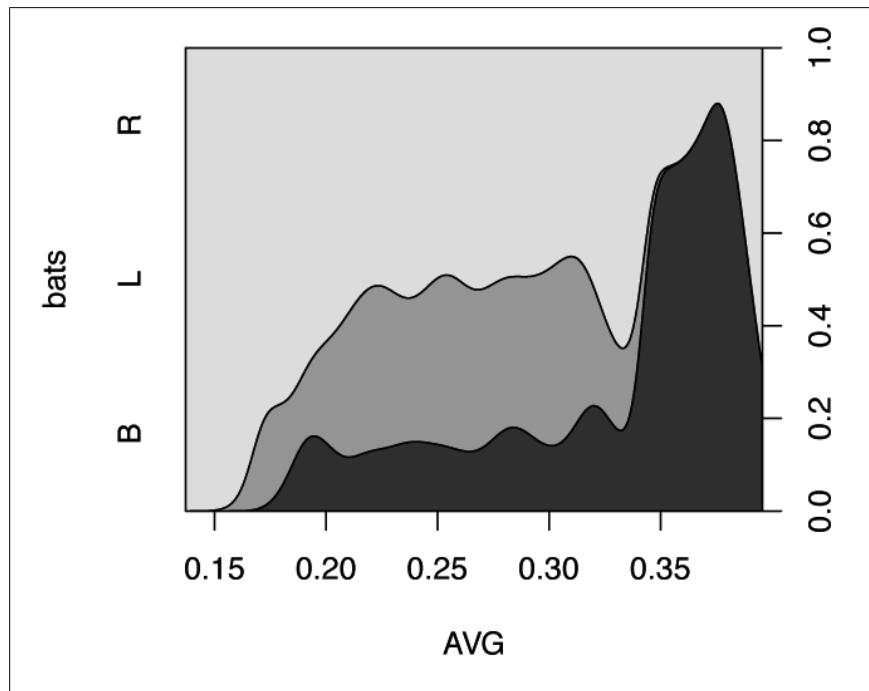


Figure 13-11. Conditional density plot

Suppose, instead, that you simply wanted to plot the proportion of observations for two different categorical variables. R also provides tools for visualizing this type of data. One of the most interesting charts available in R for showing the number of observations with certain properties is the mosaic plot. A mosaic plot shows a set of boxes corresponding to different factor values. The *x*-axis corresponds to one factor and the *y*-axis to another factor. To create a mosaic plot, use the `mosaicplot` function. Here is the form of the `mosaicplot` function for a contingency table:

```
mosaicplot(x, main = deparse(substitute(x)),
           sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
```

```
sort = NULL, off = NULL, dir = NULL,
color = NULL, shade = FALSE, margin = NULL,
cex.axis = 0.66, las = par("las"),
type = c("pearson", "deviance", "FT"), ...)
```

There is also a method for `mosaicplot` that allows you to specify the data as a formula and data frame:

```
mosaicplot(formula, data = NULL, ...,
           main = deparse(substitute(data)), subset,
           na.action = stats::na.omit)
```

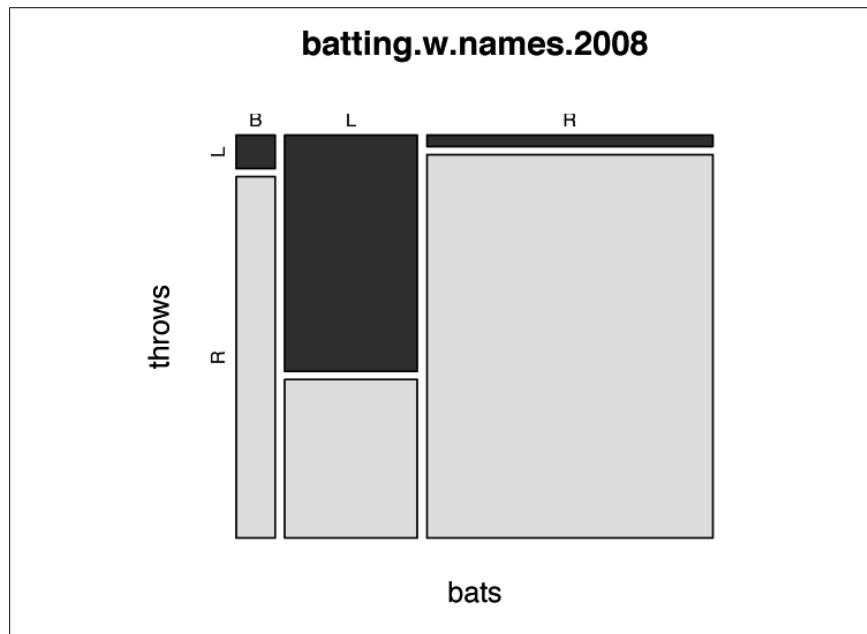
Here is a description of the arguments to `mosaicplot`.

| Argument            | Description   | Default                                     |
|---------------------|---|---|
| x, formula,<br>data | Specifies the data to be plotted. You may specify either a contingency table <code>x</code> or a formula and a data frame ( <code>data</code> ). (If the variables in <code>formula</code> are defined in the current environment, then you may omit <code>data</code> .)   |   |
| subset              | A vector that specifies which values in <code>data</code> to plot.  |   |
| main                | A character value specifying the main title for the plot.   | <code>deparse(substitute(x))</code>         |
| sub                 | A character value specifying the subtitle for the plot.   | NULL  |
| xlab                | A character value specifying the label for the x-axis.  | NULL  |
| ylab                | A character value specifying the label for the y-axis.  | NULL  |
| sort                | An integer vector that describes how to sort the variables in <code>x</code> . Specified as a permutation of <code>1:length(dim(x))</code> .  | NULL  |
| off                 | A numeric vector that specifies the spacing between each level of the mosaic as a percentage.   | NULL  |
| dir                 | A character vector that specifies which direction to plot each vector in <code>x</code> . Use "v" for vertical and "h" for horizontal.  | NULL  |
| color               | A logical value or character vector specifying colors to use for color shading. You may use <code>color=TRUE</code> for a gamma-corrected color palette, <code>color=NULL</code> for grayscale, or <code>color=FALSE</code> for unfilled boxes.   | NULL  |
| shade               | A logical value (or numeric vector) specifying whether to produce "extended mosaic plots" to visualize standardized residuals of a log-linear model for the table by color and outline of the mosaic's tiles. You may specify <code>shade=FALSE</code> for standard plots, <code>shade=TRUE</code> for extended plots, or a numeric vector with up to five elements specifying cut points of the residuals. | FALSE                                       |
| margin              | A list of vectors containing marginal totals to fit in a log-linear model. See the help file for <code>loglin</code> for more information.  | NULL  |
| cex.axis            | A numeric value specifying the magnification factor to use for axis annotation text.  | 0.66  |
| las                 | Specifies the style of the axis labels.   | <code>par("las")</code>                     |
| type                | A character string indicating the type of residuals to plot. Use <code>type="pearson"</code> for components of Pearson's chi-squared,   | <code>c("pearson", "deviance", "FT")</code> |

| Argument  | Description  | Default  |
|-----------|--|--|
|           | type="deviance" for components of the likelihood ratio chi-squared, or type="FT" for the Freeman-Tukey residuals.                |  |
| na.action | A function that specifies what mosaicplot should do if the data contains variables to be cross-tabulated that contain NA values. | A function that omits NA values (specifically, stats::na.omit) |
| ...       | Additional graphical parameters passed to other methods.   |  |

As an example, let's create a mosaic plot showing the number of batters in the MLB in 2008. On the *x*-axis, we'll show batting hand (left, right, or both), and on the *y*-axis we'll show throwing hand (left or right). This function can accept either a matrix of values or a formula and a data frame. In this example, we'll use a formula and a data frame. The plot is shown in [Figure 13-12](#):

```
> mosaicplot(formula=bats~throws, data=batting.w.names.2008, color=TRUE)
> dev.off()
```



*Figure 13-12. Mosaic plot*

Another chart that is very similar to a mosaic plot is a spine plot. A spine plot shows different boxes corresponding to the number of observations associated with two factors. [Figure 13-13](#) shows an example of a spine plot using the same batting data we used in the mosaic example:

```
> spineplot(formula=bats~throws, data=batting.w.names.2008)
```

Another function for looking at tables of data is `assocplot`. This function plots a set of bar charts, showing the deviation of each combination of factors from independence. (These are also called *Cohen-Friendly association plots*.) As an example, let's look at the same data for batting and throwing hands:

```
> assocplot(table(batting.w.names.2008$bats, batting.w.names.2008$throws),  
+   xlab="Throws", ylab="Bats")
```

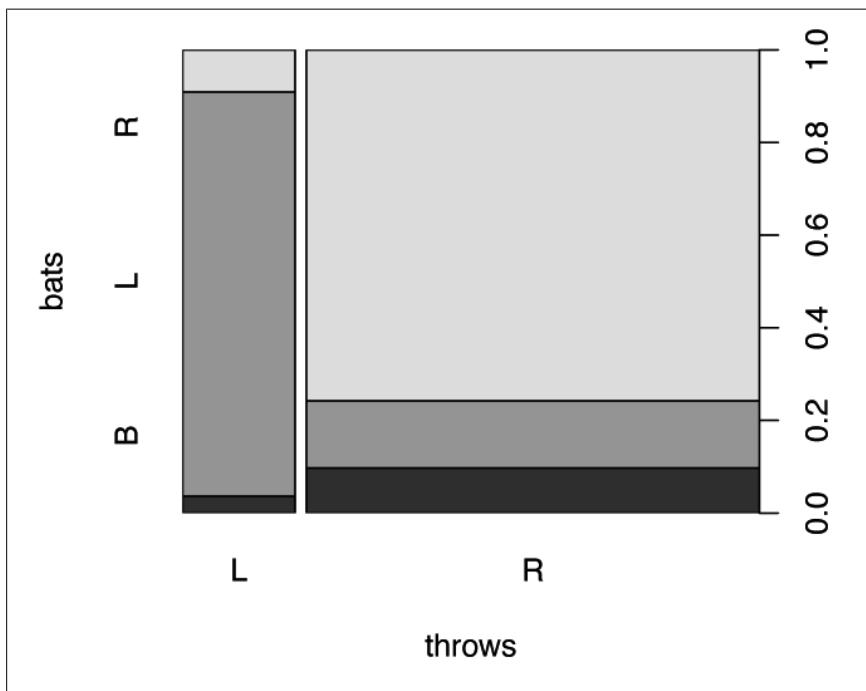


Figure 13-13. Spine plot

The resulting plot is shown in Figure 13-14. Other useful plotting functions include `stars` and `fourfoldplot`. See the help files for more information.

## Three-Dimensional Data

R includes a few functions for visualizing three-dimensional data. All of these functions can be used to plot a matrix of values. (Row indices correspond to *x* values, column indices to *y* values, and values in the matrix to *z* values.)

As an example of multidimensional data, I used elevation data for Yosemite Valley in Yosemite National Park (you can find a map at <http://www.nps.gov/yose/planyourvisit/upload/yosevalley2008.pdf>). The sample data I used for my examples is included in the `nutshell` library.

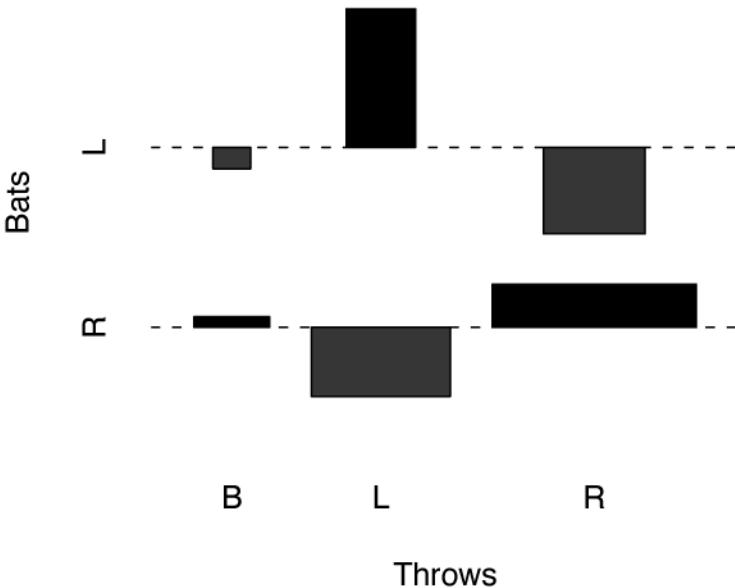


Figure 13-14. Association plot example

## Getting Elevation Data

I downloaded the Yosemite data from the U.S. Geological Survey. Specifically, I used the National Map Seamless Server (available at <http://seamless.usgs.gov/web/site/seamless/viewer.htm>). This service allows you to search for a specific location and select a region from which to obtain elevation data. After you select the area that you want to export, a window will pop up called the “Request Summary Page.” There will be a link on this page to “Modify Data Request.” Click this link to modify the defaults, choose to export the data in GridFloat format, save the options, and download the file. The name of the file I downloaded was *NED\_09216343.zip*, though the name of your file will be different.

Unzip the downloaded file. There are many different files inside the archive, including a lot of information about the request. The most important files are the *.hdr* file (which contains information you need to load the data) and the *.flt* file (which contains the data). Here is what was contained in the *ned\_09216343.hdr* file that I downloaded:

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>ncols</code>        | <code>562</code>                |
| <code>nrows</code>        | <code>253</code>                |
| <code>xllcorner</code>    | <code>-119.68111111082</code>   |
| <code>yllcorner</code>    | <code>37.699166665986</code>    |
| <code>cellsize</code>     | <code>0.0002777777779647</code> |
| <code>NODATA_value</code> | <code>-9999</code>              |
| <code>byteorder</code>    | <code>LSBFIRST</code>           |

The GridFloat format saves the topological data as a stream of 4-byte floating-point values. You can load this into R using the `readBin` function. As noted in this file, there were  $562 \times 253$  four-byte values encoded in little-endian format. So I loaded the data with the following statement:

```
> yosemite <- readBin(
+  "~/Documents/book/data/NED_09216343/ned_09216343.flt",
+  what="numeric", n=562*253, size=4, endian="little")
```

I then assigned dimensions with this statement:

```
> dim(yosemite) <- c(562,253)
```

Feel free to grab your own data samples for experimentation.

To view a three-dimensional surface, use the `persp` function. This function draws a plot of a three-dimensional surface for a specific perspective. (It does, of course, draw in only two dimensions.) If you want to show your nonstatistician friends that you are doing really cool math stuff with R, this is the function that draws the coolest plots:

```
persp(x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z)),
       y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)),
       z, xlim = range(x), ylim = range(y),
       zlim = range(z, na.rm = TRUE),
       xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL, zlab = NULL,
       main = NULL, sub = NULL,
       theta = 0, phi = 15, r = sqrt(3), d = 1,
       scale = TRUE, expand = 1,
       col = "white", border = NULL, ltheta = -135, lphi = 0,
       shade = NA, box = TRUE, axes = TRUE, nticks = 5,
       ticktype = "simple", ...)
```

Here is a description of the values to `persp`.

| Argument         | Description  | Default  |
|------------------|--|--|
| x, y             | Numeric vectors that explain what each dimension of z represents. (Specifically, x is a numeric vector representing the x values for each row in z, and y is a numeric vector representing the y values for each column in z.) | x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z))<br>y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)) |
| z                | A matrix of values to plot.  |  |
| xlim, ylim, zlim | Numeric vectors with two values, representing the range of values to plot for x, y, and z, respectively.   | xlim = range(x)<br>ylim = range(y)<br>zlim = range(z, na.rm = TRUE)        |
| xlab, ylab, zlab | Character values specifying titles to plot for the x-, y-, and z-axes.   | NULL   |
| main             | A character value specifying the main title for the plot.  | NULL   |

| Argument | Description   | Default    |
|----------|---|------------|
| sub      | A character value specifying the subtitle for the plot.   | NULL       |
| theta    | A numeric value that specifies the azimuthal direction of the viewing angle.  | 0          |
| phi      | A numeric value that specifies the colatitude of the viewing angle.   | 15         |
| r        | The distance of the viewing point from the center of the plotting box.  | $\sqrt{3}$ |
| d        | A numeric value that can be used to increase or decrease the perspective effect.  | 1          |
| scale    | A logical value specifying whether to maintain aspect ratios when plotting.   | TRUE       |
| expand   | A numeric factor used to expand (when $z > 1$ ) or shrink (when $z < 1$ ) the z coordinates.  | 1          |
| col      | The color of the surface facets.  | "white"    |
| border   | The color of the lines drawn around the surface facets.   | NULL       |
| ltheta   | If specified, the surface is drawn as if illuminated from the direction specified by azimuth <code>ltheta</code> and colatitude <code>lphi</code> .   | -135       |
| lphi     | See the explanation for <code>ltheta</code> .   | 0          |
| shade    | An exponent used to calculate the shade of the surface facets. See the help file for more information.  | NA         |
| box      | A logical value indicating whether a bounding box for the surface should be drawn.  | TRUE       |
| axes     | A logical value indicating whether axes should be drawn.  | TRUE       |
| ticks    | A numeric value specifying the number of ticks to draw on each axis.  | 5          |
| ticktype | A character value specifying the types of ticks drawn here. Use <code>ticktype = "simple"</code> for arrows pointing in the direction of increase and <code>ticktype = "detailed"</code> to show simple tick marks. | "simple"   |
| ...      | Additional graphical parameters. See <a href="#">"Graphical Parameters" on page 247</a> .   |            |

As an example of three-dimensional data, let's take a look at Yosemite Valley. Specifically, let's look toward Half Dome. To plot this elevation data, I needed to make two transformations. First, I needed to flip the data horizontally. In the data file, values move east to west (or left to right) as `x` indices increase and from north to south (or top to bottom) as `y` indices increase. Unfortunately, `persp` plots `y` coordinates slightly differently. `Persp` plots increasing `y` coordinates from bottom to top. So I selected `y` indices in reverse order. Here is an R expression to do this:

```
> # load the data:
> library(nutshell)
> data(yosemite)
> # check dimensions of data
> dim(yosemite)
[1] 562 253
> # select all 253 columns in reverse order
> yosemite.flipped <- yosemite[,seq(from=253, to=1)]
```

Next, I wanted to select only a square subset of the elevation points. To do this, I selected only the rightmost 253 columns of the `yosemite` matrix using an expression like this:

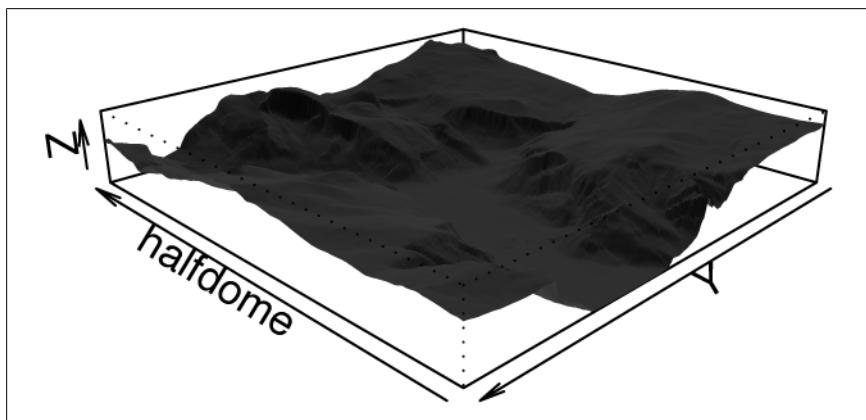
```
> yosemite.rightmost <- yosemite[nrow(yosemite) - ncol(yosemite) + 1, ]
```

Note the “+ 1” in this statement; that’s to make sure that we take exactly 253 columns. (This is to avoid a fencepost error.)

To plot the figure, I rotated the image by  $225^\circ$  (through `theta=225`) and changed the viewing angle to  $20^\circ$  (`phi=20`). I adjusted the light source to be from a  $45^\circ$  angle (`ltheta=45`) and set the shading factor to 0.75 (`shade=.75`) to exaggerate topological features. Putting it all together, here is the code I used to plot Yosemite Valley looking toward Half Dome:

```
> # create halfdome subset in one expression:  
> halfdome <- yosemite[(nrow(yosemite) - ncol(yosemite) + 1):562,  
+   seq(from=253,to=1)]  
> persp(halfdome,col=grey(.25), border=NA, expand=.15,  
+   theta=225, phi=20, ltheta=45, lphi=20, shade=.75)
```

The resulting image is shown in [Figure 13-15](#).



*Figure 13-15. Perspective view of Yosemite Valley*

Another useful function for plotting three-dimensional data is `image`. This function plots a matrix of data points as a grid of boxes, color coding the boxes based on the intensity at each location:

```
image(x, y, z, zlim, xlim, ylim, col = heat.colors(12),  
      add = FALSE, xaxs = "i", yaxs = "i", xlab, ylab,  
      breaks, oldstyle = FALSE, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `image`.

| Argument                                 | Description  | Default |
|--|--|---------|
| <code>x, y</code>                        | (Alternatively, you may pass <code>x</code> an argument that is a list containing elements named <code>x</code> , <code>y</code> , and <code>z</code> .) |         |
| <code>z</code>                           | A matrix of values to plot.  |         |
| <code>xlim</code> ,<br><code>ylim</code> | Two-element numeric vectors that specify the range of values in <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> that should be plotted.                                |         |

| Argument      | Description   | Default  |
|---------------|---|--|
| zlim          | The range of values for z for which colors should be plotted.   |  |
| col           | A vector of colors to plot. Typically generated by functions like <code>rainbow</code> , <code>heat.colors</code> , <code>topo.colors</code> , or <code>terrain.colors</code> .                               | <code>heat.colors(12)</code>                     |
| add           | A logical value that specifies whether the plot should be added to the existing plot.   | FALSE  |
| xaxs,<br>yaxs | Style for the x- and y-axes; see “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” <a href="#">on page 253</a> .   | <code>xlab="i"</code> ,<br><code>ylab="i"</code> |
| xlab, ylab    | Labels for the x and y values.  |  |
| breaks        | An integer value specifying the number of break points for colors. (There must be at least one more color than break point.)  |  |
| oldstyle      | If <code>oldstyle=TRUE</code> , then the midpoints of the color intervals are equally spaced between the limits. If <code>oldstyle=FALSE</code> , then the range is split into color intervals of equal size. | FALSE  |
| ...           | Additional arguments to <code>par</code> .  |  |

To plot the Yosemite Valley data using `image`, I needed to make several tweaks. First, I needed to specify an aspect ratio that matched the dimensions of the data by setting `asp=253/562` (note that this is a standard graphics parameter passed to `par`). Then I specified a range of points on the y dimension to make sure that data was plotted from top to bottom (`y=c(1,0)`). Finally, I specified a set of 32 grayscale colors for this plot (`col=sapply((0:32)/32, gray)`). Here is an expression that generates an image plot from the Yosemite Valley data:

```
> image(yosemite, asp=253/562, ylim=c(1,0), col=sapply((0:32)/32, gray))
```

The results are shown in [Figure 13-16](#).

A closely related tool for looking at multidimensional data, particularly in biology, is the heat map. A heat map plots a single variable on two axes, each representing a different factor. The `heatmap` function plots a grid, where each box is encoded with a different color depending on the size of the dependent variable. It may also plot a tree structure (called a *dendrogram*) to the side of each plot showing the hierarchy of values. As you might have guessed, the function for plotting heat maps in R is `heatmap`:

```
heatmap(x, Rowv=NULL, Colv=if(symm)"Rowv" else NULL,
        distfun = dist, hclustfun = hclust,
        reorderfun = function(d,w) reorder(d,w),
        add.expr, symm = FALSE, revC = identical(Colv, "Rowv"),
        scale=c("row", "column", "none"), na.rm = TRUE,
        margins = c(5, 5), ColSideColors, RowSideColors,
        cexRow = 0.2 + 1/log10(nr), cexCol = 0.2 + 1/log10(nc),
        labRow = NULL, labCol = NULL, main = NULL,
        xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
        keep.dendro = FALSE, verbose = getOption("verbose"), ...)
```

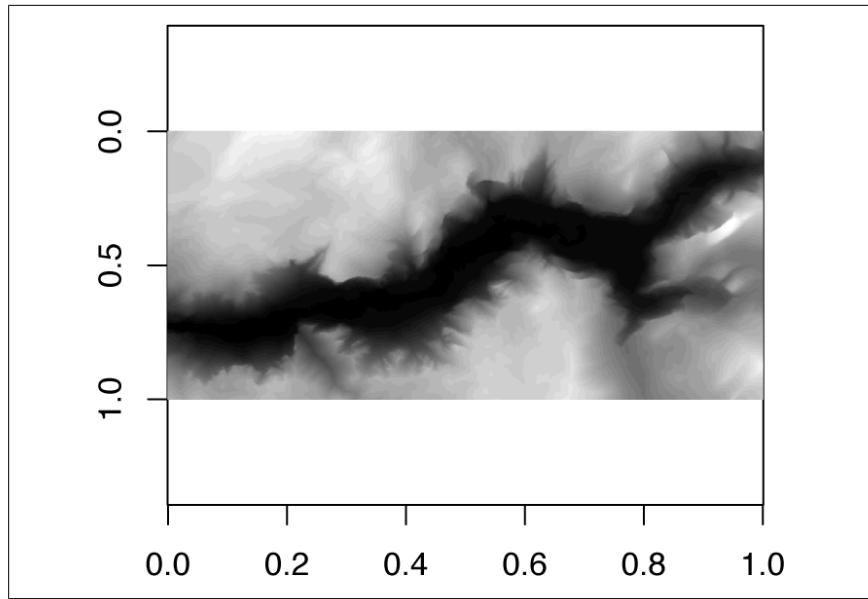


Figure 13-16. Image example: Yosemite Valley

Another useful function for plotting three-dimensional data is `contour`. The `contour` function plots contour lines, connecting equal values in the data:

```
contour(x = seq(0, 1, length.out = nrow(z)),
        y = seq(0, 1, length.out = ncol(z)),
        z,
        nlevels = 10, levels = pretty(zlim, nlevels),
        labels = NULL,
        xlim = range(x, finite = TRUE),
        ylim = range(y, finite = TRUE),
        zlim = range(z, finite = TRUE),
        labcex = 0.6, drawlabels = TRUE, method = "flat",
        vfont, axes = TRUE, frame.plot = axes,
        col = par("fg"), lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
        add = FALSE, ...)
```

Here is a table showing the arguments to `contour`.

| Argument | Description  | Default  |
|----------|--|--|
| x, y     | Numeric vectors specifying the location of grid lines at which values in the matrix z are measured. (Alternatively, you may specify a single matrix for x and omit y and z.) | x=seq(0, 1, length.out=nrow(z))<br>length.out=nrow(z)<br>y=seq(0, 1, length.out=ncol(z))<br>length.out=ncol(z) |
| z        | A numeric vector containing values to be plotted.  |  |
| nlevels  | Number of contour levels. (Used only if <code>levels</code> is not specified.)   | 10   |
| levels   | A numeric vector of levels at which to draw lines.   | pretty(zlim, nlevels)  |
| labels   | A vector of labels for the contour lines.  | NULL   |

| Argument         | Description  | Default  |
|------------------|--|--|
| xlim, ylim, zlim | Numeric vectors of two elements specifying the range of x, y, and z values to include in the plot.   | xlim = range(x, finite = TRUE) ylim = range(y, finite = TRUE) zlim = range(z, finite = TRUE) |
| labcex           | Text scaling factor for contour labels.  | 0.6  |
| drawlabels       | A logical value specifying whether to draw contour labels.   | TRUE   |
| method           | Character value specifying where to draw contour labels. Options include method="simple", method="edge", and method="flattest".  | "flattest"   |
| vfont            | A character vector with two elements specifying the font to use for contour labels. vfont[1] specifies a Hershey font family; vfont[2] specifies a typeface within the family. |  |
| axes             | A logical value indicating whether to print axes.  | TRUE   |
| frame.plot       | A logical value indicating whether to draw a box around the plot.  | axes   |
| col              | A color for the contour lines.   | par("fg")  |
| lty              | A type of lines to draw.   | par("lty")   |
| lwd              | A width for the lines.   | par("lwd")   |
| add              | A logical value specifying whether to add the contour lines to an existing plot (add=TRUE) or to create a new plot (add=FALSE).  | FALSE  |
| ...              | Additional arguments passed to <code>plot.window</code> , <code>title</code> , <code>Axis</code> , and <code>box</code> .  |  |

The following expression generates a contour plot using the Yosemite Valley data:

```
> contour(yosemite, asp=253/562, ylim=c(1, 0))
```

As with `image`, we needed to flip the y-axis and to specify an aspect ratio. The results are shown in [Figure 13-17](#).

Contours are commonly added to existing image plots.

## Plotting Distributions

When performing data analysis, it's often very important to understand the shape of a data distribution. Looking at a distribution can tell you whether there are outliers in the data, or whether a certain modeling technique will work on your data, or simply how many observations are within a certain range of values.

The best-known technique for visualizing a distribution is the histogram. In R, you can plot a histogram with the `hist` function. As an example, let's look at the number of plate appearances (PAs) for batters during the 2008 MLB season. Plate appearances count the number of times a player had the opportunity to bat; plate appearances include all times a player had a hit, made an out, reached on error, walked, was hit by pitch, hit a sacrifice fly, or hit a sacrifice bunt.

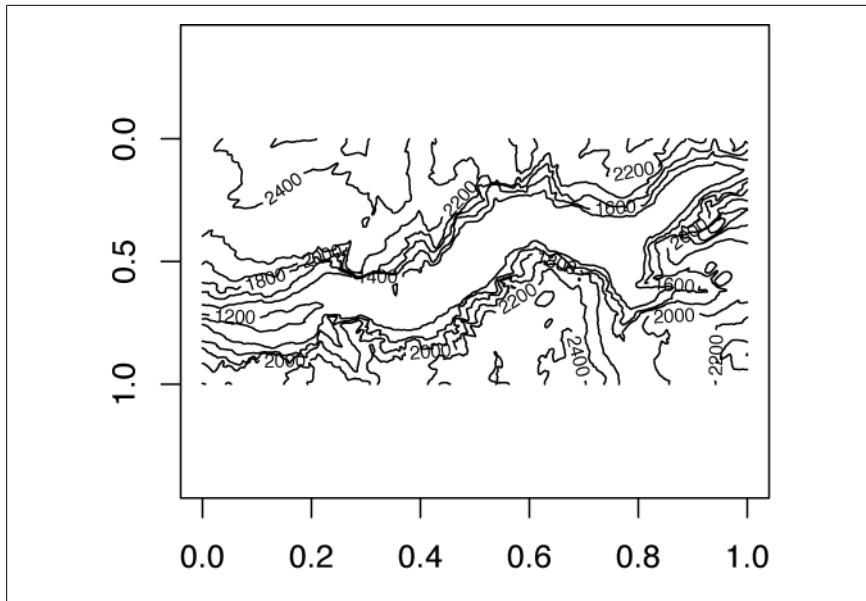


Figure 13-17. Contour example: Yosemite Valley

You can load this data set from the `nutshell` package:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(batting.2008)
```

Let's calculate the plate appearances for each player and then plot a histogram. The resulting histogram is shown in Figure 13-18:

```
> # PA (plate appearances) =
> # AB (at bats) + BB (base on balls) + HBP (hit by pitch) +
> # SF (sacrifice flies) + SH (sacrifice bunts)
> batting.2008 <- transform(batting.2008,
+   PA=AB+BB+HBP+SF+SH)
> hist(batting.2008$PA)
```

The histogram shows that there were a large number of players with fewer than 50 plate appearances. If you were to perform further analysis on this data (for example, looking at the average on-base percentage [OBP]), you might want to exclude these players from your analysis. As we will show in “[Proportion Test Design](#)” on page 398, you will need much larger sample sizes than 50 plate appearances to draw conclusions with the data.

Let's try generating a second histogram, this time excluding players with fewer than 25 at bats. We'll also increase the number of bars, using the `breaks` argument to specify that we want 50 bins:

```
> hist(batting.2008[batting.2008$PA>25, "PA"], breaks=50, cex.main=.8)
```

The second histogram is shown in Figure 13-19.

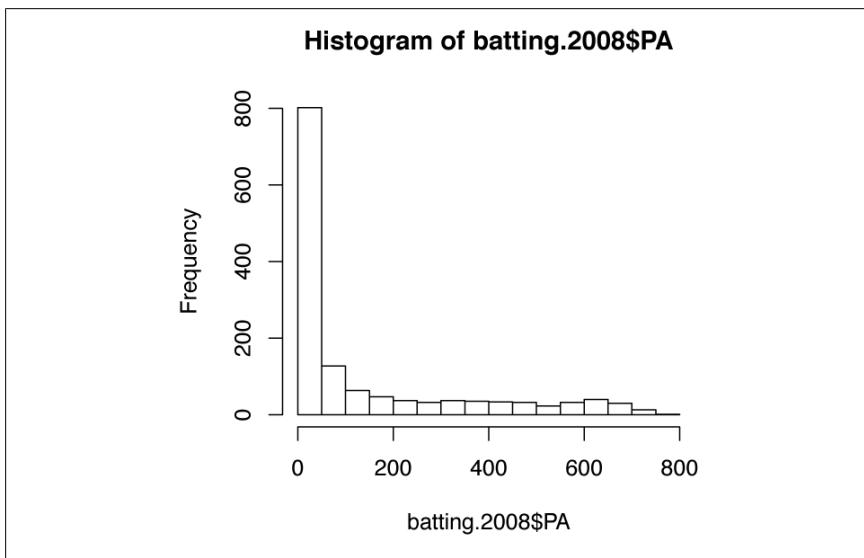


Figure 13-18. Histogram showing the distribution of plate appearances in 2008

A closely related type of chart is the density plot. Many statisticians recommend using density plots instead of histograms because they are more robust and easier to read. To plot a density plot from the plate appearance data (for batters with more than 25 plate appearances), we use two functions.

First, we use `density` to calculate the kernel density estimates. Next, we use `plot` to plot the estimates. We could plot the diagram with an expression like this:

```
> plot(density(batting.2008[batting.2008$PA>25, "PA"]))
```

A common addition to a kernel density plot is a rug. A rug is essentially a strip plot shown along the axis, with each point represented by a short line segment. You can add a rug to the kernel density plot with an expression like:

```
> rug(batting.2008[batting.2008$PA>25, "PA"])
```

The final version of the density plot is shown in [Figure 13-20](#).

Another way to view a distribution is the quantile-quantile (Q-Q) plot. Quantile-quantile plots compare the distribution of the sample data to the distribution of a theoretical distribution (often a normal distribution). As the name implies, they plot the quantiles from the sample data set against the quantiles from a theoretical distribution. If the sample data is distributed the same way as the theoretical distribution, all points will be plotted on a  $45^\circ$  line from the lower-left corner to the upper-right corner. Quantile-quantile plots provide a very efficient way to tell how a distribution deviates from an expected distribution.

You can generate these plots in R with the `qqnorm` function. Without arguments, this function will plot the distribution of points in each quantile, assuming a theoretical normal distribution. The plot is shown in [Figure 13-21](#):

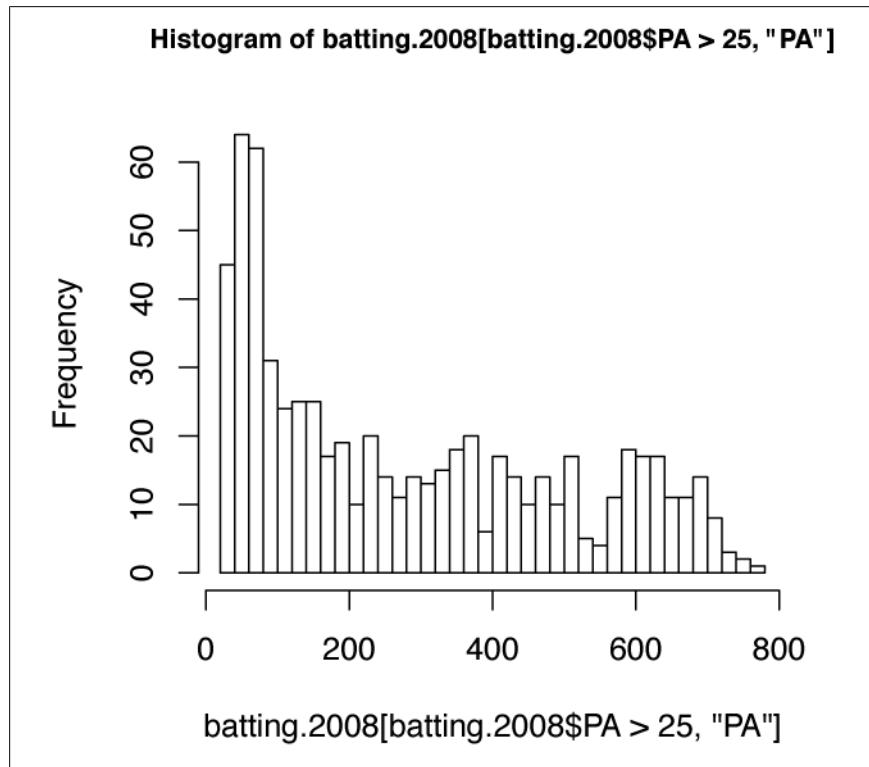


Figure 13-19. Histogram showing the number of plate appearances for players with over 25 plate appearances in 2008

```
> qqnorm(batting.2008$AB)
```

If you would like to compare two actual distributions, or compare the data distribution to a different theoretical distribution, then try the function `qqplot`.

## Box Plots

Another very useful way to visualize a distribution is a box plot. A box plot is a compact way to show the distribution of a variable. The box shows the *interquartile range*. The interquartile range contains values between the 25th and 75th percentile; the line inside the box shows the median. The two “whiskers” on either side of the box show the *adjacent values*. A box plot is shown in [Figure 13-22](#).

The adjacent values are intended to show extreme values, but they don’t always extend to the absolute maximum or minimum value. When there are values far outside the range we would expect for normally distributed data, those outlying values are plotted separately. Specifically, here is how the adjacent values are calculated: the upper adjacent value is the value of the largest observation that is less than or equal to the upper quartile plus 1.5 times the length of the interquartile

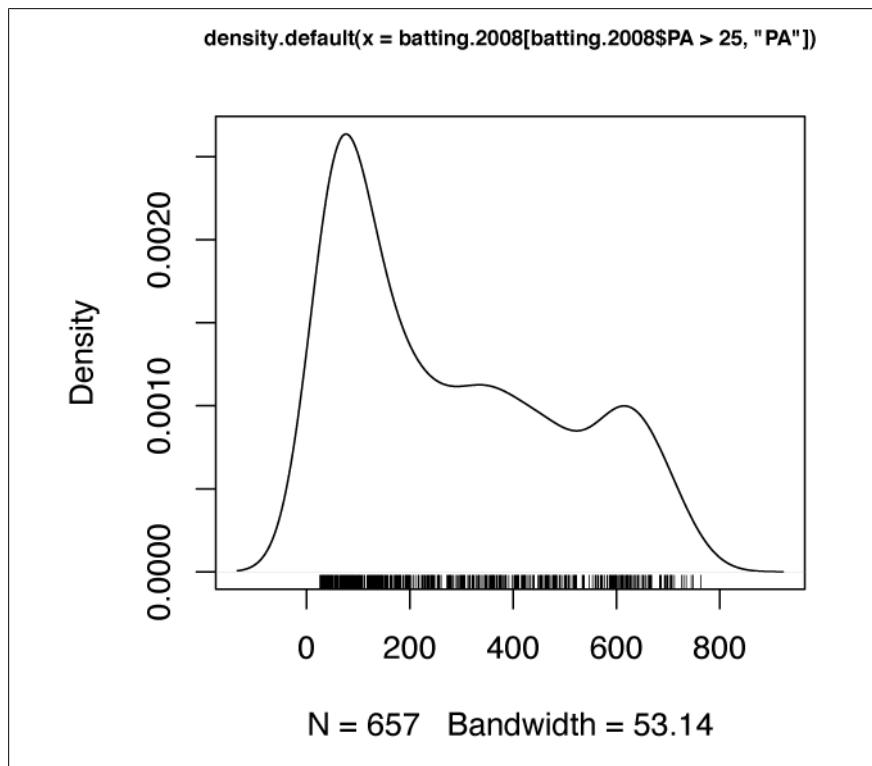


Figure 13-20. Density plot of plate appearances with rug

range; the lower adjacent value is the value of the smallest observation that is greater than or equal to the lower quartile less 1.5 times the length of the interquartile range. Values outside the range of the whiskers are called *outside values* and are plotted individually.

To plot a box plot, use the `boxplot` function. Here is the default method of `boxplot` for vectors:

```
boxplot(x, ..., range = 1.5, width = NULL, varwidth = FALSE,
        notch = FALSE, outline = TRUE, names = TRUE,
        border = par("fg"), col = NULL, log = "",
        pars = list(boxwex = 0.8, staplewex = 0.5, outwex = 0.5),
        horizontal = FALSE, add = FALSE, at = NULL)
```

And here is the form of `boxplot` when a formula is specified:

```
boxplot(formula, data = NULL, ..., subset, na.action = NULL)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `boxplot`.

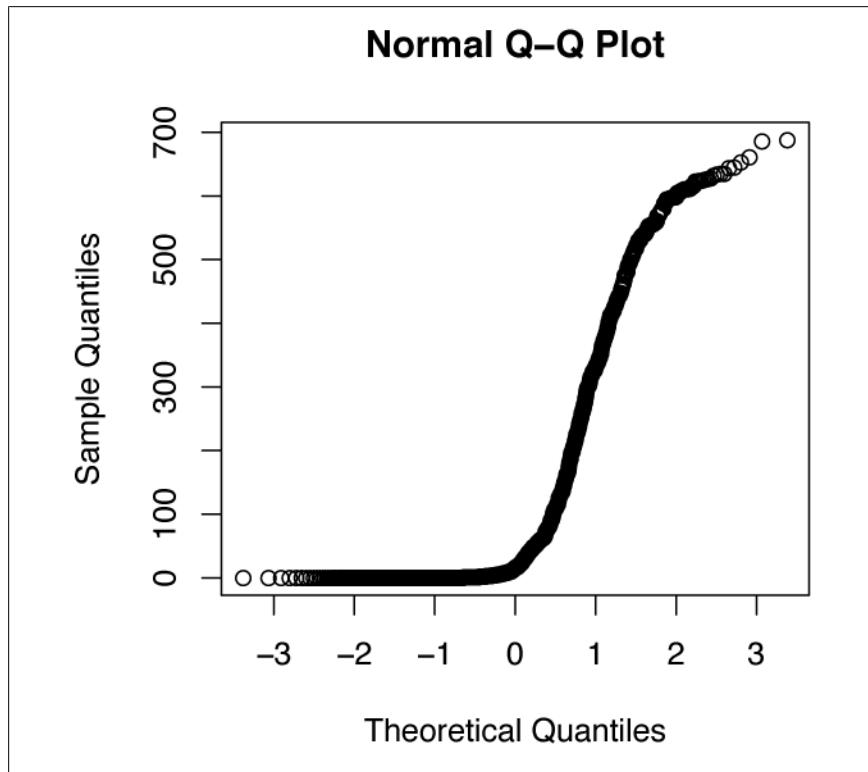


Figure 13-21. Quantile-quantile plot

| Argument | Description   | Default |
|----------|---|---------|
| formula  | A formula of the form <code>y ~ grp</code> , where <code>y</code> is a variable to be plotted and <code>grp</code> is a variable describing a set of different plotting groups.   |         |
| data     | A data frame (or list) in which the variables used in <code>formula</code> are defined.   |         |
| subset   | A vector specifying a subset of observations to use in plotting.  |         |
| x        | A vector specifying values to plot.   |         |
| ...      | Additional vectors to plot (or graphical parameters to pass to <code>bxp</code> ). Each additional vector is plotted as an additional box.  |         |
| range    | A numeric value that determines the maximum amount that the whiskers extend from the boxes.   | 1.5     |
| width    | A numeric vector specifying the widths of the boxes being plotted.  | NULL    |
| varwidth | If <code>varwidth=TRUE</code> , then each box is drawn with a width proportional to the square root of the number of observations represented by the box. If <code>varwidth=FALSE</code> , boxes are plotted with the same width. | FALSE   |

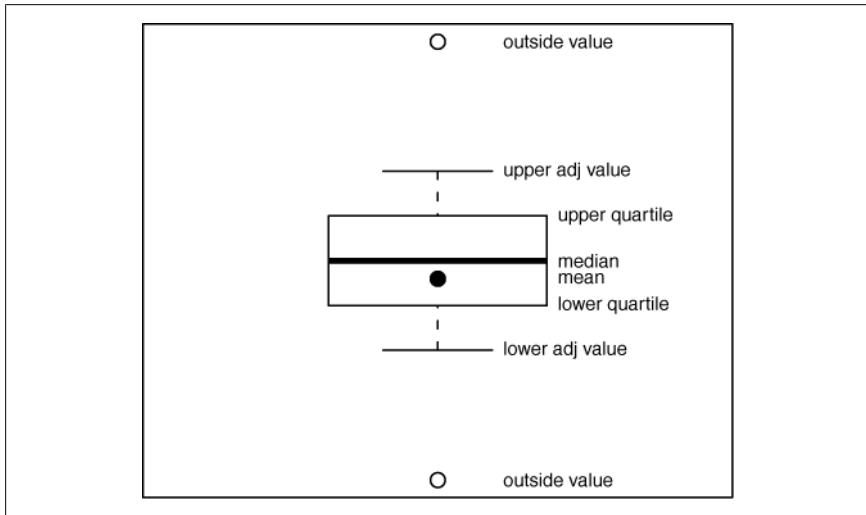


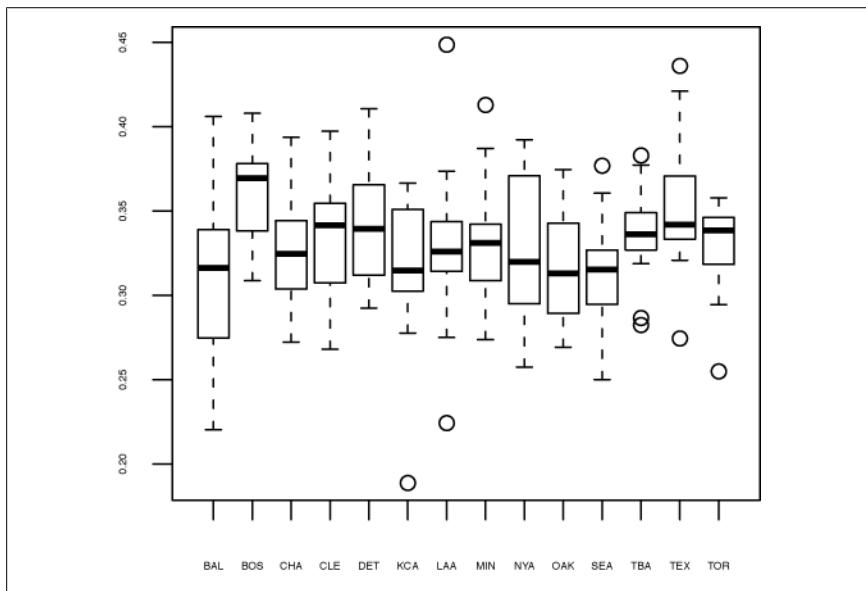
Figure 13-22. Box plot components

| Argument   | Description  | Default  |
|------------|--|--|
| notch      | If <code>notch=TRUE</code> , then a “notch” is drawn in the boxes. Notches are drawn at $\pm 1.58 \text{ IQR}/\sqrt{n}$ ; see the help file for <code>boxplot.stats</code> for an explanation of what they mean.                                   | FALSE  |
| outline    | A logical value specifying whether outliers should be drawn.   | TRUE   |
| names      | A character vector specifying the group names used to label each box plot.   |  |
| plot       | If <code>plot=TRUE</code> , then the boxplots are plotted. If <code>plot=FALSE</code> , then <code>boxplot</code> returns a list of statistics that could be used to draw a box plot; see the help file for <code>boxplot</code> for more details. | TRUE   |
| border     | A character vector specifying the color to use for the outline of each box plot.   | <code>par("fg")</code>   |
| col        | A character vector specifying the color to use for the background of each box plot.  | NULL   |
| log        | A character value indicating whether the $x$ -axis ( <code>log="x"</code> ), $y$ -axis ( <code>log="y"</code> ), both axes ( <code>log="xy"</code> ), or neither axis ( <code>log=""</code> ) should be plotted with a logarithmic scale.          | ""   |
| pars       | A list of additional graphical parameters passed to <code>bxp</code> .   | <code>list(boxwex = 0.8, staplewex = 0.5, outwex = 0.5)</code> |
| horizontal | A logical value indicating whether the boxes should be drawn horizontally ( <code>horizontal=TRUE</code> ) or vertically ( <code>horizontal=FALSE</code> ).  | FALSE  |
| add        | A logical value specifying whether the box plot should be added to an existing chart ( <code>add=TRUE</code> ) or if a new chart should be drawn ( <code>add=FALSE</code> ).   | FALSE  |
| at         | A numeric vector specifying the locations at which each box plot should be drawn.  | <code>1:n</code> , where $n$ is the number of boxes            |

As an example, let's look at the team batting data from 2008. We'll restrict the data to include only American League teams (it's too hard to read a plot with 30 boxes, so this cuts it to 16) and include only players with over 100 plate appearances (to cut out marginal players with a small number of plate appearances). Finally, let's adjust the text size on the axis so that all the labels fit. Here is the expression:

```
> batting.2008 <- transform(batting.2008,
+   OBP=(H+BB+HBP)/(AB+BB+HBP+SF))
> boxplot(OBP~teamID,
+   data=batting.2008[batting.2008$PA>100 & batting.2008$lgID=="AL",],
+   cex.axis=.7)
```

The results are shown in [Figure 13-23](#).



*Figure 13-23. Box plot showing on-base percentage for players in the AL in 2008*

## Graphics Devices

Graphics in R are plotted on a *graphics device*. You can manually specify a graphics device or let R use the default device. In an interactive R environment, the default is to use the device that plots graphics on the screen. On Microsoft Windows, the `windows` device is used. On most Unix systems, the `X11` device is used. On Mac OS X, the `quartz` device is used. You can generate graphics in common formats using the `bmp`, `jpeg`, `png`, and `tiff` devices. Other devices include `postscript`, `pdf`, `pictex` (to generate LaTeX/PicTeX), `xfig`, and `bitmap`.

Most devices allow you to specify the width, height, and point size of the output (with the `width`, `height`, and `pointsize` arguments, of course). For devices that

generate files, you can usually use the argument name `file`.<sup>4</sup> When you are done writing a graphic to a file, call the `dev.off` function to close and save the file.

In writing this book, I used the `png` function to generate the graphics printed in this book. For example, I used the following code to produce the first plot in “[Scatter Plots](#)” on page 214:

```
> png("scatter.1.pdf", width=4.3, height=4.3, units="in", res=72)
> attach(toxins.and.cancer)
> plot(total_toxic_chemicals/Surface_Area, deaths_total/Population)
> dev.off()
```

## Customizing Charts

There are many ways to change how R plots charts. The most intuitive is through arguments to a charting function. Another way to customize charts is by setting session parameters. An additional way to change a chart is through a function that modifies a chart (for example, adding titles, trend lines, or more points). Finally, it is possible to write your own charting functions from scratch.

This section describes common arguments and parameters for controlling how charts are plotted.

### Common Arguments to Chart Functions

Conveniently, most charting functions in R share some arguments. Here is a table of common arguments for charting functions.

| Argument                | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>add</code>        | Should this plot be added to the existing plots on the device, or should the device be cleaned first? |
| <code>axes</code>       | Controls whether axes will be plotted on the chart.   |
| <code>log</code>        | Controls whether points are plotted on a logarithmic scale.   |
| <code>type</code>       | Controls the type of graph being plotted.   |
| <code>xlab, ylab</code> | Labels for x- and y-axes.   |
| <code>main</code>       | Main title for the plot.  |
| <code>sub</code>        | Subtitle for the plot.  |

## Graphical Parameters

This section describes the graphical parameters available in the `graphics` package. In most cases, you can specify these parameters as arguments to `graphics` functions. However, you can also use the `par` function to set `graphics` parameters. The `par`

4. For `postscript`, `pdf`, `pictex`, `xfig`, and `bitmap`, the name of the argument is `file`. For  `bmp`, `jpeg`, `png`, and `tiff`, the name of the argument is `filename`. However, you can safely use the argument name `file` because of the way R’s argument matching rules work. In general, this isn’t a good practice, but it’s easier than trying to remember the difference between the different devices.

function sets the graphics functions for a specific graphics device. These new settings will be the defaults for any new plot until you close the device.

The `par` function can be useful if you want to set parameters once and then plot multiple charts. It can also be useful if you want to use the same set of parameters many times. You could write a function to set the right parameters and then call it each time you want to plot some charts:

```
> my_graphics_params <- function () {  
+   par(some graphics parameters)  
+ }
```

You can check or set the values of these parameters for the active device through the `par` function. If there is no active device, then `par` will open the default device.

To check the value of a parameter with `par`, use a character string to specify the value name. To set a parameter's value, use the parameter name as an argument name. To get a vector showing all graphical parameters, simply call `par` with no arguments. Almost all parameters can be read or written. (The only exceptions are `cin`, `cra`, `csi`, `cxy`, and `din`, which can only be read.)

For example, the parameter `bg` specifies the background color for plots. By default, this parameter is set to “transparent”:

```
> par("bg")  
[1] "transparent"
```

You could use the `par` function to change the `bg` parameter to “white”:

```
> par(bg="white")  
> par("bg")  
[1] "white"
```

[“Graphical parameters by name” on page 253](#) gives details about each graphical parameter by name. However, check the help file for each function to make sure that the parameter means what you think it means. Sometimes, plotting functions have arguments with the same name as graphics parameters to `par` that do different things. For example, the function `points` has an argument named `bg` that means “the background color used in points drawn with this function.”

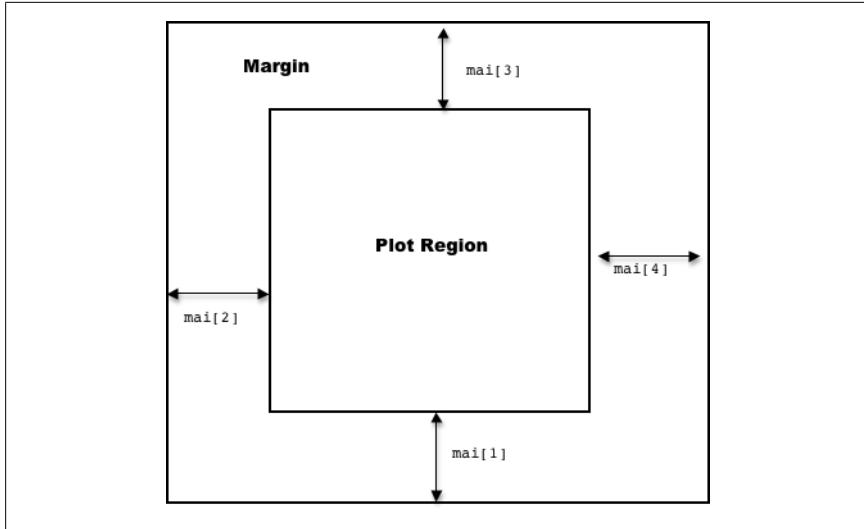
## Annotation

Titles and axis labels are called *chart annotation*. You can control chart annotation with the `ann` parameter. (If you set `ann=FALSE`, then titles and axis labels are not printed.)

## Margins

R allows you to control the size of the margin around a plot. [Figure 13-24](#) shows how this works. The whole graphics device is called the *device region*. The area where data is plotted is called the *plot region*.

Use the `mai` argument to specify the margin size in inches and use `mar` to specify the margin in lines of text. If you are using `mar`, you can use `mex` to control how big a line of text is in the margin (compared with the rest of the plot). To control the margins



*Figure 13-24. Margins around graphics area*

around titles and labels, use the `mgp` parameter. To check the overall dimensions of a device (in inches), you can use the read-only parameter `din`.

By default, R maximizes the use of available space out to the margins (`pty="m"`), but you can easily ask R to use a square region by setting `pty="s"`.

## Multiple plots

In R, you can plot multiple charts within the same chart area. You can do this with the standard graphics functions by setting the `mfcol` parameter for a device. For example, to plot six figures within the plot area in three rows of two columns, you would set `mfcol` as follows:

```
> par(mfcol=c(3, 2))
```

Each time a new figure is plotted, it will be plotted in a different row or column within the device, starting with the top-left corner. Plots are then added one at a time, first filling each column from top to bottom, and moving to the next column to the right when each column is filled. For example, let's plot six different figures:

```
> png("~/Documents/book/current/figs/multiplefigs.1.pdf",
+   width=4.3, height=6.5, units="in", res=72)
> par(mfcol=c(3, 2))
> pie(c(5, 4, 3))
> plot(x=c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5), y=c(1.1, 1.9, 3, 3.9, 6))
> barplot(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5))
> barplot(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5), horiz=TRUE)
> pie(c(5, 4, 3, 2, 1))
> plot(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), c(4, 3, 6, 2, 1, 1))
> dev.off()
```

The result of these commands is shown in [Figure 13-25](#).

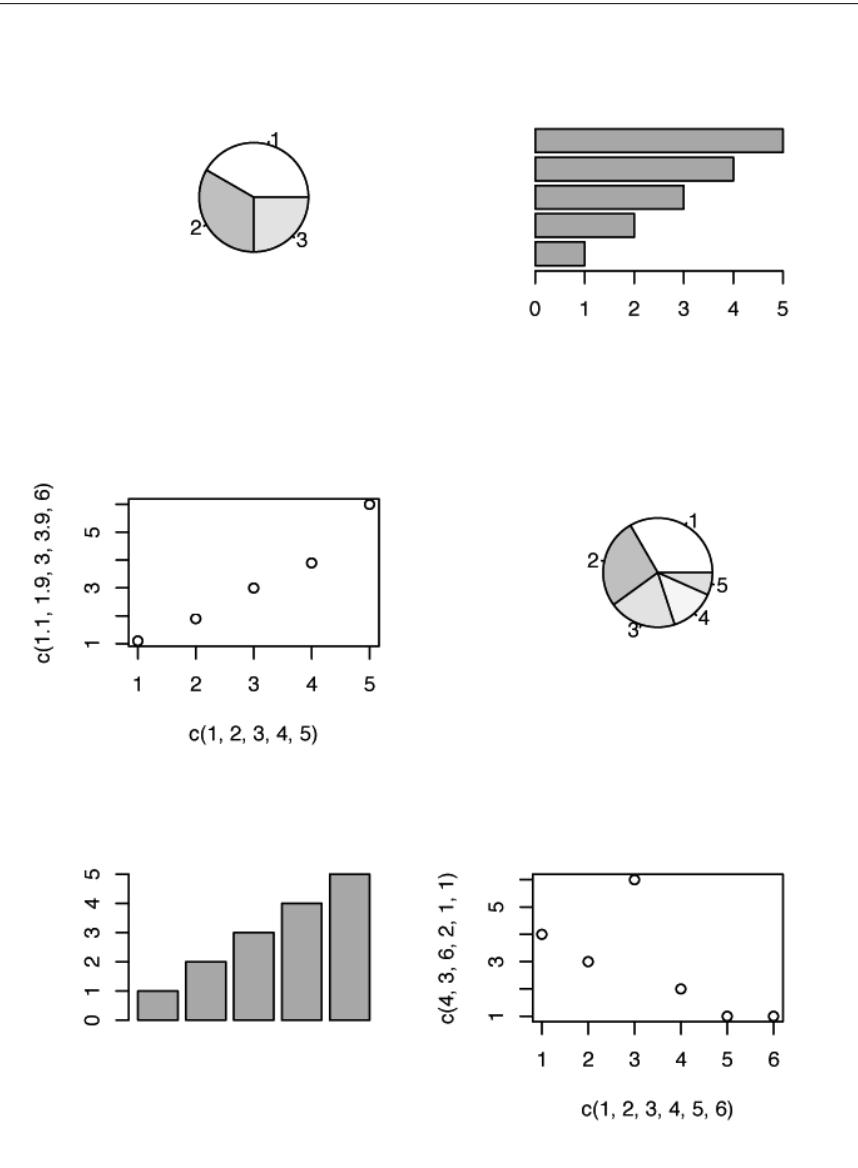


Figure 13-25. Multiple-figure example

If a matrix of subplots is being drawn on a graphics device, you can specify the next plot location using the argument `mfg=c(row, column, nrows, ncolumns)`.

[Figure 13-26](#) shows an example of how margins and plotting areas are defined when using multiple figures. Within the device region are a set of *figure regions* corresponding to each individual figure. Within each figure region, there is a plot region.

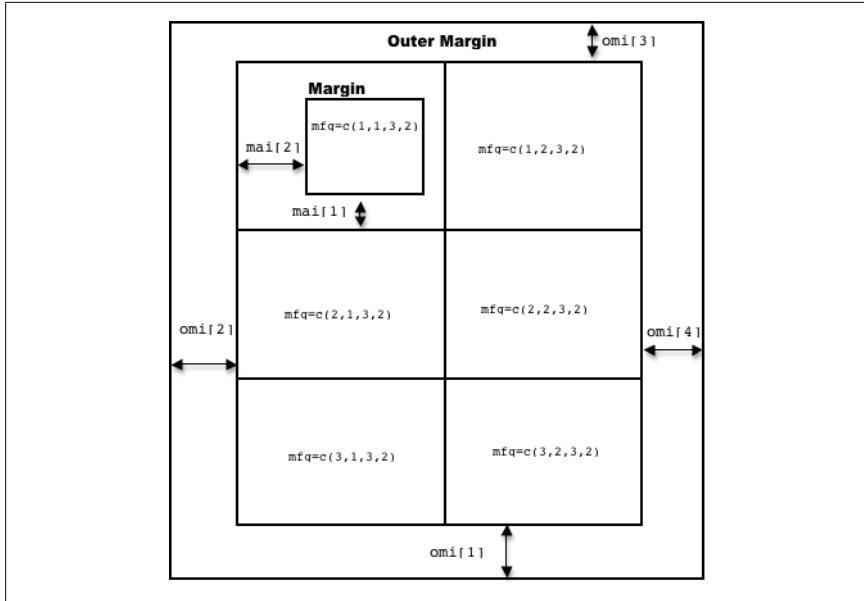


Figure 13-26. Multiple figure layout

There is an outer margin that surrounds the figure area; you may control these with the parameters `omi`, `oma`, and `omd`. Within each figure, as with all plots, there is a second margin area, controlled by `mai`, `mar`, and `mex`. (If you are writing your own graphics functions, you may find it useful to use the `xpd` parameter to control where graphics are clipped.)

To find the size of the current plot area (within the grid), check the parameter `pin`. To get the coordinates of the plot region, check the parameter `plt`. To find the dimensions of the current plot area using normalized device coordinates, use the parameter `fig`.<sup>5</sup>

You may find it easier to use the functions `layout` or `split.screen`. Better still, use the packages `grid` or `lattice`.

## Text properties

Many parameters control the way text is shown within a plot.

**Text size.** The parameter `ps` specifies the default point size of text. A second parameter, `cex`, specifies a default scaling factor for text. You may specify additional scaling factors for different types of text: `cex.axis` for axis annotation, `cex.lab` for `x` and `y` labels, `cex.main` for main titles, and `cex.sub` for subtitles. In many cases, all three parameters are used to find the size of a line of text. Here is an example of how this works. To determine the point size for a chart title, multiply `ps * cex * cex.main`.

5. Normalized device coordinates map the overall chart space onto a  $1 \times 1$  area. (So, `x` coordinates vary between 0 and 1 and `y` coordinates between 0 and 1.)

You may use the read-only parameters `cin`, `cra`, `csi`, and `cxy` to check the size of characters.

**Typeface.** The font is specified through the `family` argument. Somewhat confusingly, the text style is specified through the `font` argument. You can specify the style for the axis with `font.axis`, for labels with `font.lab`, for main titles with `font.main`, and for subtitles with `font.sub`.

**Alignment and spacing.** To control how text is aligned, use the `adj` parameter. To change the spacing between lines of text, use the `lheight` parameter.

**Rotation.** To rotate each character, use the `crt` parameter. To rotate whole strings, use the `srt` parameter.

## Line properties

You can also change the way lines are drawn. To change the line end style, use `lend`. To change the line join style, use `ljoin` and `lmiter`. Line type is specified by `lty` and line width by `lwd`. To change the way boxes are drawn around plots, use the `bty` parameter.

## Colors

You can change the default background color with `bg` and the default foreground color with `fg`. The default plotting color is specified by `col`. Use `col.axis` to change the color of axes, `col.lab` to change the color of labels, `col.main` to change the color of the main title, and `col.sub` to change the color of the subtitle.

You can specify colors in many different ways: as a string, using RGB (red/green/blue) components, or referencing a palette by integer index. To get a list of valid color names, use the `colors` function. To specify a color using RGB components, use a string of the form "#RRGGBB", where *RR*, *GG*, and *BB* are hexadecimal values specifying the amount of red, green, and blue, respectively. To view or change a color palette, use the `palette` function. Other functions are available for specifying colors, including `rgb`, `hsv`, `hcl`, `gray`, and `rainbow`.

## Axes

The argument `lab` controls how axes are annotated. To change the style of axis labels, use `las`. To change the margin for the axis title, labels, and lines, use `mgp`.

You can specify the size of tick marks in lines of text with `tcl`, or as a fraction of the plot area with `tck`. To change the minimum and maximum tick mark locations, use `xaxp` and `yaxp`. To change the way intervals are calculated, use `xaxs` and `yaxs`. To remove the *x*-axis or *y*-axis, use `xaxt="n"` or `yaxt="n"`.

You can also change the orientation of axis labels with the `las` parameter.

## Points

You can change the symbol used for points with the `pch` argument. To get a list of point types, use the `points` function.

## Graphical parameters by name

Here is a table showing all the graphical parameters available in R that can be set with `par`.<sup>6</sup>

| Parameter             | Description  | Mnemonic  | Default                   |
|-----------------------|--|---|---------------------------|
| <code>adj</code>      | Controls how text is justified in <code>text</code> , <code>mtext</code> , and <code>title</code> strings. Set <code>adj=0</code> for left-justified text, <code>adj=1</code> for right-justified text, and <code>adj=0.5</code> for centered text.  |   | 0.5                       |
| <code>ann</code>      | If <code>ann=TRUE</code> , then axis titles and overall titles are included with plots. If <code>ann=FALSE</code> , these annotations are not included. Used by high-level functions that call <code>plot.default</code> .   | ANAnnotation  | TRUE                      |
| <code>ask</code>      | Within an interactive session, if <code>ask=TRUE</code> , then the user is asked for input before a new chart is drawn.  |   | FALSE                     |
| <code>bg</code>       | The background color for the device region.  |   | transparent               |
| <code>bty</code>      | The type of box to draw around a plot. Use <code>bty="o"</code> for a box on all sides; <code>bty="l"</code> for the left and bottom only; <code>bty="t"</code> for top and right only; <code>bty=""]</code> for right side, bottom, and top only; <code>bty="c"</code> for left side, bottom, and top only; <code>bty="u"</code> for left, right, and bottom only; and <code>bty="n"</code> for no box. To draw the box, use the <code>box</code> function. | Box TYpe (values correspond to the shape of the letter) | Box on all sides ("o")    |
| <code>cex</code>      | This parameter controls the size of text and plotted points. <code>cex=1</code> means "normal size"; <code>cex=0.75</code> means "shrink the text and points to 75% of normal size." This parameter is reset when the device size changes.   | Character EXPansion                                     | 1                         |
| <code>cex.axis</code> | Text magnification for axis notations, relative to <code>cex</code> .  |   | 1                         |
| <code>cex.lab</code>  | Text magnification for <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> labels, relative to <code>cex</code> .  |   | 1                         |
| <code>cex.main</code> | Text magnification for main titles, relative to <code>cex</code> .   |   | 1.2                       |
| <code>cex.sub</code>  | Text magnification for subtitles, relative to <code>cex</code> .   |   | 1                         |
| <code>cin</code>      | Character size in inches. (Equivalent to <code>cra</code> , just with different units.)  | Character size in INches                                | <code>c(0.15, 0.2)</code> |
| <code>col</code>      | Default plotting color.  |   | black                     |
| <code>col.axis</code> | Color for axis annotation.   |   | black                     |
| <code>col.lab</code>  | Color for axis labels.   |   | black                     |

6. Incidentally, I generated this table with R code like this:

```
print_pars <- function() {
  for (n in names(par())) {
    p <- par(n);
    if (length(p) == 1) {
      print(paste(n,p,sep=""));
    } else {
      print(paste(n,"=c(",paste(p,collapse=","),sep="","")));
    }
  }
}
```

| Parameter | Description  | Mnemonic   | Default                   |
|-----------|--|--|---------------------------|
| col.main  | Color for main titles.   |  | black                     |
| col.sub   | Color for subtitles.   |  | black                     |
| cra       | Character size in pixels.  | Character size in RAsters  | c(10.8, 14.4)             |
| crt       | A numeric value that specifies (in degrees) how individual characters should be rotated. Use <code>srt</code> for whole strings.   | Character RoTation   | 0                         |
| csi       | Height of default size characters in inches. Same as <code>par("cin")[2]</code> .  |  | 0.2                       |
| cy        | Default character size in user coordinate units.   |  | c(0.02604167, 0.03875969) |
| din       | Device dimensions in inches.   | Dimensions in INches   | c(7, 7)                   |
| err       | Degree of error reporting. Currently does nothing.   |  | 0                         |
| family    | Name of font family used to draw text. Common values include "serif", "sans", "mono", and Hershey fonts. (See help file for Hershey for more information.)   |  |                           |
| fg        | Color for foreground of plots.   |  | black                     |
| fig       | A numeric vector that specifies the coordinates of the figure area.  |  | c(0, 1, 0, 1)             |
| fin       | The figure area dimensions in inches.  |  | c(7, 7)                   |
| font      | An integer that specifies what "font" to use in text (though this really means "style"). Use <code>font=1</code> for normal, <code>font=2</code> for bold, <code>font=3</code> for italic, <code>font=4</code> for bold and italic, and <code>font=5</code> to substitute the Adobe Symbol font. |  | 1                         |
| font.axis | The "font" to be used for axis annotation.   |  | 1                         |
| font.lab  | The "font" to be used for x and y labels.  |  | 1                         |
| font.main | The "font" to be used for the main plot titles.  |  | 2                         |
| font.sub  | The "font" to be used for plot subtitles.  |  | 1                         |
| lab       | A numeric vector with three elements (x, y, len) that specifies the way that axes are annotated. x and y specify the approximate number of tick marks on the x-and y-axes, and len specifies the label length.   | Controls whether to plot a black Labrador retriever in the middle of the plot instead of your data | c(5, 5, 7)                |
| las       | Specifies the style of axis labels. Use <code>las=0</code> for parallel to the axis, <code>las=1</code> for horizontal, <code>las=2</code> for perpendicular, and <code>las=3</code> for vertical. (Also used in <code>mtext</code> .)   |  | 0                         |
| lend      | Specifies the style of line ends. Use <code>lend=0</code> or <code>lend="round"</code> for rounded ends, <code>len=1</code> or <code>lend="butt"</code> for butt line caps and <code>lend=2</code> or <code>lend="square"</code> for square caps.  | Line END   | "round"                   |

| Parameter | Description  | Mnemonic                | Default                   |
|-----------|--|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| lheight   | Specifies the height of a line when spacing multiple lines of text.  | Line HEIGHT multiplier  | 1                         |
| ljoin     | Specifies the style for joining lines. Use ljoin=0 or ljoin="round" for round line joins, ljoin=1 or ljoin="mitre" for mitred line joins and, ljoin=2 or ljoin="bevel" for beveled line joins.   | Line JOIN style         | "round"                   |
| lmitre    | Controls when mitred line joins are converted to beveled joins.  | Line MITRE limit        | 10                        |
| lty       | Line type. You can specify a numeric value (0=blank, 1=solid, 2=dashed, 3=dotted, 4=dotdash, 5=longdash, 6=twodash) or a character value ("blank", "solid", "dashed", "dotted", "dotdash", "longdash", or "twodash").  | Line TType              | solid (1)                 |
| lwd       | A positive number specifying line width.   | Line WiDth              | 1                         |
| mai       | A numeric vector c(bottom, left, top, right) that specifies margin size in inches.   | MARgin size in Inches   | c(1.02, 0.82, 0.82, 0.42) |
| mar       | A numeric vector c(bottom, left, top, right) that specifies margin size, in number of lines.   | MARgin size in lines    | c(5.1, 4.1, 4.1, 2.1)     |
| mex       | Specifies the expansion factor used for line size in mar. (The exact relationship is mai=mar*mex*c\$si.)   | Margin EXPansion factor | 1                         |
| mfcol     | This parameter allows you to split a graphics device into a "matrix" of subplots. This parameter is a numeric vector with two values: c(nrows, ncols). nrows represents a number of rows, and ncols represents a number of columns. When more than one row and column are specified, R will split the device area into the specified number of rows and columns. |                         | c(1, 1)                   |
| mfg       | If a matrix of subplots is being drawn on a graphics device, you can use mfg to specify the next plot to be drawn. Specified as c(row, column, nrows, ncolumns). (When queried, this returns the location of the last figure plotted.)   |                         | c(1, 1, 1, 1)             |
| mfrow     | Identical to mfcol.  |                         | c(1, 1)                   |
| mpg       | A numeric vector with three values that controls the margin line for an axis title. mpg[1] is used for the title; mpg[2:3] is used for the axis.   |                         | c(3, 1, 0)                |
| mkh       | The height of symbols when pch is an integer. (As of R 2.9.0, this parameter has no effect.)   |                         | 0.001                     |
| new       | A logical value that indicates whether the plotting routine should pretend that the graphics device has been freshly initialized (and is thus empty). Used to plot a figure on top of another one.   |                         | FALSE                     |
| oma       | A numeric vector c(bottom, left, top, right) that specifies the outer margin in lines.   | OuterMArgin in lines    | c(0, 0, 0, 0)             |

| Parameter | Description  | Mnemonic                           | Default  |
|-----------|--|------------------------------------|--|
| omd       | A numeric vector <code>c(bottom, left, top, right)</code> that specifies the outer margin as a fraction of the size of the whole device. (For example, a value of 0 means the leftmost or top value, and a value of 0.5 means dead center.)  | Outer Margin in Device coordinates | <code>c(0, 1, 0, 1)</code>                                 |
| omi       | A numeric vector <code>c(bottom, left, top, right)</code> that specifies the outer margin in inches.   | Outer Margin in Inches             | <code>c(0, 0, 0, 0)</code>                                 |
| pch       | Specifies the default point type. Symbols can be specified as numbers (see the help file for the <code>points</code> function to get a complete list of values) or as a character. Some common values are <code>pch=19</code> : solid circle, <code>pch=20</code> : bullet (smaller circle), <code>pch=21</code> : filled circle, <code>pch=22</code> : filled square, <code>pch=23</code> : filled diamond, <code>pch=24</code> : filled triangle point up, <code>pch=25</code> : filled triangle point down.                           | Point Character                    | 1  |
| pin       | The dimensions of the current plot in inches.  | Plot in INches                     | <code>c(5.76, 5.16)</code>                                 |
| plt       | A vector that specifies the coordinates of the plot region as fractions of the figure region.  |                                    | <code>c(0.1171429, 0.9400000, 0.1457143, 0.8828571)</code> |
| ps        | An integer value specifying the point size of text (not symbols).  | Point Size                         | 12   |
| pty       | Specifies the type of plotting region. Use <code>pty="s"</code> for square, <code>pty="m"</code> to maximize the use of space.   | m                                  |  |
| smo       | Specifies how smooth circles and arcs should be. (Currently ignored.)  |                                    | 1  |
| srt       | Specifies the rotation of strings in degrees. (Used only by <code>text</code> .)   |                                    | 0  |
| tck       | The length of tick marks. Specified as a fraction of the width or height of the plotting region (whichever is smallest).   |                                    | NA   |
| tcl       | The length of tick marks as a fraction of the height of a line of text.  |                                    | -0.5   |
| usr       | A vector <code>c(x1, x2, y1, y2)</code> that specifies the extreme values of user coordinates in the plotting region. (Note that these values are scaled exponentially when a logarithmic scale is used.)  |                                    | <code>c(0, 1, 0, 1)</code>                                 |
| xaxp      | Controls how tick marks are shown in the <code>x</code> -axis. Specified as a vector <code>c(x1, x2, n)</code> . When a linear scale is being used, specifies the minimum ( <code>x1</code> ) and maximum ( <code>x2</code> ) tick mark locations and the number of tick marks. When a logarithmic scale is being used, these parameters mean something else: <code>x1</code> is the lowest power of 10, <code>x2</code> is the highest power of 10, and <code>n</code> specifies the number of tick marks plotted for each power of 10. |                                    | <code>c(0, 1, 5)</code>                                    |
| xaxs      | Controls the calculation method used to find axis intervals on the <code>x</code> -axis. The regular method, <code>xaxs="r"</code> , extends the   |                                    | r  |

| Parameter         | Description   | Mnemonic | Default                 |
|-------------------|---|----------|-------------------------|
|                   | data range by 4% on each side and then tries to find pretty labels. The internal method, <code>xaxs = "i"</code> , tries to find labels within the data range. (There are other valid values, but they aren't currently implemented.) |          |                         |
| <code>xaxt</code> | Specifies the x-axis type. Use <code>xaxt = "n"</code> for no axis; any other value to plot an axis.  | s        |                         |
| <code>xlog</code> | A logical value that specifies whether the scale of the x-axis is logarithmic.  |          | FALSE                   |
| <code>xpd</code>  | Controls clipping. Use <code>xpd = FALSE</code> to clip to the plotregion, <code>xpd = TRUE</code> to clip to the figure region, and <code>xpd = NA</code> to clip to the device region.  |          | FALSE                   |
| <code>yaxp</code> | Controls how tick marks are shown in the y-axis. See <code>xaxp</code> for a full explanation.  |          | <code>c(0, 1, 5)</code> |
| <code>yaxs</code> | Controls the calculation method used to find axis intervals on the y-axis. See <code>xaxs</code> for a full explanation.  | r        |                         |
| <code>yaxt</code> | Specifies the y-axis type. Use <code>yaxt = "n"</code> for no axis; any other value to plot an axis.  | s        |                         |
| <code>ylog</code> | A logical value that specifies whether the scale of the y-axis is logarithmic.  |          | FALSE                   |

## Basic Graphics Functions

It is possible to use these functions to either modify an existing chart or to draw a chart yourself from scratch. Many of these functions are called from higher-level graphics functions. These higher-level functions pass extra arguments to these lower-level functions. So even if you do not plan to use these functions directly, you may find it useful to pass arguments to them to customize charts.

Here is a table of low-level graphics functions called by the higher-level graphics functions listed above. (You can often look at arguments for the low-level graphics functions to determine how to customize the look of plots generated with the high-level functions.)

| High-level function   | Low-level functions   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>plot</code>     | <code>title, plot.new, plot.xy, plot.window, points, lines, axis, box, xy.coords</code> |
| <code>matplot</code>  | <code>plot</code>   |
| <code>pairs</code>    | <code>plot, points</code>   |
| <code>barplot</code>  | <code>title, plot.window, title, axis</code>  |
| <code>pie</code>      | <code>plot.window, polygon, lines, text, title</code>                                   |
| <code>dotchart</code> | <code>plot.window, mtext, abline, points, axis, box, title</code>                       |
| <code>coplot</code>   | <code>axis, plot.new, plot.window, points, grid</code>                                  |
| <code>cdplot</code>   | <code>plot, axis, box</code>  |

| High-level function | Low-level functions  |
|---------------------|--|
| mosaicplot          | polygon, text, segments, title   |
| spineplot           | axis, plot, rect, axis   |
| persp               | title, persp (internal)  |
| image               | plot, image (internal)   |
| contour             | plot.window, title, Axis, box, contour (internal)                        |
| heatmap             | image, axis, plot, title   |
| hist                | plot   |
| qqnorm              | plot   |
| qqplot              | plot   |
| boxplot             | bxp  |
| bxp                 | points, polygon, segments, axis, Axis, title, box, plot.new, plot.window |
| points              | plot.xy  |
| lines               | plot.xy  |

## points

You can plot points on a chart using the `points` function:

```
points(x, y = NULL, type = "p", ...)
```

This can be very useful for adding an additional set of points to an existing plot (typically a scatter plot), usually with a different color or plot symbol. Most of the same arguments for the `plot` function apply to `points`. The most useful arguments are `col` (to specify the foreground color for plotted points), `bg` (to specify the background color of plotted points), `pch` (to specify the plotting character), `cex` (to specify the size of plotted points), and `lwd` (to specify the line width for plotted symbols).

You can also add points to an existing matrix plot with `matpoints`:

```
matpoints(x, y, type = "p", lty = 1:5, lwd = 1, pch = NULL,
          col = 1:6, ...)
```

## lines

A similarly useful function is `lines`:

```
lines(x, y = NULL, type = "l", ...)
```

Like `points`, this is often used to add to an existing plot. The `lines` function plots a set of line segments on an existing plot. (The values in `x` and `y` specify the intersections between the line segments.) As with `points`, many arguments for `plot` also apply to `lines`. Some especially useful arguments are `lty` (line type), `lwd` (line width), `col` (line color), `lend` (line end style), `ljoin` (line join style), and `lmitre` (line mitre style).

You can also add lines to an existing plot with `matlines`:

```
matlines (x, y, type = "l", lty = 1:5, lwd = 1, pch = NULL,
          col = 1:6, ..)
```

## curve

To plot a curve on the current graphical device, you can use the `curve` function:

```
curve(expr, from = NULL, to = NULL, n = 101, add = FALSE,
      type = "l", ylab = NULL, log = NULL, xlim = NULL, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to the `curve` function.

| Argument | Description   | Default |
|----------|---|---------|
| expr     | The expression to plot (written as a function of <code>x</code> ) or the name of a function to plot.  |         |
| from     | The lowest <code>x</code> value at which <code>expr</code> is evaluated.  | NULL    |
| to       | The highest <code>x</code> value at which <code>expr</code> is evaluated.   | NULL    |
| n        | A positive integer value specifying the number of values at which to evaluate <code>expr</code> between the <code>x</code> limits (specified by <code>xlim</code> ).  | 101     |
| add      | A logical value indicating whether to add the curve to the current plot.  | FALSE   |
| type     | Specifies the plot type. Use <code>type = "p"</code> for points, <code>type = "l"</code> for lines, <code>type = "o"</code> for overplotted points and lines, <code>type = "b"</code> for points joined by lines, <code>type = "c"</code> for empty points joined by lines, <code>stype = "s"</code> or <code>type = "S"</code> for stair steps, <code>type = "h"</code> for histogram-like vertical lines, or <code>type = "n"</code> to plot nothing. | "l"     |
| ylab     | A character value specifying the label for the <code>y</code> -axis.  | ylab    |
| log      | A logical value specifying whether to plot on a logarithmic scale.  | log     |
| xlim     | A numeric vector with two values specifying the lowest and highest <code>x</code> values to plot.   | NULL    |
| ...      | Additional arguments passed to plot.  |         |

## text

You can use the `text` function to add text to an existing plot. (We used the `text` function to label points on a scatter plot in “[Scatter Plots](#)” on page 214.)

```
text (x, y = NULL, labels = seq_along(x), adj = NULL,
      pos = NULL, offset = 0.5, vfont = NULL,
      cex = 1, col = NULL, font = NULL, ...)
```

Here are the arguments to `text`.

| Argument | Description   | Default      |
|----------|---|--------------|
| x, y     | These arguments specify the coordinates at which the text labels will be drawn.   | y=NULL       |
| labels   | A vector of character values specifying the text values that should be drawn on the chart.  | seq_along(x) |
| adj      | A numeric vector with one or two values (each between 0 and 1). If one value is used, it represents the horizontal adjustment. If two values are used, the first represents the horizontal adjustment, and the second represents the vertical adjustment. | NULL         |

| Argument | Description   | Default |
|----------|---|---------|
| pos      | A numeric value that specifies where the text should be positioned. Use pos=1 for below, pos=2 for left, pos=3 for above, and pos=4 for right. Overrides values specified in adj. | NULL    |
| offset   | A numeric value that specifies the offset of the labels in terms of character widths. (Valid only when pos is specified.)   | 0.5     |
| vfont    | A character vector with two elements specifying the font to use for labels. vfont[1] specifies a Hershey font family; vfont[2] specifies a typeface within the family.            | NULL    |
| cex      | Numeric value specifying the character expansion factor.  | 1       |
| col      | Specifies the color of plotted text.  | NULL    |
| font     | Specifies the font to be used for the plotted text.   | NULL    |
| ...      | Additional graphical parameters.  |         |

For an example of how to use the text function, see “[Scatter Plots](#)” on page 214.

## abline

To plot a single line across the plot area, you can use the abline function:

```
abline(a = NULL, b = NULL, h = NULL, v = NULL, reg = NULL,
       coef = NULL, untf = FALSE, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to abline.

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| a        | The intercept for the line.  | NULL    |
| b        | The slope for the line.  | NULL    |
| h        | A numeric vector of y values for horizontal lines.   | NULL    |
| v        | A numeric vector of x values for vertical lines.   | NULL    |
| reg      | Specifies an object with a coef method.  | NULL    |
| coef     | A numeric vector with two elements specifying the intercept and slope.   | NULL    |
| untf     | A logical value specifying whether to “untransform” the line; if one or both axes are in logarithmic coordinates and untf=true, then the line is shown in original coordinates. Otherwise, the line is plotted in transformed coordinates. | NULL    |
| ...      | Additional graphical parameters. See “ <a href="#">Graphical Parameters</a> ” on page 247 for more details.  |         |

Typically, you would use one call to abline to draw a single line. For example:

```
> # draw a simple plot as a background
> plot(x=c(0, 10), y=c(0, 10))
> # plot a horizontal line at y=4
> abline(h=4)
> # plot a vertical line at x=3
```

```

> abline(v=3)
> # plot a line with a y-intercept of 1 and slope of 1
> abline(a=1, b=1)
> # plot a line with a y-intercept of 10 and slope of -1,
> # but this time, use the coef argument:
> abline(coef=c(10, -1))

```

However, you can also specify multiple arguments, and `abline` will plot all of the specified lines. For example:

```

> # plot a grid of lines between 1 and 10:
> abline(h=1:10, v=1:10)

```

If you just want to plot a grid on a plot, you might want to use the `grid` function instead:

```

grid(nx = NULL, ny = nx, col = "lightgray", lty = "dotted",
      lwd = par("lwd"), equilogs = TRUE)

```

## **polygon**

To draw a polygon, you can use the `polygon` function:

```

polygon(x, y = NULL, density = NULL, angle = 45,
        border = NULL, col = NA, lty = par("lty"), ...)

```

The `x` and `y` arguments specify the vertices of the polygon. For example, the following expression draws a  $2 \times 2$  square on a graph centered at (3, 3):

```
> polygon(x=c(2, 2, 4, 4), y=c(2, 4, 4, 2))
```

For the special case where you just need to draw a rectangle, you can use the `rect` function:

```

rect(xleft, ybottom, xright, ytop, density = NULL, angle = 45,
      col = NA, border = NULL, lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
      ...)

```

## **segments**

To draw a set of line segments connecting pairs of points, you can use the `segments` function:

```

segments(x0, y0, x1, y1,
          col = par("fg"), lty = par("lty"), lwd = par("lwd"),
          ...)

```

This function draws a set of line segments from each pair of vertices specified by  $(x_0[i], y_0[i])$  to  $(x_1[i], y_1[i])$ .

## **legend**

The `legend` function adds a legend to a chart:

```

legend(x, y = NULL, legend, fill = NULL, col = par("col"),
       lty, lwd, pch,
       angle = 45, density = NULL, bty = "o", bg = par("bg"),
       box.lwd = par("lwd"), box.lty = par("lty"), box.col = par("fg"),
       pt.bg = NA, cex = 1, pt.cex = cex, pt.lwd = lwd,

```

```

xjust = 0, yjust = 1, x.intersp = 1, y.intersp = 1,
adj = c(0, 0.5), text.width = NULL, text.col = par("col"),
merge = do.lines && has.pch, trace = FALSE,
plot = TRUE, ncol = 1, horiz = FALSE, title = NULL,
inset = 0, xpd, title.col = text.col)

```

Here is a list of arguments to `legend`. (Many of these also can be passed along as arguments to functions that draw legends.)

| Argument                | Description   | Default                 |
|-------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| <code>x, y</code>       | The coordinates at which the legend will be positioned.   | <code>y=NULL</code>     |
| <code>legend</code>     | A character vector to appear in the legend.   |                         |
| <code>fill</code>       | A character vector specifying a color associated with each legend label. If specified, boxes filled with these colors are shown next to the labels.   | <code>NULL</code>       |
| <code>col</code>        | The color of lines appearing in the legend.   | <code>par("col")</code> |
| <code>lty</code>        | The line type for lines appearing in the legend.  |                         |
| <code>lwd</code>        | The line width for lines appearing in the legend.   |                         |
| <code>pch</code>        | A vector of values specifying point characters appearing in the legend.   |                         |
| <code>angle</code>      | Angle of shading lines.   | 45                      |
| <code>density</code>    | Density of shading lines.   | <code>NULL</code>       |
| <code>bty</code>        | Box type for box drawn around the legend.   | "o"                     |
| <code>bg</code>         | Background color for the legend box.  | <code>par("bg")</code>  |
| <code>box.lwd</code>    | Line width for the legend box.  | <code>par("lwd")</code> |
| <code>box.lty</code>    | Line type for the legend box.   | <code>par("lty")</code> |
| <code>box.col</code>    | Line color for the legend box.  | <code>par("fg")</code>  |
| <code>pt.bg</code>      | Background color for points shown in the legend box (if <code>pch</code> is specified).   | NA                      |
| <code>cex</code>        | Character expansion value for legend relative to <code>par("cex")</code> .  | 1                       |
| <code>pt.cex</code>     | Expansion factor for points in the legend.  | <code>cex</code>        |
| <code>pt.lwd</code>     | Line width for points in the legend.  | <code>lwd</code>        |
| <code>xjust</code>      | Specifies how the legend should be justified relative to the x location. Use <code>xjust=0</code> for left justification, <code>xjust=0.5</code> to center, and <code>xjust=1</code> for right justification. | 0                       |
| <code>yjust</code>      | Specifies how the legend should be justified relative to the y location.  | 1                       |
| <code>x.intersp</code>  | Character "interspacing factor" for horizontal spacing.   | 1                       |
| <code>y.intersp</code>  | Character "interspacing factor" for vertical spacing.   | 1                       |
| <code>adj</code>        | String adjustment for legend text.  | <code>c(0, 0.5)</code>  |
| <code>text.width</code> | Width of legend text in user coordinates.   | <code>NULL</code>       |
| <code>text.col</code>   | Color used for legend text.   | <code>par("col")</code> |

| Argument  | Description   | Default                                  |
|-----------|---|--|
| merge     | If <code>merge=TRUE</code> , merge points and lines but not filled boxes.   | <code>do.lines &amp;&amp; has.pch</code> |
| trace     | Logical value. If <code>trace=TRUE</code> , shows how legend calculates stuff.  | <code>FALSE</code>                       |
| plot      | Logical value. If <code>plot=FALSE</code> , calculations are returned but no legend is drawn.   | <code>TRUE</code>                        |
| ncol      | Specifies the number of columns to draw in the legend.  | <code>1</code>                           |
| horiz     | Specifies whether the legend should be laid out vertically ( <code>horiz=FALSE</code> ) or horizontally ( <code>horiz=TRUE</code> ).  | <code>FALSE</code>                       |
| title     | A character value to be placed at the top of the legend box.  | <code>NULL</code>                        |
| inset     | Inset distance from the margins. Specified as a fraction of the plot region.  | <code>0</code>                           |
| xpd       | Controls clipping while the legend is being drawn. See “ <a href="#">Graphical parameters by name</a> ” on page 253 for more details. |  |
| title.col | Color for <code>title</code> .  | <code>text.col</code>                    |

## title

To annotate a plot, use the `title` function:

```
title(main = NULL, sub = NULL, xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
      line = NA, outer = FALSE, ...)
```

This function adds a main title (`main`), a subtitle (`sub`), an *x*-axis label (`xlab`), and a *y*-axis label (`ylab`). Specify a value of `line` to move the labels outward from the edge of the plot. Specify `outer=TRUE` if you would like to place labels in the outer margin.

## axis

To add axes to a plot, use the `axis` function:

```
axis(side, at = NULL, labels = TRUE, tick = TRUE, line = NA,
     pos = NA, outer = FALSE, font = NA, lty = "solid",
     lwd = 1, lwd.ticks = lwd, col = NULL, col.ticks = NULL,
     hadj = NA, padj = NA, ...)
```

Here is a table of arguments to `axis`. (Many of these arguments can be passed to functions that draw axes.)

| Argument | Description   | Default           |
|----------|---|-------------------|
| side     | An integer value specifying where to draw the axis. Use <code>side=1</code> for below, <code>side=2</code> for left, <code>side=3</code> for above, and <code>side=4</code> for right.              |                   |
| at       | A numeric vector specifying points at which tick marks are drawn. (If not specified, uses the same method as <code>axTicks</code> to compute “pretty” tick mark locations.)                         | <code>NULL</code> |
| labels   | Either a logical value or a vector. If logical, specifies whether numeric annotations are added at tick marks. If a vector is specified, each value specifies the label to place at each tick mark. | <code>TRUE</code> |
| tick     | A logical value specifying if tick values and an axis will be drawn.  | <code>TRUE</code> |

| Argument  | Description  | Default   |
|-----------|--|-----------|
| line      | The number of lines into the margin at which the axis will be drawn. (Can be used to add space between plotted values and the axis.) Use line=NA for no space. | NA        |
| pos       | The coordinate at which the axis will be drawn. (If not NA, overrides line.)   | NA        |
| outer     | A logical value specifying whether the axis should be drawn in the outer margin. Use outer=FALSE to draw the axis in the standard margin.                      | FALSE     |
| font      | Font for axis text.  | NA        |
| lty       | Line type for axis line and tick marks.  | "solid"   |
| lwd       | Line width for axis line.  | 1         |
| twd.ticks | Line width for tick marks.   | lwd.ticks |
| col       | Color for axis line.   | col       |
| col.ticks | Color for tick marks.  | col.ticks |
| hadj      | Adjustment for all labels parallel to the reading direction. See "Graphical Parameters" on page 247 for more information on the parameter adj.                 | NA        |
| padj      | Adjustment for all labels perpendicular to the reading direction. See "Graphical Parameters" on page 247 for more information on the parameter adj.            | NA        |
| ...       | Other graphical parameters. See "Graphical Parameters" on page 247 for more information.   |           |

## box

The `box` function can be used to draw a box around the current figure region. This can be useful when plotting multiple figures within a graphics device:

```
box(which = "plot", lty = "solid", ...)
```

The `which` argument specifies where to draw the box. Values for `which` include "plot," "figure," "inner," and "outer"). You might find the `box` argument useful for showing these different regions.

## mtext

The `mtext` function can be used to add text to a margin of a plot:

```
mtext(text, side = 3, line = 0, outer = FALSE, at = NA,
      adj = NA, padj = NA, cex = NA, col = NA, font = NA, ...)
```

Use the `side` parameter to specify where to plot the text (side = 1 for bottom, side = 2 for left, side = 3 for top, and side = 4 for right). The `line` argument specifies where to write the text, in terms of "margin lines" (starting at 0 for closest to the plot area).

## **trans3d**

To add lines or points to a perspective plot (from `persp`), you might find the function `trans3d` convenient:

```
trans3d(x,y,z, pmat)
```

This function takes vectors of points  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  and translates them into the correct screen position. The argument `pmat` is a *perspective matrix* that is used for translation. The `persp` function will return an appropriate perspective matrix object for use by `trans3d`.





# 14

## Lattice Graphics

The `lattice` package provides a different way to plot graphics in R. Lattice graphics look different from standard R graphics, are created with different functions, and have different options. Lattice functions make it easy to do some things that are hard to do with standard graphics, such as plotting multiple plots on the same page or superimposing plots. Additionally, most lattice functions produce clean, readable output by default. This chapter shows what lattice graphics can do and explains how to use them.

The real strength of the `lattice` package is in splitting a chart into different panels (shown in a grid), or groups (shown with different colors or symbols) using a conditioning or grouping variable. This chapter includes many examples that start with a simple chart and then split it into multiple pieces to answer a question raised by the original plot.

### History

In the early 1990s, Richard Becker and William Cleveland (two researchers at Bell Labs) built a revolutionary new system for displaying data called *Trellis graphics*. (You can find more information about the Trellis software at <http://cm.bell-labs.com/cm/ms/departments/sia/project/trellis/>.) Cleveland devised a number of novel plots for visualizing data based on research into how users visualize information.<sup>1</sup>

The `lattice` package is an implementation of Trellis graphics in R.<sup>2</sup> You may notice that some functions still contain the Trellis name. The `lattice` package includes many types of charts that will be familiar to most readers, such as scatter plots, bar charts, and histograms. But it also includes some plots that you may not have seen before, such as dot plots, strip plots, and quantile-quantile plots. This chapter will

1. See [Cleveland1993] for more information.

2. It's not exactly the same as the S version, but unless you want to use old S/S+ code, the differences probably will not matter to you.

show you how to use different types of charts, familiar and unfamiliar, in the `lattice` package.

## An Overview of the Lattice Package

Lattice graphics consist of one or more rectangular drawing areas called *panels*. The data assigned to each panel is referred to as a *packet*. Lattice functions work by calling one or more *panel functions*, which actually plot the packets within panels. To change the appearance of a plot, you can specify arguments to the plotting function or change the panel function.

## How Lattice Works

Here is what typically happens in a lattice session:

1. The end user calls a high-level lattice plotting function.
2. The `lattice` function examines the calling arguments and default parameters, assembles a lattice object, and returns the object. (Note that the class of the object is actually “trellis.” This means that many of the methods that act on an object, like `print` or `plot`, are named `plot.trellis` or `print.trellis`.)
3. The user calls `print.lattice` or `plot.lattice` with the lattice object as an argument. (This typically happens automatically on the R console.)
4. The function `plot.lattice` sets up the matrix of panels, assigns packets to different panels (specified by the argument `packet.panel`) and then calls the panel function specified in the lattice object to draw the individual panels.

Lattice graphics are extremely modular; they share many high-level functions (like `plot.lattice`) and low-level functions (like `panel.axis`, which draws axes). This means that they share many common arguments. It also means that you can customize the appearance of lattice graphics by creating substitute components.

## A Simple Example

There are many arguments to `lattice` functions, but in this section we’ll focus on a handful of key arguments for specifying what data to plot.

As you may have noticed, functions in the `graphics` package don’t have completely consistent arguments. Many of them share some common parameters (see “[Customizing Charts](#)” on page 247), but many of them have different names for arguments with the same purpose. (For example, data for `barplot` is specified with the `height` argument, while data for `plot` is specified with `x` and `y`.) Arguments within the `lattice` package are much more consistent.

You can always specify the data to plot using a formula and a data frame. Let’s create a simple data set and plot a scatter plot with `xyplot`:

```
> d <- data.frame(x=c(0:9), y=c(1:10), z=c(rep(c("a", "b"), times=5)))
> d
  x  y  z
1 0  1  a
```

```

2 1 2 b
3 2 3 a
4 3 4 b
5 4 5 a
6 5 6 b
7 6 7 a
8 7 8 b
9 8 9 a
10 9 10 b

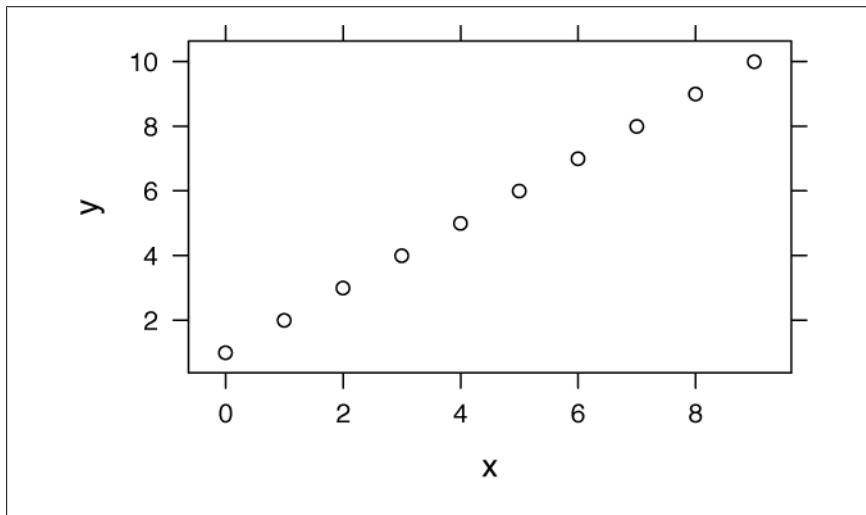
```

To plot this data frame, we'll use the formula  $y \sim x$  and specify the data frame `d`. The first argument given is the formula. (The argument used to be called "formula" and is currently named `x`. The help files for `lattice` warn not to pass this as a named argument, possibly because the name may change again.) To specify the data frame containing the plotting data, we use the argument `data`:

```
> xyplot(y~x, data=d)
```

The resulting plot is shown in [Figure 14-1](#). Formulas in the `lattice` package can also specify a conditioning variable. The conditioning variable is used to assign data points to different panels. For example, we can plot the same data shown above in two panels, split by the conditioning variable `z`. To do this, we will change the formula to  $y \sim x | z$ :

```
> library(lattice)
> xyplot(y~x|z, data=d)
```



*Figure 14-1. Simple scatter plot example*

The scatter plot with the conditioning variable is shown in [Figure 14-2](#). As you can see, the data is now split into two panels. If you would prefer to see the two data series superimposed on the same plot, you can specify a grouping variable. To do this, use the argument `groups` to specify the grouping variable(s):

```
> xyplot(y~x, groups=z, data=d)
```

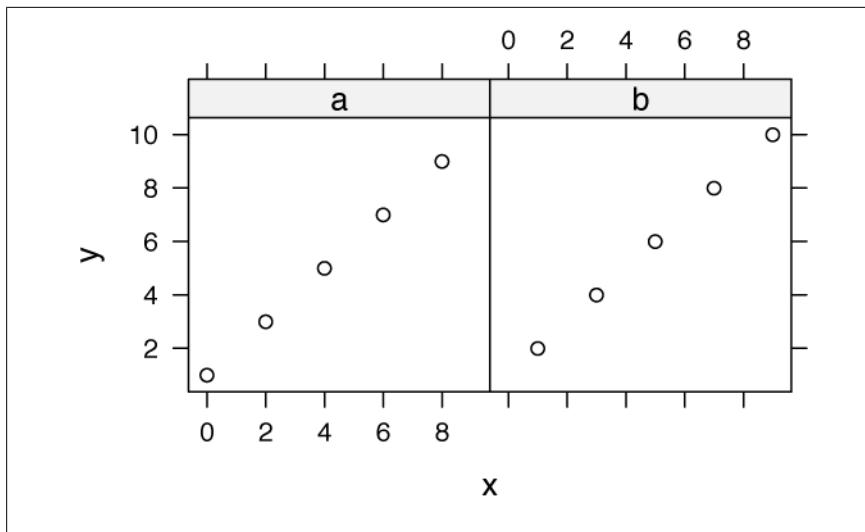


Figure 14-2. Simple scatter plot with conditioning variable

As shown in [Figure 14-3](#), the two data series are represented by different symbols. (If you try this example yourself using the R console, the different groups will be plotted in different colors. To make the charts readable in black and white, I generated the charts using special settings.)

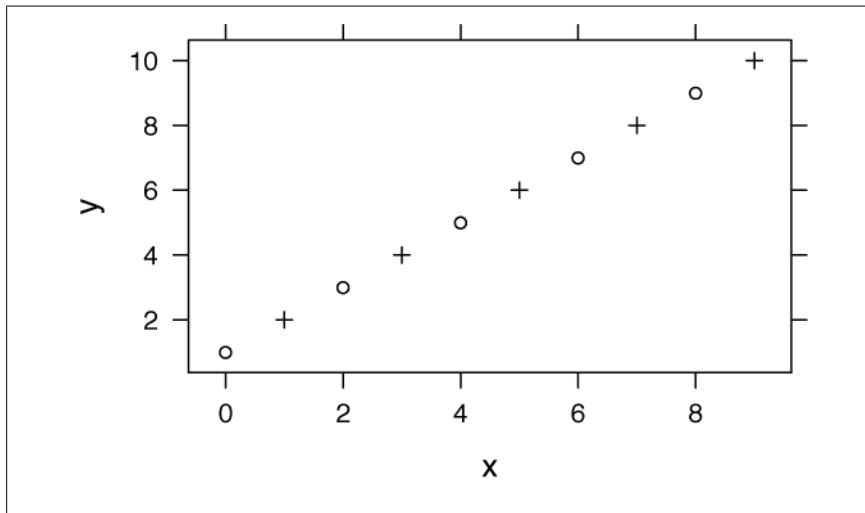


Figure 14-3. Scatter plot with grouping variable

## Using Lattice Functions

The easiest way to use lattice graphics is by calling a high-level plotting function. Most of these functions are the equivalent of a similar function in the `graphics`

package. Here's a table showing how standard graphics functions map to `lattice` functions.

| Graphics package function  | Trellis package function      | Description                                  |
|--|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>barplot</code>   | <code>barchart</code>         | Bar and column charts                        |
| <code>dotchart</code>  | <code>dotplot</code>          | Cleveland dot plots                          |
| <code>hist</code>  | <code>histogram</code>        | Histograms                                   |
| Two functions: <code>density</code> and <code>plot.density</code>                  | <code>densityplot</code>      | Kernel density plots                         |
| <code>stripchart</code>  | <code>stripplot</code>        | Strip charts                                 |
| No function in graphics package; <code>qqnorm</code> in <code>stats</code> package | <code>qqmath</code>           | Quantile-quantile plots                      |
| <code>xplot</code>   | <code>xyplot</code>           | Scatter plots                                |
| No function in graphics package; <code>qqplot</code> in <code>stats</code> package | <code>qq</code>               | Quantile-quantile plots                      |
| <code>pairs</code>   | <code>splom</code>            | Scatter plot matrices                        |
| <code>image</code>   | <code>levelplot</code>        | Image plots                                  |
| <code>contour</code>   | <code>contourplot</code>      | Contour plots                                |
| <code>persp</code>   | <code>cloud, wireframe</code> | Perspective charts of three-dimensional data |

When you call a high-level lattice function, it does not actually plot the data. Instead, each of these functions returns a lattice object. To actually show the graphic, you need to use a `print` or `plot` command. If you simply execute a lattice function on the R command line, R runs `print` automatically, so the graphic is shown. However, if you call a lattice function inside another function or inside a script and you want to show the results, make sure that you actually call `print`.

For some (but not all) lattice functions, it is possible to specify the source data in multiple forms. For example, the function `histogram` can also accept data arguments as factors or numeric vectors. These methods are provided for convenience where appropriate. For example, I frequently plot contingency tables as bar charts, so I often use the `table` method of `barchart`. Here is a table of data types accepted by different lattice functions.

| Trellis function         | Data types                                    |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>barchart</code>    | Array, formula, matrix, numeric vector, table |
| <code>dotplot</code>     | Array, formula, matrix, numeric vector, table |
| <code>histogram</code>   | Factor, formula, numeric vector               |
| <code>densityplot</code> | Formula, numeric vector                       |
| <code>stripplot</code>   | Formula, numeric vector                       |
| <code>qqmath</code>      | Formula, numeric vector                       |
| <code>xyplot</code>      | Formula                                       |
| <code>qq</code>          | Formula                                       |
| <code>splom</code>       | Data frame formula, matrix                    |

| Trellis function | Data types                    |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| levelplot        | Array, formula, matrix, table |
| contourplot      | Array, formula, matrix, table |
| cloud            | Formula, matrix, table        |
| wireframe        | Formula, matrix               |

For more details on arguments to lattice functions, see “[Customizing Lattice Graphics](#)” on page 312.

## Custom Panel Functions

With standard graphics, you could easily superimpose points, lines, text, and other objects on existing charts. It’s possible to do the same thing with lattice graphics, but it’s a little trickier.

In order to add extra graphical elements to a lattice plot, you need to use a custom panel function. As we described above, low-level panel functions actually plot graphics. The high-level functions simply specify how data is divided between panels, and how different elements (legends, strips, axes, etc.) need to be added. To add extra elements to a lattice chart, you need to change the panel function.

As a simple example, let’s add a diagonal line to [Figure 14-2](#). To do this, we’ll create a new custom panel function that calls both `panel.xyplot` and `panel.abline`. The new panel function will pass along its arguments to `panel.xyplot`. We’ll specify a line that crosses the  $y$ -axis at 1 (through the `a=1` argument to `panel.abline`) and has slope 1 (through the `b=1` argument to `panel.abline`). Here’s the code to generate this chart:

```
xyplot(y~x|z, data=d,
       panel=function(...){
         panel.abline(a=1,b=1)
         panel.xyplot(...)
       }
     )
```

As you can see, the chart with the custom panel function ([Figure 14-4](#)) is identical to the chart we showed above for multiple panels ([Figure 14-2](#), shown previously), except with the addition of the diagonal lines.

## High-Level Lattice Plotting Functions

This section describes high-level lattice functions. (We’ll cover panel functions in the next section.) We’ll start with functions for plotting a single vector of values, then functions for plotting two variables, then functions for plotting three variables, and some other functions that build on these functions.

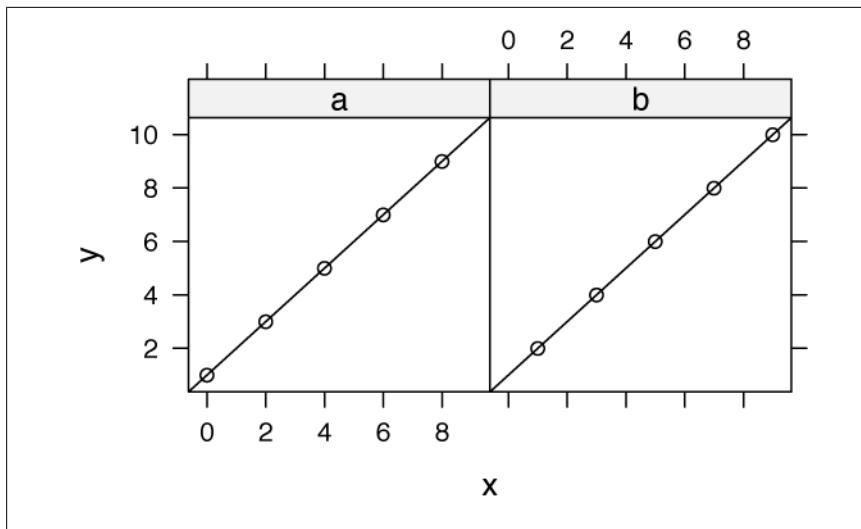


Figure 14-4. Scatter plot showing custom panel function

## Univariate Trellis Plots

In this section, I'm going to use the same data set for most of the examples: births in the United States during 2006.<sup>3</sup> The original data file contains a record for every birth in the United States during 2006, but the version included in the `nutshell` package contains only a 10% sample. Each record includes the following variables:

`DOB_MM`

Month of birth

`DOB_WK`

Day of week of birth

`MAGER`

Mother's age

`TBO_REC`

Total birth order

`WTGAIN`

Weight gain (by mother)

`SEX`

Sex of the child (M or F)

`APGAR5`

Apgar score

3. This data set is available from [http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data\\_access/Vitalstatsonline.htm](http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data_access/Vitalstatsonline.htm). I used the 2006 Birth Data File in this book. The data file is 3.1 GB uncompressed, which is way too big to load easily into R on a machine with only 4 GB. I used a Perl script to parse this file and return a limited number of records in CSV format.

*DMEDUC*

Mother's education

*UPREVIS*

Number of prenatal visits

*ESTGEST*

Estimated weeks of gestation

*DMETH\_REC*

Delivery method

*DPLURAL*

"Plural" births (i.e., single, twins, triplets, etc.)

*DBWT*

Birth weight (in grams)

It takes a little while to process the raw data, so I've included a 10% sample of this data set within the `nutshell` package as `births2006.smpl`.

## Processing the Birth Data

The natality files are gigantic; they're approximately 3.1 GB uncompressed. That's a little larger than R can easily process, so I used Perl to translate these files to a form easily readable by R. (It's possible to read and parse individual lines in R using the function `scan`, but I found that a little bit cumbersome. Perl is a lot cleaner and easier.) First, I used the following Perl script to process the raw file:

```
#!/usr/bin/perl
print "DOB_MM,DOB_WK,MAGER,TBO_REC,WTGAIN,SEX,APGAR5, "
      "DMEDUC,UPREVIS,ESTGEST,DMETH_REC,DPLURAL,DBWT\n";

while(<>) {
    my ($trash1,$DOB_MM,$trash2,$DOB_WK,$trash3,$MAGER,$trash4,
        $DMEDUC,$trash5,$TBO_REC,$trash6,$UPREVIS,$trash7,
        $WTGAIN,$trash8,$DMETH_REC,$trash9,$APGAR5,$trash10,
        $DPLURAL,$trash11,$SEX,$trash12,$ESTGEST,$trash13,$DBWT)
        = unpack("a18a2a8a1a59a2a65a2a59a1a52a2a4a2a125" .
                  "a1a11a2a6a1a12a1a9a2a15a4", $_);
    print "$DOB_MM,$DOB_WK,$MAGER,$TBO_REC,$WTGAIN,$SEX,$APGAR5, "
          "$DMEDUC,$UPREVIS,$ESTGEST,$DMETH_REC,$DPLURAL,$DBWT\n";
}
```

Next, I used the following R code to construct the data set:

```
births2006.raw <- read.csv("~/Documents/book/data/births2006.csv")

dmeth_rec <- function(X) {
  f <- function(tst) {
    switch(tst,'Vaginal', 'C-section', '', '', '',
           '', '', 'Unknown')
  }
  as.factor(as.character(sapply(X,f)));
}
```

```

udmeth_rec <- function(X) {
  f <- function(tst) {
    switch(tst,
      'Vaginal (not VBAC)', # 1
      'VBAC', # 2
      'Primary C-section', # 3
      'Repeat C-section', # 4
      '', # 5
      '', # 6
      '', # 7
      '', # 8
      'Unstated' # 9
    );
  }
  as.factor(as.character(sapply(X,f)));
}

dmeduc <- function(X) {
  f <- function(tst) {
    switch(tst,
      'Not on certificate',
      '0'='No formal education',
      '1'='1 Years of elementary school',
      '2'='2 Years of elementary school',
      '3'='3 Years of elementary school',
      '4'='4 Years of elementary school',
      '5'='5 Years of elementary school',
      '6'='6 Years of elementary school',
      '7'='7 Years of elementary school',
      '8'='8 Years of elementary school',
      '9'='1 year of high school',
      '10'='2 years of high school',
      '11'='3 years of high school',
      '12'='4 years of high school',
      '13'='1 year of college',
      '14'='2 years of college',
      '15'='3 years of college',
      '16'='4 years of college',
      '17'='5 or more years of college',
      '99'='Not stated'
    );
  }
  as.factor(as.character(sapply(X,f)));
}

tbo_rec <- function(x) { ifelse(x==9,NA,x) }

wtgain <- function(x) { ifelse(x==99,NA,x) }

apgar5 <- function(x) { ifelse(x==99,NA,x) }

estgest <- function(x) { ifelse(x==99,NA,x) }

dbwt <- function(x) { ifelse(x==9999,NA,x) }

dplural <- function(X) {

```

```

f <- function(tst) {
  switch(tst,'1 Single','2 Twin','3 Triplet',
    '4 Quadruplet', '5 Quintuplet or higher')
  }
  as.factor(as.character(sapply(X,f)));
}

births2006 <- transform(births2006.raw,
  TBO_REC=tbo_rec(TBO_REC),
  WTGAIN=wtgain(WTGAIN),
  APGAR5=apgar5(APGAR5),
  DMETH_REC=dmeth_rec(DMETH_REC),
  DMEDUC=dmeduc(DMEDUC),
  DPLURAL=dplural(DPLURAL),
  DBWT=dbwt(DBWT)
);

```

Finally, I took a 10% sample of the original data set so that it would fit in the `nutshell` package:

```

> births2006.idx <- sample(1:nrow(births2006),427323)
> births2006.smpl <- births2006[births2006.idx,]
> dim(births2006.smpl)
[1] 427323      13

```

## Bar charts

To draw bar charts with Trellis graphics, use the function `barchart`. The default method for `barchart` accepts a formula and a data frame as arguments:

```

barchart(x,
  data,
  panel = lattice.getOption("panel.barchart"),
  box.ratio = 2,
  ...)

```

You specify the formula with the argument `x` and the data frame with the argument `data`. (I'll explain the rest of the arguments below.) However, you can also call `barchart` on an object of class `table`:

```

barchart(x, data, groups = TRUE,
  origin = 0, stack = TRUE, ..., horizontal = TRUE)

```

To call `barchart` with an object of class `table`, simply call `barchart` with the argument `x` set to a table. (You shouldn't specify an argument for `data`; if you do, `barchart` will print a warning and ignore the argument.)

By default, the charts are actually drawn by the panel function `panel.barchart`:

```

panel.barchart(x, y, box.ratio = 1, box.width,
  horizontal = TRUE,
  origin = NULL, reference = TRUE,
  stack = FALSE,
  groups = NULL,
  col = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$col
    else superpose.polygon$col,

```

```

border = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$border
         else superpose.polygon$border,
lty = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$lty
         else superpose.polygon$lty,
lwd = if (is.null(groups)) plot.polygon$lwd
         else superpose.polygon$lwd,
...)

```

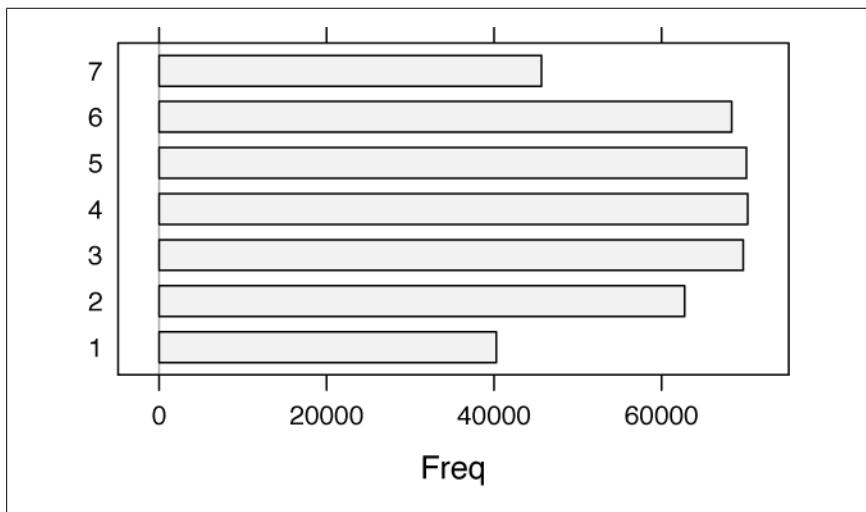
Let's start by calculating a table of the number of births by day of week and then printing a bar chart to show the number of births by day of week. It's the first time that we're using lattice graphics, so let's start by loading the `lattice` package:

```

> library(lattice)
> births.dow <- table(births2006.smp1$DOB_WK)
> barchart(births.dow)

```

The results are shown in [Figure 14-5](#). This is the default format for the `barchart` function: horizontal bars, a frame along the outside, tick marks, and turquoise-colored bars (on screen).



*Figure 14-5. Births by day of week*

Notice that many more babies are born on weekdays than on weekends. That's a little surprising: you might think that the number of births would be nearly the same, regardless of the day of the week. We'll use lattice graphics to explore this data set further, to see if we can better understand this phenomenon.

You might wonder if there is a difference in the number of births because of the delivery method; maybe doctors just schedule a lot of cesarean sections on weekdays, and natural births occur all the time. This is the type of question that the `lattice` package is great for answering. Let's start by eliminating records where the delivery method was unknown and then tabulate the number of births by day of week and method:

```

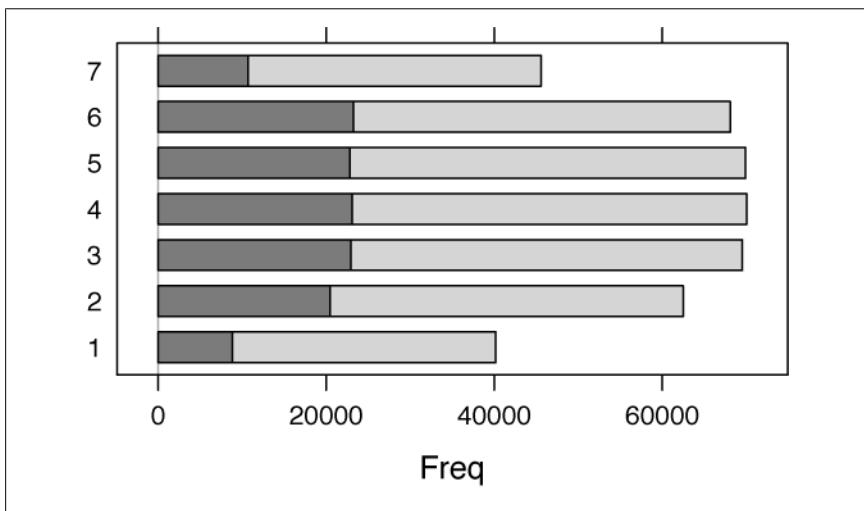
> births2006.dm <- transform(
+   births2006.smpl[births2006.smpl$DMETH_REC != "Unknown",],
+   DMETH_REC=as.factor(as.character(DMETH_REC)))
> dob.dm.tbl <- table(WK=births2006.dm$DOB_WK, MM=births2006.dm$DMETH_REC)

```

Now let's plot the results:

```
> barchart(dob.dm.tbl)
```

The chart is shown in [Figure 14-6](#). By default, `barchart` prints stacked bars with no legend. In Trellis terminology, the different colors show different *groups*. It does look like both types of births are less common on weekends, but it's tough to compare the number of each type of birth in this chart. Also, notice that the different shades aren't labeled, so it's not immediately obvious what each shade represents. Let's try to change the way the chart is displayed.



*Figure 14-6. Births by day of week and method*

As an alternative, let's try unstacking the bars (by specifying `stack=FALSE`) and adding a legend (by specifying `auto.key=TRUE`):

```

> trellis.device(device.pdf, color=FALSE,
+   filename="~/Documents/book/current/figs/incoming/rian_1507.pdf",
+   width=4.3, height=4.3, units="in", res=72)
> barchart(dob.dm.tbl, stack=FALSE, auto.key=TRUE)

```

The results are shown in [Figure 14-7](#). It's a little easier to see that both types of births decrease on weekends, but it's still a little difficult to compare values within each group. (When I try to focus on each group, I get distracted by the other group.) Different colored groups aren't the best choice for this data, so let's try a different approach.

First, let's try changing this chart in two ways. We'll split it into two different panels by telling `barchart` not to group by color, using the `groups=FALSE` argument. Second,

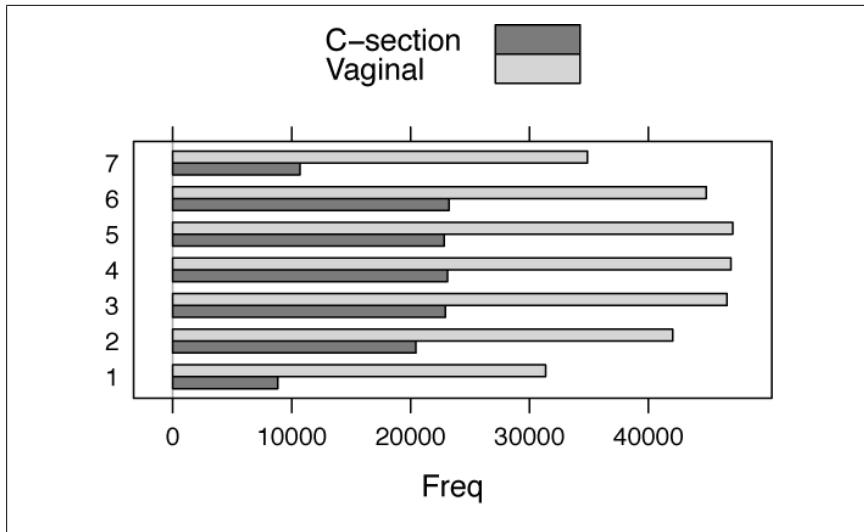


Figure 14-7. Births by day of week and method: unstacked bars

we'll change to columns (using the `horizontal=FALSE` argument), so we can easily compare the different values:

```
> barchart(dob.dm.tbl, horizontal=FALSE, groups=FALSE)
```

The new chart is shown in Figure 14-8. The two different charts are in different panels. Now, we can more clearly see what's going on. The number of vaginal births decreases on weekends, by maybe 25% to 30%. However, C-sections drop by 50% to 60%. As you can see, lattice graphics let you quickly try different ways to present information, helping you zero in on the method that best illustrates what is happening in the data.

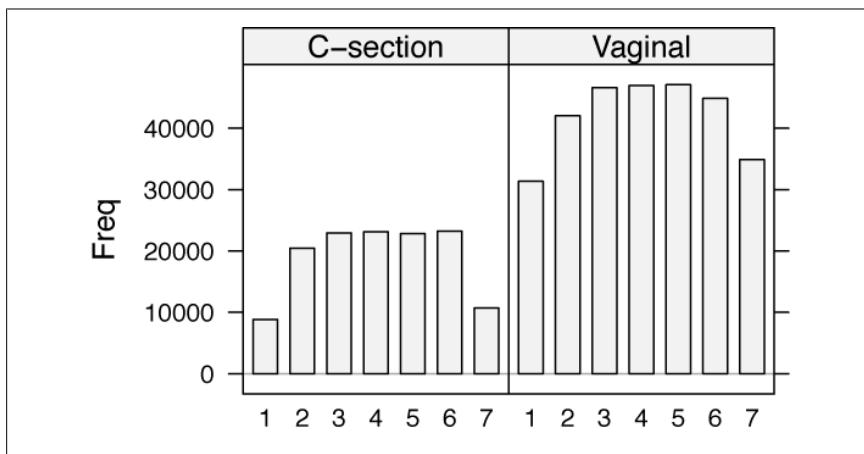


Figure 14-8. Births by day of week and method: two panels of columns

## Dot plots

A good alternative to bar charts are Cleveland dot plots. Like bar charts, dot plots are useful for showing data where there is a single point for each category. Visually, they seem a lot less “busy” to me than bar charts, so I like using them to summarize larger data tables. To show dot plots in R, use the function `dotplot`:

```
dotplot(x,  
        data,  
        panel = latticegetOption("panel.dotplot"),  
        ...)
```

Much like `barchart`, the default method expects you to specify the data in a formula and a data frame, but there is a method for plotting tables as well:

```
## S3 method for class 'table':  
dotplot(x, data, groups = TRUE, ..., horizontal = TRUE)
```

As an example of `dotplot`, let’s look at a chart of data on births by day of week. Is the pattern we saw above a seasonal pattern? First, we’ll create a new table counting births by month, week, and delivery method:

```
> dob.dm.tbl.alt <- table(WEEK=births2006.dm$DOB_WK,  
+   MONTH=births2006.dm$DOB_MM,  
+   METHOD=births2006.dm$DMETH_REC)
```

Next, we’ll plot the results using a dot plot. In this plot, we’ll keep on grouping, so that different delivery methods are shown in different colors (`groups=TRUE`). To help highlight differences, we’ll disable stacking values (`stack=FALSE`). Finally, we’ll print a key so that it’s obvious what each symbol represents (`auto.key=TRUE`):

```
> dotplot(dob.dm.tbl.alt, stack=FALSE, auto.key=TRUE, groups=TRUE)
```

The results are shown in [Figure 14-9](#). (To make the results print nicely, I generated these charts with the default black-and-white color scheme. If you try this yourself, the table may look slightly different. Depending on your platform, you’ll probably see hollow blue circles for C-section births and hollow purple sections for vaginal births.) As you can see, there are slight seasonal differences, but the overall pattern remains the same.

As another example of dot plots, let’s look at the tire failure data. In 2003, the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) began a study into the durability of radial tires on light trucks. (This was three years after the Firestone recall of tires for Ford Explorers.) The NHTSA performed the tests in Phoenix, because it felt that the hot and dry conditions would be unusually stressful for tires (and because it had noted that many tire failures occur in the American Southwest). Over the next few years, it conducted hundreds of different tests on tires and released the data to the public. (See <http://www.nhtsa.gov/portal/site/nhtsa/menuitem.8027fe7cfb6e727568d07a30343c44cc> for links to this study.)

Tests were carried out on six different types of tires. Following is a table of the characteristics of the tires.

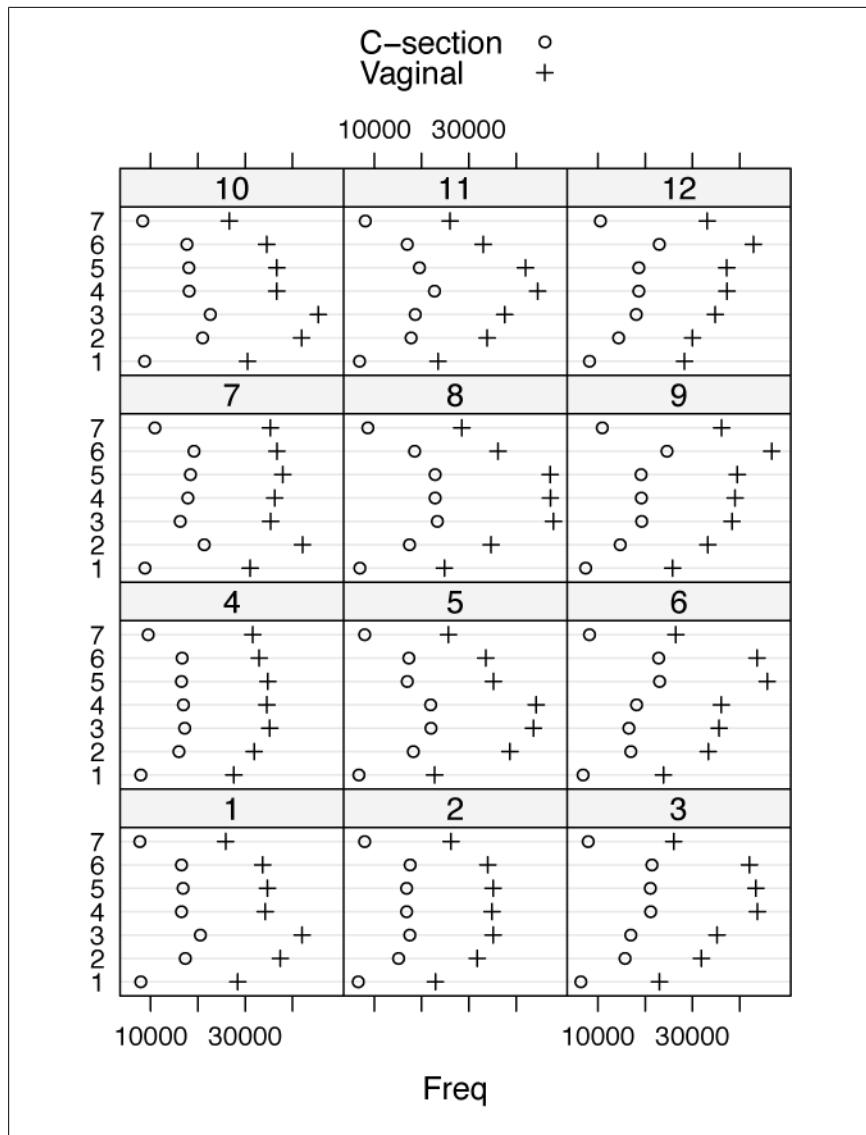


Figure 14-9. Number of births by day of week by month

| Tire | Size       | Load Index | Speed Rating | Brand       | Model       | OE Vehicle  | OE Model                |
|------|------------|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------------------|
| B    | P195/65R15 | 89         | S            | BF Goodrich | Touring T/A | Chevy       | Cavalier                |
| C    | P205/65R15 | 92         | V            | Goodyear    | Eagle GA    | Lexus       | ES300                   |
| D    | P235/75R15 | 108        | S            | Michelin    | LTX M/S     | Ford, Dodge | E 150 Van, Ram Van 1500 |

| Tire | Size          | Load Index | Speed Rating | Brand      | Model          | OE Vehicle | OE Model                |
|------|---------------|------------|--------------|------------|----------------|------------|-------------------------|
| E    | P265/75R16    | 114        | S            | Firestone  | Wilderness AT  | Chevy/GMC  | Silverado, Tahoe, Yukon |
| H    | LT245/75R16/E | 120/116    | Q            | Pathfinder | ATRA/SOWL      | NA         | NA                      |
| L    | 255/65R16     | 109        | H            | General    | Grabber ST A/S | Mercedes   | ML320                   |

As an example, we're going to look at one particular batch of tests from this study. The test was called a “[Stepped-Up Speed to Failure](#)” test. In this test, tires were mounted on testing devices. The testing facility then conducted a number of basic tests on the tires to check that they were intact. The test facility then proceeded to test the tires at increasing speeds until the tires failed. Specifically, the testing facility tested each tire at a specific speed for 1 hour, and then it proceeded to increase the speed in 10-km/h increments until either (a) the tire failed or (b) a prescribed limit was reached for each tire. (The limit was dependent on the speed rating for the tire.) After the limit was reached, the test was run continuously until the tire failed. The test data set is in the package `nutshell`, under the name `tires.sus`.

The data set contains a lot of information, but we're going to focus on only three variables. `Time_To_Failure` is the time before each tire failed (in hours), `Speed_At_Failure_km_h` is the testing speed at which the tire failed, and `Tire_Type` is the type of tire tested. We know that tests were run at only certain stepped speeds; despite the fact that speed is a numeric variable, we can treat it as a factor. So we can use dot plots to show the one continuous variable (time to failure) by the speed at failure for each different type of tire:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(tires.sus)
> dotplot(as.factor(Speed_At_Failure_km_h)~Time_To_Failure|Tire_Type,
+         data=tires.sus)
```

The result is shown in [Figure 14-10](#). This diagram lets us clearly see how quickly tires failed in each of the tests. For example, all type D tires failed quickly at the testing speed of 180 km/h, but some type H tires lasted a long time before failure. We'll revisit this example in “[Comparing means](#)” on page 372.

## Histograms

A very popular chart for showing the distribution of a variable is the histogram. You can plot histograms in the `lattice` package with the function `histogram`:

```
histogram(x,
          data,
          allow.multiple = TRUE,
          auto.key = FALSE,
          aspect = "fill",
          panel = lattice.getOption("panel.histogram"),
          prepanel, scales, strip, groups,
          xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim,
```

```

type = c("percent", "count", "density"),
nint = if (is.factor(x)) nlevels(x)
else round(log2(length(x)) + 1),
endpoints = extend.limits(range(as.numeric(x)), finite = TRUE),
prop = 0.04),
breaks,
equal.widths = TRUE,
drop.unused.levels = lattice.getOption("drop.unused.levels"),
...,
lattice.options = NULL,
default.scales = list(),
subscripts,
subset)

```

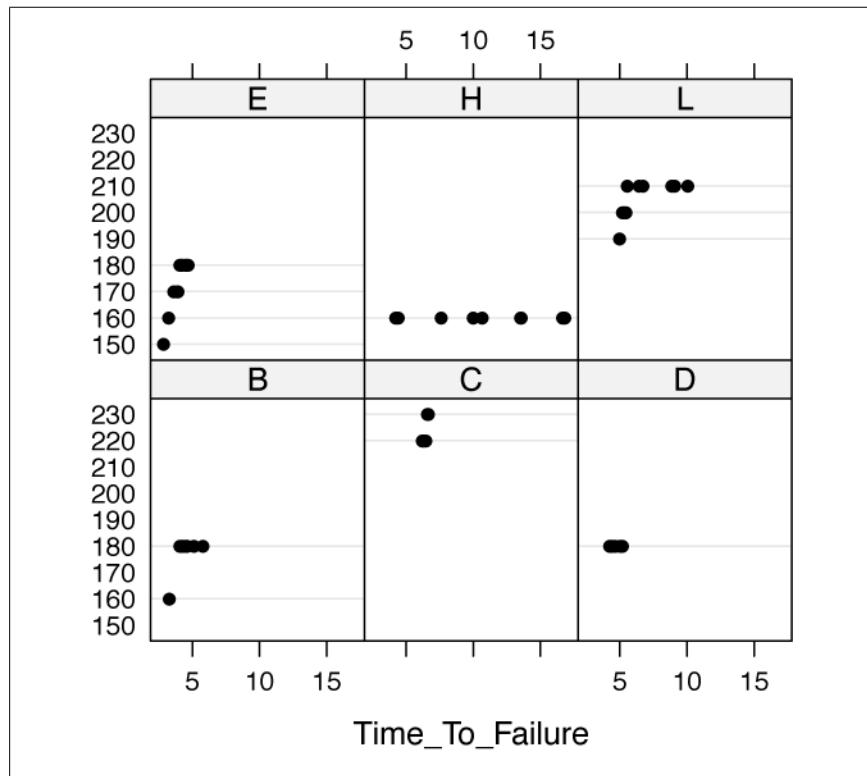


Figure 14-10. Time to failure and speed at failure for different types of tires

By default, histograms are drawn by `panel.histogram`:

```

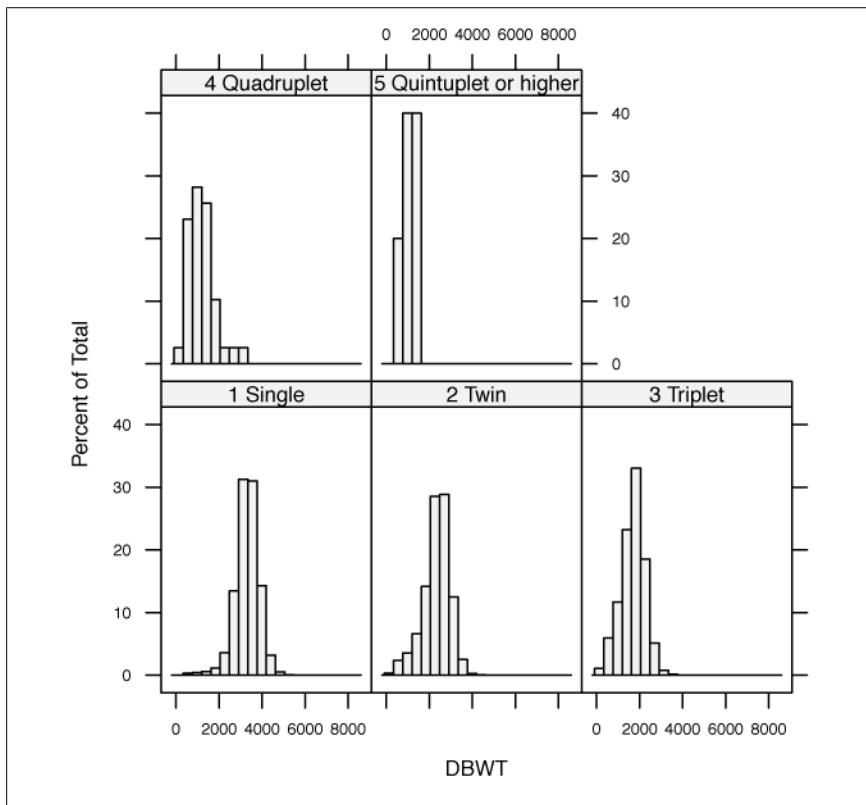
panel.histogram(x,
breaks,
equal.widths = TRUE,
type = "density",
nint = round(log2(length(x)) + 1),
alpha, col, border, lty, lwd,
...)

```

As an example of histograms, let's look at average birth weights, grouped by number of births:

```
> histogram(~DBWT|DPLURAL, data=births2006.smp1)
```

The results are shown in [Figure 14-11](#). Notice that the panels are ordered alphabetically by the conditioning variable. (That's why the group names have the numbers at the front.) Also notice that the `histogram` function tries to fill in all the available space with squarish panels. This helps make each chart readable by itself but makes it difficult to compare the different groups.



*Figure 14-11. Histogram of birth weights by number of births*

To make it easier to compare groups, we can explicitly stack the charts on top of each other using the `layout` variable:

```
> histogram(~DBWT|DPLURAL, data=births2006.smp1, layout=c(1, 5))
```

The resulting chart is shown in [Figure 14-12](#). As you can see, birth weights are roughly normally distributed within each group, but the mean weight drops as the number of births increases.

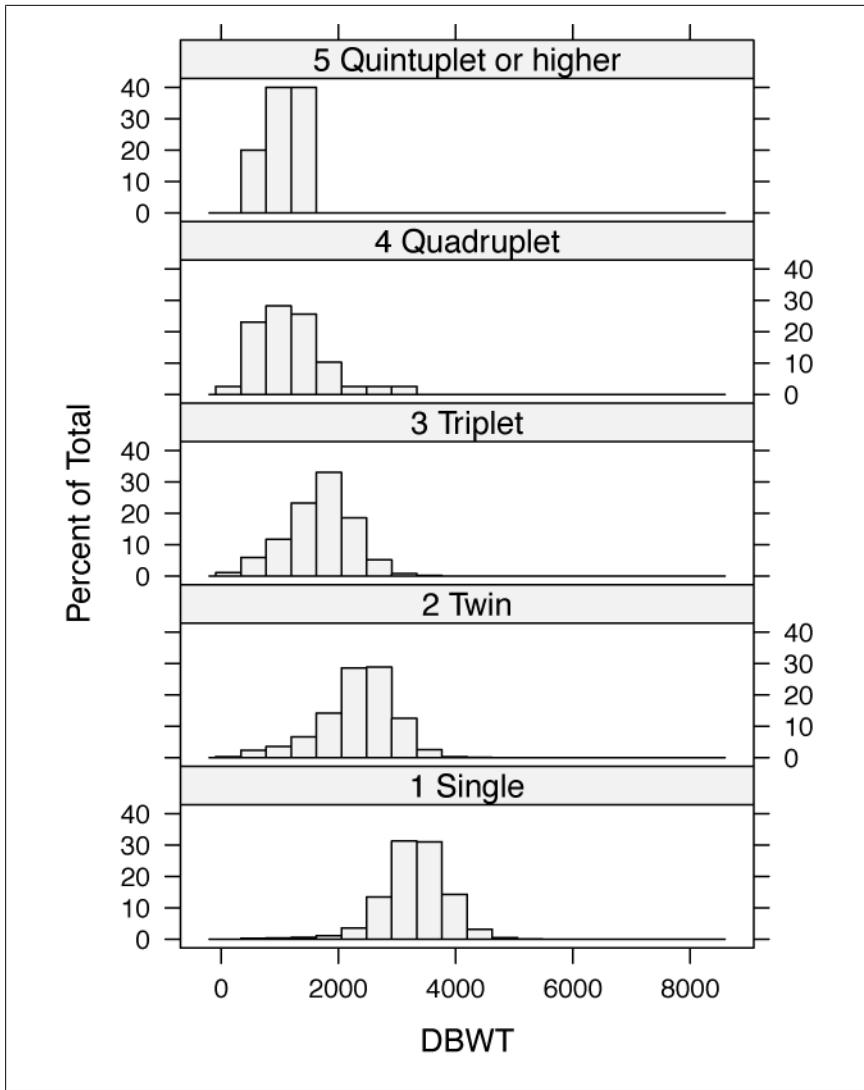


Figure 14-12. Histogram of birth weights by number of births: vertically stacked

### Density plots

If you'd like to see a single line showing the distribution, instead of a set of columns representing bins, you can use kernel density plots. To draw them in R, use the function `densityplot`:

```
densityplot(x,
            data,
            allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
            outer = !is.null(groups),
            auto.key = FALSE,
```

```

aspect = "fill",
panel = latticegetOption("panel.densityplot"),
prepanel, scales, strip, groups, weights,
xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim,
bw, adjust, kernel, window, width, give.Rkern,
n = 50, from, to, cut, na.rm,
drop.unused.levels = latticegetOption("drop.unused.levels"),
...
lattice.options = NULL,
default.scales = list(),
subscripts,
subset)

```

By default, panels are drawn by `panel.densityplot`:

```

panel.densityplot(x, darg, plot.points = "jitter", ref = FALSE,
                   groups = NULL, weights = NULL,
                   jitter.amount, type, ...)

```

Let's redraw the example above, replacing the histogram with a density plot. By default, `densityplot` will draw a strip chart under each chart, showing every data point. However, because the data set is so big (there are 427,432 observations), we'll tell `densityplot` not to do this by specifying `plot.points=FALSE`:

```

> densityplot(~DBWT|DPLURAL,data=births2006.smpl,
+   layout=c(1,5), plot.points=FALSE)

```

The results are shown in [Figure 14-13](#). One advantage of density plots over histograms is that you can stack them on top of one another and still read the results. By changing the conditioning variable (`DPLURAL`) to a grouping variable, we can stack these charts on top of one another:

```

> densityplot(~DBWT, groups=DPLURAL, data=births2006.smpl,
+   plot.points=FALSE, auto.key=TRUE)

```

The superimposed density plots are shown in [Figure 14-14](#). As you can see, it's easier to compare distribution shapes (and centers) by superimposing the charts.

## Strip plots

A good alternative to histograms are strip plots, especially when there isn't much data to plot. Strip plots look similar to dot plots, but they show different information. Dot plots are designed to show one value per category (often a mean or a sum), while strip plots show many values. You can think of strip plots as one-dimensional scatter plots. To draw strip plots in R, use the `stripplot` function:

```

stripplot(x,
          data,
          panel = latticegetOption("panel.stripplot"),
          ...)

```

By default, panels are drawn by `panel.stripplot`:

```

panel.stripplot(x, y, jitter.data = FALSE,
                 factor = 0.5, amount = NULL,
                 horizontal = TRUE, groups = NULL,
                 ...)

```

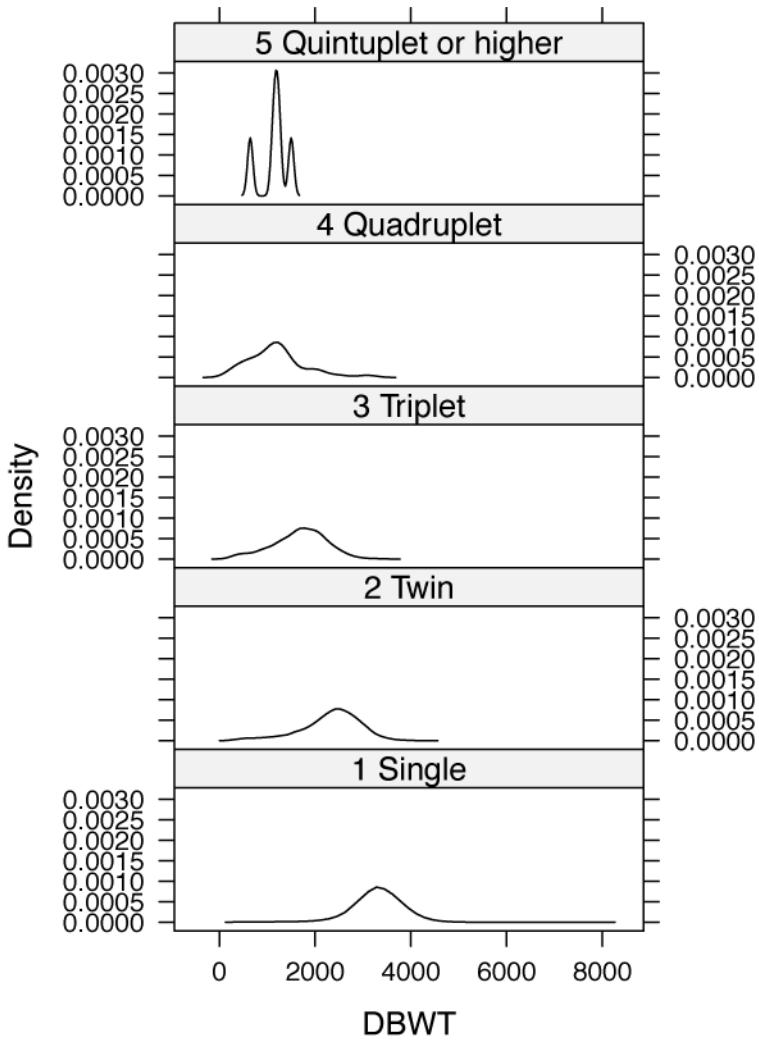


Figure 14-13. Density plots showing birth weight by number of babies

As an example of a strip plot, let's look at the weights of babies born in sets of four or more. There were only 44 observations in our data set that match this description, so a strip plot is a reasonable way to show density. In this case, we'll use the `subset` argument to specify the set of observations we want to plot and add some random vertical noise to make the points easier to read by specifying `jitter.data=TRUE`:

```
> stripplot(~DBWT, data=births2006.smpl,
+   subset=(DPLURAL=="5 Quintuplet or higher" |
+           DPLURAL=="4 Quadruplet"),
+   jitter.data=TRUE)
```

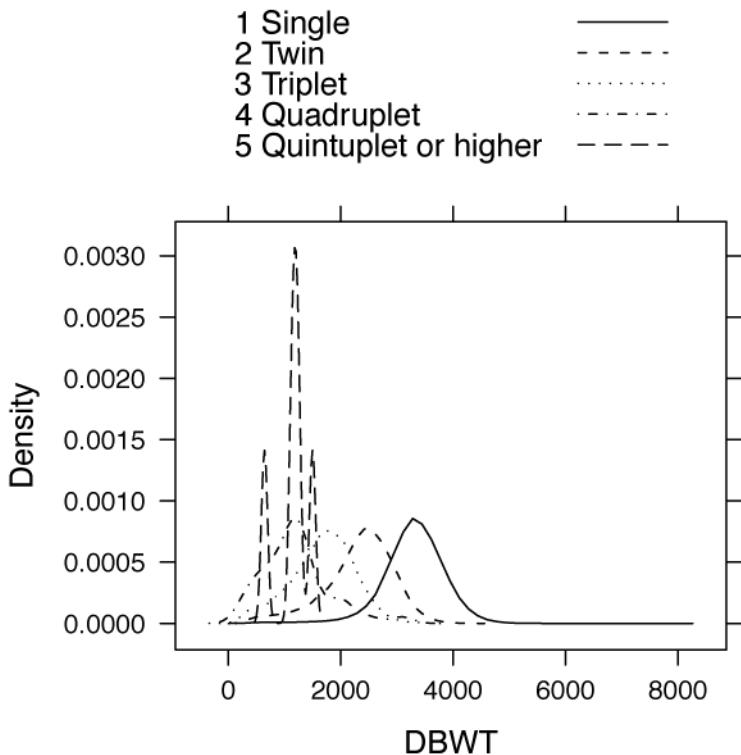


Figure 14-14. Superimposed density plots showing birth weight by number of babies

The resulting chart is shown in [Figure 14-15](#).

### Univariate quantile-quantile plots

Another useful plot that you can generate within the `lattice` package is the quantile-quantile plot. A quantile-quantile plot compares the distribution of actual data values to a theoretical distribution. Specifically, it plots quantiles of the observed data against quantiles of a theoretical distribution. If the plotted points form a straight diagonal line (from top right to bottom left), then it is likely that the observed data comes from the theoretical distribution. Quantile-quantile plots are a very powerful technique for seeing how closely a data set matches a theoretical distribution (or how much it deviates from it).

To plot quantile-quantile plots using lattice graphics, use the function `qqmath`:

```
qqmath(x,
       data,
       allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
       outer = !is.null(groups),
       distribution = qnorm,
```

```

f.value = NULL,
auto.key = FALSE,
aspect = "fill",
panel = latticegetOption("panel.qqmath"),
prepanel = NULL,
scales, strip, groups,
xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim,
drop.unused.levels = latticegetOption("drop.unused.levels"),
...,
lattice.options = NULL,
default.scales = list(),
subscripts,
subset)

```

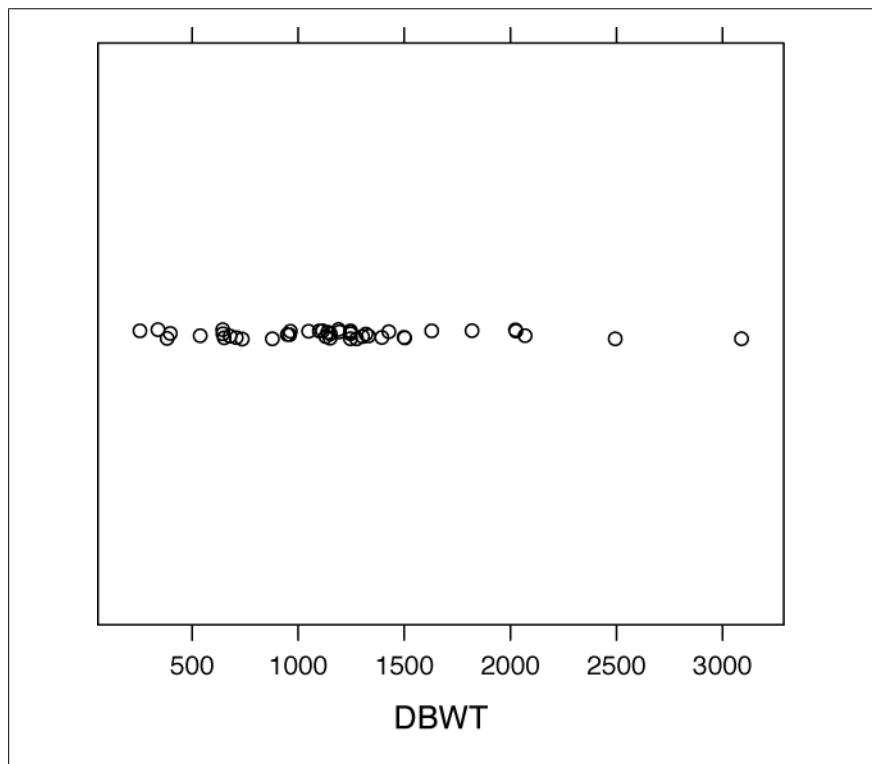


Figure 14-15. Weight of babies born in sets of four or more

By default, panels are drawn by `panel.qqmath`:

```

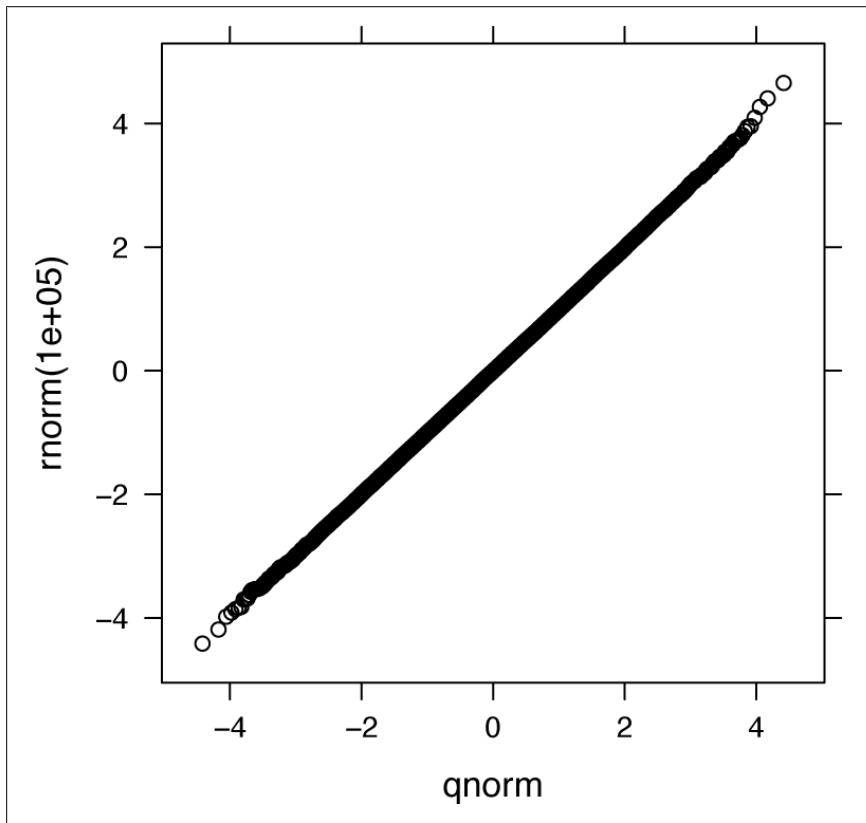
panel.qqmath(x, f.value = NULL,
             distribution = qnorm,
             qtype = 7,
             groups = NULL, ...)

```

By default, the function `qqmath` compares the sample data to a normal distribution. If the sample data is really normally distributed, you'll see a vertical line. As an example, let's plot 100,000 random values from a normal distribution to show what `qqmath` does:

```
> qqmath(rnorm(100000))
```

The results are shown in [Figure 14-16](#).



*Figure 14-16. Quantile-quantile plot for random values from normal distribution*

Let's plot a set of quantile-quantile plots for the birth weight data. Because the data set is rather large, we'll plot only a random sample of 50,000 points:

```
qqmath(~DBWT|DPLURAL,  
      data=births2006.smpl[sample(1:nrow(births2006.smpl), 50000), ],  
      pch=19,  
      cex=0.25,  
      subset=(DPLURAL != "5 Quintuplet or higher"))
```

As you can see from [Figure 14-17](#), the distribution of birth weights is not quite normal.

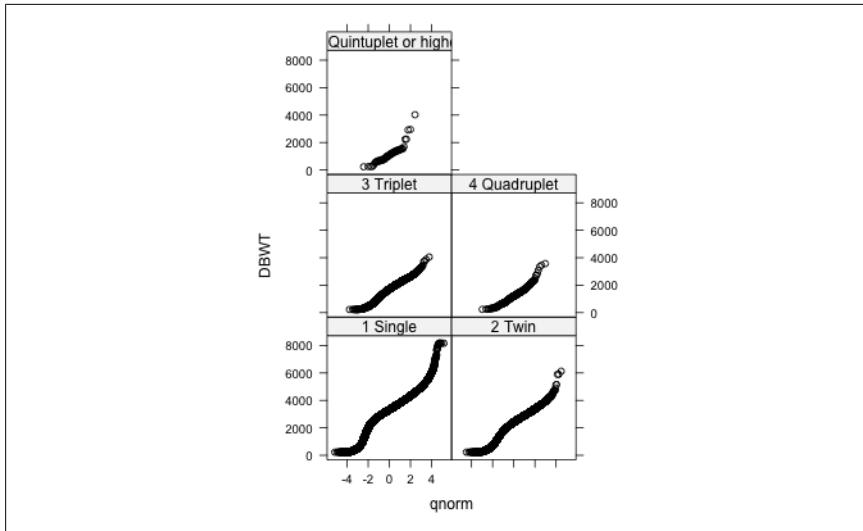


Figure 14-17. Quantile-quantile plots for birth weights

As another example, let's look at real estate prices in San Francisco in 2008 and 2009. This data set is included in the `nutshell` package as `sanfrancisco.home.sales`. (See “[More About the San Francisco Real Estate Prices Data Set](#)” on page 294 for more information on this data set.) Here is how to load the data:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(sanfrancisco.home.sales)
```

Intuitively, it doesn't make sense for real estate prices to be normally distributed. There are far more people with below-average incomes than above-average incomes. The lowest recorded price in the data set is \$100,000; the highest is \$9,500,000. Let's take a look at this distribution with `qqmath`:

```
> qqmath(~price, data=sanfrancisco.home.sales)
```

The distribution is shown in [Figure 14-18](#). As expected, the distribution is not normal. It looks exponential, so let's try a log transform:

```
> qqmath(~log(price), data=sanfrancisco.home.sales)
```

A log transform yields a distribution that looks pretty close to normally distributed (see [Figure 14-19](#)). Let's take a look at how the distribution changes based on the number of bedrooms. To do this, we'll split the distribution into groups and change the way the points are plotted. Specifically, we'll plot smooth lines instead of individual points. (Point type is actually an argument for `panel.xyplot`, which is used to draw the chart.) We'll add a key to the plot (using `auto.key=TRUE`). We'll pass an explicit subset as an argument to the function instead of using the `subset` argument. (This helps clean up the key, which would show unused factor levels otherwise.)

```
> qqmath(~log(price), groups=bedrooms,
+       data=subset(sanfrancisco.home.sales,
```

```
+           !is.na(bedrooms) & bedrooms > 0 & bedrooms < 7,
+     auto.key=TRUE, drop.unused.levels=TRUE, type="smooth")
> dev.off()
```

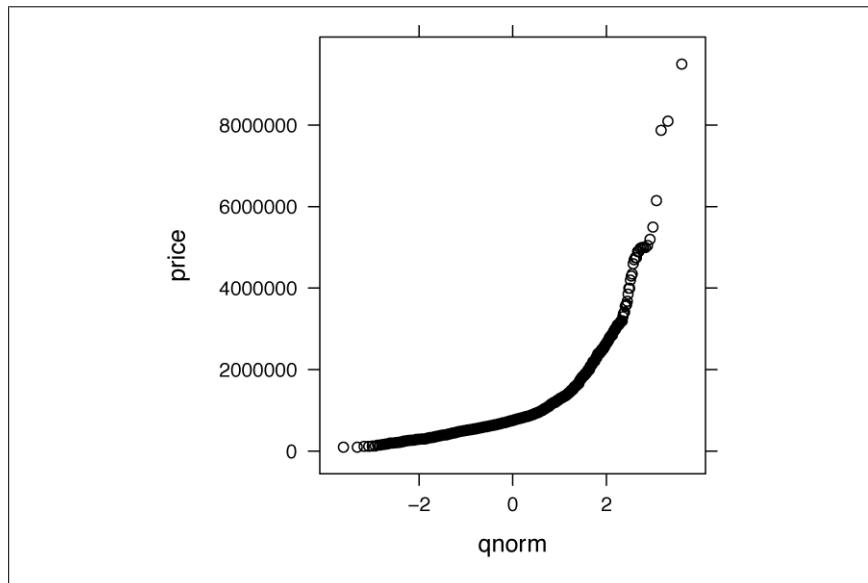


Figure 14-18. Quantile-quantile plot of San Francisco real estate prices

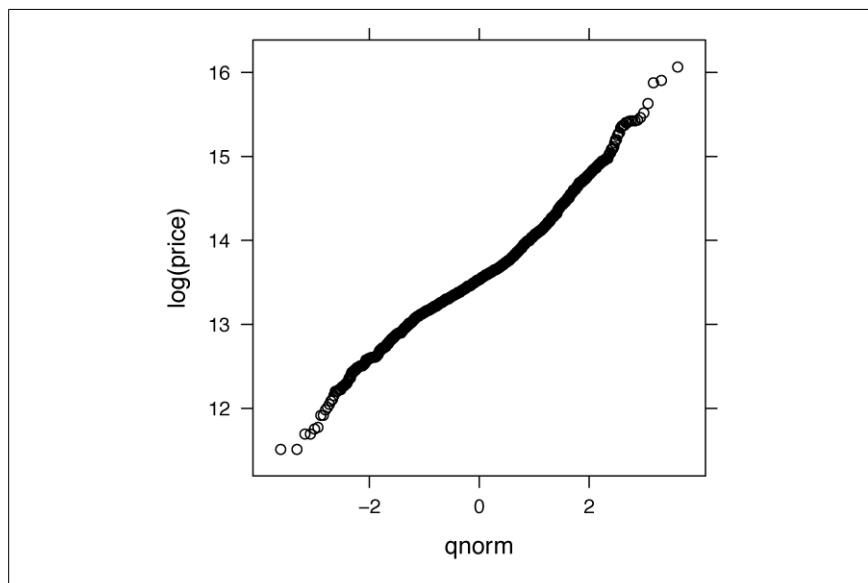
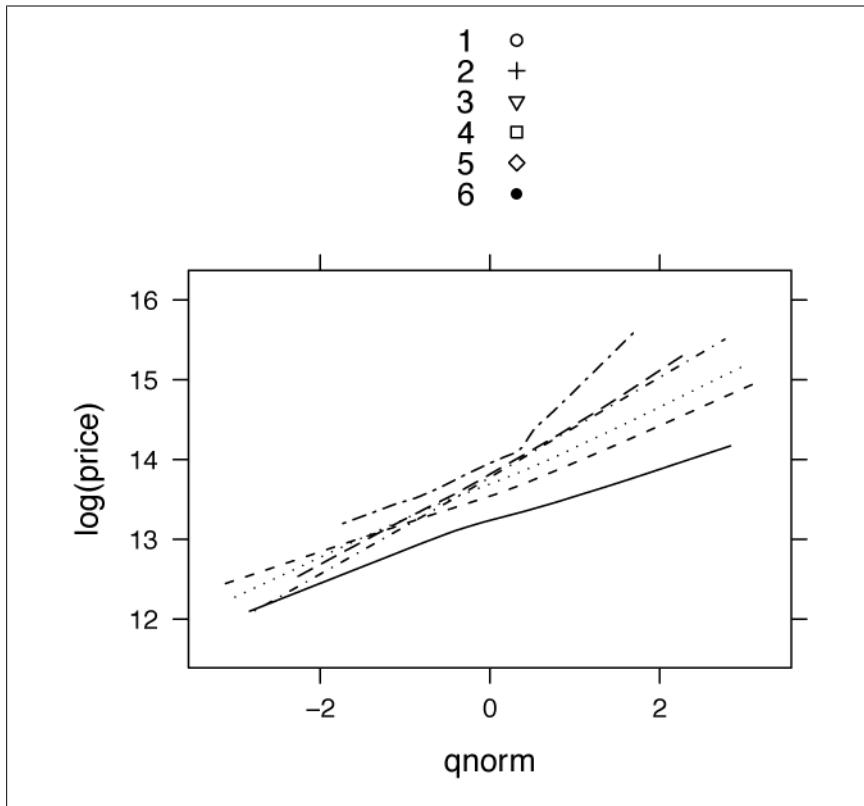


Figure 14-19. Quantile-quantile plot of log-scaled property prices

Notice that the lines are separate, with higher values for higher numbers of bedrooms (see [Figure 14-20](#)). We can do the same thing for square footage (see [Figure 14-21](#)). (I used the function `cut2` from the package `Hmisc` to divide square footages into six even quantiles.)

```
> library(Hmisc)
> qqmath(~log(price), groups=cut2(squarefeet, g=6),
+   data=subset(sanfrancisco.home.sales, !is.na(squarefeet)),
+   auto.key=TRUE, drop.unused.levels=TRUE, type="smooth")
```



*Figure 14-20. Quantile-quantile plots of logs of property prices for different numbers of bedrooms*

Here the separation is even more clear. We can see the same separation by neighborhood. (We'll come back to this analysis in [Chapter 20](#).)

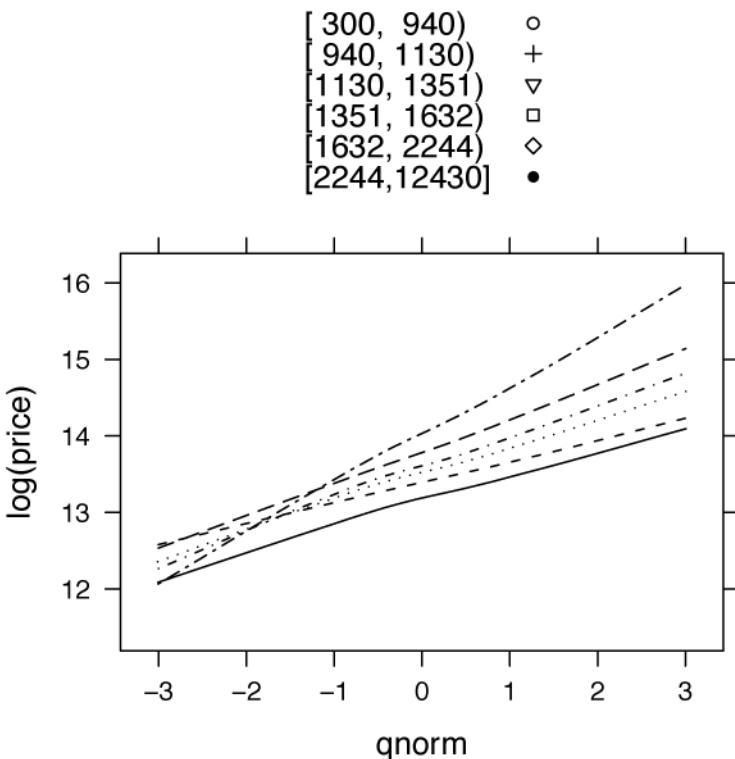


Figure 14-21. Quantile-quantile plots of logs of property prices for different numbers of square feet

### More About the San Francisco Real Estate Prices Data Set

In a few places in this chapter (and again in Chapters 20 and 21), we'll use a data set consisting of real estate sale prices in San Francisco between February 13, 2008, and July 14, 2009:

```
> names(sanfrancisco.home.sales)
[1] "street"      "city"        "zip"         "saledate"    "price"
[6] "bedrooms"    "squarefeet"   "lotsize"     "yearbuilt"   "condolike"
```

In the San Francisco Bay area, real estate sales are published in the newspapers once a week. I put together this data set by compiling information from multiple papers. The reason I'm including 17 months of data is because that was what was available when I wrote this chapter. The data set contains 3,281 observations and 10 variables:

*street*

Street address for the property.

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i>city</i>                | City in which the property was located. (In this data set, it's 'San Francisco' for every observation.)  |
| <i>zip</i>                 | Zip code for the property.   |
| <i>saledate</i>            | Approximate date on which the sale was recorded. (Different papers sometimes disagree by a day or two.)  |
| <i>price</i>               | Sales price for the property.  |
| <i>bedrooms</i>            | A count of the number of bedrooms.   |
| <i>squarefeet</i>          | Interior space in square feet.   |
| <i>lotsize</i>             | Lot size in square feet.   |
| <i>yearbuilt</i>           | Year in which the property was built.  |
| <i>condolike</i>           | Variable derived from <code>street</code> , to indicate if the address was qualified by a unit number. (Indicates the presence of a '#' in the variable <code>street</code> .) |
| <i>latitude, longitude</i> | Geographic coordinates for the property.   |

This is a real data set, so it's not completely clean.<sup>4</sup> It contains data compiled from many sources: real estate listings, self-reported data, government records. So there may be errors and inconsistencies in the data. Moreover, there are some missing values.

I picked this data set as an example because I had some questions about the way that real estate data is reported in the media. Writers often talk about the number of sales, or the median price, or the price per square foot. I wanted to know a little more about real estate prices. Is there a premium for bedrooms (above square footage)? When the market slowed down in the housing bust, did it slow down across all price points? How sensitive are median prices to one-time events (like a large new condominium building)?

In case you're wondering where this data came from, here's a detailed explanation:

- First, I downloaded real estate sales listings from San Francisco Bay area newspaper websites. (I wrote a spider to grab and parse the data.) This is how I got sale dates, street addresses, sales prices, bedroom counts, home sizes, lot sizes, and years built.
- Next, I got latitude and longitude information for each address from different web services. I merged these files together outside R (using SQLite).

4. It's not completely dirty, either. I spent some time cleaning up and correcting the data: removing blatant duplicates, adding years to some recent condo listings, and a few other fixes.

- I downloaded neighborhood information from Zillow.com. You can download neighborhood data from <http://www.zillow.com/howto/api/neighborhood-boundaries.htm>. (By the way, it's hard to do what Zillow.com does. See "Machine Learning Algorithms for Regression" on page 437 for some examples of price prediction.)
- Finally, I loaded the data into R, merged in neighborhood information, and finished creating the data set.

Here is the code that I used to put the data set together. I used some special packages for reading spatial data in order to load the neighborhood data and determine in which neighborhood each home was located:

```
# load in the shapefile
library(sp)
library(maptools)
# ca.neighborhood.shapes <- read.shape("ZillowNeighborhoods-CA.shp")
ca.neighborhood.shapes <- readShapePoly("ZillowNeighborhoods-CA.shp")
# extract san francisco coordinates
sf.neighborhood.shapes <-
  ca.neighborhood.shapes[ca.neighborhood.shapes$CITY=="San Francisco",]
# function to look up shapes
neighborhood <- function(s, lon, lat) {
  names <- s$NAME;
  for (name in names) {
    lons <- s[s$NAME==name,]@polygons[[1]]@Polygons[[1]]@coords[,1];
    lats <- s[s$NAME==name,]@polygons[[1]]@Polygons[[1]]@coords[,2];
    res <- point.in.polygon(lon,lat,lons,lats);
    if (res==1) {
      return(name);
    }
  }
  return(NA);
}
map_neighborhoods <- function(s, lons, lats) {
  neighborhoods <- rep(NA,length(lons));
  for (i in 1:length(lons)) {
    neighborhoods[i] <- neighborhood(s, lons[i], lats[i]);
  }
  return(neighborhoods);
}
# loading sf data with coordinates
sanfrancisco.home.sales.raw <- read.csv("san_fran_re_sales_wcoors.csv")
# exclude bad coordinates (outside SF)
sanfrancisco.home.sales.clean <- transform(sanfrancisco.home.sales.raw,
  latitude=ifelse(latitude>37.7&latitude<37.85,latitude,NA),
  longitude=ifelse(longitude>37.7&longitude<37.85,longitude,NA),
  date=as.Date(date,format="%m/%d/%Y"),
  lotsize=ifelse(lotsize<10000,lotsize,NA),
  month=cut(as.Date(date,format="%m/%d/%Y"),"month"),
  lotsize=ifelse(lotsize<15000,lotsize,NA)
)
# transform date fields
# finally, build the data set with properly named neighborhoods
sanfrancisco.home.sales <- transform(sanfrancisco.home.sales.clean,
  neighborhood=map_neighborhoods(
```

```
sf.neighborhood.shapes, longitude, latitude))  
save(sanfrancisco.home.sales,file="sanfrancisco.home.sales.RData")
```

## Bivariate Trellis Plots

This section describes Trellis plots for plotting two variables. Many real data sets (for example, financial data) record relationships between multiple numeric variables. The tools in this section can help you examine those relationships.

### Scatter plots

To generate scatter plots with the `trellis` package, use the function `xypplot`:

```
xypplot(x,  
        data,  
        allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,  
        outer = !is.null(groups),  
        auto.key = FALSE,  
        aspect = "fill",  
        panel = latticegetOption("panel.xypplot"),  
        prepanel = NULL,  
        scales = list(),  
        strip = TRUE,  
        groups = NULL,  
        xlab,  
        xlim,  
        ylab,  
        ylim,  
        drop.unused.levels = latticegetOption("drop.unused.levels"),  
        ...,  
        lattice.options = NULL,  
        default.scales,  
        subscripts = !is.null(groups),  
        subset = TRUE)
```

Most of the work is done by the panel function `panel.xypplot`:

```
panel.xypplot(x, y, type = "p",  
               groups = NULL,  
               pch, col, col.line, col.symbol,  
               font, fontfamily, fontface,  
               lty, cex, fill, lwd,  
               horizontal = FALSE, ...,  
               jitter.x = FALSE, jitter.y = FALSE,  
               factor = 0.5, amount = NULL)
```

As an example of a scatter plot, let's take a look at the relationship between house size and price. Let's start with a simple scatter plot, showing size and price:

```
> xypplot(price~squarefeet, data=sanfrancisco.home.sales)
```

The results of this command are shown in [Figure 14-22](#). It looks like there is a rough correspondence between size and price (the plot looks vaguely cone shaped). This chart is hard to read, so let's try modifying it. Let's trim outliers (sales prices over 4,000,000 and properties over 6,000 square feet) using the `subset` argument.

Additionally, let's take a look at how this relationship varies by zip code. San Francisco is a pretty big place, and not all neighborhoods are equally in demand. (You probably know the cliché about the first three rules of real estate: location, location, location.)

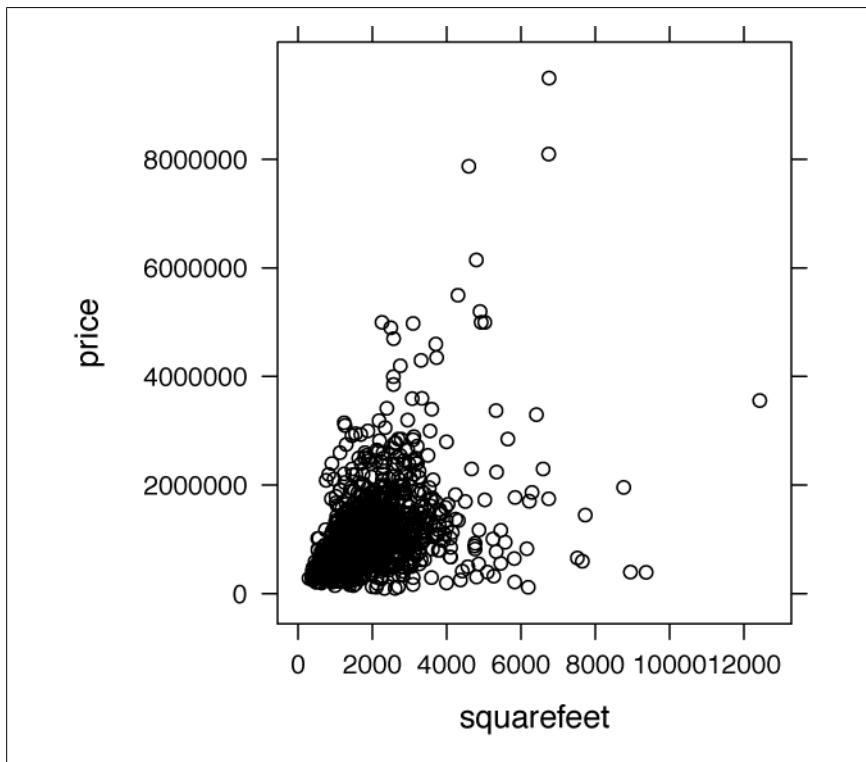


Figure 14-22. Scatter plot comparing house size and price

Before plotting the price data, let's pick a subset of zip codes to plot. A few parts of the city are sparsely populated (like the financial district, 94104) and don't have enough data to make plotting interesting. Also, let's exclude zip codes where square footage isn't available:

```
> table(subset(sanfrancisco.home.sales, !is.na(squarefeet), select=zip))
```

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 94100 | 94102 | 94103 | 94104 | 94105 | 94107 | 94108 | 94109 | 94110 | 94111 | 94112 |
| 2     | 52    | 62    | 4     | 44    | 147   | 21    | 115   | 161   | 12    | 192   |
| 94114 | 94115 | 94116 | 94117 | 94118 | 94121 | 94122 | 94123 | 94124 | 94127 | 94131 |
| 143   | 101   | 124   | 114   | 92    | 92    | 131   | 71    | 85    | 108   | 136   |
| 94132 | 94133 | 94134 | 94158 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| 82    | 47    | 105   | 13    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |

So we'll exclude 94100, 94104, 94108, 94111, 94133, and 94158 because there are too few sales to be interesting. (Note the `strip` argument. This simply prints the zip codes with the plots.)

```

> trellis.par.set(fontsize=list(text=7))
> xyplot(price~squarefeet|zip, data=sanfrancisco.home.sales,
+   subset=(zip!=94100 & zip!=94104 & zip!=94108 &
+           zip!=94111 & zip!=94133 & zip!=94158 &
+           price < 4000000 &
+           ifelse(is.na(squarefeet), FALSE, squarefeet < 6000)),
+   strip=strip.custom(strip.levels=TRUE))

```

The resulting plot is shown in Figure 14-23. Now the linear relationship is much more pronounced. Note the different slopes in different neighborhoods. As you might expect, some up-and-coming neighborhoods (like zip code 94110, which includes the Mission and Bernal Heights) are more shallowly sloped, while ritzy neighborhoods (like zip code 94123, which includes the Marina and Cow Hollow) are more steeply sloped.

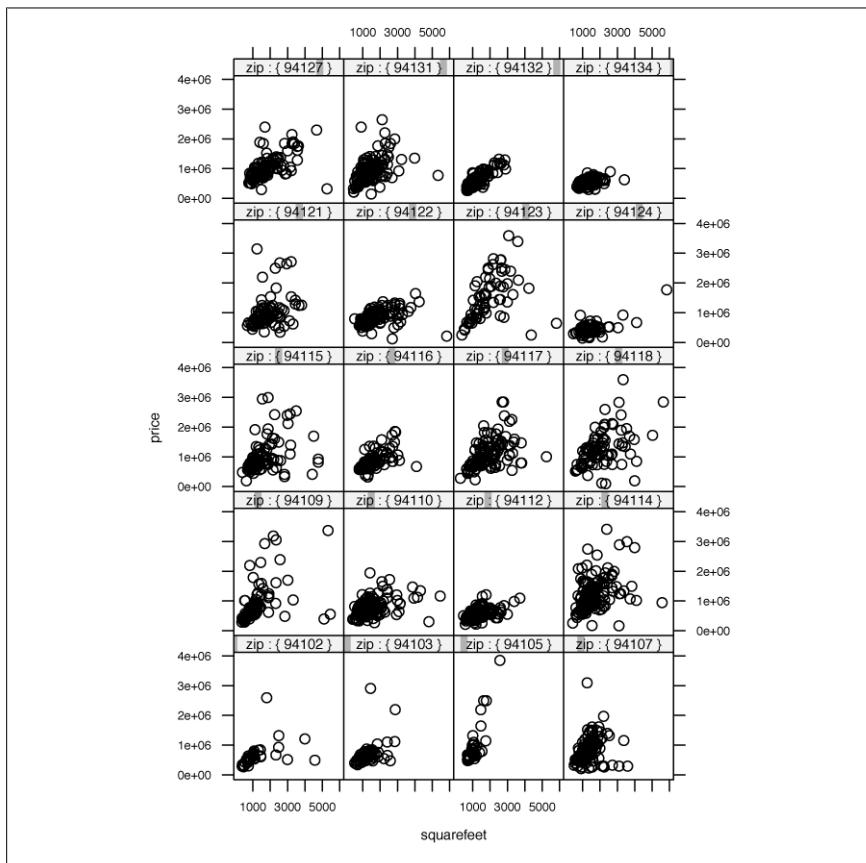


Figure 14-23. Scatter plot comparing house size and price by zip code

We can make this slightly more readable by using neighborhood names. Let's rerun the code, conditioning by neighborhood. We'll also add a diagonal line to each plot (through a custom panel function) to make the charts even easier to read. We'll also

change the default points plotted to be solid (through the `pch=19` argument) and shrink them to a smaller size (through the `cex=.2` argument):

```
> trellis.par.set(fontsize=list(text=7))
> dollars.per.squarefoot <- mean(
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales$price / sanfrancisco.home.sales$squarefeet,
+   na.rm=TRUE);
> xyplot(price~squarefeet|neighborhood,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales,
+   pch=19,
+   cex=.2,
+   subset=(zip != 94100 & zip != 94104 & zip != 94108 &
+           zip != 94111 & zip != 94133 & zip != 94158 &
+           price < 4000000 &
+           ifelse(is.na(squarefeet), FALSE, squarefeet < 6000)),
+   strip=strip.custom(strip.levels=TRUE,
+   horizontal=TRUE,
+   par.strip.text=list(cex=.8)),
+   panel=function(...) {
+     panel.abline(a=0,b=dollars.per.squarefoot);
+     panel.xyplot(...);
+   }
+ )
```

This plot is shown in [Figure 14-24](#).

### Box plots in lattice

The San Francisco home sales data set was taken from a particularly interesting time: the housing market crash. (The market fell a little late in San Francisco compared with other cities.) Let's take a look at how prices changed over time during this period. We could plot just the median price or mean price, or the number of sales. However, the `lattice` package gives us tools that will let us watch how the whole distribution changed over time. Specifically, we can use box plots.

Box plots in the `lattice` package are just like box plots drawn with the `graphics` package, as described in [“Box Plots” on page 242](#). The boxes represent prices from the 25th through the 75th percentiles (the interquartile range), the dots represent median prices, and the whiskers represent the minimum or maximum values. (When there are values that stretch beyond 1.5 times the length of the interquartile range, the whiskers are truncated at those extremes.)

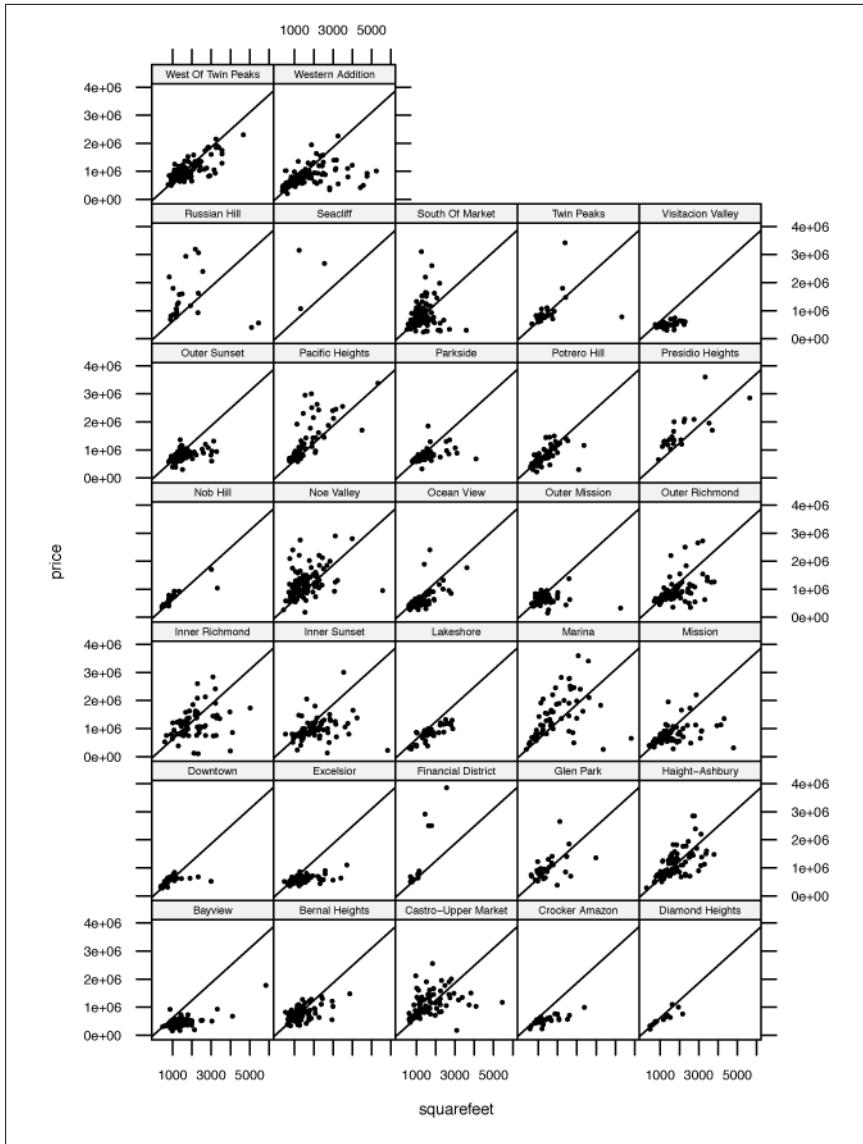


Figure 14-24. Scatter plot comparing house size and price by neighborhood

To show box plots with Trellis graphics, use the function `bwplot`:

```
bwplot(x,
       data,
       allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
       outer = FALSE,
       auto.key = FALSE,
       aspect = "fill",
       panel = latticegetOption("panel.bwplot"),
       prepanel = NULL,
       scales = list(),
       strip = TRUE,
       groups = NULL,
       xlab,
       xlim,
       ylab,
       ylim,
       box.ratio = 1,
       horizontal = NULL,
       drop.unused.levels = latticegetOption("drop.unused.levels"),
       ...,
       lattice.options = NULL,
       default.scales,
       subscripts = !is.null(groups),
       subset = TRUE)
```

This function will, in turn, call `panel.bwplot`:

```
panel.bwplot(x, y, box.ratio = 1,
              box.width = box.ratio / (1 + box.ratio),
              horizontal = TRUE,
              pch, col, alpha, cex,
              font, fontfamily, fontface,
              fill, varwidth = FALSE,
              notch = FALSE, notch.frac = 0.5,
              ...,
              levels.fos,
              stats = boxplot.stats,
              coef = 1.5,
              do.out = TRUE)
```

Let's show a set of box plots, with one plot per month. We'll need to round the date ranges to the nearest month. A convenient way to do this in R is with the `cut` function. Here's the number of sales by month in this data set:

```
> table(cut(sanfrancisco.home.sales$saledate, "month"))
```

|            |            |            |            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 2008-02-01 | 2008-03-01 | 2008-04-01 | 2008-05-01 | 2008-06-01 | 2008-07-01 |
| 139        | 230        | 267        | 253        | 237        | 198        |
| 2008-08-01 | 2008-09-01 | 2008-10-01 | 2008-11-01 | 2008-12-01 | 2009-01-01 |
| 253        | 223        | 272        | 118        | 181        | 114        |
| 2009-02-01 | 2009-03-01 | 2009-04-01 | 2009-05-01 | 2009-06-01 | 2009-07-01 |
| 123        | 142        | 116        | 180        | 150        | 85         |

As you may remember from above, the cutoff dates don't fall neatly on the beginning and ending of each month:

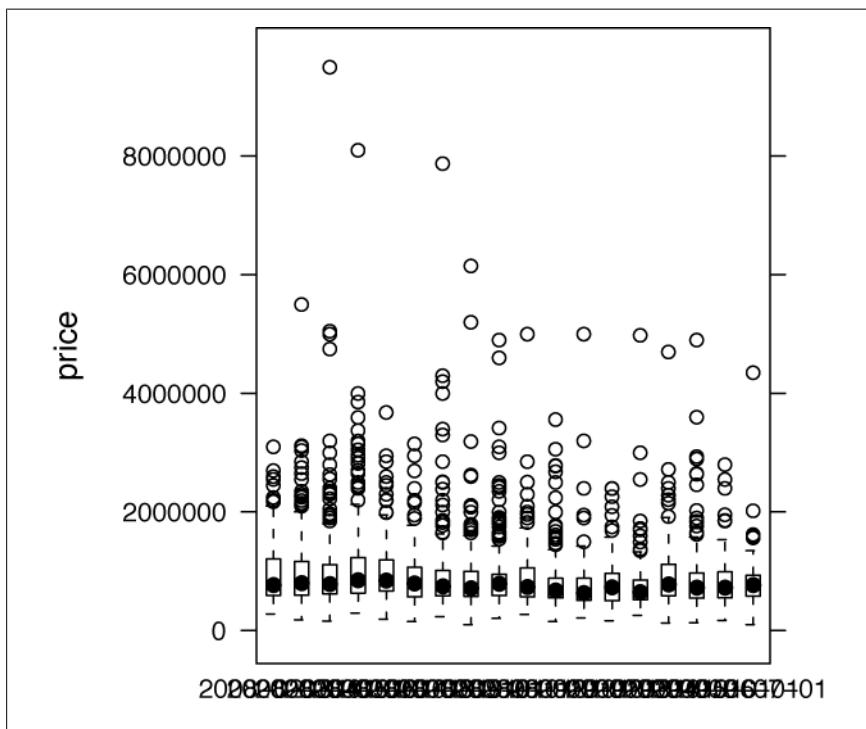
```
> min(sanfrancisco.home.sales$saledate)
[1] "2008-02-13"
> max(sanfrancisco.home.sales$saledate)
[1] "2009-07-14"
```

So don't focus too much on the volumes in February 2008 or July 2009. (Volume was much lower in the spring.) Let's take a look at the distribution of sales prices by month. Here's the code to present this data using the default representation:

```
> bwplot(price~cut(saledate, "month"), data=sanfrancisco.home.sales)
```

Unfortunately, this doesn't produce an easily readable plot, as you can see in [Figure 14-25](#). It's clear that there are a large number of outliers that are making the plot hard to see. Box plots assume a normal distribution, but this doesn't make intuitive sense for real estate prices (as we saw in [“Univariate quantile-quantile plots” on page 288](#)). Let's try plotting the box plots again, this time with the log-transformed values. To make it more readable, we'll change to vertical box plots and rotate the text at the bottom:

```
> bwplot(log(price)~cut(saledate, "month"),
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales,
+   scales=list(x=list(rot=90)))
```



*Figure 14-25. Box plot of real estate prices by month: first attempt*

Taking a look at the plot (shown in Figure 14-26), we can more clearly see some trends. Median prices moved around a lot during this period, though the interquartile range moved less. Moreover, it looks like sales at the high end of the market slowed down quite a bit (looking at the outliers on the top and the top whiskers). But, interestingly, the basic distribution appears pretty stable from month to month.

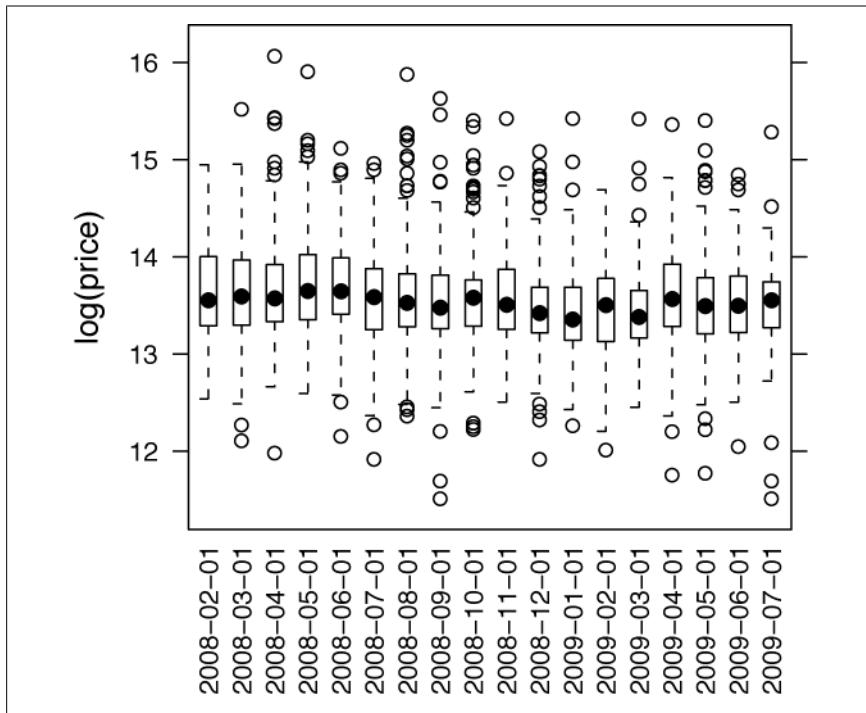


Figure 14-26. Box plot of real estate prices by month (log transformed)

### Scatter plots matrices

If you would like to generate a matrix of scatter plots for many different pairs of variables, use the `splom` function:

```
splom(x,
      data,
      auto.key = FALSE,
      aspect = 1,
      between = list(x = 0.5, y = 0.5),
      panel = latticegetOption("panel.splom"),
      prepanel,
      scales,
      strip,
      groups,
      xlab,
      xlim,
      ylab = NULL,
```

```

ylim,
superpanel = latticegetOption("panel.pairs"),
pscales = 5,
varnames,
drop.unused.levels,
...,
lattice.options = NULL,
default.scales,
subset = TRUE)

```

Most of the work is done by `panel.splom`:

```
panel.splom(...)
```

## Bivariate quantile-quantile plots

If you would like to generate quantile-quantile plots for comparing two distributions, use the function `qq`:

```

qq(x, data, aspect = "fill",
  panel = latticegetOption("panel.qq"),
  prepanel, scales, strip,
  groups, xlab, xlim, ylab, ylim, f.value = NULL,
  drop.unused.levels = latticegetOption("drop.unused.levels"),
  ...,
  lattice.options = NULL,
  qtype = 7,
  default.scales = list(),
  subscripts,
  subset)

```

## Trivariate Plots

If you would like to plot three-dimensional data with Trellis graphics, there are several functions available.

### Level plots

To plot three-dimensional data in flat grids, with colors showing different values for the third dimension, use the `levelplot` function:

```

levelplot(x,
          data,
          allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,
          outer = TRUE,
          aspect = "fill",
          panel = latticegetOption("panel.levelplot"),
          prepnel = NULL,
          scales = list(),
          strip = TRUE,
          groups = NULL,
          xlab,
          xlim,
          ylab,
          ylim,
          at,
          cuts = 15,

```

```

pretty = FALSE,
region = TRUE,
drop.unused.levels = latticegetOption("drop.unused.levels"),
...,
lattice.options = NULL,
default.scales = list(),
colorkey = region,
col.regions,
alpha.regions,
subset = TRUE)

```

Most of the work is done by `panel.levelplot`:

```

panel.levelplot(x, y, z,
                 subscripts,
                 at = pretty(z),
                 shrink,
                 labels,
                 label.style = c("mixed", "flat", "align"),
                 contour = FALSE,
                 region = TRUE,
                 col = add.line$col,
                 lty = add.line$lty,
                 lwd = add.line$lwd,
                 ...,
                 col.regions = regions$col,
                 alpha.regions = regions$alpha)

```

As an example of level plots, we will look at the San Francisco home sales data set. Let's start by looking at the number of home sales in different parts of the city. To do this, we'll need to use that coordinate data in the San Francisco home sales data set. Unfortunately, we can't use the coordinates directly; the coordinates are too precise, so the `levelplot` function simply plots a large number of points. (Try executing `levelplot(price~latitude+longitude)` to see what I mean.)

We'll need to break the data into bins and count the number of homes within each bin. To do this, we'll use the `table` and `cut` functions:

```

> attach(sanfrancisco.home.sales)
> levelplot(table(cut(longitude, breaks=40),
+                  cut(latitude, breaks=40)),
+            scales=list(y=list(cex=.5),
+                        x=list(rot=90, cex=.5)))

```

This plot is shown in [Figure 14-27](#). If we were interested in looking at the average sales price by area, we could use a similar strategy. Instead of `table`, we'll use the `tapply` function to aggregate observations. And while we're at it, we'll cut out the axis labels:

```

> levelplot(tapply(price,
+                   INDEX=list(cut(longitude, breaks=40),
+                              cut(latitude, breaks=40)),
+                   FUN=mean),
+            scales=list(draw=FALSE))

```

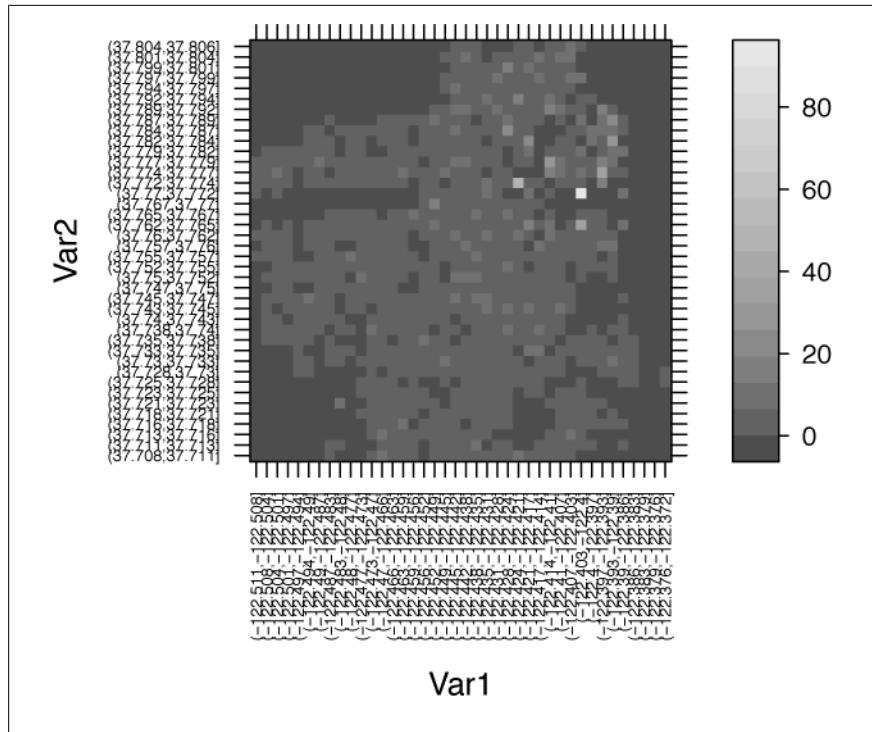


Figure 14-27. Level plot showing number of sales by location

This plot is shown in [Figure 14-28](#). And, of course, you can use conditioning values with level plots. Let's look at the number of home sales by numbers of bedrooms. We'll simplify the data slightly by looking at houses with zero to four bedrooms and then houses with five bedrooms or more. We'll also cut the number of breaks to keep the charts legible:

```
> bedrooms.capped <- ifelse(bedrooms < 5, bedrooms, 5);
> levelplot(table(cut(longitude, breaks=25),
+                 cut(latitude, breaks=25),
+                 bedrooms.capped),
+            scales=list(draw=FALSE))
```

This figure is shown in [Figure 14-29](#).

### Contour plots

If you would like to show contour plots with `lattice` (which resemble topographic maps), then use the `contourplot` function:

```
contourplot(x,
            data,
            panel = latticegetOption("panel.contourplot"),
            cuts = 7,
            labels = TRUE,
            contour = TRUE,
```

```
pretty = TRUE,  
region = FALSE,  
...)
```

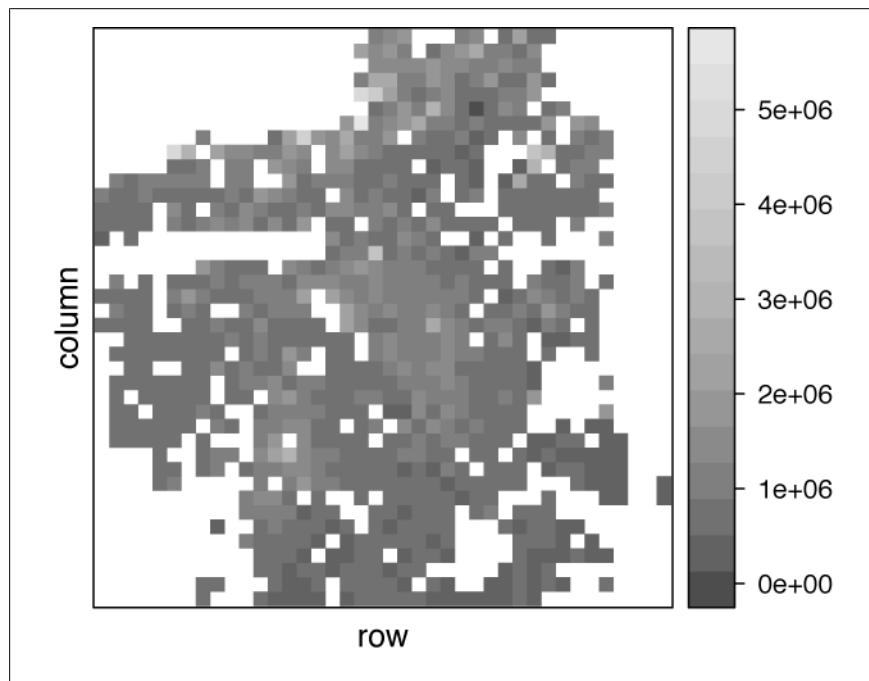


Figure 14-28. Level plot showing mean price by location

### Cloud plots

To plot points in three dimensions (technically, projections into two dimensions of the points in three dimensions), use the function `cloud`:

```
cloud(x,  
      data,  
      allow.multiple = is.null(groups) || outer,  
      outer = FALSE,  
      auto.key = FALSE,  
      aspect = c(1,1),  
      panel.aspect = 1,  
      panel = lattice.getOption("panel.cloud"),  
      prepanel = NULL,  
      scales = list(),  
      strip = TRUE,  
      groups = NULL,  
      xlab,  
      ylab,  
      zlab,  
      xlim = if (is.factor(x)) levels(x) else range(x, finite = TRUE),  
      ylim = if (is.factor(y)) levels(y) else range(y, finite = TRUE),  
      zlim = if (is.factor(z)) levels(z) else range(z, finite = TRUE),
```

```
at,  
drape = FALSE,  
pretty = FALSE,  
drop.unused.levels,  
...,  
lattice.options = NULL,  
default.scales =  
list(distance = c(1, 1, 1),  
     arrows = TRUE,  
     axs = axs.default),  
colorkey,  
col.regions,  
alpha.regions,  
cuts = 70,  
subset = TRUE,  
axs.default = "r")
```

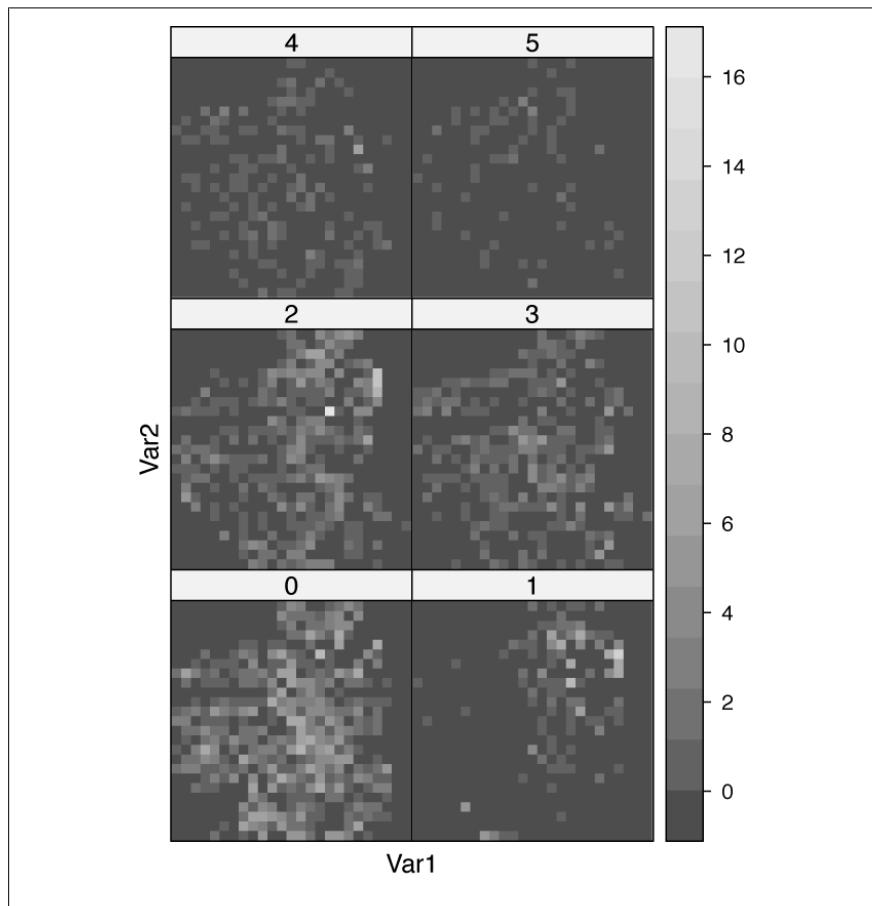


Figure 14-29. Level plot showing number of sales by location for different numbers of bedrooms

By default, plots are drawn with `panel.cloud`:

```
panel.cloud(x, y, subscripts, z,
            groups = NULL,
            perspective = TRUE,
            distance = if (perspective) 0.2 else 0,
            xlim, ylim, zlim,
            panel.3d.cloud = "panel.3dscatter",
            panel.3d.wireframe = "panel.3dwire",
            screen = list(z = 40, x = -60),
            R.mat = diag(4), aspect = c(1, 1),
            par.box = NULL,
            xlab, ylab, zlab,
            xlab.default, ylab.default, zlab.default,
            scales.3d,
            proportion = 0.6,
            wireframe = FALSE,
            scpos,
            ...,
            at)
```

### Wire-frame plots

Finally, if you would like to show a three-dimensional surface, use the function `wireframe`:

```
wireframe(x,
           data,
           panel = lattice.getOption("panel.wireframe"),
           ...)
```

## Other Plots

If you have fitted a model to a data set, the `rfs` function can help you visualize how well the model fits the data:

```
rfs(model, layout=c(2, 1), xlab="f-value", ylab=NULL,
     distribution = qunif,
     panel, prepanel, strip, ...)
```

The `rfs` function plots residual and fit-spread (RFS) plots. As an example, we'll use the model described in “[Example: A Simple Linear Model](#)” on page 401. The example is a linear model for runs scored in baseball games as a function of team offensive statistics. For a full explanation, see [Chapter 20](#); here we just want to show what charts are plotted for linear models with the `rfs` function:

```
> rfs(runs.mdl)
```

The plot generated by this command is shown in [Figure 14-30](#). Notice that the two curves are S shaped. The residual plot is a quantile-quantile plot of the residuals; we'd expect the plot to be linear if the data fit the assumed distribution. The default distribution choice for `rfs` is a uniform distribution, which clearly isn't right. Let's try generating a second set of plots, assuming a normal distribution for the residuals:

```
> rfs(runs.mdl, distribution=qnorm)
```

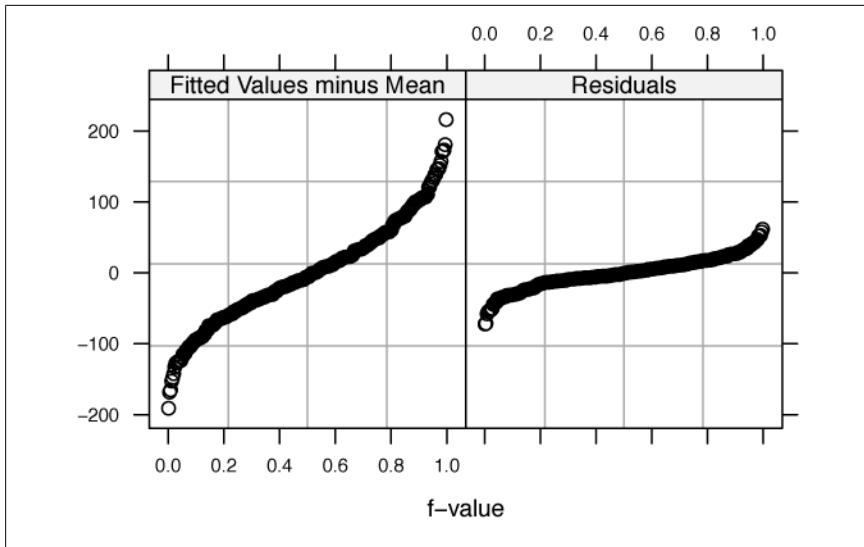


Figure 14-30. RFS plot for runs model (uniformly distributed residuals)

The results are shown in Figure 14-31. Notice that the plots are roughly linear. We expect a normally distributed error function for a linear regression model, so this is a good thing.

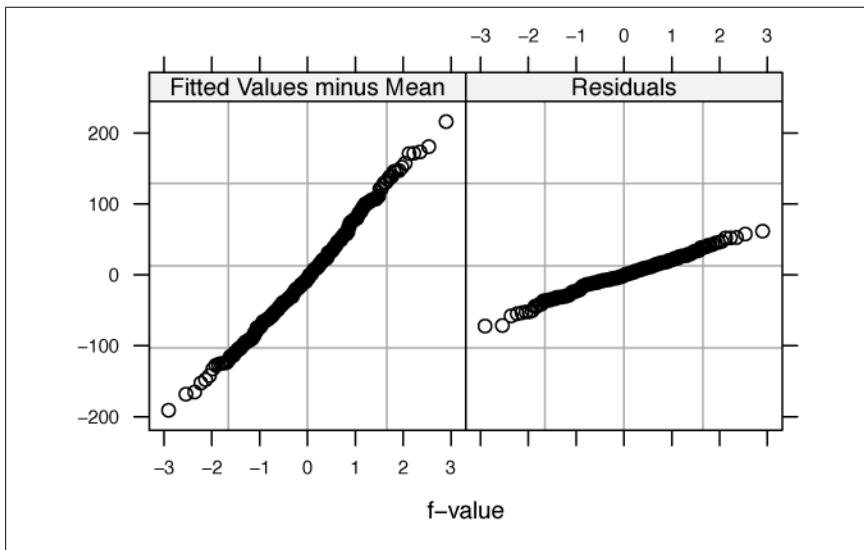


Figure 14-31. RFS plot for runs model (normally distributed residuals)

# Customizing Lattice Graphics

Most lattice functions share common arguments; the same argument has a similar effect in multiple functions. This section describes what each of those arguments does. Additionally, this section explains how to fine-tune the output of lattice functions.

## Common Arguments to Lattice Functions

Lattice functions share many common arguments. Instead of explaining what each function does separately I'll explain them in a single table. (Note that the default values for many of these arguments, in particular the panel functions, aren't the same among functions.)

| Argument       | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| x              | The object to plot. May be a formula, array, numeric vector, or table.   |
| data           | When x is a formula, data is a data frame in which the function is evaluated.  |
| allow.multiple | Specifies how to interpret formulas of the form $y_1 + y_2 \sim X   Z$ (where X is a function of multiple variables and Z may also be a function of multiple variables). By default, if allow.multiple=TRUE, then the lattice function will plot both $y_1 \sim X   Z$ and $y_2 \sim X   Z$ superimposed on the same panel. However, if you set allow.multiple=FALSE, then the lattice function will plot $(y_1 + y_2) \sim X   Z$ (summing $y_1 + y_2$ ). |
| outer          | Specifies whether to superimpose plots or not when allow.multiple=TRUE and multiple dependent variables are specified. When outer=FALSE, the plots are superimposed; when outer=TRUE, plots are shown in different panels.   |
| box.ratio      | For plots that show data in rectangles (bwplot, barchart, and stripplot), a numeric value that specifies the ratio of the width of the rectangles to the inner rectangle space.  |
| horizontal     | For plots that can be laid out vertically or horizontally (bwplot, dotplot, barchart and stripplot), a logical value that specifies the direction to plot.   |
| panel          | The panel function used to actually draw the plots.  |
| aspect         | Specifies the aspect ratio to use for different panels. Allowable values are aspect="fill" to fill the available space (the default), aspect="xy" to compute aspect ratios based on Cleveland's 45° banking rule, and aspect="iso" for isometric scales.   |
| groups         | Specifies a variable (or expression of variables) describing groups of data to pass to the panel function. In most cases, groups specifies the sets of values to show in different colors or with different symbols.   |
| auto.key       | A logical value specifying whether to automatically draw a key showing the names of groups corresponding to different colors or symbols. (The variables key and legend override auto.key.)   |
| prepanel       | A function that takes the same arguments as panel and returns a list containing values xlim, ylim, dx, and dy (and, less frequently, xat and yat). The prepanel function is used to determine how much space is required to plot a panel. See the help files or [Sarkar2008] for more information.   |
| strip          | A logical value specifying whether strips (that label panels) should be drawn.   |
| xlab           | A character value specifying the label for the x-axis.   |
| ylab           | A character value specifying the label for the y-axis.   |
| scales         | A list that specifies how the x- and y-axes should be drawn.   |

| Argument           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| subscripts         | A logical value specifying whether a vector named subscripts should be passed to the panel function. See the help files or [Sarkar2008] for more information.   |
| subset             | Specifies the subset of values from <code>data</code> to plot. (By default, includes all values.) You can specify a logical vector or an expression that can be evaluated within <code>data</code> . (Note: be careful of NA values in subset vectors. Additionally, note that <code>subset</code> does not remove unused levels from plotted factors, so keys may contain these values.) |
| xlim               | Specifies the minimum and maximum values for the x-axis.  |
| ylim               | Specifies the minimum and maximum values for the y-axis.  |
| drop.unused.levels | A logical value (or a list outlining what to do for different components of <code>x</code> ) specifying whether to drop unused levels of factors.   |
| default.scales     | A list giving the default value of scales. See the help files or [Sarkar2008] for more information.   |
| lattice.options    | A list of plotting parameters, similar to <code>par</code> values for standard R graphics. See the help file for <code>lattice.options</code> for more information.   |
| ...                | Arguments passed to the internal function <code>trellis.skeleton</code> .   |

## trellis.skeleton

The following table shows arguments to `trellis.skeleton`, which are effectively arguments to all high-level Trellis functions even when not listed.

| Argument       | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| as.table       | Specifies the order in which panels are drawn. Use <code>as.table=FALSE</code> to draw from left to right, bottom to top or as <code>as.table=TRUE</code> to draw from left to right, top to bottom.  |
| between        | A list with components <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> specifying the space between panels.   |
| key            | A list of arguments that define a legend of the components in the plot.   |
| legend         | A list specifying a set of grid objects to be used as legends. See the help file for <code>xypplot</code> or [Sarkar2008] for more details.   |
| page           | A single-argument function to be called after drawing each page. (The argument is the page number.)   |
| main           | A character value or expression specifying the main title for the plot.   |
| sub            | A character value or expression specifying the subtitle for the plot.   |
| par.strip.text | A list of parameters that control the strip text. (Includes <code>col</code> , <code>cex</code> , <code>lines</code> , <code>abbreviate</code> , <code>minlength</code> , <code>dot</code> .)   |
| layout         | A numeric vector specifying the number of rows, columns, and pages. You may specify a value of 0 for a dimension to mean “fit in as many as needed for this dimension to meet my request for the other dimensions.” For example, <code>c(1, 5)</code> means “one column, five rows,” while <code>c(0, 5)</code> means “as many columns as are needed with exactly five rows.” |
| skip           | A logical vector specifying which panels to skip printing.  |
| strip.left     | A function to draw strips on the left side of each panel.   |
| xlab.default   | Default label for x-axis when <code>xlab</code> is not specified.   |
| ylab.default   | Default label for y-axis when <code>ylab</code> is not specified.   |

| Argument          | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| xscale.components | A function to determine axis notation for the <i>x</i> -axis. See the help file for <code>xscale.components.default</code> for more information.   |
| yscale.components | A function to determine axis notation for the <i>y</i> -axis. See the help file for <code>yscale.components.default</code> for more information.   |
| axis              | A function that draws axis notation. See the help file for <code>axis.default</code> for more information.   |
| perm.cond         | A numeric vector specifying a permutation of the conditioning variables. By default, the lattice functions draw panels in the order in which the conditioning variables are specified; this variable allows you to change that behavior. See the help file for more information. |
| index.cond        | A list of functions that can be used to subset or reorder the array of conditioning variables. See the help file for <code>xypplot</code> for more information.  |
| par.settings      | A list of parameters, such as those set with <code>trellis.par.set</code> . See below for a list of available parameters.  |
| plot.args         | A list of arguments to <code>plot.trellis</code> . (See below for a table of arguments.)   |

## Controlling How Axes Are Drawn

You can control how axes are drawn in the `lattice` package by named values in the argument `scales`. You may specify a single list for *x*- and *y*-axes or specify a list of lists with separate *x*- and *y*-axes. (For example, to shrink all text by 50% and just plot the *x*-axis as a base 2 logarithm, use the argument `scales=list(cex=.5, x = list(log = 2))`.) Here is a table of the available arguments.

| Argument                   | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| relation                   | Determines how limits are calculated for each panel. Specify <code>relation="same"</code> to use the same scale, <code>relation="free"</code> to determine different limits in each panel, and <code>relation="sliced"</code> to keep the length the same in each panel but use different limits.  |
| tick.number                | Suggested number of tick marks. Ignored for character values, factors, and shingles.   |
| draw                       | A logical value specifying whether to draw the axis.   |
| alternating                | Specifies whether to alternate axis locations between panels. Specify <code>alternating=TRUE</code> to alternate, <code>alternating=FALSE</code> not to alternate. Alternatively, you can specify a numeric vector that describes what to do with each panel: 0 not to draw axes, 1 to draw bottom/left, 2 to draw top/right, 3 to draw on both sides. |
| limits                     | Limits for each axis; equivalent to <code>xlim</code> and <code>ylim</code> .  |
| at                         | A numeric vector describing where to plot tick marks (in native coordinates) or a list describing where to plot tick marks for each panel.   |
| labels                     | Labels to accompany <code>at</code> , specified as a vector (or list of vectors).  |
| cex                        | A numeric value that controls the size of axis labels ("character expansion" factor). Can specify a vector of length 2 to separately control left/bottom and right/top.  |
| font, fontface, fontfamily | Specify typeface for axis labels.  |
| tck                        | A numeric value specifying the length of the tick marks.   |
| col                        | Color of tick marks and labels.  |

| Argument   | Description   |
|------------|---|
| rot        | Angle to rotate axis labels. Can specify a vector of length 2 to separately control left/bottom and right/top.  |
| abbreviate | A logical value specifying whether to abbreviate labels using the function <code>abbreviate</code> .  |
| minlength  | An argument passed to function <code>abbreviate</code> if argument <code>abbreviate=TRUE</code> .   |
| log        | Specifies whether to transform the data values to log scale prior to drawing and label the axis in log scale. Specify <code>log=FALSE</code> not to transform the values, <code>log="e"</code> to transform using a natural logarithm, or set <code>log</code> to another numeric value to use that base logarithm. |
| format     | The format to use for data/time variables; see the help file for <code>strptime</code> for more information.  |
| axs        | Use <code>axs="r"</code> to pad date values on each side, <code>axs="i"</code> to use exact values.   |

## Parameters

In “Graphical Parameters” on page 247, we talked about the set of graphical parameters available with conventional graphics in R. As you may recall, you could use the function `par` to get or set default parameters. For example, to check the value of the parameter `cex`:

```
> par("cex")
[1] 1
```

The namespace is not hierarchical; every parameter has a single name. Currently, there are 70 different parameters available in the standard `graphics` package:

```
> length(par())
[1] 70
```

There is a similar mechanism for lattice graphics. It’s a little more complicated, but it’s also a lot easier to understand than a single list of named items, and it’s a lot more flexible.

To check the value of a setting, use the function `trellis.par.get`. As an example, let’s check the values of the “`axis.text`” parameter, which controls the look of text printed on axes:

```
> trellis.par.get("axis.text")
$alpha
[1] 1

$cex
[1] 0.8

$col
[1] "#000000"

$font
[1] 1
```

To change a setting, use `trellis.par.set`. To make the text even smaller, we could change the parameter `axis.text$cex` to 0.5 with the following command:

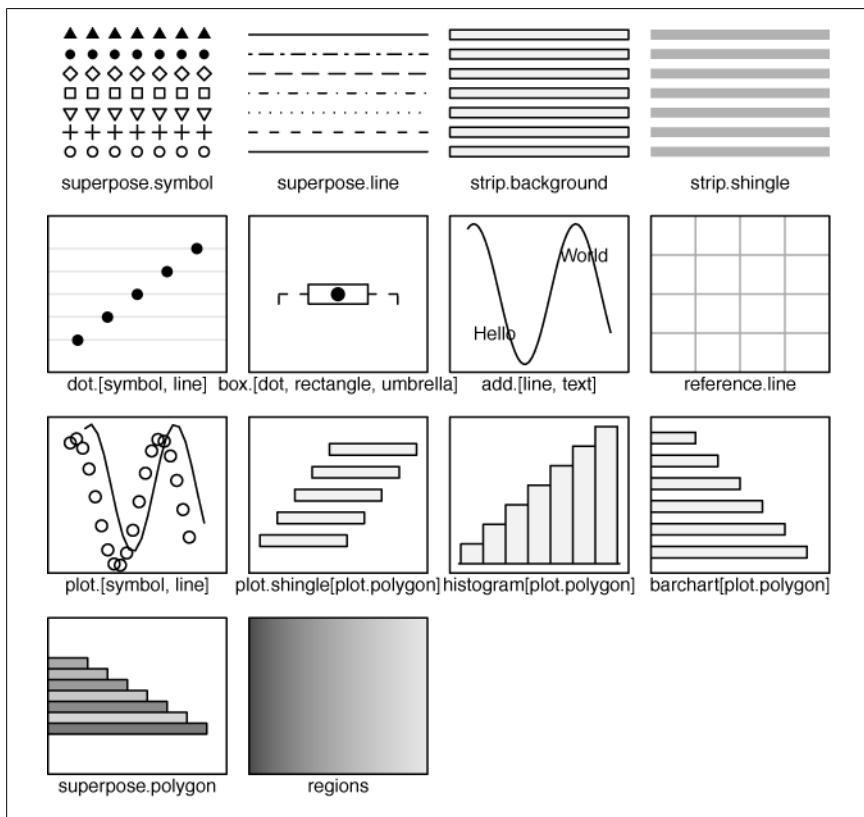
```
> trellis.par.set(list(axis.text = list(cex = 0.5)))
```

If you'd like a list of all settings, simply call `trellis.par.get` with no arguments. Or, even better, try the function `show.settings`, which shows all the settings graphically:

```
> show.settings()
```

An example of the output of `show.settings` is shown in [Figure 14-32](#). Lattice graphics parameters are hierarchical; you can think of them as lists of lists. There are 34 high-level groups of parameters describing how different components are drawn:

```
> names(trellis.par.get())
[1] "grid.pars"          "fontsize"           "background"
[4] "clip"               "add.line"            "add.text"
[7] "plot.polygon"       "box.dot"             "box.rectangle"
[10] "box.umbrella"      "dot.line"            "dot.symbol"
[13] "plot.line"          "plot.symbol"         "reference.line"
[16] "strip.background"   "strip.shingle"        "strip.border"
[19] "superpose.line"     "superpose.symbol"    "superpose.polygon"
[22] "regions"            "shade.colors"        "axis.line"
[25] "axis.text"          "axis.components"    "layout.heights"
[28] "layout.widths"      "box.3d"              "par.xlab.text"
[31] "par.ylab.text"      "par.zlab.text"      "par.main.text"
[34] "par.sub.text"
```



*Figure 14-32. Example of `show.settings`*

Here's an explanation of what each of these groups of parameters controls:

*grid.pars*

A list of global parameters that can't be set elsewhere, such as `lex` and `lineend`.

*fontsize*

Base font size for all text on the Trellis device.

*background*

Color of plot background.

*clip*

Controls clipping for panels and strips.

*add.line, add.text*

Specifies the appearance of lines or text plotted by helper functions like `panel.grid` and `panel.text`.

*plot.polygon*

Specifies the appearance of bars in panels generated by `panel.barchart` and `panel.histogram`.

*box.dot, box.rectangle, box.umbrella*

Specifies the appearance of points, rectangles, and umbrellas in panels plotted by `panel.bwplot`.

*dot.line*

Specifies the appearance of lines in panels plotted by `panel.dotplot`.

*dot.symbol*

Specifies the appearance of lines in symbols plotted by `panel.dotplot`.

*plot.line*

Specifies the appearance of lines plotted by `panel.xyplot`, `panel.densityplot`, and `panel.cloud`.

*plot.symbol*

Specifies the appearance of points plotted by `panel.xyplot`, `panel.densityplot`, and `panel.cloud`.

*reference.line*

Specifies the appearance of reference lines plotted by `panel.grid` and `panel.text`.

*strip.background, strip.shingle, strip.border*

Specifies the default appearance of strips.

*superpose.line, superpose.symbol, superpose.polygon*

Specifies the appearance of lines, symbols, and polygons on superimposed plots.

*regions*

Specifies how regions are plotted by `panel.levelplot` and `panel.wireframe`.

*shade.colors*

Specifies colors for plots by `panel.levelplot` and `panel.wireframe`.

*axis.line, axis.text*

Specifies how lines and text are plotted in axes.

*axis.components*

Controls the appearance of axes.

*layout.heights, layout.widths*

Controls the height and width of panels in a lattice.

*box.3d*

Specifies the way boxes are drawn by `panel.cloud` and `panel.wireframe`.

*par.xlab.text, par.ylab.text, par.zlab.text*

Controls how text labels are plotted.

*par.main.text, par.sub.text*

Specifies defaults for main and subtitles.

Within these groups, there are more parameters. There are a total of 378 parameters. However, there are only 46 unique parameters within these groups.<sup>5</sup> Here is an explanation of the most common subparameters (many of which are similar to standard graphical parameters):

*alpha*

Controls transparency.

*border*

Border color.

*cex*

Character expansion factor; size of this type relative to `fontsize`.

*col*

Color for lines and points.

*fill*

Color for fills.

*font*

Font face.

*lineheight*

Height of a line, as a multiple of text size.

*lty*

Line type.

*lwd*

Line width.

*pch*

Plotting character.

5. In case you're curious, here's the code I used to count them:

```
> # count the total number of parameters
> length(names(unlist(trellis.par.get())))
[1] 378
> # count the number of unique parameters
> n <- names(trellis.par.get())
> p <- NA
> for (i in 1:34) {p <- c(p,names(trellis.par.get(n[i])));}
> length(table(p))
```

Here is an explanation of some of the nonstandard subparameters:

*palette*

Function generating color palette through parameter `shade.colors`.

*text, points*

Specifies text format through parameter `fontsize`.

*panel, strip*

Controls clipping for panels and strips in parameter `clip`.

`top.padding, main, main.key.padding, key.top, key.axis.padding, axis.top, strip, panel, axis.panel, between, axis.bottom, axis.xlab.padding, xlab, xlab.key.padding, key.bottom, key.sub.padding, sub, bottom.padding`

Parameters for `layout.heights`.

`left.padding, key.left, key.ylab.padding, ylab, ylab.axis.padding, axis.left, axis.panel, strip.left, panel, between, axis.right, axis.key.padding, key.right, right.padding`

Parameters for `layout.widths`.

For more information, see the help files for `par` (in the `graphics` package), `gpar` (in the `grid` package), or the help files for different panel functions.

## plot.trellis

As we noted above, lattice functions do not plot results; they return lattice objects. To plot a lattice object, you need to call `print` or `plot` on the lattice object.

The function that actually does the work is the `plot.trellis` function (which the help file claims is an alias for the `print.trellis` function). It's possible to control how lattice objects are printed through arguments to `plot.trellis`. As shown above, you can also pass these arguments to lattice functions through the `plot.args` argument. Here's a list of arguments for `plot.trellis`.

| Argument              | Description  | Default |
|-----------------------|--|---------|
| <code>x</code>        | The Trellis object to plot.  |         |
| <code>position</code> | A vector of four numbers, <code>c(xmin, ymin, xmax, ymax)</code> , specifying where to plot the object. Coordinates are between 0 and 1 for both dimensions.                                       |         |
| <code>split</code>    | A vector of four integers, <code>c(x, y, nx, ny)</code> , that says to position the current plot at the <code>x, y</code> position in a regular array of <code>nx</code> by <code>ny</code> plots. |         |
| <code>more</code>     | A logical value specifying whether more plots will follow on the current page.   | FALSE   |
| <code>newpage</code>  | A logical value specifying whether the plot should be on a new page.   | FALSE   |

| Argument     | Description  | Default                                   |
|--------------|--|---|
| packet.panel | A function that determines which packet is plotted in which panel.   | packet.panel.default                      |
| draw.in      | A grid viewport in which to draw the plot.   | NULL                                      |
| panel.height | A list of two components (x and units) specifying the height of each panel in the lattice plot.                                | latticegetOption("layout.heights")\$panel |
| panel.width  | A list of two components (x and units) specifying the width of each panel in the lattice plot.                                 | latticegetOption("layout.widths")\$panel  |
| save.object  | A logical value indicating whether to "save" the last object printed. See the help file for more information.                  | latticegetOption("save.object")           |
| panel.error  | A function that is executed if an error occurs while plotting the panel.   | latticegetOption("panel.error")           |
| prefix       | A character string to use as a prefix in viewport names, to distinguish similar plots. See the help file for more information. |   |
| ...          | Extra arguments: these are ignored.  |   |

## strip.default

To change the way strips are drawn, you can specify your own strip function as an argument to a lattice function. Strip functions are a little complicated to write from scratch, so it is usually best to modify the strips by writing a new function that creates a wrapper around the function `strip.default`:

```
strip.default(which.given,
             which.panel,
             var.name,
             factor.levels,
             shingle.intervals,
             strip.names = c(FALSE, TRUE),
             strip.levels = c(TRUE, FALSE),
             sep = " : ",
             style = 1,
             horizontal = TRUE,
             bg = trellis.par.get("strip.background")$col[which.given],
             fg = trellis.par.get("strip.shingle")$col[which.given],
             par.strip.text = trellis.par.get("add.text"))
```

The simplest way to modify the appearance of the strips is by using the function `strip.custom`. This function accepts the same arguments as `strip.default` and returns a new function that can be specified as an argument to a lattice function.

Here's a description of the arguments to `strip.default` (and, in turn, to `strip.custom`).

| Argument   | Description  | Default   |
|--|--|---|
| which.given,<br>which.panel,<br>var.name,<br>factor.levels,<br>shingle.intervals | These arguments contain the data for actually drawing the strip. (Probably not needed for <code>strip.custom</code> .)   |   |
| strip.names  | A logical vector with two elements that specifies whether to draw variable names in strips. <code>strip.names[0]</code> is used for factors and <code>strip.names[1]</code> for shingles.  | <code>c(FALSE, TRUE)</code>   |
| strip.levels   | A logical vector with two elements that specifies whether to draw variable values in strips. <code>strip.names[0]</code> is used for factors and <code>strip.names[1]</code> for shingles. | <code>c(TRUE, FALSE)</code>   |
| sep  | A character value specifying the separator if both name and level are shown.   |   |
| style  | An integer value specifying how the current level of a factor is encoded. See the help file for more information.  |   |
| horizontal   | A logical value specifying whether the labels should be horizontal.  |   |
| bg   | Specifies the background color.  | <code>trellis.par.get("strip.background") \$col[which.given]</code> |
| fg   | Specifies the foreground color.  | <code>trellis.par.get("strip.shingle") \$col[which.given]</code>    |
| par.strip.text   | A list of parameters controlling the way text is drawn in the script (such as <code>col</code> , <code>cex</code> , <code>font</code> ).   | <code>trellis.par.get("add.text")</code>                            |

## simpleKey

To customize the way that keys (or legends) are drawn for plots with multiple groups of variables, you may specify a custom function to the `key` argument, or you may use the `auto.key` argument to automatically draw a key using the `simpleKey` function. If you specify `autoKey=TRUE`, then `simpleKey` is called with the default arguments to generate the key. Alternatively, you can specify a list of arguments that are, in turn, passed as arguments to `simpleKey` to draw the legend:

```
simpleKey(text, points = TRUE,
          rectangles = FALSE,
          lines = FALSE,
          col, cex, alpha, font,
          fontface, fontfamily,
          lineheight, ...)
draw.key(key, draw=FALSE, vp=NULL, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `simpleKey`.

| Argument(s)  | Description  | Default |
|--|--|---------|
| text   | A character or expression vector specifying the text to be used to describe groups |         |
| points   | A logical value specifying whether a key should be provided for points             | TRUE    |
| rectangles   | A logical value specifying whether a key should be provided as filled rectangles   | FALSE   |
| lines  | A logical value specifying whether a key should be provided for lines              | FALSE   |
| col, cex, alpha, font, fontface,<br>fontfamily, lineheight | Graphical parameters that control different aspects of the key                     |         |

## Low-Level Functions

In “[Custom Panel Functions](#)” on page 272, we showed how to modify the appearance of a chart through custom panel functions. The `lattice` package includes a variety of different panel functions that you can use to customize your charts. You can start with one of the included panel functions, use another panel function, or even write your own.

### Low-Level Graphics Functions

Here is a list of some primitive panel plotting functions available within the `lattice` package. These are functions that are useful for writing your own panel functions from scratch, though they can also be used in conjunction with higher-level functions. (For example, you can use `panel.text` along with `panel.barchart` to plot a bar chart with added text.)

| Function(s)                            | Description  |
|--|--|
| <code>llines, panel.line</code>        | Plots lines  |
| <code>lpoints, panel.points</code>     | Plots points   |
| <code>ltext, panel.text</code>         | Plots text   |
| <code>lsegments, panel.segments</code> | Plots line segments  |
| <code>lpolygon, panel.polygons</code>  | Plots polygons   |
| <code>larrows, panel.arrows</code>     | Plots arrows   |
| <code>lrect, panel.rect</code>         | Plots rectangles   |
| <code>panel.axis</code>                | Plots axes   |
| <code>panel.superpose</code>           | Superimposes panel functions on top of the same plot (by grouping value) |

For more information on how to use these functions, see the help file for any of these functions (such as `llines`).

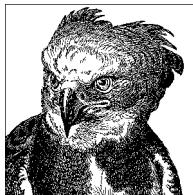
## Panel Functions

Here is a list of some functions for adding to, or customizing the appearance of, other panels. You can use these functions to add lines, text, and other graphical elements to lattice graphics. For an example of using panel functions to modify the appearance of a plot, see “[Custom Panel Functions](#)” on page 272.

| Function                       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <code>panel.abline</code>      | Adds a line to the chart area of a panel.   |
| <code>panel.curve</code>       | Adds a curve (defined by a mathematical expression) to the chart area of a panel.   |
| <code>panel.rug</code>         | Adds a “rug” to a panel. (Rugs look a lot like strip plots; you can superimpose a rug to show both exact points and groups in charts like density plots.)                           |
| <code>panel.mathdensity</code> | Plots a probability distribution given by a distribution function.  |
| <code>panel.average</code>     | Plots average values (grouped by a factor).   |
| <code>panel.fill</code>        | Fills the panel with a specified color.   |
| <code>panel.grid</code>        | Plots a reference grid.   |
| <code>panel.loess</code>       | Adds a smooth curve (fitted by loess).  |
| <code>panel.lmline</code>      | Plots a line fitted to the underlying data by a linear regression.  |
| <code>panel.refline</code>     | Adds a line to the chart area of a panel; just like <code>panel.abline</code> , except with different default settings (appropriate for, as you probably guessed, reference lines). |
| <code>panel.qqmathline</code>  | Adds a line through the points at the 25th and 75th percentile points of the sample and theoretical distribution. (Mostly useful for Q-Q plots.)                                    |
| <code>panel.violin</code>      | Draws violin plots. Usually used in place of box-and-whisker plots in box plots.  |

For more details on these functions, see the corresponding help files.





# 15

## ggplot2

Hadley Wickham’s `ggplot2`<sup>1</sup> has become one of the most popular R packages. `ggplot2` is a great tool for producing readable charts. But more importantly, `ggplot2` uses a language for describing how to plot data called the *grammar of graphics*. In this chapter, I’ll explain how to use the grammar of graphics to produce plots with `ggplot2`.

### A Short Introduction

To explain `ggplot2`, we’ll start by looking at a very simple data set:<sup>2</sup>

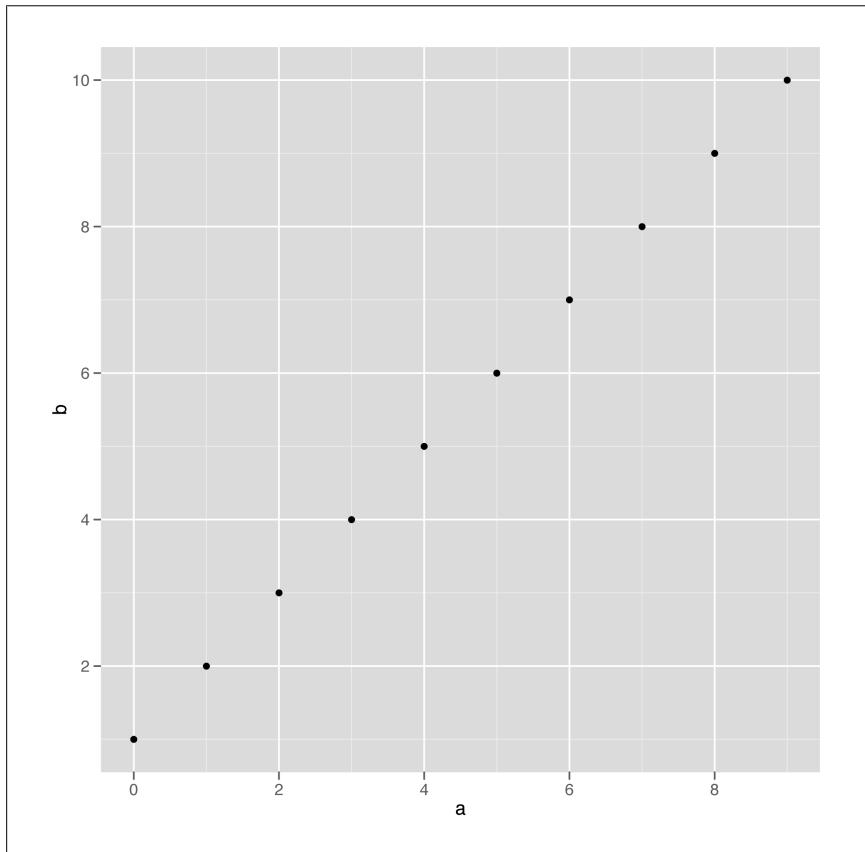
```
> d <- data.frame(a=c(0:9), b=c(1:10), c=c(rep(c("Odd", "Even"), times=5)))
> d
   a   b     c
1 0   1 Odd
2 1   2 Even
3 2   3 Odd
4 3   4 Even
5 4   5 Odd
6 5   6 Even
7 6   7 Odd
8 7   8 Even
9 8   9 Odd
10 9  10 Even
```

Let’s think about what we want to show. We want to show how variable `y` varies with variable `x`. (To start with, we’ll forget about showing which points belong in `a` or `b`, and just plot points.) We’ll use the `qplot` (for “quick plot”) function to show this relationship. Plotting points is the default for `qplot`, so we’ll call `qplot` with the arguments `x=a`, `y=b`, and `data=d`:

1. There is also a `ggplot` package; it was superseded by `ggplot2`. We won’t cover `ggplot` in this book.
2. This is almost the same as the data set I used to demonstrate lattice graphics, but I changed the variable names slightly to make it clearer how variables were mapped in `ggplot`.

```
> library(ggplot2)
> qplot(x=a, y=b, data=d)
```

The result is shown in [Figure 15-1](#). Notice what we specified: a value to plot on an x-axis, a value to plot on a y-axis, and a data set. We focused on describing the relationship we wanted to show, not on the type of plot. That's the key idea of `ggplot`: you describe what you want to present, not how to present it.



*Figure 15-1. Simplest qplot example*

When you create a new plot with `ggplot2`, you are not actually plotting the data to the screen. Instead, you are creating a new plot object. (This is very similar to how the `lattice` package works.) When you type a plot command on the console, R will create the object, and then the `print` method will be called on the object; the `print` method actually draws the object on the screen. (It's good to remember this because calling `ggplot2` functions within other functions will not plot the results unless you call `print` within the function or return an object that can be printed later.) Suppose that we assign the output of the first example to a variable like this:

```
> first.ggplot2.example <- qplot(x=a, y=b, data=d)
```

The plot object is assigned to the variable `first.ggplot2.example`, but the result isn't printed. You can print the object with the statement:

```
> print(first.ggplot2.example)
```

or

```
> first.ggplot2.example
```

But you can also examine and manipulate the plot object. For example, `ggplot2` objects have a summary method:

```
> summary(first.ggplot2.example)
data: a, b, c [10x3]
mapping: x = a, y = b
faceting: facet_null()
-----
geom_point:
stat_identity:
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

This describes the content of the object very concisely. As we noted above, this describes the underlying data frame, the mapping of variables in the data frame to entities that are plotted, and the object we are plotting: points. (For now, we'll ignore the other statements; I'll explain what it means in [“The Grammar of Graphics” on page 328](#).) But notice how clearly we can describe the content of the plot using `ggplot2`.

Let's customize the output of this plot to better understand the data. Just like in the `lattice` package, we can pick facets and see the results in different panels:

```
> qplot(x=a, y=b, data=d, facets=~c)3
```

The results are shown in [Figure 15-2](#). Notice that we use a formula to specify the facets; you can specify as many faceting variables as you need. Unlike lattice graphics, you can easily change the direction of the facets:

```
> qplot(x=a, y=b, data=d, facets=c~.)
```

The second faceting example is shown in [Figure 15-3](#). Alternately, you can change the color of the points to show which group they belong to, rather than presenting it in another panel. Here is how to produce the plot shown in [Figure 15-4](#):

```
> qplot(x=a, y=b, data=d, color=c)
```

The `qplot` function can also plot one-dimensional data. As an example, let's pick 1,000 pseudo-random, normally distributed values:

```
> set.seed(123456789)
> e <- data.frame(f=rnorm(1000))
> str(e)
```

3. Hadley Wickam, author of `ggplot2`, suggested rewriting this as:

```
> qplot(x=a, y=b, data=d) + facet_wrap(~ c)
```

He prefers to use the `facet_wrap` function to add facets to a `ggplot2` object.

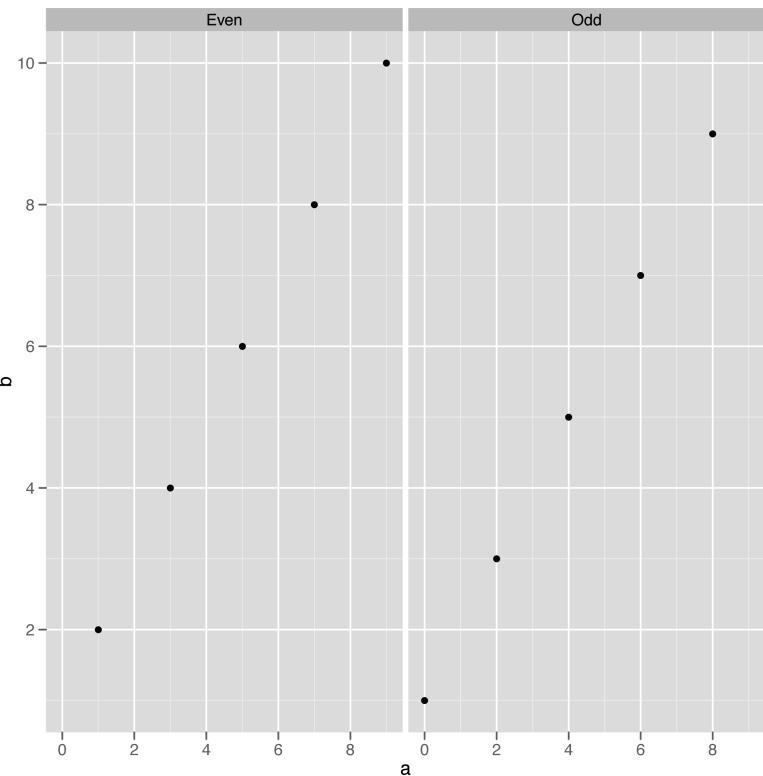


Figure 15-2. Faceting on the x-axis

```
'data.frame': 1000 obs. of 1 variable:  
 $ x: num 0.505 0.396 1.416 -0.722 -0.618 ...
```

Now, let's plot these with qplot:

```
> qplot(x=f, data=e)
```

The result is shown in Figure 15-5. Notice that qplot picks a histogram as the default value. We could just as easily have plotted the density function:

```
> qplot(x=f, data=e, geom="density")
```

The density plot is shown in Figure 15-6.

To explain how these plots were generated, we'll explore the grammar of graphics.

## The Grammar of Graphics

Every time you draw a chart, you are actually doing many different things. You are:

- Defining the data that will be shown to the user

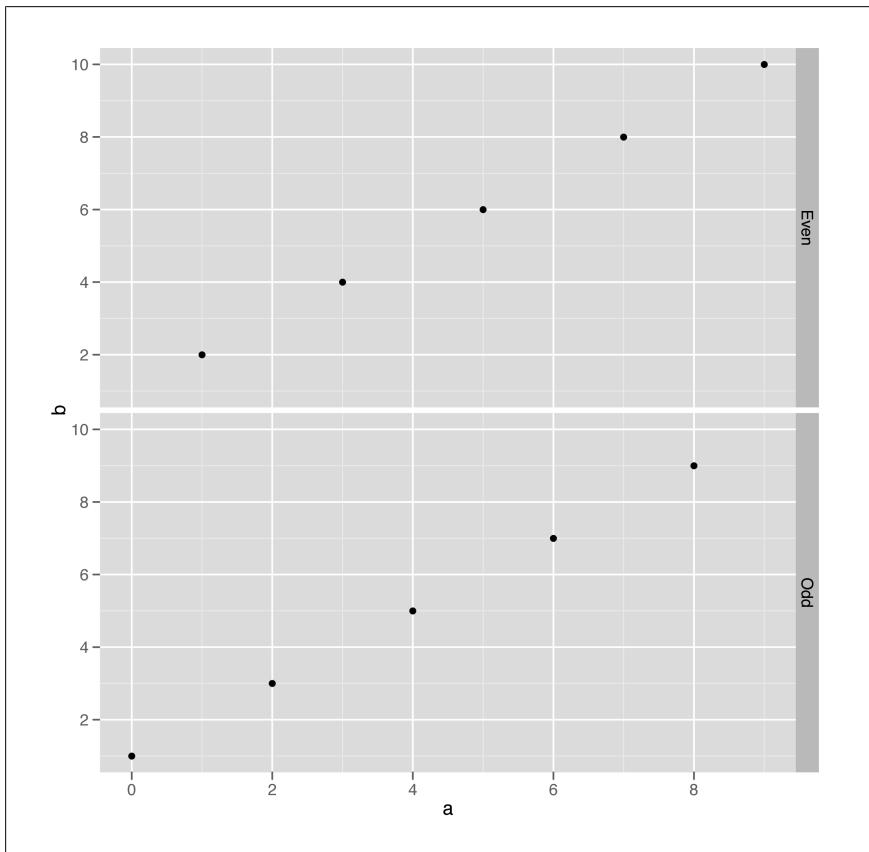


Figure 15-3. Faceting on the y-axis

- Determining how to summarize or transform the data
- Determining the graphical objects that will be used to represent the data
- Determining how to divide the data, and how to show different partitions
- Determining how the chart looks

When you draw a chart with most conventional tools (such as spreadsheets and presentation programs), you begin by picking a style of chart like a scatter plot, a pie chart, or a bar chart for your data. You may then refine the chart slightly by tweaking the size, color, and other visual parameters. These tools don't reflect the thought process in drawing a chart. If you have to summarize your data before plotting (for example, when plotting a histogram), it can be awkward to do so. It is often hard to tweak how the results are displayed. Worst of all, it can be difficult to pick a different object to represent the data.

The grammar of graphics is designed to help separate each step of the charting process. This can help you decide the best way to visualize data, and is especially helpful for defining new types of plots. Each of these different aspects of the charting process

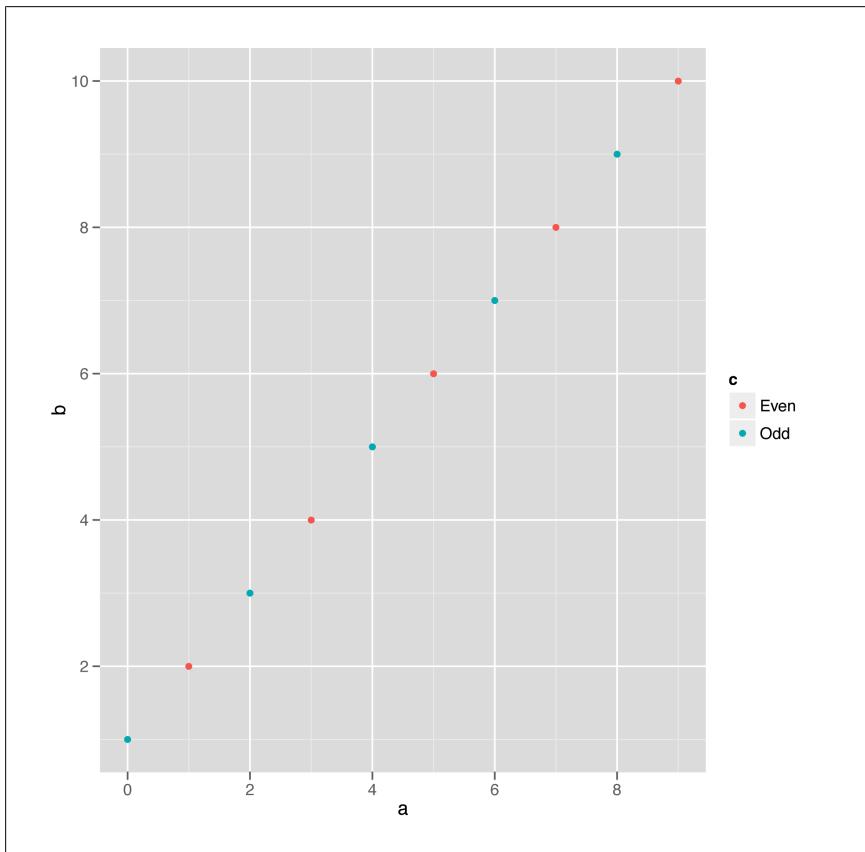


Figure 15-4. Marking different sets of points with different colors

is given a name in `ggplot2`; the tool reflects the language. The `ggplot2` package includes a variety of functions for altering each component of a plot. (The `qplot` function above simplifies this process by allowing you to use arguments to specify many of these different components, and choose reasonable default values.)

Here is the name for each different component of a chart in the grammar of graphics:

#### *Data*

The data that is being visualized.

#### *Mappings*

Mappings between variables in the data and components of the chart.

#### *Geometric Objects (geom)*

The geometric objects that are used to display the data. For example, scatter plots use `geom_point`, bar plots use `geom_bar`, and line plots use `geom_abline`.

#### *Aesthetic Properties (aes)*

The aesthetic properties determine how the plot looks. For example, typeface sizes, label locations, and tick marks are all aesthetic properties.

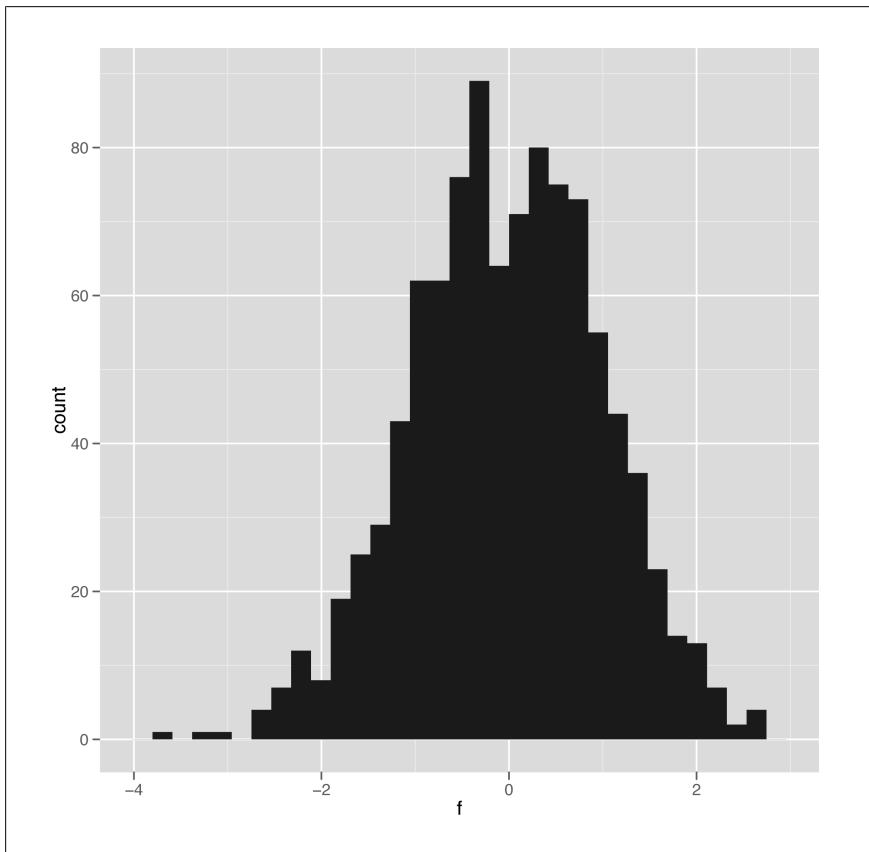


Figure 15-5. Single variable plotted with ggplot2 (as a histogram)

### Scales

Scales control how variables are mapped to aesthetics.

### Coordinates

Coordinates describe how data is mapped to the plot. For example, you can use simple Cartesian coordinates with `coord_cartesian`, polar coordinates with `coord_polar`, or geographic projections with `coord_map`.

### Statistical Transformations (stat)

Statistical transformations applied to the data to summarize the data. For example, boxplots use `stat_boxplot`, lines use `stat_abline`, and histograms use `stat_bin`.

### Facets

Describes how the data is partitioned into subsets and how these different subsets are plotted.

### Positional adjustments

Provides fine-grained control of where data is plotted.

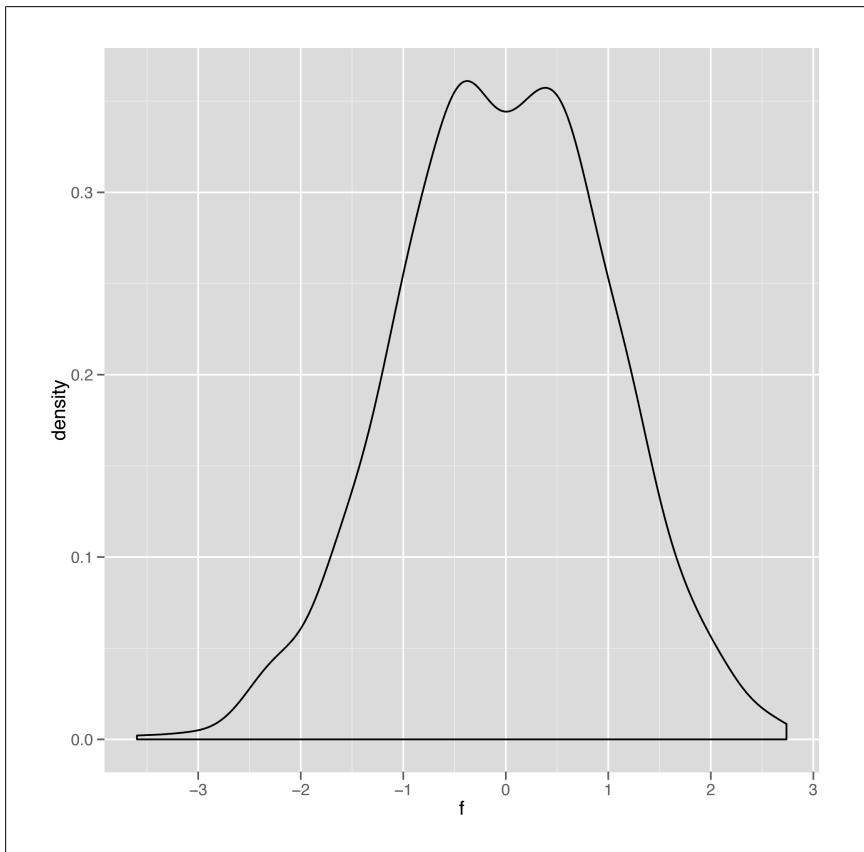


Figure 15-6. Single variable plotted with ggplot2 (as a density plot)

You can use the `summary` method on a `ggplot2` object to show each of these attributes for a plot. As an example, let's look at the density plot that we created previously:

```
> thehistogram <- qplot(x=f, data=e, geom="density")
> summary(thehistogram)
data: x [1000x1]
mapping: x = f
faceting: facet_null()
-----
geom_density:
stat_density:
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

The output shows us exactly how this plot maps to the grammar of graphics:

#### Data

A data set containing the variable `x` (with 1,000 values).

## *Mappings*

The “x” value in the plot is assigned to the variable `x` in the data frame.

## *Geometric Objects (geom)*

The geometric object is `geom_density`, a smooth density plot.

## *Aesthetic Properties (aes)*

We have not overridden any aesthetic properties.

## *Scales*

We have not customized the scale.

## *Coordinates*

We have not overridden the default coordinates.

## *Statistical Transformations (stat)*

For the density plot, we have used a `density` function to summarize the data.

## *Facets*

We did not facet the data.

## *Positional adjustments*

We did not make any positional adjustments; we used the identity function.

This can be useful when trying to figure out what a chart is showing and tuning the output to look the way you want. We’ll use this technique throughout this chapter.

## **A More Complex Example: Medicare Data**

To help show how to use `ggplot2` to solve problems, and to better understand the grammar of graphics, I’ll use a real, complicated data example: U.S. Medicare cost and outcome data. See “[Medicare Data](#)” on page 333 for more information.

### **Medicare Data**

To demonstrate `ggplot2`, I tried to find a rich and complicated real-world data set. You can download the data from the website [Medicare](#); it’s straightforward to load the raw data into R.

I have included several R data frames based on this data in the `nutshell` package:

#### *outcome.of.care.measures.national*

A small data set that shows the national average mortality and readmission rates for heart attacks, heart failure, and pneumonia.

#### *medicare.payments*

A data set that shows the average payment to each hospital for 70 common conditions. Average payments are available only for hospitals that treated a sufficient number of patients with each condition; otherwise, HIPAA makes it illegal to disclose this information.

#### *medicare.payments.by.state*

Similar to `medicare.payments`, but summarized at a state level.

For more details on these data sets, use the online help.

Let's start with a simple example: average mortality and readmission rates for three common medical conditions. We'd like to compare national treatment effectiveness statistics for three common diseases. This is a fairly simple data set: there is one dimension (the readmission rate), three conditions (Heart Attack, Heart Failure, and Pneumonia), and one factor variable (Measure) with two values (Mortality and Readmission). Here is the data:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(outcome.of.care.measures.national)
> outcome.of.care.measures.national
  Condition      Measure Rate
1 Heart Attack    Mortality 15.9
2 Heart Failure   Mortality 11.3
3 Pneumonia       Mortality 11.9
4 Heart Attack    Readmission 19.8
5 Heart Failure   Readmission 24.8
6 Pneumonia       Readmission 18.4
```

We'd like to show how the rates differ for each condition. We need to set `x=Condition`, and we will set `weight=Rate`. (Notice that we didn't set the `y` variable; `x` is not a numerical value, so we need to treat `x` as a univariate plot. By default, `ggplot2` tabulates data for you, so `ggplot2` would attempt to plot the value 2 for each value of `x`.)

A bar chart is a good choice for this data, so we will tell `qplot` to use `geom="bar"` as the geometric object. We'll also tell `ggplot2` to set the height of the bars to `Rate` by specifying `weight=Rate`. Then, we will tell `ggplot2` that we want to show each measure in a separate panel by setting `facets=Measure~.`. And finally, we will set the fill color of each bar to a different color, depending on the `Measure` variable by setting `fill=Measure`. Putting it all together, we have the following plot object:

```
> bar.chart.example <- qplot(x=Condition,
+   data=outcome.of.care.measures.national,
+   geom="bar", weight=Rate, facets=Measure~, fill=Measure)
> summary(bar.chart.example)
data: Condition, Measure, Rate [6x3]
mapping: fill = Measure, weight = Rate, x = Condition
faceting: facet_grid(Measure ~ )
-----
geom_bar:
stat_bin:
position_stack: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

This corresponding plot is shown in [Figure 15-7](#).

As an alternative, we might want to plot the bars adjacent to one another, grouped together by condition, in a single panel. We can do this by dropping the `facet` variable and setting `position="dodge"` to plot the different geometric objects adjacent to one another. The result of this statement is shown in [Figure 15-8](#).

```
> qplot(x=Condition, data=outcome.of.care.measures.national,
+   geom="bar", weight=Rate, fill=Measure, position="dodge")
```

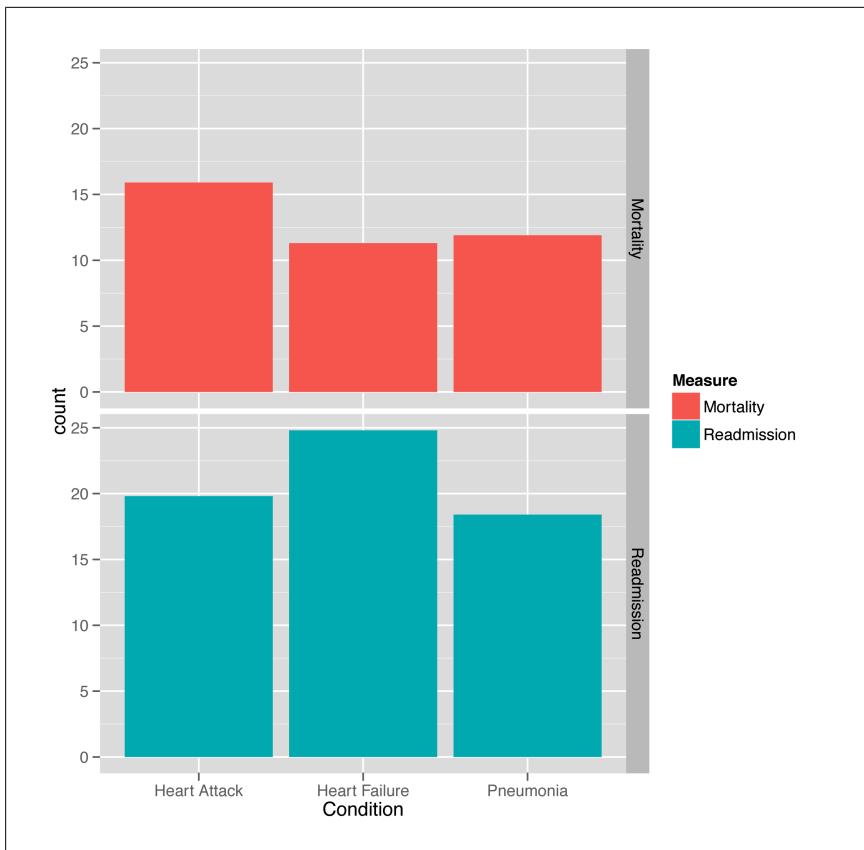


Figure 15-7. Outcome of care measures using facets

Both charts are effective ways of showing the data, but they can be used to make different statements. The faceted version encourages the reader to compare the rates for different conditions within each group of measures, while the dodged version encourages the reader to compare rates for different measures within each group of conditions.

So far, we've looked at a lot of really simple examples. But I think the place where `ggplot2` really shines is when you start looking at larger, more complicated data. Let's take a look at the Medicare payment information as an example. This data set contains 140,722 records. Each record shows the average Medicare payment to, and number of cases seen by, almost 3,300 different hospitals for 70 different conditions.

There are many different things to look at in this data, but I started with a simple question: how does the number of patients treated by a hospital relate to the fees charged to Medicare? Would large hospitals charge less money because patients experienced fewer complications, or would large hospitals charge more because they were better at gaming the system?

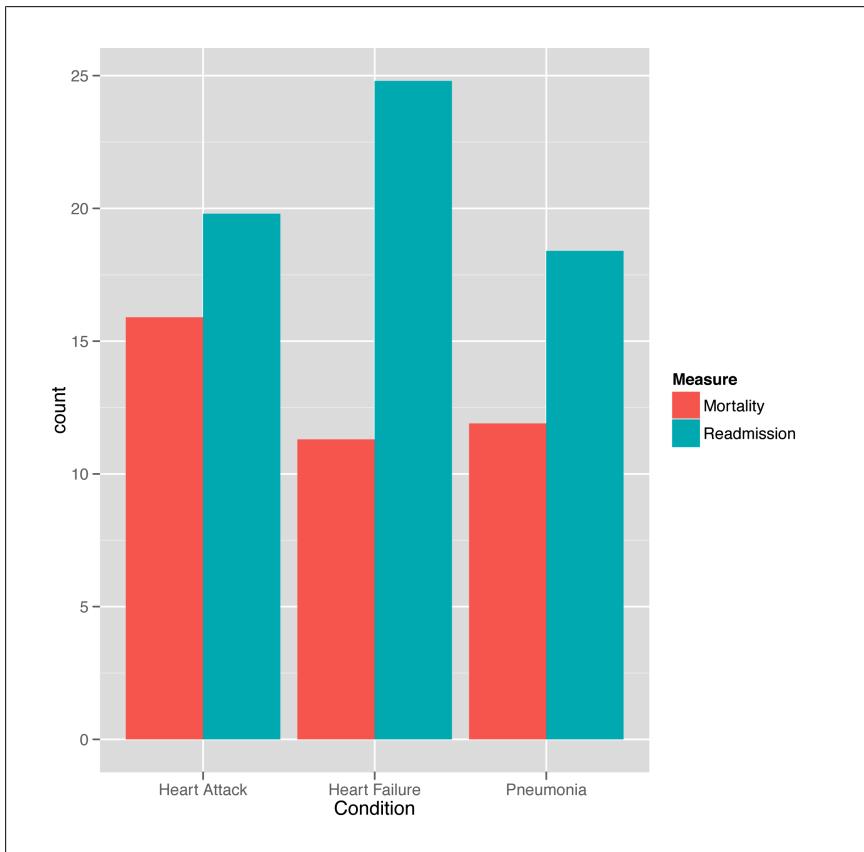


Figure 15-8. Outcome of care measures using dodging

Clearly, the average cost should vary greatly depending on the diagnosis; it would make no sense to compare the cost of treating a heart attack in one hospital with the cost of treating pneumonia in another hospital. We need to compare costs within each diagnosis group, so we will group the data by diagnosis. To make the chart legible, I cut down the results from 70 conditions to the three diagnosis groups for heart failure: heart failure without complications or comorbidities, heart failure with complications or comorbidities, and heart failure with major complications or co-morbidities:

```
> heart.failure <- c("Heart failure and shock w/o CC/MCC",
+   "Heart failure and shock w MCC",
+   "Heart failure and shock w CC")
```

Let's start simply. We'll plot the average payment as a function of the number of cases, setting the color of each point by the diagnosis. I'll include only rows where the diagnosis is a type of heart failure. We'll set `data=subset(medicare.payments, Diagnosis.Related.Group %in% heart.failure)` to define the data set. We want to show the average payment as a function of the number of cases treated at the

hospital, so we'll set `x=Number.Of.Cases` and `y=Medicare.Average.Payment`. Finally, we'd like to be able to tell apart the different diagnoses. We'll set each diagnosis to a different color by setting `color=Diagnosis.Related.Group`. We'd like to just plot each point on the axes, so we'll take advantage of the default geometric object (`geom_point`):

```
> payment.plot <- qplot(x=Number.Of.Cases, y=Medicare.Average.Payment,
+   data=subset(medicare.payments, Diagnosis.Related.Group %in%
+   heart.failure), color=Diagnosis.Related.Group)

> summary(payment.plot)
data: Provider.Number, Hospital.Name, Address.1, Address.2,
  Address.3, City, State, ZIP.Code, County.Name, Phone.Number,
  Diagnosis.Related.Group, Medicare.Average.Payment,
  Number.Of.Cases, Footnote [9722x14]
mapping: colour = Diagnosis.Related.Group, x = Number.Of.Cases,
  y = Medicare.Average.Payment
faceting: facet_null()

-----
geom_point:
stat_identity:
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 15-9](#). As you can see, this plot isn't very easy to read. (Note that the number of patients is not shown when the number is small. This is due to HIPPA regulations.) All the points clump together on the left, and it is difficult to tell where most points lie.

Let's make a few tweaks to improve the legibility of this plot. First, let's transform the `x` variable to a log scale, to remove the clumping in low numbers by setting `x=log(Number.Of.Cases)`. Next, we'll make the points semi-opaque. This way, we can see what regions have more points and which have fewer points. We do this by specifying `alpha=I(1/10)`. To help see the trend, we'll add a smoothing line in addition to the points (`geom=c("point", "smooth")`). And finally, we'll change the `y` limits to hide outliers. Here's the statement to create the plot from scratch:

```
> heart.failure.cost.plot <-
+   qplot(x=log(Number.Of.Cases), y=Medicare.Average.Payment,
+   data=subset(medicare.payments,
+   Diagnosis.Related.Group %in% heart.failure),
+   color=Diagnosis.Related.Group, ylim=c(0, 20000),
+   alpha=I(1/10), geom=c("point", "smooth"))
```

But there is a more elegant way to do this. We will start by recreating the plot with the `alpha` value and different `y` limits:

```
> payment.plot.alpha <- qplot(x=Number.Of.Cases,
+   y=Medicare.Average.Payment, data=subset(medicare.payments,
+   Diagnosis.Related.Group %in% heart.failure),
+   color=Diagnosis.Related.Group, alpha=I(1/10), ylim=c(0,20000))
```

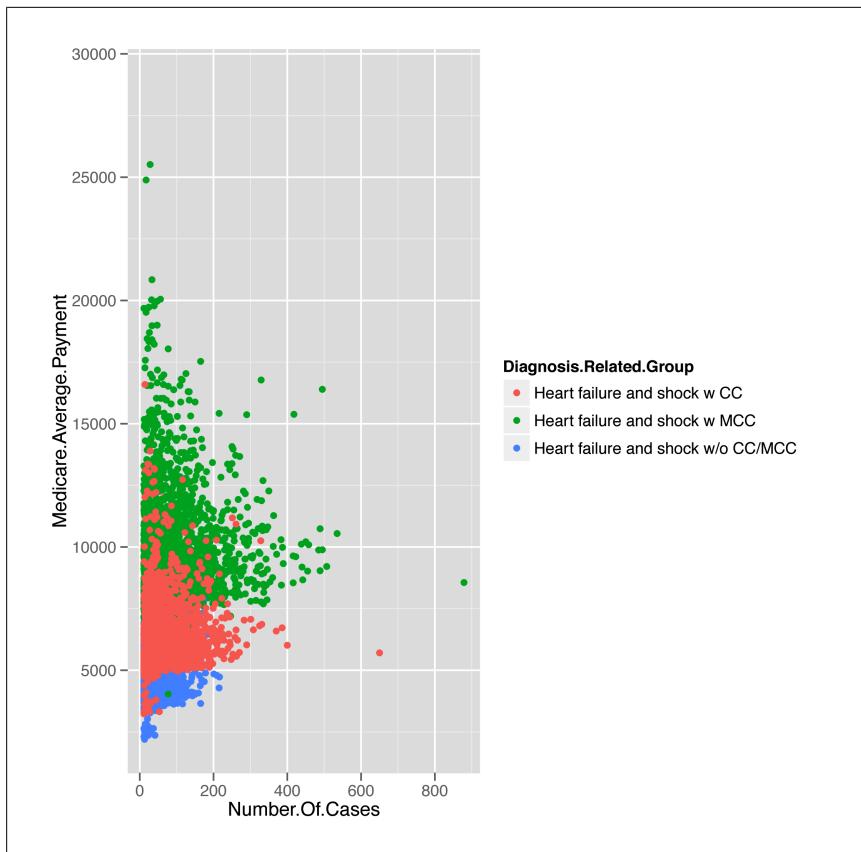


Figure 15-9. Number of heart failure cases and average payment (first attempt)

Next, we'll add the smoothing lines and change the scale:

```
> payment.plot.scaled <- payment.plot.alpha
+ scale_x_log10() + geom_smooth()

> heart.failure.cost.plot.scaled <- payment.plot + scale_x_log10()
+ geom_point() + geom_smooth() + aes(alpha=I(1/10))
```

This form gives more informative values on the x axis (and it saves some typing).

Here is the description of the plot:

```
> summary(payment.plot.scaled)
data: Provider.Number, Hospital.Name, Address.1, Address.2, Address.3,
City, State, ZIP.Code, County.Name, Phone.Number,
Diagnosis.Related.Group, Medicare.Average.Payment,
Number.Of.Cases, Footnote [9722x14]
mapping: colour = Diagnosis.Related.Group, x = Number.Of.Cases,
y = Medicare.Average.Payment
scales: y, ymin, ymax, yend, yintercept, ymin_final, ymax_final,
x, xmin, xmax, xend, xintercept
faceting: facet_null()
```

```
geom_point: alpha = 0.1  
stat_identity: alpha = 0.1  
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

```
geom_smooth:  
stat_smooth:  
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

There are a few features that we haven't seen before. First, notice that there are two sets of geom/stat/position parameters, corresponding to the points and lines. Additionally, notice that the alpha property is passed along to each geometric object function and statistic function, even though it does not have any meaning for all of these.

The revised plot is shown in [Figure 15-10](#).

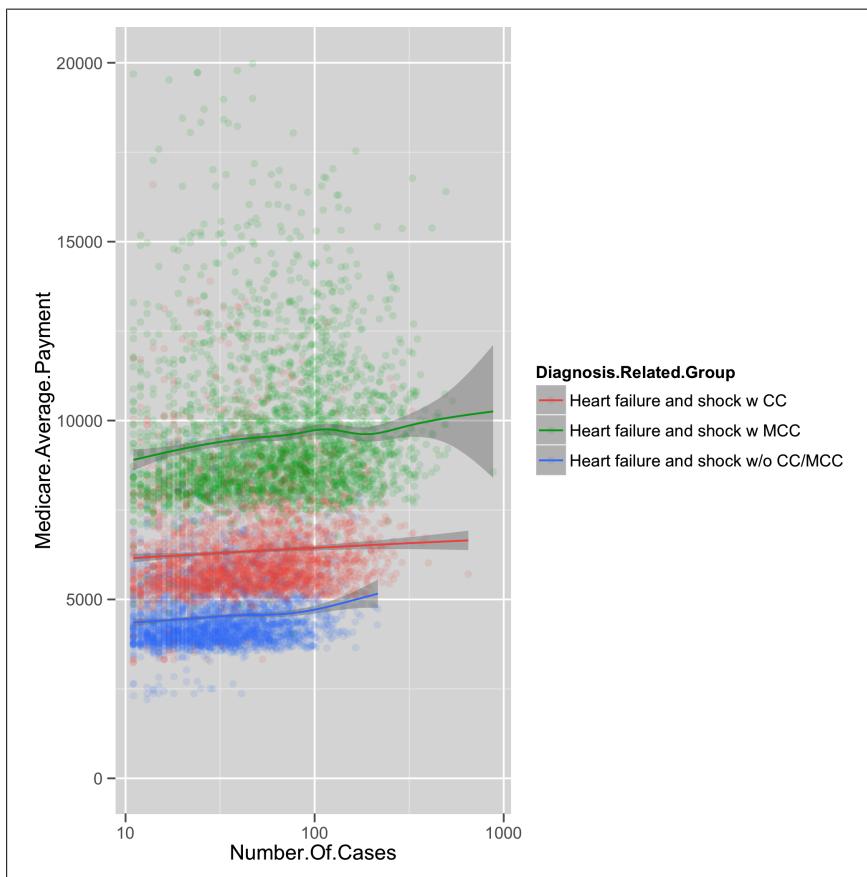


Figure 15-10. Number of heart failure cases and average payment

Why did costs increase as the number of patients seen increased? I wondered if there was a geographic trend; costs of living are very different in different states, and perhaps Medicare charges adjust for these differences. To help understand these differences, I wanted to see how costs varied by region, specifically by state.

To begin, I picked a data set that summarized Medicare payments by state:

```
> data(medicare.payments.by.state)
> medicare.payments.by.state.hf <- subset(medicare.payments.by.state,
+   Diagnosis.Related.Group %in% heart.failure)
```

By default, R will order the output by the values of the factor values. The default order is driven by the order that values appear in the source data; in the case of the Medicare data, the values were ordered by state name. It is easy to find results for a given state when the results are alphabetically sorted, but hard to spot trends. (You can try plotting this data without reordering to see what I mean.)

To help us learn from the data, I wanted to sort the results from lowest to highest payment. I didn't want to sort the data; I just needed to reorder the levels in the State factor. To do this, I used the `reorder` function to calculate a new factor, with levels arranged by average payment:

```
> medicare.payments.by.state.hf$State <- with(medicare.payments.by.state.hf,
+   reorder(State, Medicare.Average.Payment.Maximum, mean))
```

Finally, I drew the dot plot shown in [Figure 15-11](#).

```
> payment.dotplot <- qplot(x=Medicare.Average.Payment.Maximum, y=State,
+   data=medicare.payments.by.state.hf,
+   color=Diagnosis.Related.Group)
> summary(payment.dotplot)
data: State, Diagnosis.Related.Group,
  Medicare.Average.Payment.Minimum,
  Medicare.Average.Payment.Maximum, Number.Of.Cases, Footnote
 [168x6]
mapping: colour = Diagnosis.Related.Group,
  x = Medicare.Average.Payment.Maximum, y = State
faceting: facet_null()
-----
geom_point:
stat_identity:
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)
```

At the top of the list are the Northern Mariana Islands, Alaska, and the Virgin Islands—all isolated, expensive locations, and locations unlikely to have very large hospitals. But next on the list are New York, Maryland, and California—all states with high costs of living *and* large hospitals. Remember that Washington, D.C., is right next to Maryland, and there are large VA hospitals in Maryland. Actually, there are also large VA hospitals in Hawaii as well, which is next on the list. This was starting to make sense; it's not that costs are increasing with volume, it's that both costs and volume are correlated with geography! Also, note that the cheapest states are actually territories: Puerto Rico and American Samoa.

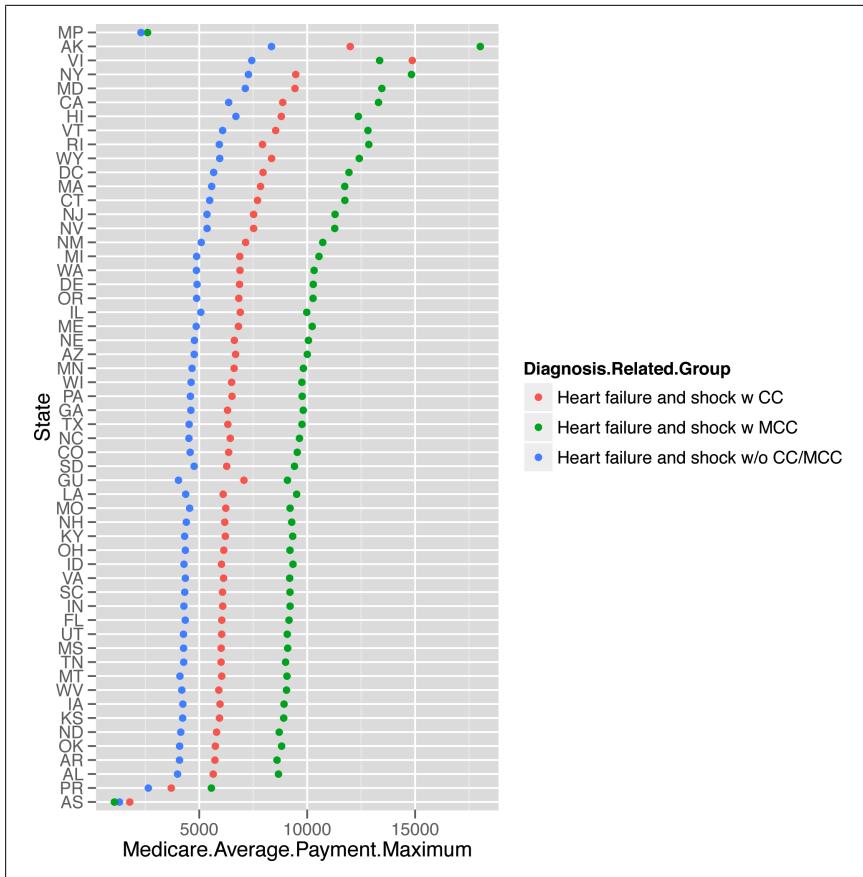


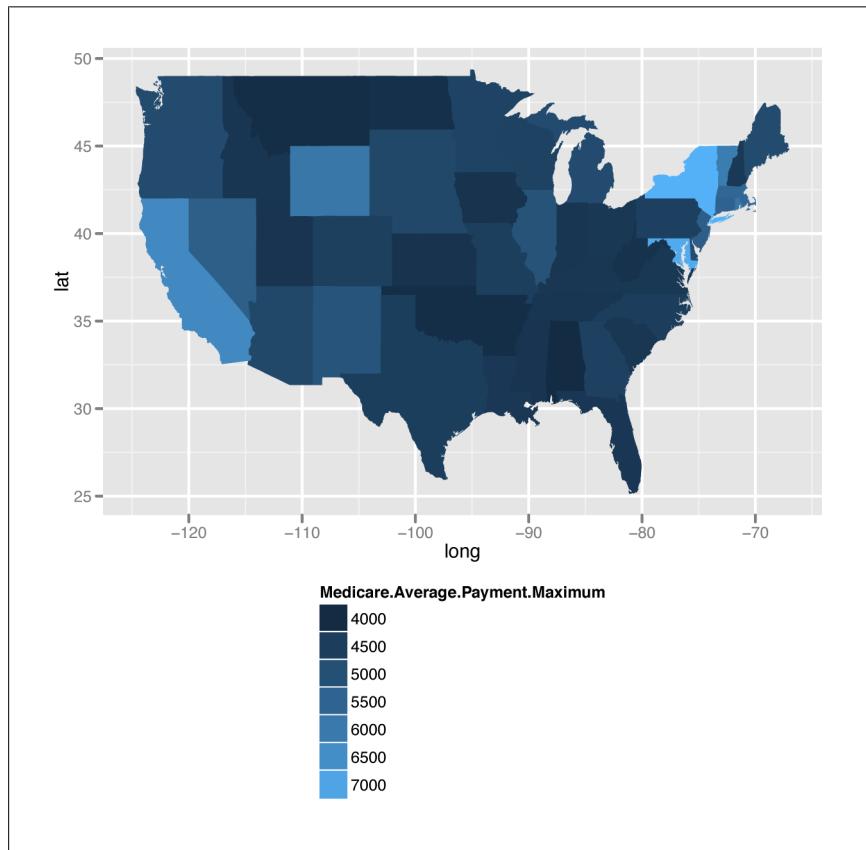
Figure 15-11. Dotplot showing payments by state

Finally, I wanted to see if states that were adjacent to each other had similar costs. To help visualize this, I wanted to show the average costs on a map, or as a choropleth plot:

```
> library(maps)
> states <- map_data("state")
> library(datasets)
> state.name.map <- data.frame(abb=state.abb, region=tolower(state.name),
+   stringsAsFactors=FALSE)
> states <- merge(states, state.name.map, by="region")
> # merge the geography data with the numerical data
> toplot <- merge(states, medicare.payments.by.state,
+   by.x="abb", by.y="State")
> # make sure it's sorted correctly
> toplot <- toplot[order(toplot$order), ]
> # draw the plot
> qplot(long, lat,
+   data=subset(toplot,
+     Diagnosis.Related.Group=="Heart failure and shock w/o CC/MCC"),
```

```
+ group=group,  
+ fill=Medicare.Average.Payment.Maximum, geom="polygon") +  
+ opts(legend.position="bottom", legend.direction="vertical")
```

The resulting plot is shown in [Figure 15-12](#).



*Figure 15-12. Choropleth plot, showing costs by region*

## Quick Plot

As we saw above, the simplest way to use `ggplot2` is with the `qplot` command:

```
qplot(x, y, ..., data, facets, margins, geom, stat,  
      position, xlim, ylim, log, main, xlab, ylab)
```

`qplot` is designed to pick default values that produce a readable plot (and uses helper functions to help make those choices based on the inputs data), but you can control how `qplot` works. Here is a description of the arguments to `qplot`:

| Argument | Description   | Default  |
|----------|---|--|
| x        | X values.   |  |
| y        | Y values.   | NULL   |
| data     | (Optional) Data frame in which x and y are defined.   |  |
| facets   | Describes facets to use as a formula. Uses <code>facet_wrap</code> for one-sided formula or <code>facet_grid</code> for a two sided formula.                | NULL   |
| margins  | Enables displaying margins.   | FALSE  |
| geom     | Specifies the geom to use as a vector of character values.  | "auto"<br>If x and y are specified, defaults to "point"<br>If only x is specified, defaults to "histogram" |
| stat     | Specifies statistics to use as a vector of character values.  | list(NULL)   |
| position | Specifies position adjustments.   | list(NULL)   |
| xlim     | Limits for x-axis, as a vector of two values.   | c(NA, NA)  |
| ylim     | Limits for y-axis, as a vector of two values.   | c(NA, NA)  |
| log      | Specifies whether to display x-axis, y-axis, or both in log scale. Use "" for neither, "x" for just the x-axis, "y" for just the y-axis, and "xy" for both. | ""   |
| main     | The title for the plot as a character values.   | NULL   |
| xlab     | The label for the x-axis.   | deparse(substitute(x))   |
| ylab     | The label for the y-axis.   | deparse(substitute(y))   |
| asp      | The y/x aspect ratio.   | NA   |
| ...      | Other aesthetic attributes passed to lower layers.  |  |

## Creating Graphics with ggplot2

Above, we used the `qplot` function to build `ggplot2` objects in one function call. Sometimes, you may need more flexibility than `qplot` provides. Alternately, you may want to write a more verbose description of your plot to make your code easier to read. To do this, you create your plot in several parts:

1. You call the `ggplot` function to create a new `ggplot` object, define the input data, and define aesthetic mappings
2. You add layers to the `ggplot` object

Note that you add layers (and options) to a `ggplot` object by using the `+` operator.

As an example, we could create a plot identical to the one we started with using these statements:

```
> plt <- ggplot(data=d, mapping=aes(x=a, y=b)) + geom_point()
> summary=plt)
data: a, b, c [10x3]
mapping: x = a, y = b
```

```

faceting: facet_null()
-----
geom_point: na.rm = FALSE
stat_identity:
position_identity: (width = NULL, height = NULL)

```

To create `ggplot` objects without `qplot`, you begin by using the `ggplot` function.

```
ggplot(data, mapping = aes(), ..., environment = globalenv())
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `ggplot2`:

| Argument                 | Description                                      | Default                  |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| <code>data</code>        | The default data frame for the plot              |                          |
| <code>mapping</code>     | Default list of aesthetic mappings for the plot  | <code>aes()</code>       |
| <code>environment</code> | Environment in which the aesthetics should occur | <code>globalenv()</code> |
| ...                      |  |                          |

The `ggplot` function returns a new `ggplot` object with no layers. You can't actually print a chart from this object because no layers are defined:

```
> ggplot(data=d, mapping=aes(x=a, y=b))
Error: No layers in plot
```

Typically, you specify aesthetic mappings with the `aes` function:

```
aes(x, y, ...)
```

The `x` argument specifies the `x` value, the `y` argument specifies the `y` value, and other arguments specify aesthetics to map as name/value pairs. See the documentation for `ggplot2` for alternate ways to map aesthetics including `aes_string` and `aes_auto`. As an example, to finish specifying a plot, you need to add layers. You can create a new layer with the `layer` function:

```
layer(...)
```

You specify the geometric objects using short names like "point". Using our earlier example, we could define our plot object with:

```
> plt <- ggplot(data=d, mapping=aes(x=a, y=b)) + layer("point")
```

The `layer` function allows you to specify geometric objects as name value pairs. You do not need to specify the full function name, but simply need to part after `geom_`.

For reference, here is a description of the available geometric functions:

| Geometric Function       | Description                                   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>geom_abline</code> | A line, specified by a slope and intercept    |
| <code>geom_area</code>   | Area plot (a continuous analog to a bar plot) |
| <code>geom_bar</code>    | Bar plot                                      |
| <code>geom_bin2d</code>  | Heatmap of two-dimensional bins               |
| <code>geom_blank</code>  | Blank geometric object; doesn't draw anything |

| Geometric Function | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| geom_boxplot       | Box plot   |
| geom_contour       | Contour plot   |
| geom_crossbar      | Crossbar plot (like a box plot, but without the whiskers and extreme values)                 |
| geom_density       | Density plot   |
| geom_density2d     | Two-dimensional density plot   |
| geom_errorbar      | Error bars (typically added to other plots like bar plots, point plots, and line plots)      |
| geom_errorbarh     | Horizontal error bars  |
| geom_freqpoly      | Frequency polygon (similar to a histogram)   |
| geom_hex           | Hexagonal objects (typically used with hexagonal binning)                                    |
| geom_histogram     | Histogram  |
| geom_hline         | A horizontal line  |
| geom_jitter        | Points, automatically jittered   |
| geom_line          | A line   |
| geom_linerange     | An interval represented by a vertical line   |
| geom_path          | A geometric path, connecting a set of points in order  |
| geom_point         | Points   |
| geom_pointrange    | A vertical line with a point in the middle (related to crossbars, boxplots, and line-ranges) |
| geom_polygon       | A polygon  |
| geom_quantile      | A set of quantile lines from a quantile regression   |
| geom_rect          | Two-dimensional rectangles   |
| geom_ribbon        | A ribbon (a y range with continuous x values, like Tufte's famous Napoleon's march plot)     |
| geom_rug           | A rug  |
| geom_segment       | Line segments  |
| geom_smooth        | A smoothed condition mean  |
| geom_step          | A stepped plot connecting points   |
| geom_text          | Text   |
| geom_tile          | Tiles  |
| geom_vline         | Vertical line  |

ggplot2 includes some convenience functions for applying a statistical transformation and adding a layer to a plot. Some of these functions are listed below.

| Statistic Function | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| stat_abline        | Adds a line with a slope and intercept.               |
| stat_bin           | Splits data into bins then plots as a histogram.      |
| stat_bin2d         | Shows density across two dimensions using rectangles. |
| stat_binhex        | Shows density across two dimensions using hexagons.   |

| Statistic Function | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| stat_boxplot       | Creates a box-and-whiskers plot.   |
| stat_contour       | Shows contours of three-dimensional data.  |
| stat_density       | Plots density.   |
| stat_density2d     | Plots density in two dimensions.   |
| stat_function      | Superimposes a function.   |
| stat_hline         | Adds a horizontal line.  |
| stat_identity      | Plots data without a statistical transformation.   |
| stat_qq            | Calculations for a quantile-quantile plot.   |
| stat_quantile      | Continuous quantiles.  |
| stat_smooth        | Adds a smoother.   |
| stat_spoke         | Plots directional data at points (specifying location with x and y, and angle separately). |
| stat_sum           | Plots sums of unique values (typically on a scatter plot).                                 |
| stat_summary       | Plots summarized data.   |
| stat_unique        | Plots only unique values (removes duplicates).   |
| stat_vline         | Plots a vertical line.   |

You can manually specify different scales with `ggplot2`; mapping data to different scales lets you control how `ggplot2` shows different densities, quantities, or other values. Scales can specify ranges of colors, objects, or labels. The following table shows some of these scale functions :

| Scale function   | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| scale_alpha      | Alpha channel values (grayscale).                    |
| scale_brewer     | Colors derived from scales shown on colorbrewer.org. |
| scale_continuous | Continuous scales.                                   |
| scale_date       | Dates.   |
| scale_datetime   | Dates and times.                                     |
| scale_discrete   | Discrete values.                                     |
| scale_gradient   | Smooth gradients between two colors.                 |
| scale_gradient2  | Smooth gradients among three colors.                 |
| scale_gradientn  | Smooth gradients among n colors.                     |
| scale_grey       | Grayscale colors.                                    |
| scale_hue        | Evenly spaced hues.                                  |
| scale_identity   | Uses values without scaling.                         |
| scale_linetype   | Shows differences as line patterns.                  |
| scale_manual     | Manually created discrete scales.                    |
| scale_shape      | Different shapes (“glyphs”) for different values.    |
| scale_size       | Shows different values as different size objects.    |

With `ggplot2`, you can plot data using several different coordinate systems:

| Coordinate function          | Description                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>coord_cartesian</code> | Cartesian coordinates             |
| <code>coord_equal</code>     | Equal scale coordinates           |
| <code>coord_flip</code>      | Flipped Cartesian coordinates     |
| <code>coord_map</code>       | Map projections                   |
| <code>coord_polar</code>     | Polar projections                 |
| <code>coord_trans</code>     | Transformed Cartesian coordinates |

There are two options for facetting data bundled with the `ggplot2` package:

| Faceting function       | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>facet_grid</code> | Lay out panels in a grid                                   |
| <code>facet_wrap</code> | Wraps a one-dimensional list of facets into two dimensions |

When you are plotting multiple geometric objects (such as multiple bars), you can specify where different objects should be plotted.

| Position function              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code>position_dodge</code>    | Positions objects by dodging overlaps to the side (lays them out in a non-overlapping way) |
| <code>position_fill</code>     | Stacks overlapping objects on top of one another   |
| <code>position_identity</code> | Doesn't adjust the position  |
| <code>position_jitter</code>   | Jitters objects  |
| <code>position_stack</code>    | Stacks objects   |

## Learning More

Hadley Wickham wrote an excellent book about `ggplot2`, [Wickham2009] You can also find more information about `ggplot2` at [the official website](#), including a chapter from Hadley's book on `qplot` and a [reference manual for ggplot](#). Also see [R Graphics Cookbook](#).



# V

---

## Statistics with R

This part of the book contains information about statistics in R: statistical tests, statistical modeling, and other analysis tools.





# 16

## Analyzing Data

This chapter describes a number of techniques for analyzing data in R. Many of the functions described in this chapter are useful for preparing data for other analysis, or are the building blocks for other analyses.

### Summary Statistics

R includes a variety of functions for calculating summary statistics.

To calculate the mean of a vector, use the `mean` function. You can calculate minima with the `min` function, or maxima with the `max` function. As an example, let's use the `dow30` data set that we created in “[An extended example](#)” on page 175. This data set is also available in the `nutshell` package:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(dow30)
> mean(dow30$Open)
[1] 36.24574
> min(dow30$Open)
[1] 0.99
> max(dow30$Open)
[1] 122.45
```

For each of these functions, the argument `na.rm` specifies how `NA` values are treated. By default, if any value in the vector is `NA`, then the value `NA` is returned. Specify `na.rm=TRUE` to ignore missing values:

```
> mean(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, NA))
[1] NA
> mean(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, NA), na.rm=TRUE)
[1] 3
```

Optionally, you can also remove outliers when using the `mean` function. To do this, use the `trim` argument to specify the fraction of observations to filter:

```
> mean(c(-1, 0:100, 2000))
[1] 68.4369
```

```
> mean(c(-1, 0:100, 2000), trim=0.1)
[1] 50
```

To calculate the minimum and maximum at the same time, use the `range` function. This returns a vector with the minimum and maximum value:

```
> range(dow30$Open)
[1] 0.99 122.45
```

Another useful function is `quantile`. This function can be used to return the values at different percentiles (specified by the `probs` argument):

```
> quantile(dow30$Open, probs=c(0, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1.0))
  0%    25%    50%    75%   100%
0.990 19.655 30.155 51.680 122.450
```

You can return this specific set of values (minimum, 25th percentile, median, 75th percentile, and maximum) with the `fivenum` function:

```
> fivenum(dow30$Open)
[1] 0.990 19.650 30.155 51.680 122.450
```

To return the interquartile range (the difference between the 25th and 75th percentile values), use the function `IQR`:

```
> IQR(dow30$Open)
[1] 32.025
```

Each of the functions above can be useful on its own but can also be used with `apply`, `tapply`, or another aggregation function to calculate statistics for a data frame or subsets of a data frame.

The most convenient function for looking at summary information is `summary`. It is a generic function that works on data frames, matrices, tables, factors, and other objects. As an example, let's take a look at the output of `summary` for the `dow30` data set that we used above:

```
> summary(dow30)
      symbol           Date          Open          High
      MMM : 252 2008-09-22: 30  Min. : 0.99  Min. : 1.01
      AA : 252 2008-09-23: 30  1st Qu.:19.66  1st Qu.: 20.19
      AXP : 252 2008-09-24: 30 Median :30.16  Median : 30.75
      T : 252 2008-09-25: 30 Mean   :36.25  Mean   : 36.93
      BAC : 252 2008-09-26: 30 3rd Qu.:51.68  3rd Qu.: 52.45
      BA : 252 2008-09-29: 30 Max.   :122.45  Max.   :122.88
      (Other):5970 (Other) :7302
                    Low          Close          Volume       Adj.Close
      Min. : 0.27  Min. : 0.75  Min. :1.336e+06  Min. : 0.75
      1st Qu.:19.15 1st Qu.:19.65 1st Qu.:1.111e+07 1st Qu.: 19.38
      Median :29.55 Median :30.10 Median :1.822e+07 Median : 29.41
      Mean   :35.53 Mean   :36.24 Mean   :5.226e+07 Mean   : 35.64
      3rd Qu.:50.84 3rd Qu.:51.58 3rd Qu.:4.255e+07 3rd Qu.: 50.97
      Max.   :121.62 Max.   :122.11 Max.   :2.672e+09 Max.   :122.11
```

As you can see, `summary` presents information about each variable in the data frame. For numeric values, it shows the minimum, first quartile, median, mean, third quartile, and maximum values. For factors, `summary` shows the count of the most frequent

values. (Less frequent values are grouped into an “Other” category.) `Summary` doesn’t show meaningful information for character values.

A popular alternative to `summary` is the `str` function. The `str` function displays the structure of an object:

```
> str(dow30)
'data.frame': 7482 obs. of 8 variables:
 $ symbol : Factor w/ 30 levels "MMM","AA","AXP",...: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 ...
 ... 
 $ Date    : Factor w/ 252 levels "2008-09-22","2008-09-23",...: 252 251 250
 249 248 247 246 245 244 243 ...
 $ Open    : num  73.9 75.1 75.3 74.8 74.6 ...
 $ High   : num  74.7 75.2 75.5 75.5 74.9 ...
 $ Low    : num  73.9 74.5 74.5 74.5 74 ...
 $ Close   : num  74.5 74.6 74.9 75.4 74.7 ...
 $ Volume  : num  2560400 4387900 3371500 2722500 3566900 ...
 $ Adj.Close: num  74.5 74.6 74.9 75.4 74.7 ...
```

A useful (text-based) tool for looking at the distribution of a numeric vector is the `stem` function:

```
stem(x, scale = 1, width = 80, atom = 1e-08)
```

The argument `x` is a numeric vector, `scale` controls the length of the plot, `width` controls the width, and `atom` is a tolerance factor.

As an example of a stem plot, we’ll look at field goal attempts in the NFL during 2005. Specifically, we’ll look at the attempted distances for missed field goals. To do this, we’ll use the `subset` function to select only missed field goals and then plot the yards for each attempt:

```
> stem(subset(field.goals, play.type=="FG no")$yards)
The decimal point is at the |
 20 | 0
 22 |
 24 |
 26 | 00
 28 | 0000000
 30 | 0000000
 32 | 00000000
 34 | 000
 36 | 0000
 38 | 00000000000000
 40 | 0000000000
 42 | 0000000000000000
 44 | 00000000000000
 46 | 000000000000000000
 48 | 00000000000000000000
 50 | 00000000000000
 52 | 00000000000000000000
 54 | 0000
 56 | 000
 58 | 00
 60 | 00
 62 | 0
```

## Correlation and Covariance

Very often, when analyzing data, you want to know if two variables are *correlated*. Informally, correlation answers the question, “When we increase (or decrease)  $x$ , does  $y$  increase (or decrease), and by how much?” Formally, correlation measures the linear dependence between two random variables. Correlation measures range between  $-1$  and  $1$ ;  $1$  means that one variable is a (positive) linear function of the other,  $0$  means the two variables aren’t correlated at all, and  $-1$  means that one variable is a negative linear function of the other (the two move in completely opposite directions; see [Figure 16-1](#)).

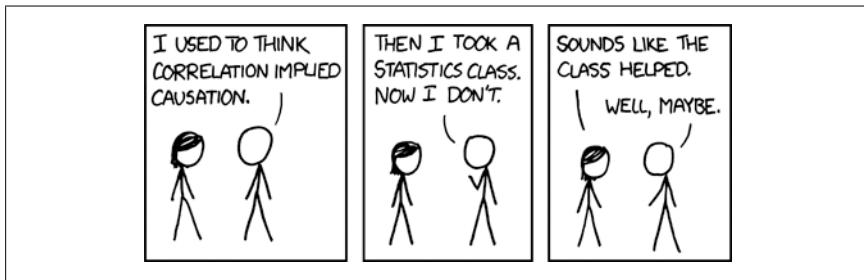


Figure 16-1. Correlation (Source: <http://xkcd.com/552/>)

The most commonly used correlation measurement is the Pearson correlation statistic (it’s the formula behind the `CORREL` function in Excel):

$$r = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})(y_i - \bar{y})}{\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2} \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \bar{y})^2}}$$

where  $\bar{x}$  is the mean of variable  $x$ , and  $\bar{y}$  is the mean of variable  $y$ . The Pearson correlation statistic is rooted in properties of the normal distribution and works best with normally distributed data. An alternative correlation function is the Spearman correlation statistic. Spearman correlation is a nonparametric statistic and doesn’t make any assumptions about the underlying distribution:

$$\rho = \frac{n(\sum x_i y_i) - (\sum x_i)(\sum y_i)}{\sqrt{n(\sum x_i^2) - (\sum x_i)^2} \sqrt{n(\sum y_i^2) - (\sum y_i)^2}}$$

Another measurement of how well two random variables are related is Kendall’s tau. Kendall’s tau formula works by comparing rankings of values in the two random variables, not by comparing the values themselves:

$$\tau = \frac{n_c - n_d}{1/2 n(n-1)}$$

In this formula,  $n$  is the length of the two random variables,  $n_c$  counts the number of concordant pairs, and  $n_d$  counts the number of discordant pairs.

To compute correlations in R, you can use the function `cor`. This function can be used to compute each of the correlation measures shown above:

```
cor(x, y = NULL, use = "everything",
     method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"))
```

You can compute correlations on two vectors (assigned to arguments `x` and `y`), a data frame (assigned to `x` with `y=NULL`), or a matrix (assigned to `x` with `y=NULL`). If you specify a matrix or a data frame, then `cor` will compute the correlation between each pair of variables and return a matrix of results.

The `method` argument specifies the correlation calculation. The `use` argument specifies how the function should treat `NA` values. If you want an error raised when values are `NA`, choose `use="all.obs"`. If you would like the result to be `NA` when an element is `NA`, choose `use="everything"`. To omit cases where values are `NA`, choose `use="complete.obs"`. To omit cases where values are `NA`, but return `NA` if all values are `NA`, specify `use="na.or.complete"`. Finally, to omit pairs where at least one value is `NA`, choose `use="pairwise.complete.obs"`.

As an example, let's look at the 2006 birth data that we used above. Specifically, let's ask whether the mother's weight gain correlates with the baby's weight. Let's start by selecting only valid birth weights and weight gain values. We'll also exclude premature births. (I picked gestation age > 35 weeks, though this might not technically be premature.) Finally, we'll include only single births:

```
> births2006.cln <- births2006[
+   !is.na(births2006$WTGAIN) &
+   !is.na(births2006$DBWT) &
+   births2006$DPLURAL == "1 Single" &
+   births2006$ESTGEST>35,]
```

First, we'll take a look at how these two variables are related. Because there are 3,232,884 observations, a normal scatter plot would be hard to read, so we'll use `smoothScatter` instead:

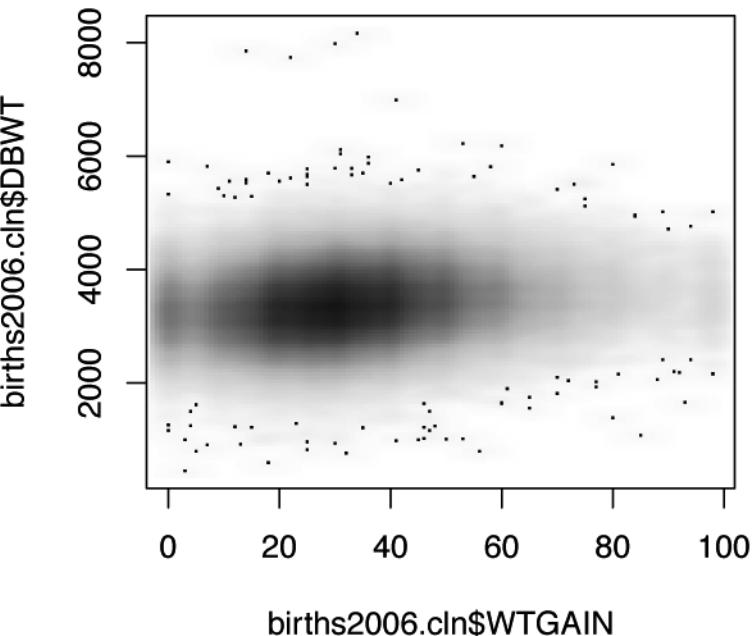
```
> smoothScatter(births2006.cln$WTGAIN, births2006.cln$DBWT)
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 16-2](#). From this diagram, we'd expect to see a slight correlation. (We wouldn't expect a very strong correlation because of the big blob, but the blob is angled a little bit.) Let's compute the Pearson correlation:

```
> cor(births2006.cln$WTGAIN, births2006.cln$DBWT)
[1] 0.1750655
```

Let's also calculate the Spearman correlation:

```
> cor(births2006.cln$WTGAIN, births2006.cln$DBWT, method="spearman")
[1] 0.1783328
```



*Figure 16-2. Plot of birth weight as a function of mother's weight gain*

As you can see, both measures indicate that there is a modest correlation between the two variables.

A closely related idea is covariance. Covariance is defined as:

$$\text{cov}(x, y) = E[(x - E[x])(y - E[y])]$$

which is the numerator of the Pearson correlation formula. You can compute covariance in R using the `cov` function, which accepts the same arguments as `cor`:

```
cov(x, y = NULL, use = "everything",
     method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"))
```

If you have computed a covariance matrix, you can use the R function `cov2cor` to compute the correlation matrix.

You can also compute weighted covariance measurements using the `cov.wt` formula:

```
cov.wt(x, wt = rep(1/nrow(x), nrow(x)), cor = FALSE, center = TRUE,
       method = c("unbiased", "ML"))
```

# Principal Components Analysis

Another technique for analyzing data is principal components analysis. Principal components analysis breaks a set of (possibly correlated) variables into a set of uncorrelated variables.

In R, principal components analysis is available through the function `prcomp` in the `stats` package:

```
## S3 method for class 'formula':  
prcomp(formula, data = NULL, subset, na.action, ...)  
  
## Default S3 method:  
prcomp(x, retx = TRUE, center = TRUE, scale. = FALSE,  
       tol = NULL, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `prcomp`.

| Argument  | Description  | Default |
|-----------|--|---------|
| formula   | In the formula method, specifies formula with no response variable, indicating columns of a data frame to use in the analysis. |         |
| data      | An optional data frame containing the data specified in <code>formula</code> .   |         |
| subset    | An optional vector specifying observations to include in the analysis.   |         |
| na.action | A function specifying how to deal with NA values.  |         |
| x         | In the default method, specifies a numeric or complex matrix of data for the analysis.   |         |
| retx      | A logical value specifying whether rotated variables should be returned.   | TRUE    |
| center    | A logical value specifying whether values should be zero centered.   | TRUE    |
| scale     | A logical value specifying whether values should be scaled to have unit variance.  | TRUE    |
| tol       | A numeric value specifying a tolerance value below which components should be omitted.   | NULL    |
| ...       | Additional arguments passed to other methods.  |         |

As an example, let's try principal components analysis on a matrix of team batting statistics. Let's start by loading the data for every team between 2000 and 2008. We'll use the SQLite database that we used in [Chapter 13](#) and extract the fields we want using an SQL query. (Because this is a book on R and not a book on baseball, I renamed the common abbreviations to more intuitive names for plays.)

```
> library(RSQLite)
> drv <- dbDriver("SQLite")
> con <- dbConnect(drv,
+   dbname=system.file("extdata","bb.db", package="nutshell"))
> team.batting.00to08 <- dbGetQuery(con,
+   paste(
+     'SELECT teamID, yearID, R as runs, ',
+     'H-"2B"- "3B"-HR as singles, ',
+     '"2B" as doubles, "3B" as triples, HR as homeruns, ',
+     'BB as walks, SB as stolenbases, CS as caughtstealing, ',
+     'HBP as hitbypitch, SF as sacrificeflies, ',
+     'AB as atbats ',
```

```

+   '    FROM Teams ',
+   '    WHERE yearID between 2000 and 2008'
+   )
+ )

```

You can also find this data already loaded in the `team.batting.00to08` data set in the `nutshell` package. Eventually, we'll do some analysis on runs scored. For now, we'll use principal components analysis on the remaining variables in the matrix:

```

> batting.pca <- princomp(~singles+doubles+triples+homeruns+
+   walks+hitbypitch+sacrificeflies+
+   stolenbases+caughtstealing,
+   data=team.batting.00to08)
> batting.pca
Call:
princomp(formula = ~singles + doubles + triples + homeruns +
walks + hitbypitch + sacrificeflies + stolenbases + caughtstealing,
data = team.batting.00to08)

```

Standard deviations:

| Comp.1    | Comp.2    | Comp.3    | Comp.4    | Comp.5    | Comp.6    | Comp.7   |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| 74.900981 | 61.871086 | 31.811398 | 27.988190 | 23.788859 | 12.884291 | 9.150840 |
| Comp.8    | Comp.9    |           |           |           |           |          |
| 8.283972  | 7.060503  |           |           |           |           |          |

9 variables and 270 observations.

The `princomp` function returns a `princomp` object. You can get information on the importance of each component with the `summary` function:

```

> summary(batting.pca)
Importance of components:
                                         Comp.1        Comp.2        Comp.3        Comp.4
Standard deviation     74.9009809 61.8710858 31.8113983 27.98819003
Proportion of Variance 0.4610727 0.3146081 0.0831687 0.06437897
Cumulative Proportion  0.4610727 0.7756807 0.8588494 0.92322841
                                         Comp.5        Comp.6        Comp.7
                                         Comp.5        Comp.6        Comp.7
Standard deviation     23.78885885 12.88429066 9.150840397
Proportion of Variance 0.04650949 0.01364317 0.006882026
Cumulative Proportion  0.96973790 0.98338107 0.990263099
                                         Comp.8        Comp.9
                                         Comp.8        Comp.9
Standard deviation     8.283972499 7.060503344
Proportion of Variance 0.005639904 0.004096998
Cumulative Proportion  0.995903002 1.000000000

```

To show the contribution of each variable to the components, you can use the `loadings` method:

```

> loadings(batting.pca)

Loadings:
                                         Comp.1  Comp.2  Comp.3  Comp.4  Comp.5  Comp.6  Comp.7
singles          0.313  0.929 -0.136      0.136
doubles          0.437  -0.121 -0.877
triples
homeruns       -0.235      -0.383  0.825  0.324
walks           -0.914  0.328  0.150 -0.182
                                         0.424

```

|                |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| hitbypitch     |        | -0.989 |        |        |        |        |        |
| sacrificeflies |        | 0.321  |        |        |        |        |        |
| stolenbases    | 0.131  | 0.758  | 0.502  | -0.307 | -0.232 |        |        |
| caughtstealing |        | 0.208  | 0.104  |        | 0.813  |        |        |
|                | Comp.8 | Comp.9 |        |        |        |        |        |
| singles        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| doubles        | -0.100 |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| triples        | 0.775  | 0.449  |        |        |        |        |        |
| homerouns      |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| walks          |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| hitbypitch     |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| sacrificeflies | 0.330  | -0.882 |        |        |        |        |        |
| stolenbases    |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| caughtstealing | -0.521 | 0.105  |        |        |        |        |        |
|                | Comp.1 | Comp.2 | Comp.3 | Comp.4 | Comp.5 | Comp.6 | Comp.7 |
| SS loadings    | 1.000  | 1.000  | 1.000  | 1.000  | 1.000  | 1.000  | 1.000  |
| Proportion Var | 0.111  | 0.111  | 0.111  | 0.111  | 0.111  | 0.111  | 0.111  |
| Cumulative Var | 0.111  | 0.222  | 0.333  | 0.444  | 0.556  | 0.667  | 0.778  |
|                | Comp.8 | Comp.9 |        |        |        |        |        |
| SS loadings    | 1.000  | 1.000  |        |        |        |        |        |
| Proportion Var | 0.111  | 0.111  |        |        |        |        |        |
| Cumulative Var | 0.889  | 1.000  |        |        |        |        |        |

There is a `plot` method for `princomp` objects that displays a “scree” plot of the variance against each principal component:

```
> plot(batting.pca)
```

The results are shown in Figure 16-3. A second useful method for visualizing principal components is the biplot (see Figure 16-4):

```
> biplot(batting.pca, cex=0.5, col=c("gray50", "black"))
```

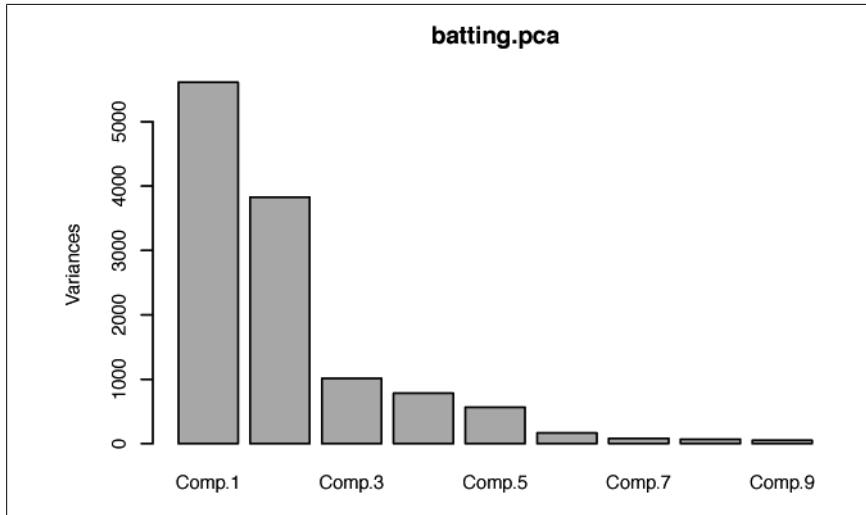


Figure 16-3. Scree plot of `batting.pca`

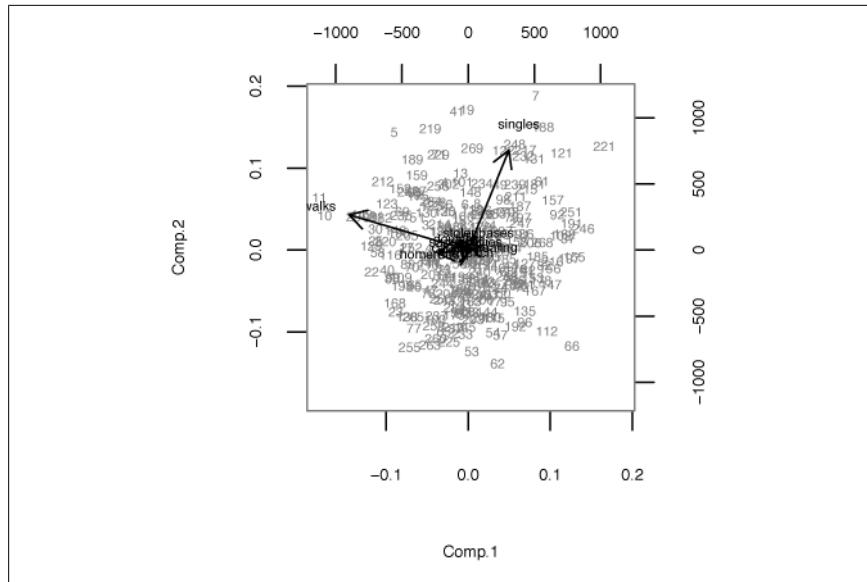


Figure 16-4. Biplot of *batting.pca*

A biplot graphically displays the contributions of each of the variables to a pair of principal components and also shows individual observations on the same scale. This example shows the contribution of each variable to components 1 and 2. Individual observations are also plotted on the chart. (I showed these in gray so that you could more clearly see the plot of the projections.) As you can see, `singles` and `walks` are the primary contributors to the first two components.

We'll revisit this data example in more depth in “[Example: A Simple Linear Model](#)” on page 401.

Note that there is a `princomp` function that does the same thing but works differently. It calculates the principal components by using the `eigen` function on the correlation or covariance matrix generated by the `cor` function. This function is included for compatibility with S-PLUS (it produces the same results as the equivalent method in S-PLUS). For more information on `princomp`, see the help file.

# Factor Analysis

In most data analysis problems, there are some quantities that we can observe and some that we cannot. The classic examples come from the social sciences. Suppose that you wanted to measure intelligence. It's not possible to directly measure an abstract concept like intelligence, but it is possible to measure performance on different tests. You could use factor analysis to analyze a set of test scores (the observed values) to try to determine intelligence (the hidden value).

Factor analysis is available in R through the function `factanal` in the `stats` package:

```
factanal(x, factors, data = NULL, covmat = NULL, n.obs = NA,
          subset, na.action, start = NULL,
          scores = c("none", "regression", "Bartlett"),
          rotation = "varimax", control = NULL, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `factanal`.

| Argument               | Description  | Default   |
|------------------------|--|-----------|
| <code>x</code>         | A formula or a numeric matrix to be used for analysis.   |           |
| <code>factors</code>   | A numeric value indicating the number of factors to be fitted.   |           |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame in which to evaluate <code>x</code> (if <code>x</code> is a formula).   | NULL      |
| <code>covmat</code>    | A covariance matrix (or a list returned by <code>cov.wt</code> ).  | NULL      |
| <code>n.obs</code>     | The number of observations (if <code>covmat</code> is specified).  | NA        |
| <code>subset</code>    | Specifies which observations to include in the analysis.   |           |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function that specifies how to handle missing observations (if <code>x</code> is a formula).   |           |
| <code>start</code>     | A matrix of starting values for the algorithm.   | NULL      |
| <code>scores</code>    | A character value specifying the type of scores to produce. Use <code>scores="none"</code> for no scores, <code>scores="regression"</code> for Thompson's scores, or <code>"scores="Bartlett"</code> for Bartlett's weighted least squares scores. | "none"    |
| <code>rotation</code>  | A character value naming the function for rotating the factors.  | "varimax" |
| <code>control</code>   | A list of control values for the fit.  |           |

## Bootstrap Resampling

When analyzing statistics, analysts often wonder if the statistics are sensitive to a few outlying values. Would we get a similar result if we were to omit a few points? What is the range of values for the statistic? It is possible to answer these questions for an arbitrary statistic using a technique called *bootstrapping*.

Formally, bootstrap resampling is a technique for estimating the bias of an estimator. An *estimator* is a statistic calculated from a data sample that provides an estimate of a true underlying value, often a mean, a standard deviation, or a hidden parameter.

Bootstrapping works by repeatedly selecting random observations from a data sample (with replacement) and recalculating the statistic. In R, you can use bootstrap resampling through the `boot` function in the `boot` package:

```
library(boot)
boot(data, statistic, R, sim="ordinary", stype="i",
      strata=rep(1,n), L=NULL, m=0, weights=NULL,
      ran.gen=function(d, p) d, mle=NULL, simple=FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments to `boot` include the following.

| Argument  | Description  | Default             |
|-----------|--|---------------------|
| data      | A vector, matrix, or data frame containing the input data.   |                     |
| statistic | A function that, when applied to the data, returns a vector containing the statistic of interest. The function takes two arguments: the source data and a vector that specifies which values to select for each bootstrap replicate. The meaning of the second argument is defined by stype. |                     |
| R         | A numeric value specifying the number of bootstrap replicates.   |                     |
| sim       | A character value specifying the type of simulation. Possible values include "ordinary", "parametric", "balanced", "permutation", and "antithetic".  | "ordinary"          |
| stype     | A character value that specifies what the second argument to the statistic function represents. Possible values of stype are "i" (indices), "f" (frequencies), and "w" (weights).  | "i"                 |
| strata    | An integer vector or factor specifying the strata for multisample problems.  | rep(1, n)           |
| I         | A vector of influence values evaluated at the observations (when sim="antithetic").  | NULL                |
| m         | Specifies the number of predictions at each bootstrap replicate.   | 0                   |
| weights   | A numeric vector of weights for data.  | NULL                |
| ran.gen   | A function that describes how random values are generated (when sim="parametric").   | function(d, p)<br>d |
| mle       | The second argument passed to ran.gen; typically, a maximum likelihood estimate (hence the name).  | NULL                |
| simple    | Specifies the method for generating random values. Specifying simple=TRUE causes values to be selected on each iteration, saving storage space but costing time.   | FALSE               |
| ...       | Additional arguments passed to statistic.  |                     |

As an example of `boot`, let's look at real estate sale prices. Usually, the media reports median sale prices in a region. We can use the bootstrap to look at how biased median is as an estimator:

```
> b <- boot(data=home.sale.prices.june2008,
+   statistic = function(d,i) {median(d[i])},
+   R=1000)
> b
ORDINARY NONPARAMETRIC BOOTSTRAP
Call:
boot(data = home.sale.prices.june2008, statistic = function(d,
  i) {
  median(d[i])
}, R = 1000)
Bootstrap Statistics :
      original    bias    std. error
t1*     845000   -3334    23287.27
```

The `boot` function tells us that the median is a very slightly biased estimator.



# 17

## Probability Distributions

Many statistical tests work by calculating a test statistic and then comparing the test statistic to a value from a theoretical distribution. R provides a set of functions to calculate densities, distributions, and quantiles for common statistical distributions. You can also generate random values from these distributions. This section describes how to use these functions (using the normal distribution as an example) and then lists most functions included with the R `stats` library.

### Normal Distribution

As an example, we'll start with the normal distribution. As you may remember from statistics classes, the probability density function for the normal distribution is:

$$f(x) = \frac{e^{-(x-\mu)^2/(2\sigma^2)}}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}}$$

To find the probability density at a given value, use the `dnorm` function:

```
dnorm(x, mean = 0, sd = 1, log = FALSE)
```

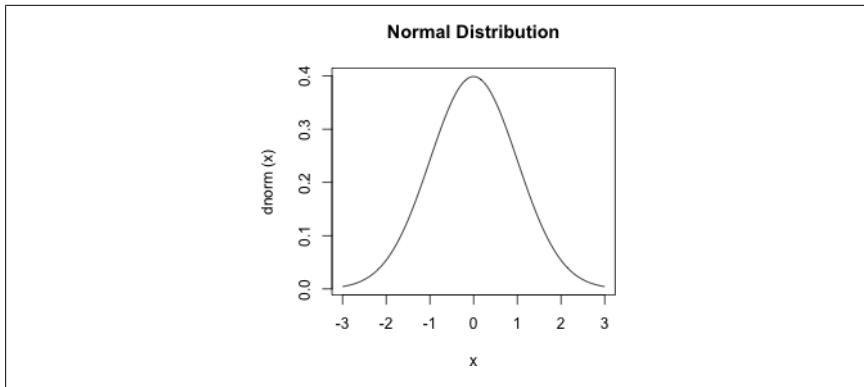
The arguments to this function are fairly intuitive: `x` specifies the value at which to evaluate the density, `mean` specifies the mean of the distribution, `sd` specifies the standard deviation, and `log` specifies whether to return the raw density (`log=FALSE`) or the logarithm of the density (`log=TRUE`). As an example, you can plot the normal distribution with the following command:

```
> plot(dnorm, -3, 3, main = "Normal Distribution")
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 17-1](#).

The distribution function for the normal distribution is `pnorm`:

```
pnorm(q, mean = 0, sd = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
```



*Figure 17-1. Normal distribution*

You can use the distribution function to tell you the probability that a randomly selected value from the distribution is less than or equal to  $q$ . Specifically, it returns  $p = \Pr(x \leq q)$ . The value  $q$  is specified by the argument `q`, the mean by `mean`, and the standard deviation by `sd`. If you would like the raw value  $p$ , then specify `log.p=FALSE`; if you would like  $\log(p)$ , then specify `log.p=TRUE`. By default, `lower.tail=TRUE`, so this function returns  $\Pr(x \leq q)$ ; if you would prefer  $\Pr(x > q)$ , then specify `lower.tail=FALSE`. Here are a few examples of `pnorm`:

```
> # mean is zero, normal distribution is symmetrical, so
> # probability(q <= 0) is .5
> pnorm(0)
[1] 0.5
> # what is the probability that the value is less than
> # 1 standard deviation below the mean?
> pnorm(-1)
[1] 0.1586553
> # what is the probability that the value is within
> # 1.96 standard deviations of the mean?
> pnorm(1.96, lower.tail=TRUE) - pnorm(-1.96, lower.tail=TRUE)
[1] 0.9500042
```

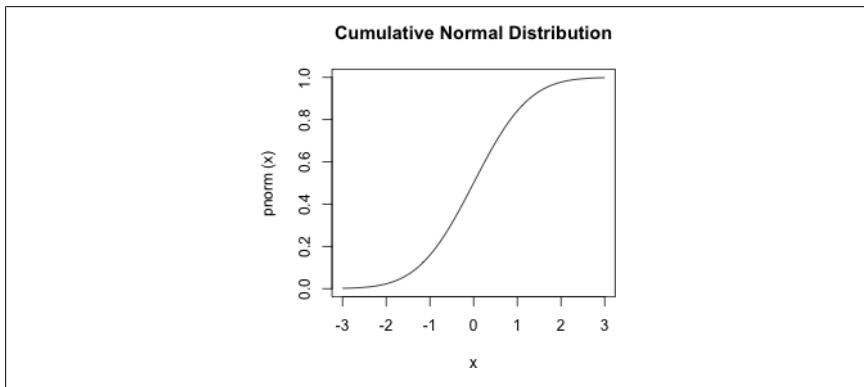
You can plot the cumulative normal distribution with a command like this:

```
> plot(pnorm, -3, 3, main = "Cumulative Normal Distribution")
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 17-2](#).

The quantile function is the reverse of the distribution function. Specifically, this function returns  $q$  where  $p = \Pr(x \leq q)$ . In R, you can calculate the quantile function for the normal distribution with the function `qnorm`:

```
qnorm(p, mean = 0, sd = 1, lower.tail = TRUE, log.p = FALSE)
```



*Figure 17-2. Cumulative normal distribution*

As above, `p` specifies  $p$  where  $p = \Pr(x \leq q)$ , `mean` specifies the mean of the distribution, `sd` specifies the standard deviation, and `lower.tail` specifies whether  $p = \Pr(x \leq q)$  (`lower.tail=TRUE`) or  $p = \Pr(x > q)$  (`lower.tail=FALSE`). The argument `log.p` specifies whether the input value is the logarithm of  $p$  (`log.p=TRUE`) or just  $p$  (`log.p=FALSE`). Here are a few examples:

```
> # find the median of the normal distribution
> qnorm(0.5)
[1] 0
> qnorm(log(0.5), log.p=TRUE)
[1] 0
> # qnorm is the inverse of pnorm
> qnorm(pnorm(-1))
[1] -1
> # finding the left and right sides of a 95% confidence interval
> c(qnorm(.025), qnorm(.975))
[1] -1.959964 1.959964
```

Finally, it is possible to generate random numbers taken from the normal distribution. Selecting random numbers from a specific distribution can be useful in testing statistical functions, in running simulations, in sampling methods, and in many other contexts. To do this in R, use the function `rnorm`:

```
rnorm(n, mean = 0, sd = 1)
```

For example, you could generate 10,000 randomly selected values from a normal distribution with a command like `rnorm(10000)`. You could plot these with an expression like this:

```
> hist(rnorm(10000), breaks=50)
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 17-3](#).

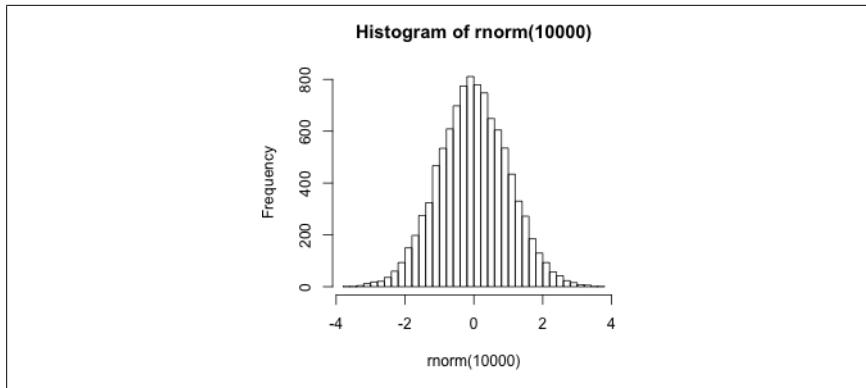


Figure 17-3. Histogram of 10,000 random values from a uniform distribution

## Common Distribution-Type Arguments

Almost all the R functions that generate values of probability distributions work the same way. They follow a similar naming convention:

- Probability density functions (PDFs) begin with “d.”<sup>1</sup>
- Distribution functions begin with “p.”
- Quantile functions begin with “q.”
- Random number generators begin with “r.”

Similarly, most types of functions share certain common arguments:

- For density functions: `x`, `log`
- For distribution functions: `q`, `lower.tail`, `log.p`
- For quantile functions: `p`, `lower.tail`, `log.p`
- For random numbers: `n` (except for hypergeometric distributions, where `n` is renamed to `nn`)

This might make it easier to remember which function to use for which application and which arguments you need to specify. Of course, you can always just look up the right function to use in R’s help system. Or in this book.

## Distribution Function Families

Here is a table showing the probability distribution functions available in R. In addition to the arguments listed above that are common to each type of function, there are also some arguments that are common to each family.

1. For discrete distributions, these are technically probability mass functions (PMFs), though the function names still begin with “d.”

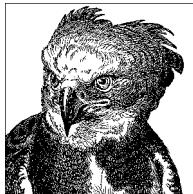
| Family         | PDF or PMF  | R functions                        | Family arguments            |
|----------------|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Beta           | $f(x) = \frac{\Gamma(a+b)}{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)} x^{a-1} (1-x)^{b-1}$   | dbeta, pbeta, qbeta, rbeta         | shape1, shape2, ncp=0       |
| Binomial       | $p(x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$   | dbinom, pbinom, qbinom, rbinom     | size, prob                  |
| Birthday       |   | pbirthday, qbirthday               | classes, coincident         |
| Gaussian       | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi s(1+((x-l)/s)^2)}$   | dcauchy, pcauchy, qcauchy, rcauchy | location, scale             |
| Chi-squared    | $f(x, df) = \frac{x^{df/2-1} e^{-x/2}}{\Gamma(1/2 df) 2^{df/2}}$  | dchisq, pchisq, qchisq, rchisq     | df, ncp=0                   |
| Exponential    | $f(x) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x}$   | dexp, pexp, qexp, rexp             | rate                        |
| F-distribution | $\frac{\sqrt{\frac{(df_1 x)^{df_1} df_1^{df_1}}{(df_1 x + df_2)^{df_1 + df_2}}}}{x B\left(\frac{df_1}{2}, \frac{df_2}{2}\right)}$ | df1, df2, ncp                      |                             |
| Gamma          | $(x) = \frac{1}{s^a \Gamma(a)} x^{a-1} e^{-x/s}$  | dgamma, pgamma, qgamma, rgamma     | shape, rate=1, scale=1/rate |
| Geometric      | $p(x) = p(1-p)^x$   | dgeom, pgeom, qgeom, rgeom         | prob                        |

Probability Distributions

| Family                   | PDF or PMF   | R functions                    | Family arguments  |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------------|---|
| Hypergeometric           | $p(x) = \frac{\binom{m}{x} \binom{n}{k-x}}{\binom{m+n}{k}}$  | dhyper, phyper, qhyper, rhyper | m, n, k (and note that the common variable "n" has been renamed "nn") |
| Log-normal               | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma x} e^{-(\log x - \mu)^2/(2\sigma^2)}$                               | dlnorm, plnorm, qlnorm, rlnorm | meanlog, sdlog  |
| Logistic                 | $F(x) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(x - m)/s}}$  | dlogis, plogis, qlogis, rlogis | location, scale   |
| Multinomial distribution | $p(X) = \frac{N!}{x[1]! \cdots x[length(x)]!} \prod_{j=1, \dots, length(x)} prob[j]^{x[j]}$            | dmultinom, rmultinom           | size, prob  |
| Negative binomial        | $p(x) = \frac{\Gamma(x+n)}{\Gamma(n)x!} p^n (1-p)^x$   | dnbinom, rnbinom, qnbinom      | size, prob, mu  |
| Normal                   | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-(x - \mu)^2/(2\sigma^2)}$                                      | dnorm, rnorm, qnorm            | mean, sd  |
| Poisson                  | $P(x) = \lambda^x e^{-\lambda} / x!$   | dpois, ppois, qpois, rpois     | lambda  |
| Student's t-distribution | $f(x) = \frac{\Gamma((df+1)/2)}{\sqrt{df\pi}\Gamma(df/2)} \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{df}\right)^{-(df+1)/2}$ | dt, pt, qt, rt                 | df, ncp   |

| Family                         | PDF or PMF   | R functions                                   | Family arguments    |
|--------------------------------|--|---|---------------------|
| Studentized range distribution |  |   | nmeans, df, nranges |
| Uniform distribution           |  | dunif, runif, runiform                        | min, max            |
| Weibull                        | $f(x) = \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{a-1} e^{-(x/b)^a}$ | dweibull, pweibull, qweibull,<br>rweibull     | shape, scale        |
| Wilcoxon rank sum              |  | dwilcox, pwilcox, qwilcox,<br>rwilcox         | m, n                |
| Wilcoxon signed rank           |  | dsignrank, psignrank,<br>qsignrank, rsignrank | n                   |





# 18

## Statistical Tests

Many data problems boil down to statistical tests. For example, you might want to answer a question like:

- Does this new drug work better than a placebo?
- Does the new website design lead to significantly more sales than the old design?
- Can this new investment strategy yield higher returns than an index fund?

To answer questions like these, you would formulate a hypothesis, design an experiment, collect data, and use a tool like R to analyze the data. This chapter focuses on the tools available in R for answering these questions.



To be helpful, I've tried to include enough description of different statistical methods to help remind you when to use each method (in addition to how to find them in R). However, because this is a Nutshell book, I can't describe where these formulas come from, or when they're safe to use. R is a good substitute for expensive, proprietary statistics software packages. However, *R in a Nutshell* isn't a good substitute for a good statistics course or a good statistics book.

I've broken this chapter into two sections: tools for continuous random variables and tools for categorical random variables (or counts).

### Continuous Data

This section describes tests that apply to continuous random variables. Many important measurements fall into this category, such as times, dollar amounts, and chemical concentrations.

## Normal Distribution-Based Tests

We'll start off by showing how to use some common statistical tests that assume the underlying data is normally distributed. Normal distributions occur frequently in nature, so this is often a good assumption.<sup>1</sup>

### Comparing means

Suppose that you designed an experiment to show that some effect is true. You have collected some data and now want to know if the data proves your hypothesis. One common question is to ask if the mean of the experimental data is close to what the experimenter expected; this is called the null hypothesis. Alternately, the experimenter may calculate the probability that an alternative hypothesis was true. Specifically, suppose that you have a set of observations  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  with experimental mean  $\mu$  and want to know if the experimental mean is different from the null hypothesis mean  $\mu_0$ . Furthermore, assume that the observations are normally distributed. To test the validity of the hypothesis, you can use a *t*-test. In R, you would use the function `t.test`:

```
## Default S3 method:  
t.test(x, y = NULL,  
       alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),  
       mu = 0, paired = FALSE, var.equal = FALSE,  
       conf.level = 0.95, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to the `t.test` function.

| Argument    | Description   | Default  |
|-------------|---|--|
| x           | A numeric vector of data values.  |  |
| y           | A numeric vector of data values (use <code>y=NULL</code> for comparing a single vector of values to a null hypothesis mean, <code>mu</code> , or a vector to compare vector <code>x</code> to vector <code>y</code> ).            | NULL   |
| alternative | A character value specifying the alternative hypothesis. Use <code>alternative="two.sided"</code> for a two-sided distribution, <code>alternative="less"</code> for lower, and <code>alternative="greater"</code> for higher.     | <code>c("two.sided", "less", "greater")</code> |
| mu          | A numeric value specifying the value of the mean under the null hypothesis (if testing a single vector of values) or the difference between the means (if comparing the means of two vectors).                                    | 0  |
| paired      | A logical value indicating if the vectors are paired. See the next section for a description of how to use paired.  | FALSE  |
| var.equal   | A logical value indicating whether the variance of the two vectors is assumed to be the same. If <code>var.equal=TRUE</code> , then the pooled variance is used. If <code>var.equal=FALSE</code> , then the Welch method is used. | FALSE  |

1. One of the most famous results in probability theory is something called the *central limit theorem*. The central limit theorem states, in a nutshell, that if  $x$  is the sum of a set of random variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , then the distribution of  $x$  approaches the normal distribution as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

| Argument   | Description                              | Default |
|------------|--|---------|
| conf.level | The confidence interval.                 | 0.95    |
| ...        | Optional values passed to other methods. |         |

Let's take a look at an example of how you would use the `t.test` function. We'll use the same example data that we used in “[Dot plots](#)” on page 280. Suppose that we thought, a priori, that tires of type H should last for approximately nine hours until failure.<sup>2</sup> We'd like to compare the true mean of this data to the hypothetical mean and determine if the difference was statistically significant using a *t*-test.

To load the sample data, use the following command:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(tires.sus)
```

To begin, let's extract a vector with the set of values in which we are interested and calculate the true mean:

```
> times.to.failure.h <- subset(tires.sus,
+   Tire_Type=="H" &
+   Speed_At_Failure_km_h==160
+ )$Time_To_Failure
> times.to.failure.h
[1] 10.00 16.67 13.58 13.53 16.83 7.62 4.25 10.67 4.42 4.25
> mean(times.to.failure.h)
[1] 10.182
```

As you can see, the true mean for these 10 tests was slightly longer than expected (10.182). We can use the function `t.test` to check if this difference is statistically significant:

```
> t.test(times.to.failure.h, mu=9)

One Sample t-test

data: times.to.failure.h
t = 0.7569, df = 9, p-value = 0.4684
alternative hypothesis: true mean is not equal to 9
95 percent confidence interval:
 6.649536 13.714464
sample estimates:
mean of x
10.182
```

Here's an explanation of the output from the `t.test` function. First, the function shows us the test statistic ( $t = 0.7569$ ), the degrees of freedom ( $df = 9$ ), and the calculated *p*-value for the test ( $p\text{-value} = 0.4684$ ). The *p*-value means that the probability that the mean value from an actual sample was higher than 10.182 (or lower than 7.818) was 0.4684.

2. This is a slightly contrived example, because I just made up the hypothetical mean value. In reality, the mean value might come from another experiment (perhaps a published experiment, where the raw data was not available). Or the mean value might have been derived from theory.

The next line states the alternative hypothesis: the true mean is not equal to 9, which we would reject based on the result of this test. Next, the `t.test` function shows the 95% confidence interval for this test, and, finally, it gives the actual mean. As a statistician would say, this evidence does not imply that the true mean was not equal to 9.

Another common situation is when you have two groups of observations, and you want to know if there is a significant difference between the means of the two groups of observations. You can also use a *t*-test to compare the means of the two groups.

Let's pick another example from the tire data. Looking at the characteristics of the different tires that were tested, notice that three of the six tires had the same speed rating: S. Based on this speed rating, we would expect all three tires to last the same amount of time in the test:

```
> times.to.failure.e <- subset(tires.sus,
+   Tire_Type=="E" & Speed_At_Failure_km_h==180)$Time_To_Failure
> times.to.failure.d <- subset(tires.sus,
+   Tire_Type=="D" & Speed_At_Failure_km_h==180)$Time_To_Failure
> times.to.failure.b <- subset(tires.sus,
+   Tire_Type=="B" & Speed_At_Failure_km_h==180)$Time_To_Failure
```

Let's start by comparing the mean times until failure for tires of types D and E:

```
> t.test(times.to.failure.e, times.to.failure.d)
```

Welch Two Sample t-test

```
data: times.to.failure.e and times.to.failure.d
t = -2.5042, df = 8.961, p-value = 0.03373
alternative hypothesis: true difference in means is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
-0.82222528 -0.04148901
sample estimates:
mean of x mean of y
4.321000 4.752857
```

The results here are similar to the results from the single-sample *t*-test. In this case, notice that the results were statistically significant at the 95% confidence interval; tires of type E lasted longer than tires of type D.

As an another example, let's compare tires of types E and B:

```
> t.test(times.to.failure.e, times.to.failure.b)
```

Welch Two Sample t-test

```
data: times.to.failure.e and times.to.failure.b
t = -1.4549, df = 16.956, p-value = 0.1640
alternative hypothesis: true difference in means is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
-0.5591177 0.1027844
sample estimates:
mean of x mean of y
4.321000 4.549167
```

In this case, the difference in means was not significant between the two groups (because the calculated  $p$ -value was 0.1640). Notice that the output in R is otherwise identical; the `t.test` function doesn't explicitly say if the results were significant or not.

For two-sample  $t$ -tests, you can also use a formula to specify a  $t$ -test if the data is included in a data frame, and the two groups of observations are differentiated by a factor:

```
## S3 method for class 'formula':  
t.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

The formula specifies the variables to use in the test.

As an example, let's look at data on field goals kicked in the NFL during 2005. Specifically, let's look at the distance of successful field goals kicked in indoor and outdoor stadiums. Many TV commentators talk about the difficulty of kicking field goals outdoors, due to snow, wind, and so on. But does it make a significant difference in the distance of successful field goals? (Or, for that matter, in bad field goals?) We can use a  $t$ -test to find out.

First, let's put together the data set:

```
> library(nutshell)  
> data(field.goals)  
> good <- transform(  
+   field.goals[field.goals$play.type=="FG good",  
+   c("yards", "stadium.type")],  
+   outside=(stadium.type=="Out"))  
> bad <- transform(  
+   field.goals[field.goals$play.type=="FG no",  
+   c("yards", "stadium.type")],  
+   outside=(stadium.type=="Out"))
```

Now, let's use the `t.test` function to compare the distance of field goals in indoor and outdoor stadiums:

```
> t.test(yards~outside, data=good)  
  
Welch Two Sample t-test  
  
data: yards by outside  
t = 1.1259, df = 319.428, p-value = 0.2610  
alternative hypothesis: true difference in means is not equal to 0  
95 percent confidence interval:  
-0.685112 2.518571  
sample estimates:  
mean in group FALSE mean in group TRUE  
35.31707 34.40034
```

Although the average successful field goal length was about a yard longer, the difference is not significant at a 95% confidence level. The same is true for field goals that missed:

```
> t.test(yards~outside, data=bad)
```

### Welch Two Sample t-test

```
data: yards by outside
t = 1.2016, df = 70.726, p-value = 0.2335
alternative hypothesis: true difference in means is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
-1.097564 4.425985
sample estimates:
mean in group FALSE mean in group TRUE
45.18421      43.52000
```

Was there a statistically significant difference in the distances that coaches attempted to kick field goals? Let's take a look:

```
> field.goals.inout <-
+   transform(field.goals,
+   outside=(stadium.type=="Out"))
> t.test(yards~outside, data=field.goals.inout)
```

### Welch Two Sample t-test

```
data: yards by outside
t = 1.5473, df = 401.509, p-value = 0.1226
alternative hypothesis: true difference in means is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
-0.3152552 2.6461541
sample estimates:
mean in group FALSE mean in group TRUE
37.14625      35.98080
```

Again, the difference does not appear to be statistically significant at a 95% level.

## Comparing paired data

Sometimes you are provided with paired data. For example, you might have two observations per subject: one before an experiment and one after the experiment. In this case, you would use a paired *t*-test. You can use the `t.test` function, specifying `paired=TRUE`, to perform this test.

As an example of paired data, we can look at the SPECint2006 results. SPEC is an organization that provides computer performance data using standardized tests. The organization defines a number of different tests for different applications: database performance, web server performance, graphics performance, and so on. For our example, we'll use a simple metric: the integer performance of different computers on typical desktop computing tasks.

SPEC provides two different types of tests: tests with standard settings and tests that are optimized for specific computers. As an example of paired data, we will compare the unoptimized results (called "baseline") with the optimized results, to see if there is a statistically significant difference between the results. This data set is a good example of paired data: we have two different test results for each computer system. As an example, we will look only at single-chip, dual-core systems:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(SPECint2006)
```

```

> t.test(subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips==1&Num.Cores==2)$Baseline,
+         subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips==1&Num.Cores==2)$Result,
+         paired=TRUE)

Paired t-test

data: subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips == 1 & Num.Cores == 2)$Baseline
and subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips == 1 & Num.Cores == 2)$Result
t = -21.8043, df = 111, p-value < 2.2e-16
alternative hypothesis: true difference in means is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
-1.957837 -1.631627
sample estimates:
mean of the differences
-1.794732

```

In this case, we can clearly see that the results were significant at the 95% confidence interval. (This isn't a very big surprise. It's well known that optimizing compiler settings and system parameters can make a big difference on system performance. Additionally, submitting optimized results is optional: organizations that could not tune their systems very well probably would not voluntarily share that fact.)

### Comparing variances of two populations

To compare the variances of two samples from normal populations, R includes the `var.test` function, which performs an *F*-test:

```

## Default S3 method:
var.test(x, y, ratio = 1,
        alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
        conf.level = 0.95, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
var.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)

```

Let's continue with the example from above. Is there a difference in the variance of field goal lengths between indoor and outdoor stadiums? Let's take a look:

```
> var.test(yards~outside, data=field.goals.inout)
```

```

F test to compare two variances

data: yards by outside
F = 1.2432, num df = 252, denom df = 728, p-value = 0.03098
alternative hypothesis: true ratio of variances is not equal to 1
95 percent confidence interval:
1.019968 1.530612
sample estimates:
ratio of variances
1.243157

```

As you can see from the output above, the *p*-value is less than 0.05, indicating that the difference in variance between the two populations is statistically significant. To test that the variances in each of the groups (samples) are the same, you can use Bartlett's test. In R, this is available through the `bartlett.test` function:

```

bartlett.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
bartlett.test(x, g, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
bartlett.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)

```

Using the same example as above, let's compare variances of the two groups using the Bartlett test:

```

> bartlett.test(yards~outside, data=field.goals.inout)

Bartlett test of homogeneity of variances

data: yards by outside
Bartlett's K-squared = 4.5808, df = 1, p-value = 0.03233

```

### Comparing means across more than two groups

To compare the means across more than two groups, you can use a method called *analysis of variance* (ANOVA).<sup>3</sup> ANOVA methods are very important for statistics. A full explanation of ANOVA requires an explanation of statistical models in R, which are covered in [Chapter 20](#).

A simple way to perform these tests is through `aov`:

```

aov(formula, data = NULL, projections = FALSE, qr = TRUE,
contrasts = NULL, ...)

```

As an example, let's consider the 2006 U.S. mortality data set. (I showed how to load this data set in [“Using Other Languages to Preprocess Text Files” on page 151](#).) Specifically, we'll look at differences in age at death by cause of death. This is a pretty silly example; clearly, the average age at which people die of natural causes is going to be higher than the age at which they die for other reasons. However, this should help illustrate how the statistic works.

I mapped the disease codes in the original file into readable values and then summarized causes into a small number of reasons. To do this, I created a function to translate the numeric codes into character values. (I grouped together some common causes of death.) The `mort06.smpl` data set is included in the `nutshell` package.

Let's take a look at the summary statistics for age by cause:

```

> library(nutshell)
> data(mort06.smpl)
> tapply(mort06.smpl$age, INDEX=list(mort06.smpl$Cause), FUN=summary)
$Accidents
   Min. 1st Qu. Median    Mean 3rd Qu.   Max.   NA's
   0.00   31.00  48.00  50.88  73.00 108.00   8.00

$`Alzheimer's Disease`
   Min. 1st Qu. Median    Mean 3rd Qu.   Max.

```

3. This process is named for the analysis process, not for the results. It doesn't compare variances; it compares means by analyzing variances.

```
40.00 82.00 87.00 86.07 91.00 109.00
```

#### \$Cancer

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.   |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|
| 0.00 | 61.00   | 72.00  | 70.24 | 81.00   | 107.00 |

#### `Chronic respiratory diseases`

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.   | NA's |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|------|
| 0.00 | 70.00   | 78.00  | 76.37 | 84.00   | 106.00 | 1.00 |

#### \$Diabetes

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.   | NA's |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|------|
| 0.00 | 63.00   | 75.00  | 72.43 | 83.00   | 104.00 | 1.00 |

#### `Heart Disease`

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.   | NA's |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|------|
| 0.00 | 70.00   | 81.00  | 77.66 | 88.00   | 112.00 | 4.00 |

#### \$Homicide

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.  | NA's |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|-------|------|
| 0.00 | 22.00   | 28.00  | 32.19 | 42.00   | 92.00 | 2.00 |

#### `Influenza and pneumonia`

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.   | NA's |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|------|
| 0.00 | 76.00   | 84.00  | 80.16 | 90.00   | 108.00 | 1.00 |

#### \$Other

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.   | NA's  |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|-------|
| 0.00 | 60.00   | 78.00  | 70.44 | 87.00   | 110.00 | 10.00 |

#### \$Suicide

| Min. | 1st Qu. | Median | Mean  | 3rd Qu. | Max.  | NA's |
|------|---------|--------|-------|---------|-------|------|
| 8.00 | 32.00   | 45.00  | 46.14 | 57.00   | 97.00 | 2.00 |

Now let's fit an ANOVA model to the data and show a summary of the model. To do this in R, we simply need to use the `aov` function:

```
> aov(age~Cause, data=mort06.smpl)
Call:
  aov(formula = age ~ Cause, data = mort06.smpl)
```

#### Terms:

| Cause           | Residuals         |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Sum of Squares  | 15727886 72067515 |
| Deg. of Freedom | 9 243034          |

```
Residual standard error: 17.22012
Estimated effects may be unbalanced
29 observations deleted due to missingness
```

To get more information on ANOVA results, you can use the `model.tables` to print information on `aov` objects:

```
## S3 method for class 'aov':
model.tables(x, type = "effects", se = FALSE, cterms, ...)
```

The argument `x` specifies the model object, `type` specifies the type of results to print, `se` specifies whether to compute standard errors, and `cterms` specifies which tables should be compared. As an example, here is the output of `model.tables` for the cause of death example above:

```
> model.tables(aov(age~Cause, data=mort06.smp1))
Tables of effects

Cause
  Accidents Alzheimer's Disease   Cancer
  -21.41           13.77      -2.056
rep 12363.00          7336.00 57162.000
  Chronic respiratory diseases Diabetes Heart Disease Homicide
  4.077       0.1343      5.371     -40.1
rep 12386.000        7271.0000 82593.000 1917.0
  Influenza and pneumonia Other Suicide
  7.863      -1.855     -26.15
rep 5826.000        52956.000 3234.00
```

As another example of `aov`, let's consider weight gain by women during pregnancy:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(births2006.smp1)
> births2006.cln <- births2006.smp1[births2006.smp1$WTGAIN<99 &
+ !is.na(births2006.smp1$WTGAIN),]
> tapply(X=births2006.cln$WTGAIN,
+ INDEX=births2006.cln$DOB_MM,
+ FUN=mean)
  1      2      3      4      5      6
30.94405 31.08356 31.29317 31.33610 31.07242 30.92589
  7      8      9     10     11     12
30.57734 30.54855 30.25546 30.43985 30.79077 30.85564
```

It appears that weight gain increases slightly during winter months, but is this difference statistically significant? Let's take a look:

```
> aov(WTGAIN~DOB_MM, births2006.cln)
Call:
aov(formula = WTGAIN ~ DOB_MM, data = births2006.cln)

Terms:
             DOB_MM Residuals
Sum of Squares    14777 73385301
Deg. of Freedom       1    351465

Residual standard error: 14.44986
Estimated effects may be unbalanced
```

Often, it's better to use `lm` to fit a linear model and then use the `anova` function to extract information about analysis of variance. For large models, it is often more efficient to use the `update` function to change an existing model than to create a new model from scratch. See “[Example: A Simple Linear Model](#)” on page 401 for more information on the `lm` function, model objects, and the `update` function. The `anova` function presents results slightly differently than the `aov` function, as you can see in this example:

```

> mort06.smpl.lm <- lm(age~Cause, data=mort06.smpl)
> anova(mort06.smpl.lm)
Analysis of Variance Table

Response: age
          Df  Sum Sq Mean Sq F value    Pr(>F)
Cause        9 15727886 1747543  5893.3 < 2.2e-16 ***
Residuals 243034 72067515      297
---
Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

```

ANOVA calculations assume that the variance is equal across groups. When you know this is not true (or suspect this is not true), you can use the `oneway.test` function to calculate whether two or more samples have the same mean:

```
oneway.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, var.equal = FALSE)
```

This is similar to calling `t.test` with `var.equal=FALSE` (and the calculation method was also developed by Welch).

There are other functions for printing information about `aov` objects: `proj` returns a list of matrices giving the projections of data onto the linear model, `TukeyHSD` returns confidence intervals on the differences between the means of the levels of a factor with the specified family-wise probability of coverage, and `se.contrast` returns the standard errors for one or more contrasts in an `aov` object.

### Pairwise t-tests between multiple groups

Sometimes, you're not interested in just whether there is a difference across groups, but would like to know more details about the differences. One way to do this is by performing a *t*-test between every pair of groups. To do this in R, you can use the `pairwise.t.test` function:

```
pairwise.t.test(x, g, p.adjust.method = p.adjust.methods,
                 pool.sd = !paired, paired = FALSE,
                 alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"), ...)
```

This function calculates pairwise comparisons among group levels with corrections for multiple testing. The argument `x` specifies a vector of numeric values, and `g` specifies a factor that is used to group values. The argument `pool.sd` specifies whether to calculate a single standard deviation value across all groups and use this for the test.

As an example, let's return to the tire data that we used in the example above. When we looked at the `t.test` function, we created three different vectors for the different types of tires. Here we'll just use the pairwise *t*-test to compare all the tires by type:

```
> pairwise.t.test(tires.sus$Time_To_Failure, tires.sus$Tire_Type)
```

```
Pairwise comparisons using t tests with pooled SD
data: tires.sus$Time_To_Failure and tires.sus$Tire_Type
```

|   | B      | C      | D | E | H |
|---|--------|--------|---|---|---|
| C | 0.2219 | -      | - | - | - |
| D | 1.0000 | 0.5650 | - | - | - |

```
E 1.0000 0.0769 1.0000 -      -
H 2.4e-07 0.0029 2.6e-05 1.9e-08 -
L 0.1147 1.0000 0.4408 0.0291 0.0019
```

```
P value adjustment method: holm
```

As you can see, there is no statistically significant difference between the means of a few pairs of groups (such as C and L, D and L, or D and E), but there is a significant difference between some others (such as B and H, C and H, or E and L).

### Testing for normality

To test if a distribution is normally distributed in R, you can use the Shapiro-Wilk test for normality through the `shapiro.test` function:

```
shapiro.test(x)
```

Using the example above, let's look at field goal lengths in the NFL in 2005. Was the distribution of field goal lengths normally distributed? My first instinct is to take a look at the distribution using a histogram or a quantile-quantile plot. Here is some R code to plot both, side by side:

```
> par(mfcol=c(1, 2), ps=6.5)
> hist(fg_attempts$yards, breaks=25)
> qqnorm(fg_attempts$yards, pch=".")
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 18-1](#). It seems plausible that the distribution was normal: the distribution is roughly bell-curve shaped, and the quantile-quantile plot is roughly linear. To get a more rigorous answer, we can use the Shapiro-Wilk test. Here's what the Shapiro-Wilk test tells us:

```
> shapiro.test(field.goals$yards)
```

```
Shapiro-Wilk normality test
```

```
data: field.goals$YARDS
W = 0.9728, p-value = 1.307e-12
```

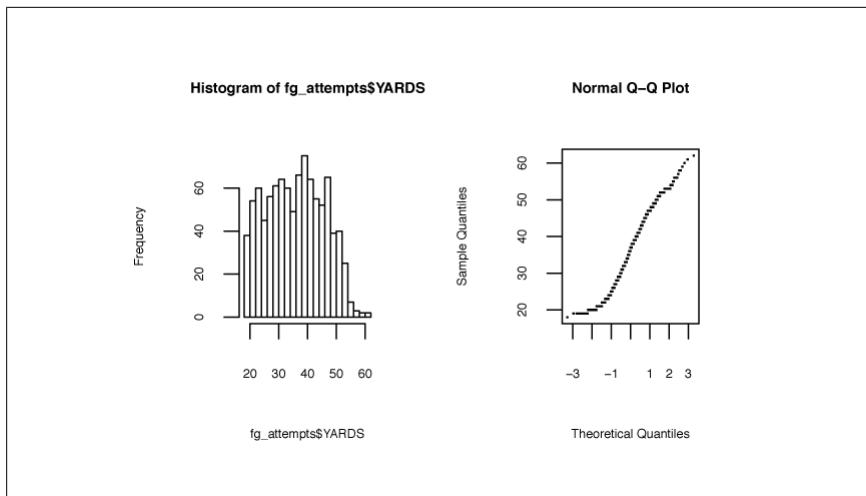
As you can tell from the *p*-value, it is quite likely that this data is not normally distributed.

### Testing if a data vector came from an arbitrary distribution

You can use the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test to see if a vector came from an arbitrary probability distribution (not just a normal distribution):

```
ks.test(x, y, ...,
        alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
        exact = NULL)
```

The argument *x* specifies the test data. The argument *y* specifies the arbitrary distribution; it can be a vector of data values, a character name for a probability distribution function, or a distribution function. (You can pass along additional arguments to the distribution function.) The *alternative* argument allows you to specify the alternative hypothesis, and the *exact* value specifies whether to calculate exact values (for large *x* and *y*) or approximations.



*Figure 18-1. Distribution of field goal attempt distances in the NFL in 2005*

Using the example above, we can use the `ks.test` function. We'll specify the normal distribution (using the `pnorm` function):

```
> ks.test(field.goals$yards, pnorm)

One-sample Kolmogorov-Smirnov test

data: field.goals$yards
D = 1, p-value < 2.2e-16
alternative hypothesis: two-sided

Warning message:
In ks.test(field.goals$yards, pnorm) :
  cannot compute correct p-values with ties
```

Notice the warning message; ties are extremely unlikely for values from a true normal distribution. If there are ties in the data, that is a good sign that the test data is not actually normally distributed, so the function prints a warning.

### Testing if two data vectors came from the same distribution

The Kolmogorov-Smirnov test can also be used to test the probability that two data vectors came from the same distribution. As an example, let's look at the SPECint2006 data that we saw in “Comparing paired data” on page 376. What is the probability that the benchmark data and the optimized data come from the same distribution? We'll compare the benchmark and optimized data using the `ks.test` function, adding some jitter to the values to suppress the warning about ties:

```
> ks.test(jitter(subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips==1&Num.Cores==2)$Baseline),
+   jitter(subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips==1&Num.Cores==2)$Result))

Two-sample Kolmogorov-Smirnov test

data: jitter(subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips == 1 & Num.Cores == 2)$Baseline)
```

```
and jitter(subset(SPECint2006, Num.Chips == 1 & Num.Cores == 2)$Result)
D = 0.2143, p-value = 0.01168
alternative hypothesis: two-sided
```

The p-value of this test was 0.01168, which is much less than 0.05. So this test implies that it was not likely that these two samples came from the same distribution.

## Correlation tests

The functions in “[Correlation and Covariance](#) on page 354” simply compute the degree of correlation between pairs of vectors, but they don’t tell you if the correlation is significant. If you’d like to check whether there is a statistically significant correlation between two vectors, you can use the `cor.test` function:

```
## Default S3 method:
cor.test(x, y,
        alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
        method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"),
        exact = NULL, conf.level = 0.95, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
cor.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

For example, let’s look at how this function works on two obviously correlated vectors:

```
> cor.test(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8),
+           c(0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 11, 14))

Pearson's product-moment correlation

data: c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) and c(0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 11, 14)
t = 36.1479, df = 6, p-value = 2.989e-08
alternative hypothesis: true correlation is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
 0.9868648 0.9996032
sample estimates:
cor
0.997712
```

And two less correlated vectors:

```
> cor.test(c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8),
+           c(5, 3, 8, 1, 7, 0, 0, 3))

Pearson's product-moment correlation

data: c(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) and c(5, 3, 8, 1, 7, 0, 0, 3)
t = -1.2232, df = 6, p-value = 0.2671
alternative hypothesis: true correlation is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
 -0.8757371 0.3764066
sample estimates:
cor
-0.4467689
```

Let's revisit the data on environmental toxins and lung cancer that we examined in “Scatter Plots” on page 214. This data compared the amount of airborne toxins released in each state with the deaths by lung cancer in each state:

```
> cor.test(air_on_site/Surface_Area, deaths_lung/Population)

Pearson's product-moment correlation

data: air_on_site/Surface_Area and deaths_lung/Population
t = 3.4108, df = 39, p-value = 0.001520
alternative hypothesis: true correlation is not equal to 0
95 percent confidence interval:
0.2013723 0.6858402
sample estimates:
cor
0.4793273
```

The test shows that there appears to be a positive correlation between these two quantities that is statistically significant. However, don't infer that there is a causal relationship between the rates of toxins released and the rates of lung cancer deaths. There are many alternate explanations for this phenomenon. For example, states with lots of dirty industrial activity may also be states with lower levels of income, which, in turn, correlates with lower-quality medical care. Or, perhaps, states with lots of industrial activity may be states with higher rates of smoking. Or maybe states with lower levels of industrial activity are less likely to identify cancer as a cause of death. Whatever the explanation, I thought this was a neat result.

## Non-Parametric Tests

Although many real data sources can be approximated well by a normal distribution, there are many cases where you know that the data is not normally distributed, or you do not know the shape of the distribution. A good alternative to the tests described in “Normal Distribution-Based Tests” on page 372 are non-parametric tests. These tests can be more computationally intensive than tests based on a normal distribution, but they may help you make better choices when the distribution is not normally distributed.

### Comparing two means

The Wilcoxon test is the non-parametric equivalent to the *t*-test:

```
## Default S3 method:
wilcox.test(x, y = NULL,
            alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
            mu = 0, paired = FALSE, exact = NULL, correct = TRUE,
            conf.int = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
wilcox.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

The Wilcoxon test works by looking at the ranks of different elements in  $x$  and  $y$ ; the exact values don't matter. To get the test statistic for  $x$  and  $y$ , you can calculate:

$$w = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } y[j] < x[i] \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$W = \sum_{\forall i, j} w$$

That is, look at all pairs of values  $(x[i], y[j])$ , counting the number of cases where  $y[j] < x[i]$ . If the two vectors were both from the same distribution, you'd expect this to be true for roughly half the pairs. The Wilcoxon distribution can be used to estimate the probability of different values for  $W$ ; the  $p$ -value for the Wilcoxon test comes from this distribution. Notice that there is no version of the Wilcoxon test that compares a data sample with a hypothesized mean.

Let's take a look at the same examples we used for  $t$ -tests. Let's start by looking at the times to failure for tires. As above, let's start by comparing tires of type E to tires of type D:

```
> wilcox.test(times.to.failure.e, times.to.failure.d)

Wilcoxon rank sum test with continuity correction

data: times.to.failure.e and times.to.failure.d
W = 14.5, p-value = 0.05054
alternative hypothesis: true location shift is not equal to 0

Warning message:
In wilcox.test.default(times.to.failure.e, times.to.failure.d) :
  cannot compute exact p-value with ties
```

Here's an explanation of the output. The test function first shows the test statistic ( $W = 14.5$ ) and the  $p$ -value for the statistic (0.05054). Notice that this is different from the result for the  $t$ -test. With the  $t$ -test, there was a significant difference between the means of the two groups, but with the Wilcoxon rank-sum test, the difference between the two groups is not significant at a 95% confidence level (though it barely misses).

Also note the warning. The Wilcoxon test statistic is based on the rank order of the observations, not their specific values. In our test data, there are a few ties:

```
> times.to.failure.d
[1] 5.22 4.47 4.25 5.22 4.68 5.05 4.3
> times.to.failure.e
[1] 4.48 4.70 4.52 4.63 4.07 4.28 4.25 4.10 4.08 4.10
```

Because there was a tie, the function above actually used a normal approximation; see the help file for more information.

As with the standard *t*-test function, there is also a formula method for *wilcox.test*. As above, let's compare the distance of field goals made in indoor stadiums versus outdoor stadiums:

```
> wilcox.test(yards~outside, data=good)

Wilcoxon rank sum test with continuity correction

data: YARDS by outside
W = 62045, p-value = 0.3930
alternative hypothesis: true location shift is not equal to 0
```

### Comparing more than two means

The Kruskal-Wallis rank-sum test is a non-parametric equivalent to ANOVA analysis:

```
kruskal.test(x, ...)

## Default S3 method:
kruskal.test(x, g, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
kruskal.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

As an example, here is the output for the mortality data that we used as an example for ANOVA statistics:

```
> kruskal.test(age~Cause, data=mort06.smp1)

Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test

data: age by Cause
Kruskal-Wallis chi-squared = 34868.1, df = 9, p-value < 2.2e-16
```

### Comparing variances

To compare the variance among different groups using a nonparametric test, R includes an implementation of the Fligner-Killeen (median) test through the *fligner.test* function:

```
## Default S3 method:
fligner.test(x, g, ...)
## S3 method for class 'formula':
fligner.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

Here is the output of *fligner.test* for the mortality data above:

```
> fligner.test(age~Cause, data=mort06.smp1)

Fligner-Killeen test of homogeneity of variances

data: age by Cause
Fligner-Killeen:med chi-squared = 15788, df = 9,
p-value < 2.2e-16
```

## Difference in scale parameters

There are some tests in R for testing for differences in scale parameters. To use the Ansari-Bradley two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters, use the function `ansari.test`:

```
## Default S3 method:  
ansari.test(x, y,  
            alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),  
            exact = NULL, conf.int = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95,  
            ...)  
  
## S3 method for class 'formula':  
ansari.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

To use Mood's two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters in R, try the function `mood.test`:

```
## Default S3 method:  
mood.test(x, y,  
          alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"), ...)  
  
## S3 method for class 'formula':  
mood.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

## Discrete Data

There is a different set of tests for looking at the statistical significance of discrete random variables (like counts or proportions), and so there is a different set of functions in R for performing those tests.

## Proportion Tests

If you have a data set with several different groups of observations and are measuring the probability of success in each group (or the fraction of some other characteristic), you can use the function `prop.test` to measure whether the difference between groups is statistically significant. Specifically, `prop.test` can be used for testing the null hypothesis that the proportions (probabilities of success) in several groups are the same or that they equal certain given values:

```
prop.test(x, n, p = NULL,  
          alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),  
          conf.level = 0.95, correct = TRUE)
```

As an example, let's revisit the field goal data. Above, we considered the question, “Is there a difference in the length of attempts indoors and outdoors?” Now we'll ask the question, “Is the probability of success the same indoors as it is outdoors?”

First, let's create a new data set containing only good and bad field goals. (We'll eliminate blocked and aborted attempts; there were only 8 aborted attempts and 24 blocked attempts in 2005, but 787 good attempts and 163 bad [no good] attempts.)

```
> field.goals.goodbad <- field.goals[field.goals$play.type=="FG good" |  
+                                         field.goals$play.type=="FG no", ]
```

Now let's create a table of successes and failures by stadium type:

```
> field.goals.table <- table(field.goals.goodbad$play.type,
+                               field.goals.goodbad$stadium.type)
> field.goals.table
```

|            | Both | In  | Out |
|------------|------|-----|-----|
| FG aborted | 0    | 0   | 0   |
| FG blocked | 0    | 0   | 0   |
| FG good    | 53   | 152 | 582 |
| FG no      | 14   | 24  | 125 |

The table isn't quite right for `prop.test`; we need a table with two columns (one with a count of successes and one with a count of failures), and we don't want to show empty factor levels. Let's remove the two rows we don't need and transpose the table:

```
> field.goals.table.t <- t(field.goals.table[3:4,])
> field.goals.table.t
```

|      | FG good | FG no |
|------|---------|-------|
| Both | 53      | 14    |
| In   | 152     | 24    |
| Out  | 582     | 125   |

Now we're ready to see if there is a statistically significant difference in success among the three groups. We can simply call `prop.test` on the `field.goals.table.t` object to check:

```
> prop.test(field.goals.table.t)

 3-sample test for equality of proportions without
 continuity correction

data: field.goals.table
X-squared = 2.3298, df = 2, p-value = 0.3120
alternative hypothesis: two.sided
sample estimates:
prop 1   prop 2   prop 3 
0.7910448 0.8636364 0.8231966
```

As you can see, the results are not significant.

## Binomial Tests

Often, an experiment consists of a series of identical trials, each of which has only two outcomes. For example, suppose that you wanted to test the hypothesis that the probability that a coin would land on heads was 0.5. You might design an experiment where you flipped the coin 50 times and counted the number of heads. Each coin flip is an example of a Bernoulli trial. The distribution of the number of heads is given by the binomial distribution.

R includes a function for evaluating such a trial to determine whether to accept or reject the hypothesis:

```
binom.test(x, n, p = 0.5,
            alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
            conf.level = 0.95)
```

The argument `x` gives the number of successes, `n` gives the total number of trials, `p` gives the probability of each success, `alternative` gives the alternative hypothesis, and `conf.level` gives the returned confidence level.

As an example, let's look at David Ortiz's performance during the 2008 season. In 2008, he had a batting average of .264 (110 hits in 416 at bats). Suppose that he was actually a .300 hitter—that the actual probability that he would get a hit in a given at bat was 0.3. What were the odds that he hit .264 or less in this number of at bats? We can use the function `binom.test` to estimate this probability:

```
> binom.test(x=110, n=416, p=0.3, alternative="less")

Exact binomial test

data: 110 and 416
number of successes = 110, number of trials = 416, p-value =
0.06174
alternative hypothesis: true probability of success is less than 0.3
95 percent confidence interval:
0.0000000 0.3023771
sample estimates:
probability of success
0.2644231
```

Unlike some other test functions, the *p*-value represents the probability that the fraction of successes (0.26443431) was at least as far from the hypothesized value (.300) after the experiment. We specified that the alternative hypothesis was “less,” meaning that the *p*-value represents the probability that the fraction of successes was less than 0.26443431, which in this case was 0.06174.

In plain English, this means that if David Ortiz was a “true” .300 hitter, the probability that he actually hit .264 or worse in a season was 0.06174.

## Tabular Data Tests

A common problem is to look at a table of data and determine if there is a relationship between two categorical variables. If there were no relationship, the two variables would be statistically independent. In these tests, the hypothesis is that the two variables are independent. The alternative hypothesis is that the two variables are not independent.

Tables of data often come up in experimental contexts: there is one column of data from a test population and one from a control population. In this context, the analyst often wants to calculate the probability that the two sets of data could have come from the same population (which would imply the same proportions in each). This is an equivalent problem, so the same test functions can be used.

For small contingency tables (and small values), you can obtain the best results using Fisher's exact test. Fisher's exact test calculates the probability that the deviation

from the independence was greater than or equal to the sample quantities. So a high  $p$ -value means that the sample data implies that the two variables are likely to be independent. A low  $p$ -value means that the sample data implies that the two variables are not independent.

In R, you can use the function `fisher.test` to perform Fisher's exact test:

```
fisher.test(x, y = NULL, workspace = 200000, hybrid = FALSE,
            control = list(), or = 1, alternative = "two.sided",
            conf.int = TRUE, conf.level = 0.95,
            simulate.p.value = FALSE, B = 2000)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `fisher.test`.

| Argument         | Description   | Default             |
|------------------|---|---------------------|
| x                | Specifies the sample data to use for the test. Either a matrix (representing a two-dimensional contingency table) or a factor.  |                     |
| y                | Specifies the sample data to use for the test. If x is a factor, then y should be a factor. If x is a matrix, then y is ignored.  | NULL                |
| workspace        | An integer value specifying the size of the workspace to use in the network algorithm (in units of 4 bytes).  | 200000              |
| hybrid           | For tables larger than $2 \times 2$ , specifies whether exact probabilities should be calculated ( <code>hybrid=FALSE</code> ) or an approximation should be used ( <code>hybrid=TRUE</code> ). | FALSE               |
| control          | A list of named components for low-level control of <code>fisher.test</code> ; see the help file for more information.  | <code>list()</code> |
| or               | The hypothesized odds ratio for the $2 \times 2$ case.  | 1                   |
| alternative      | The alternative hypothesis. Must be one of "two.sided", "greater", or "less".   | "two.sided"         |
| conf.int         | A logical value specifying whether to compute and return confidence intervals in the results.   | TRUE                |
| conf.level       | Specifies the confidence level to use in computing the confidence interval.   | 0.95                |
| simulate.p.value | A logical value indicating whether to use Monte Carlo simulation to compute $p$ -values in tables larger than $2 \times 2$ .  | FALSE               |
| B                | An integer indicating the number of replicates to use in Monte Carlo simulations.   | 2000                |

If you specify `x` and `y` as factors, then R will compute a contingency table from these factors. Alternatively, you can specify a matrix for `x` containing the contingency table.

Fisher's exact test can be very computationally intensive for large tables, so statisticians usually use an alternative test: chi-squared tests. Chi-squared tests are not exactly the same as Fisher's tests. With a chi-squared test, you explicitly state a hypothesis about the probability of each event and then compare the sample distribution to the hypothesis. The  $p$ -value is the probability that a distribution at least as different from the hypothesized distribution arose by chance.

In R, you can use the function `chisq.test` to calculate a chi-squared contingency table and goodness-of-fit tests:

```
chisq.test(x, y = NULL, correct = TRUE,
           p = rep(1/length(x), length(x)), rescale.p = FALSE,
           simulate.p.value = FALSE, B = 200)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `chisq.test`.

| Argument         | Description  | Default                                  |
|------------------|--|--|
| x                | Specifies the sample data to use for the test. Either a matrix or a vector.  | NULL                                     |
| y                | Specifies the sample data to use for the test. If x is a factor, then y should be a vector. If x is a matrix, then y is ignored.       | NULL                                     |
| correct          | A logical value specifying whether to apply continuity correction when computing the test statistic for $2 \times 2$ tables.           | TRUE                                     |
| p                | A vector of probabilities that represent the hypothesis to test. (Note that the default is to assume equal probability for each item.) | <code>rep(1/length(x), length(x))</code> |
| rescale.p        | A logical value indicating whether p needs to be rescaled to sum to 1.   | FALSE                                    |
| simulate.p.value | A logical value indicating whether to compute p-values using Monte Carlo simulation.   | FALSE                                    |
| B                | An integer indicating the number of replicates to use in Monte Carlo simulations.  | 200                                      |

If you specify x and y as vectors, then R will compute a contingency table from these vectors (after coercing them to factors). Alternatively, you can specify a matrix for x containing the contingency table.

As an example, let's use the 2006 births data set. (For a detailed description of this data set, see “[Univariate Trellis Plots](#)” on page 273.) We will take a look at the number of male and female babies delivered during July 2006, by delivery method. We'll take a subset of births during July where the delivery method was known and then tabulate the results:

```
> births.july.2006 <- births2006.smpl[births2006.smpl$DMETH_REC!="Unknown" &
+                                         births2006.smpl$DOB_MM==7, ]
> nrow(births2006.smpl)
[1] 427323
> nrow(births.july.2006)
[1] 37060
> method.and.sex <- table(
+   births.july.2006$SEX,
+   as.factor(as.character(births.july.2006$DMETH_REC)))
> method.and.sex

  C-section Vaginal
  F      5326    12622
  M      6067    13045
```

Note that the delivery methods were actually slightly unbalanced by gender during July 2006:

```
> 5326 / (5326 + 6067)
[1] 0.46748
> 12622 / (12622 + 13045)
[1] 0.4917598
```

However, there isn't an intuitive reason why this should be true. So let's check whether this difference is statistically significant: is the difference due to chance or is it likely that these two variables (delivery method and sex) are independent? We can use Fisher's exact test to answer this question:

```
> fisher.test(method.and.sex)

Fisher's Exact Test for Count Data
```

```
data: method.and.sex
p-value = 1.604e-05
alternative hypothesis: true odds ratio is not equal to 1
95 percent confidence interval:
0.8678345 0.9485129
sample estimates:
odds ratio
0.9072866
```

The *p*-value is the probability of obtaining results that were at least as far removed from independence as these results. In this case, the *p*-value is very low, indicating that the results were very far from what we would expect if the variables were truly independent. This implies that we should reject the hypothesis that the two variables are independent.

As a second example, let's look only at twin births. (Note that each record represents a single birth, not a single pregnancy.)

```
> twins.2006 <- births2006.smpl[births2006.smpl$DPLURAL=="2 Twin" &
+                                         births2006.smpl$DMETH_REC != "Unknown",]
> method.and.sex.twins <-
+   table(twins.2006$SEX,
+         as.factor(as.character(twins.2006$DMETH_REC)))
> method.and.sex.twins

C-section Vaginal
F      4924    1774
M      5076    1860
```

Now let's see if there is a statistically significant difference in delivery methods between the two sexes:

```
> fisher.test(method.and.sex.twins)

Fisher's Exact Test for Count Data
```

```
data: method.and.sex.twins
p-value = 0.67
alternative hypothesis: true odds ratio is not equal to 1
95 percent confidence interval:
0.9420023 1.0981529
sample estimates:
```

```
odds ratio  
1.017083
```

In this case, the *p*-value (0.67) is very high, so it is very likely that the two variables are independent.

We can look at the same table using a chi-squared test:

```
> chisq.test(method.and.sex.twins)  
  
Pearson's Chi-squared test with Yates' continuity  
correction  
  
data: method.and.sex.twins  
X-squared = 0.1745, df = 1, p-value = 0.6761
```

By the way, we could also have just passed the two factors to `chisq.test`, and `chisq.test` would have calculated the contingency table for us:

```
> chisq.test(twins.2006$DMETH_REC, twins.2006$SEX)  
  
Pearson's Chi-squared test with Yates' continuity  
correction  
  
data: twins.2006$DMETH_REC and twins.2006$SEX  
X-squared = 0.1745, df = 1, p-value = 0.6761
```

As above, the *p*-value is very high, so it is likely that the two variables are independent for twin births.

Let's ask another interesting question: how many babies are born on weekdays versus weekends? Let's start by tabulating the number of births, by day of week, during 2006:

```
> births2006.byday <- table(births2006.smp1$DOB_WK)  
> births2006.byday  
  
1      2      3      4      5      6      7  
40274 62757 69775 70290 70164 68380 45683
```

Curiously, the number of births on days 1 and 7 (Sunday and Saturday, respectively) are sharply lower than the number of births on other days. We can use a chi-squared test to determine what the probability is that this distribution arose by chance. As noted above, by default, we perform a chi-squared test under the assumption that the actual probability of a baby being born on each day is given by the vector `p=rep(1/length(x), length(x))`, which in this case is 1/7 for every day. So we're asking what the probability is that a distribution at least as unbalanced as the one above arose by chance:

```
> chisq.test(births2006.byday)  
  
Chi-squared test for given probabilities  
  
data: births2006.byday  
X-squared = 15873.20, df = 6, p-value < 2.2e-16
```

As you might have guessed, this effect was statistically significant. The  $p$ -value is very, very small, indicating that it is very unlikely that this effect arose due to chance. (Of course, with a sample this big, it's not hard to find significant effects.)

The `chisq.test` function can also perform tests on multidimensional tables. As an example, let's build a table showing the number of births by day and month:

```
> births2006.bydayandmonth <- table(births2006.smp1$DOB_WK,
+                                         births2006.smp1$DOB_MM)
> births2006.bydayandmonth
```

|   | 1    | 2    | 3    | 4    | 5    | 6    | 7    |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 | 3645 | 2930 | 2965 | 3616 | 2969 | 3036 | 3976 |
| 2 | 5649 | 4737 | 4779 | 4853 | 5712 | 5033 | 6263 |
| 3 | 6265 | 5293 | 5251 | 5297 | 6472 | 5178 | 5149 |
| 4 | 5131 | 5280 | 6486 | 5173 | 6496 | 5540 | 5499 |
| 5 | 5127 | 5271 | 6574 | 5162 | 5347 | 6863 | 5780 |
| 6 | 4830 | 5305 | 6330 | 5042 | 4975 | 6622 | 5760 |
| 7 | 3295 | 3392 | 3408 | 4185 | 3364 | 3464 | 4751 |

|   | 8    | 9    | 10   | 11   | 12   |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 | 3160 | 3270 | 3964 | 2999 | 3744 |
| 2 | 5127 | 4850 | 6167 | 5043 | 4544 |
| 3 | 7225 | 5805 | 6887 | 5619 | 5334 |
| 4 | 7011 | 5725 | 5445 | 6838 | 5666 |
| 5 | 6945 | 5822 | 5538 | 6165 | 5570 |
| 6 | 5530 | 7027 | 5256 | 5079 | 6624 |
| 7 | 3686 | 4669 | 3564 | 3509 | 4396 |

As above, let's check the probability that this distribution arose by chance under the assumption that the probability of each combination was equal:

```
> chisq.test(births2006.bydayandmonth)
```

Pearson's Chi-squared test

```
data: births2006.bydayandmonth
X-squared = 4729.620, df = 66,
p-value < 2.2e-16
```

Much like the one-dimensional table, we see that the effects are statistically significant; it is very unlikely that this unbalanced distribution arose due to chance.

For three-way interactions, you can try a Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel test. This is implemented in R through the `mantelhaen.test` function:

```
mantelhaen.test(x, y = NULL, z = NULL,
                  alternative = c("two.sided", "less", "greater"),
                  correct = TRUE, exact = FALSE, conf.level = 0.95)
```

To test for symmetry in a two-dimensional contingency table, you can use McNemar's chi-squared test. This is implemented in R as `mcnemar.test`:

```
mcnemar.test(x, y = NULL, correct = TRUE)
```

## Non-Parametric Tabular Data Tests

The Friedman rank-sum test is a non-parametric counterpart to two-way ANOVA tests. In R, this is implemented through the `friedman.test` function:

```
 friedman.test(y, ...)

## Default S3 method:
friedman.test(y, groups, blocks, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
friedman.test(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

As examples, let's look at some of the same tables we looked at above:

```
>  friedman.test(method.and.sex.twins)
```

```
Friedman rank sum test
```

```
data: method.and.sex.twins
Friedman chi-squared = 2, df = 1,
p-value = 0.1573
```

Just like the chi-squared test, the Friedman rank-sum test shows that it is very likely that the two distributions are independent.



# 19

## Power Tests

When designing an experiment, it's often helpful to know how much data you need to collect to get a statistically significant sample (or, alternatively, the maximum significance of results that can be calculated from a given amount of data). R provides a set of functions to help you calculate these amounts.

### Experimental Design Example

Suppose that you want to test the efficacy of a new drug for treating depression. A common score used to measure depression is the Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression (HAMD). This measure varies from 0 to 48, where higher values indicate increased depression. Let's consider two different experimental design questions. First, suppose that you had collected 50 subjects for the study and split them into two groups of 25 people each. What difference in HAMD scores would you need to observe in order for the results to be considered statistically significant?

We assume a standard deviation of 8.9 for this experiment.<sup>1</sup> We'll also assume that we want a power of 0.95 for the experiment (meaning that the probability of a Type II error is less than 0.05). To calculate the minimum statistically significant difference in R, we could use the following expression:

```
> power.t.test(power=.95, sig.level=.05, sd=8.9, n=25)
```

```
Two-sample t test power calculation
```

```
n = 25
delta = 9.26214
sd = 8.9
sig.level = 0.05
power = 0.95
alternative = two.sided
NOTE: n is number in *each* group
```

1. Number from [http://www.fda.gov/OHRMS/DOCKETS/ac/07/slides/2007-4273s1\\_05.pdf](http://www.fda.gov/OHRMS/DOCKETS/ac/07/slides/2007-4273s1_05.pdf).

According to the output, the difference in means between the two groups would need to be at least 9.26214 to be significant at this level. Suppose that we doubled the number of subjects. What difference would be considered significant?

```
> power.t.test(power=.95, sig.level=.05, sd=8.9, n=50)
```

Two-sample t test power calculation

```
n = 50
delta = 6.480487
sd = 8.9
sig.level = 0.05
power = 0.95
alternative = two.sided
```

NOTE: n is number in \*each\* group

As you can see, the power functions can be very useful for designing an experiment. They can help you to estimate, in advance, how large a difference you need to see between groups to get statistically significant results.

## t-Test Design

If you are designing an experiment in which you will use a *t*-test to check the significance of the results (typically, an experiment in which you calculate the mean value of a random variable for a “test” population and a “control” population), then you can use the `power.t.test` function to help design the experiment:

```
power.t.test(n = NULL, delta = NULL, sd = 1, sig.level = 0.05,
             power = NULL,
             type = c("two.sample", "one.sample", "paired"),
             alternative = c("two.sided", "one.sided"),
             strict = FALSE)
```

For this function, `n` specifies the number of observations (per group); `delta` is the true difference in means between the groups; `sd` is the true standard deviation of the underlying distribution; `sig.level` is the significance level (Type I error probability); `power` is the power of the test (1 – Type II error probability); `type` specifies whether the test is one sample, two sample, or paired; `alternative` specifies whether the test is one or two sided; and `strict` specifies whether to use a strict interpretation in the two-sided case. This function will calculate either `n`, `delta`, `sig.level`, `sd`, or `power`, depending on the input. You must specify at least four of these parameters: `n`, `delta`, `sd`, `sig.level`, `power`. The remaining argument must be null; this is the value that the function calculates.

## Proportion Test Design

If you are designing an experiment where you will be measuring a proportion (using `prop.test`), you can use the `power.prop.test` function:

```
power.prop.test(n = NULL, p1 = NULL, p2 = NULL, sig.level = 0.05,
                power = NULL,
```

```
alternative = c("two.sided", "one.sided"),
strict = FALSE)
```

For this function, `n` specifies the number of observations (per group), `p1` is the probability of success in one group, `p2` is the probability of success in the other group, `sig.level` is the significance level (Type I error probability), `power` is the power of the test (1 - Type II error probability), `alternative` specifies whether the test is one or two sided, and `strict` specifies whether to use a strict interpretation in the two-sided case. This function will calculate either `n`, `p1`, `p2`, `sig.level`, or `power`, depending on the input. You must specify at least four of these parameters: `n`, `p1`, `p2`, `sig.level`, `power`. The remaining argument must be null; this is the value that the function calculates.

As an example of `power.prop.test`, let's consider situational statistics in baseball. Starting in the 2009 season, when ESPN broadcast baseball games, it displayed statistics showing how the batter performed in similar situations. More often than not, the statistics were derived from a very small number of situations. For example, ESPN might show that the hitter had 3 hits in 10 tries when hitting with 2 men on base and 2 outs. These statistics sound really interesting, but do they have any meaning? We can use `prop.test` to help find out.

Suppose that a hitter is batting with two men on base and two outs. The TV broadcaster tells us that the batter's average is .300 in these situations but only .260 in other situations. Furthermore, let's assume that the true probability that he gets a hit in an at bat in other situations is .260. How many at bats would he need to have in situations with two men on base and two outs in order for the .300 estimate to be statistically significant at a 95% confidence level, with a power of 0.95?

```
> power.prop.test(p1=.260, p2=.300, sig.level=0.05,
+   power=.95, alternative="one.sided")
```

Two-sample comparison of proportions power calculation

```
n = 2724.482
p1 = 0.26
p2 = 0.3
sig.level = 0.05
power = 0.95
alternative = one.sided
```

NOTE: n is number in \*each\* group

That's right, the estimate is over 2,724 at bats. So let's ask the opposite question: what is the confidence we can have in the results? Let's fix `sig.level=0.05` and `power=0.95`:

```
> power.prop.test(n=10, p1=.260, p2=.300, power=.95,
+   sig.level=NULL, alternative="one.sided")
```

Two-sample comparison of proportions power calculation

```
n = 10
p1 = 0.26
p2 = 0.3
```

```
sig.level = 0.9256439
power = 0.95
alternative = one.sided

NOTE: n is number in *each* group

> power.prop.test(n=10, p1=.260, p2=.300, power=NULL,
+   sig.level=.05,alternative="one.sided")
```

Two-sample comparison of proportions power calculation

```
n = 10
p1 = 0.26
p2 = 0.3
sig.level = 0.05
power = 0.07393654
alternative = one.sided
```

NOTE: n is number in \*each\* group

With significance levels that low, I think it's safe to say that most of these situational statistics are nonsense.

## ANOVA Test Design

If you are designing an experiment where you will be using ANOVA, you can use the `power.anova.test` function:

```
power.anova.test(groups = NULL, n = NULL,
                  between.var = NULL, within.var = NULL,
                  sig.level = 0.05, power = NULL)
```

For this function, `groups` specifies the number of groups, `n` specifies the number of observations (per group), `between.var` is the variance between groups, `within.var` is the variance within groups, `sig.level` is the significance level (Type I error probability), and `power` is the power of the test (1 - Type II error probability). This function will calculate either `groups`, `n`, `sig.level`, `between.var`, `power`, `within.var`, or `sig.level`, depending on the input. You must specify exactly six of these parameters, and the remaining argument must be null; this is the value that the function calculates.



# 20

---

## Regression Models

A *regression model* shows how a continuous value (called the *response variable*, or the *dependent variable*) is related to a set of other values (called the *predictors*, *stimulus variables*, or *independent variables*). Often, a regression model is used to predict values where they are unknown. For example, warfarin is a drug commonly used as a blood thinner or anticoagulant. A doctor might use a regression model to predict the correct dose of warfarin to give a patient based on several known variables about the patient (such as the patient’s weight). Another example of a regression model might be for marketing financial products. An analyst might estimate the average balance of a credit card customer (which, in turn, affects the expected revenue from that customer).

Sometimes, a regression model is simply used to explain a phenomenon, but not to actually predict values. For example, a scientist might suspect that weight is correlated to consumption of certain types of foods but wants to adjust for a variety of factors, including age, exercise, genetics (and, hopefully, other factors). The scientist could use a regression model to help show the relationship between weight and food consumed by including other variables in the regression. Models can be used for many other purposes, including visualizing trends, analysis of variance tests, and testing variable significance.

This chapter looks at regression models in R; classification models are covered in [Chapter 21](#). To show how to use statistical models in R, I will start with the simplest type of model: linear regression models. (Specifically, I’ll use the least squares method to estimate coefficients.) I’ll show how to build, evaluate, and refine a model in R. Then I’ll describe functions in R for building more sophisticated types of models.

### Example: A Simple Linear Model

A linear regression assumes that there is a linear relationship between the response variable and the predictors. Specifically, a linear regression assumes that a response variable  $y$  is a linear function of a set of predictor variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ .

As an example, we're going to look at how different metrics predict the runs scored by a baseball team.<sup>1</sup> Let's start by loading the data for every team between 2000 and 2008. We'll use the SQLite database that we used in [Chapter 13](#) and extract the fields we want using an SQL query:

```
> library(RSQLite)
> drv <- dbDriver("SQLite")
> con <- dbConnect(drv,
+   dbname=system.file("extdata","bb.db", package="nutshell"))
> team.batting.00to08 <- dbGetQuery(con,
+   paste(
+     'SELECT teamID, yearID, R as runs, ',
+     'H-"2B"- "3B"-HR as singles, ',
+     '"2B" as doubles, "3B" as triples, HR as homeruns, ',
+     'BB as walks, SB as stolenbases, CS as caughtstealing, ',
+     'HBP as hitbypitch, SF as sacrificeflies, ',
+     'AB as atbats ',
+     'FROM Teams ',
+     'WHERE yearID between 2000 and 2008'
+   )
+ )
```

Or, if you'd like, you can just load the file from the `nutshell` package:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(team.batting.00to08)
```

Because this is a book about R and not a book about baseball, I renamed the common abbreviations to more intuitive names for plays. Let's look at scatter plots of runs versus each other variable so that we can see which variables are likely to be most important.

We'll create a data frame for plotting, using the `make.groups` function:

```
> attach(team.batting.00to08);
> forplot <- make.groups(
+   singles      = data.frame(value=singles,           teamID,yearID,runs),
+   doubles      = data.frame(value=doubles,           teamID,yearID,runs),
+   triples      = data.frame(value=triples,           teamID,yearID,runs),
+   homeruns    = data.frame(value=homeruns,          teamID,yearID,runs),
+   walks        = data.frame(value=walks,             teamID,yearID,runs),
+   stolenbases  = data.frame(value=stolenbases,       teamID,yearID,runs),
+   caughtstealing = data.frame(value=caughtstealing,teamID,yearID,runs),
+   hitbypitch   = data.frame(value=hitbypitch,        teamID,yearID,runs),
+   sacrificeflies = data.frame(value=sacrificeflies,teamID,yearID,runs)
+ );
> detach(team.batting.00to08);
```

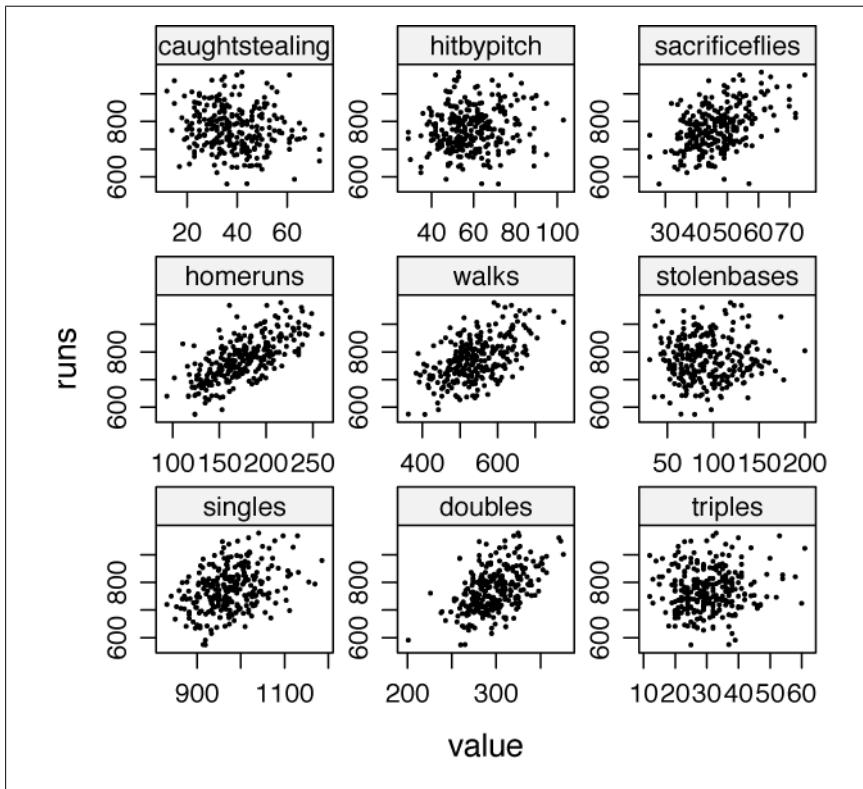
Now, we'll generate the scatter plots using the `xyplot` function:

```
> xyplot(runs~value|which, data=forplot,
+   scales=list(relation="free"),
```

1. This example is closely related to the Batter Runs formula, which was popularized by Pete Palmer and John Thorn in the 1984 book *The Hidden Game of Baseball*. The original Batter Runs formula worked slightly differently: it predicted the number of runs above or below the mean, and it had no intercept. For more about this problem, see [\[Adler2006\]](#).

```
+ pch=19, cex=.2,
+ strip=strip.custom(strip.levels=TRUE,
+ horizontal=TRUE,
+ par.strip.text=list(cex=.8))
+ )
```

The results are shown in [Figure 20-1](#). Intuitively, teams that hit a lot of home runs score a lot of runs. Interestingly, teams that walk a lot score a lot of runs as well (maybe even more than teams that score a lot of singles).



*Figure 20-1. Scatter plots: runs as a function of different batter statistics*

## Fitting a Model

Let's fit a linear model to the data and assign it to the variable `runs.mdl`. We'll use the `lm` function, which fits a linear model using ordinary least squares:

```
> runs.mdl <- lm(
+   formula=runs~singles+doubles+triples+homeruns+
+   walks+hitbypitch+sacrificeflies+
+   stolenbases+caughtstealing,
+   data=team.batting.00to08)
```

R doesn't show much information when you fit a model. (If you don't print the returned object, most modeling functions will not show *any* information, unless there is an error.) To get information about a model, you have to use helper functions.

## Helper Functions for Specifying the Model

In a formula object, some symbols have special interpretations. Specifically, “+”, “\*”, “-”, and “^” are interpreted specially by R. This means that you need to use some helper functions to represent simple addition, multiplication, subtraction, and exponentiation in a model formula. To interpret an expression literally, and not as a formula, use the identity function `I()`. For example, suppose that you want to include only the product of variables `a` and `b` in a formula specification, but not just `a` or `b`. If you specify `a*b`, this is interpreted as `a`, `b`, or `a*b`. To include only `a*b`, use the identity function `I()` to protect the expression `a*b`:

```
lm(y~I(a*b))
```

Sometimes, you would like to fit a polynomial function. Writing out all the terms individually can be tedious, but R provides a short way to specify all the terms at once. To do this, you use the `poly` function to add all terms up to a specified degree:

```
poly(x, ..., degree = 1, coefs = NULL, raw = FALSE)
```

As arguments, the `poly` function takes a vector `x` (or a set of vectors), `degree` to specify a maximum degree to generate, `coefs` to specify coefficients from a previous fit (when using `poly` to generate predicted values), and `raw` to specify whether to use raw and not orthogonal polynomials. For more information on how to specify formulas, see “[Formulas](#)” on page 92.

## Getting Information About a Model

In R, statistical models are represented by objects; statistical modeling functions return statistical model objects. When you fit a statistical model with most statistical software packages (such as SAS or SPSS) they print a lot of diagnostic information. In R, most statistical modeling functions do not print any information.

If you simply call a model function in R but don't assign the model to a variable, the R console will print the object. (Specifically, it will call the generic method `print` with the object generated by the modeling function.) R doesn't clutter your screen with lots of information you might not want. Instead, R includes a large set of functions for printing information about model objects. This section describes the functions for getting information about `lm` objects. Many of these functions may also be used with other types of models; see the help files for more information.

### Viewing the model

For most model functions (including `lm`), the best place to start is with the `print` method. If you are using the R console, you can simply enter the name of the returned object on the console to see the results of `print`:

```
> runs.mdl

Call:
lm(formula = runs ~ singles + doubles + triples + homeruns +
    walks + hitbypitch + sacrificeflies + stolenbases + caughtstealing,
    data = team.batting.00to08)

Coefficients:
(Intercept)      singles       doubles       triples
-507.16020      0.56705      0.69110      1.15836
homeruns        walks        hitbypitch  sacrificeflies
1.47439         0.30118      0.37750      0.87218
stolenbases     caughtstealing
0.04369        -0.01533
```

To show the formula used to fit the model, use the `formula` function:

```
formula(x, ...)
```

Here is the formula on which the model function was called:

```
> formula(runs.mdl)
runs ~ singles + doubles + triples + homeruns + walks + hitbypitch +
sacrificeflies + stolenbases + caughtstealing
```

To get the list of coefficients for a model object, use the `coef` function:

```
coef(object, ...)
```

Here are the coefficients for the model fitted above:

```
> coef(runs.mdl)
(Intercept)      singles       doubles       triples
-507.16019759   0.56704867   0.69110420   1.15836091
homeruns        walks        hitbypitch  sacrificeflies
1.47438916     0.30117665   0.37749717   0.87218094
stolenbases     caughtstealing
0.04369407     -0.01533245
```

Alternatively, you can use the alias `coefficients` to access the `coef` function.

To get a summary of a linear model object, you can use the `summary` function. The method used for linear model objects is:

```
summary(object, correlation = FALSE, symbolic.cor = FALSE, ...)
```

For the example above, here is the output of the `summary` function:

```
> summary(runs.mdl)

Call:
lm(formula = runs ~ singles + doubles + triples + homeruns +
    walks + hitbypitch + sacrificeflies + stolenbases + caughtstealing,
    data = team.batting.00to08)

Residuals:
    Min      1Q  Median      3Q      Max
-71.9019 -11.8282 -0.4193  14.6576  61.8743
```

Coefficients:

|                | Estimate   | Std. Error | t value | Pr(> t )     |
|----------------|------------|------------|---------|--------------|
| (Intercept)    | -507.16020 | 32.34834   | -15.678 | < 2e-16 ***  |
| singles        | 0.56705    | 0.02601    | 21.801  | < 2e-16 ***  |
| doubles        | 0.69110    | 0.05922    | 11.670  | < 2e-16 ***  |
| triples        | 1.15836    | 0.17309    | 6.692   | 1.34e-10 *** |
| homers         | 1.47439    | 0.05081    | 29.015  | < 2e-16 ***  |
| walks          | 0.30118    | 0.02309    | 13.041  | < 2e-16 ***  |
| hitbypitch     | 0.37750    | 0.11006    | 3.430   | 0.000702 *** |
| sacrificeflies | 0.87218    | 0.19179    | 4.548   | 8.33e-06 *** |
| stolenbases    | 0.04369    | 0.05951    | 0.734   | 0.463487     |
| caughtstealing | -0.01533   | 0.15550    | -0.099  | 0.921530     |
| ---            |            |            |         |              |

Signif. codes: 0 ‘\*\*\*’ 0.001 ‘\*\*’ 0.01 ‘\*’ 0.05 ‘.’ 0.1 ‘ ’ 1

Residual standard error: 23.21 on 260 degrees of freedom

Multiple R-squared: 0.9144, Adjusted R-squared: 0.9114

F-statistic: 308.6 on 9 and 260 DF, p-value: < 2.2e-16

When you print a summary object, the following method is used:

```
print(x, digits = max(3,getOption("digits") - 3),
      symbolic.cor = x$symbolic.cor,
      signif.stars = getOption("show.signif.stars"), ...)
```

## Predicting values using a model

To get the vector of residuals from a linear model fit, use the `residuals` function:

```
residuals(object, ...)
```

To get a vector of fitted values, use the `fitted` function:

```
fitted(object, ...)
```

Suppose that you wanted to use the model object to predict values in another data set. You can use the `predict` function to calculate predicted values using the model object and another data frame:

```
predict(object, newdata, se.fit = FALSE, scale = NULL, df = Inf,
        interval = c("none", "confidence", "prediction"),
        level = 0.95, type = c("response", "terms"),
        terms = NULL, na.action = na.pass,
        pred.var = res.var/weights, weights = 1, ...)
```

The argument `object` specifies the model returned by the fitting function, `newdata` specifies a new data source for predictions, and `na.action` specifies how to deal with missing values in `newdata`. (By default, `predict` ignores missing values. You can choose `na.omit` to simply return `NA` for observations in `newdata` with missing values.) The `predict` function can also return confidence intervals for predictions, in addition to exact values; see the help file for more information.

## Analyzing the fit

To compute confidence intervals for the coefficients in the fitted model, use the `confint` function:

```
confint(object, parm, level = 0.95, ...)
```

The argument `object` specifies the model returned by the fitting function, `parm` specifies the variables for which to show confidence levels, and `level` specifies the confidence level. Here are the confidence intervals for the coefficients of the model fitted above:

```
> confint(runs.mdl)
              2.5 %      97.5 %
(Intercept) -570.85828008 -443.4621151
singles       0.51583022  0.6182671
doubles       0.57449582  0.8077126
triples       0.81752968  1.4991921
homeruns     1.37432941  1.5744489
walks         0.25570041  0.3466529
hitbypitch   0.16077399  0.5942203
sacrificeflies 0.49451857  1.2498433
stolenbases   -0.07349342  0.1608816
caughtstealing -0.32152716  0.2908623
```

To compute the influence of different parameters, you can use the `influence` function:

```
influence(model, do.coef = TRUE, ...)
```

For more friendly output, try `influence.measures`:

```
influence.measures(model)
```

To get analysis of variance statistics, use the `anova` function. For linear models, the method used is `anova.lmList`, which has the following form:

```
anova.lmList(object, ..., scale = 0, test = "F")
```

By default, *F*-test statistics are included in the results table. You can specify `test="F"` for *F*-test statistics, `test="Chisq"` for chi-squared test statistics, `test="Cp"` for Mallows'  $C_p$  statistic, or `test=NULL` for no test statistics. You can also specify an estimate of the noise variance  $\sigma^2$  through the `scale` argument. If you set `scale=0` (the default), then the `anova` function will calculate an estimate from the test data. The test statistic and *p*-values compare the mean square for each row to the residual mean square.

Here are the ANOVA statistics for the model fitted above:

```
> anova(runs.mdl)
Analysis of Variance Table

Response: runs
  Df Sum Sq Mean Sq F value    Pr(>F)
singles      1 215755 215755 400.4655 < 2.2e-16 ***
doubles      1 356588 356588 661.8680 < 2.2e-16 ***
triples      1   237    237  0.4403 0.5075647
homeruns     1 790051 790051 1466.4256 < 2.2e-16 ***
walks        1 114377 114377 212.2971 < 2.2e-16 ***
hitbypitch   1   7396   7396 13.7286 0.0002580 ***
sacrificeflies 1 11726 11726 21.7643 4.938e-06 ***
stolenbases   1    357    357  0.6632 0.4161654
caughtstealing 1      5      5  0.0097 0.9215298
Residuals    260 140078   539
---
Signif. codes: 0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
```

Interestingly, it appears that triples, stolen bases, and times caught stealing are not statistically significant.

You can also view the effects from a fitted model. The effects are the uncorrelated single degree of freedom values obtained by projecting the data onto the successive orthogonal subspaces generated by the QR-decomposition during the fitting process. To obtain a vector of orthogonal effects from the model, use the `effects` function:

```
effects(object, set.sign = FALSE, ...)
```

To calculate the variance-covariance matrix from the linear model object, use the `vcov` function:

```
vcov(object, ...)
```

Here is the variance-covariance matrix for the model fitted above:

```
> vcov(runs.mdl)
              (Intercept) singles      doubles      triples
(Intercept) 1046.4149572 -6.275356e-01 -6.908905e-01 -0.8115627984
singles     -0.6275356  6.765565e-04 -1.475026e-04  0.0001538296
doubles     -0.6908905 -1.475026e-04  3.506798e-03 -0.0013459187
triples     -0.8115628  1.538296e-04 -1.345919e-03  0.0299591843
homeruns    -0.3190194  2.314669e-04 -3.940172e-04  0.0011510663
walks       -0.2515630  7.950878e-05 -9.902388e-05  0.0004174548
hitbypitch  -0.9002974  3.385518e-04 -4.090707e-04  0.0018360831
sacrificeflies 1.6870020 -1.723732e-03 -2.253712e-03 -0.0051709718
stolenbases   0.2153275 -3.041450e-04  2.871078e-04 -0.0009794480
caughtstealing -1.4370890  3.126387e-04  1.466032e-03 -0.0016038175
                  homeruns      walks    hitbypitch sacrificeflies
(Intercept) -3.190194e-01 -2.515630e-01 -0.9002974059  1.6870019518
singles      2.314669e-04  7.950878e-05  0.0003385518 -0.0017237324
doubles     -3.940172e-04 -9.902388e-05 -0.0004090707 -0.0022537124
triples      1.151066e-03  4.174548e-04  0.0018360831 -0.0051709718
homeruns    2.582082e-03 -4.007590e-04 -0.0008183475 -0.0005078943
walks       -4.007590e-04  5.333599e-04  0.0002219440 -0.0010962381
```

```

hitbypitch -8.183475e-04 2.219440e-04 0.0121132852 -0.0011315622
sacrificeflies -5.078943e-04 -1.096238e-03 -0.0011315622 0.0367839752
stolenbases -2.041656e-06 -1.400052e-04 -0.0001197102 -0.0004636454
caughtstealing 3.469784e-04 6.008766e-04 0.0001742039 -0.0024880710
              stolenbases caughtstealing
(Intercept) 2.153275e-01 -1.4370889812
singles      -3.041450e-04 0.0003126387
doubles      2.871078e-04 0.0014660316
triples      -9.794480e-04 -0.0016038175
homeruns     -2.041656e-06 0.0003469784
walks        -1.400052e-04 0.0006008766
hitbypitch   -1.197102e-04 0.0001742039
sacrificeflies -4.636454e-04 -0.0024880710
stolenbases   3.541716e-03 -0.0050935339
caughtstealing -5.093534e-03 0.0241794596

```

To return the deviance of the fitted model, use the `deviance` function:

```
deviance(object, ...)
```

Here is the deviance for the model fitted above (though this value is just the residual sum of squares in this case because `runs.mdl` is a linear model):

```
> deviance(runs.mdl)
[1] 140077.6
```

Finally, to plot a set of useful diagnostic diagrams, use the `plot` function:

```
plot(x, which = c(1:3,5),
      caption = list("Residuals vs Fitted", "Normal Q-Q",
                     "Scale-Location", "Cook's distance",
                     "Residuals vs Leverage",
                     expression("Cook's dist vs Leverage " * h[ii] / (1 - h[ii]))),
      panel = if(add.smooth) panel.smooth else points,
      sub.caption = NULL, main = "",
      ask = prod(par("mfcol")) < length(which) && dev.interactive(),
      ...,
      id.n = 3, labels.id = names(residuals(x)), cex.id = 0.75,
      qqline = TRUE, cook.levels = c(0.5, 1.0),
      add.smooth = getOption("add.smooth"), label.pos = c(4,2),
      cex.caption = 1)
```

This function shows the following plots:

- Residuals against fitted values
- A normal Q-Q plot
- A scale-location plot of  $\sqrt{|\text{residuals}|}$  against fitted values
- (Not plotted by default) A plot of Cook's distances versus row labels
- A plot of residuals against leverages
- (Not plotted by default) A plot of Cook's distances against leverage/(1 - leverage)

There are many more functions available in R for regression diagnostics; see the help file for `influence.measures` for more information on many of these.

## Refining the Model

Often, it is better to use the `update` function to refit a model. This can save you some typing if you are using R interactively. Additionally, this can save on computation time (for large data sets). You can run `update` after changing the formula (perhaps adding or subtracting a term) or even after changing the data frame.

For example, let's fit a slightly different model to the data above. We'll omit the variable `sacrificeflies` and add `o` as a variable (which means to fit the model with no intercept):

```
> runs.mdl2 <- update(runs.mdl1, formula=runs ~ singles + doubles +
+   triples + homeruns + walks + hitbypitch +
+   stolenbases + caughtstealing + o)
> runs.mdl2
```

Call:

```
lm(formula = runs ~ singles + doubles + triples + homeruns +
  walks + hitbypitch + stolenbases + caughtstealing - 1,
  data = team.batting.00to08)
```

Coefficients:

|         | singles    | doubles     | triples        | homeruns |
|---------|------------|-------------|----------------|----------|
| 0.29823 | 0.41280    | 0.95664     | 1.31945        |          |
| walks   | hitbypitch | stolenbases | caughtstealing |          |
| 0.21352 | -0.07471   | 0.18828     | -0.70334       |          |

## Details About the `lm` Function

Now that we've seen a simple example of how models work in R, let's describe in detail what `lm` does and how you can control it. A linear regression model is appropriate when the response variable (the thing that you want to predict) can be estimated from a linear function of the predictor variables (the information that you know). Technically, we assume that:

$$y = c_0 + c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \cdots + c_n x_n + \varepsilon$$

where  $y$  is the response variable,  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  are the predictor variables (or predictors),  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  are the *coefficients* for the predictor variables,  $c_0$  is the *intercept*, and  $\varepsilon$  is the *error term*. (For more details on the assumptions of the least squares model, see “[Assumptions of Least Squares Regression](#)” on page 412.) The predictors can be simple variables or even nonlinear functions of variables.

Suppose that you have a matrix of observed predictor variables  $X$  and a vector of response variables  $Y$ . (In this sentence, I'm using the terms “matrix” and “vector” in the mathematical sense.) We have assumed a linear model, so given a set of coefficients  $c$ , we can calculate a set of estimates  $\hat{y}$  for the input data  $X$  by calculating  $\hat{y} = cX$ . The differences between the estimates  $\hat{y}$  and the actual values  $Y$  are called the *residuals*. You can think of the residuals as a measure of the prediction error; small residuals mean that the predicted values are close to the actual values. We assume that the expected difference between the actual response values and the

residual values (the error term in the model) is 0. This is important to remember: at best, a model is probabilistic.<sup>2</sup>

Our goal is to find the set of coefficients  $c$  that does the best job of estimating  $Y$  given  $X$ ; we'd like the estimates  $\hat{y}$  to be as close as possible to  $Y$ . In a classical linear regression model, we find coefficients  $c$  that minimize the sum of squared differences between the estimates  $\hat{y}$  and the observed values  $Y$ . Specifically, we want to find values for  $c$  that minimize:

$$\text{RSS}(c) = \sum_{i=1}^N (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2$$

This is called the least squares method for regression. You can use the `lm` function in R to estimate the coefficients in a linear model:<sup>3</sup>

```
lm(formula, data, subset, weights, na.action,
   method = "qr", model = TRUE, x = FALSE, y = FALSE, qr = TRUE,
   singular.ok = TRUE, contrasts = NULL, offset, ...)
```

Arguments to `lm` include the following.

| Argument               | Description  | Default  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula object that specifies the form of the model to fit.  |  |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame, list, or environment (or an object that can be coerced to a data frame) in which the variables in <code>formula</code> can be evaluated.       |  |
| <code>subset</code>    | A vector specifying the observations in <code>data</code> to include in the model.   |  |
| <code>weights</code>   | A numeric vector containing weights for each observation in <code>data</code> .  | NULL   |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function that specifies what <code>lm</code> should do if there are NA values in the data. If NULL, <code>lm</code> uses <code>na.omit</code> .            | getOption("na.action"), which defaults to <code>na.fail</code> |
| <code>method</code>    | The method to use for fitting. Only <code>method="qr"</code> fits a model, though you can specify <code>method="model.frame"</code> to return a model frame. | "qr"   |
| <code>model</code>     | A logical value specifying whether the "model frame" should be returned.   | TRUE   |
| <code>x</code>         | Logical values specifying whether the "model matrix" should be returned.   | FALSE  |
| <code>y</code>         | A logical value specifying whether the response vector should be returned.   | FALSE  |

2. By the way, the estimate returned by a model is not an exact prediction. It is, instead, the expected value of the response variable given the predictor variables. To be precise, the estimate  $\hat{y}$  means:

$$\hat{y} = E[y | x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n]$$

This observation is important when we talk about generalized linear models later.

3. To efficiently calculate the coefficients, R uses several matrix calculations. R uses a method called QR-decomposition to transform  $X$  into an orthogonal matrix  $Q$  and an upper triangular matrix  $R$ , where  $X = QR$ , and then calculates the coefficients as  $c = R^{-1}Q^T Y$ .

| Argument    | Description  | Default   |
|-------------|--|---|
| qr          | A logical value specifying whether the <i>QR</i> -decomposition should be returned.  | TRUE  |
| singular.ok | A logical value that specifies whether a singular fit results in an error.   | TRUE  |
| contrasts   | A list of contrasts for factors in the model, specifying one contrast for each factor in the model. For example, for formula $y \sim a + b$ , to specify a Helmert contrast for $a$ and a treatment contrast for $b$ , you would use the argument <code>contrasts = (a = "contr.helmert", b = "contr.treatment")</code> . Some options in R are " <code>contr.helmert</code> " for Helmert contrasts, " <code>contr.sum</code> " for sum-to-zero contrasts, " <code>contr.treatment</code> " to contrast each level with the baseline level, and " <code>contr.poly</code> " for contrasts based on orthogonal polynomials. See [Venable2002] for an explanation of why contrasts are important and how they are used. | When <code>contrasts = NULL</code> (the default), <code>lm</code> uses the value from <code>options("contrasts")</code> |
| offset      | A vector of offsets to use when building the model. (An offset is a linear term that is included in the model without fitting.)  |   |
| ...         | Additional arguments passed to lower-level functions such as <code>lm.fit</code> (for unweighted models) or <code>lm.wfit</code> (for weighted models).  |   |

Model-fitting functions in R return model objects. A model object contains a lot of information about the fitted model (and the fitting operation). Different model objects contain slightly different information.

You may notice that most modeling functions share a few common variables: `formula`, `data`, `na.action`, `subset`, `weights`. These arguments mean the same thing for most modeling functions.

If you are working with a very large data set, you may want to consider using the `biglm` function instead of `lm`. This function uses only  $p^2$  memory for  $p$  variables, which is much less than the memory required for `lm`.

## Assumptions of Least Squares Regression

Linear models fit with the least squares method are one of the oldest statistical methods, dating back to the age of slide rules. Even today, when computers are ubiquitous, high-quality statistical software is free, and statisticians have developed thousands of new estimation methods, they are still popular. One reason why linear regression is still popular is because linear models are easy to understand. Another reason is that the least squares method has the smallest variance among all unbiased linear estimates (proven by the Gauss-Markov theorem).

Technically, linear regression is not always appropriate. Ordinary least squares (OLS) regression (implemented through `lm`) is guaranteed to work only when certain properties of the training data are true. Here are the key assumptions:

1. Linearity. We assume that the response variable  $y$  is a linear function of the predictor variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ .
2. Full rank. There is no linear relationship between any pair of predictor variables. (Equivalently, the predictor matrix is not singular.) Technically,  $\forall x_i, x_j, \nexists c$  such that  $x_i = cx_j$ .

3. Exogeneity of the predictor variables. The expected value of the error term  $\epsilon$  is 0 for all possible values of the predictor variables.
4. Homoscedasticity. The variance of the error term  $\epsilon$  is constant and is not correlated with the predictor variables.
5. Nonautocorrelation. In a sequence of observations, the values of  $y$  are not correlated with one another.
6. Exogenously generated data. The predictor variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  are generated independently of the process that generates the error term  $\epsilon$ .
7. The error term  $\epsilon$  is normally distributed with standard deviation  $\sigma$  and mean 0.

In practice, OLS models often make accurate predictions even when one (or more) of these assumptions are violated.

By the way, it's perfectly OK for there to be a *nonlinear* relationship between some of the predictor variables. Suppose that one of the variables is `age`. You could add `age^2`, `log(age)`, or other nonlinear mathematical expressions using `age` to the model and not violate the assumptions above. You are effectively defining a set of new predictor variables:  $w_1 = age$ ,  $w_2 = age^2$ ,  $w_3 = \log(age)$ . This doesn't violate the linearity assumption (because the model is still a linear function of the predictor variables) or the full rank assumption (as long as the relationship between the new variables is not linear).

If you want to be careful, you can use test functions to check if the OLS assumptions apply:

- You can test for heteroscedasticity using the function `ncvTest` in the `car` (Companion to Applied Regression) package, which implements the Breusch-Pagan test. (Alternatively, you could use the `bptest` function in the `lmtest` library, which implements the same test. The `lmtest` library includes a number of other functions for testing for heteroscedasticity; see the documentation for more details.)
- You can test for autocorrelation in a model using the function `durbinWatson` in the `car` package, which implements the Durbin-Watson test. You can also use the function `dwttest` in the library `lmtest` by specifying a formula and a data set. (Alternatively, you could use the function `bgtest` in the `lmtest` package, which implements the Breusch-Godfrey test. This function also tests for higher-order disturbances.)
- You can check that the predictor matrix is not singular by using the `singular.ok=FALSE` argument in `lm`.

Incidentally, the example used in “[Example: A Simple Linear Model](#)” on page 401 is not heteroscedastic:

```
> ncv.test(runs.mdl)
Non-constant Variance Score Test
Variance formula: ~ fitted.values
Chisquare = 1.411893    Df = 1      p = 0.2347424
```

Nor is there a problem with autocorrelation:

```
> durbin.watson(runs.mdl)
   lag Autocorrelation D-W Statistic p-value
   1      0.003318923     1.983938    0.884
Alternative hypothesis: rho != 0
```

Or with singularity:

```
> runs.mdl <- lm(
+   formula=runs~singles+doubles+triples+homeruns+
+   walks+hitbypitch+sacrificeflies+
+   stolenbases+caughtstealing,
+   data=team.batting.00to08,singular.ok=FALSE)
```

If a model has problems with heteroscedasticity or outliers, consider using a resistant or robust regression function, as described in “[Robust and Resistant Regression](#)” on page 414. If the data is homoscedastic and not autocorrelated, but the error form is not normal, then a good choice is ridge regression, which is described in “[Ridge Regression](#)” on page 417. If the predictors are closely correlated (and nearly collinear), then a good choice is principal components regression, as described in “[Principal Components Regression and Partial Least Squares Regression](#)” on page 420.

## Robust and Resistant Regression

Often, ordinary least squares regression works well even with imperfect data. However, it’s better in many situations to use regression techniques that are less sensitive to outliers and heteroscedasticity. With R, there are alternative options for fitting linear models.

### Resistant regression

If you would like to fit a linear regression model to data with outliers, consider using resistant regression. Using the least median squares (LMS) and least trimmed squares (LTS) estimators:

```
library(MASS)
## S3 method for class 'formula':
lqs(formula, data, ...,
  method = c("lts", "lqs", "lms", "S", "model.frame"),
  subset, na.action, model = TRUE,
  x.ret = FALSE, y.ret = FALSE, contrasts = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
lqs(x, y, intercept = TRUE, method = c("lts", "lqs", "lms", "S"),
  quantile, control = lqs.control(...), ko = 1.548, seed, ...)
```

### Robust regression

Robust regression methods can be useful when there are problems with heteroscedasticity and outliers in the data. The function `rlm` in the `MASS` package fits a model using MM-estimation:

```
## S3 method for class 'formula':
rlm(formula, data, weights, ..., subset, na.action,
    method = c("M", "MM", "model.frame"),
    wt.method = c("inv.var", "case"),
    model = TRUE, x.ret = TRUE, y.ret = FALSE, contrasts = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
rlm(x, y, weights, ..., w = rep(1, nrow(x)),
    init = "ls", psi = psi.huber,
    scale.est = c("MAD", "Huber", "proposal 2"), k2 = 1.345,
    method = c("M", "MM"), wt.method = c("inv.var", "case"),
    maxit = 20, acc = 1e-4, test.vec = "resid", lqs.control = NULL)
```

You may also want to try the function `lmRob` in the `robust` package, which fits a model using MS- and S-estimation:

```
library(robust)
lmRob(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, model = TRUE, x = FALSE,
      y = FALSE, contrasts = NULL, nrep = NULL,
      control = lmRob.control(...), genetic.control = NULL, ...)
```

### Comparing `lm`, `lqs`, and `rlm`

As a quick exercise, we'll look at how `lm`, `lqs`, and `rlm` perform on some particularly ugly data: U.S. housing prices. We'll use Robert Shiller's home price index as an example, looking at home prices between 1890 and 2009.<sup>4</sup> First, we'll load the data and fit the data using an ordinary linear regression model, a robust regression model, and a resistant regression model:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(shiller.index)
> hpi.lm <- lm(Index~Year, data=shiller.index)
> hpi.rlm <- rlm(Index~Year, data=shiller.index)
> hpi.lqs <- lqs(Index~Year, data=shiller.index)
```

Now we'll plot the data to compare how each method worked. We'll plot the models using the `abline` function because it allows you to specify a model as an argument (as long as the `model` function has a `coefficient` function):

```
> plot(hpi, pch=19, cex=0.3)
> abline(reg=hpi.lm, lty=1)
> abline(reg=hpi.rlm, lty=2)
> abline(reg=hpi.lqs, lty=3)
> legend(x=1900, y=200, legend=c("lm", "rlm", "lqs"), lty=c(1, 2, 3))
```

As you can see from [Figure 20-2](#), the standard linear model is influenced by big peaks (such as the growth between 2001 and 2006) and big valleys (such as the dip between 1920 and 1940). The robust regression method is less sensitive to peaks and valleys in this data, and the resistant regression method is the least sensitive.

4. The data is available from <http://www.irrationalexuberance.com/>.

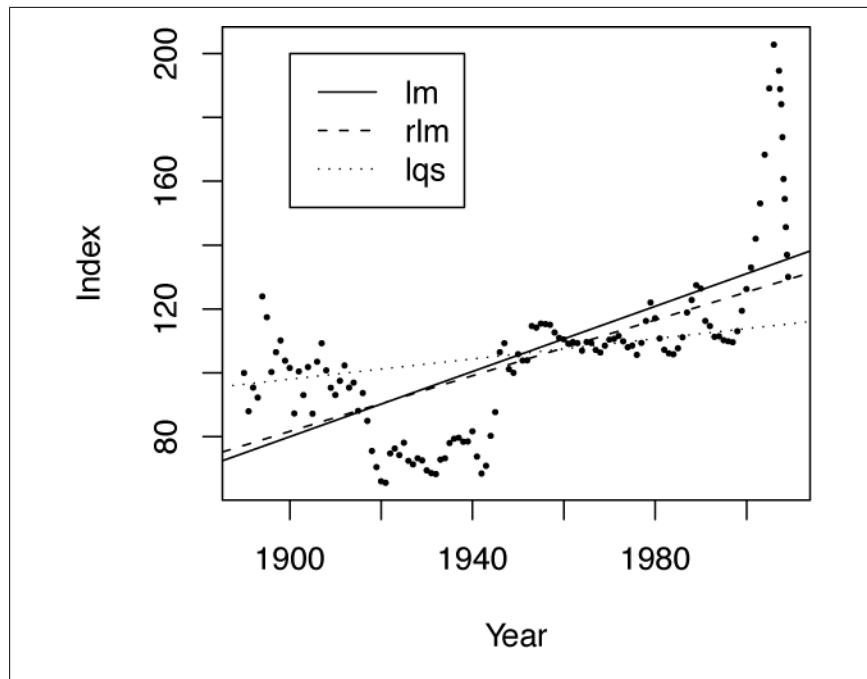


Figure 20-2. Home prices and lm, rlm, and lqs models

## Subset Selection and Shrinkage Methods

Modeling functions like `lm` will include every variable specified in the formula, calculating a coefficient for each one. Unfortunately, this means that `lm` may calculate coefficients for variables that aren't needed. You can manually tune a model using diagnostics like `summary` and `lm.influence`. However, you can also use some other statistical techniques to reduce the effect of insignificant variables or remove them from a model altogether.

### Stepwise Variable Selection

A simple technique for selecting the most important variables is stepwise variable selection. The stepwise algorithm works by repeatedly adding or removing variables from the model, trying to “improve” the model at each step. When the algorithm can no longer improve the model by adding or subtracting variables, it stops and returns the new (and usually smaller) model.

Note that “improvement” does not just mean reducing the residual sum of squares (RSS) for the fitted model. Adding an additional variable to a model will not increase the RSS (see a statistics book for an explanation of why), but it does increase model complexity. Typically, AIC (Akaike's information criterion) is used to measure the value of each additional variable. The AIC is defined as  $AIC = -2 * \log(L) + k * edf$ , where  $L$  is the likelihood and  $edf$  is the equivalent degrees of freedom.

In R, you perform stepwise selection through the `step` function:

```
step(object, scope, scale = 0,
     direction = c("both", "backward", "forward"),
     trace = 1, keep = NULL, steps = 1000, k = 2, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `step`.

| Argument  | Description  | Default |
|-----------|--|---------|
| object    | An object representing a model, such as the objects returned by <code>lm</code> , <code>glm</code> , or <code>aov</code> .   |         |
| scope     | An argument specifying a set of variables that you want in the final model and a list of all variables that you want to consider including in the model. The first set is called the <i>lower bound</i> , and the second is called the <i>upper bound</i> . If a single formula is specified, then it is interpreted as the upper bound. To specify both an upper and a lower bound, pass a list with two formulas labeled as upper and lower. |         |
| scale     | A value used in the definition of AIC for <code>lm</code> and <code>aov</code> models. See the help file for <code>extractAIC</code> for more information.   | 0       |
| direction | Specifies whether variables should be only added to the model ( <code>direction="forward"</code> ), removed from the model ( <code>direction="backward"</code> ), or both ( <code>direction="both"</code> ).   | "both"  |
| trace     | A numeric value that specifies whether to print out details of the fitting process. Specify <code>trace=0</code> (or a negative number) to suppress printing, <code>trace=1</code> for normal detail, and higher numbers for even more detail.   | 1       |
| keep      | A function used to select a subset of arguments to keep from an object. The function accepts a fitted model object and an AIC statistic.   | NULL    |
| steps     | A numeric value that specifies the maximum number of steps to take before the function halts.  | 1000    |
| k         | The multiple of the number of degrees of freedom to be used in the penalty calculation ( <code>extractAIC</code> ).  | 2       |
| ...       | Additional arguments for <code>extractAIC</code> .   |         |

There is an alternative implementation of stepwise selection in the `MASS` library: the `stepAIC` function. This function works similarly to `step` but operates on a wider range of model objects.

## Ridge Regression

Stepwise variable selection simply fits a model using `lm`, but limits the number of variables in the model. In contrast, ridge regression places constraints on the size of the coefficients and fits a model using different computations.

Ridge regression can be used to mitigate problems when there are several highly correlated variables in the underlying data. This condition (called *multicollinearity*) causes high variance in the results. Reducing the number, or impact, of regressors in the data can help reduce these problems.<sup>5</sup>

5. For example, see [Greene2007].

In “[Details About the lm Function](#)” on page 410, we described how ordinary linear regression finds the coefficients that minimize the residual sum of squares. Ridge regression does something similar. Ridge regression attempts to minimize the sum of squared residuals plus a penalty for the coefficient sizes. The penalty is a constant  $\lambda$  times the sum of squared coefficients. Specifically, ridge regression tries to minimize the following quantity:

$$\text{RSS}_{\text{ridge}}(c) = \sum_{i=1}^N (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2 + \lambda \sum_{j=1}^m c_j^2$$

To estimate a model using ridge regression, you can use the `lm.ridge` function from the MASS package:

```
library(MASS)
lm.ridge(formula, data, subset, na.action, lambda = 0, model = FALSE,
         x = FALSE, y = FALSE, contrasts = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments to `lm.ridge` are the following.

| Argument               | Description   | Default |
|------------------------|---|---------|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula object that specifies the form of the model to fit.   |         |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame, list, or environment (or an object that can be coerced to a data frame) in which the variables in <code>formula</code> can be evaluated.          |         |
| <code>subset</code>    | A vector specifying the observations in <code>data</code> to include in the model.  |         |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function that specifies what <code>lm</code> should do if there are NA values in the data. If <code>NULL</code> , <code>lm</code> uses <code>na.omit</code> . |         |
| <code>lambda</code>    | A scalar or vector of ridge constants.  | 0       |
| <code>model</code>     | A logical value specifying whether the “model frame” should be returned.  | FALSE   |
| <code>x</code>         | Logical values specifying whether the “model matrix” should be returned.  | FALSE   |
| <code>y</code>         | A logical value specifying whether the response vector should be returned.  | FALSE   |
| <code>contrasts</code> | A list of contrasts for factors in the model.   | NULL    |
| <code>...</code>       | Additional arguments to <code>lm.fit</code> .   |         |

## Lasso and Least Angle Regression

Another technique for reducing the size of the coefficients (and thus reducing their impact on the final model) is the lasso. Like ridge regression, lasso regression puts a penalty on the size of the coefficients. However, the lasso algorithm uses a different penalty: instead of a sum of squared coefficients, the lasso sums the absolute value of the coefficients. (In math terms, ridge uses  $L^2$ -norms, while lasso uses  $L^1$ -norms.) Specifically, the lasso algorithm tries to minimize the following value:

$$\text{RSS}_{\text{lasso}}(c) = \sum_{i=1}^N (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2 + \lambda \sum_{j=1}^m |c_j|$$

The best way to compute lasso regression in R is through the `lars` function:

```
library(lars)
lars(x, y, type = c("lasso", "lar", "forward.stagewise", "stepwise"),
     trace = FALSE, normalize = TRUE, intercept = TRUE, Gram,
     eps = .Machine$double.eps, max.steps, use.Gram = TRUE)
```

The `lars` function computes the entire lasso path at once. Specifically, it begins with a model with no variables. It then computes the lambda values for which each variable enters the model and shows the resulting coefficients. Finally, the `lars` algorithm computes a model with all the coefficients present, which is the same as an ordinary linear regression fit.

This function actually implements a more general algorithm called *least angle regression*; you have the option to choose least angle regression, forward stagewise regression, or stepwise regression instead of lasso. Here are the arguments to the `lars` function.

| Argument  | Description  | Default   |
|-----------|--|---|
| x         | A matrix of predictor variables.   |   |
| y         | A numeric vector containing the response variable.   |   |
| type      | The type of model to fit. Use <code>type="lasso"</code> for lasso, <code>type="lar"</code> for least angle regression, <code>type="forward.stage wise"</code> for infinitesimal forward stagewise, and <code>type="step wise"</code> for stepwise. | <code>c("lasso", "lar", "forward.stagewise", "stepwise")</code> |
| trace     | A logical value specifying whether to print details as the function is running.  | FALSE   |
| normalize | A logical value specifying whether each variable will be standardized to have an $L^2$ -norm of 1.   | TRUE  |
| intercept | A logical value indicating whether an intercept should be included in the model.   | TRUE  |
| Gram      | The $X'X$ matrix used in the calculations. To rerun <code>lars</code> with slightly different parameters, but the same underlying data, you may reuse the <code>Gram</code> matrix from a prior run to increase efficiency.                        |   |
| eps       | An effective 0.  | <code>.Machine\$double.eps</code>                               |
| max.steps | A limit on the number of steps taken by the <code>lars</code> function.  |   |
| use.Gram  | A logical value specifying whether <code>lars</code> should precompute the <code>Gram</code> matrix. (For large $N$ , this can be time consuming.)   | TRUE  |

## elasticnet

Both ridge regression and lasso regression are subsets of a family of models called elastic net. Elastic nets are available in R through the function `enet` in the package `elasticnet`. (Both the algorithm and code were developed by Hui Zou and Trevor Hastie.)

```
enet(x, y, lambda, max.steps, normalize, intercept, trace, eps)
```

Unfortunately, the `enet` function requires its input as a matrix and not as a data frame and a formula. Here is a description of the parameters for `enet`:

| Argument  | Description   | Default                                   |
|-----------|---|---|
| x         | A matrix of predictor variables.  |   |
| y         | A numeric vector containing the response variable.                                  |   |
| lambda    | The quadratic penalty. Use <code>lambda=0</code> for a lasso fit.                   |   |
| max.steps | The maximum number of steps   | <code>50 * min(ncol(x), nrow(x)-1)</code> |
| trace     | Specifies whether to print progress.  | <code>FALSE</code>                        |
| normalize | A logical value indicating whether to normalize the input before computing the fit. | <code>TRUE</code>                         |
| intercept | A logical value indicating whether to center the predictors                         | <code>TRUE</code>                         |
| eps       | An effective 0.   | <code>.Machine\$double.eps</code>         |

## Principal Components Regression and Partial Least Squares Regression

Ordinary least squares regression doesn't always work well with closely correlated variables. A useful technique for modeling effects in this form of data is principal components regression. Principal components regression works by first transforming the predictor variables using principal components analysis. Next, a linear regression is performed on the transformed variables.

A closely related technique is partial least squares regression. In partial least squares regression, both the predictor and the response variables are transformed before fitting a linear regression. In R, principal components regression is available through the function `pqr` in the `pls` package:

```
library(pls)
pqr(..., method = pls.options()$pqralg)
```

Partial least squares is available through the function `plsr` in the same package:

```
plsr(..., method = pls.options()$plsralg)
```

Both functions are actually aliases to the function `mvr`:

```
mvr(formula, ncomp, data, subset, na.action,
method = pls.options()$mvralg,
scale = FALSE, validation = c("none", "CV", "LOO"),
model = TRUE, x = FALSE, y = FALSE, ...)
```

## Nonlinear Models

The regression models shown above all produced linear models. In this section, we'll look at some algorithms for fitting nonlinear models when you know the general form of the model.

## Generalized Linear Models

Generalized linear modeling is a technique developed by John Nelder and Robert Wedderburn to compute many common types of models using a single framework. You can use generalized linear models (GLMs) to fit linear regression models, logistic regression models, Poisson regression models, and other types of models.

As the name implies, GLMs are a generalization of linear models. Like linear models, there is a response variable  $y$  and a set of predictor variables  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ . GLMs introduce a new quantity called the *linear predictor*. The linear predictor takes the following form:

$$\eta = c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \cdots + c_n x_n$$

In a general linear model, the predicted value is a function of the linear predictor. The relationship between the response and predictor variables does not have to be linear. However, the relationship between the predictor variables and the linear predictor must be linear. Additionally, the only way that the predictor variables influence the predicted value is through the linear predictor.

In “[Example: A Simple Linear Model](#)” on page 401, we noted that a good way to interpret the predicted value of a model is as the expected value (or mean) of the response variable, given a set of predictor variables. This is also true in GLMs, and the relationships between that mean and the linear predictor are what make GLMs so flexible. To be precise, there must be a smooth, invertible function  $m$  such that:

$$\mu = m(\eta), \eta = m^{-1}(\mu) = l(\mu)$$

The inverse of  $m$  (denoted by  $l$  above) is called the *link function*. You can use many different function families with a GLM, each of which lets you predict a different form of model. For GLMs, the underlying probability distribution needs to be part of the exponential family of probability distributions. More precisely, distributions that can be modeled by GLMs have the following form:

$$f_y(y; \mu; \varphi) = \exp\left(\frac{A}{\varphi}(y\lambda(\mu) - \lambda(\mu)) + \tau(y, \varphi)\right)$$

As a simple example, if you use the identity function for  $m$  and assume a normal distribution for the error term, then  $\eta = \mu$  and we just have an ordinary linear regression model. However, you can specify some much more interesting forms of models with GLMs. You can model functions with Gaussian, binomial, Poisson, gamma, and other distributions, and use a variety of link functions, including identity, logit, probit, inverse, log, and other functions.

In R, you can model all of these different types of models using the `glm` function:

```
glm(formula, family = gaussian, data, weights, subset,
    na.action, start = NULL, etastart, mustart, offset, control = list(...),
    model = TRUE, method = "glm.fit", x = FALSE, y = TRUE, contrasts = NULL,
    ...)
```

Here are the arguments to `glm`.

| Argument               | Description  | Default   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula object that specifies the form of the model to fit.  |   |
| <code>family</code>    | Describes the probability distribution of the disturbance term and the link function for the model. (See below for information on different families.)   | <code>gaussian</code>   |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame, list, or environment (or an object that can be coerced to a data frame) in which the variables in <code>formula</code> can be evaluated.   |   |
| <code>weights</code>   | A numeric vector containing weights for each observation in <code>data</code> .  |   |
| <code>subset</code>    | A vector specifying the observations in <code>data</code> to include in the model.   |   |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function that specifies what <code>lm</code> should do if there are NA values in the data. If <code>NULL</code> , <code>lm</code> uses <code>na.omit</code> .  | <code>getOption("na.action")</code> , which defaults to <code>na.fail</code>  |
| <code>start</code>     | A numeric vector containing starting values for parameters in the linear predictor.  | <code>NULL</code>   |
| <code>etastart</code>  | A numeric vector containing starting values for the linear predictor.  |   |
| <code>mustart</code>   | A numeric vector containing starting values for the vector of means.   |   |
| <code>offset</code>    | A set of terms that are added to the linear term with a constant coefficient of 1. (You can use an offset to force a variable, or a set of variables, into the model.)   |   |
| <code>control</code>   | A list of parameters for controlling the fitting process. Parameters include <code>epsilon</code> (which specifies the convergence tolerance), <code>maxit</code> (which specifies the maximum number of iterations), and <code>trace</code> (which specifies whether to output information on each iteration). See <code>glm.control</code> for more information. | <code>glm.control(...)</code> , which, in turn, has defaults <code>epsilon=1e-8</code> , <code>maxit=25</code> , <code>trace=FALSE</code> |
| <code>model</code>     | A logical value specifying whether the “model frame” should be returned.   | <code>TRUE</code>   |
| <code>method</code>    | The method to use for fitting. Only <code>method="glm.fit"</code> fits a model, though you can specify <code>method="model.frame"</code> to return a model frame.  | <code>"glm.fit"</code>  |
| <code>x</code>         | Logical values specifying whether the “model matrix” should be returned.   | <code>FALSE</code>  |
| <code>y</code>         | Logical value specifying whether the “response vector” should be returned.   | <code>TRUE</code>   |

| Argument  | Description   | Default |
|-----------|---|---------|
| contrasts | A list of contrasts for factors in the model.             | NULL    |
| ...       | Additional arguments passed to <code>glm.control</code> . |         |

GLM fits a model using iteratively reweighted least squares (IRLS).

As noted above, you can model many different types of functions using GLM. The following function families are available in R:

```
binomial(link = "logit")
gaussian(link = "identity")
Gamma(link = "inverse")
inverse.gaussian(link = "1/mu^2")
poisson(link = "log")
quasi(link = "identity", variance = "constant")
quasibinomial(link = "logit")
quasipoisson(link = "log")
```

You may specify an alternative link function for most of these function families. Here is a list of the possible link functions for each family.

| Family function  | Allowed link functions  | Default link function |
|------------------|---|-----------------------|
| binomial         | "logit", "probit", "cauchit", "log", and "cloglog"  | "logit"               |
| gaussian         | "identity", "log", and "inverse"  | "identity"            |
| Gamma            | "inverse", "identity", and "log"  | "inverse"             |
| inverse.gaussian | "1/mu^2", "inverse", "identity", and "log"  | "1/mu^2"              |
| poisson          | "log", "identity", and "sqrt"   | "log"                 |
| quasi            | "logit", "probit", "cloglog", "identity", "inverse", "log", "1/mu^2", and "sqrt", or use the power function to create a power link function | "identity"            |
| quasibinomial    |   | "logit"               |
| quasipoisson     |   | "log"                 |

The `quasi` function also takes a variance argument (with default constant); see the help file for `quasi` for more information.

If you are working with a large data set and have limited memory, you may want to consider using the `bigglm` function in the `biglm` package.

As an example, let's use the `glm` function to fit the same model that we used for `lm`. By default, `glm` assumes a Gaussian error distribution, so we expect the fitted model to be identical to the one fitted above:

```
> runs.glm <- glm(
+   formula=runs~singles+doubles+triples+homeruns+
+     walks+hitbypitch+sacrificeflies+
+     stolenbases+caughtstealing,
+   data=team.batting.00to08)
> runs.glm
```

```
Call: glm(formula = runs ~ singles + doubles + triples + homeruns +
```

```

walks + hitbypitch + sacrificeflies + stolenbases + caughtstealing,
data = team.batting.00to08)

Coefficients:
(Intercept)      singles       doubles      triples
-507.16020      0.56705      0.69110      1.15836
homeruns        walks        hitbypitch  sacrificeflies
1.47439        0.30118      0.37750      0.87218
stolenbases     caughtstealing
0.04369        -0.01533

Degrees of Freedom: 269 Total (i.e. Null); 260 Residual
Null Deviance: 1637000
Residual Deviance: 140100 AIC: 2476

```

As expected, the fitted model is identical to the model from `lm`. (Typically, it's better to use `lm` rather than `glm` when fitting an ordinary linear regression model because `lm` is more efficient.) Notice that `glm` provides slightly different information through the print statement, such as the degrees of freedom, null deviance, residual deviance, and AIC. We'll revisit `glm` when talking about logistic regression models for classification; see “[Logistic Regression](#)” on page 467.

## glmnet

The `glmnet` package fits a generalized linear model with penalized maximum likelihood. In other words, this package combines GLM models with elastic net models, using elastic net. (You can use this function to fit a model using ridge regression or lasso with the correct set of parameters.) In practice, this can be useful if you need to fit a time series model, a logistic regression model, or another type of linear model with constraints on the coefficients. This is particularly useful for very large or wide data sets.<sup>6</sup> You fit a model using the `glmnet` function:

```

glmnet(x, y, family, weights, offset, alpha, nlambda, lambda.min.ratio,
       lambda, standardize, thresh, dfmax, pmax, exclude, penalty.factor,
       maxit, type.gaussian)

```

Here is a description of the arguments to `glmnet`:

| Argument            | Description  | Default                   |
|---------------------|--|---------------------------|
| <code>x</code>      | A matrix of predictor variables.   |                           |
| <code>y</code>      | A numeric vector containing the response variable.   |                           |
| <code>family</code> | Specifies the family to use for fitting the <code>glm</code> model. Choices include “ <code>gaussian</code> ”, “ <code>binomial</code> ”, “ <code>poisson</code> ”, “ <code>multinomial</code> ”, and “ <code>cox</code> ” | “ <code>gaussian</code> ” |

6. The algorithm, and R package, were written by Friedman, Hastie, and Tibshirani, the authors of [[Hastie2009](#)], the bible of machine learning. Jeremy Howard, the chief scientist of Kaggle, thinks this is one of the two most useful algorithms for machine learning. To learn more about this algorithm, see [[Friedman2008](#)].

| Argument         | Description   | Default                                       |
|------------------|---|---|
| weights          | A vector of observation weights.  | 1 for each observation                        |
| offset           | A vector that is included in the linear predictor. Typically used with a Poisson family to represent log of exposure time, or to refine an existing fit.                                      | NULL  |
| alpha            | The elastic net mixing parameter; use alpha=0 for the ridge penalty, alpha=1 for the lasso penalty. See the documentation for a more concise explanation.                                     | 1   |
| nlambda          | The number of lambda values.  | 100   |
| lambda.min.ratio | Smallest value for lambda as a fraction of the highest lambda value. (The highest value is derived from the data; see the help file for more details.)  | ifelse(nobs<nvars, 0.01, 0.0001)              |
| lambda           | A user-supplied lambda sequence.  |   |
| standardize      | A logical flag indicating whether to standardize the data.  | TRUE  |
| max.steps        | The maximum number of steps.  | 50 * min(ncol(x), nrow(x)-1)                  |
| thresh           | Convergence threshold for coordinate descent.   | 1e-07   |
| dfmax            | Specifies a cap on the maximum number of variables in the model.  | nvars + 1                                     |
| pmax             | Specifies a cap on the maximum number of variables to be nonzero.   | min(dfmax * 2, nvars)                         |
| exclude          | Indices of variables to be excluded from the model.   |   |
| penalty.factor   | Separate penalties to be applied for each coefficient.  | Default is identical penalties: rep(1, nvars) |
| maxit            | Maximum number of passes over the data.   | 100000  |
| type.gaussian    | Choice of algorithm for Gaussian. The covariance algorithm saves all inner products ever computed; the naive algorithm recomputes these values. The default choices are based on performance. | ifelse(nvars<500, "covariance", "naive")      |

As a quick example, let's fit a `glmnet` model to the 2008 team batting data:

```
> names(team.batting.00to08)
[1] "teamID"           "yearID"          "runs"            "singles"
[5] "doubles"          "triples"         "homeruns"        "walks"
[9] "stolenbases"      "caughtstealing"   "hitbypitch"     "sacrificeflies"
[13] "atbats"
> # for y, use columns 4 through 12, for x use runs
> # also, translate predictors to matrix
> br.glmnet <- glmnet(x=as.matrix(team.batting.00to08[, 4:12]),
```

```

+   y=team.batting.00to08$runs, standardize=FALSE)
> summary(br.glmnet)
      Length Class     Mode
a0        76    -none- numeric
beta      684   dgCMatrix S4
df         76    -none- numeric
dim         2    -none- numeric
lambda     76    -none- numeric
dev.ratio  76    -none- numeric
nulldev     1    -none- numeric
npasses     1    -none- numeric
jerr        1    -none- numeric
offset      1    -none- logical
call        4    -none- call
nobs        1    -none- numeric

```

Printing the model object will show the number of non-zero coefficients (labeled `df`, even though degrees of freedom only makes sense for lasso fits), percent deviation, and lambda. Here's a few lines of what print shows for the `br.glmnet` object (truncated for brevity):

```

> br.glmnet

Call: glmnet(x = as.matrix(team.batting.00to08[, 4:12]),
             y = team.batting.00to08$runs, standardize = FALSE)

      Df %Dev Lambda
[1,] 0 0.00000 3065.000
[2,] 1 0.05115 2793.000
[3,] 1 0.09362 2545.000
...
[27,] 4 0.85480 272.900
[75,] 8 0.91440   3.138
[76,] 8 0.91440   2.859

```

You can show the coefficients of the model at different values of the penalty parameter using the `coef.glmnet` function:

```

> coef(br.glmnet, s=1)
10 x 1 sparse Matrix of class "dgCMatrix"
 1
(Intercept) -505.10648378
singles       0.56812235
doubles       0.69273383
triples       1.12066388
homerouns     1.47182140
walks         0.30203653
stolenbases   0.03976671
caughtstealing .
hitbypitch   0.36031017
sacrificeflies 0.83649361

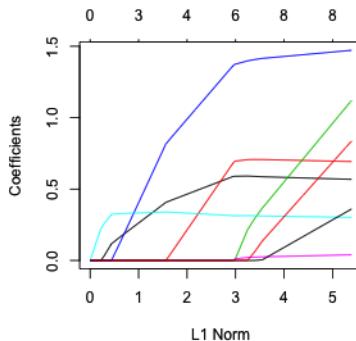
```

Note how the coefficients are similar to the standard linear models, but how the penalty causes the caught-stealing coefficient to vanish. (Also note the intercept value.)

More interestingly, you can plot how the coefficients change with the L1 norm of the coefficients (or lambda or the explained deviance) using the `plot.glmnet` function:

```
> plot(br.glmnet)
```

The resulting plot is shown in [Figure 20-3](#).



*Figure 20-3. Coefficient profile for br.glmnet model*

## Nonlinear Least Squares

Sometimes you know the form of a model, even if the model is extremely nonlinear.

To fit nonlinear models (minimizing least squares error), you can use the `nls` function:

```
nls(formula, data = parent.frame(), start, control = nls.control(),
    algorithm = c("default", "plinear", "port"), trace = FALSE,
    subset, weights, na.action, model = FALSE, lower = -Inf,
    upper = Inf, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to the `nls` function.

| Argument               | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula object that specifies the form of the model to fit.  |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame in which <code>formula</code> can be evaluated.   |
| <code>start</code>     | A named list or named vector with starting estimates for the fit.  |
| <code>control</code>   | A list of arguments to pass to <code>control</code> the fitting process (see the help file for <code>nls.control</code> for more information).   |
| <code>algorithm</code> | The algorithm to use for fitting the model. Use <code>algorithm="plinear"</code> for the Golub-Pereyra algorithm for partially linear least squares models and <code>algorithm="port"</code> for the 'nl2sol' algorithm from the PORT library. |
| <code>trace</code>     | A logical value specifying whether to print the progress of the algorithm while <code>nls</code> is running.   |

| Argument  | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| subset    | An optional vector specifying the set of rows to include.                                  |
| weights   | An optional vector specifying weights for observations.                                    |
| na.action | A function that specifies how to treat NA values in the data.                              |
| model     | A logical value specifying whether to include the model frame as part of the model object. |
| lower     | An optional vector specifying lower bounds for the parameters of the model.                |
| upper     | An optional vector specifying upper bounds for the parameters of the model.                |
| ...       | Additional arguments (not currently used).   |

The `nls` function is actually a wrapper for the `nlm` function. The `nlm` function is similar to `nls` but takes an R function (not a formula) and a list of starting parameters as arguments. It's usually easier to use `nls` because `nls` allows you to specify models using formulas and data frames, like other R modeling functions. For more information about `nlm`, see the help file.

By the way, you can actually use `nlm` to fit a linear model. It will work, but it will be slow and inefficient.

## Survival Models

Survival analysis is concerned with looking at the amount of time that elapses before an event occurs. An obvious application is to look at mortality statistics (predicting how long people live), but it can also be applied to mechanical systems (the time before a failure occurs), marketing (the amount of time before a consumer cancels an account), or other areas.

In R, there are a variety of functions in the `survival` library for modeling survival data.

To estimate a survival curve for censored data, you can use the `survfit` function:

```
library(survival)
survfit(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, etype, id, ...)
```

This function accepts the following arguments.

| Argument  | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| formula   | Describes the relationship between the response value and the predictors. The response value should be a <code>Surv</code> object. |
| data      | The data frame in which to evaluate formula.   |
| weights   | Weights for observations.  |
| subset    | Subset of observation to use in fitting the model.   |
| na.action | Function to deal with missing values.  |
| etype     | The variable giving the type of event.   |
| id        | The variable that identifies individual subjects.  |

| Argument   | Description  |
|------------|--|
| type       | Specifies the type of survival curve. Options include "kaplan-meier", "fleming-harrington", and "fh2".   |
| error      | Specifies the type of error. Possible values are "greenwood" for the Greenwood formula or "tsiatis" for the Tsiatis formula.   |
| conf.type  | Confidence interval type. One of "none", "plain", "log" (the default), or "log-log".   |
| conf.lower | A character string to specify modified lower limits to the curve; the upper limit remains unchanged. Possible values are "usual" (unmodified), "peto", and "modified". |
| start.time | Numeric value specifying a time to start calculating survival information.   |
| conf.int   | The level for a two-sided confidence interval on the survival curve(s).  |
| se.fit     | A logical value indicating whether standard errors should be computed.   |
| ...        | Additional variables passed to internal functions.   |

As an example, let's fit a survival curve for the GSE2034 data set. This data comes from the Gene Expression Omnibus of the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI), which is accessible from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/>. The experiment examined how the expression of certain genes affected breast cancer relapse-free survival time. In particular, it tested estrogen receptor binding sites. (We'll revisit this example in [Chapter 25](#).)

First, we need to create a `Surv` object within the data frame. A `Surv` object is an R object for representing survival information, in particular, censored data. Censored data occurs when the outcome of the experiment is not known for all observations. In this case, the data is censored. There are three possible outcomes for each observation: the subject had a recurrence of the disease, the subject died without having a recurrence of the disease, or the subject was still alive without a recurrence at the time the data was reported. The last outcome—the subject was still alive without a recurrence—results in the censored values:

```
> library(survival)
> GSE2034.Surv <- transform(GSE2034,
+   surv=Surv(
+     time=GSE2034$months.to.relapse.or.last.followup,
+     event=GSE2034$relapse,
+     type="right"
+   )
+ )
> # show the first 26 observations:
> GSE2034.Surv$surv[1:26,]
[1] 101+ 118+ 9 106+ 37 125+ 109+ 14 99+ 137+ 34 32 128+
[14] 14 130+ 30 155+ 25 30 84+ 7 100+ 30 7 133+ 43
```

Now let's calculate the survival model. We'll just make it a function of the `ER.Status` flag (which stands for “estrogen receptor”):

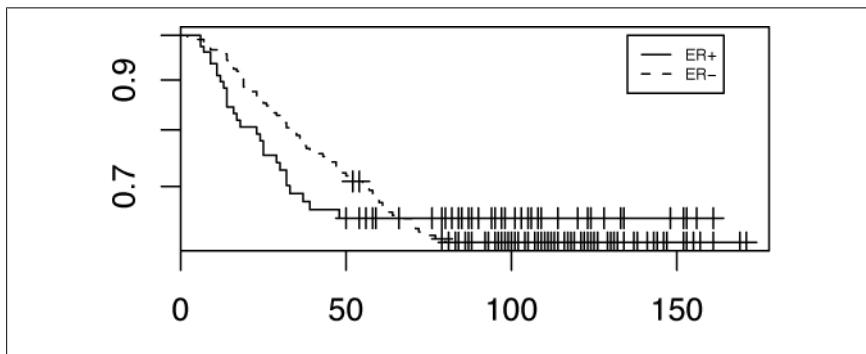
```
> GSE2034.survfit <- survfit(
+   formula=surv~ER.Status,
```

```
+   data=GSE2034.Surv,
+ )
```

The easiest way to view a `survfit` object is graphically. Let's plot the model:

```
> plot(GSE2034.survfit, lty=1:2, log=T)
> legend(135, 1, c("ER+", "ER-"), lty=1:2, cex=0.5)
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 20-4](#). Note the different curve shape for each cohort.



*Figure 20-4. Survival curves for the GSE2034 data*

To fit a parametric survival model, you can use the `survreg` function in the `survival` package:

```
survreg(formula, data, weights, subset,
na.action, dist="weibull", init=NULL, scale=0,
control,parms=NULL,model=FALSE, x=FALSE,
y=TRUE, robust=FALSE, score=FALSE, ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `survreg`.

| Argument               | Description  | Default                           |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula that describes the form of the model; the response is usually a <code>Surv</code> object (created by the <code>Surv</code> function).  |                                   |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame containing the training data for the model.   |                                   |
| <code>weights</code>   | A vector of weights for observations in <code>data</code> .  |                                   |
| <code>subset</code>    | An expression describing a subset of observations in <code>data</code> to use for fitting the model.   |                                   |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function that describes how to treat NA values.  | <code>options()\$na.action</code> |
| <code>dist</code>      | A character value describing the form of the y variable (either "weibull", "exponential", "gaussian", "logistic", "lognormal", or "loglogistic") or a distribution like the ones in <code>survreg.distributions</code> . | "weibull"                         |
| <code>init</code>      | Optional vector of initial parameters.   | <code>NULL</code>                 |
| <code>scale</code>     | Value specifying the scale of the estimates. Estimated if <code>scale &lt;= 0</code> .   | 0                                 |
| <code>control</code>   | A list of control values, usually produced by <code>survreg.control</code> .   |                                   |

| Argument    | Description   | Default |
|-------------|---|---------|
| parms       | A list of fixed parameters for the distribution function.   | NULL    |
| model, x, y | Logical values indicating whether to return the model frame, $X$ matrix, or $Y$ vector (respectively) with the results. | FALSE   |
| robust      | A logical value indicating whether to use “robust sandwich standard methods.”   | FALSE   |
| score       | A logical value indicating whether to return the score vector.  | FALSE   |
| ...         | Other arguments passed to <code>survreg.control</code> .  |         |

You can compute the expected survival for a set of subjects (or individual expectations for each subject) with the function `survexp`:

```
library(survival)
survexp(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, rmap, times,
       cohort = TRUE, conditional = FALSE, ratetable = survexp.us,
       scale = 1, npoints, se.fit, model = FALSE, x = FALSE, y = FALSE)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `survexp`.

| Argument    | Description  | Default                  |
|-------------|--|--------------------------|
| formula     | A formula object describing the form of the model. The (optional) response should contain a vector of follow-up times, and the predictors should contain grouping variables separated by + operators.  |                          |
| data        | A data frame containing source data on which to predict values.  |                          |
| weights     | A vector of weights for the cases.   |                          |
| subset      | An expression indicating which observations in data should be included in the prediction.  |                          |
| na.action   | A function specifying how to deal with missing (NA) values in the data.  | options()<br>\$na.action |
| times       | A vector of follow-up times at which the resulting survival curve is evaluated. (This may also be included in the formula; see above.)   |                          |
| cohort      | A logical value indicating whether to calculate the survival of the whole cohort ( <code>cohort=TRUE</code> ) or individual observations ( <code>cohort=FALSE</code> ).  | TRUE                     |
| conditional | A logical value indicating whether to calculate conditional expected survival. Specify <code>conditional=TRUE</code> if the follow-up times are times of death, and <code>conditional=FALSE</code> if the follow-up times are potential censoring times. | FALSE                    |
| ratetable   | A fitted Cox model (from <code>coxph</code> ) or a table of survival times.  | <code>survexp.us</code>  |
| scale       | A numeric value specifying how to scale the results.   | 1                        |
| npoints     | A numeric value indicating the number of points at which to calculate individual results.  |                          |
| se.fit      | A logical value indicating whether to include the standard error of the predicted survival.  |                          |
| model, x, y | Specifies whether to return the model frame, the $X$ matrix, or the $Y$ vector in the results.   | FALSE for all three      |

The Cox proportional hazard model is a nonparametric method for fitting survival models. It is available in R through the `coxph` function in the `survival` library:

```
coxph(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, init, control,
      ties = c("efron", "breslow", "exact"), singular.ok = TRUE,
      robust = FALSE, model = FALSE, x = FALSE, y = TRUE, tt, method = ties,
      ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `coxph`.

| Argument    | Description   | Default                         |
|-------------|---|---------------------------------|
| formula     | A formula that describes the form of the model; the response must be a <code>Surv</code> object (created by the <code>Surv</code> function).                      |                                 |
| data        | A data frame containing source data on which to predict values.   |                                 |
| weights     | A vector of weights for the cases.  |                                 |
| subset      | An expression indicating which observations in data should be fit.  |                                 |
| na.action   | A function specifying how to deal with missing (NA) values in the data.   |                                 |
| init        | A vector of initial parameter values for the fitting process.   | 0 for all variables             |
| control     | Object of class <code>coxph.control</code> specifying the iteration limit and other control options.  | <code>coxph.control(...)</code> |
| method      | A character value specifying the method for handling ties. Choices include "efron", "breslow", and "exact".   | "efron"                         |
| singular.ok | A logical value indicating whether to stop with an error if the X matrix is singular or to simply skip variables that are linear combinations of other variables. | TRUE                            |
| robust      | A logical value indicating whether to return a robust variance estimate.  | FALSE                           |
| model       | A logical value specifying whether to return the model frame.   | FALSE                           |
| x           | A logical value specifying whether to return the X matrix.  | FALSE                           |
| y           | A logical value specifying whether to return the Y vector.  | TRUE                            |
| ...         | Additional arguments passed to <code>coxph.control</code> .   |                                 |

As an example, let's fit a Cox proportional hazard model to the GSE2034 data:

```
> GSE2034.coxph <- coxph(
+   formula=surv~ER.Status,
+   data=GSE2034.Surv,
+   )
> GSE2034.coxph
Call:
coxph(formula = surv ~ ER.Status, data = GSE2034.Surv)
```

```
            coef exp(coef) se(coef)      z      p
ER.StatusER+ -0.00378    0.996    0.223 -0.0170 0.99
```

```
Likelihood ratio test=0 on 1 df, p=0.986 n= 286
```

The summary method for `coxph` objects provides additional information about the fit:

```
> summary(GSE2034.coxph)
Call:
coxph(formula = surv ~ ER.Status, data = GSE2034.Surv)

n= 286

      coef exp(coef) se(coef)     z Pr(>|z|)
ER.StatusER+ -0.00378   0.99623  0.22260 -0.017   0.986

      exp(coef) exp(-coef) lower .95 upper .95
ER.StatusER+   0.9962      1.004    0.644    1.541

Rsquare= 0 (max possible= 0.983 )
Likelihood ratio test= 0 on 1 df,  p=0.9865
Wald test            = 0 on 1 df,  p=0.9865
Score (logrank) test = 0 on 1 df,  p=0.9865
```

Another useful function is `cox.zph`, which tests the proportional hazards assumption for a Cox regression model fit:

```
> cox.zph(GSE2034.coxph)
      rho chisq      p
ER.StatusER+ 0.33 11.6 0.000655
```

There are additional methods available for viewing information about `coxph` fits, including `residuals`, `predict`, and `survfit`; see the help file for `coxph.object` for more information.

There are other functions in the `survival` package for fitting survival models, such as `cch`, which fits proportional hazard models to case-cohort data. See the help files for more information.

## Smoothing

This section describes a number of functions for fitting piecewise smooth curves to data. Functions in this section are particularly useful for plotting charts; there are even convenience functions for using these functions to show fitted values in some graphics packages.

### Splines

One method for fitting a function to source data is with splines. With a linear model, a single line is fitted to all the data. With spline methods, a set of different polynomials is fitted to different sections of the data.

You can compute simple cubic splines with the `spline` function in the `stats` package:

```
spline(x, y = NULL, n = 3 * length(x), method = "fmm", xmin = min(x),
       xmax = max(x), xout, ties = mean)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `smooth.spline`.

| Argument | Description  | Default     |
|----------|--|-------------|
| x        | A vector specifying the predictor variable, or a two-column matrix specifying both the predictor and the response variables. |             |
| y        | If x is a vector, then y is a vector containing the response variable.   | NULL        |
| n        | If xout is not specified, then interpolation is done at n equally spaced points between xmin and xmax.                       | 3*length(x) |
| method   | Specifies the type of spline. Allowed values include "fmm", "natural", "periodic", and "monoH.FC".                           | "fmm"       |
| xmin     | Lowest x value for interpolations.   | min(x)      |
| xmax     | Highest x value for interpolations.  | max(x)      |
| xout     | An optional vector of values specifying where interpolation should be done.  |             |
| ties     | A method for handling ties. Either the string "ordered" or a function that returns a single numeric value.                   | mean        |

To return a function instead of a list of parameters, use the function `splinefun`:

```
splinefun(x, y = NULL, method = c("fmm", "periodic", "natural", "monoH.FC"),
          ties = mean)
```

To fit a cubic smoothing spline model to supplied data, use the `smooth.spline` function:

```
smooth.spline(x, y, w, df, spar,
               cv, all.knots, nknots, keep.data, df.offset,
               penalty, control.spar)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `smooth.spline`.

| Argument     | Description  | Default |
|--------------|--|---------|
| x            | A vector specifying the predictor variable, or a two-column matrix specifying both the predictor and the response variables. |         |
| y            | If x is a vector, then y is a vector containing the response variable.   | NULL    |
| w            | An optional numeric vector containing weights for the input data.  | NULL    |
| df           | Degrees of freedom.  |         |
| spar         | Numeric value specifying the smoothing parameter.  | NULL    |
| cv           | A logical value specifying whether to use ordinary cross-validation (cv=TRUE) or generalized cross-validation (cv=FALSE).    | FALSE   |
| all.knots    | A logical value specifying whether to use all values in x as knots.  | FALSE   |
| nknots       | An integer value specifying the number of knots to use when all.knots=FALSE.   | NULL    |
| keep.data    | A logical value indicating whether the input data should be kept in the result.  | TRUE    |
| df.offset    | A numeric value specifying how much to allow the df to be increased in cross-validation.                                     | 0       |
| penalty      | The penalty for degrees of freedom during cross-validation.  | 1       |
| control.spar | A list of parameters describing how to compute spar (when not explicitly specified). See the help file for more information. | list()  |

For example, we can calculate a smoothing spline on the Shiller home price index. This data set contains one annual measurement through 2006 but then has fractional measurements after 2006, making it slightly difficult to align with other data:

```
> shiller.index[shiller.index$Year>2006,]
   Year Real.Home.Price.Index
118 2007.125      194.6713
119 2007.375      188.9270
120 2007.625      184.1683
121 2007.875      173.8622
122 2008.125      160.7639
123 2008.375      154.4993
124 2008.625      145.6642
125 2008.875      137.0083
126 2009.125      130.0611
```

We can use smoothing splines to find values for 2007 and 2008:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(shiller.index)
> shiller.index.spl <- smooth.spline(shiller.index$Year,
+   shiller.index$Real.Home.Price.Index)
> predict(shiller.index.spl,x=c(2007,2008))
$x
[1] 2007 2008

$y
[1] 195.6682 168.8219
```

## Fitting Polynomial Surfaces

You can fit a polynomial surface to data (by local fitting) using the `loess` function. (This function is used in many graphics functions; for example, `panel.loess` uses `loess` to fit a curve to data and plot the curve.)

```
loess(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action, model = FALSE,
      span = 0.75, enp.target, degree = 2,
      parametric = FALSE, drop.square = FALSE, normalize = TRUE,
      family = c("gaussian", "symmetric"),
      method = c("loess", "model.frame"),
      control = loess.control(...), ...)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `loess`.

| Argument             | Description   | Default |
|----------------------|---|---------|
| <code>formula</code> | A formula specifying the relationship between the response and the predictor variables.   |         |
| <code>data</code>    | A data frame, list, or environment specifying the training data for the model fit. (If none is specified, then <code>formula</code> is evaluated in the calling environment.) |         |
| <code>weights</code> | A vector of weights for the cases in the training data.   |         |
| <code>subset</code>  | An optional expression specifying a subset of cases to include in the model.  |         |

| Argument    | Description   | Default                |
|-------------|---|------------------------|
| na.action   | A function specifying how to treat missing values.  | getOption("na.action") |
| model       | A logical value indicating whether to return the model frame.   | FALSE                  |
| span        | A numeric value specifying the parameter $\alpha$ , which controls the degree of smoothing.   | 0.75                   |
| enp.target  | A numeric value specifying the equivalent number of parameters to be used (replaced span).  |                        |
| degree      | The degree of polynomials used.   | 2                      |
| parametric  | A vector specifying any terms that should be fit globally rather than locally. (May be specified by name, number, or as a logical vector.)      | FALSE                  |
| drop.square | Specifies whether to drop the quadratic term for some predictors.   | FALSE                  |
| normalize   | A logical value specifying whether to normalize predictors to a common scale.   | TRUE                   |
| family      | Specifies how fitting is done. Specify family="gaussian" to fit by least squares, and family="symmetric" to fit with Tukey's biweight function. | "gaussian"             |
| method      | Specifies whether to fit the model or just return the model frame.  | "loess"                |
| control     | Control parameters for loess, typically generated by a call to loess.control.   | loess.control(...)     |
| ...         | Additional arguments are passed to loess.control.   |                        |

Using the same example as above:

```
> shiller.index.loess <- loess(Real.Home.Price.Index~Year, data=shiller.index)
> predict(shiller.index.loess, newdata=data.frame(Year=c(2007,2008)))
[1] 156.5490 158.8857
```

## Kernel Smoothing

To estimate a probability density function, regression function, or their derivatives using polynomials, try the function locpoly in the library KernSmooth:

```
library(KernSmooth)
locpoly(x, y, drv = 0L, degree, kernel = "normal",
        bandwidth, gridsize = 401L, bwdisc = 25,
        range.x, binned = FALSE, truncate = TRUE)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to locpoly.

| Argument | Description   | Default  |
|----------|---|----------|
| x        | A vector of x values (with no missing values).                |          |
| y        | A vector of y values (with no missing values).                |          |
| drv      | Order of derivative to estimate.                              | 0L       |
| degree   | Degree of local polynomials.                                  | drv + 1  |
| kernel   | Kernel function to use. Currently ignored ("normal" is used). | "normal" |

| Argument  | Description  | Default |
|-----------|--|---------|
| bandwidth | A single value or an array of length <code>gridsize</code> that specifies the kernel bandwidth smoothing parameter.        |         |
| gridsize  | Specifies the number of equally spaced points over which the function is estimated.  | 401L    |
| bwdisc    | Number of (logarithmically equally spaced) values on which <code>bandwidth</code> is discretized.                          | 25      |
| range.x   | A vector containing the minimum and maximum values of <code>x</code> on which to compute the estimate.                     |         |
| binned    | A logical value specifying whether to interpret <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> as grid counts (as opposed to raw data). | FALSE   |
| truncate  | A logical value specifying whether to ignore <code>x</code> values outside <code>range.x</code> .                          | TRUE    |

R also includes an implementation of local regression through the `locfit` function in the `locfit` library:

```
library(locfit)
locfit(formula, data=sys.frame(sys.parent()), weights=1, cens=0, base=0,
subset, geth=FALSE, ..., lfproc=locfit.raw)
```

## Machine Learning Algorithms for Regression

Most of the models above assumed that you knew the basic form of the model equation and error function. In each of these cases, our goal was to find the coefficients of variables in a known function. However, sometimes you are presented with data where there are many predictive variables, and the relationships between the predictors and responses are very complicated.

Statisticians have developed a variety of techniques to help model more complex relationships in data sets and to predict values for large, complicated data sets. This section describes a variety of techniques for finding not only the coefficients of a model function but also the function itself.

In this section, I use the San Francisco home sales data set described in “[More About the San Francisco Real Estate Prices Data Set](#)” on page 294. This is a pretty ugly data set, with lots of nonlinear relationships. Real estate is all about location, and we have several different variables in the data set that represent location. (The relationships between these variables is not linear, in case you were worried.)

Before modeling, we’ll split the data set into training and testing data sets. Splitting data into training and testing data sets (and, often, validation data sets as well) is a standard practice when fitting models. Statistical models have a tendency to “over-fit” the training data; they do a better job predicting trends in the training data than in other data.

I chose this approach because it works with all the modeling functions in this section. There are other statistical techniques available for making sure that a model doesn’t overfit the data, including cross-validation and bootstrapping. Functions for cross-validation are available for some models (for example, `xpred.rpart` for `rpart` trees); look at the detailed help files for a package (in this case, with the command

`help(package="rpart")`) to see if these functions are available for a specific modeling tool. Bootstrap resampling is available through the `boot` library.

Because this section presents many different types of models, I decided to use a simple, standard approach for evaluating model fits. For each model, I estimated the root mean square (RMS) error for the training and validation data sets. Don't interpret the results as authoritative: I didn't try too hard to tune each model's parameters and know that the models that worked best for this data set do not work best for all data sets. However, I thought I'd include the results because I was interested in them (in good fun) and thought readers would be as well.

Anyway, I wrote the following function to evaluate the performance of each function:

```
calculate_rms_error <- function(mdl, train, test, yval) {  
  train.yhat <- predict(object=mdl,newdata=train)  
  test.yhat <- predict(object=mdl,newdata=test)  
  train.y   <- with(train,get(yval))  
  test.y    <- with(test,get(yval))  
  train.err <- sqrt(mean((train.yhat - train.y)^2))  
  test.err  <- sqrt(mean((test.yhat - test.y)^2))  
  c(train.err=train.err,test.err=test.err)  
}
```

To create a random sample, I used the `sample` function to pick 70% of values for the training data. I saved the sample indices to a vector for later reuse (so that I could derive the same sample later and allow you to use the same sample as well). I also saved the sample indices to make it easy to define the testing data set.

```
> nrow(sanfrancisco.home.sales) * .7  
[1] 2296.7  
> sanfrancisco.home.sales.training.indices <-  
+   sample(1:nrow(sanfrancisco.home.sales),2296)  
> sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing.indices <-  
+   setdiff(rownames(sanfrancisco.home.sales),  
+           sanfrancisco.home.sales.training.indices)  
> sanfrancisco.home.sales.training <-  
  sanfrancisco.home.sales[sanfrancisco.home.sales.training.indices,]  
> sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing <-  
  sanfrancisco.home.sales[sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing.indices,]  
> save(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training.indices,  
+       sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing.indices,  
+       sanfrancisco.home.sales,  
+       file="~/Documents/book/current/data/sanfrancisco.home.sales.RData")
```

Note that the sampling is random, so you will get a different subset each time you run this code. The vectors `sanfrancisco.home.sales.training.indices` and `sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing.indices` that I used in this section are included in the `nutshell` package. (Use the command `data(sanfrancisco.home.sales)` to access them. The data sets `sanfrancisco.home.sales.training` and `sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing` are not included.) You can use the same training and testing sets to re-create the results in this section, or you can pick your own subsets.

## Regression Tree Models

Most of the models we have seen in this chapter are in the form of a single equation. You can use the model to predict values by plugging new data values into a single equation.

Tree models have a slightly different form. Instead of a single, compact equation, tree models represent data by a set of binary decision rules. Instead of plugging numbers into an equation, you follow the rules in a tree to determine the predicted value. Tree models are very easy to interpret, but they don't usually predict values as accurately as other types of models. Tree models are particularly popular in medicine and biology, perhaps because they resemble the process that doctors use to make decisions. In this section, we'll show how to use some popular tree methods for regression in R.

### Recursive partitioning trees

One of the most popular algorithms for building tree models is classification and regression trees, or CART. CART uses a greedy algorithm to build a tree from the training data. Here's an explanation of how CART works:

1. Grow the tree using the following (recursive) method:
  - A. Start with a single set containing all the training data.
  - B. If the number of observations is less than the minimum required for a split, stop splitting the tree. Output the average of all the  $y$ -values in the training data as the predicted value for the terminal node.
  - C. Find a variable  $x_j$  and value  $s$  that minimizes the RMS error when you split the data into two sets.
  - D. Repeat the splitting process (starting at step B) on each of the two sets.
2. Prune the tree using the following (iterative) method:
  - A. Stop if there is only one node in the tree.
  - B. Measure the cost/complexity of the overall tree. (The cost/complexity measurement is a measurement that takes into account the number of observations in each node, the RMS prediction error, and the number of nodes in the tree.)
  - C. Try collapsing each internal node on the tree and measure which subtree has the best cost/complexity.
  - D. Repeat the process (starting at step A) on the subtree with the best cost/complexity.
3. Output the tree with the lowest cost/complexity.

R includes an implementation of classification and regression trees in the `rpart` package. To fit a model, use the `rpart` function:

```
library(rpart)
rpart(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action = na.rpart, method,
      model = FALSE, x = FALSE, y = TRUE, parms, control, cost, ...)
```

Here are the arguments to `rpart`.

| Argument  | Description  | Default  |
|-----------|--|--|
| formula   | A formula describing the relationship between the response and the predictor variables.                                |  |
| data      | A data frame to use for fitting the model.   |  |
| weights   | An optional vector of weights to use for the training data.  |  |
| subset    | An optional expression specifying which observations to use in fitting the model.                                      |  |
| na.action | The function to call for missing values.   | <code>na.rpart</code>  |
| method    | A character value that specifies the fitting method. Must be one of "exp", "poisson", "class", or "anova".             | If <code>y</code> is a survival object, then<br><code>method="exp"</code> ; if <code>y</code> has two columns then<br><code>method="poisson"</code> ; or <code>y</code> if a factor then<br><code>method="class"</code> ; otherwise<br><code>method="anova"</code> |
| model     | A logical value specifying whether to keep the model frame in the results.   | <code>FALSE</code>   |
| x         | A logical value specifying whether to return the <code>x</code> matrix in the results.                                 | <code>FALSE</code>   |
| y         | A logical value specifying whether to return the <code>y</code> matrix in the results.                                 | <code>TRUE</code>  |
| parms     | A list of parameters passed to the fitting function.   |  |
| control   | Options that control details of the <code>rpart</code> algorithm; see <code>rpart.control</code> for more information. |  |
| cost      | A numeric vector of costs, one for each variable in the model.   | <code>1</code> for all variables   |
| ...       | Additional argument passed to <code>rpart.control</code> .   |  |

The CART algorithm handles missing values differently from many other modeling algorithms. With an algorithm like linear regression, missing values need to be filtered out in order for the math to work. However, CART takes advantage of the rule-based model structure to handle missing values differently. When a value is missing for an observation at a split, CART can instead split values using a *surrogate* variable. See the help files for `rpart` for more information on how to control the process of finding and using surrogates.

As an example, let's build a regression tree on the San Francisco home sales data set. We'll start off naively, adding some redundant information and fields that could lead to a model that overfits the data:

```
> library(rpart)
> sf.price.model.rpart <- rpart(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training)
```

Let's take a look at the model returned by this call to `rpart`. The simplest way to examine the object is to use `print.rpart` to print it on the console. The output below has been modified slightly to fit in this book:

```
> sf.price.model.rpart
n= 2296

node), split, n, deviance, yval
  * denotes terminal node

1) root 2296 8.058726e+14  902088.0
  2) neighborhood=Bayview,Bernal Heights,Chinatown,Crocker Amazon,
     Diamond Heights,Downtown,Excelsior,Inner Sunset,Lakeshore,
     Mission,Nob Hill,Ocean View,Outer Mission,Outer Richmond,
     Outer Sunset,Parkside,Potrero Hill,South Of Market,
     Visitacion Valley,Western Addition 1524 1.850806e+14  723301.8
  4) squarefeet< 1772 1282 1.124418e+14  675471.1
  8) neighborhood=Bayview,Chinatown,Crocker Amazon,
     Diamond Heights,Downtown,Excelsior,Lakeshore,Ocean View,
     Outer Mission,Visitacion Valley 444 1.408221e+13  539813.1 *
  9) neighborhood=Bernal Heights,Inner Sunset,Mission,Nob Hill,
     Outer Richmond,Outer Sunset,Parkside,Potrero Hill,
     South Of Market,Western Addition 838 8.585934e+13  747347.3 *
  5) squarefeet>=1772 242 5.416861e+13  976686.0 *
  3) neighborhood=Castro-Upper Market,Financial District,Glen Park,
     Haight-Ashbury,Inner Richmond,Marina,Noe Valley,North Beach,
     Pacific Heights,Presidio Heights,Russian Hill,Seacliff,
     Twin Peaks,West Of Twin Peaks 772 4.759124e+14  1255028.0
  6) squarefeet< 2119 591 1.962903e+14  1103036.0
 12) neighborhood=Castro-Upper Market,Glen Park,Haight-Ashbury,
     Inner Richmond,Noe Valley,North Beach,Pacific Heights,
     Russian Hill,Twin Peaks,
     West Of Twin Peaks 479 1.185669e+14  1032675.0
 24) month=2008-02-01,2008-03-01,2008-06-01,2008-07-01,
     2008-08-01,2008-09-01,2008-10-01,2008-11-01,2008-12-01,
     2009-01-01,2009-02-01,2009-03-01,2009-04-01,2009-05-01,
     2009-06-01,2009-07-01 389 5.941085e+13  980348.3 *
 25) month=2008-04-01,2008-05-01 90 5.348720e+13  1258844.0
 50) longitude< -122.4142 81 1.550328e+13  1136562.0 *
 51) longitude>=-122.4142 9 2.587193e+13  2359389.0 *
 13) neighborhood=Financial District,Marina,Presidio Heights,
     Seacliff 112 6.521045e+13  1403951.0 *
 7) squarefeet>=2119 181 2.213886e+14  1751315.0
 14) neighborhood=Castro-Upper Market,Glen Park,Haight-Ashbury,
     Inner Richmond,Marina,Noe Valley,North Beach,Russian Hill,
     Twin Peaks,West Of Twin Peaks 159 1.032114e+14  1574642.0
```

```

28) month=2008-04-01,2008-06-01,2008-07-01,2008-10-01,
   2009-02-01,2009-03-01,2009-04-01,2009-05-01,
   2009-06-01,2009-07-01 77 2.070744e+13 1310922.0 *
29) month=2008-02-01,2008-03-01,2008-05-01,2008-08-01,
   2008-09-01,2008-11-01,2008-12-01,
   2009-01-01 82 7.212013e+13 1822280.0
58) lotsize< 3305.5 62 3.077240e+13 1598774.0 *
59) lotsize>=3305.5 20 2.864915e+13 2515150.0
118) neighborhood=Glen Park,Inner Richmond,Twin Peaks,
   West Of Twin Peaks 13 1.254738e+13 1962769.0 *
119) neighborhood=Castro-Upper Market,Marina,
   Russian Hill 7 4.768574e+12 3541000.0 *
15) neighborhood=Financial District,Pacific Heights,
   Presidio Heights,Seacliff 22 7.734568e+13 3028182.0
30) lotsize< 3473 12 7.263123e+12 2299500.0 *
31) lotsize>=3473 10 5.606476e+13 3902600.0 *

```

Notice the key on the second line of the output. (Each line contains the node number, description of the split, number of observations under that node in the tree, deviance, and predicted value.) This tree model tells us some obvious things, like that location and size are good predictors of price. Reading a textual description of an `rpart` object is somewhat confusing. The method `plot.rpart` will draw the tree structure in an `rpart` object:

```
plot(x, uniform=FALSE, branch=1, compress=FALSE, nspace,
      margin=0, minbranch=.3, ...)
```

You can label the tree using `text.rpart`:

```
text(x, splits=TRUE, label, FUN=text, all=FALSE,
      pretty=NULL, digits=getOption("digits") - 3, use.n=FALSE,
      fancy=FALSE, fwidth=0.8, fheight=0.8, ...)
```

For both functions, the argument `x` specifies the `rpart` object; the other options control the way the output looks. See the help file for more information about these parameters. As an example, let's plot the tree we just created above:

```
> plot(sf.price.model.rpart, uniform=TRUE, compress=TRUE, lty=3, branch=0.7)
> text(sf.price.model.rpart, all=TRUE, digits=7, use.n=TRUE, cex=0.4, xpd=TRUE)
```

As you can see from [Figure 20-5](#), it's difficult to read a small picture of a big tree. To keep the tree somewhat readable, we have abbreviated neighborhood names to single letters (corresponding to their order in the factor). Sometimes, the function `draw.tree` in the package `maptree` can produce prettier diagrams. See [“Classification Tree Models” on page 478](#) for more details.

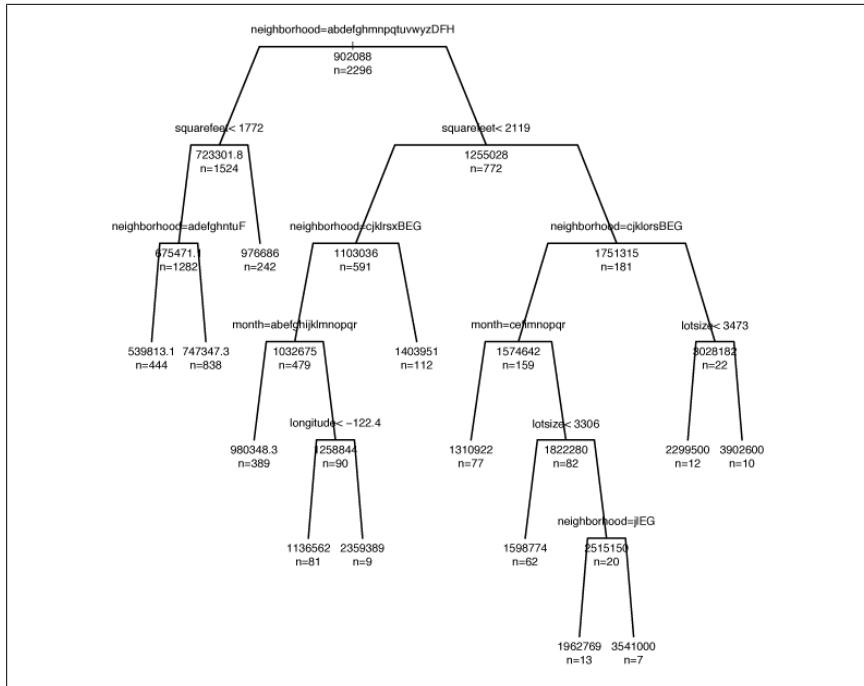


Figure 20-5. rpart tree for the San Francisco home sales model

To predict a value with a tree model, you would start at the top of the tree and follow the tree down, depending on the rules for a specific observation. For example, suppose that we had a property in Pacific Heights with 2,500 square feet of living space and a lot size of 5,000 square feet. We would traverse the tree starting at node 1, then go to node 3, then node 7, then node 15, and, finally, land on node 31. The estimated price of this property would be \$3,902,600.

There are a number of other functions available in the `rpart` package for viewing (or manipulating) tree objects. To view the approximate *r*-square and relative error at each split, use the function `rsq.rpart`. The graphical output is shown in Figure 20-6; here is the output on the R console:

```
> rsq.rpart(sf.price.model.rpart)
```

Regression tree:

```
rpart(formula = price ~ bedrooms + squarefeet + lotsize + latitude +
longitude + neighborhood + month, data = sanfrancisco.home.sales.training)
```

Variables actually used in tree construction:

```
[1] longitude      lotsize      month      neighborhood      squarefeet
```

Root node error: 8.0587e+14/2296 = 3.5099e+11

n= 2296

|    | CP       | nsplit | rel error | xerror  | xstd     |
|----|----------|--------|-----------|---------|----------|
| 1  | 0.179780 | 0      | 1.00000   | 1.00038 | 0.117779 |
| 2  | 0.072261 | 1      | 0.82022   | 0.83652 | 0.105103 |
| 3  | 0.050667 | 2      | 0.74796   | 0.83211 | 0.096150 |
| 4  | 0.022919 | 3      | 0.69729   | 0.80729 | 0.094461 |
| 5  | 0.017395 | 4      | 0.67437   | 0.80907 | 0.096560 |
| 6  | 0.015527 | 5      | 0.65698   | 0.82365 | 0.097687 |
| 7  | 0.015511 | 6      | 0.64145   | 0.81720 | 0.097579 |
| 8  | 0.014321 | 7      | 0.62594   | 0.81461 | 0.097575 |
| 9  | 0.014063 | 9      | 0.59730   | 0.81204 | 0.097598 |
| 10 | 0.011032 | 10     | 0.58323   | 0.81559 | 0.097691 |
| 11 | 0.010000 | 12     | 0.56117   | 0.80271 | 0.096216 |

As you can probably tell, the initial tree was a bit complicated. You can remove nodes where the cost/complexity trade-off isn't great by using the `prune` function:

```
prune(tree, cp, ...)
```

The argument `cp` is a complexity parameter that controls how much to trim the tree. To help choose a complexity parameter, try the function `plotcp`:

```
plotcp(x, minline = TRUE, lty = 3, col = 1,
       upper = c("size", "splits", "none"), ...)
```

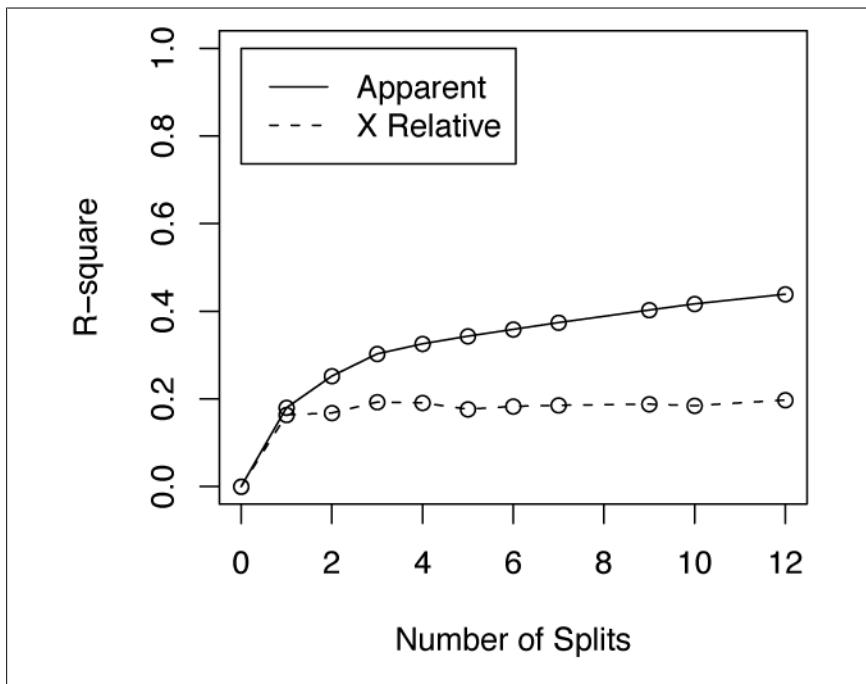


Figure 20-6. Plot from `rsq.rpart(sf.price.model.rpart)`

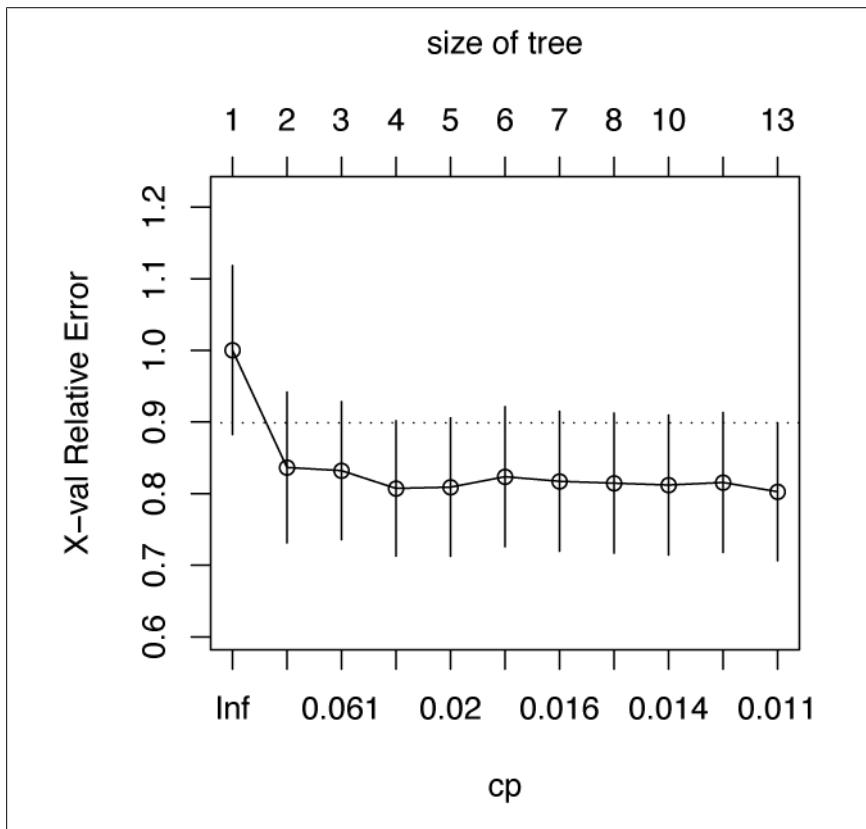
The `plotcp` function plots tree sizes and relative errors for different parameters of the complexity parameter. For the example above, it looks like a value of 0.011 is a

good balance between complexity and performance. Here is the pruned model (see also [Figure 20-7](#)):

```
> prune(sf.price.model.rpart, cp=0.11)
n= 2296

node), split, n, deviance, yval
  * denotes terminal node

1) root 2296 8.058726e+14  902088.0
2) neighborhood=Bayview,Bernal Heights,Chinatown,Crocker Amazon,
   Diamond Heights,Downtown,Excelsior,Inner Sunset,Lakeshore,Mission,
   Nob Hill,Ocean View,Outer Mission,Outer Richmond,Outer Sunset,
   Parkside,Potrero Hill,South Of Market,Visitacion Valley,
   Western Addition 1524 1.850806e+14  723301.8 *
3) neighborhood=Castro-Upper Market,Financial District,Glen Park,
   Haight-Ashbury, Inner Richmond,Marina,Noe Valley,North Beach,
   Pacific Heights,Presidio Heights,Russian Hill,Seacliff,Twin Peaks,
   West Of Twin Peaks 772 4.759124e+14 1255028.0 *
```



*Figure 20-7. Output of plotcp for the sf.prices.rpart model*

And if you’re curious, here is the error of this model on the training and test populations:

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.rpart,
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales.training,
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing,
+   "price")
train.err test,err
443806.8 564986.8
```

The units, incidentally, are dollars.

There is an alternative implementation of CART trees available with R through the `tree` package. It was written by W. N. Venables, one of the authors of [Venable2002]. He notes that `tree` can give more explicit output while running but recommends `rpart` for most users.

### Patient rule induction method

Another technique for building rule-based models is the patient rule induction method (PRIM) algorithm. PRIM doesn’t actually build trees. Instead, it partitions the data into a set of “boxes” (in  $p$  dimensions). The algorithm starts with a box containing all the data and then shrinks the box one side at a time, trying to maximize the average value in the box. After reaching a minimum number of observations in the box, the algorithm tries expanding the box again, as long as it can increase the average value in the box. When the algorithm finds the best initial box, it then repeats the process on the remaining observations, until there are no observations left. The algorithm leads to a set of rules that can be used to predict values.

To try out PRIM in R, there are functions in the library `prim`:

```
prim.box(x, y, box.init=NULL, peel.alpha=0.05, paste.alpha=0.01,
         mass.min=0.05, threshold, pasting=TRUE, verbose=FALSE,
         threshold.type=0)

prim.hdr(prim, threshold, threshold.type)
prim.combine(prim1, prim2)
```

### Bagging for regression

Bagging (or bootstrap aggregation) is a technique for building predictive models based on other models (most commonly trees). The idea of bagging is to use bootstrapping to build a number of different models and then average the results. The weaker models essentially form a committee to vote for a result, which leads to more accurate predictions.

To build regression bagging models in R, you can use the function `bagging` in the `ipred` library:

```
library(ipred)
bagging(formula, data, subset, na.action=na.rpart, ...)
```

The `formula`, `data`, `subset`, and `na.action` arguments work the same way as in most modeling functions. The additional arguments are passed on to the function `ipredbagg`, which does all the work (but doesn’t have a method for formulas):

```
ipredbagg(y, X=NULL, nbagg=25, control=rpart.control(xval=0),
          comb=NULL, coob=FALSE, ns=length(y), keepX = TRUE, ...)
```

You can specify the number of trees to build by `nbagg`, control parameters for `rpart` through `control`, a list of models to use for double-bagging through `comb`, `coob` to indicate if an out-of-bag error rate should be computed, and `ns` to specify the number of observations to draw from the learning sample.

Let's try building a model on the pricing data using bagging. We'll pick 100 `rpart` trees (for fun):

```
> sf.price.model.bagging <- bagging(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training, nbagg=100)
> summary(sf.price.model.bagging)
  Length Class    Mode
y      1034 -none- numeric
X         7  data.frame list
mtrees  100 -none-  list
OOB     1 -none- logical
comb     1 -none- logical
call     4 -none-  call
```

Let's take a quick look at how bagging worked on this data set:

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.bagging,
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales.training,
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing,
+   "price")
train.err test.err
491003.8 582056.5
```

## Boosting for regression

Boosting is a technique that's closely related to bagging. Unlike bagging, the individual models don't all have equal votes. Better models are given stronger votes.

You can find a variety of tools for computing boosting models in R in the package `mboost`. The function `blackboost` builds boosting models from regression trees, `glmboost` from general linear models, and `gamboost` for boosting based on additive models. Here we'll just build a model using regression trees:

```
> library(mboost)
Loading required package: modeltools
Loading required package: stats4
Loading required package: party
Loading required package: grid
Loading required package: coin
Loading required package: mvtnorm
Loading required package: zoo
> sf.price.model.blackboost <- blackboost(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training)
```

Here is a summary of the model object:

```
> summary(sf.price.model.blackboost)
  Length Class      Mode
ensemble     100   -none-    list
fit          2296  -none-    numeric
offset         1   -none-    numeric
ustart        2296  -none-    numeric
risk          100   -none-    numeric
control        8   boost_control  list
family          1   boost_family   S4
response       2296  -none-    numeric
weights        2296  -none-    numeric
update          1   -none-    function
tree_controls   1   TreeControl   S4
data            1   LearningSampleFormula S4
predict         1   -none-    function
call            3   -none-    call
```

And here is a quick evaluation of the performance of this model:

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.blackboost,
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales.training,
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing,
+   "price")
train.err  test.err
1080520  1075810
```

## Random forests for regression

Random forests are another technique for building predictive models using trees. Like boosting and bagging, random forests work by combining a set of other tree models. Unlike boosting and bagging, which use an existing algorithm like CART to build a series of trees from a random sample of the observations in the test data, random forests build trees from a random sample of the columns in the test data.

Here's a description of how the random forest algorithm creates the underlying trees (using variable names from the R implementation):

1. Take a sample of size `sampsize` from the training data.
2. Begin with a single node.
3. Run the following algorithm, starting with the starting node:
  - A. Stop if the number of observations is less than `nodesize`.
  - B. Select `mtry` variables (at random).
  - C. Find the variable and value that does the “best” job splitting the observations. (Specifically, the algorithm uses MSE [mean square error] to measure regression error, and Gini to measure classification error.)
  - D. Split the observations into two nodes.
  - E. Call step A on each of these nodes.

Unlike trees generated by CART, trees generated by random forest aren't pruned; they're just grown to a very deep level.

For regression problems, the estimated value is calculated by averaging the prediction of all the trees in the forest. For classification problems, the prediction is made by predicting the class using each tree in the forest and then outputting the choice that received the most votes.

To build random forest models in R, use the `randomForest` function in the `randomForest` package:

```
library(randomForest)
## S3 method for class 'formula':
randomForest(formula, data=NULL, ..., subset, na.action=na.fail)
## Default S3 method:
randomForest(x, y=NULL, xtest=NULL, ytest=NULL, ntree=500,
            mtry=if (!is.null(y) && !is.factor(y))
              max(floor(ncol(x)/3), 1) else floor(sqrt(ncol(x))),
            replace=TRUE, classwt=NULL, cutoff, strata,
            sampsize = if (replace) nrow(x) else ceiling(.632*nrow(x)),
            nodesize = if (!is.null(y) && !is.factor(y)) 5 else 1,
            importance=FALSE, localImp=FALSE, nPerm=1,
            proximity,
            oob.prox=proximity,
            norm.votes=TRUE, do.trace=FALSE,
            keep.forest=if(is.null(y) && is.null(xtest)), corr.bias=FALSE,
            keep.inbag=FALSE, ...)
```

Unlike some other functions we've seen so far, `randomForest` will fail if called on data with missing observations. So we'll set `na.action=na.omit` to omit NA values. Additionally, `randomForest` cannot handle categorical predictors with more than 32 levels, so we will cut out the `neighborhood` variable:

```
> sf.price.model.randomforest <- randomForest(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training,
+   na.action=na.omit)
```

The `print` method for `randomForest` objects returns some useful information about the fit:

```
> sf.price.model.randomforest

Call:
randomForest(formula = price ~ bedrooms + squarefeet + lotsize +
    latitude + longitude + month,
    data = sanfrancisco.home.sales.training,
    na.action = na.omit)
Type of random forest: regression
Number of trees: 500
No. of variables tried at each split: 2

Mean of squared residuals: 258521431697
% Var explained: 39.78
```

Here is how the model performed:

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.randomforest,
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training),
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing),
```

```

+   "price")
train.err  test.err
241885.2  559461.0

```

As a point of comparison, here are the results of the `rpart` model, also with `NA` values omitted:

```

> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.rpart,
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training),
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing),
+   "price")
train.err  test.err
442839.6  589583.1

```

## MARS

Another popular algorithm for machine learning is multivariate adaptive regression splines, or MARS. MARS works by splitting input variables into multiple *basis functions* and then fitting a linear regression model to those basis functions. The basis functions used by MARS come in pairs:  $f(x) = \{x - t \text{ if } x > t, 0 \text{ otherwise}\}$  and  $g(x) = \{t - x \text{ if } x < t, 0 \text{ otherwise}\}$ . These functions are *piecewise linear* functions. The value  $t$  is called a *knot*.

MARS is closely related to CART. Like CART, it begins by building a large model and then prunes back unneeded terms until the best model is found. The MARS algorithm works by gradually building up a model out of basis functions (or products of basis functions) until it reaches a predetermined depth. This results in an overfitted, overly complex model. Then the algorithm deletes terms from the model, one by one, until it has pared back everything but a constant term. At each stage, the algorithm uses generalized cross-validation (GCV) to measure how well each model fits. Finally, the algorithm returns the model with the best cost/benefit ratio.

To fit a model using MARS in R, use the function `earth` in the package `earth`:

```

library(earth)
earth(formula = stop("no 'formula' arg"),
      data, weights = NULL, wp = NULL, scale.y = (NCOL(y)==1), subset = NULL,
      na.action = na.fail, glm = NULL, trace = 0,
      keepxy = FALSE, nfold=0, stratify=TRUE, ...)

```

Arguments to `earth` include the following.

| Argument | Description   | Default                  |
|----------|---|--------------------------|
| formula  | A formula describing the relationship between the response and the predictor variables.   | stop("no 'formula' arg") |
| data     | A data frame containing the training data.  |                          |
| weights  | An optional vector of weights to use for the fitting data. (It is especially optional, because it is not supported as of <code>earth</code> version 2.3-2.) | NULL                     |
| wp       | A numeric vector of response weights. Must include a value for each column of y.  | NULL                     |
| scale.y  | A numeric value specifying whether to scale y in the forward pass. (See the help file for more information.)  | (NCOL(y)==1)             |

| Argument  | Description  | Default              |
|-----------|--|----------------------|
| subset    | A logical vector specifying which observations from <code>data</code> to include.  | NULL                 |
| na.action | A function specifying how to treat missing values. Only <code>na.fail</code> is currently supported.   | <code>na.fail</code> |
| glm       | A list of arguments to <code>glm</code> .  | NULL                 |
| trace     | A numeric value specifying whether to print a “trace” of the algorithm execution.  | 0                    |
| keepxy    | A logical value specifying whether to keep <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> (or <code>data</code> ), <code>subset</code> , and <code>weights</code> in the model object. (Useful if you plan to use <code>update</code> to modify the model at a later time.) | FALSE                |
| nfold     | A numeric value specifying the number of cross-validation folds.   | 0                    |
| stratify  | A logical value specifying whether to stratify the cross-validation folds.   | TRUE                 |
| ...       | Additional options are passed to <code>earth.fit</code> . There are many, many options available to tune the fitting process. See the help file for <code>earth</code> for more information.   |                      |

The `earth` function is very flexible. By default, `lm` is used to fit models. Note that `glm` can be used instead to allow finer control of the model. The function `earth` can't cope directly with missing values in the data set. To deal with `NA` values, you need to explicitly deal with them in the input data. You could, for example, impute median values or model imputed values. In the example below, I picked the easy solution and just used the `na.omit` function to filter them out.

Let's build an `earth` model on the San Francisco home sales data set. We'll add the `trace=1` option to show some details of the computation:

```
> sf.price.model.earth <- earth(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training), trace=1)
x is a 957 by 54 matrix: 1=bedrooms, 2=squarefeet, 3=latitude,
 4=longitude, 5=neighborhoodBernalHeights, 6=neighborhoodCastro-UpperMarket,
 7=neighborhoodChinatown, 8=neighborhoodCrockerAmazon,
 9=neighborhoodDiamondHeights, 10=neighborhoodDowntown,
 11=neighborhoodExcelsior, 12=neighborhoodFinancialDistrict,
 13=neighborhoodGlenPark, 14=neighborhoodHaight-Ashbury,
 15=neighborhoodInnerRichmond, 16=neighborhoodInnerSunset,
 17=neighborhoodLakeshore, 18=neighborhoodMarina,
 19=neighborhoodMission, 20=neighborhoodNobHill,
 21=neighborhoodNoeValley, 22=neighborhoodNorthBeach,
 23=neighborhoodOceanView, 24=neighborhoodOuterMission,
 25=neighborhoodOuterRichmond, 26=neighborhoodOuterSunset,
 27=neighborhoodPacificHeights, 28=neighborhoodParkside,
 29=neighborhoodPotreroHill, 30=neighborhoodPresidioHeights,
 31=neighborhoodRussianHill, 32=neighborhoodSeacliff,
 33=neighborhoodSouthOfMarket, 34=neighborhoodTwinPeaks,
 35=neighborhoodVisitacionValley, 36=neighborhoodWestOfTwinPeaks,
 37=neighborhoodWesternAddition, 38=month2008-03-01, 39=month2008-04-01,
 40=month2008-05-01, 41=month2008-06-01, 42=month2008-07-01,
 43=month2008-08-01, 44=month2008-09-01, 45=month2008-10-01,
```

```

46=month2008-11-01, 47=month2008-12-01, 48=month2009-01-01,
49=month2009-02-01, 50=month2009-03-01, 51=month2009-04-01,
52=month2009-05-01, 53=month2009-06-01, 54=month2009-07-01
y is a 957 by 1 matrix: 1=price
Forward pass term 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 28,
      30, 32, 34, 36, 38, 40, 42, 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 54, 56, 58,
      60, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 72, 74, 76, 78, 80
Reached delta RSq threshold (DeltaRSq 0.000861741 < 0.001)
After forward pass GRSq 0.4918 RSq 0.581
Prune method "backward" penalty 2 nprune 44: selected 36 of 44 terms, and 26
      of 54 predictors
After backward pass GRSq 0.5021 RSq 0.5724

```

The `earth` object has an informative `print` method, showing the function call and statistics about the model fit:

```

> sf.price.model.earth
Selected 31 of 41 terms, and 22 of 55 predictors
Importance: squarefeet, neighborhoodPresidioHeights,
      latitude, neighborhoodSeacliff, neighborhoodNoeValley,
      neighborhoodCastro-UpperMarket, neighborhoodNobHill,
      lotsize, month2008-07-01, neighborhoodWesternAddition, ...
Number of terms at each degree of interaction: 1 30 (additive model)
GCV 216647913449    RSS 1.817434e+14    GRSq 0.5162424    RSq 0.5750596

```

The `summary` method will show the basis functions for the fitted model in addition to information about the fit:

```

> summary(sf.price.model.earth)
Call: earth(formula=price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
      longitude+neighborhood+month,
      data=na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training))

```

|                                | coefficients |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| (Intercept)                    | 1452882      |
| h(bedrooms-3)                  | 130018       |
| h(bedrooms-5)                  | -186130      |
| h(squarefeet-2690)             | 81           |
| h(2690-squarefeet)             | -178         |
| h(lotsize-2495)                | 183          |
| h(lotsize-3672)                | -141         |
| h(latitude-37.7775)            | -112301793   |
| h(37.7775-latitude)            | -7931270     |
| h(latitude-37.7827)            | 420380414    |
| h(latitude-37.7888)            | -188726623   |
| h(latitude-37.8015)            | -356738902   |
| h(longitude- -122.464)         | -6056771     |
| h(-122.438-longitude)          | -6536227     |
| neighborhoodCastro-UpperMarket | 338549       |
| neighborhoodChinatown          | -1121365     |
| neighborhoodInnerSunset        | -188192      |
| neighborhoodMarina             | -2000574     |
| neighborhoodNobHill            | -2176350     |
| neighborhoodNoeValley          | 368772       |
| neighborhoodNorthBeach         | -2395955     |
| neighborhoodPacificHeights     | -1108284     |
| neighborhoodPresidioHeights    | 1146964      |

```

neighborhoodRussianHill           -1857710
neighborhoodSeacliff              2422127
neighborhoodWesternAddition      -442262
month2008-03-01                  181640
month2008-04-01                  297754
month2008-05-01                  187684
month2008-07-01                  -322801
month2008-10-01                  115435

Selected 31 of 41 terms, and 22 of 55 predictors
Importance: squarefeet, neighborhoodPresidioHeights, latitude,
neighborhoodSeacliff, neighborhoodNoeValley,
neighborhoodCastro-UpperMarket, neighborhoodNobHill,
lotsize, month2008-07-01, neighborhoodWesternAddition, ...
Number of terms at each degree of interaction: 1 30 (additive model)
GCV 216647913449    RSS 1.817434e+14   GRSq 0.5162424   RSq 0.5750596

```

The output of `summary` includes a short synopsis of variable importance in the model. You can use the function `evimp` to return a matrix showing the relative importance of variables in the model:

```
evimp(obj, trim=TRUE, sqrt.=FALSE)
```

The argument `obj` specifies an `earth` object, `trim` specifies whether to delete rows in the matrix for variables that don't appear in the fitted model, and `sqrt` specifies whether to take the square root of the GCV and RSS importances before normalizing them. For the example above, here is the output:

```

> evimp(sf.price.model.earth)
      col used nsubsets          gcv
squarefeet          2     1       30 100.000000000 1
neighborhoodPresidioHeights 31     1       29 62.71464260 1
latitude            4     1       28 45.85760472 1
neighborhoodSeacliff 33     1       27 33.94468291 1
neighborhoodNoeValley 22     1       25 22.55538880 1
neighborhoodCastro-UpperMarket 7     1       24 18.84206296 1
neighborhoodNobHill   21     1       23 14.79044745 1
lotsize              3     1       21 10.94876414 1
month2008-07-01     43     1       20 9.54292889 1
neighborhoodWesternAddition 38     1       19 7.47060804 1
longitude            5     1       18 6.37068263 1
neighborhoodNorthBeach 23     1       16 4.64098864 1
neighborhoodPacificHeights 28     1       14 3.21207679 1
neighborhoodMarina   19     1       13 3.25260354 0
neighborhoodRussianHill 32     1       12 3.02881439 1
month2008-04-01     40     1       10 2.22407575 1
bedrooms             1     1        8 1.20894174 1
neighborhoodInnerSunset 17     1        5 0.54773450 1
month2008-03-01     39     1        4 0.38402626 1
neighborhoodChinatown  8     1        3 0.24940165 1
month2008-10-01     46     1        2 0.15317304 1
month2008-05-01     41     1        1 0.09138073 1

      rss
squarefeet          100.0000000 1
neighborhoodPresidioHeights 65.9412651 1
latitude            50.3490370 1

```

|                                |            |   |
|--------------------------------|------------|---|
| neighborhoodSeacliff           | 39.2669043 | 1 |
| neighborhoodNoeValley          | 28.3043535 | 1 |
| neighborhoodCastro-UpperMarket | 24.6223129 | 1 |
| neighborhoodNobHill            | 20.6738425 | 1 |
| lotsize                        | 16.5523065 | 1 |
| month2008-07-01                | 14.9572215 | 1 |
| neighborhoodWesternAddition    | 12.8021914 | 1 |
| longitude                      | 11.4928253 | 1 |
| neighborhoodNorthBeach         | 9.2983004  | 1 |
| neighborhoodPacificHeights     | 7.3843377  | 1 |
| neighborhoodMarina             | 7.0666997  | 1 |
| neighborhoodRussianHill        | 6.5297824  | 1 |
| month2008-04-01                | 5.1687163  | 1 |
| bedrooms                       | 3.6503604  | 1 |
| neighborhoodInnerSunset        | 2.1002700  | 1 |
| month2008-03-01                | 1.6337090  | 1 |
| neighborhoodChinatown          | 1.1922930  | 1 |
| month2008-10-01                | 0.7831185  | 1 |
| month2008-05-01                | 0.4026390  | 1 |

The function `plot.earth` will plot model selection, cumulative distribution of residuals, residuals versus fitted values, and the residual Q-Q plot for an `earth` object:

```
> plot(sf.price.model.earth)
```

The output of this call is shown in [Figure 20-8](#). There are many options for this function that control the output; see the help file for more information. Another useful function for looking at `earth` objects is `plotmo`:

```
> plotmo(sf.price.model.earth)
```

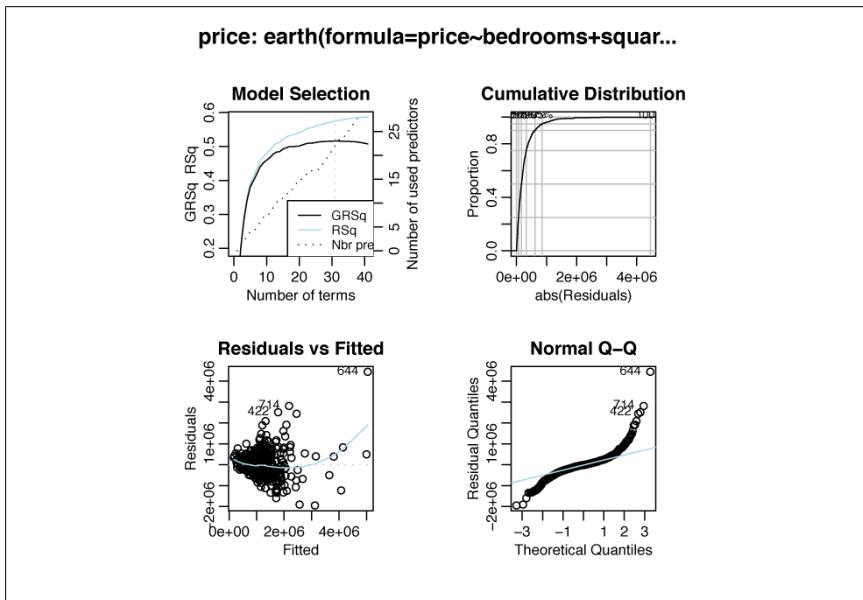


Figure 20-8. Output of `plot.earth`

The `plotmo` function plots the predicted model response when varying one or two predictors while holding other predictors constant. The output of `plotmo` for the San Francisco home sales data set is shown in Figure 20-9.

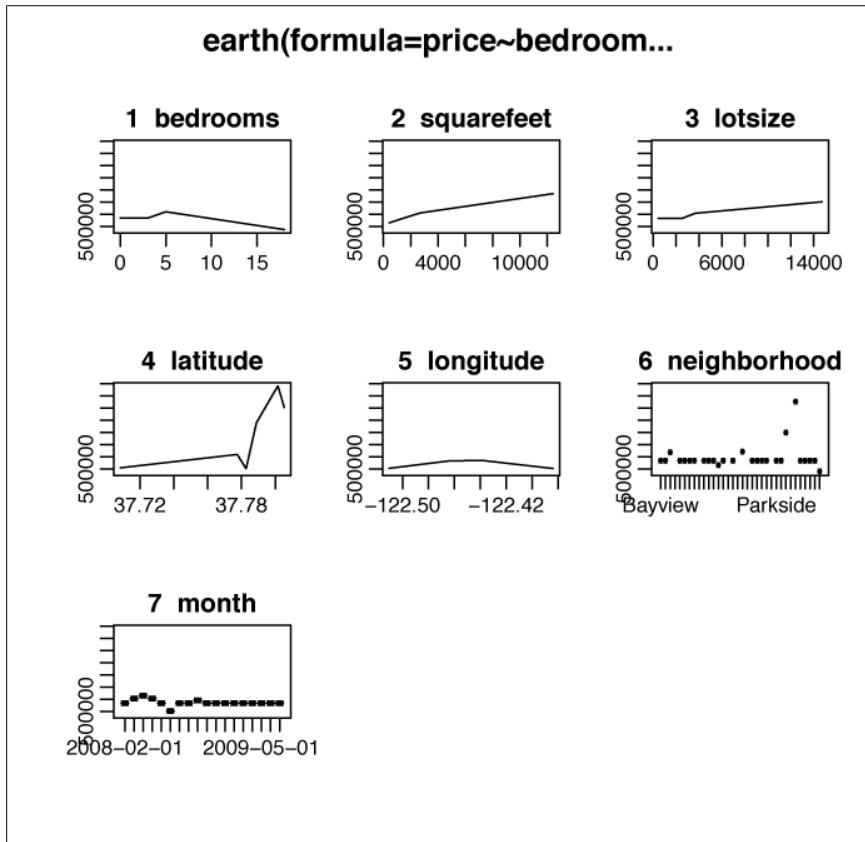


Figure 20-9. Output of `plotmo`

For the fun of it, let's look at the predictions from `earth`:

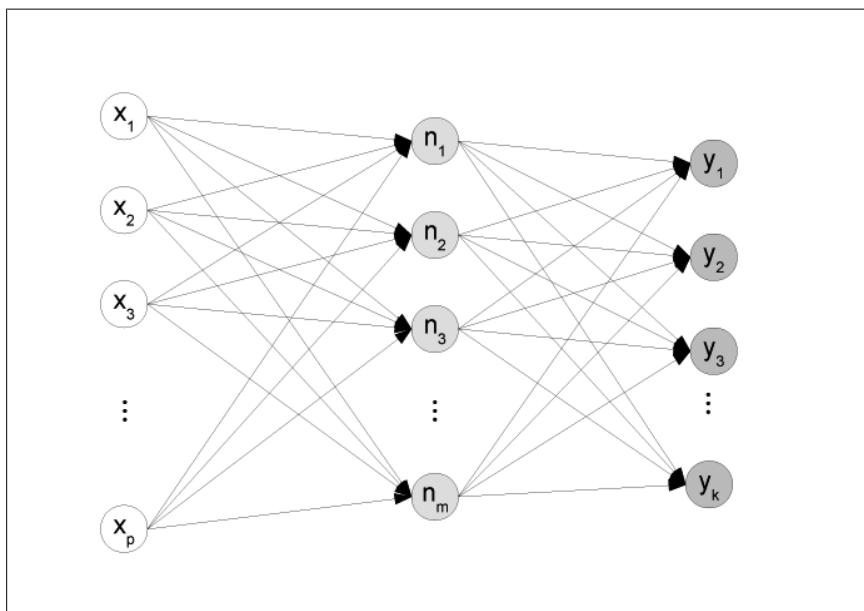
```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.earth,
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training),
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing),
+   "price")
train.err test,err
435786.1 535941.5
```

## Neural Networks

Neural networks are a very popular type of statistical model. Neural networks were originally designed to approximate how neurons work in the human brain; much of the original research on neural networks came from artificial intelligence researchers. Neural networks are very flexible and can be used to model a large number of dif-

ferent problems. By changing the structure of neural networks, it's possible to model some very complicated nonlinear relationships. Neural networks are so popular that there are entire academic journals devoted to them (such as *Neural Networks*, published by Elsevier).

The base distribution of R includes an implementation of one of the simplest types of neural networks: single-hidden-layer neural networks. Even this simple form of neural network can be used to model some very complicated relationships in data sets. [Figure 20-10](#) is a graphical representation of what these neural networks look like. As you can see, each input value feeds into each “hidden layer” node. The output of each hidden-layer node feeds into each output node. What the modeling function actually does is to estimate the weights for each input into each hidden node and output node.



*Figure 20-10. Single-hidden-layer, feed-forward neural network*

The diagram omits two things: bias units and skip layer connectors. A *bias unit* is just a constant input term; it lets a constant term be mixed into each unit. *Skip layer connections* allow values from the inputs to be mixed into the outputs, skipping over the hidden layer. Both of these additions are included in the R implementation.

In equation form, here is the formula for neural network models:

$$y_k = g_0 \left( \alpha_k + \sum_{i=1}^{i=m} w_{i,k}, g_i \left( \alpha_i + \sum_{j=1}^{j=p} w_{j,i} x_j \right) \right)$$

The function  $g_i$  used for the hidden nodes is the sigmoid function:  $\sigma(x) = e^x/(1 + e^x)$ . The function used for the output nodes is usually the identity function for regression, and the softmax function for classification. (We'll discuss the softmax function in “[Neural Networks](#)” on page 482.) For classification models, there are  $k$  outputs corresponding to the different levels. For regression models, there is only one output node.

To fit neural network models, use the function `nnet` in the package `nnet`:

```
library(nnet)
## S3 method for class 'formula':
nnet(formula, data, weights, ...,
     subset, na.action, contrasts = NULL)

## Default S3 method:
nnet(x, y, weights, size, Wts, mask,
     linout = FALSE, entropy = FALSE, softmax = FALSE,
     censored = FALSE, skip = FALSE, rang = 0.7, decay = 0,
     maxit = 100, Hess = FALSE, trace = TRUE, MaxNWts = 1000,
     abstol = 1.0e-4, reltol = 1.0e-8, ...)
```

Arguments to `nnet` include the following.

| Argument               | Description  | Default                           |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula describing the relationship between the response and the predictor variables.  |                                   |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame containing the training data.   |                                   |
| <code>weights</code>   | An optional vector of weights to use for the training data.  |                                   |
| <code>...</code>       | Additional arguments passed to other functions (such as the <code>nnet.default</code> if using the <code>nnet</code> method, or <code>optim</code> ).  |                                   |
| <code>subset</code>    | An optional vector specifying the subset of observations to use in fitting the model.  |                                   |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function specifying how to treat missing values.   |                                   |
| <code>contrasts</code> | A list of factors to use for factors that appear in the model.   | NULL                              |
| <code>size</code>      | Number of units in the hidden layer.   |                                   |
| <code>Wts</code>       | Initial parameter vector.  | Randomly chosen, if not specified |
| <code>mask</code>      | A logical vector indicating which parameters should be optimized.  | All parameters                    |
| <code>linout</code>    | Use <code>linout=FALSE</code> for logistic output units, <code>linout=TRUE</code> for linear units.  | FALSE                             |
| <code>entropy</code>   | A logical value specifying whether to use entropy/maximum conditional likelihood fitting.  | FALSE                             |
| <code>softmax</code>   | A logical value specifying whether to use a softmax/log-linear model and maximum conditional likelihood fitting.   | FALSE                             |
| <code>censored</code>  | A logical value specifying whether to treat the input data as censored data. (By default, a response variable value of <code>c(1, 0, 1)</code> means “both classes 1 and 3.” If we treat the data as censored, then <code>c(1, 0, 1)</code> is interpreted to mean “not 2, but possibly 1 or 3.” | FALSE                             |

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
| skip     | A logical value specifying whether to add skip-layer connections from input to output.   | FALSE   |
| rang     | A numeric value specifying the range for initial random weights.<br>Weights are chosen between -rang and rang.                         | 0.7     |
| decay    | A numeric parameter for weight decay.  | 0       |
| maxit    | Maximum number of iterations.  | 100     |
| Hess     | A logical value specifying whether to return the Hessian of fit.   | FALSE   |
| trace    | A logical value specifying whether to print out a “trace” as nnet is running.  | TRUE    |
| maxNWts  | A numeric value specifying the maximum number of weights.  | 1000    |
| abstol   | A numeric value specifying absolute tolerance. (Fitting process halts if the fit criterion falls below abstol.)                        | 1.0e-4  |
| reltol   | A numeric value specifying relative tolerance. (Fitting process halts if the algorithm can't reduce the error by reltol in each step.) | 1.0e-8  |

There is no simple, closed-form solution for finding the optimal weights for a neural network model. So the `nnet` function uses the Broyden-Fletcher-Goldfarb-Shanno (BFGS) optimization method of the `optim` function to fit the model.

Let's try `nnet` on the San Francisco home sales data set. I had to play with the parameters a little bit to get a decent fit. I settled on 12 hidden units, linear outputs (which is appropriate for regression), skip connections, and a decay of 0.025:

```
> sf.price.model.nnet <- nnet(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training, size=12,
+   skip=TRUE, linout=TRUE, decay=0.025, na.action=na.omit)
# weights: 740
initial  value 1387941951981143.500000
iter  10 value 292963198488371.437500
iter  20 value 235738652534232.968750
iter  30 value 215547308140618.656250
iter  40 value 212019186628667.375000
iter  50 value 210632523063203.562500
iter  60 value 208381505485842.656250
iter  70 value 207265136422489.750000
iter  80 value 207023188781434.906250
iter  90 value 206897724524820.937500
iter 100 value 206849625163830.156250
final  value 206849625163830.156250
stopped after 100 iterations
```

To view the model, you can use the `print` or `summary` methods. Neither is particularly informative, though the `summary` method will show weights for all the units. Here is a small portion of the output for `summary` (the omitted portion is replaced with an ellipsis):

```
> summary(sf.price.model.nnet)
a 55-12-1 network with 740 weights
options were - skip-layer connections linear output units decay=0.025
  b->h1    i1->h1    i2->h1    i3->h1    i4->h1    i5->h1
  12.59      9.83   21398.35   29597.88    478.93   -1553.28
  i6->h1    i7->h1    i8->h1    i9->h1    i10->h1   i11->h1
  -0.15     -0.27      0.34     -0.05     -0.31      0.16
  ...
...
```

Here's how this model performed:

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.nnet,
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training),
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing),
+   "price")
train.err test.err
447567.2 566056.4
```

For more complex neural networks (such as networks with multiple hidden layers), see the packages `AMORE`, `neural`, and `neuralnet`.

## Project Pursuit Regression

Projection pursuit regression is another very general model for representing non-linear relationships. Projection pursuit models have the form:

$$f(X) = \sum_{m=1}^M g_m(\omega_m^T X)$$

The functions  $g_m$  are called *ridge functions*. The project pursuit algorithm tries to optimize parameters for the parameters  $\omega_m$  by trying to minimize the sum of the residuals. In equation form:

$$\min_{g_m, \omega_m} \left( \sum_{i=1}^N \left[ y_i - \sum_{m=1}^M g_m(\omega_m^T x_i) \right] \right)$$

Project pursuit regression is closely related to the neural network models that we saw above. (Note the similar form of the equations.) If we were to use the sigmoid function for the ridge functions  $g_m$ , projection pursuit would be identical to a neural network. In practice, projection pursuit regression is usually used with some type of smoothing method for the ridge functions. The default in R is to use Friedman's supersmoother function. (This function is actually pretty complicated and chooses the best of three relationships to pick the best smoothing function. See the help file for `supsmu` for more details. Note that this function finds the best smoother for the input data, not the smoother that leads to the best model.)

To use projection pursuit regression in R, use the function `ppr`:

```
## S3 method for class 'formula':
ppr(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
```

```

contrasts = NULL, ... , model = FALSE)

## Default S3 method:
ppr(x, y, weights = rep(1,n),
    ww = rep(1,q), nterms, max.terms = nterms, optlevel = 2,
    sm.method = c("supsmu", "spline", "gcv spline"),
    bass = 0, span = 0, df = 5, gcvpen = 1, ...)

```

Arguments to ppr include the following.

| Argument                            | Description  | Default   |
|-------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| formula/data/sub-set/na.action, x/y | Specifies the data to use for modeling, depending on the form of the function.   |           |
| weights                             | A vector of weights for each case.   |           |
| contrasts                           | A list specifying the contrasts to use for factors.  | NULL      |
| model                               | A logical value indicating whether to return the model frame.  | FALSE     |
| ww                                  | A vector of weights for each response.   | rep(1, q) |
| nterms                              | Number of terms to include in the final model.   |           |
| max.terms                           | Maximum number of terms to choose from when building the model.  | nterms    |
| optlevel                            | An integer value between 0 and 3, which determines how optimization is done. See the help file for more information.   | 2         |
| sm.method                           | A character value specifying the method used for smoothing the ridge functions. Specify sm.method="supsmu" for Friedman's supersmoother, sm.method="spline" to use the code from smooth.spline, or sm.method="gcv spline" to choose the smoothing method with gcv. | "supsmu"  |
| bass                                | When sm.method="supsmu", a numeric value specifying the "bass" tone control for the supersmoother algorithm.   | 0         |
| span                                | When sm.method="supsmu", a numeric value specifying the "span" control for the supersmoother.  | 0         |
| df                                  | When sm.method="spline", specifies the degrees of freedom for the spline function.   | 5         |
| gcvpen                              | When sm.method="gcv spline", a numeric value specifying the penalty for each degree of freedom.  | 1         |
| ...                                 |  |           |

Let's try projection pursuit regression on the home sales data:

```

> sf.price.model.ppr <- ppr(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training, nterms=20)
> sf.price.model.ppr
Call:
ppr(formula = price ~ bedrooms + squarefeet + lotsize + latitude +
    longitude + neighborhood + month,
    data = sanfrancisco.home.sales.training,
    nterms = 20)

```

```
Goodness of fit:  
 20 terms  
1.532615e+13
```

The `summary` function for `ppr` models prints out an enormous amount of information, including the function call, goodness-of-fit measurement, projection pursuit vectors, and coefficients of ridge terms; I have omitted the output from the book to save space.

You can plot the ridge functions from a `ppr` model using the `plot` function. To plot them all at the same time, I used the graphical parameter `mfcoll=c(4, 4)` to plot them on a  $4 \times 4$  grid. (I also narrowed the margins to make them easier to read.)

```
par(mfcoll=c(4,4), mar=c(2.5,2.5,1.5,1.5))  
plot(sf.price.model.ppr)
```

The ridge functions are shown in [Figure 20-11](#). I picked 12 explanatory variables, which seemed to do best on the validation data (though not on the training data):

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.ppr,  
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training),  
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing),  
+   "price")  
train.err test.err  
194884.8 585613.9
```

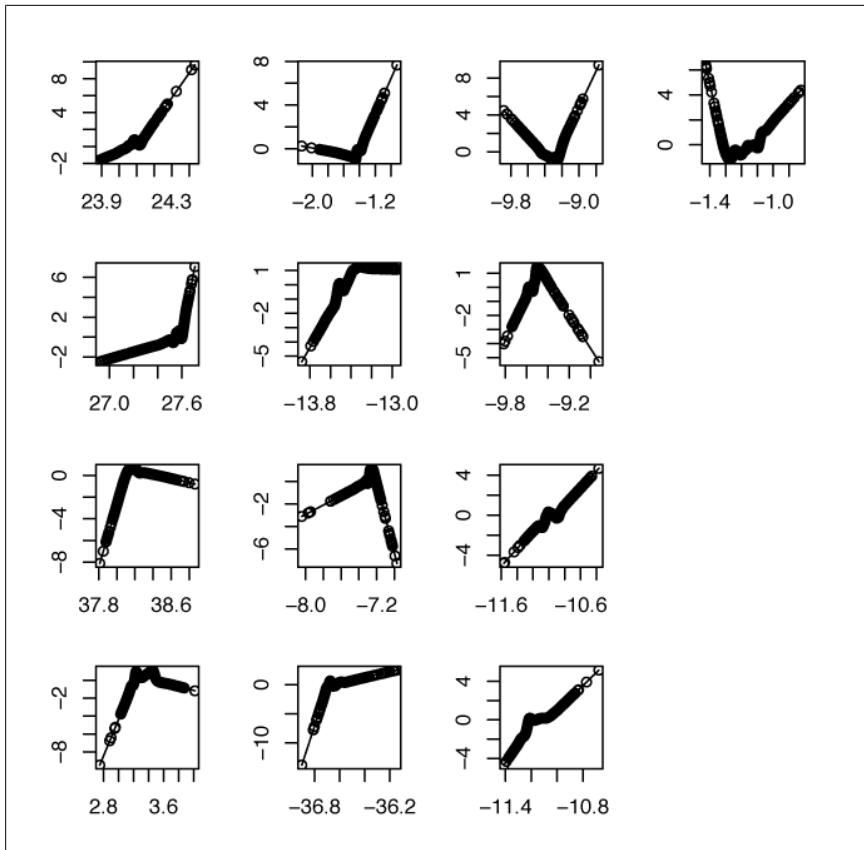


Figure 20-11. Ridge functions from the projection pursuit model

## Generalized Additive Models

Generalized additive models are another regression model technique for modeling complicated relationships in high-dimensionality data sets. Generalized additive models have the following form:

$$Y = \alpha + \sum_{j=1}^p f_j(X_j) + \varepsilon$$

Notice that each predictor variable  $x_j$  is first processed by a function  $f_j$  and is then used in a linear model. The generalized additive model algorithm finds the form of the functions  $f$ . These functions are often called *basis functions*.

The simplest way to fit generalized additive models in R is through the function `gam` in the library `gam`:

```
gam(formula, family = gaussian, data, weights, subset, na.action,
    start, etastart, mustart, control = gam.control(...),
    model=FALSE, method, x=FALSE, y=TRUE, ...)
```

This implementation is similar to the version from S and includes support for both local linear regression and smoothing spline basis functions. The `gam` package currently includes two different types of basis functions: smoothing splines and local regression. The `gam` function uses a back-fitting method to estimate parameters for the basis functions and also estimates weights for the different terms in the model using penalized residual sum of squares.

When using the `gam` function to specify a model, you need to specify which type of basis function to use for which term. For example, suppose that you wanted to fit a model where the response variable was `y` and the predictors were `u`, `v`, `w`, and `x`. To specify a model with smoothing functions for `u` and `v`, a local regression term for `w`, and an identity basis function for `x`, you would specify the formula as `y~s(u)+s(v)+lo(w)+x`.

Here is a detailed description of the arguments to `gam`.

| Argument                                      | Description   | Default  |
|---|---|--|
| <code>formula</code>                          | A <code>gam</code> formula specifying the form of the model. (See the help files for <code>s</code> and <code>lo</code> for more information on how to specify options for the basis functions.)        |  |
| <code>family</code>                           | A family object specifying the distribution and link function. See “Generalized Linear Models” on page 421 for a list of families.  | <code>gaussian()</code>  |
| <code>data</code>                             | A data frame containing the data to use for fitting.  | <code>list</code>  |
| <code>weights</code>                          | An optional numeric vector of weights for the input data.   | <code>NULL</code>  |
| <code>subset</code>                           | An optional vector specifying the subset of observations to use in fitting the model.   | <code>NULL</code>  |
| <code>na.action</code>                        | A function that indicates how to deal with missing values.  | <code>options("na.action")</code> , which is <code>na.omit</code> by default |
| <code>offset<br/>(through<br/>gam.fit)</code> | A numeric value specifying an a priori known component to include in the additive predictor during fitting.   | <code>NULL</code>  |
| <code>start</code>                            | Starting values for the parameters in the additive predictors.  |  |
| <code>etastart</code>                         | Starting values for the additive predictors.  |  |
| <code>mustart</code>                          | Starting values for the vector of means.  |  |
| <code>control</code>                          | A list of parameters for controlling the fitting process. Use the function <code>gam.control</code> to generate a suitable list (and see the help file for that function to get the tuning parameters). | <code>gam.control()</code>   |
| <code>model</code>                            | A logical value indicating whether the model frame should be included in the returned object.   | <code>FALSE</code>   |
| <code>method</code>                           | A character value specifying the method that should be used to fit the parametric part of the model. The only allowed values are <code>method="glm.fit"</code> (which uses iteratively reweigh-         | <code>NULL</code>  |

| Argument | Description  | Default |
|----------|--|---------|
|          | ted least squares) or method="model.frame" (which does nothing except return the model frame).     |         |
| x        | A logical value specifying whether to return the $X$ matrix (the predictors) with the model frame. | FALSE   |
| y        | A logical value specifying whether to return the $Y$ vector (the response) with the model frame.   | TRUE    |
| ...      | Additional parameters passed to other methods (particularly, gam.fit).                             |         |

In R, there is an alternative implementation of generalized additive models available through the function `gam` in the package `mgcv`:

```
library(mgcv)
gam(formula,family=gaussian(),data=list(),weights=NULL,subset=NULL,
na.action,offset=NULL,method="GCV.Cp",
optimizer=c("outer","newton"),control=gam.control(),scale=0,
select=FALSE,knots=NULL,sp=NULL,min.sp=NULL,H=NULL,gamma=1,
fit=TRUE,paraPen=NULL,G=NULL,in.out,...)
```

This function allows a variety of different basis functions to be used: thin-plate regression splines (the default), cubic regression splines, and p-splines. The alternative `gam` function will estimate parameters for the basis functions as part of the fitting process using penalized likelihood maximization. The `gam` function in the `mgcv` package has many more options than the `gam` function in the `gam` package, but it is also a lot more complicated. See the help files in the `mgcv` package for more on the technical differences between the two packages.

## Support Vector Machines

Support vector machines (SVMs) are a fairly recent algorithm for nonlinear models. They are a lot more difficult to explain to nonmathematicians than most statistical modeling algorithms. Explaining how SVMs work in detail is beyond the scope of this book, but here's a quick synopsis:

- SVMs don't rely on all the underlying data to train the model. Only some observations (called the *support vectors*) are used. This makes SVMs somewhat resistant to outliers (like robust regression techniques) when used for regression. (It's also possible to use SVMs in the opposite way: to detect anomalies in the data.) You can control the range of values considered through the insensitive-loss function parameter `epsilon`.
- SVMs use a nonlinear transformation of the input data (like the basis functions in additive models or kernels in kernel methods). You can control the type of kernel used in SVMs through the parameter `kernel`.
- The final SVM model is fitted using a standard regression, with maximum likelihood estimates.

SVMs are black-box models; it's difficult to learn anything about a problem by looking at the parameters from a fitted SVM model. However, SVMs have become

very popular, and many people have found that SVMs perform well in real-world situations. (An interesting side note is that SVMs are included as part of the Oracle Data Mining software, while many other algorithms are not.)

In R, SVMs are available in the library `e1071`,<sup>7</sup> through the function `svm`:

```
library(e1071)
## S3 method for class 'formula':
svm(formula, data = NULL, ..., subset, na.action =
na.omit, scale = TRUE)
## Default S3 method:
svm(x, y = NULL, scale = TRUE, type = NULL, kernel =
"radial", degree = 3, gamma = if (is.vector(x)) 1 else 1 / ncol(x),
coef0 = 0, cost = 1, nu = 0.5,
class.weights = NULL, cachesize = 40, tolerance = 0.001, epsilon = 0.1,
shrinking = TRUE, cross = 0, probability = FALSE, fitted = TRUE,
..., subset, na.action = na.omit)
```

Other implementations are available through the `ksvm` and `lssvm` functions in the `kernlab` library, `svmlight` in the `klaR` library, and `svmpath` in the `svmpath` library.

Let's try building an `svm` model for the home sales data:

```
> sf.price.model.svm <- svm(
+   price~bedrooms+squarefeet+lotsize+latitude+
+   longitude+neighborhood+month,
+   data=sanfrancisco.home.sales.training)
```

Here is how the model performed:

```
> calculate_rms_error(sf.price.model.svm,
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.training),
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales.testing),
+   "price")
train.err  test.err
518647.9  641039.5
```

7. Incidentally, this is, by far, the worst-named package available on CRAN. It's named for a class given by the Department of Statistics, TU Wien. The package contains a number of very useful functions: SVM classifiers, algorithms for tuning other modeling functions, naive Bayes classifiers, and some other useful functions. It really should be called something like "veryusefulstatisticalfunctions."





# 21

## Classification Models

In [Chapter 20](#), I provided an overview of R’s statistical modeling software for regression problems. However, not all problems can be solved by predicting a continuous numerical quantity like a drug dose, or a person’s wage, or the value of a customer. Often, an analyst’s goal is to classify an item into a category or maybe to estimate the probability that an item belongs to a certain category. Models that describe this relationship are called *classification models*.

This chapter gives an overview of R’s statistical modeling software for linear classification models.

### Linear Classification Models

In this section, we’ll look at a few popular linear classification models.

#### Logistic Regression

Suppose that you were trying to estimate the probability of a certain outcome (which we’ll call  $A$ ) for a categorical variable with two values. You could try to predict the probability of  $A$  as a linear function of the predictor variables, assuming  $y = c_0 + c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + \dots + c_nx_n = \Pr(A)$ . The problem with this approach is that the value of  $y$  is unconstrained; probabilities are valid only for values between 0 and 1. A good approach for dealing with this problem is to pick a function for  $y$  that varies between 0 and 1 for all possible predictor values. If we were to use that function as a link function in a general linear model, then we could build a model that estimates the probability of different outcomes. That is the idea behind logistic regression.

In a logistic regression, the relationship between the predictor variables and the probability that an observation is a member of a given class is given by the logistic function:

$$\Pr(A) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta}}$$

The logit function (which is used as the link function) is:

$$\text{logit}(\Pr(A)) = \ln\left(\frac{\Pr(A)}{1 - \Pr(A)}\right) = \eta$$

Let's take a look at a specific example of logistic regression. In particular, let's look at the field goal data set. Each time a kicker attempts a field goal, there is a chance that the goal will be successful and a chance that it will fail. The probability varies according to distance; attempts closer to the end zone are more likely to be successful. To model this relationship, we'll try to use a logistic regression. To begin, let's load the data and create a new binary variable for field goals that are either good or bad:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(field.goals)
> field.goals.forlr <- transform(field.goals,
+   good=as.factor(ifelse(play.type=="FG good","good","bad")))
```

Let's take a quick look at the percentage of good field goals by distance. We'll start by tabulating the results with the `table` function:

```
> field.goals.table <- table(field.goals.forlr$good,
+   field.goals.forlr$yards)
> field.goals.table
```

|      | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 |
|------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| bad  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 3  | 5  | 5  | 2  | 6  | 7  | 5  | 3  | 0  | 4  | 3  | 11 |    |
| good | 1  | 12 | 24 | 28 | 24 | 29 | 30 | 18 | 27 | 22 | 26 | 32 | 22 | 21 | 30 | 31 | 21 | 25 | 20 | 23 | 29 |

|      | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55 | 56 | 57 | 58 | 59 |
|------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| bad  | 6  | 7  | 5  | 6  | 11 | 5  | 9  | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 5  | 8  | 11 | 10 | 3  | 1  | 2  | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| good | 35 | 27 | 32 | 21 | 15 | 24 | 16 | 15 | 26 | 18 | 14 | 11 | 9  | 12 | 10 | 2  | 1  | 3  | 0  | 1  | 0  |

|      | 60 | 61 | 62 |
|------|----|----|----|
| bad  | 1  | 1  | 1  |
| good | 0  | 0  | 0  |

We'll also plot the results (as percentages):

```
> plot(colnames(field.goals.table),
+   field.goals.table["good",]/
+     (field.goals.table["bad",] +
+      field.goals.table["good",]),
+   xlab="Distance (Yards)", ylab="Percent Good")
```

The resulting plot is shown in [Figure 21-1](#). As you can see, field goal percentage tapers off linearly between about 25 and 55 yards (with a few outliers at the end).

Each individual field goal attempt corresponds to a Bernoulli trial; the number of successful field goals at each position on the field will be given by a binomial distribution. So we specify `family="binomial"` when calling `glm`. To model the probability of a successful field goal using a logistic regression, we would make the following call to `glm`:

```
> field.goals.mdl <- glm(formula=good~yards,
+   data=field.goals.forlr,
+   family="binomial")
```

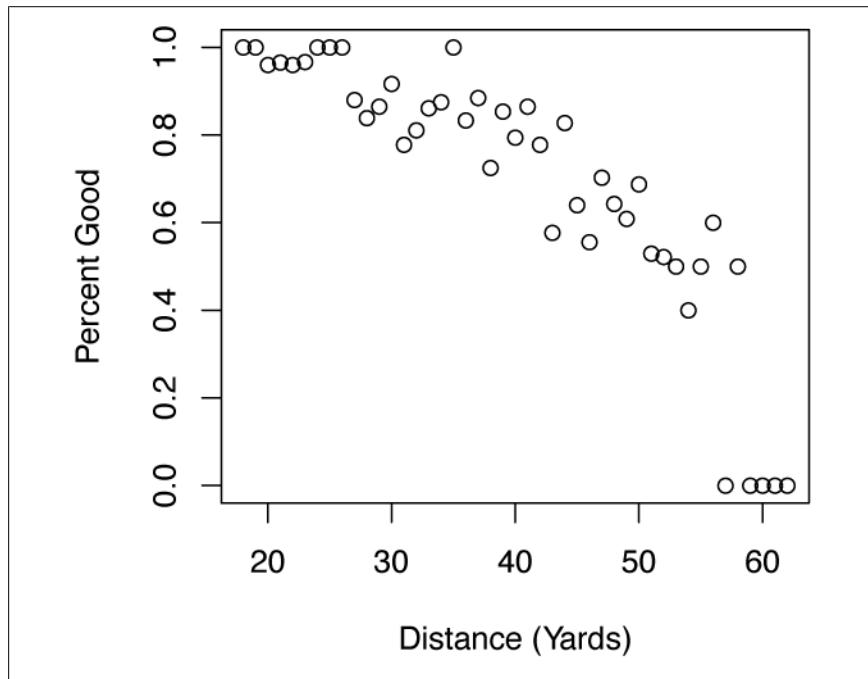


Figure 21-1. Field goal percentage by distance during the 2005 NFL season

Just like `lm`, the `glm` function returns no results by default. The `print` method will show some details about the model fit:

```
> field.goals.mdl

Call: glm(formula = good ~ yards, family = "binomial",
          data = field.goals.forlr)

Coefficients:
(Intercept)      yards
      5.17886     -0.09726

Degrees of Freedom: 981 Total (i.e. Null);  980 Residual
Null Deviance:    978.9
Residual Deviance: 861.2 AIC: 865.2
```

And, as with `lm`, you can get more detailed results about the model object with the `summary` method:

```
> summary(field.goals.mdl)

Call:
glm(formula = good ~ yards, family = "binomial", data = field.goals.forlr)

Deviance Residuals:
    Min      1Q  Median      3Q     Max 
-2.5582  0.2916  0.4664  0.6979  1.3790 

Coefficients:
            Estimate Std. Error z value Pr(>|z|)    
(Intercept) 5.178856   0.416201 12.443 <2e-16 ***  
yards       -0.097261   0.009892 -9.832 <2e-16 ***  
---
Signif. codes:  0 ‘***’ 0.001 ‘**’ 0.01 ‘*’ 0.05 ‘.’ 0.1 ‘ ’ 1

(Dispersion parameter for binomial family taken to be 1)

Null deviance: 978.90 on 981 degrees of freedom
Residual deviance: 861.22 on 980 degrees of freedom
AIC: 865.22

Number of Fisher Scoring iterations: 5
```

Let's take a quick look at how well this model fits the data. First, let's start by plotting the field goals from 2005 as above:

```
> plot(colnames(field.goals.table),
+       field.goals.table["good",]/
+       (field.goals.table["bad",] +
+        field.goals.table["good",]),
+       xlab="Distance (Yards)", ylab="Percent Good")
```

Next, we'll add a line to this chart showing the estimated probability of success at each point. We'll create a function to calculate the probability and then use that function to plot the curve:

```
> fg.prob <- function(y) {
+   eta <- 5.178856 + -0.097261 * y;
+   1 / (1 + exp(-eta))
+ }
> lines(15:65,fg.prob(15:65),new=TRUE)
```

The chart is shown in [Figure 21-2](#). As expected from the statistics above, the model look like it fits the data reasonably well.

For more than two (unordered) categories, you need to use a different method to predict probabilities. One method is to use the `multinom` function:

```
multinom(formula, data, weights, subset, na.action,
         contrasts = NULL, Hess = FALSE, sumw = 0, censored = FALSE,
         model = FALSE, ...)
```

This actually fits multinomial log-linear models using neural networks.

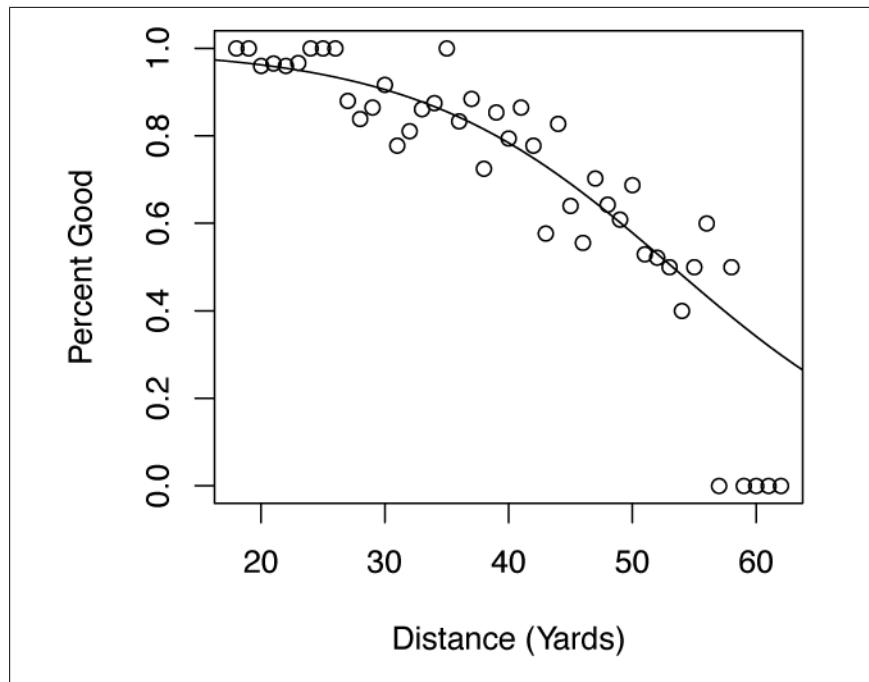


Figure 21-2. Comparing predicted field goal success to actual success

Here is a description of the arguments to the `multinom` function.

| Argument               | Description   | Default |
|------------------------|---|---------|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula specifying the form of the model to fit.  |         |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame to use for the training data for the model.  |         |
| <code>weights</code>   | An optional vector of weights for the training data.  |         |
| <code>subset</code>    | An optional expression describing the set of observations to use for fitting the model.   |         |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function specifying how to treat missing values.  |         |
| <code>contrast</code>  | A list of contrasts to use for factors appearing as variables in <code>formula</code> .   | NULL    |
| <code>Hess</code>      | A logical value specifying whether the Hessian (observed observation matrix) should be returned.  | FALSE   |
| <code>summ</code>      | An integer value describing the method used to summarize data. Use <code>summ=0</code> not to summarize, <code>summ=1</code> or <code>summ=2</code> to replace duplicate observations with a single observation (and appropriately adjusting the weights), and <code>summ=3</code> to also combine rows with the same predictor variables but different response variables. | 0       |
| <code>censored</code>  | If the response variable is a matrix with more than two columns, changes how the values are interpreted. If <code>censored=FALSE</code> , then values are interpreted as counts; if <code>censored=TRUE</code> , then values of 1 are interpreted as possible values, and values of 0 as impossible.  | FALSE   |
| <code>model</code>     | A logical value specifying whether the model matrix should be returned.   | FALSE   |
| ...                    | Additional arguments passed to <code>nnet</code> .  |         |

For more than two ordered categories, you can also use proportional odds linear regression. To do this in R, you can use the `polr` function in the `MASS` package:

```
polr(formula, data, weights, start, ..., subset, na.action,
      contrasts = NULL, Hess = FALSE, model = TRUE,
      method = c("logistic", "probit", "cloglog", "cauchit"))
```

Here is a description of the arguments to the `polr` function.

| Argument               | Description   | Default    |
|------------------------|---|------------|
| <code>formula</code>   | A formula specifying the form of the model to fit.  |            |
| <code>data</code>      | A data frame to use for the training data for the model. (If omitted, variables from the current environment are used instead.)   |            |
| <code>weights</code>   | An optional vector of weights for the training data.  | 1          |
| <code>start</code>     | A vector of initial values for the parameters in the form <code>c(coefficients, zeta)</code> .  |            |
| <code>...</code>       | Additional arguments passed to the function <code>optim</code> .  |            |
| <code>subset</code>    | An optional expression describing the set of observations to use for fitting the model.   |            |
| <code>na.action</code> | A function specifying how to treat missing values.  |            |
| <code>contrasts</code> | A list of contrasts to use for factors appearing as variables in <code>formula</code> .   | NULL       |
| <code>Hess</code>      | A logical value specifying whether the Hessian (observed observation matrix) should be returned.  | FALSE      |
| <code>model</code>     | A logical value specifying whether the model matrix should be returned.   | TRUE       |
| <code>method</code>    | Specifies the form of the model. Use <code>method="logistic"</code> for logistic, <code>method="probit"</code> for probit, <code>method="cloglog"</code> for complementary log-log, and <code>method="cauchit"</code> for a Cauchy latent variable. | "logistic" |

## Linear Discriminant Analysis

Linear discriminant analysis (LDA) is a statistical technique for finding the linear combination of features that best separate observations into different classes. LDA assumes that the data in each class is normally distributed and that there is a unique covariance matrix for each class. To use linear discriminant analysis in R, use the function `lda`:

```
library(MASS)
## S3 method for class 'formula':
lda(formula, data, ..., subset, na.action)

## Default S3 method:
lda(x, grouping, prior = proportions, tol = 1.0e-4,
    method, CV = FALSE, nu, ...)

## S3 method for class 'data.frame':
lda(x, ...)

## S3 method for class 'matrix':
lda(x, grouping, ..., subset, na.action)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to the `lda` function.

| Argument  | Description   | Default     |
|-----------|---|-------------|
| formula   | A formula specifying the form of the model to fit.  |             |
| data      | If a formula is given, specifies a data frame for the training.   |             |
| x         | Specifies a matrix or data frame for the fitting data (when no formula is provided).  |             |
| grouping  | A factor specifying the response variable (when no formula is provided).  |             |
| prior     | A vector of prior probabilities for class membership (in the same order as the levels of grouping).   | proportions |
| tol       | A numeric value specifying a tolerance for testing if the input data is a singular matrix; if the variance of any variable is less than $tol^2$ , it will be rejected.                    | 1.0e-4      |
| subset    | A vector specifying the set of observations in data to include.   |             |
| na.action | A function specifying how to deal with missing values.  |             |
| method    | The method for fitting. Use method = "moment" for standard estimators, method = "mle" for MLEs, method = "mve" to use cov.mve, or method = "t" for estimates based on the t-distribution. |             |
| CV        | A logical value specifying whether to use "leave-one-out" cross-validation. (See the help file for more information.)   | FALSE       |
| nu        | A numeric value specifying degrees of freedom when method = "t".  |             |
| ...       | Arguments passed to other methods.  |             |

A closely related function for classification is quadratic discriminant analysis (QDA), available through the function `qda`. QDA looks for a quadratic combination of features that best separate observations into different classes:

```
library(MASS)
qda(x, ...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
qda(formula, data, ..., subset, na.action)

## Default S3 method:
qda(x, grouping, prior = proportions,
     method, CV = FALSE, nu, ...)

## S3 method for class 'data.frame':
qda(x, ...)

## S3 method for class 'matrix':
qda(x, grouping, ..., subset, na.action)
```

The arguments to `qda` are the same as the arguments to `lda`.

For the remainder of this chapter, I'll rely on a single data set for examples: the Spambase data set. The Spambase data set was created by Mark Hopkins, Erik Reeber, George Forman, and Jaap Suermundt at Hewlett-Packard Labs. It includes 4,601 observations corresponding to email messages, 1,813 of which are spam. From the original email messages, 58 different attributes were computed. This data set is really nice to use in examples because it's already been cleaned and preprocessed.

Here is how I loaded the raw data into R:

```
> spambase <- read.csv(  
+   file="~/Documents/book/data/spam/spambase.data.txt", header=FALSE)  
> names(spambase) <-  
+   c("word_freq_make", "word_freq_address", "word_freq_all", "word_freq_3d",  
+   "word_freq_our", "word_freq_over", "word_freq_remove",  
+   "word_freq_internet", "word_freq_order", "word_freq_mail",  
+   "word_freq_receive", "word_freq_will", "word_freq_people",  
+   "word_freq_report", "word_freq_addresses", "word_freq_free",  
+   "word_freq_business", "word_freq_email", "word_freq_you",  
+   "word_freq_credit", "word_freq_your", "word_freq_font",  
+   "word_freq_000", "word_freq_money", "word_freq_hp", "word_freq_hpl",  
+   "word_freq_george", "word_freq_650", "word_freq_lab", "word_freq_labs",  
+   "word_freq_telnet", "word_freq_857", "word_freq_data", "word_freq_415",  
+   "word_freq_85", "word_freq_technology", "word_freq_1999",  
+   "word_freq_parts", "word_freq_pm", "word_freq_direct", "word_freq_cs",  
+   "word_freq_meeting", "word_freq_original", "word_freq_project",  
+   "word_freq_re", "word_freq_edu", "word_freq_table",  
+   "word_freq_conference", "char_freq_semicolon", "char_freq_left_paren",  
+   "char_freq_left_bracket", "char_freq_exclamation", "char_freq_dollar",  
+   "char_freq_pound", "capital_run_length_average",  
+   "capital_run_length_longest", "capital_run_length_total", "is_spam")  
> spambase <- transform(spambase, is_spam=as.factor(is_spam))
```

I've included a copy with the `nutshell` package, so you can load this data set with the commands:

```
> library(nutshell)  
> data(spambase)
```

To use this data set for our examples, we'll split it into training and validation data sets. We'll split the data set into 70% and 30% samples, stratified by the `is_spam` factor. To do this, we'll use the function `strata` in the `sampling` library to do the sampling:

```
> library(sampling)  
> table(spambase$is_spam)  
  
 0   1  
2788 1813  
> spambase.strata <- strata(spambase,  
+   stratanames=c("is_spam"), size=c(1269, 1951), method="srswor")
```

This function returns a data frame that describes the set of values in the sample:

```
> names(spambase.strata)  
[1] "is_spam" "ID_unit" "Prob"     "Stratum"
```

The variable `ID_unit` tells us the row numbers in the sample. To create training (and validation) data sets, we'll extract observations that match (or don't match) `ID_unit` values in the stratified sample:

```
> spambase.training <- spambase[  
+   rownames(spambase) %in% spambase.strata$ID_unit,]  
> spambase.validation <- spambase[  
+   !(rownames(spambase) %in% spambase.strata$ID_unit),]  
> nrow(spambase.training)
```

```
[1] 3220
> nrow(spambase.validation)
[1] 1381
```

Let's try quadratic discriminant analysis with the Spambase data set:

```
> spam.qda <- qda(formula=is_spam~., data=spambase.training)
> summary(spam.qda)
  Length Class Mode
prior      2 -none- numeric
counts     2 -none- numeric
means     114 -none- numeric
scaling   6498 -none- numeric
ldet       2 -none- numeric
lev        2 -none- character
N         1 -none- numeric
call       3 -none- call
terms      3 terms call
xlevels    0 -none- list
> # check with training
> table(actual=spambase.training$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.qda,newdata=spambase.training)$class)
  predicted
actual   0   1
  0 1481 470
  1   56 1213
> # check with validation
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.qda,newdata=spambase.validation)$class)
  predicted
actual   0   1
  0  625 212
  1   28 516
```

Flexible discriminant analysis (FDA) is another technique related to LDA. This algorithm is based on the observation that LDA essentially fits a model by linear regression, so FDA substitutes a nonparametric regression for the linear regression. To compute flexible discriminant analysis:

```
library(mda)
fda(formula, data, weights, theta, dimension, eps, method,
  keep.fitted, ...)
```

Repeating the example from above:

```
> spam.fda <- fda(formula=is_spam~., data=spambase.training)
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.fda ,newdata=spambase.validation, type="class"))
  predicted
actual   0   1
  0 800 37
  1 120 424
```

Another related technique is mixture discriminant analysis (MDA). MDA represents each class with a Gaussian mixture. This is available in R from the `mда` function in the `mда` library:

```
library(mda)
mда(formula, data, subclasses, sub.df, tot.df, dimension, eps,
    iter, weights, method, keep.fitted, trace, ...)
```

Here is an example using the Spambase data set:

```
> spam.mda <- mда(formula=is_spam~, data=spambase.training)
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.mda, newdata=spambase.validation))
   predicted
actual      0     1
  0 800 37
  1 109 435
```

## Log-Linear Models

There are several ways to fit log-linear models in R. One of the simplest is to use the function `loglin`:

```
loglin(table, margin, start = rep(1, length(table)), fit = FALSE,
       eps = 0.1, iter = 20, param = FALSE, print = TRUE)
```

The `loglin` function fits models using iterative proportional fitting (IPF). Here is a description of the arguments to the `loglin` function.

| Argument | Description  | Default               |
|----------|--|-----------------------|
| table    | A contingency table to be fit  |                       |
| margin   | A list of vectors with the marginal totals to be fit   |                       |
| start    | A starting estimate for the fitted table   | rep(1, length(table)) |
| fit      | A logical value specifying whether to return the fitted values                               | FALSE                 |
| eps      | A numeric value specifying the maximum deviation allowed between observed and fitted margins | 0.1                   |
| iter     | A numeric value specifying the maximum number of iterations                                  | 20                    |
| param    | A logical value specifying whether to return the parameter values                            | FALSE                 |
| print    | A logical value specifying whether to print the number of iterations and the final deviation | TRUE                  |

A more user friendly version is `loglm`:

```
library(MASS)
loglm(formula, data, subset, na.action, ...)
```

By using `loglm`, you can specify a data frame, a model formula, a subset of observations, and an action for NA variables, just like the `lm` function. (Other arguments are passed to `loglin`.)

An alternative method for fitting log-linear models is to use generalized linear models. See “[Generalized Linear Models](#)” on page 421 for more details.

# Machine Learning Algorithms for Classification

Much like regression, there are problems where linear methods don't work well for classification. This section describes some machine learning algorithms for classification problems.

## k Nearest Neighbors

One of the simplest techniques for classification problems is *k* nearest neighbors. Here's how the algorithm works:

1. The analyst specifies a “training” data set.
2. To predict the class of a new value, the algorithm looks for the *k* observations in the training set that are closest to the new value.
3. The prediction for the new value is the class of the “majority” of the *k* nearest neighbors.

To use *k* nearest neighbors in R, use the function `knn` in the `class` package:

```
library(class)
knn(train, test, cl, k = 1, l = 0, prob = FALSE, use.all = TRUE)
```

Here is the description of the arguments to the `knn` function.

| Argument             | Description  | Default |
|----------------------|--|---------|
| <code>train</code>   | A matrix or data frame containing the training data.   |         |
| <code>test</code>    | A matrix or data frame containing the test data.   |         |
| <code>cl</code>      | A factor specifying the classification of observations in the training set.  |         |
| <code>k</code>       | A numeric value specifying the number of neighbors to consider.  | 1       |
| <code>l</code>       | When $k > 0$ , specifies the minimum vote for a decision. (If there aren't enough votes, the value <code>doubt</code> is returned.)  | 0       |
| <code>prob</code>    | If <code>prob=TRUE</code> , then the proportion of votes for the winning class is returned as an attribute <code>prob</code> .   | FALSE   |
| <code>use.all</code> | Controls the handling of ties when selecting nearest neighbors. If <code>use.all=TRUE</code> , then all distances equal to the $k$ th largest are included. If <code>use.all=FALSE</code> , then a random selection of observations is used to select $k$ neighbors. | TRUE    |

Let's use `knn` to classify email messages as spam (or not spam) within the Spambase data set. Unlike some other model types in R, *k* nearest neighbors doesn't create a model object. Instead, you provide both the training and the test data as arguments to `knn`:

```
> spambase.knn <- knn(train=spambase.training,
+   test=spambase.validation,
+   cl=spambase.training$is_spam)
> summary(spambase.knn)
 0 1
861 520
```

The `knn` function returns an index of classes for each row in the test data. Let's compare the results returned by `knn` to the correct classification results in the original data:

```
> table(predicted=spambase.knn, actual=spambase.validation$is_spam)
   actual
predicted 0 1
  0 740 121
  1  97 423
```

As you can see, using  $k$  nearest neighbors with the default parameters correctly classifies 423 out of 544 messages as spam, but incorrectly classifies 97 out of 837 legitimate messages as spam.

As an alternative, suppose that we examined the five nearest neighbors, instead of just the nearest neighbor. To do this, we would set the argument `k=5`:

```
> spambase.knn5 <- knn(train=spambase.training,
+   test=spambase.validation,
+   cl=spambase.training$is_spam, k=5)
> summary(spambase.knn5)
 0 1
865 516
> table(predicted=spambase.knn5, actual=spambase.validation$is_spam)
   actual
predicted 0 1
  0 724 141
  1 113 403
```

## Classification Tree Models

We introduced regression trees in “[Regression Tree Models](#)” on page 439. Classification trees work almost the same way. There are two key differences. First, CART uses a different error function to measure how well different splits divide the training data (or to measure cost/complexity trade-offs). Typically, Gini is used to measure cost/complexity. Second, CART uses a different method to choose predicted values. The predicted value at each terminal node is chosen by taking the most common value among the response values in the test data.

As an example of how to use recursive partitioning trees for classification, let's build a quick tree model on the Spambase data set (output modified slightly to fit on the page):

```
> spam.tree <- rpart(is_spam~., data=spambase.training)
> spam.tree
n= 3220

node), split, n, loss, yval, (yprob)
  * denotes terminal node

  1) root 3220 1269 0 (0.60590062 0.39409938)
  2) char_freq_dollar< 0.0395 2361 529 0 (0.77594240 0.22405760)
  4) word_freq_remove< 0.065 2148 333 0 (0.84497207 0.15502793)
  8) char_freq_exclamation< 0.3905 1874 178 0 (0.905016 0.094984) *
  9) char_freq_exclamation>=0.3905 274 119 1 (0.43430657 0.56569343)
```

```

18) capital_run_length_total< 65.5 141   42 0 (0.7021277 0.2978723)
   36) word_freq_free< 0.77 126   28 0 (0.7777778 0.2222222) *
   37) word_freq_free>=0.77 15    1 1 (0.06666667 0.9333333) *
19) capital_run_length_total>=65.5 133   20 1 (0.150376 0.849624) *
  5) word_freq_remove>=0.065 213   17 1 (0.07981221 0.92018779) *
  3) char_freq_dollar>=0.0395 859   119 1 (0.13853318 0.86146682)
  6) word_freq_hp>=0.385 69    7 0 (0.89855072 0.10144928) *
  7) word_freq_hp< 0.385 790   57 1 (0.07215190 0.92784810) *

```

You can get much more detail about the tree object (and the process used to build it) by calling the `summary` method. I've omitted the results because they are quite lengthy.

You can use the `printcp` function to show the cp table for the fitted object:

```

> printcp(spam.tree)

Classification tree:
rpart(formula = is_spam ~ ., data = spambase.training)

Variables actually used in tree construction:
[1] capital_run_length_total char_freq_dollar
[3] char_freq_exclamation   word_freq_free
[5] word_freq_hp            word_freq_remove

Root node error: 1269/3220 = 0.3941

n= 3220

      CP nsplit rel_error xerror      xstd
1 0.489362      0  1.00000 1.00000 0.021851
2 0.141056      1  0.51064 0.51931 0.018041
3 0.043341      2  0.36958 0.37431 0.015857
4 0.036643      3  0.32624 0.34358 0.015300
5 0.010244      5  0.25296 0.28526 0.014125
6 0.010000      6  0.24271 0.27344 0.013866

```

Let's take a look at the generated tree:

```

> plot(spam.tree, uniform=TRUE)
> text(spam.tree, all=TRUE, cex=0.75, splits=TRUE, use.n=TRUE, xpd=TRUE)

```

The results are shown in [Figure 21-3](#). The library `maptree` contains an alternative function for plotting classification trees. In many contexts, this function is more readable and easier to use. Here is an example for this tree (see [Figure 21-4](#)):

```

> library(maptree)
> draw.tree(spam.tree, cex=0.5, nodeinfo=TRUE, col=gray(0:8 / 8))

```

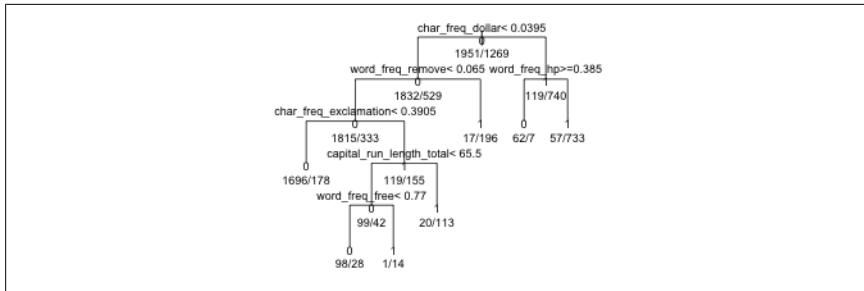


Figure 21-3. rpart tree for Spambase data, from `plot.tree`

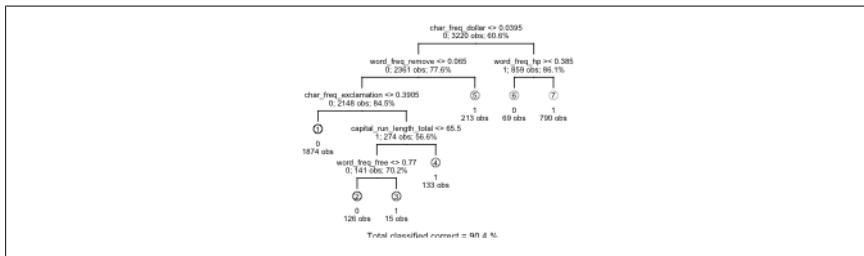


Figure 21-4. rpart tree for Spambase data, plotted by `draw.tree`

Let's take a look at how well the rpart model works:

```

> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+       predicted=predict(spam.tree, newdata=spambase.validation, type="class"))
   predicted
actual      0   1
      0 795 42
      1  96 448
  
```

## Bagging

To use bagging models in R for classification problems, you can use the function `bagging` in the package `adabag` (this function works only for classification, not regression):

```

library(adabag)
bagging(formula, data, mfinal = 100, minsplit = 5, cp = 0.01,
       maxdepth = nlevels(vardep))
  
```

Here are the results for the Spambase data set:

```

> spam.bag <- bagging(formula=is_spam~, data=spambase.training)
> summary(spam.bag)
   Length Class Mode
formula      3 formula call
trees       100 -none- list
votes      6440 -none- numeric
class      3220 -none- character
samples    322000 -none- numeric
importance  57 -none- numeric
  
```

```
> table(actual=spambase.training$is_spam,
+       predicted=predict(spam.bag, newdata=spambase.training)$class)
      predicted
actual   0   1
  0 1878 73
  1 344 925
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+       predicted=predict(spam.bag, newdata=spambase.validation)$class)
      predicted
actual   0   1
  0 804 33
  1 162 382
```

You can also try the function bagging in the ipred library, which we used in “[Bagging for regression](#)” on page 446.

## Boosting

You can build boosting models for classification with the function `ada` in the package `ada` (this function does not work for regression problems):

```
## Default S3 method:
ada(x, y, test.x, test.y=NULL, loss=c("exponential", "logistic"),
    type=c("discrete", "real", "gentle"), iter=50, nu=0.1, bag.frac=0.5,
    model.coef=TRUE, bag.shift=FALSE, max.iter=20, delta=10^(-10),
    verbose=FALSE, na.action=na.rpart,...)

## S3 method for class 'formula':
ada(formula, data, ..., subset, na.action=na.rpart)
```

Let's use `ada` to build a boosting model for the Spambase data set:

```
> spam.ada <- ada(formula=is_spam ~ ., data=spambase.training, loss="logistic")
> spam.ada
Call:
ada(is_spam ~ ., data = spambase.training, loss = "logistic")

Loss: logistic Method: discrete  Iteration: 50

Final Confusion Matrix for Data:
      Final Prediction
True value   0   1
  0 1922 29
  1   48 1221

Train Error: 0.024

Out-Of-Bag Error: 0.038 iteration= 50

Additional Estimates of number of iterations:

train.err1 train.kap1
        48          48
```

Here is how ada performed on this problem:

```
> table(actual=spambase.training$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.ada, newdata=spambase.training))
   predicted
actual  0   1
  0 1922  29
  1   48 1221
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.ada, newdata=spambase.validation))
   predicted
actual  0   1
  0 803  34
  1  36 508
```

As you can see, we achieved a very low error rate with boosting (4% false positive and 6.6% false negative), comparable with the results in the original study.

Additional implementations of boosting are available in the library `mboost`, which we introduced in “[Boosting for regression](#)” on page 447.

## Neural Networks

We introduced neural network models in “[Neural Networks](#)” on page 455; see that section for a description of the arguments to `nnet`. As an example of how neural network models can be used for classification problems, we’ll build a neural network model to classify messages as “spam” or “not spam” in the Spambase data set:

```
> spam.nnet <- nnet(is_spam~, data=spambase.training, size=10, decay=0.1)
# weights:  591
initial value 2840.007029
iter  10 value 1902.105150
iter  20 value 1086.933253
iter  30 value 724.134231
iter  40 value 682.122500
iter  50 value 607.033261
iter  60 value 550.845571
iter  70 value 520.489178
iter  80 value 483.315802
iter  90 value 449.411087
iter 100 value 438.685285
final  value 438.685285
stopped after 100 iterations
```

Let’s take a look at how the neural network model performed:

```
> table(actual=spambase.training$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.nnet, type="class"))
   predicted
actual  0   1
  0 1889  62
  1   82 1187
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+   predicted=predict(spam.nnet,
+   newdata=spambase.validation,
+   type="class"))
```

|        | predicted |     |
|--------|-----------|-----|
| actual | 0         | 1   |
| 0      | 796       | 41  |
| 1      | 39        | 505 |

Note that neural network algorithms are nondeterministic (they use some random values), so you might get different results even if you use the same code.

## SVMs

Like neural networks, support vector machine models can also be used for either regression or classification. As an example of how to use SVMs for classification, we'll also use the Spambase data set:

```
> library(e1071)
> spam.svm <- svm(is_spam ~ ., data=spambase.training)
> spam.svm
```

Call:  
`svm(formula = is_spam ~ ., data = spambase.training)`

Parameters:

SVM-Type: C-classification  
 SVM-Kernel: radial  
 cost: 1  
 gamma: 0.01754386

Number of Support Vectors: 975

```
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+       predicted=predict(spam.svm,
+                           newdata=spambase.validation,
+                           type="class"))
predicted
actual 0   1
0    807 30
1    65 479
```

## Random Forests

Random forests are another algorithm that can be used for either regression or classification problems. Here is how random forests can be used with the Spambase data set:

```
> library(randomForest)
randomForest 4.5-30
> spam.rf <- randomForest(is_spam ~ ., data=spambase.training)
> spam.rf
```

Call:  
`randomForest(formula = is_spam ~ ., data = spambase.training)`  
 Type of random forest: classification  
 Number of trees: 500  
 No. of variables tried at each split: 7

```
    OOB estimate of  error rate: 5.16%
Confusion matrix:
      0   1 class.error
0 1890   61  0.03126602
1 105 1164  0.08274232
```

Notice the confusion matrix, showing how well the random forest performed on the training data. Let's take a look at how it did on the validation data:

```
> table(actual=spambase.validation$is_spam,
+       predicted=predict(spam.rf,
+                           newdata=spambase.validation,
+                           type="class"))
predicted
actual   0   1
0 812 25
1 40 504
```



# 22

## Machine Learning

This chapter covers machine learning algorithms that were not included in Chapter 20. In 20 and 21, we showed techniques for predicting values when you were interested in a specific value. This chapter shows methods for finding patterns in data when you aren't quite sure what you're looking for.

The techniques in this chapter are often called *data mining*. Data mining means something very simple: looking for patterns in data. Unfortunately, the term “data mining” now has negative connotations, much like the term “hacking” has negative connotations. When properly used, data mining algorithms can be a good technique when you are looking for patterns in large, unstructured data sources. R provides implementations of several popular data mining algorithms.

### Market Basket Analysis

Association rules are a popular technique for data mining. The association rule algorithm was developed initially by Rakesh Agrawal, Tomasz Imielinski, and Arun Swami at the IBM Almaden Research Center.<sup>1</sup> It was originally designed as an efficient algorithm for finding interesting relationships in large databases of customer transactions. The algorithm finds sets of associations, items that are frequently associated with each other. For example, when analyzing supermarket data, you might find that consumers often purchase eggs and milk together. The algorithm was designed to run efficiently on large databases, especially databases that don't fit into a computer's memory.

R includes several algorithms implementing association rules. One of the most popular is the *a priori* algorithm. To try it in R, use the `apriori` function in the `arules` package:

```
library(arules)
apriori(data, parameter = NULL, appearance = NULL, control = NULL)
```

1. You can read their paper here: <http://rakesh.agrawal-family.com/papers/sigmod93assoc.pdf>.

Here is a description of the arguments to `apriori`.

| Argument   | Description  | Default |
|------------|--|---------|
| data       | An object of class <code>transactions</code> (or a matrix or data frame that can be coerced into that form) in which associations are to be found.   |         |
| parameter  | An object of class <code>ASParameter</code> (or a list with named components) that is used to specify mining parameters. Parameters include support level, minimum rule length, maximum rule length, and types of rules (see the help file for <code>ASParameter</code> for more information). | NULL    |
| appearance | An object of class <code>APAppearance</code> (or a list with named components) that is used to specify restrictions on the associations found by the algorithm.  | NULL    |
| control    | An object of class <code>APcontrol</code> (or a list with named components) that is used to control the performance of the algorithm.  | NULL    |

The `apriori` implementation is well engineered and thought out: it makes ample use of S4 classes to define data types (including a `transactions` class for data and classes to control parameters), and prints useful information when it is run. However, it currently requires data sets to be loaded completely into memory.

As an example, we will look at a set of transactions from Audioscrobbler. Audioscrobbler was an online service that tracked the listening habits of users. The company is now part of Last.fm and still provides application programming interfaces (APIs) for looking at music preferences. However, in 2005, the company released a database of information on music preferences under a Creative Commons license. The database consists of a set of records showing how many times each user listened to different artists. For our purposes, we'll ignore the count and just look at users and artists. For this example, I used a random sample of 20,000 user IDs from the database. Specifically, we will try to look for patterns in the artists that users listen to.

I loaded the data into R using the `read.transactions` function (in the `arules` package):

```
> library(arules)
> audioscrobbler <- read.transactions(
+   file="~/Documents/book/data/profiledata_06-May-2005/transactions.csv",
+   format="single",
+   sep=",",
+   cols=c(1,2))
```

You can find the data in the `nutshell` package:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(audioscrobbler)
```

To find some results, I needed to change the default settings. I looked for associations at a 6.45% support level, which I specified through the `parameter` argument. (Why 6.45%? Because that returned exactly 10 rules on the test data, and 10 rules seemed like the right length for an example.)

```
> audioscrobbler.apriori <- apriori(
+   data=audioscrobbler,
+   parameter=new("APparameter",support=0.0645))
```

```

parameter specification:
confidence minval smax arem aval originalSupport support minlen
          0.8     0.1     1 none FALSE           TRUE  0.0645      1
maxlen target ext
      5 rules FALSE

algorithmic control:
filter tree heap memopt load sort verbose
  0.1 TRUE TRUE FALSE TRUE    2    TRUE

apriori - find association rules with the apriori algorithm
version 4.21 (2004.05.09)          (c) 1996-2004 Christian Borgelt
set item appearances ...[0 item(s)] done [0.00s].
set transactions ...[429033 item(s), 20001 transaction(s)] done [2.36s].
sorting and recoding items ... [287 item(s)] done [0.16s].
creating transaction tree ... done [0.03s].
checking subsets of size 1 2 3 4 done [0.25s].
writing ... [10 rule(s)] done [0.00s].
creating S4 object ... done [0.17s].

```

As you can see, the `apriori` function includes some information on what it is doing while running. After it finishes, you can inspect the returned object to learn more. The returned object consists of association rules (and is an object of class `arules`). Like most modeling algorithms, the object has an informative `summary` function that tells you about the rules:

```

> summary(audioscrobbler.apriori)
set of 10 rules

rule length distribution (lhs + rhs):sizes
 3
10

Min. 1st Qu. Median   Mean 3rd Qu.   Max.
 3       3       3       3       3       3

summary of quality measures:
      support      confidence      lift
Min. :0.06475  Min. :0.8008  Min. :2.613
1st Qu.:0.06536 1st Qu.:0.8027  1st Qu.:2.619
Median :0.06642 Median :0.8076  Median :2.651
Mean   :0.06640 Mean   :0.8128  Mean   :2.696
3rd Qu.:0.06707 3rd Qu.:0.8178  3rd Qu.:2.761
Max.   :0.06870 Max.   :0.8399  Max.   :2.888

mining info:
      data ntransactions support confidence
audioscrobbler        20001    0.0645      0.8

```

You can view the returned rules with the `inspect` function:

```

> inspect(audioscrobbler.apriori)
      lhs            rhs      support confidence      lift
1 {Jimmy Eat World,
  blink-182}      => {Green Day} 0.06524674  0.8085502 2.780095
2 {The Strokes,

```

```

    Coldplay}          => {Radiohead} 0.06619669  0.8019382 2.616996
3  {Interpol,        => {Radiohead} 0.06474676  0.8180670 2.669629
   Beck}
4  {Interpol,        => {Radiohead} 0.06774661  0.8008274 2.613371
   Coldplay}
5  {The Beatles,     => {Radiohead} 0.06719664  0.8047904 2.626303
   Interpol}
6  {The Offspring,   => {Green Day} 0.06664667  0.8399496 2.888058
   blink-182}
7  {Foo Fighters,   => {Green Day} 0.06669667  0.8169014 2.808810
   blink-182}
8  {Pixies,          => {Radiohead} 0.06569672  0.8066298 2.632306
   Beck}
9  {The Smashing Pumpkins, => {Radiohead} 0.06869657  0.8287093 2.704359
   Beck}
10 {The Smashing Pumpkins,=> {Radiohead} 0.06514674  0.8018462 2.616695
    Pink Floyd}

```

The left-hand side of the rules (lhs) forms the predicate of the rule; the right-hand side (rhs) forms the conclusion. For example, consider rule 1. This rule means, “If the user has listened to Jimmy Eat World and Blink-182, then for 6.524675% of the time, he or she also listened to Green Day.” You can draw your own conclusions about whether these results mean anything, other than that Audioscrobbler’s users were fans of alternative and classic rock.

The **arules** package also includes an implementation of the Eclat algorithm, which finds frequent item sets. To find item sets using the Eclat algorithm, try the function **eclat**:

```
eclat(data, parameter = NULL, control = NULL)
```

The **eclat** function accepts similar arguments as **apriori** (some of the parameters within the arguments are slightly different). I tightened up the support level for the **eclat** function in order to keep the number of results low. If you keep the default parameters, then the algorithm will return item sets with only one item, which is not very interesting. So I set the minimum length to 2 and the support level to 12.9%. Here is an example of running **eclat** on the Audioscrobbler data:

```

> audioscrobbler.eclat <- eclat(
+   data=audioscrobbler,
+   parameter=new("ECparameter", support=0.129, minlen=2))

parameter specification:
tidLists support minlen maxlen           target   ext
FALSE      0.129       2       5 frequent itemsets FALSE

algorithmic control:
sparse sort verbose
  7    -2    TRUE

eclat - find frequent item sets with the eclat algorithm
version 2.6 (2004.08.16)      (c) 2002-2004 Christian Borgelt
create itemset ...
set transactions ...[429033 item(s), 20001 transaction(s)] done [2.44s].
sorting and recoding items ... [74 item(s)] done [0.14s].

```

```
creating bit matrix ... [74 row(s), 20001 column(s)] done [0.01s].
writing ... [10 set(s)] done [0.01s].
Creating S4 object ... done [0.02s].
```

You can view information about the results with the `summary` function:

```
> summary(audioscrobblor.eclat)
set of 10 itemsets

most frequent items:
      Green Day          Radiohead  Red Hot Chili Peppers
      5                  5            3
      Nirvana           The Beatles (Other)
      3                  2            2

element (itemset/transaction) length distribution:sizes
 2
10

      Min. 1st Qu. Median   Mean 3rd Qu.   Max.
      2       2       2       2       2       2

summary of quality measures:
  support
Min. :0.1291
1st Qu.:0.1303
Median :0.1360
Mean  :0.1382
3rd Qu.:0.1394
Max.  :0.1567

includes transaction ID lists: FALSE

mining info:
  data ntransactions support
audioscrobblor        20001     0.129
```

You can also view the item sets with the `inspect` function:

```
> inspect(audioscrobblor.eclat)
  items           support
1 {Red Hot Chili Peppers,
  Radiohead}    0.1290935
2 {Red Hot Chili Peppers,
  Green Day}    0.1397430
3 {Red Hot Chili Peppers,
  Nirvana}      0.1336433
4 {Nirvana,
  Radiohead}    0.1384931
5 {Green Day,
  Nirvana}      0.1382931
6 {Coldplay,
  Radiohead}    0.1538423
7 {Coldplay,
  Green Day}    0.1292435
8 {Green Day,
  Radiohead}    0.1335433
```

```

9 {The Beatles,
  Green Day}          0.1290935
10 {The Beatles,
  Radiohead}          0.1566922

```

As above, you can draw your own conclusions about whether the results are interesting.

## Clustering

Another important data mining technique is clustering. Clustering is a way to find similar sets of observations in a data set; groups of similar observations are called *clusters*. There are several functions available for clustering in R.

### Distance Measures

To effectively use clustering algorithms, you need to begin by measuring the distance between observations. A convenient way to do this in R is through the function `dist` in the `stats` package:

```
dist(x, method = "euclidean", diag = FALSE, upper = FALSE, p = 2)
```

The `dist` function computes the distance between pairs of objects in another object, such as a matrix or a data frame. It returns a distance matrix (an object of type `dist`) containing the computed distances. Here is a description of the arguments to `dist`.

| Argument            | Description  | Default     |
|---------------------|--|-------------|
| <code>x</code>      | The object on which to compute distances. Must be a data frame, matrix, or <code>dist</code> object.   |             |
| <code>method</code> | The method for computing distances. Specify <code>method = "euclidean"</code> for Euclidean distances (2-norm), <code>method = "maximum"</code> for the maximum distance between observations (supremum norm), <code>method = "manhattan"</code> for the absolute distance between two vectors (1-norm), <code>method = "canberra"</code> for Canberra distances (see the help file), <code>method = "binary"</code> to regard nonzero values as 1 and zeros as 0, or <code>method = "minkowski"</code> to use the $p$ -norm (the $p$ th root of the sum of the $p$ th powers of the differences of the components). | "euclidean" |
| <code>diag</code>   | A logical value specifying whether the diagonal of the distance matrix should be printed by <code>print.dist</code> .  | FALSE       |
| <code>upper</code>  | A logical value specifying whether the upper triangle of the distance matrix should be printed.  | FALSE       |
| <code>p</code>      | The power of the Minkowski distance (when <code>method = "minkowski"</code> ).   | 2           |

An alternative method for computing distances between points is the `daisy` function in the `cluster` package:

```
daisy(x, metric = c("euclidean", "manhattan", "gower"),
      stand = FALSE, type = list())
```

The `daisy` function computes the pairwise dissimilarities between observations in a data set. Here is a description of the arguments to `daisy`.

| Argument | Description  | Default     |
|----------|--|-------------|
| x        | A numeric matrix or data frame on which to compute distances.  |             |
| metric   | A character value specifying the distance metric to use. Specify <code>metric="euclidean"</code> for Euclidean distances, <code>metric="manhattan"</code> for Manhattan distances (like walking around blocks in Manhattan), or <code>metric="gower"</code> to use Gower's distance.   | "euclidean" |
| stand    | A logical flag indicating whether to standardize measurements before computing distances.  | FALSE       |
| type     | A list of values specifying the types of variables in x. Use "ordratio" for ratio-scaled variables to be treated as ordinal variables, "logratio" for ratio-scaled variables that must be logarithmically transformed, "assym" for asymmetric binary, and "symm" for symmetric binary. |             |

## Clustering Algorithms

*k*-means clustering is one of the simplest clustering algorithms. To use *k*-means clustering, use the function `kmeans` from the `stats` package:

```
kmeans(x, centers, iter.max = 10, nstart = 1,
       algorithm = c("Hartigan-Wong", "Lloyd", "Forgy",
                    "MacQueen"))
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `kmeans`.

| Argument  | Description   | Default         |
|-----------|---|-----------------|
| x         | A numeric matrix (or an object that can be coerced to a matrix) on which to cluster.  |                 |
| centers   | If a numeric value, specifies the number of clusters. If a numeric vector, specifies the initial cluster centers.   |                 |
| iter.max  | A numeric value specifying the maximum number of iterations.  | 10              |
| nstart    | Specifies the number of random sets to choose (if <code>centers</code> is a number).  | 1               |
| algorithm | A character value specifying the clustering algorithm to use. Legal values include <code>algorithm="Hartigan-Wong"</code> , <code>algorithm="Lloyd"</code> , <code>algorithm="Forgy"</code> , and <code>algorithm="MacQueen"</code> . | "Hartigan-Wong" |

As an example, let's try building clusters on the San Francisco home sales data set. First, we need to create a distance matrix from the data frame. To do this, we'll need to include only a subset of variables:

```
> sf.dist <- daisy(
+   na.omit(sanfrancisco.home.sales[, 
+     c("price", "bedrooms", "squarefeet", "lotsize",
+       "year", "latitude", "longitude")]),
+   metric="euclidean",
+   stand=TRUE)
> summary(sf.dist)
973710 dissimilarities, summarized :
```

```

Min. 1st Qu. Median Mean 3rd Qu. Max.
0.015086 3.167900 4.186900 4.617100 5.432400 25.519000
Metric : euclidean
Number of objects : 1396

```

Next, we'll try  $k$ -means clustering. After some experimentation with different numbers of clusters, I found that six clusters gave some interesting results:

```

> sf.price.model.kmeans <- kmeans(sf.dist, centers=6)
> sf.price.model.kmeans$size
[1] 502 4 324 130 42 394
> sf.price.model.kmeans$withinss
[1] 346742.69 26377.99 446048.17 254858.23 211858.99 280531.60

```

Let's label the original data set with the clusters so that we can show summary statistics for each cluster:

```

> sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster <- NA
> for (i in names(sf.price.model.kmeans$cluster)) {
+   sanfrancisco.home.sales[i,"cluster"] <-
+     sf.price.model.kmeans$cluster[i]
+ }

```

Here are the mean values for each cluster:

```

> by(sanfrancisco.home.sales[ , 
+   c("price", "bedrooms", "squarefeet",
+     "lotsize", "year", "latitude", "longitude") ],
+   INDICES=sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster,
+   FUN=mean)

sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster: 1
  price    bedrooms    squarefeet      lotsize      year
620227.091633      1.123506   1219.633466   2375.193227   1933.109562
  latitude    longitude
  37.729114     -122.428059
-----
sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster: 2
  price    bedrooms    squarefeet      lotsize      year
7258750.00000      7.250000    7634.75000    5410.25000   1926.75000
  latitude    longitude
  37.79023     -122.44317
-----
sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster: 3
  price    bedrooms    squarefeet      lotsize      year
1.151657e+06  2.040123e+00  2.150068e+03  3.003188e+03  1.931238e+03
  latitude    longitude
  3.776289e+01 -1.224434e+02
-----
sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster: 4
  price    bedrooms    squarefeet      lotsize      year
1.571292e+06  2.907692e+00  2.718185e+03  4.677015e+03  1.934446e+03
  latitude    longitude
  3.777158e+01 -1.224429e+02
-----
sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster: 5
  price    bedrooms    squarefeet      lotsize      year

```

```

2.297417e+06 2.928571e+00 4.213286e+03 6.734905e+03 1.924929e+03
latitude longitude
3.777424e+01 -1.224362e+02
-----
sanfrancisco.home.sales$cluster: 6
  price      bedrooms   squarefeet     lotsize       year
886409.898477    1.284264   1518.230964  2857.159898  1931.637056
  latitude    longitude
37.752869   -122.474225

```

As an alternative, you may want to try partitioning around medoids, which is a more robust version of  $k$ -means clustering. To use this algorithm in R, try the `pam` function in the `cluster` library:

```

library(cluster)
pam(x, k, diss = inherits(x, "dist"), metric = "euclidean",
  medoids = NULL, stand = FALSE, cluster.only = FALSE,
  do.swap = TRUE,
  keep.diss = !diss && !cluster.only && n < 100,
  keep.data = !diss && !cluster.only, trace.lev = 0)

```

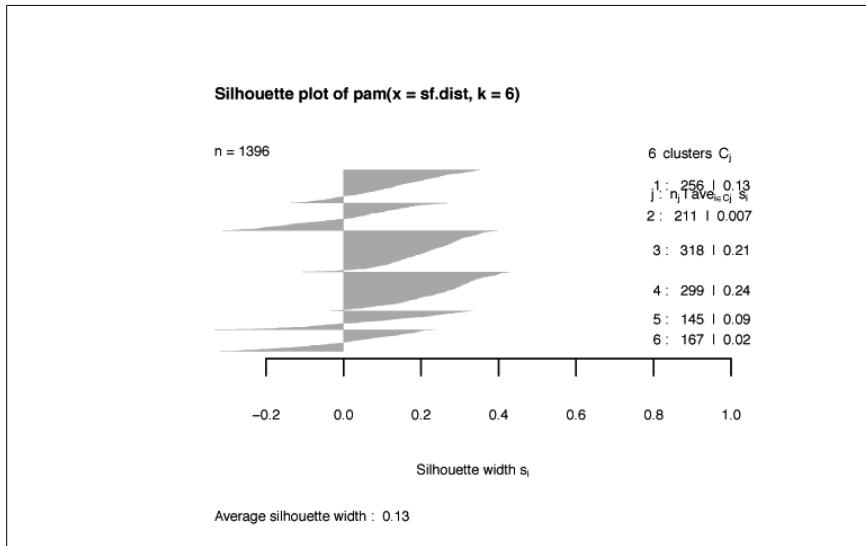
Let's try `pam` on the San Francisco home sales data set:

```
> sf.price.model.pam <- pam(sf.dist, k=6)
```

There is a `plot` method for partition objects (like the object returned by `pam`), which will display some useful information about the clusters:

```
> plot(sf.price.model.pam)
```

The results of this call are shown in [Figure 22-1](#). The call produces two different plots: a cluster plot and a silhouette plot.



*Figure 22-1. Information about San Francisco house price pam model*

Many other clustering algorithms are available in R:

- Agglomerative clustering is available through the `agnes` function in the `cluster` package.
- Divisive hierarchical clustering is available through the `diana` function in the `cluster` package or through `mona` (if only binary variables are used).
- Fuzzy clustering is available through the `fanny` function in the `cluster` package.
- Self-organizing maps are available through the `batchSOM` and `SOM` functions in the `class` package.



# 23

## Time Series Analysis

Time series are a little different from other types of data. Time series data often has long-term trends or periodic patterns that traditional summary statistics don't capture. To find these patterns, you need to use different types of analyses. As an example of a time series, we will revisit the turkey price data that we first saw in “[Time Series](#)” on page 94.

### Autocorrelation Functions

One important property of a time series is the autocorrelation function. You can estimate the autocorrelation function for time series using R’s `acf` function:

```
acf(x, lag.max = NULL,  
    type = c("correlation", "covariance", "partial"),  
    plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail, demean = TRUE, ...)
```

The function `pacf` is an alias for `acf`, except with the default type of “`partial`”:

```
pacf(x, lag.max, plot, na.action, ...)
```

By default, this function plots the results. (An example plot is shown in “[Plotting Time Series](#)” on page 220.) As an example, let’s show the autocorrelation function of the turkey price data:

```
> library(nutshell)  
> data(turkey.price.ts)  
> acf(turkey.price.ts, plot=FALSE)
```

Autocorrelations of series ‘turkey.price.ts’, by lag

```
0.0000 0.0833 0.1667 0.2500 0.3333 0.4167 0.5000 0.5833 0.6667 0.7500  
1.000 0.465 -0.019 -0.165 -0.145 -0.219 -0.215 -0.122 -0.136 -0.200  
0.8333 0.9167 1.0000 1.0833 1.1667 1.2500 1.3333 1.4167 1.5000 1.5833  
-0.016 0.368 0.723 0.403 -0.013 -0.187 -0.141 -0.180 -0.226 -0.130
```

```
> pacf(turkey.price.ts, plot=FALSE)
```

Partial autocorrelations of series ‘turkey.price.ts’, by lag

```
0.0833 0.1667 0.2500 0.3333 0.4167 0.5000 0.5833 0.6667 0.7500 0.8333  
0.465 -0.300 -0.020 -0.060 -0.218 -0.054 -0.061 -0.211 -0.180 0.098  
0.9167 1.0000 1.0833 1.1667 1.2500 1.3333 1.4167 1.5000 1.5833  
0.299 0.571 -0.122 -0.077 -0.075 0.119 0.064 -0.149 -0.061
```

The function `ccf` plots the cross-correlation function for two time series:

```
ccf(x, y, lag.max = NULL, type = c("correlation", "covariance"),  
     plot = TRUE, na.action = na.fail, ...)
```

By default, this function will plot the results. You can suppress the plot (to just view the function) with the argument `plot=FALSE`.

As an example of cross-correlations, we can use average ham prices in the United States. These are included in the `nutshell` package as `ham.price.ts`:

```
> library(nutshell)  
> data(ham.price.ts)  
> ccf(turkey.price.ts, ham.price.ts, plot=FALSE)
```

Autocorrelations of series 'X', by lag

```
-1.0833 -1.0000 -0.9167 -0.8333 -0.7500 -0.6667 -0.5833 -0.5000 -0.4167  
0.147 0.168 -0.188 -0.259 -0.234 -0.098 -0.004 0.010 0.231  
-0.3333 -0.2500 -0.1667 -0.0833 0.0000 0.0833 0.1667 0.2500 0.3333  
0.228 0.059 -0.038 0.379 0.124 -0.207 -0.315 -0.160 -0.084  
0.4167 0.5000 0.5833 0.6667 0.7500 0.8333 0.9167 1.0000 1.0833  
-0.047 -0.005 0.229 0.223 -0.056 -0.099 0.189 0.039 -0.108
```

You can apply filters to a time series with the `filter` function or convolutions (using fast Fourier transforms [FFTs]) with the `convolve` function.

## Time Series Models

Time series models are a little different from other models that we've seen in R. With most other models, the goal is to predict a value (the response variable) from a set of other variables (the predictor variables). Usually, we explicitly assume that there is no autocorrelation—that the sequence of observations does not matter.

With time series, we assume the opposite: we assume that previous observations help predict future observations (see [Figure 23-1](#)).

To fit an autoregressive model to a time series, use the function `ar`:

```
ar(x, aic = TRUE, order.max = NULL,  
    method=c("yule-walker", "burg", "ols", "mle", "yw"),  
    na.action, series, ...)
```

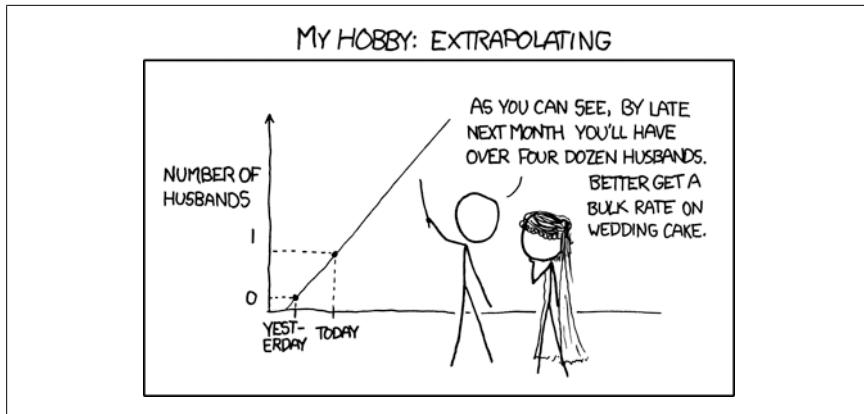


Figure 23-1. Extrapolating times series (<http://xkcd.com/605/>)

Here is a description of the arguments to `ar`.

| Argument                | Description  |   |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| <code>x</code>          | A time series.   |   |
| <code>aic</code>        | A logical value that specifies whether the Akaike information criterion is used to choose the order of the model.  | TRUE  |
| <code>order.max</code>  | A numeric value specifying the maximum order of the model to fit.  | NULL  |
| <code>method</code>     | A character value that specifies the method to use for fitting the model. Specify <code>method="yw"</code> (or <code>method="yule-walker"</code> ) for the Yule-Walker method, <code>method="burg"</code> for the Burg method, <code>method="ols"</code> for ordinary least squares, or <code>method="mle"</code> for maximum likelihood estimation. | <code>c("yule-walker", "burg", "ols", "mle", "yw")</code> |
| <code>na.action</code>  | A function that specifies how to handle missing values.  |   |
| <code>series</code>     | A character vector of names for the series.  |   |
| <code>demean</code>     | A logical value specifying if a mean should be estimated during fitting.   |   |
| <code>var.method</code> | Specifies the method used to estimate the innovations variance when <code>method="ar.burg"</code> .  |   |
| <code>...</code>        | Additional arguments, depending on method.   |   |

The `ar` function actually calls one of four other functions, depending on the fit method chosen: `ar.yw`, `ar.burg`, `ar.ols`, or `ar.mle`. As an example, let's fit an autoregressive model to the turkey price data:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(turkey.price.ts)
> turkey.price.ts.ar <- ar(turkey.price.ts)
> turkey.price.ts.ar
```

```
Call:
ar(x = turkey.price.ts)
```

```
Coefficients:
```

```

      1      2      3      4      5      6      7
0.3353 -0.1868 -0.0024  0.0571 -0.1554 -0.0208  0.0914
      8      9     10     11     12
-0.0658 -0.0952  0.0649  0.0099  0.5714

```

Order selected 12 sigma^2 estimated as 0.05182

You can use the model to predict future values. To do this, use the `predict` function. Here is the method for `ar` objects:

```
predict(object, newdata, n.ahead = 1, se.fit = TRUE, ...)
```

The argument `object` specifies the model object to use for prediction. You can use `newdata` to specify new data to use for prediction or `n.ahead` to specify a number of periods ahead to predict. The argument `se.fit` specifies whether to return standard errors of the prediction error.

Here is a forecast for the next 12 months for turkey prices:

```

> predict(turkey.price.ts.ar, n.ahead=12)
$pred
      Jan       Feb       Mar       Apr       May       Jun
2008 1.5439290 1.6971933 1.5849406 1.7800358 1.8827277 1.7209182
      Jul       Aug       Sep       Oct       Nov       Dec
2009 1.7715016 1.9416776 1.7791961 1.4822070 0.9894343 1.1588863
$se
      Jan       Feb       Mar       Apr       May       Jun
2008 0.2450732 0.2470678 0.2470864 0.2480176 0.2276439 0.2400967
      Jul       Aug       Sep       Oct       Nov       Dec
2009 0.2406938 0.2415644 0.2417360 0.2429339 0.2444610 0.2449850
2009

```

To take a look at a forecast from an autoregressive model, you can use the function `ts.plot`. This function plots multiple time series on a single chart, even if the times are not overlapping. You can specify colors, line types, or other characteristics of each series as vectors; the *i*th place in the vector determines the property for the *i*th series.

Here is how to plot the turkey price time series as a solid line, and a projection 24 months into the future as a dashed line:

```
ts.plot(turkey.price.ts,
        predict(turkey.price.ts.ar,n.ahead=24)$pred,
        lty=c(1:2))
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 23-2](#). You can also fit autoregressive integrated moving average (ARIMA) models in R using the `arima` function:

```
arima(x, order = c(0, 0, 0),
      seasonal = list(order = c(0, 0, 0), period = NA),
      xreg = NULL, include.mean = TRUE,
      transform.pars = TRUE,
      fixed = NULL, init = NULL,
```

```

method = c("CSS-ML", "ML", "CSS"),
n.cond, optim.method = "BFGS",
optim.control = list(), kappa = 1e6)

```

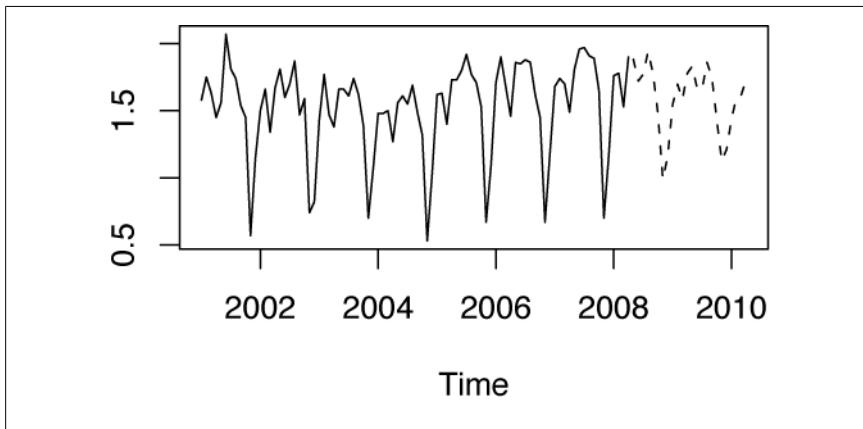


Figure 23-2. Forecast of turkey prices using an autoregressive model

Here is a description of the arguments to `arima`.

| Argument       | Description  | Default  |
|----------------|--|--|
| x              | A time series.   |  |
| order          | A numeric vector ( $p$ , $d$ , $q$ ), where $p$ is the AR order, $d$ is the degree of differencing, and $q$ is the MA order.   | <code>c(0, 0, 0)</code>                            |
| seasonal       | A list specifying the seasonal part of the model. The list contains two parts: the order and the period.   | <code>list(order = c(0, 0, 0), period = NA)</code> |
| xreg           | An (optional) vector or matrix of external regressors (with the same number of rows as $x$ ).  | NULL   |
| include.mean   | A logical value specifying whether the model should include a mean intercept term.   | TRUE   |
| transform.pars | A logical value specifying whether the AR parameters should be transformed to ensure that they remain in the region of stationarity.   | TRUE   |
| fixed          | An optional numeric vector specifying fixed values for parameters. (Only NA values are varied.)  | NULL   |
| init           | A numeric vector of initial parameter values.  | NULL   |
| method         | A character value specifying the fitting method to use. The default setting, <code>method="CSS-ML"</code> , uses conditional sum of squares to find starting values, then maximum likelihood. Specify <code>method="ML"</code> for maximum likelihood only or <code>method="CSS"</code> for conditional sum of squares only. | <code>c("CSS-ML", "ML", "CSS")</code>              |
| n.cond         | A numeric value indicating the number of initial values to ignore (used only for conditional sum of squares).  |  |
| optim.method   | A character value that is passed to <code>optim</code> as <code>method</code> .  | "BFGS"   |

| Argument      | Description  | Default             |
|---------------|--|---------------------|
| optim.control | A list of values that is passed to <code>optim</code> as <code>control</code> .                              | <code>list()</code> |
| kappa         | The prior variance for the past observations in a differenced model. See the help file for more information. | <code>1e-6</code>   |

The `arima` function uses the `optim` function to fit models. You can use the result of an ARIMA model to smooth a time series with the `tsSmooth` function. For more information, see the help file for `tsSmooth`.

# VI

---

## Additional Topics

This part of the book contains chapters on advanced topics that don't fit neatly into other parts of the book.





# 24

---

## Optimizing R Programs

In my experience, R runs well on modern computers and moderate-size data sets, returning results in seconds or minutes. If you're dealing with small data sets and doing normal calculations, you probably don't have to worry too much about performance. However, if you are dealing with big data sets or doing very complex calculations, then you could run into trouble.

This chapter includes some tips for making R run faster, especially when tackling unusually large or complicated problems.

### Measuring R Program Performance

To make your programs faster, you have to measure what they are doing. You have to determine what parts of your program are taking the most time to determine where to focus your optimization efforts. Additionally, you have to measure resource consumption (particularly memory usage) and determine how this affects performance.

#### Timing

The easiest way to measure your programs is to use the `system.time` function:

```
system.time(expr, gcFirst = TRUE)
```

This function will execute the expression `expr`, optionally running the garbage collector first (if `gcFirst=TRUE`). It won't give you a detailed report on where a program is spending its time, but it won't slow down the performance of the code you are measuring either. Here's an example:

```
> do.stuff <- function() {  
+   a <- 1 : 10000  
+   for (i in 1 : 10000)  
+     a[i] <- a[i]^2  
+   a  
+ }
```

```
> system.time(do.stuff())
  user  system elapsed
 0.081  0.001  0.106
```

This shows the user time, system time, and total elapsed time required to run your program. The user time shows the time taken by R itself, the system time shows the time used by your operating system (for example, to read files or to communicate with network resources), and the elapsed time shows the total elapsed time. This helps you distinguish between time that your computer is doing other things (like getting email), and time that it is doing work in R.

## Profiling

To measure where your R programs are spending their time (this is called *profiling*), you can use the `Rprof` function to profile your code:

```
Rprof(filename = "Rprof.out", append = FALSE, interval = 0.02,
      memory.profiling=FALSE)
```

`Rprof` accepts the following options:

| Argument         | Description   | Default            |
|------------------|---|--------------------|
| filename         | Specifies the path to which <code>Rprof</code> will write results. Use <code>NULL</code> to stop profiling. | <code>NULL</code>  |
| append           | Controls whether <code>Rprof</code> will append results to the file (if it exists), or overwrite the file   | <code>FALSE</code> |
| interval         | Specifies the time between samples  | <code>0.02</code>  |
| memory.profiling | Specifies whether to write memory information to the file   | <code>FALSE</code> |

After using `Rprof` to start and stop collecting profiling data, you use the `summaryRprof` function to view the results:

```
summaryRprof(filename = "Rprof.out", chunksize = 5000,
             memory=c("none", "both", "tseries", "stats"),
             index=2, diff=TRUE, exclude=NULL)
```

Here is a description of the arguments to `summaryRprof`:

| Argument  | Description  | Default                    |
|-----------|--|----------------------------|
| filename  | Specifies the path from which to read results.   | " <code>Rprof.out</code> " |
| chunksize | Number of lines to read at once  | 5000                       |
| memory    | Specifies how to show memory information. Specify <code>memory="none"</code> to exclude memory information, <code>memory="both"</code> to include both timing and memory data, <code>memory="tseries"</code> to present the data as a time series, or <code>memory="tstats"</code> to show statistics on memory consumption. | " <code>none</code> "      |
| index     | Specifies whether to write memory information to the file  | 2                          |
| diff      | Specifies whether to use changes in memory usage or total memory usage in memory statistics  | <code>TRUE</code>          |
| exclude   | Specifies a set of functions to exclude from the results   | <code>NULL</code>          |

Here's a quick example:

```
> # define a function to create arrays with text labels for each element
> # We'll revisit this example below
> labeled.array <- function(n) {
+   a <- 1:n
+   from <- "0123456789"
+   to <- "ABCDEFGHIJ"
+   for (i in 1:n) {
+     names(a)[i] <- chartr(from,to,i)
+   }
+   a
+ }
> # turn on profiling
> Rprof(filename="~/labeled.array.profiling.out"), memory.profiling=TRUE
> # do some work
> arrays <- list()
> for (i in 10:15) {
+   arrays[[as.character(2 ** i)]] <- labeled.array(2 ** i)
+ }
> # turn off profiling
> Rprof()
> # look at the output
> summaryRprof(filename="~/labeled.array.profiling.out")
$by.self
      self.time self.pct total.time total.pct mem.total
"names<-"        28.92    63.87      28.92    63.87    229.0
"labeled.array"   15.84    34.98      45.28   100.00    380.5
"chartr"          0.52     1.15       0.52     1.15      5.6

$by.total
      total.time total.pct mem.total self.time self.pct
"labeled.array"   45.28   100.00    380.5    15.84   34.98
"names<-"         28.92    63.87    229.0    28.92   63.87
"chartr"          0.52     1.15      5.6      0.52     1.15

$sample.interval
[1] 0.02

$sampling.time
[1] 45.28
```

As you can see, the names assignment in the `labeled.array` function consumed most of the time taken by this expression (63.87%). In contrast, the function `chartr` used 1.15%. So if you wanted to optimize this program, your best choice would be to optimize the assignment statement, not the character swap function.

## Monitor How Much Memory You Are Using

The function `gc` serves two purposes. First, it causes garbage collection to occur immediately, potentially freeing up storage space. Second, it displays statistics on free memory:

```
> gc()
  used  (Mb) gc trigger  (Mb)  max used  (Mb)
```

```
Ncells    774900 20.7      919870  24.6   3032449  81.0
Vcells  53549840 408.6  176511395 1346.7 380946917 2906.4
```

To check on the (approximate) size of a specific object, use the function `object.size`:

```
> object.size(1)
32 bytes
> object.size("Hello world!")
72 bytes
> object.size(audioscrobbler)
39374504 bytes
```

The function `memory.profile` displays information on memory usage by object type:

```
> memory.profile()
      NULL      symbol     pairlist     closure environment
      1          9479      160358      3360        1342
promise     language     special     builtin      char
  8162       44776          138       1294      48872
logical     integer     double     complex character
  4727       8373       2185          4      29761
      ...        any      list expression bytecode
      0          0       3488          2          0
externalptr  weakref     raw         54
  993        272       273      1008
```

To monitor how much memory R is using on a Microsoft Windows system, you can use the function `memory.size`. (On other platforms, this function returns the value `Inf` with a warning.) On startup, here is how much memory R used:

```
> memory.size()
[1] 10.58104
```

This function reports memory usage in MB. You can check the maximum amount of memory used so far through the `memory.size(max=TRUE)` option:

```
> memory.size(max=TRUE)
[1] 12.3125
```

## Profiling Memory Usage

To get more detailed statistics on memory usage in R, you can use the function `Rprofmem`:

```
Rprofmem(filename = "Rprofmem.out", append = FALSE, threshold = 0)
```

This function accepts the following arguments:

| Argument  | Description  | Default                       |
|-----------|--|-------------------------------|
| filename  | Pathname to which <code>Rprofmem</code> should write profiling data  | " <code>Rprofmem.out</code> " |
| append    | Specifies whether to append to an existing file or overwrite it  | FALSE                         |
| threshold | Specifies a threshold value for writing results; this specifies that only objects allocated on R's large vector heap of this size and above will be recorded | 0                             |

Another useful function in R is the `tracemem` function and the accompanying functions `untracemem` and `retracemem`:

```
tracemem(x)
untracemem(x)
retracemem(x, previous = NULL)
```

These functions will cause R to print a message whenever R code copes the specified object `x`, disables that functionality, or reenables it.

## Optimizing Your R Code

Once you figure out where your program is spending its time, you can focus on improving those areas. This section describes some common causes for poor performance and shows how to resolve them.

### Using Vector Operations

R is a functional language with built-in support for vector operations. Whenever possible, you should use vector operations in your code and not write iterative algorithms. This section explains why.

#### Iterative algorithms and vector operations

Let's consider a simple problem: calculating a vector with the square of every integer between 1 and `n`. Consider the following naive implementation:

```
> naive.vector.of.squares <- function(n) {
+   v <- 1:n
+   for (i in 1:n)
+     v[i] <- v[i]^2
+   v
+ }
> naive.vector.of.squares(10)
[1]  1  4  9 16 25 36 49 64 81 100
```

How does the performance of this function vary with `n`? Let's do a quick experiment:

```
> # 10,000 values
> system.time(naive.vector.of.squares(10000))
  user  system elapsed
  0.037  0.000  0.037
> # 10,000,000 values
> system.time(naive.vector.of.squares(10000000))
  user  system elapsed
30.211  0.233 30.178
```

As you can see, the time required to compute the vector varies linearly with the size of the vector (`n`). This makes sense: R is looping through all `n` elements in the vector and changing each element one at a time. (Note that R doesn't actually copy the vector `v` repeatedly inside the loop; see “[Objects Are Copied in Assignment Statements](#)” on page 54 for more about how this works.)

It turns out that there is a much better way to implement this function: you can use a single vector operation. Built-in vector functions like `^` are implemented natively in C or Fortran code and not calculated by the R interpreter, and are calculated in a single call to the underlying library. Many common math functions are included as native functions in R. In most cases, these functions are implemented as calls to external math libraries. For many reasons, these vector math operations can be much faster. As an example, let's re-implement the vector of squares function that we implemented above:

```
> better.vector.of.squares <- function(n) {  
+   (1:n)^2  
+ }
```

How does the better algorithm compare with the original? Let's try the two algorithms with inputs of size 10,000 and 10,000,000:

```
> # 10,000 values  
> system.time(better.vector.of.squares(10000))  
  user  system elapsed  
  0.001  0.000  0.000  
> # 10,000,000 values  
> system.time(better.vector.of.squares(10000000))  
  user  system elapsed  
  0.084  0.001  0.083
```

As you can see, `better.vector.of.squares` performs *much* better than `naive.vector.of.squares`; it's over 300 times as fast. Although many programmers find iterative algorithms like the one in `naive.vector.of.squares` more intuitive than vector operations like the one used in `better.vector.of.squares`, vector operations are much, much faster. Whenever possible, use vector operations in R.

### Transforming problems to use built-in functions

Clearly, R's built-in math functions perform better than algorithms coded in R. (As an obvious example, if you want to multiply two matrices together, you should probably use the `%*%` operator and not write your own matrix multiplication code in R.)

Often, it is possible to use built-in functions by transforming a problem. As an example, let's consider an example from queueing theory. Queueing theory is the study of systems where "customers" arrive, wait in a "queue" for service, are served, and then leave. As an example, picture a cafeteria with a single cashier. After customers select their food, they proceed to the cashier for payment. If there is no line, they pay the cashier and then leave. If there is a line, they wait in the line until the cashier is free. If we suppose that customers arrive according to a Poisson process and that the time required for the cashier to finish each transaction is given by an exponential distribution, then this is called an M/M/1 queue. (This means "memoryless" arrivals, "memoryless" service time, and one server.)

A very useful formula for queueing theory is Erlang's B formula. Picture a call center with  $n$  operators but no queue: if a customer calls the center and there is a free operator, then the operator will answer the customer's call. However, if every

operator is busy, the customer will get a busy signal. Further, let's make the same assumptions as above: customers arrive according to a Poisson process, and the time required to service each call is given by an exponential distribution. This is called an M/M/n/n queue. Erlang's B formula tells us the probability that all operators are busy at a given time; it is the probability that a customer who calls into the data center will get a busy signal:

$$p_l = \frac{r^c/c!}{\sum_{i=0}^c r^i/i!}$$

Unfortunately, you'll find that it's hard to calculate this value directly for more than a handful of operators because R can't handle numbers as big (or as small) as it needs to handle. One trick to perform this calculation is to transform this formula into formulas that are already implemented as R functions: Poisson distribution calculations:<sup>1</sup>

$$p_l = \frac{r^c/c!}{\sum_{i=0}^c r^i/i!} = \frac{e^{-r} r^c/c!}{e^{-r} \sum_{i=0}^c r^i/i!} = \frac{e^{-r} r^c/c!}{\sum_{i=0}^c e^{-r} r^i/i!}$$

So, to calculate Erlang's B formula in R, you could use an R function like this:

```
erlangb <- function(c, r) {dpois(c,r)/ppois(c,r)}
```

By using the built-in function, we are using compiled code written in a low-level language (usually C or Fortran, depending on the function). This code is typically faster than interpreted R code.

## Lookup Performance in R

You can use vector, lists, or environment objects to store objects in R and to look them up by key. But environment objects have two special features that they don't share with vectors or lists. First, environment objects are mutable. Secondly, environment objects are implemented in hash tables, so you can look up values in (essentially) constant time.

Even better, R allows you to define new functions for working with objects and use native R syntax to manipulate these objects. So it's possible to substitute environment objects for lists and vectors without rewriting all your existing code.

Let me explain how this works.

<sup>1</sup> Another alternative is to notice that Erlang's B formula can be rewritten as a recurrence and write a program to iteratively calculate the probability. For more details on this method, see a book like *Fundamentals of Queueing Theory* by Donald Gross et al. (Wiley-InterScience).

## Lookups and R objects

It's often useful to look up data in a table of values, and it is tempting to use names to look up items in R vectors. For small data sets, this is OK. Unfortunately, you might run into some performance problems with large tables. Let's take a closer look at the performance of table lookups in R.

To start with, let's build a large, labeled vector in R. To make things simple, I wrote a function to generate a labeled vector for a given input size. I filled each vector with sequential numerical values. Then I assigned each value a label by translating each value to a character string.

```
> labeled.array <- function(n) {  
+   a <- 1:n  
+   from <- "0123456789"  
+   to <- "ABCDEFGHIJ"  
+   for (i in 1:n) {  
+     names(a)[i] <- chartr(from,to,i)  
+   }  
+   a  
+ }
```

Here's an example of the output of this function:

```
> a.20 <- labeled.array(20)  
> a.20  
B C D E F G H I J BA BB BC BD BE BF BG BH BI BJ CA  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
```

Now let's do the same thing for environments. We'll create a new environment, specifying that a hash table should be used. Then we'll assign identical values to the `labeled.array` function:

```
> labeled.environment <- function(n) {  
+   e <- new.env(hash=TRUE, size=n)  
+   from <- "0123456789"  
+   to <- "ABCDEFGHIJ"  
+   for (i in 1:n) {  
+     assign(x=chartr(from, to, i), value=i, envir=e)  
+   }  
+   e  
+ }
```

Here are a couple of examples showing how you fetch values from the environment object:

```
> get("B", envir=e.20)  
[1] 1  
> get("CA", envir=e.20)  
[1] 20
```

Alternately, you can use the `[[` operator:

```
> e.20[["B"]]  
[1] 1  
> e.20[["CA"]]  
[1] 20
```

We'd like to show how long it takes to look up values in an array using different methods. Let's start by creating a set of arrays and environments for testing:

```
> arrays <- list()
> for (i in 10:15) {
+   arrays[[as.character(2 ** i)]] <- labeled.array(2 ** i)}
> environments <- list()
> for (i in 10:15) {
+   environments[[as.character(2 ** i)]] <- labeled.environment(2 ** i)}
```

Notice that I created a set of different size arrays and environments for testing. I created sets for different powers of 2, between 1,024 and 32,768.

Now the fun part. Let's write a test function to compute the time required to perform the lookups on different data objects. We'll design the test function so that we can vary the input data type, lookup operation, data size, and number of repetitions.

To do the calculations, I took advantage of a nifty R feature. R allows you to pass around R functions, then execute these expressions later. This allowed me to write a single lookup expression as a function and then apply this function to different data objects.

We will show how to do the lookup in a few different ways:

- by index
- by label, using the single-bracket lookup operator
- by label, using the double-bracket lookup operator with exact matches only (the default)
- by label, using the double-bracket lookup operator with inexact matches allowed

I performed 1,024 lookups for each lookup type and data size. Here is the script that I used to calculate the results:

```
test_expressions <- function(description, fun, data, reps) {
  # data should be a list
  # fun should be a function that takes a data object, length,
  #   and number of repetitions
  # description should be a char
  cat(paste(description, "\n"))
  results <- vector()
  for (n in names(data)) {
    results[[n]] <- system.time(fun(data[[n]],
      as.integer(n), reps))["user.self"]
  }
  print(results)
}

test_expressions(
  "first element, by index:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[1]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)
```

```

test_expressions(
  "last element, by index:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[1]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)

# useful definitons for translation
from <- "0123456789"
to <- "ABCDEFGHIJ"

test_expressions(
  "arrays, first element, by label, single bracket:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    min <- chartr(from,to,1)
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[min]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "arrays, last element, by label, single bracket:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    max <- chartr(from,to,1)
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[max]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "arrays, first element, by label, double bracket, exact (default):",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    min <- chartr(from,to,1)
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[[min]]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "arrays, last element, by label, double bracket, exact (default):",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    max <- chartr(from,to,1)
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[[max]]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "arrays, first element, by label, double bracket, not exact:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    min <- chartr(from,to,1)
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[[min, exact=FALSE]]}
  },

```

```
arrays, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "arrays, last element, by label, double bracket, not exact:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0
    max <- chartr(from,to,l)
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + d[[max, exact=FALSE]]}
  },
  arrays, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "environments, first element, by label:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0;
    min <- chartr(from,to,1);
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + get(x=min,envir=d)}
  },
  environments, 1024)

test_expressions(
  "environments, last element, by label:",
  function(d,l,r) {
    s <- 0;
    max <- chartr(from,to,l);
    for (v in 1:r) {s <- s + get(x=max,envir=d)}
  },
  environments, 1024)
```

Here are the results of running these tests on my computer (an aluminum MacBook, 2 GHz, 4 GB RAM):

```
first element, by index:  
1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768  
0.010 0.003 0.004 0.003 0.005 0.004
```

```
last element, by index:  
1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768  
0.010 0.004 0.004 0.004 0.003 0.004
```

```
arrays, first element, by label, single bracket:  
1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768  
0.268 0.282 0.588 1.439 2.728 5.397
```

```
arrays, last element, by label, single bracket:  
1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768  
0.173 0.278 0.582 1.517 2.713 5.266
```

```
arrays, first element, by label, double bracket, exact (default):  
1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768  
0.002 0.002 0.002 0.002 0.003 0.002
```

```
arrays, last element, by label, double bracket, exact (default):  
1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768  
0.036 0.070 0.136 0.273 0.549 1.107
```

```

arrays, first element, by label, double bracket, not exact:
 1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768
 0.010 0.003 0.003 0.002 0.003 0.003

arrays, last element, by label, double bracket, not exact:
 1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768
 0.042 0.069 0.137 0.275 0.551 1.112

environments, first element, by label:
 1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768
 0.012 0.005 0.006 0.006 0.005 0.005

environments, last element, by label:
 1024 2048 4096 8192 16384 32768
 0.012 0.005 0.006 0.005 0.006 0.005

```

Notice that lookups by array are fastest, followed by lookups of the first element using the double-bracket notation. Lookups with the single-bracket notation take substantially longer, but take approximately the same time as looking up the last element by double-bracket notation.

If you test this yourself with other array sizes, you'll find that the performance of lookups by index is essentially constant, but that lookups by reference scale linearly with the size of the array (in the worst case).

The reason is that vectors are implemented as an array of values and an array of names. Looking up a value by location takes essentially constant time. Looking up a value by label requires R to scan every label in the array of names. In the worst case, R has to scan every name in the array. When you use single-bracket notation, R tries to match all elements with a given label, including fuzzy matches. That means that R scans all the elements in the array when you use single-bracket notation. Using double-bracket notation works slightly better; R will return the first matching element that it finds, so it performs well when looking up the first element but badly when looking up the last.

For those of you with an algorithm background, here's a summary:

- Array value lookup by index:  $\Theta(1)$  time
- Array value lookup by label, using the single-bracket lookup operator: :  $\Theta(n)$  time
- Array value lookup by label, using the double-bracket lookup operator with exact matches only (the default):  $O(1)$  time
- Array value lookup by label, using the double-bracket lookup operator with inexact matches allowed:  $O(1)$  time

Notice that lookups in the environment are much, much faster. (If you look at other numbers of elements, you'll find that performance is essentially constant.) The reason for this is that environments are implemented using hash tables. Hash tables are slower than index lookups by a constant factor: it takes a little time to calculate the hash for an item. (By the way, I haven't checked exactly which hash implementation is used in R. Depending on the implementation, hash lookups could take up to  $O(n)$  time in the worst case.)

For those of you with an algorithm background, here's a summary:

- Environment value lookup by label: O(1) time on average

So what are the lessons here? First, if the performance of your program is OK, don't worry about what type of lookup you are using. Using environment objects can be less elegant and more confusing than vectors. It is usually more important to write correct code that you and other people can understand and maintain than it is to write fast code.

### Using environment objects in place of vectors

Suppose that you have measured the performance of your program and it's not good enough for your application. If you're looking up elements by index (and not by value), you should stick with vectors: vectors are slightly faster than environments. However, if your program contains a large number of lookups by label, you might consider replacing vectors with environments.

If you have already written a program that uses lots of single-bracket notation and want to switch to environments, you have two choices:

1. Change to the double-bracket operator. There are built in methods for both lookup (`[[`]) and assignment (`[[<-`]) for environment objects.
2. Redefine the single-bracket operator so that it works with environments. (Doing this isn't suggested, but it's possible.)

By default, single-bracket notation is implemented using a primitive function:

```
> `[`  
.Primitive("[")
```

The primitive function will return an error message when applied to environments; you can't just define a new method ` [.environment`]. As an alternative, you can create a wrapper around the primitive function that uses the `get` method for environments to look up the value:

```
`[` <- function(x, y, ...) {  
  if (class(x) == "environment")  
    get(x=y, envir=x)  
  else  
    .Primitive("[")(x,y,...)  
}
```

One final lesson: if you are looking up exactly one value in R, consider using the double-bracket notation (such as `x[[i]]`) and not the single-bracket notation (such as `x[i]`). As we showed above, the double-bracket operator will be at least as fast as the single-bracket operator when looking up values in vectors. Additionally, the double-bracket notation makes it easier to change your implementation to use environment objects for storage.

## Use a Database to Query Large Data Sets

If you need to query large tables of data, you should consider storing the values in a database. You don't need to use an external database; the RSQLite package provides an interface to the SQLite library that allows you to store data in files and query the files using SQL. (This is the strategy used by Bioconductor to store annotation databases.) See “[DBI](#)” on page 167 for more information on how to use this package.

## Preallocate Memory

In R, you don't have to explicitly allocate memory before you use it. For example, you could fill an array with numbers using the following code:

```
v <- c()  
for (i in 1:100000) {v[i] <- i;}
```

This code works correctly; however, it takes a long time to finish (about 30 seconds on my computer). You can speed up this code substantially by preallocating memory to the vector. You can do this by setting the `length`, `nrow`, `ncol`, or `dim` attributes for an object. Here is an example:

```
v2 <- c(NA)  
length(v2) <- 100000  
for (i in 1:100000) {v2[i] <- i;}
```

This code works identically but performs much, much faster.

## Cleaning Up Memory

As we noted above, you can use the `gc` function to force the garbage collector to run, potentially freeing up memory:

```
> gc()  
      used   (Mb) gc trigger   (Mb) max used   (Mb)  
Ncells    774900  20.7     919870  24.6   3032449  81.0  
Vcells  53549840 408.6  176511395 1346.7 380946917 2906.4  
> # remove a big object  
> rm(audioscrobbler)  
> gc()  
      used   (Mb) gc trigger   (Mb) max used   (Mb)  
Ncells    328394   8.8     919870  24.6   3032449  81.0  
Vcells  50049839 381.9  141209116 1077.4 380946917 2906.4
```

If you are running out of storage space on a Microsoft Windows platform, you can get or set the memory limit on a system with the function `memory.limit`:

```
> memory.limit()  
[1] 1023.484  
> memory.limit(size=1280)  
NULL  
> memory.limit()  
[1] 1280
```

On other platforms, this function will return `Inf` and print a warning message. On these platforms, you can use the function `mem.limits` to get or set memory limits:

```
mem.limits(nsize = NA, vsize = NA)
```

The argument `nsize` specifies the number of cons cells (basic units of storage).

If there are no explicit limits, this function may return `NA`:

```
> mem.limits()
nsize vsize
NA     NA
```

In R, you usually don't have to manually manage memory; the system automatically allocates and unallocates memory as needed. However, you can get some information on the process (and control it a little) through the function `gc`, as described earlier.

If you're running out of storage space, you might want to try removing objects from the workspace. You can remove an object (or a set of objects) from an environment with the `rm` function. By default, this function removes objects from the current environment:

```
> # remove a big object
> rm(audioscrobbler)
> gc()
      used   (Mb) gc trigger   (Mb) max used   (Mb)
Ncells  328394    8.8    919870   24.6   3032449   81.0
Vcells 50049839  381.9  141209116 1077.4 380946917 2906.4
```

## Functions for Big Data Sets

If you're working with a very large data set, you may not have enough memory to use the standard regression functions. Luckily, R includes an alternative set of regression functions for working with big data sets. These functions are slower than the standard regression functions but will work when there is not enough memory to use the standard regression functions:

```
library(biglm)
# substitute for lm, works in dataframes
biglm(formula, data, weights=NULL, sandwich=FALSE)
# substitute for glm, works in data frames
bigglm(formula, data, family=gaussian(),
        weights=NULL, sandwich=FALSE, maxit=8, tolerance=1e-7,
        start=NULL, quiet=FALSE, ...)
```

It's even possible to use `bigglm` on data sets inside a database. To do this, you would open a database connection using `RODBC` or `RSQLite` and then call `bigglm` with the `data` argument specifying the database connection and `tablename` specifying the table in which to evaluate the formula:

```
bigglm(formula, data, family=gaussian(),
       tablename, ..., chunkszie=5000)
```

# Other Ways to Speed Up R

Sometimes you can cheat a little bit: you can make R run faster without tuning your code. This section shows two ways to do that.

## The R Byte Code Compiler

Normally, R is an interpreted language.

But beginning in R 2.13.0, R has included a byte code compiler to speed up computations. As an example, let's consider the vector of squares function that we used above:

```
> naive.vector.of.squares
function(n) {
  v <- 1:n
  for (i in 1:n)
    v[i] <- v[i]^2
}
> system.time(naive.vector.of.squares(1000000))
  user  system elapsed
  3.025   0.016   3.036
```

Now we'll use the `cmpfun` function to create a compiled version of this function and then test its performance.

```
> library(compiler)
> compiled.naive.vector.of.squares <- cmpfun(naive.vector.of.squares)
> system.time(compiled.naive.vector.of.squares(1000000))
  user  system elapsed
  0.637   0.005   0.636
```

As you can see, the compiled version of this function runs much faster. Of course, it still runs more slowly than the vector operation:

```
> system.time(better.vector.of.squares(1000000))
  user  system elapsed
  0.008   0.000   0.008
```

And compiling the vector operation does not make a huge difference:

```
> better.vector.of.squares.compiled <- cmpfun(better.vector.of.squares)
> system.time(better.vector.of.squares.compiled(1000000))
  user  system elapsed
  0.007   0.000   0.007
```

But that doesn't mean you shouldn't try the compiler for your problem. It's one of the simplest tricks for speeding up your code. (It's even easier than ordering a new, faster server. And it's cheaper.)

## Manual compilation

Here's a description of the compiler functions. To compile an R expression, use the `compile` function:

```
compile(e, env = .GlobalEnv, options = NULL)
```

If you have assigned a function to variable, you can use the `cmpfun` function as a shorthand:

```
cmpfun(f, options = NULL)
```

If you have a large amount of code to compile, you can store it in file and use `cmpfile` to compile everything at once:

```
cmpfile(infile, outfile, ascii = FALSE, env = .GlobalEnv,  
verbose = FALSE, options = NULL)
```

Each of these functions allows you to specify a list of options:

#### *optimize*

The level of optimization; the default is 2.

#### *suppressAll*

Disables printing messages; default is `false`.

#### *suppressUndefined*

Suppressed messages about undefined variables if set to TRUE. If set to a vector of character values, suppresses messages about the names of variables in the list. Default is `c(".Generic", ".Method", ".Random.seed", ".self")`.

You can also set these options globally with the `setCompilerOptions` function, or find their current values with the `getCompilerOption` function. The argument `level` is an integer between 0 and 3 that describes how much compilation you would like:

0

Disables compilation

1

Compiles closures before first use

2

Compiles closures before first use, and closures before they are duplicated

3

Compiles closures before first use, closures before they are duplicated, and loops before they are executed

## Inspecting byte code

Printing a compiled function will show the original R code and a reference to the byte code:

```
> compiled.naive.vector.of.squares  
function(n) {  
  v <- 1:n  
  for (i in 1:n)  
    v[i] <- v[i]^2  
}  
<bytecode: 0x117f7db90>
```

To see the byte code, you can use the `disassemble` function:

```
> disassemble(compiled.naive.vector.of.squares)  
list(.Code, list(7L, GETBUILTIN.OP, 1L, PUSHCONSTARG.OP, 2L,
```

```

GETVAR.OP, 3L, PUSHARG.OP, CALLBUILTIN.OP, 4L, SETVAR.OP,
5L, POP.OP, GETBUILTIN.OP, 1L, PUSHCONSTARG.OP, 2L, GETVAR.OP,
3L, PUSHARG.OP, CALLBUILTIN.OP, 4L, STARTFOR.OP, 7L, 6L,
51L, GETVAR.OP, 5L, STARTSUBSET.OP, 8L, 35L, GETVAR_MISSOK.OP,
6L, PUSHARG.OP, DFLTSUBSET.OP, LDCONST.OP, 9L, EXPT.OP, 10L,
STARTASSIGN.OP, 5L, STARTSUBASSIGN.OP, 11L, 48L, GETVAR_MISSOK.OP,
6L, PUSHARG.OP, DFLTSUBASSIGN.OP, ENDASSIGN.OP, 5L, POP.OP,
STEPFOR.OP, 26L, ENDFOR.OP, INVISIBLE.OP, RETURN.OP), list(
{
  v <- 1:n
  for (i in 1:n) v[i] <- v[i]^2
}, `:`, 1, n, 1:n, v, i, for (i in 1:n) v[i] <- v[i]^2, v[i],
2, v[i]^2, `[-`(*tmp*, i, value = v[i]^2)))

```

### Just-in-time compilation

If you want to compile all of your R code as you are using it, you can enable just-in-time compilation with the `compiler` package. To do this, execute the function `enableJIT`:

```
$ enableJIT(level)
```

The argument `level` is an integer between 0 and 3 that is described above. You can also set the environment variable `R_ENABLE_JIT` to your desired compilation level (1, 2, or 3) to enable the JIT for everything you do in R.

However, before you set the default to level 3 for all computation, you should remember two things. First, it takes time to compile code. For very simple operations on small data sets, it might take more time to compile your code than to execute it. Secondly, the compiler is still experimental. It's possible that some code might execute differently after compilation, resulting in subtle and difficult-to-understand bugs. So make sure to use this feature carefully.

## High-Performance R Binaries

On some platforms (like Mac OS X), R is compiled with high-quality math libraries. However, the default libraries on other platforms (like Windows) can be sluggish. If you're working with large data sets or complicated mathematical operations, you might find it worthwhile to build an optimized version of R with better math libraries.

### Revolution R

Revolution Computing is a software company that makes a high-performance version of R. It offers both free and commercial versions, including a 64-bit build of R for Windows. For the latest version, check out its website: <http://www.revolution-computing.com/>.

Revolution R looks a lot like the standard R binaries (although a little outdated; at the time I was writing this book, Revolution was shipping Revolution R 1.3.0 included R 2.7.2, while the current version from CRAN was 2.10.0). The key difference is the addition of improved math libraries. These are multithreaded and can take advantage of multiple cores when available. There are two helper functions included

with Revolution R that can help you set and check the number of cores in use. To check the number of cores, use:

```
getMKLthreads()
```

Revolution R guesses the number of threads to use, but you can change the number yourself if it guesses wrong (or if you want to experiment). To set the number of cores explicitly, use:

```
setMKLthreads(n)
```

The help file suggests not setting the number of threads higher than the number of available cores.

## Building your own

Building your own R can be useful if you want to compile it to run more efficiently. For example, you can compile a 64-bit version of R if you want to work with data sets that require much more than 4 GB of memory. This section explains how to build R yourself.

**Building on Microsoft Windows.** The easiest way to build your own R binaries on Microsoft Windows is to use the Rtools software. The R compilation process is very sensitive to the tools that you use. So the Rtools software bundles together a set of tools that are known to work correctly with R. Even if you plan to use your own compiler, math libraries, or other components, you should probably start with the standard toolkit and incrementally modify it. That will help you isolate problems in the build process.

Here is how to successfully build your own R binaries (and installer!) on Microsoft Windows:

1. Download the R source code from <http://cran.r-project.org/src/base/>.
2. Download the “Rtools” software from <http://www.murdoch-sutherland.com/Rtools/>.
3. Run the Rtools installer application. Follow the directions to install Rtools. You can select most default options, but I do not suggest installing all components at this stage. (The “Extras to build R” needs to be installed in the source code directory to be useful. However, we don’t install those until steps 4 and 5. Unfortunately, you need other tools from the RTools software in order to execute steps 4 and 5, so we can’t change the order of the steps to avoid running the installer twice.) As shown in [Figure 24-1](#), you should select everything except “Extras to build R.” We’ll install that stuff later, so don’t throw out the tools installer yet. Also, if you use Cygwin, be sure to read the notes about conflicts with Cygwin DLLs (dynamic-link libraries). Be sure to select the option allowing Rtools to modify your PATH variable (or make sure to change it yourself).
4. Move the source code file to a build directory, open a command-line window (possibly with cmd), and change to the build directory. (Be sure to open the command shell after installing the Rtools and modifying your PATH. This will guarantee that the commands in the next few steps are available.)

5. Run the following command to unpack the source code into the directory R-2.9.2:

```
$ tar xvzf R-2.9.2.tar.gz
```

(Note that I used R-2.9.2.tar.gz. Change the command as needed for the R version you are installing.)

6. Rerun the Rtools setup program. This time, select only the “Extras to build R” component, and no other components. Install the components into the source code directory that you just unpacked. (For example, if you have installed R into C:\stuff\things, then select C:\stuff\things\R-2.9.2.)

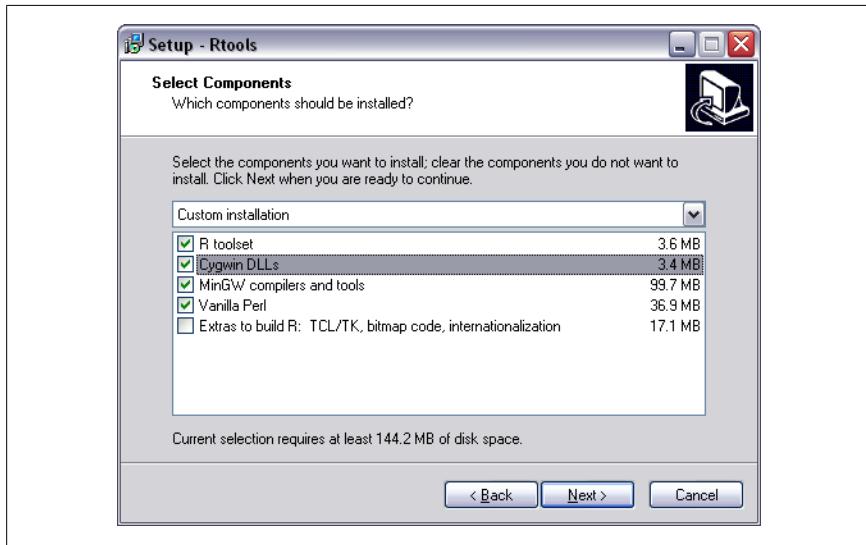


Figure 24-1. Selecting components in Rtools

7. At this point, you may install several additional pieces of software:
- (Optional) If you want to build Microsoft HTML help files, then download and install the Microsoft HTML Help Workshop from <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?FamilyID=00535334-c8a6-452f-9aa0-d597d16580cc>. Make sure the location where it is installed (for example, C:\Program Files\HTML Help Workshop) is included in the PATH.
  - (Optional) If you want to build your own R installer, then download and install Inno Setup from <http://www.jrsoftware.org/isinfo.php>. After you have done this, edit the file src\gnuwin32\MkRules in the R-2.9.2 directory. Change ISDIR to the location where Inno Setup was installed. (By default, this location is C:\Program Files\Inno Setup 5.)
  - (Optional) Download and install LaTeX if you want to build PDF versions of the help files. A suitable version is MiKTeX, from <http://www.miktex.org/>.

8. Return to the command window and change directories to the `src\gnuwin32` directory in the R sources (for example, `C:\stuff\things\R-2.9.2\src\gnuwin32`). Run the following command to build R:

```
$ make all recommended
```

9. To check that the build was successful, you can run the command:

```
$ make check
```

Or for more comprehensive checks:

```
$ make check-all
```

I found that the checks failed due to a silly error. (The checks included testing examples in libraries, so the test application tried to open a network connection to `http://foo.bar`, a hostname that could not be resolved.) Use your own discretion about whether the tests were successful or not.

10. If everything worked correctly, you can now try your own build of R. The executables will be located in the `R-2.9.2\bin` directory. The full GUI version is named `Rgui.exe`; the command-line version is `R.exe`.
11. If you would like to build your own installer, then execute the following command in the `src\gnuwin32` directory:

```
$ make distribution
```

(I got some errors late in the install process. The standard makefiles try to delete content when they're done. If you don't make it past building `rinstaller`, manually run `make cran`.) To check if the process worked, look for the installer in the `gnuwin32\cran` directory.

For more information about how to build R on Microsoft Windows platforms, see the directions in the R Installation and Administration Manual. (You can read the manual online at <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-admin.html>, or you can download a PDF from <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-admin.pdf>.)

**Building R on Unix-like systems.** Unix-like systems are by far the easiest systems on which to build R. Here is how to do it:

1. Install the standard development tools: gcc, make, perl, binutils, and LaTeX. (If you don't know if you have all the tools and are using a standard Linux version such as Fedora, you have probably already installed all the components you need. Unfortunately, it's outside the scope of this book to explain how to find and install missing components. Try using the precompiled binaries, or find a good book on Unix system administration.)
2. Download the R source code from <http://cran.r-project.org/src/base/>.
3. Run the following command to unpack the source code into the directory `R-2.10.0`:

```
$ tar xvzf R-2.10.0.tar.gz
```

(Note that I used `R-2.10.0.tar.gz`. Change the command as needed for the R version you are installing.)

4. Change to the R-2.10.0 directory. Run the following commands to build R:

```
$ ./configure  
$ make
```

5. To check that the build was successful, you can run the command:

```
$ make check
```

Or for more comprehensive checks:

```
$ make check-all
```

6. Finally, if everything is OK, run the following command to install R:

```
$ make install
```

These directions will work on Mac OS X if you want to build a command-line version of R or a version of R that works through the X Windows system. They will not build the full Mac OS X GUI.

**Building R on Mac OS X.** Building R on Mac OS X is a little trickier than building it on Windows or Linux systems because you have to fetch more individual pieces. For directions on how to compile R on Mac OS X, see <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-admin.html>. You may also want to read the FAQ file at <http://cran.cnr.Berkeley.edu/bin/macosx/RMacOSX-FAQ.html>, which gives some hints on how to build.



# 25

## Bioconductor

Most of this book is applicable across multiple areas of study, but this chapter focuses on a single field: bioinformatics. In particular, we're going to focus on the Bioconductor project. Bioconductor is an open-source software project for analyzing genomic data in R. Initially, it focused on just gene expression data, but it now includes tools for analyzing other types of data such as serial analysis of gene expression (SAGE), proteomic, single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP), and gene sequence data.

Biological data isn't much different from other types of data we've seen in the book: data is stored in vectors, arrays, and data frames. You can process and analyze this data using the same tools that R provides for other types of data, including data access tools, statistical models, and graphics.

Bioconductor provides tools for each step of the analysis process: loading, cleaning, and analyzing data. Depending on the type of data you are working with, you might need to use other software in conjunction with Bioconductor. For example, if you are working with Affymetrix GeneChip arrays, you will need to use the Affymetrix GeneChip Command Console software to scan the arrays and produce probe cell intensity data (CEL files) that can be loaded into R. You can then load the probe cell intensity files into Bioconductor for further processing.

This chapter provides a very brief overview of Bioconductor. In this chapter, we'll first look at an example, using publicly available gene expression data. Next, I'll describe some popular packages in Bioconductor. After that, I will describe some of the key data structures in Bioconductor. Finally, I'll provide some pointers for additional information.

### An Example

In this chapter, we will load a data set from NCBI's Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) website (<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/>). GEO is a public repository that archives and freely distributes microarray, next-generation sequencing, and other

forms of high-throughput functional genomic data submitted by the scientific community. It is one of many resources available through the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI), an organization that is part of the National Library of Medicine, and, in turn, part of the U.S. National Institutes of Health (NIH). This is a very useful resource when learning to use Bioconductor, because you can find not only raw data but also references to papers that analyzed that data.

As an example, we'll use the data files from GSE2034 (<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/projects/geo/query/acc.cgi?acc=GSE2034>), a study that looked for predictors of relapse-free breast cancer survival. (I used data from the same study as an example in “[Survival Models](#)” on page 428.) My goal was not to re-create the results shown in the original papers (which I did not do), but instead to show how Bioconductor tools could be used to load and inspect this data.

## Loading Raw Expression Data

Let's start with an example of loading raw data into R. We'll show how to load Affymetrix CEL files, which are output from Affymetrix's scanner software. If you would like to try this yourself, you can download the raw CEL files from [ftp://ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/pub/geo/DATA/supplementary/series/GSE2034/GSE2034\\_RAW.tar](ftp://ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/pub/geo/DATA/supplementary/series/GSE2034/GSE2034_RAW.tar).



The CEL files are immense: almost 1 GB compressed. See “[Loading Data from GEO](#)” on page 530 for instructions on how to get pre-processed expression files for this experiment.

Affymetrix is a leading provider of tools for genetic analysis, including high-density arrays, scanners, and analysis software. For this study, the authors used Affymetrix GeneChip Human Genome U133 Arrays,<sup>1</sup> which are used to measure the expression level of over 22,000 probe sets that translate to 14,500 human genes. These arrays work by measuring the amount of thousands of different RNA fragments using thousands of different probes. Each probe is 25 bases long. The CEL files contain scanner data for each probe for each sample. Data processing software (like Bioconductor) is used to translate combinations of probes to probe sets, which can, in turn, be mapped to genes. A probe set is composed of a set of perfect-match (PM) probes (for which all 25 bases match) and mismatch (MM) probes (for which the 13th base is reversed); the software measures the actual expression level of genes by comparing the two types of probes. Typically, each probe set comprises 11 to 20 different probes. Data for each sample is stored in a separate CEL file.

You can load these files into R as a single batch using `ReadAffy`. The `ReadAffy` function will load all files in the current working directory by default. If you are using a machine with a *lot* of memory and have placed the files in the directory `~/GSE2034/CEL`, you could load the data with the following commands:

```
> library(affy)  
> # assuming the files are in ~/GSE2034/CEL
```

1. See [http://www.affymetrix.com/products\\_services/arrayspecific/hgu133av2.affx](http://www.affymetrix.com/products_services/arrayspecific/hgu133av2.affx) for more information on this platform.

```
> setwd("~/GSE2034/CEL")
> GSE2034 <- ReadAffy()
```

I have 4 GB on my computer, which wasn't enough to read all the raw files into memory. So I took a subset of the CEL files for a random sample of subjects.

To pick the stratified sample, I used several R functions from outside Bioconductor. I used a stratified sample, selecting 50 subjects with no relapse and 50 with relapse. To select the set of filenames to load, I used the `strata` function from the `sampling` package to pick a set of GEO accession numbers to load. (These are the identifiers for each subject.) Next, I pasted the prefix ".CEL" on the end of each number to generate filenames. Finally, I passed this vector as an argument to `ReadAffy`.

Here is the code I used to read in the data:

```
> library(nutshell)
> data(GSE2034)
> library(sampling)
> setwd("~/Documents/book/data/GSE2034/CEL")
> GSE2034.fromcel.smpl <-
+   ReadAffy(filenames=paste(
+     GSE2034$strata(GSE2034,
+     stratanames="relapse",
+     size=c(50,50),
+     method="srswor"
+     )$ID_unit,
+     ]$GEO.accession.number,
+     ".CEL",
+     sep=""))
```

The `ReadAffy` function returns an `AffyBatch` object, containing unprocessed gene expression data:

```
> GSE2034.fromcel.smpl
AffyBatch object
size of arrays=712x712 features (16 kb)
cdf=HG-U133A (22283 affyids)
number of samples=100
number of genes=22283
annotation=hgu133a
notes=
```

Before we can analyze this data, we need to attach phenotype (patient) data, normalize the data, summarize by probe, and associate the expression data with annotation (gene symbol) data.

First, the sample names in the `AffyBatch` object match the filenames, not the identifiers (GEO accession numbers) in the patient data table:

```
> sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl)[1:10]
[1] "GSM36796.CEL" "GSM36834.CEL" "GSM36873.CEL" "GSM36917.CEL"
[5] "GSM36919.CEL" "GSM36938.CEL" "GSM36944.CEL" "GSM36965.CEL"
[9] "GSM36991.CEL" "GSM36993.CEL"
```

Let's clean up the sample names in the `AffyBatch` object so that we can match them to names in the patient data table. (We'll do that in [“Matching Phenotype Data” on page 532](#).)

```
> sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl) <-  
+   sub("\\.CEL$","",sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl))  
> sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl)[1:10]  
[1] "GSM36796" "GSM36834" "GSM36873" "GSM36917" "GSM36919" "GSM36938"  
[7] "GSM36944" "GSM36965" "GSM36991" "GSM36993"
```

An important step in data processing is quality control (QC). You want to make sure that no errors occurred in handling the experimental data or scanning the arrays. You can use the `qc` function in the `simpleaffy` package for quality control. This function calculates a set of QC metrics (recommended by Affymetrix) to check that arrays have hybridized correctly and that sample quality is acceptable. It returns an object of class `QCStats` that you can plot to check for problematic samples. As an example, we'll calculate QC metrics on the first 20 samples that we loaded into R. (I picked 20 so the plot would be readable in print.)

```
> myqc <- qc(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl[, 1:20])  
> plot(myqc, cex=0.7)
```

The results are shown in [Figure 25-1](#). Each line represents a separate sample. The vertical solid line in the middle of the diagram corresponds to zero fold change, the dotted line to the left and right to three fold downregulation and three fold upregulation change, respectively. The lines plotted on each row show which scale factors are acceptable. Good values are blue, suspicious are red, when viewed on screen. In this example, all the bars are acceptable. For more information on how to read this diagram, see the help file for `plot.qc.stats`.

Before analyzing the microarray data, it needs additional pre-processing. First, the raw data needs to be background corrected and normalized between arrays. You can do this with the Bioconductor `vsn` package, using the `vsn2` function. The `vsn2` function returns a `vsn` object containing background-corrected and normalized probe intensity data.

Next, the data needs to be log transformed, summarized by probe set, and transformed into an `ExpressionSet` that can be used in further analysis. As we noted above, CEL files include information on all probes; these need to be grouped into probe sets and adjusted for mismatches. Raw expression data values are exponentially distributed; a log transformation makes the distribution normal. You can do this through the `rma` function in the `affy` package.

If you don't plan to tweak parameters, you can execute both steps at once through the `vsnrma` function in the `vsn` package. (The `vsn` function requires a lot of memory to process large `AffyBatch` objects. My computer couldn't handle all 100 arrays at once, so I took a subset of 50 observations.)

```
> library(affy)  
> GSE2034.fromcel.smpl.vsnrma <- vsnrma(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl[,1:50])  
vsn2: 506944 x 50 matrix (1 stratum).  
Please use 'meanSdPlot' to verify the fit.  
Calculating Expression
```

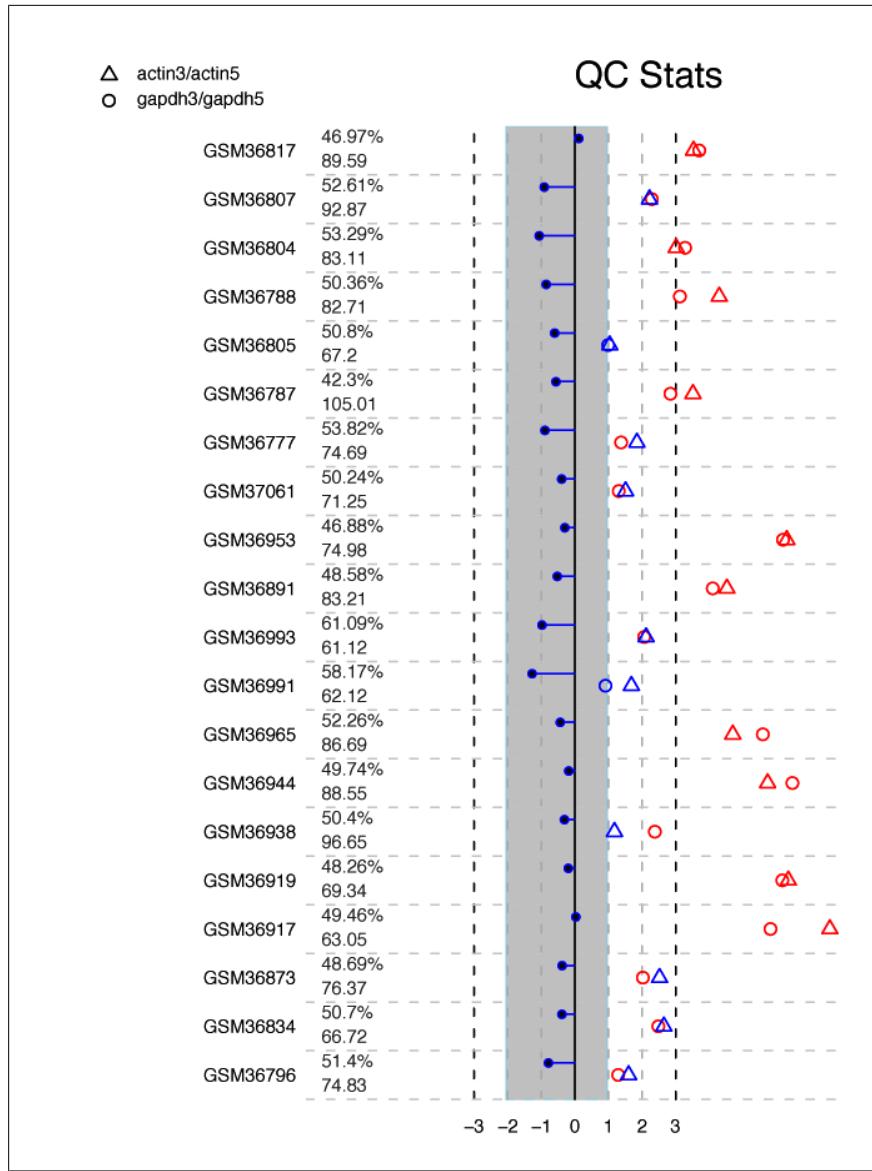
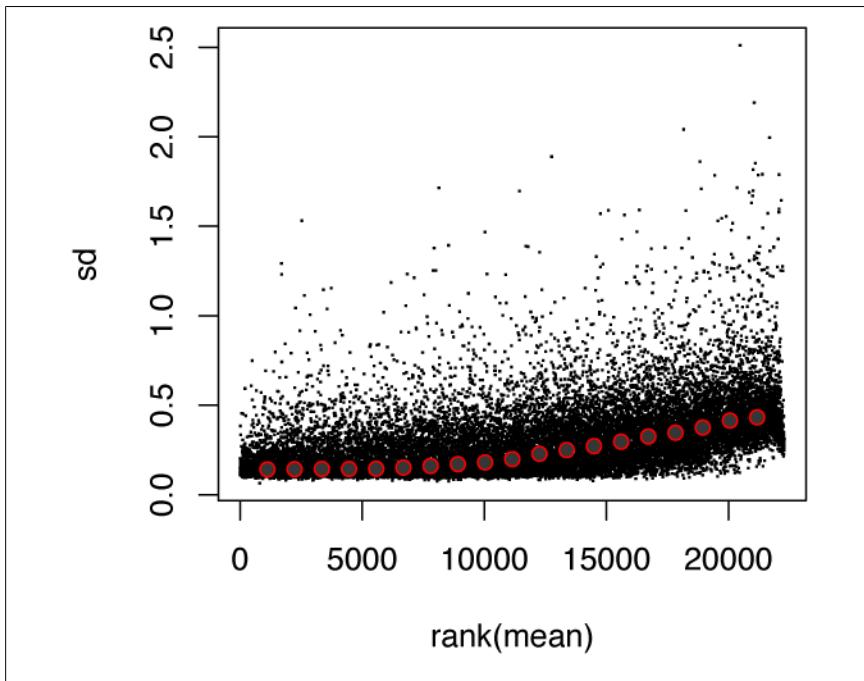


Figure 25-1. QC plot

Following the recommendation above (in the output of `vsn2`), let's use `meanSdPlot` to plot the row standard deviation versus row means for the output:

```
> meanSdPlot(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl.vsnrma)
```

The results are shown in [Figure 25-2](#).



*Figure 25-2. Row standard deviation versus row means, from meanSdPlot*

## Loading Data from GEO

In this specific case, we can cheat. This example uses a data set that was shared through GEO, so we can use the `getGEO` function in the `GEOquery` package to download preprocessed expression sets directly into R. (Clearly this won't work with data that isn't available on GEO, but it does make this step simpler.)

```
> library(GEOquery)
Loading required package: Biobase

Welcome to Bioconductor

Vignettes contain introductory material. To view, type
'openVignette()'. To cite Bioconductor, see
'citation("Biobase")' and for packages 'citation(pkgname)'.

Loading required package: RCurl
Loading required package: bitops
> GSE2034.geo <- getGEO("GSE2034")
Found 2 file(s)
GSE2034_series_matrix-1.txt.gz
trying URL 'ftp://ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/pub/geo/DATA/
  SeriesMatrix/GSE2034/GSE2034_series_matrix-1.txt.gz'
  ftp data connection made, file length 12800217 bytes
```

```
opened URL  
=====  
downloaded 12.2 Mb  
  
trying URL 'http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/query/  
acc.cgi?targ=self&acc=GPL96&form=text&view=full'  
Content type 'geo/text' length unknown  
opened URL  
.....  
  
downloaded 27.9 Mb  
  
File stored at:  
/var/folders/gj/gj60srEiEVq4hTWB51vMak+++TM/-Tmp-/Rtmpn09uT5/GPL96.soft  
GSE2034_series_matrix-2.txt.gz  
trying URL 'ftp://ftp.ncbi.nih.gov/pub/geo/DATA/  
SeriesMatrix/GSE2034/GSE2034_series_matrix-2.txt.gz'  
ftp data connection made, file length 1662337 bytes  
opened URL  
=====  
downloaded 1.6 Mb  
  
trying URL 'http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/query/  
acc.cgi?targ=self&acc=GPL96&form=text&view=full'  
Content type 'geo/text' length unknown  
opened URL  
.....  
  
downloaded 27.9 Mb  
  
File stored at:  
/var/folders/gj/gj60srEiEVq4hTWB51vMak+++TM/-Tmp-/Rtmpn09uT5/GPL96.soft
```

In this case, the object is a list of two ExpressionSet objects:

```
> class(GSE2034.geo)  
[1] "list"  
> class(GSE2034.geo[[1]])  
[1] "ExpressionSet"  
attr(,"package")  
[1] "Biobase"  
> GSE2034.geo  
$`GSE2034_series_matrix-1.txt.gz`  
ExpressionSet (storageMode: lockedEnvironment)  
assayData: 22283 features, 255 samples  
  element names: exprs  
phenoData  
  sampleNames: GSM36777, GSM36778, ..., GSM37031 (255 total)  
  varLabels and varMetadata description:  
    title: NA  
    geo_accession: NA  
    ...: ...  
    data_row_count: NA  
    (23 total)  
featureData  
  featureNames: 1007_s_at, 1053_at, ..., AFFX-TrpnX-M_at (22283 total)
```

```

fvarLabels and fvarMetadata description:
  ID: NA
  GB_ACC: NA
  ...: ...
  Gene.Ontology.Molecular.Function: NA
  (16 total)
  additional fvarMetadata: Column, Description
experimentData: use 'experimentData(object)'
Annotation: GPL96

$`GSE2034_series_matrix-2.txt.gz`
ExpressionSet (storageMode: lockedEnvironment)
assayData: 22283 features, 31 samples
  element names: exprs
phenoData
  sampleNames: GSM37032, GSM37033, ..., GSM37062 (31 total)
  varLabels and varMetadata description:
    title: NA
    geo_accession: NA
    ...: ...
    data_row_count: NA
    (23 total)
featureData
  featureNames: 1007_s_at, 1053_at, ..., AFFX-TrpnX-M_at (22283 total)
  fvarLabels and fvarMetadata description:
    ID: NA
    GB_ACC: NA
    ...: ...
    Gene.Ontology.Molecular.Function: NA
    (16 total)
  additional fvarMetadata: Column, Description
experimentData: use 'experimentData(object)'
Annotation: GPL96

```

In the rest of this chapter, I'll focus on the first object in the list:

```
> GSE2034.geo1 <- GSE2034.geo[[1]]
```

## Matching Phenotype Data

Neither the CEL files nor the series matrix files from GEO contain clinical information. In “[Survival Models](#)” on page 428, we used a file from GEO containing the experimental outcomes for this experiment, including an indicator of which patients experienced a relapse and the time until relapse or last checkup. We’ll add this information to the AffyBatch file by matching observations in the GSE2034 data set to the expression data. We can add data to the files created from the CEL files using the following code:

```

> matches <- match(
+   subset(GSE2034,
+     GSE2034$GEO.asscession.number %in%
+     sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl))$GEO.asscession.number,
+     sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl))
> phenoData(GSE2034.fromcel.smpl) <- new(
+   "AnnotatedDataFrame",

```

```
+   data=subset(GSE2034,
+     GSE2034$GEO.asscession.number %in%
+     sampleNames(GSE2034.fromcel.smp1))[matches,])
```

To add patient information to the matrix files from GEO, we'll use a slightly different strategy. Loading the matrix files created `ExpressionSet` objects that were already tagged with phenotype information. Instead of replacing this information, we'll just add more patient information. (Again, notice that I'm using R code to create the new data frame of phenotype data and the data frame with variable metadata. There's nothing fancy about Bioconductor; it's just a set of R functions for dealing with a certain type of data.)

```
> # matching in new version
> matches <- match(
+   subset(GSE2034,
+     GSE2034$GEO.asscession.number %in%
+     sampleNames(GSE2034.geo1))$GEO.asscession.number,
+   sampleNames(GSE2034.geo1))
> names(GSE2034) <- c("PID", "geo_accession", "lymph.node.status",
+ "months.to relapse.or.last.followup", "relapse", "ER.Status",
+ "Brain.relapses")
> GSE2034.pdata <- merge(pData(GSE2034.geo1),GSE2034[,2:7])
> GSE2034.varMetadata <- rbind(varMetadata(GSE2034.geo1),
+ data.frame(row.names=names(GSE2034)[3:7],labelDescription=rep(NA,5)))
> pData(GSE2034.geo1) <- GSE2034.pdata
> varMetadata(GSE2034.geo1) <- GSE2034.varMetadata
```

## Analyzing Expression Data

As an analysis example, I'll use the file downloaded in “[Loading Data from GEO](#)” on page 530. The expression set we are examining contains 22,283 features on 255 subjects. Fitting a model to a data set this large could take a long time, so we'll start the analysis by filtering out some probes. Specifically, we'll filter out probes with low variance using the `nsFilter` function in the `genefilter` package:

```
> annotation(GSE2034.geo1)
[1] "GPL96"
> # there is no GPL96 annotation package that is easily available,
> # though this is the same as affy hgu133a, so use that instead
> annotation(GSE2034.geo1) <- "hgu133a"
> library(genefilter)
> GSE2034.geo1.f <- nsFilter(GSE2034.geo1, var.cutoff=0.5)
```

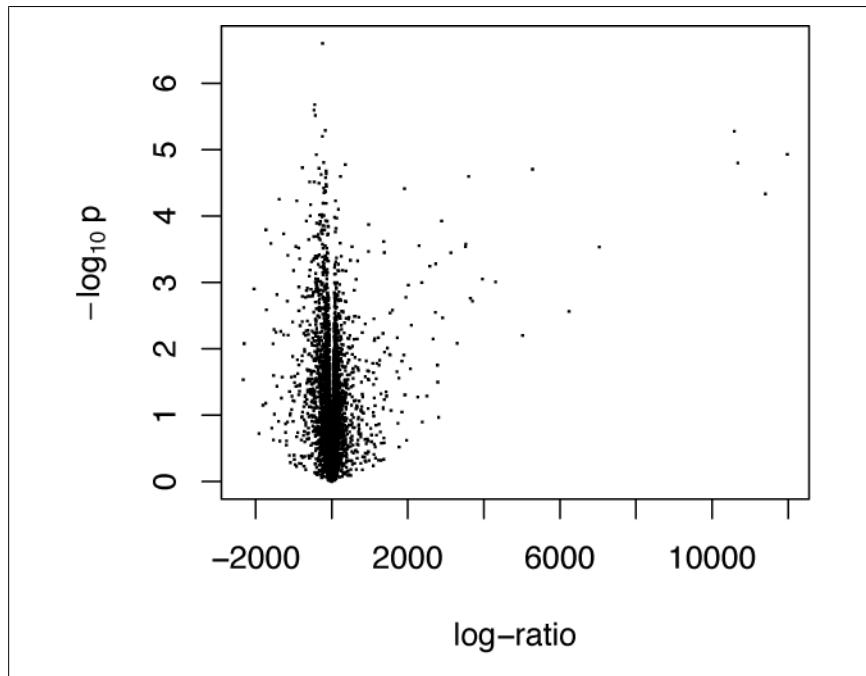
The filtered expression set contains only 6,534 features, which is much more manageable. Let's start by drawing a “volcano plot” using the expression data. To draw the plot, we'll start by calculating a *t*-test on each row, segmenting observations based on relapse status:

```
> tt <- rowttests(GSE2034.geo1.f$eset, "relapse")
```

Next, we'll plot the log of the *p*-value (from the *t*-test) for each probe versus the difference in group means. (Both are included in the output of the `rowttests` function.)

```
> plot(tt$dm, -log10(tt$p.value), pch=".",
+       ylab=expression(-log[10]^~p))
```

The plot is shown in [Figure 25-3](#). As you can see, there are a few values far to the right of the plot.



*Figure 25-3. Volcano plot of filtered GSE2034 data*

In the original paper on this study, the authors fit a Cox proportional hazard model using the expression data. We can do the same thing, using the `rbsurv` package from Bioconductor, which stands for “robust survival” analysis. The `rbsurv` function allows you to fit a model to an expression object, choosing predictive variables using  $n$ -fold cross-validation. I chose to restrict the model to 75 genes, and the fitting to six iterations of threefold validation to keep the running time manageable (though this function still required an hour to fit the model):

```
> library(rbsurv)
Loading required package: survival
Loading required package: splines
> GSE2034.rbsurv <- rbsurv(
+   time=pData(GSE2034.geo1.f$eset)$months.to.relapse.or.last.followup,
+   status=pData(GSE2034.geo1.f$eset)$relapse,
+   x=assayData(GSE2034.geo1.f$eset)$exprs,
+   gene.ID=row.names(assayData(GSE2034.geo1.f$eset)$exprs),
+   max.n.genes=75,
+   n.fold=3,
+   n.iter=6)
Please wait... Done.
```

This function uses bootstrap resampling to generate the robust estimate, so you may get different results, depending on the state of your random number generator. This function returns a list containing a number of different objects:

```
> typeof(GSE2034.rbsurv)
[1] "list"
> names(GSE2034.rbsurv)
[1] "n.genes"      "n.samples"    "method"       "n.ITER"       "n.fold"
[6] "covariates"   "model"        "gene.list"
```

We can take a look at the coefficients in the fitted model to see which probes are significant. Not surprisingly, with over 6,000 predictors, there are a lot of genes that are highly correlated with relapse-free survival time. The fitted model contained 62 probes; here are the first 20:

```
> GSE2034.rbsurv$model[1:20]
  Seq Order      Gene nloglik AIC Selected
  0   1     0          0 495.16 990.32
110  1     1 221286_s_at 487.39 976.79 *
  2   1     2 209096_at 481.33 966.65 *
  3   1     3 201817_at 475.60 957.20 *
  4   1     4 214459_x_at 471.54 951.08 *
  5   1     5 207165_at 468.15 946.30 *
  6   1     6 211430_s_at 465.70 943.40 *
  7   1     7 203218_at 458.58 931.16 *
  8   1     8 209539_at 455.17 926.33 *
  9   1     9 202666_s_at 452.74 923.48 *
10   1    10 222201_s_at 449.92 919.83 *
11   1    11 212898_at 445.67 913.34 *
12   1    12 216598_s_at 441.15 906.29 *
13   1    13 203530_s_at 440.51 907.01 *
14   1    14 201178_at 437.32 902.63 *
15   1    15 203764_at 435.25 900.49 *
16   1    16 202324_s_at 435.14 902.27 *
17   1    17 220757_s_at 434.71 903.41 *
18   1    18 201010_s_at 433.90 903.80 *
19   1    19 218919_at 432.35 902.70 *
```

The `gene.list` element contains the Affymetrix probe names from a Human Genome U133A Array:

```
> annotation(GSE2034.geo1)
[1] "hgu133a"
```

To show a list of gene symbols corresponding to these probes, we can use the `getSYMBOL` function from the `annotate` package:

```
> library(annotate)
> getSYMBOL(GSE2034.rbsurv$gene.list, "hgu133a")
  221286_s_at    209096_at    201817_at    214459_x_at
  "MGC29506"     "UBE2V2"      "UBE3C"      "HLA-C"
  207165_at     211430_s_at    203218_at    209539_at
  "HMMR"         "IGHG3"       "MAPK9"      "ARHGEF6"
  202666_s_at    222201_s_at    212898_at    216598_s_at
  "ACTL6A"        "CASP8AP2"    "KIAA0406"    "CCL2"
  203530_s_at    201178_at     203764_at    202324_s_at
  "STX4"          "FBXO7"       "DLGAP5"     "ACBD3"
```

|             |               |             |                |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 220757_s_at | 201010_s_at   | 218919_at   | 200726_at      |
| "UBXN6"     | "TXNIP"       | "ZFAND1"    | "PPP1CC"       |
| 221432_s_at | 215088_s_at   | 215379_x_at | 219215_s_at    |
| "SLC25A28"  | "hCG_1776980" | "CKAP2"     | "SLC39A4"      |
| 204252_at   | 212900_at     | 209380_s_at | 209619_at      |
| "CDK2"      | "SEC24A"      | "ABCC5"     | "CD74"         |
| 208843_s_at | 203524_s_at   | 209312_x_at | 222077_s_at    |
| "GORASP2"   | "MPST"        | "HLA-DRB1"  | "RACGAP1"      |
| 202824_s_at | 212687_at     | 221500_s_at | 217258_x_at    |
| "TCEB1"     | "LIMS1"       | "STX16"     | "IVD"          |
| 205034_at   | 201849_at     | 201664_at   | 215946_x_at    |
| "CCNE2"     | "BNIP3"       | "SMC4"      | "IGLL3"        |
| 219494_at   | 208757_at     | 221671_x_at | 212149_at      |
| "RAD54B"    | "TMED9"       | "IGKC"      | "EFR3A"        |
| 202969_at   | 209831_x_at   | 204641_at   | 217378_x_at    |
| "DYRK2"     | "DNASE2"      | "NEK2"      | "LOC100130100" |
| 204670_x_at | 211761_s_at   | 205812_s_at | 216401_x_at    |
| "HLA-DRB5"  | "CACYBP"      | "SULT1C4"   | "LOC652493"    |
| 217816_s_at | 201368_at     | 209422_at   | 213391_at      |
| "PCNP"      | "ZFP36L2"     | "PHF20"     | "DPY19L4"      |
| 208306_x_at | 201288_at     | 206102_at   |                |
| "HLA-DRB4"  | "ARHGDIIB"    | "GINS1"     |                |

To get more information on these probes, we can use functions from the `anaffy` package to annotate the results. This package can provide a lot of information on each probe; the function `aaf.handler` shows the available fields:

```
> aaf.handler()
[1] "Probe"                 "Symbol"                "Description"
[4] "Chromosome"           "Chromosome Location" "GenBank"
[7] "Gene"                  "Cytoband"              "UniGene"
[10] "PubMed"               "Gene Ontology"        "Pathway"
```

Let's include the Probe, Symbol, Description, PubMed ID, Gene Ontology, and Pathway for each probe. To do this, we first create an `aafTable` object with the annotation information and then save it as an HTML file so we can view it:

```
> anntable <- aafTableAnn(probeid=GSE2034.rbsurv$gene.list,
+                           chip="hg133a.db",
+                           colnames=c("Probe", "Symbol", "Description",
+                                     "PubMed", "Gene Ontology", "Pathway"))
> saveHTML(anntable, filename="~/results.html")
```

Figure 25-4 shows a screen shot of the results. As you can see, the annotation package can provide a lot of supplemental information about each probe, hopefully allowing you to learn something interesting from the experiment.

Bioconductor Affymetrix Probe Listing

file:///Users/josephadler/results.html

Google

**Bioconductor Affymetrix Probe Listing**

| Probe                       | Symbol   | Description                                  | PubMed              | Gene Ontology  | Pathway  |
|-----------------------------|----------|--|---------------------|--|--|
| <a href="#">221286_s_at</a> | MGC29506 | hypothetical protein MGC29506                | <a href="#">5</a>   | extracellular region<br>cytoplasm<br>apoptosis   |  |
| <a href="#">209096_at</a>   | UBE2V2   | ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme E2 variant 2    | <a href="#">22</a>  | protein polyubiquitination<br>DNA double strand break processing<br>protein binding<br>nucleus<br>cytoplasm<br>regulation of DNA repair<br>ubiquitin-dependent protein catabolic process<br>cell proliferation<br>small conjugating protein ligase activity<br>UBC13-MMS2 complex<br>regulation of protein metabolic process |  |
| <a href="#">201817_at</a>   | UBE3C    | ubiquitin protein ligase E3C                 | <a href="#">9</a>   | protein polyubiquitination<br>ubiquitin-protein ligase activity<br>protein binding<br>nucleus<br>cytosol<br>protein modification process<br>ubiquitin-dependent protein catabolic process<br>ligase activity<br>acid-amino acid ligase activity<br>protein complex   | <a href="#">Ubiquitin mediated proteolysis</a>   |
| <a href="#">214459_x_at</a> | HLA-C    | major histocompatibility complex, class I, C | <a href="#">488</a> | antigen processing and presentation of peptide antigen<br>via MHC Class I<br>extracellular region<br>plasma membrane<br>integral to plasma membrane<br>immune response<br>immune response<br>membrane  | Cell adhesion molecules (CAMs)<br>Antigen processing and presentation<br>Natural killer cell mediated cytotoxicity ... |

Figure 25-4. Screen shot of Safari showing annotated results from the GSE2034.rbsurv model

Finally, you can use R to visualize the expression levels using a heat map. Heat maps are like image plots or level plots, but automatically reorder observations using clustering to show hot or cold spots. To make the diagram legible, we'll pick 50 subjects: 25 with relapse, 25 without:

```
> relapse.df <- data.frame(row.names=GSE2034.geo1$geo_accession,
+                           relapse=GSE2034.geo1$relapse)
> library(sampling)
> smpl <- strata(relapse.df, c("relapse"), size=c(25,25), method="strwor")
```

Now let's plot the heat map using R's heatmap function. By default, R uses hierarchical clustering to group similar observations together. Dendograms are plotted in the margins showing the clustering. Heat maps are plotted with colors ranging from yellow to red on screen, though you can use the col parameter to control the color palette. Here is the code that I used to generate the heat map shown in Figure 25-5:

```
> heatmap(assayData(GSE2034.geo1.f$eset)$exprs[
+           GSE2034.rbsurv$gene.list,smpl$ID_unit],
+           Colv=smpl$relapse, cexRow=0.45, cexCol=0.45)
```

## Key Bioconductor Packages

The Bioconductor repository contains over 300 packages for working with genetic data. Below is a list of some popular packages, with short descriptions of the classes and functions that they contain.

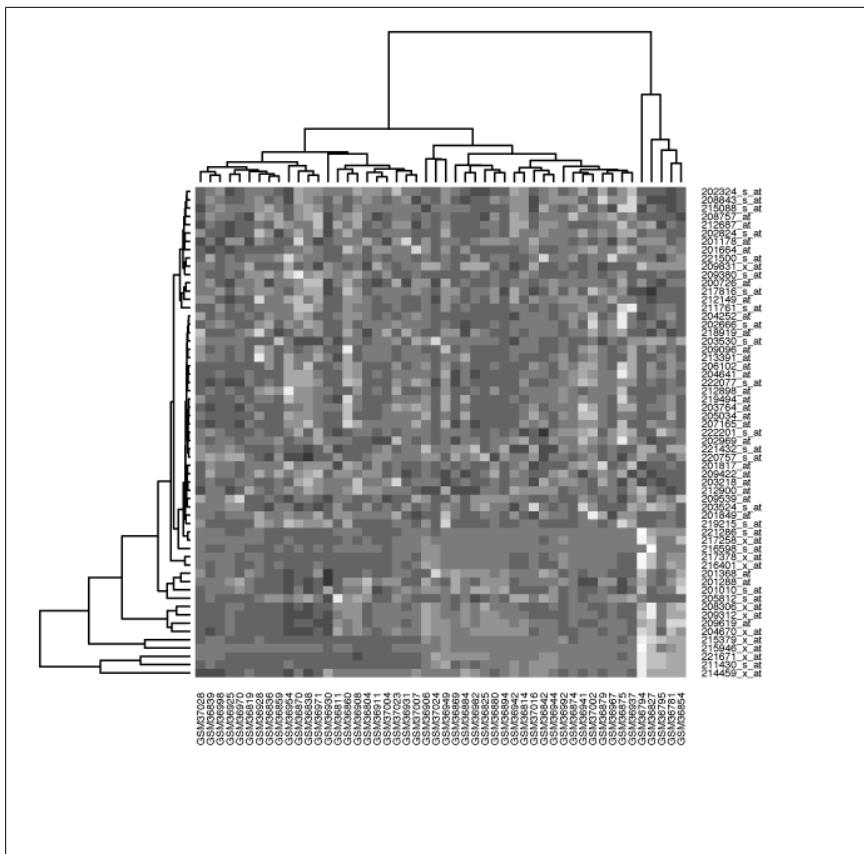


Figure 25-5. Heat map showing expression level for 50 subjects

| Category                | Package      | Description   |
|-------------------------|--------------|---|
| Loading, pre-processing | aCGH         | Classes and functions for array comparative genomic hybridization data. Functions for reading aCGH data from image analysis output files and clone information files and for creating aCGH S3 objects for storing these data. Basic methods for accessing/replacing, subsetting, printing, and plotting aCGH objects. |
|                         | affy         | Methods for Affymetrix oligonucleotide arrays. Includes class definitions for representing microarray data. Also includes methods for importing data, quality control, and normalization.   |
|                         | affyQCReport | A package to generate QC reports for Affymetrix array data.   |
|                         | arrayQuality | Functions for performing print-run and array-level quality assessment.  |
|                         | gcrma        | Background adjustment using sequence information. The main function <code>gcrma</code> converts background-adjusted probe intensities to expression measures using the same normalization and summarization methods as RMA (robust multiarray average).   |

| Category   | Package    | Description  |
|------------|------------|--|
| Annotation | limma      | limma is an R package for the analysis of gene expression microarray data, especially the use of linear models for analyzing designed experiments and the assessment of differential expression.   |
|            | lumi       | Functions to preprocess Illumina microarray (BeadArray) data. It includes functions of Illumina data input, quality control, variance stabilization, normalization, and gene annotation.   |
|            | marray     | Diagnostic plots and normalization of cDNA microarray data.  |
|            | oligo      | The oligo package includes tools for preprocessing data from oligonucleotide arrays. It supports all microarray designs provided by Affymetrix and NimbleGen: expression, tiling, SNP, and exon arrays.  |
|            | prada      | Tools for analyzing and navigating data from high-throughput phenotyping experiments based on cellular assays and fluorescent detection (flow cytometry [FACS], high-content screening microscopy).  |
|            | PROcess    | The PROcess package contains a collection of functions for processing spectra (particularly, Ciphergen SELDI-TOF spectra for proteomic data) to remove baseline drifts, if any, detect peaks, and align them to a set of protobiomarkers.                                      |
|            | Ringo      | Tools for working with two-color oligoarrays (particularly NimbleGen arrays). Stands for R Investigation of NimbleGen Oligoarrays.   |
|            | simpleaffy | Provides high-level functions for reading affy .CEL files and phenotypic data and then computing simple things with it, such as t-tests, fold changes, and the like. Also has some basic scatter plot functions and mechanisms for generating high-resolution journal figures. |
|            | vsn        | Variance stabilization and calibration for microarray data. The package implements a method for normalizing microarray intensities, both between colors within an array and between arrays.  |
|            | annotate   | The basic purpose of annotate is to supply interface routines that support user actions that rely on the different metadata packages provided through the Bioconductor Project.  |
| Analysis   | annaffy    | This package is designed to help interface between Affymetrix analysis results and web-based databases. It provides classes and functions for accessing those resources both interactively and through statically generated HTML pages.  |
|            | annBuilder | annBuilder constructs annotation data packages for given sets of genes with known mappings to GenBank accession numbers, UniGene identifiers, Image identifiers, or Entrez Gene identifiers.   |
|            | biomaRt    | Interface to BioMart databases (e.g., Ensembl, Wormbase, and Gramene).   |
|            | G0stats    | A set of tools for interacting with Gene Ontology (GO) and microarray data. A variety of basic manipulation tools for graphs, hypothesis testing, and other simple calculations.   |
|            | affypdnn   | Probe-dependent nearest neighbors for affy probes.   |
|            | affyPLM    | Methods for fitting probe-level models.  |
|            | bioDist    | A collection of software tools for calculating distance measures.  |

| Category      | Package      | Description   |
|---------------|--------------|---|
| Analysis      | factDesign   | This package provides a set of tools for analyzing data from a factorial designed microarray experiment or any microarray experiment for which a linear model is appropriate. The functions can be used to evaluate tests of contrast of biological interest and perform single outlier detection.    |
|               | genefilter   | Methods for filtering genes from microarray experiments.  |
|               | GSEABase     | This package provides classes and methods to support Gene Set Enrichment Analysis (GSEA).   |
|               | hopach       | Hierarchical Ordered Partitioning and Collapsing Hybrid.  |
|               | MLInterfaces | Uniform interfaces to machine learning code for data in Bioconductor containers. Includes clustering, classification, and regression algorithms.  |
|               | limma        | <code>limma</code> is an R package for the analysis of gene expression microarray data, especially the use of linear models for analyzing designed experiments and the assessment of differential expression.   |
|               | marray       | Diagnostic plots and normalization of cDNA microarray data.   |
|               | multtest     | The <code>multtest</code> package contains a collection of functions for multiple hypothesis testing. These functions can be used to identify differentially expressed genes in microarray experiments (i.e., genes whose expression levels are associated with a response or covariate of interest). |
|               | ROC          | Functions for calculating and plotting receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curves with microarray data.   |
|               | simpleaffy   | Provides high-level functions for reading Affy.CEL files and phenotypic data and then computing simple things with it, such as <i>t</i> -tests, fold changes, and the like. Also has some basic scatter plot functions and mechanisms for generating high-resolution journal figures.                 |
| Visualization | affycomp     | Graphical tools for assessing Affymetrix expression measures. These tools rely on two studies: a dilution study and a spike-in study.   |
|               | geneplotter  | Graphics-related functions for Bioconductor.  |
|               | graph        | The <code>graph</code> package provides an implementation of graphs (the kind with nodes and edges) in R.   |
|               | RBGL         | Provides an interface to graph algorithms (such as shortest path, connectivity, etc.).  |
|               | Rgraphviz    | Provides graph-rendering functionality. Different layout algorithms are provided, and parameters like node plotting, line type, and color can be controlled by the user.  |
| SNP           | SNPchip      | This package defines classes and functions for plotting copy number and genotype in high-throughput SNP platforms such as Affymetrix and Illumina. In particular, <code>SNPchip</code> is a useful add-on to the <code>oligo</code> package for visualizing SNP-level estimates after preprocessing.  |
|               |              |   |

| Category  | Package    | Description   |
|-----------|------------|---|
| Utilities | Biobase    | Biobase contains standardized data structures to represent genomic data.  |
|           | Biostrings | Memory-efficient string containers, string-matching algorithms, and other utilities, for fast manipulation of large biological sequences or set of sequences. |
|           | BSgenome   | Infrastructure shared by all the Biostrings-based genome data packages.   |
|           | convert    | Tools to convert between limma, marray, and Biobase data objects.   |

## Data Structures

One of the best features of Bioconductor is the use of structured data to represent biological concepts. This section presents a few important classes that are used through Bioconductor.

Bioconductor classes are implemented using formal class methods; see [Chapter 10](#) for more details. Most of these classes inherit from the basic classes in the `Biobase` package, so you can use the same methods to work with different types of objects. For example, you can use the same method to read phenotype data for expression data from different vendors (such as Affymetrix arrays and Illumina arrays). You could also use the same method to read phenotype data for expression data from completely different types of data (such as gene expression data and proteomic data).

Objects in Bioconductor contain many different types of information about an experiment: the experimental platform, information about the samples, information about the phenotypes, the experimental results, and almost anything else that is relevant for describing an experiment or the results of the experiment. Classes defined in the `Biobase` package provide a general framework that fits many different types of experimental data. Classes defined in other packages can be used to represent data from specific types of microarrays, often for specific products from specific vendors. This section contains descriptions of a few key classes defined in `Biobase`.

### eSet

`eSet` is a virtual class that is used by many Bioconductor functions. Objects based on `eSet` package together all the relevant information about a high-throughput experiment: expression data, metadata describing the experiment, annotation about the chip or technology used, and a description of the experiment itself.

Many other classes inherit from `eSet`: In `Biobase`, the classes `ExpressionSet` (for high-throughput expression-level assays), `MultiSet` (also for high-throughput expression-level assays), `SnpSet` (for high-throughput SNP assays), and `NChannelSet` (for multiple-channel arrays) are children of `eSet`. In the `affy` package, the class `AffyBatch` (used to represent Affymetrix GeneChip probe-level data) inherits from `eSet`. In the `lumi` package, `LumiBatch` (used to represent Illumina microarray data) is based on `eSet`. In `oligoClasses`, the classes `SnpLevelSet`, `SnpCallSet`, `SnpCopyNumberSet`, `oligoSnpSet`, and `SnpCallSetPlus` all inherit from `eSet`.

An eSet object has the following slots:

*assayData*

An assayData object containing the expression data. (The expression data must contain matrices with equal dimensions and with column numbers equal to `nrow(phenoData)`.)

*phenoData*

An AnnotatedDataFrame object describing the sample phenotypes.

*featureData*

An AnnotatedDataFrame object describing the features or probes (corresponding to columns in assayData) for this experiment.

*experimentData*

A MIAME object containing detailed information on the experimental method(s).

*annotation*

A character value describing the annotation package used for the experiment.

There are included methods for getting or setting the object in each of these slots directly. (For example, `assayData(x) <- y` will set the assayData slot in eSet x to y.) Additionally, methods are defined for directly accessing commonly used slots within each of these objects:

*sampleNames, sampleNames<-*

Get or set sample names in assayData and phenoData.

*featureNames, featureNames<-*

Get or set feature names in assayData.

*dims*

Gets the dimensions for the expression data in assayData.

*pData*

Gets or sets sample data (pData slot in phenoData).

*fData*

Gets or sets feature data information (pData slot in featureData).

*varMetadata*

Gets or sets metadata describing variables in pData.

*varLabels*

Gets or sets variable labels in phenoData.

*fvarMetadata*

Gets or sets metadata describing features in fData.

*fVarLabels*

Gets or sets variable labels in featureData.

*description*

Alias for experimentData.

*pMedIds*

Gets or sets PubMed Identifiers (PMIDs) from experimentData.

### *abstract*

Gets abstract from `experimentData`.

### *preproc, preproc<-*

Get or set preprocessing information in `experimentData`.

### *storageMode, storageMode<-*

Get or set storage mode for `assayData`.

### *assayDataElement*

Gets or sets an element in an `AssayData` object.

### *notes*

Used to add free-form notes to an `AssayData` object.

There are methods to coerce `eSet` objects to `ExpressionSet` and `MultiSet` objects. See the help file for `eSet` for more details.

## **AssayData**

`AssayData` objects hold expression data. You can access the contents of an `AssayData` object with the following methods:

### *featureNames, featureNames<-*

Get or set the feature names (or probe names) for an object.

### *sampleNames, sampleNames<-*

Get or set the sample names for an object.

### *storageMode, storageMode<-*

Get or set the storage mode for an `AssayData` object.<sup>2</sup>

### *assayDataElement*

Gets or sets a specific element in an `AssayData` object.

`AssayData` objects are used in `eSet` objects to hold expression data.

## **AnnotatedDataFrame**

`AnnotatedDataFrame` objects are what they sound like: a data frame plus annotation. Typically, they are used to include a data frame containing some experimental data, plus information about each column/variable in the data frame. `AnnotatedDataFrame` objects contain two slots:

### *data*

A data frame. Rows represent samples; columns represent variables.

### *varMetaData*

A data frame with one row corresponding to each column in `data`. This data frame must include a column called `labelDescription` but may contain additional information.

2. `AssayData` objects can hold the expression data in a list, environments, or “locked” environments; see the help file for more information.

The Biobase package defines a few useful methods for accessing information in AnnotatedDataFrame objects:

*pData*, *pData*<-  
Get or set the data stored in the object.

*varMetaData*, *varMetaData*<-  
Get or set the metadata.

*sampleNames*, *sampleNames*<-  
Get or set the sample names.

*featureNames*, *featureNames*<-  
Alias for *sampleNames*, *sampleNames*<-.

*varLabels*, *varLabels*<-  
Get or set the variable labels.

*dimLabels*, *dimLabels*<-  
Get or set the dimension labels (*rowNames*, *columnNames*).

AnnotatedDataFrame objects are used to hold information about samples in eSet objects.

## MIAME

MIAME stands for Minimum Information About a Microarray Experiment.<sup>3</sup> MIAME objects are used to contain information about an experiment. Slots in MIAME objects include the following:

*name*  
Experimenter name

*lab*  
Lab where the experiment was conducted

*contact*  
Contact information for the experimenter

*title*  
Single-sentence description of the experiment

*abstract*  
An abstract describing the experiment

*url*  
A URL reference with information about the experiment

*samples*  
Information about the samples

*hybridization*  
Information about the hybridizations

3. MIAME is a standard developed by the MGED Society. See <http://www.mged.org/Workgroups/MIAME/miame.html> for more information.

### *normControls*

Information about the controls

### *preprocessing*

Information about preprocessing steps performed on raw data from the experiment

### *pubMedIds*

PubMed Identifiers of papers relevant for this data

### *other*

Other information about the experiment that doesn't fit elsewhere

**MIAME** objects are used in eSet objects to describe an experiment.

## Other Classes Used by Bioconductor Packages

There are a variety of other classes used in different Bioconductor packages and functions:

### *AssayData*

A container class defined as a class union of list and environment. Designed to contain one or more matrices of the same dimension.

### *ProbeSet*

A simple class that contains the raw probe data (PM and MM data) for a probe set from one or more samples.

### *RGList*

A class used to store raw intensities as they are read in from an image analysis output file.

### *MAList*

A simple list-based class for storing M-values and A-values for a batch of spotted microarrays.

### *Elist*

A simple list-based class for storing expression values (E-values) for a set of one-channel microarrays.

### *Elistraw*

A simple list-based class for storing expression values (E-values) for a set of one-channel microarrays (in raw form).

### *MArray-LM*

A list-based class for storing the results of fitting gene-wise linear models to a batch of microarrays.

### *TestResults*

A matrix-based class for storing the results of simultaneous tests.

### *DBPDInfo*

A class for Platform Design Information objects, stored using a database approach.

### *QuantificationSet*

A virtual class to store summarized measures.

## *FeatureSet*

A class to store data from expression/exon/SNP/tiling arrays at the feature level.

See the help files for more information on these classes.

# Where to Go Next

This chapter just scratches the surface of the tools available through Bioconductor; there are dozens of packages available on Bioconductor for doing different types of analysis. The best place to start is the Bioconductor website: <http://www.bioconductor.org>.

Here are some suggestions for learning more about this project and how to use the Bioconductor tools.

## Resources Outside Bioconductor

If you are working with genetic data, there are a variety of R packages outside Bioconductor that you might find useful. See <http://cran.r-project.org/web/views/Genetics.html> for more information.

## Vignettes

In “[Getting Help](#)” on page 35, I introduced vignettes. There is at least one vignette for every package in Bioconductor. For example, let’s attach the `affy` package and look at the available vignettes:

```
> library(affy)
> vignette(all=FALSE)
```

This shows the following list of available vignettes (from `affy` and `Biobase`):

Vignettes in package 'affy':

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| affy           | 1. Primer (source, pdf)                      |
| builtinMethods | 2. Built-in Processing Methods (source, pdf) |
| customMethods  | 3. Custom Processing Methods (source, pdf)   |
| vim            | 4. Import Methods (source, pdf)              |

Vignettes in package 'Biobase':

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| BiobaseDevelopment        | Notes for eSet developers (source, pdf)                         |
| Bioconductor              | Bioconductor Overview (source, pdf)                             |
| ExpressionSetIntroduction | An introduction to Biobase and ExpressionSets (source, pdf)     |
| HowTo                     | Notes for writing introductory 'how to' documents (source, pdf) |
| Qviews                    | quick views of eSet instances (source, pdf)                     |
| esApply                   | esApply Introduction (source, pdf)                              |

If you are not familiar with a package but think it could be useful for your work, try reading the included vignettes. In many cases, the vignettes will guide you through the whole analysis process: loading, cleaning, and analyzing data.

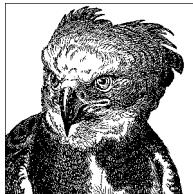
## Courses

The Bioconductor project offers classes on Bioconductor. See <http://www.bioconductor.org/workshops> for a list of past course materials and upcoming events.

## Books

The developers of Bioconductor have published several books; I found these very helpful when learning Bioconductor. If you are not familiar with the methods of modern biology or Bioconductor, then [Gentleman2005] is a very good choice. If you are familiar with modern biology and just want to see more examples, try [Hahne2008]. [Foulkes2009] provides a good introduction to statistical genetics using a number of tools outside Bioconductor (such as the `genetics` package). Finally, [Ewens2005] is a good book on statistical genetics, though it does not specifically discuss R.





# 26

## R and Hadoop

One of the best techniques for speeding up large computing problems is to break them into lots of little pieces, solve the pieces separately, and then put the pieces back together. This is called *parallel computing*, because it enables you to solve problems in parallel. For example, suppose that you had a lot of laundry: enough to fill 10 washing machines. Suppose each wash took 45 minutes, and each drying took 45 minutes. If you had only one washing machine and dryer, it would take 495 minutes to finish all the laundry. However, if you had 10 washing machines and 10 dryers, you could finish the laundry in 90 minutes.

In Chapters 20 and 21, we showed some cutting-edge techniques for statistical modeling. Many of these problems are very computationally intensive and could take a long time to finish. Luckily, many of them are very parallelizable. For example, we will show several algorithms that build models by fitting a large number of tree models to the underlying data (such as boosting, bagging, and random forests). Each of these algorithms could be run in parallel if more processors were available.

There are many packages available for parallel and distributed computing with R. In this chapter, I've focused on Hadoop-based solutions. Hadoop isn't the best solution for all problems, but it's popular, open source, and runs well in the cloud.

## R and Hadoop

Over the past few years, Hadoop has become the de facto standard for processing big data. For many people, Hadoop *is* Big Data. You may have heard of Hadoop. But you may not know what it is, what it's good for, and how you can use it with R. That's what this section is all about.

### Overview of Hadoop

Hadoop is a system for working with huge data sets. Facebook uses it to store photos, LinkedIn uses it to generate recommendations, and Amazon uses it to generate

search indexes. It's a very useful system to use when you have a very large amount of data.

Hadoop is a system that lets you store a lot of data and solve really big problems. It works by connecting many different computers together, but it lets you work with them as if they were one giant computer. Working with parallel and distributed systems is tricky and complicated; Hadoop hides a lot of complexity from you so that you can worry about solving your problem.

In terms of the laundry analogy above, Hadoop is like a commercial laundry service. You give the service many loads of dirty laundry, and it sends you back bags of clean laundry the next day.

## **Map/Reduce**

To help make it easier to write efficient parallel programs, Hadoop uses a model called Map/Reduce to process large amounts of data. Many common data processing tasks (including filtering data, merging data, and aggregating data) fit easily into Map/Reduce. Many (but not all) mathematical and machine learning algorithms can also use the Map/Reduce framework. To help explain how Map/Reduce works, let's consider three problems:

### *Creating a web traffic report*

Suppose that you want to calculate the number of requests and bytes served by a set of web servers each hour. You are given a set of large log files from web servers in common log format. Each line in the file contains seven fields: the host name or IP address of the remote host, the remote logname of the user, the username of an authenticated user, the date and time of the request, the request itself, the HTTP status returned to the client, and the number of bytes served.

### *Reporting on web traffic by location*

Suppose that you want to calculate the number of requests and bytes served by a set of web servers by location. Just like above, suppose that you are given a set of large log files from web servers in common log format. But in this case, you're also given a database for mapping IP addresses to locations. The database will contain an entry for the first 3 bytes of every IP address, mapping that to a location.

### *Predicting user behavior*

Now, suppose that you want to predict how likely a user is to purchase an item from a website. Suppose that you have already computed (maybe using Map/Reduce), a set of variables describing each user: most common locations, the number of pages viewed, the number of purchases made in the past. Based on your experience, you'd like to calculate this forecast using random forests.

You can solve each of these problems efficiently with Map/Reduce. By implementing your solution with Map/Reduce, you can process your data in parallel on many servers, speeding up the computation immensely. Map/Reduce algorithms proceed in two steps:

### *Map step*

In the map step, tasks read in input data as a set of records, process the records, and send groups of similar records to reducers. In Hadoop terminology, the *mapper* extracts a key from each input record. Hadoop will then route all records with the same key to the same *reducer*.

### *Reduce step*

In the reduce step, tasks read in a set of related records, process the records, and outputs the results. In Hadoop terminology, the reducer will iterate through all results for the same key, processing the data and writing out the results.

Map/Reduce sounds very limiting, but it is a very flexible system for processing data. Programs can do many different things in the map step: they can drop fields or whole records, they can write out more than one output record for each input record, they can transform the input however the user would like. Similarly, programs can do many different thing in the reduce step. They can count input records, add fields from a set of records, combine records of different types, or do anything else the user would like to do with sets of records.

The great strength of Map/Reduce is that both maps and reducers are easily parallelizable. Each mapper processes a set of input records. Map tasks do not maintain state, nor do they need to communicate with one another. So it is possible to divide the mapping work across many map processes on many machines. Similarly, reduce tasks do not maintain state between keys, nor do they need to communicate with one another. Each reduce task will process sets of records (corresponding to sets of keys). Records with different keys are consistently sent to the same reduce task. So it is possible to efficiently process massive data sets with Map/Reduce.

To help show how this works, let's explain how to use map/reduce to solve each of the examples above.

### *Creating a web traffic report*

Each mapper will read in a web server log (or a set of logs). The mapper will process the logs one line at a time. For each record, the mapper will extract the timestamp and round the time to the nearest hour; the mapper will use this as the key. The mapper will then extract the number of bytes, which will be used as the value. The mapper will write out these fields.

The reducer will iterate over a set of byte counts for each key. The reducer will count the number of records and sum the number of bytes for each key, and then write out the results.

### *Reporting on web traffic by location*

To solve this problem, we'll need our mappers to do two things. First, some mappers will read web server logs. They will look at the IP address in each entry, extracting the first 3 bytes to use as a key. They will then extract the number of bytes and use that as the value and send these entries to the reducers.

Next, some mappers will process the IP geolocation data. They will extract the first 3 bytes of an IP address as a key and the location as the value. They will send these results to the reducers.

The reducers will then collect two things. When they are processing input records, they will do two things. When they encounter a location record, they will record the location. When they encounter a traffic record, they will add the request to the total requests and add the number of bytes to the total bytes. When the reducer finishes iterating through the entries, it will then write out the location, the number of bytes, and the number of requests.

### *Predicting user behavior*

As you may recall, random forests work by calculating a set of regression trees and then averaging them together to create a single model. It can be time consuming to fit the random trees to the data, but each new tree can be calculated independently.

There are many ways to accomplish this task. One way to tackle this problem is to use a set of map tasks to generate random trees, and then send the models to a single reducer task to average the results and produce the model.<sup>1</sup>

Map/Reduce is a very powerful model for doing distributed computation. With some practice, you can learn to formulate data problems as Map/Reduce problems and solve them efficiently.

To make programs scalable, there are some restrictions on what map tasks and reduce tasks can do:

- Map tasks should be stateless. Map tasks should calculate the same results strictly based on the input data, regardless of the order of the input data.
- Reduce tasks should be stateless but may maintain state while iterating through inputs with the same key.
- Tasks cannot communicate with one another. Each task should be able to commute its result based strictly on the input data.

There is one other type of task that is commonly used: combine tasks. Combine tasks work like reduce tasks, but they run on subsets of the data. The results of the combine tasks are then combined by the reducer. Reduce tasks are typically run on map nodes. Combiners are not required but are often useful as an optimization. In my examples, I've omitted combine tasks to keep things easy to understand.

A great place to learn about Map/Reduce is from the [original Google Map/Reduce paper](#).

### **Distributed data storage**

A second major feature of Hadoop is the Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS). HDFS is a system for storing data on a Hadoop cluster, often on the same nodes that run user code. HDFS allows you to store very large volumes of data, because the data is distributed across many different machines. (You can even split single files into parts and distribute them across multiple machines.) Usually, HDFS stores each file on more than one machine. This helps prevent data loss if computers (or hard drives) fail.

1. To load the input data, we'd use [the Distributed Cache](#).

Hadoop provides an additional feature for large computational jobs. Modern computers are typically so fast at calculating results that computers don't spend all their time computing. Instead, they spend most of their time waiting: waiting for data to be read from storage (memory or disk), sent across a network, or written to storage. In many cases, simply copying data within memory can take a substantial amount of time. Within a large job, Hadoop will try to run tasks close to one another (to minimize network connections across racks or clusters). When starting a job, Hadoop will also try to assign tasks to the same machines where the data is stored. For large jobs, this can substantially improve performance.

### Managing a cluster of servers

Hadoop has many features to enable processing large data sets, and many options for configuring these tasks. You can tune the number of tasks, the way records are divided across tasks, the way that data is sorted, and many other aspects of your computation.

Hadoop also has many features to make sure that tasks will finish and data will not be lost even if machines fail. Here's why this is important. Suppose that you had one server, and the probability that this server fails on a given day is  $1/1000$  (approximately once every three years). You might not worry too much about system failures; the probability that the server does not fail on a given day is  $.999$ . But now suppose that you had  $1000$  servers. The probability that none of the servers fail is now  $(1 - 1/1000)^{1000}$ , or  $0.368$ .

To protect against failures, Hadoop provides several different tools. First, files are replicated on several servers. If any individual disk fails, a copy of each file can be retrieved from other locations. Secondly, Hadoop constantly monitors tasks; if any individual task fails to respond when contacted, or appears to be taking too long to complete, Hadoop will attempt to end that task and start a duplicate task. (This is called "speculative execution.") Finally, Hadoop will track which nodes are having problems and stop sending them new tasks.

As an end user of Hadoop, you do not normally have to worry about task failures, replication factors, and node blacklisting. These are all included with the framework.

### Java framework

One other important note: Hadoop was written in Java and (originally) designed to help write Java programs. If you don't want to write Java code, there are other tools that you can use with Hadoop: Apache Hive (which lets you write SQL queries), Apache Pig (an SQL-like scripting language), or Cascading (a system for writing pipelines in Scala, Clojure, or other languages). You can even use other applications (such as R) to do your data processing on Hadoop, and just use Hadoop to schedule jobs and move around data. (This is called streaming.)

There are some good things about Hadoop's Java roots. You can access Hadoop from any language that runs on the JVM (Java Virtual Machine). Additionally, you can install and run it on many different platforms including Linux, Mac OS X, and Windows. (You could probably run Hadoop on your Android phone.) But there is

one big negative. If you want to use Hadoop, you need to learn how to read and write Java code and how to use Java tools; you will see Java error messages, you will need to read Java documentation, and you will need to compile and run Java programs.

If you can learn R, you can learn Java. (And if you've read this far into this book, I'm confident that you can learn R.) But you should prepare yourself to invest some time learning new things if you plan to use Hadoop.

### **When should you consider Hadoop?**

Hadoop is a great tool for storing and processing huge amounts of data, but it's not the best tool for storing and processing any amount data. It's hard to start a Hadoop cluster and keep it working over time. Additionally, it can be expensive to move data among different computers using Java: Hadoop isn't always the fastest option. Before using Hadoop, I'd recommend shrinking the problem (by sampling data or reducing the complexity of the problem), or growing your computer (by adding more processors or memory).

In general, I'd consider using Hadoop if:

1. You cannot solve the problem with one machine, even after shrinking your data or expanding the machine.
2. It's possible to formulate the problem as a Map/Reduce problem. Many, but not all, important problems fit into a Map/Reduce model.
3. You have the right expertise to run a Hadoop cluster. Companies that actively use Hadoop often have teams of people to manage Hadoop.

I'd consider using R with Hadoop if I needed to take advantage of some unique features of R, such as some of the modeling facilities. Using R and Hadoop is not always the most efficient solution for solving a problem. For example, we count the number of deaths by sex in the United States during 2009 in "[An example RHadoop application](#)" on page 559. Using RHadoop and a four-node cluster, this job takes 15 minutes; using one server and R it takes 1 hour; and using one server and Perl it takes about 15 seconds to solve this problem. That might sound like a huge difference in performance (and it is). Hadoop can definitely help you speed up R programs, even if you can find faster solutions outside of R.

In the rest of this section, we'll show three ways to use Hadoop: using the RHadoop package in R, using Segue, and using Hadoop streaming.

## **RHadoop**

The most mature (and best integrated) project for R and Hadoop is RHadoop. Written by Antonio Piccolboni, with support from Revolution Analytics, it's a well tested and thought out project.

There are three different parts of RHadoop:

#### *rmr*

This is the core package in RHadoop. It contains functions for moving data in and out of a Hadoop cluster and executing Map/Reduce jobs on the cluster.<sup>2</sup>

#### *rhdfs*

The `rhdfs` package includes a set of tools for managing files on HDFS, the Hadoop file system. These functions cover most normal file system functions; they're principally useful for scripting common operations within R. There is a set of functions that duplicate the `hadoop fs` command for changing permissions, checking file properties, listing directories, creating and deleting directories, and removing files; see `help(hdfs.ls)` for a list. There are also functions for copying local files to HDFS, moving them from HDFS, or moving them around hdfs; see `help(hdfs.copy)` for a list.

#### *rbase*

Rhbase contains a set of functions for manipulating Hbase from R. There are functions for creating or modifying Hbase tables, or reading and writing Hbase records. See `help(hb.defaults)` for more information about functions for creating or modifying Hbase tables, or `help(hb.insert)` for more information about the functions for reading and writing records.

I'll focus on `rmr` in this section, because that's going to be the most useful package for most R users.

### Make sure Hadoop is installed locally

If you aren't using Hadoop yet, you should begin by installing some tools locally. RHadoop was built with the [Cloudera Hadoop](#) distribution and is tested against it. I used CDH Version 3 Update 4 for this example; you can download and unpack it with these commands on a system prompt (not from inside R):

```
$ wget http://archive.cloudera.com/cdh/3/hadoop-0.20.2-cdh3u4.tar.gz  
$ tar xvfz hadoop-0.20.2-cdh3u4.tar.gz
```

You can check if Hadoop is installed correctly by using the command `hadoop version` on your OS shell (not from inside R). You should see a message like this:

```
$ hadoop version  
Hadoop 0.20.2-cdh3u4  
Subversion git://ubuntu-slave01/var/lib/jenkins/workspace/CDH3u4-Full-RC/  
build/cdh3/hadoop20/0.20.2-cdh3u4/source -r  
214dd731e3bdb687cb55988d3f47dd9e248c5690  
Compiled by jenkins on Mon May  7 13:01:39 PDT 2012  
From source with checksum a60c9795e41a3248b212344fb131c12c
```

I strongly recommend testing locally before running your code in the cloud. Local Hadoop jobs are easier and faster to debug. Just make sure to shrink your data.

2. The name `rmr` is an unfortunate choice; `hadoop fs -rmr` is Hadoop's recursive delete command.

If you don't have your own Hadoop cluster to play with, you can rent one from a cloud service (such as Amazon Web Services or Rackspace). See the following sidebar for a description of how I installed my own small cluster for this book.

## Hadoop in the Cloud

Hadoop is a big, complicated piece of software. There are whole books on how to configure and administer Hadoop clusters.

But there is a fast, relatively painless way to create a real Hadoop cluster in the cloud: using Apache Whirr. I created my own cluster when I was writing this book and used it for the included examples. (Specifically, I used AWS EC2, the Elastic Compute Cloud. This lets you create virtual computers in the cloud and run software on them.) Here's a description of how I built my own cluster for this book using AWS.

### 1. Get an account with a cloud provider.

You will need to register with the provider, providing contact and billing information. The most popular choice is [Amazon Web Services](#), but [Rackspace](#) is also a good choice. (I'm recommending choosing one of these two providers because these are the best supported by Apache Whirr; see below for an explanation of why that matters.) Either provider will allow you to allocate a set of virtual computers and provide management tools to let you use them. You will be charged based upon usage: an hourly fee per server, fees for each GB of data that you transfer in and out of the cloud, fees for each GB of storage space that you use, and additional charges for other services. In my experience, the charges are reasonable, but you should be careful to use only what you need.

### 2. Configure security settings.

To use cloud services, you'll need to get several security settings correct. For AWS, you need to find your Access Key ID and Secret Access Key, and additionally need to create an SSH keypair. (The Access Key ID and Secret Access Key are used for communication with Amazon Web Services management features; you use these keys to start and stop services. The SSH key pair is used to connect to virtual machines in the cloud.)

You can find the Access Key ID and Secret Access Key from [AWS's security credentials page](#). For convenience, I set the environment variable `AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID` to my Access Key ID, and `AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY` to my secret key:

```
$ # using Bash shell syntax
$ export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=my_access_key_id
$ export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=my_secret_key
```

I created a new SSH key pair to connect to my EC2 instances (saving them in the default location):

```
$ # create a key pair with no password for the private key
$ ssh-keygen -t rsa -P ''
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/Users/jadler/.ssh/id_rsa):
Your identification has been saved in ./id_rsa.
```

```
Your public key has been saved in ./id_rsa.pub.  
...  
$ # save a copy of the key in PEM format to make AWS happy:  
$ ssh-keygen -e -f ~/.ssh/id_rsa -m pem > ~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.pem
```

Next, I went to the [EC2 management console](#) and installed the key pair. (Make sure you are using the console for the region, or regions, in which you want to set up your cluster.)

### 3. Install Apache Whirr.

Apache Whirr (<http://whirr.apache.org>) is a set of libraries for running cloud services. Whirr makes it easy to set up complicated services and manage them from your desktop; with just a few lines of configuration, you can install a Hadoop cluster.

### 4. Configure Whirr.

You will need to define a properties file to use Whirr; as an example, you might start with `recipes/hadoop-ec2-properties` in the Whirr distribution, or better yet, [RHadoop/rmr/pkg/tools/whirr/hadoop-ec2-centos.properties](#) in the `rnr` source code. For my example, I used the following configuration:

```
# Change the cluster name here  
whirr.cluster-name=hadoop-my-ec2-cluster  
  
# Change the number of machines in the cluster here  
# I used 1 machine for the name node and job tracker, and  
# 4 machines for data nodes and tasktrackers:  
whirr.instance-templates=1 hadoop-namenode+hadoop-jobtracker,\  
4 hadoop-datanode+hadoop-tasktracker  
  
# rmr requires Cloudera Hadoop, so use CDH  
whirr.hadoop.install-function=install_cdh_hadoop  
whirr.hadoop.configure-function=configure_cdh_hadoop  
  
# make sure java is set up correctly, requires Whirr >= 0.7.1  
whirr.java.install-function=install_oab_java  
  
# read AWS keys from environment variables  
whirr.provider=aws-ec2  
whirr.identity=${env:AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID}  
whirr.credential=${env:AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY}  
  
# The size of the instance to use.  
# See http://aws.amazon.com/ec2/instance-types/  
whirr.hardware-id=m1.large  
  
# select recent, 64-bit CentOS AMI from RightScale  
# Note that this image may not be available in your region, or  
# might be out of date when you try this.  
whirr.image-id=us-west-1/ami-8f6a37ca  
  
# If you choose a different location, make sure whirr.image-id  
# is also updated  
whirr.location-id=us-west-1  
  
# By default use the user system SSH keys. Override them here.
```

```
# whirr.private-key-file=${sys:user.home}/.ssh/id_rsa
# whirr.public-key-file=${whirr.private-key-file}.pub

hadoop-env.JAVA_HOME=/usr/lib/jvm/java-6-openjdk-amd64
```

I saved my configuration in a file called *rian-hadoop-cluster.properties*. Amazingly, that's all you need in order to use Whirr to create, configure, and stop a Hadoop cluster.

5. *Start the cluster and install rmr.*

I started my cluster using `whirr` (output truncated for brevity):

```
$ whirr launch-cluster --config rian-hadoop-cluster.properties
Bootstrapping cluster
Configuring template
Configuring template
Starting 1 node(s) with roles [hadoop-namenode, hadoop-jobtracker]
Starting 4 node(s) with roles [hadoop-datanode, hadoop-tasktracker]
...
...
```

6. *Run a script on all nodes to install rmr.*

Next, you'll need to install R and rmr on all the nodes in your cluster. Whirr lets you easily write a command line script and execute it on every node. You can find the R install script in the rmr distribution under [RHadoop/rmr/pkg/tools/whirr/rmr-master-centos.sh](#). To run this, use the command

```
$ whirr run-script --script rmr-master-centos.sh \
--config rian-hadoop-cluster.properties
```

7. *Connect to the job tracker/namde node machine and check permissions.*

I needed to fix group permissions before I could run jobs on the cluster:

```
$ sudo -u hdfs hadoop fs -chmod 777 /
```

8. *Configure your local machine to run hadoop jobs in the cloud.*

When you start a cluster with Whirr, Whirr will create a configuration directory for the new cluster and a script for connecting to that cluster. By default, these are in a folder inside the `~/.whirr` directory, with a name corresponding to your cluster name. For my example, here is how I used these files to connect to my cluster:

```
$ export HADOOP_CONF_DIR=~/whirr/hadoop-my-ec2-cluster
$ $HADOOP_CONF_DIR/hadoop-proxy.sh &
```

And that should be it; you now have your own Hadoop cluster for experimentation! When you're done, you can destroy the cluster with the command:

```
$ whirr destroy-cluster --config hadoop-ec2-properties
```

Thanks to Jeffrey Breen for writing a [short tutorial](#) on how to start a cluster for running rmr.

## Installing RHadoop locally

You'll need to install RHadoop both locally (on the machine you use to run R) and on all the nodes of your Hadoop cluster. The easiest way to download and install RHadoop is to use the devtools package. (Output edited for brevity.)

```
> library(devtools)
> install_url("https://github.com/downloads/RevolutionAnalytics/RHadoop/
rnr_1.3.tar.gz")
Installing rnr_1.3.tar.gz from https://github.com/downloads/
RevolutionAnalytics/RHadoop/rnr_1.3.tar.gz
Installing rnr
Installing dependencies for rnr:
...
> # make sure to set HADOOP_HOME to the location of your HADOOP installation,
> # HADOOP_CONF to the location of your hadoop config files, and make sure
> # that the hadoop bin directory is on your path
> Sys.setenv(HADOOP_HOME="/Users/jadler/src/hadoop-0.20.2-cdh3u4")
> Sys.setenv(HADOOP_CONF=paste(Sys.getenv("HADOOP_HOME"),
+ "/conf", sep=""))
> Sys.setenv(PATH=paste(Sys.getenv("PATH"), ":", Sys.getenv("HADOOP_HOME"),
+ "/bin", sep=""))
> install_url("https://github.com/downloads/RevolutionAnalytics/RHadoop/
rhdfs_1.0.4.tar.gz")
Installing rhdfs_1.0.4.tar.gz from https://github.com/downloads/
RevolutionAnalytics/RHadoop/rhdfs_1.0.4.tar.gz
Installing rhdfs
...
> install_url("https://github.com/downloads/RevolutionAnalytics/
RHadoop/rhbase_1.0.4.tar.gz")
Installing rhbase_1.0.4.tar.gz from https://github.com/downloads/
RevolutionAnalytics/RHadoop/rhbase_1.0.4.tar.gz
Installing rhbase
```

Make sure to double-check the current version at the [RHadoop Download Page on GitHub](#); you'll get an error if the version numbers change.

## An example RHadoop application

Most Map/Reduce examples start with a word count program. I like to be different, so I decided to calculate statistics using the mortality data that we loaded in “[Using Other Languages to Preprocess Text Files](#)” on page 151 and “[Comparing means across more than two groups](#)” on page 378. This data set contains a record of every death in the United States, including the cause of death and demographic information about the deceased. It’s a pretty big file: in 2009, the mortality data file was 1.1 GB and contained 2,441,219 records. One of the best things about Hadoop is that you can work with a set of raw, unstructured files. To make this example more realistic, we’ll parse the data as we process it.

To get started, I got a copy of the raw mortality data from the CDC website and uploaded it to my cluster.

```
$ # get the file from the CDC
$ wget ftp://ftp.cdc.gov/pub/Health_Statistics/NCHS/Datasets/DVS/
mortality/mort2009us.zip
```

```

$ # unzip the file
$ unzip mort2009us.zip
$ # create a directory on hdfs
$ hadoop fs -mkdir mort09
$ # copy to that directory on hdfs
$ hadoop fs -copyFromLocal VS09MORT.DUSMCPUB mort09
$ # look at the files
$ hadoop fs -ls mort09
Found 1 items
-rw-r--r-- 3 jadler supergroup 1196197310 2012-08-02 16:31
/usr/jadler/mort09/VS09MORT.DUSMCPUB

```

I also created a small (100 observation) sample for testing on my local machine:

```
$ head -n 100 VS09MORT.DUSMCPUB > VS09MORT.DUSMCPUB.sample
```

I took a look at the [Mortality Public Use File Documentation](#), and used this to figure out how to read the file. This is a fixed format file. Normally, you'd read a file like this with `read.fwf`, but I would not have access to `read.fwf` from RHadoop functions, so I decided to write my own parsing function.

First, I created a vector labeled with field sizes, labeling each by position. For fields that were blank, I gave them names that started with `.X`. (That's an arbitrary choice.)

```

mort.schema <- c(
  .X0=19, ResidentStatus=1, .X1=40, Education1989=2, Education2003=1,
  EducationFlag=1, MonthOfDeath=2, .X2=2, Sex=1, AgeDetail=4, AgeSubstitution=1,
  AgeRecode52=2, AgeRecode27=2, AgeRecode12=2, AgeRecodeInfant22=2,
  PlaceOfDeath=1, MaritalStatus=1, DayOfWeekofDeath=1, .X3=16,
  CurrentDataYear=4, InjuryAtWork=1, MannerOfDeath=1, MethodOfDisposition=1,
  Autopsy=1, .X4=34, ActivityCode=1, PlaceOfInjury=1, ICDCode=4,
  CauseRecode358=3, .X5=1, CauseRecode113=3, CauseRecode130=3,
  CauseRecode39=2, .X6=1, Conditions=281, .X8=1, Race=2, BridgeRaceFlag=1,
  RaceImputationFlag=1, RaceRecode3=1, RaceRecode5=1, .X9=33,
  HispanicOrigin=3, .X10=1, HispanicOriginRecode=1)

```

I chose a vector so that I could easily lookup up field sizes and names by position, and also so that I could check my work:

```

> # according to the documentation, each line is 488 characters long
> sum(mort.schema)
[1] 488

```

Next I wrote a function for reading records from a data file, using a vector like the one above to determine the position and name of each field. This function returns a list and skips over any field name that begins with `.X`.

```

unpack.line <- function(data, schema) {
  filter.func <- function(x) {substr(x,1,2) != ".X"}
  data.pointer <- 1
  output.data <- list()
  for (i in 1:length(schema)) {
    if (filter.func(names(schema)[i])) {
      output.data[[names(schema)[i]]] <-
        type.convert(
          substr(data, data.pointer, data.pointer+schema[i] - 1),
          as.is=TRUE)
    }
  }
}

```

```

        }
        data.pointer <- data.pointer + schema[i]
    }
    output.data
}

```

Here's a small example that shows how this function works:

```

> test.data <- c("A11a 8", "B22b09", "C33c10")
> test.schema <- c(one=1, .X1=2, three=1, four=2)
> t(sapply(test.data, FUN=function(x) unpack.line(x,test.schema)))
  one three four
A11a 8 "A"   8
B22b09 "B"   9
C33c10 "C"   10

```

Now let's try a simple example: counting the number of deaths by sex. First we'll create a map function that reads in each input line, labels the sex as the key, and emits a 1 as the value.

```

sex.map.fn <- function(k,v) {
  record <- unpack.line(v, mort.schema)
  # type.convert assumes the character F means FALSE
  key <- ifelse(record[["Sex"]]==FALSE,"female","male")
  keyval(key, 1)
}

```

Next we'll create a reduce function to count the set of values for each key:

```

count.records.reduce.fn <- function(k, v) {
  keyval(k, length(v))
}

```

Let's now use `mapreduce` to run this code on the input data and tabulate the results. We'll start with our small sample file as input, and specify the map and reduce functions. We'll also tell `mapreduce` to treat the input file as plain text, but to output the data in CSV format (to make it easier to read later):

```

sex.counts <- mapreduce(
  input="VS09MORT.DUSMCPUB.sample", # change this path as needed
  map=sex.map.fn,
  reduce=count.records.reduce.fn,
  combine=NULL,
  input.format="text",
  output.format="csv")

```

Running this function produces a lot of output (truncated and edited for readability):

```

...
12/08/01 14:50:54 INFO streaming.StreamJob: Running job: job_local_0001
12/08/01 14:50:54 INFO streaming.StreamJob: Job running in-process (local
Hadoop)
12/08/01 14:50:54 INFO mapred.Task: Using ResourceCalculatorPlugin : null
12/08/01 14:50:54 INFO mapred.MapTask: numReduceTasks: 1
...
12/08/01 14:50:57 INFO streaming.StreamJob: map 100% reduce 0%
...
12/08/01 14:50:57 INFO mapred.LocalJobRunner: Records R/W=100/1 > reduce

```

```

12/08/01 14:50:57 INFO mapred.Task: Task 'attempt_local_0001_r_000000_0' done.
12/08/01 14:50:58 INFO streaming.StreamJob: map 100% reduce 100%
12/08/01 14:50:58 INFO streaming.StreamJob: Job complete: job_local_0001
12/08/01 14:50:58 INFO streaming.StreamJob: Output:
    /var/folders/j9/040rj_5x6ynbkr7xy5186lf80000gp/T//RtmpwyGSF1/filef1b2e2d29ef

```

If everything is set up correctly, the job will end with a statement like the one above (and no error messages). Notice that the message says that the job is 100% complete. Finally, we can read the results back into R using the `from.dfs` function:

```

> from.dfs(sex.counts, format="csv", structured=TRUE)
      V1 V2
1 male 53
2 female 47
Warning message:
In keyval.list.to.data.frame(retval) : dropping keys

```

If everything looks correct when you run this locally, you can try to run the code at scale on a cluster (output edited for clarity and brevity):

```

> sex.counts <- mapreduce(
+   input="mort09",
+   map=sex.map.fn,
+   reduce=count.records.reduce.fn,
+   combine=NULL,
+   input.format="text",
+   output.format="csv")
...
12/08/01 21:11:50 mapred.FileInputFormat: Total input paths to process : 4
...
12/08/01 21:11:53 streaming.StreamJob: map 0% reduce 0%
12/08/01 21:12:07 streaming.StreamJob: map 1% reduce 0%
12/08/01 21:12:12 streaming.StreamJob: map 2% reduce 0%
12/08/01 21:12:18 streaming.StreamJob: map 3% reduce 0%
...
12/08/01 21:24:44 streaming.StreamJob: map 99% reduce 31%
12/08/01 21:25:32 streaming.StreamJob: map 100% reduce 31%
12/08/01 21:26:08 streaming.StreamJob: map 100% reduce 67%
12/08/01 21:28:33 streaming.StreamJob: map 100% reduce 83%
12/08/01 21:31:00 streaming.StreamJob: map 100% reduce 100%
12/08/01 21:31:10 streaming.StreamJob: Job complete: job_201208012345_0001
12/08/01 21:31:10 streaming.StreamJob: Output:

> from.dfs(sex.counts, format="csv", structured=TRUE)
      V1      V2
1 male 1220120
2 female 1221099

```

Let's try a slightly more complicated example that really shows off what you can do in R: we'll calculate a series of density plots for every cause of death. Here's the plan: we'll use map functions to extract the cause of death and age from each record. We'll then use a reduce function to calculate a histogram for each key. Finally, we'll plot the output in R. First, we'll write some helper functions to decode the data in the file

```

cause.decode <- function(x) {
  switch(x,

```

```

`1`="Tuberculosis",
`2`="Syphilis",
`3`="Human immunodeficiency virus",
`4`="Malignant neoplasms",
`5`="Malignant neoplasm of stomach",
`6`="Malignant neoplasms of colon, rectum and anus",
`7`="Malignant neoplasm of pancreas",
`8`="Malignant neoplasms of trachea, bronchus and lung",
`9`="Malignant neoplasm of breast",
`10`="Malignant neoplasms of cervix uteri, corpus uteri and ovary",
`11`="Malignant neoplasm of prostate",
`12`="Malignant neoplasms of urinary tract",
`13`="Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma",
`14`="Leukemia",
`15`="Other malignant neoplasms",
`16`="Diabetes mellitus",
`17`="Alzheimer's disease",
`18`="Major cardiovascular diseases",
`19`="Diseases of heart",
`20`="Hypertensive heart disease with or without renal disease",
`21`="Ischemic heart diseases",
`22`="Other diseases of heart",
`23`="Essential",
`24`="Cerebrovascular diseases",
`25`="Atherosclerosis",
`26`="Other diseases of circulatory system",
`27`="Influenza and pneumonia",
`28`="Chronic lower respiratory diseases",
`29`="Peptic ulcer",
`30`="Chronic liver disease and cirrhosis",
`31`="Nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, and nephrosis",
`32`="Pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium",
`33`="Certain conditions originating in the perinatal period",
`34`="Birth Defects",
`35`="Sudden infant death syndrome",
`36`="Other",
`37`="All other diseases",
`38`="Motor vehicle accidents",
`39`="All other and unspecified accidents and adverse effects",
`40`="Intentional self-harm",
`41`="Assault",
`42`="All other external causes"
)
}

```

```

age.decode <- function(x) {
  if (x>9000)
    NA
  else if (x > 5000)
    0
  else if (x > 4000)
    floor((x - 4000) / 365)
  else if (x > 2000)
    floor((x - 2000) / 12)
  else if (x > 1000)
    (x - 1000)
}

```

```
else
  NA
}
```

Next we'll write a map function to extract the cause of death and age. We won't decode the cause of death yet, so we can move less data around the cluster:

```
cause.map.fn <- function(k,v) {
  record <- unpack.line(v, mort.schema)
  key <- record[["CauseRecode39"]]
  val <- age.decode(record[["AgeDetail"]])
  keyval(key, val)
}
```

We'll write a reduce function that tabulates the number of deaths by age (we'll cut off ages at 110):

```
hist.reduce.fn <- function(key, values) {
  counts <- rep(0, 112)
  names(counts) <- c(0:110,NA)
  for (value in values) {
    if (!is.na(value)) {
      if (value < 110) {
        counts[value + 1] <- counts[value + 1] + 1
      } else {
        counts[111] <- counts[111] + 1
      }
    } else {
      counts[112] <- counts[112] + 1
    }
  }
  keyval(cause.decode(key), counts)
}
```

Next, we'll run the map reduce job to tabulate the results:

```
deaths.by.age.and.cause.mr <- mapreduce(
  input="mort09", # change this path as needed
  map=cause.map.fn,
  reduce=hist.reduce.fn,
  input.format="text",
  # use native output format so we can read the output R objects
  output.format="native"
)
```

While running, you'll see output like this (edited for brevity):

```
12/08/02 16:43:26 streaming.StreamJob: Running job: job_201208021921_0002
...
12/08/02 16:43:27 streaming.StreamJob:  map 0%  reduce 0%
12/08/02 16:43:39 streaming.StreamJob:  map 1%  reduce 0%
12/08/02 16:43:45 streaming.StreamJob:  map 2%  reduce 0%
12/08/02 16:43:51 streaming.StreamJob:  map 3%  reduce 0%

12/08/02 17:02:29 streaming.StreamJob:  map 100%  reduce 98%
12/08/02 17:02:50 streaming.StreamJob:  map 100%  reduce 99%
12/08/02 17:02:53 streaming.StreamJob:  map 100%  reduce 100%
```

```
12/08/02 17:02:58 streaming.StreamJob: Job complete: job_201208021921_0002
12/08/02 17:02:58 streaming.StreamJob: Output:
```

We'll copy the object from the cluster to our local session:

```
> deaths.by.age.and.cause.object <-
+   from.dfs(deaths.by.age.and.cause.mr, format="native", structured=TRUE)
```

The object contains two lists, keys and values:

```
> names(deaths.by.age.and.cause.object)
[1] "key" "val"
```

As a sanity check, we'll make sure that there are the correct number of observations in the data:

```
> # The Reduce function is part of R, not map/reduce...
> Reduce(sum, deaths.by.age.and.cause.object$val)
[1] 2441219
```

Now we're ready to plot the results. Let's calculate the densities:

```
> # make the results into a matrix, drop NA column
> deaths.by.age.and.cause <-
+   as.matrix(deaths.by.age.and.cause.object$val[, 1:111])
> row.names(deaths.by.age.and.cause) <-
+   deaths.by.age.and.cause.object$key$V1
> total.by.condition <- apply(deaths.by.age.and.cause, 1, sum)
> densities <- deaths.by.age.and.cause / total.by.condition
```

Let's plot the density by age for the top six diseases:

```
> # list the top six diseases
> sort(apply(deaths.by.age.and.cause, 1, sum), decreasing=TRUE)[1:6]
```

|   | All other diseases |
|---|--------------------|
|   | 414663             |
| Ischemic heart diseases                           | 387038             |
| Other diseases of heart                           | 177240             |
| Malignant neoplasms of trachea, bronchus and lung | 158263             |
| Other malignant neoplasms                         | 144284             |
| Chronic lower respiratory diseases                | 137417             |

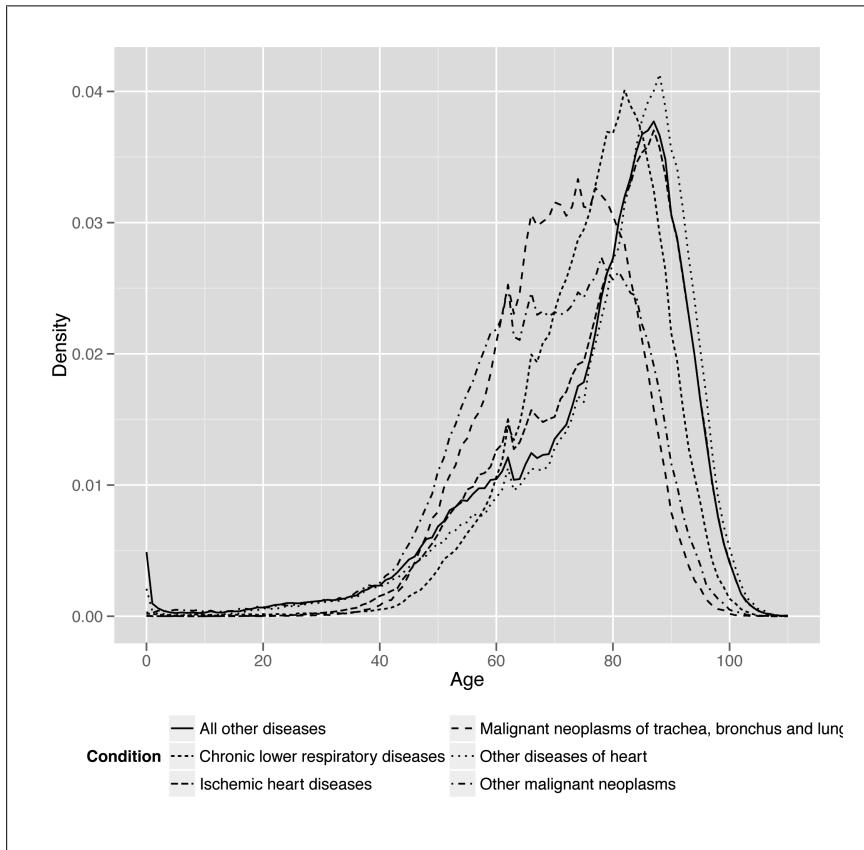
```
> # get the list of names
> top.six <- names(
+   sort(apply(deaths.by.age.and.cause, 1, sum), decreasing=TRUE)[1:6])
> library(reshape)
> densities.df <- melt(densities)
> # color version
> qplot(x=Age, y=Density, data=subset(densities.df, Condition %in% top.six),
+   color=Condition, geom="line") +
+   guides(col=guide_legend(ncol=2)) +
+   opts(legend.position="bottom")
> # black and white version
> qplot(x=Age, y=Density, data=subset(densities.df, Condition %in% top.six),
```

```

+ linetype=Condition, geom="line") +
+ guides(linetype=guide_legend(ncol=2)) +
+ opts(legend.position="bottom")

```

The plot is shown in [Figure 26-1](#). Here's what this plot means: people who die of lung cancer (or other cancer) tend to die from that disease earlier than people who die from heart disease or other diseases.



*Figure 26-1. Density plot for top diseases*

### Details of rmr

The workhorse of `rmr` is the `mapreduce` function:

```
mapreduce(input, output, map, reduce, combine,
          input.format, output.format, vectorized,
          structured, backend.parameters, verbose)
```

This function will run your map/reduce job using Hadoop. It returns an object that you can pass along to other `mapreduce` calls, calls to `from.dfs`, or writes the output to a specific file. In most cases, you'll want to specify the map and reduce functions (as we showed above.) Here's a description of the arguments to `mapreduce`:

| Argument            | Description   | Default                                    |
|---------------------|---|--|
| input               | HDFS path for the input data, output of another mapreduce call, or a call to <code>to.dfs</code>  |  |
| output              | HDFS path for the output data. If NULL, the return value of <code>mapreduce</code> can be passed along to another call to <code>mapreduce</code> or <code>from.dfs</code> .   | NULL                                       |
| map                 | The map function applied to the data. An R function that takes two arguments as input (a key and value) and returns either NULL or a value created by <code>keyval</code> . The map function may accept two single values, or a pair of equal length lists (see <code>vectorized</code> below). | <code>to.map(identity)</code>              |
| reduce              | A reduce function that is (optionally) applied to the output of the map stage (or the <code>combine</code> function if specified)   | NULL                                       |
| combine             | A function that is (optionally) applied to the output of the map stage, then fed to the <code>reduce</code> stage.  | NULL                                       |
| input.format        | Data input format, typically specified through <code>make.input.format</code>   | "native"                                   |
| output.format       | Data output format, typically specified through <code>make.output.format</code>   | "native"                                   |
| vectorized          | Specifies whether the <code>map</code> and <code>reduce</code> functions can process multiple records at the same time. (The <code>reduce</code> functionality isn't implemented yet, as of rmr 1.3.)   | <code>list(map=FALSE, reduce=FALSE)</code> |
| structured          | Specifies whether the inputs to <code>map</code> and <code>reduce</code> are structured data. If so, the input is coerced to a data frame.  | <code>list(map=FALSE, reduce=FALSE)</code> |
| back-end.parameters | Additional parameters passed to hadoop; see the documentation for more details.   | <code>list()</code>                        |
| verbose             | Specifies whether to run HADOOP in verbose mode   | TRUE                                       |

The rmr package includes a set of helper functions for creating or manipulating key value pairs:

```
keys(kv1)
values(kv1)
keyval(k, v, vectorized = FALSE)
```

You can convert a pair of functions to the correct form of `map`, `reduce`, and `combine` functions using the functions `to.map` and `to.reduce`:

```
to.map(fun1, fun2 = identity)
to.reduce(fun1, fun2 = identity)
```

If both `fun1` and `fun2` are specified, then `fun1` is specified to the key and `fun2` to the value. Otherwise, `fun1` is applied to each key/value pair.

You can pass an R object to the `mapreduce` function with the function `to.dfs`:

```
to.dfs(object, output = dfs tempfile(), format = "native")
```

You can also retrieve the results of a `mapreduce` function call with the function `from.dfs`:

```
from.dfs(input, format = "native", to.data.frame = FALSE,  
vectorized = FALSE, structured = FALSE)
```

## Learning more

You can learn more about the RHadoop project from the [RHadoop Wiki](#), or by reading the included help files.

You may also want to check out [Rhipe](#), another integration of R and Hadoop.

## Hadoop Streaming

An alternative way to use R code with Hadoop is using Hadoop streaming. With streaming, you write R scripts that act as map tasks, reduce tasks, and optionally combine tasks. Each task is responsible for reading input from standard input and writing output to standard output. Typically, you would use streaming with tab-separated text files, though you can use other input files. You would then execute the stream from the command line.

Streaming is actually simpler than it sounds. Here's an example to show how it works. We'll use the mortality data again, but this time we will calculate the average age of death for each cause. We'll need to write two R scripts: a map script and a reduce script. We'll then execute these on the cluster using streaming and examine the results. Where I reuse data and function definitions from [“RHadoop” on page 554](#), I've omitted the duplicate code and replaced it with an elipsis.

First, we'll put the following R code into a file called `map.R`:

```
#! /usr/bin/env Rscript

mort.schema <- ...
unpack.line <- ...
age.decode <- ...

con <- file("stdin", open="r")
while(length(line <- readLines(con, n=1)) > 0) {
  parsed <- unpack.line(line,mort.schema)
  write(paste(parsed[["CauseRecode39"]]),
    age.decode(parsed[["AgeDetail"]]),
    sep="\t"),
    stdout())
}
close(con)
```

This map script defines the data structures and functions that we need to unpack and decipher the input data. It then opens the standard input connection and reads the input one line at a time. As it reads each record, it writes the record to standard output (separating the key and value with a tab).

(By the way, notice the first line of the script. That tells your computer how to execute the script. Don't leave that part out. Also, note that this works on Unix-like systems; you'll need to change the scripts for Windows.)

Next we'll put the following R code into a file called *reduce.R*:

```
#!/usr/bin/env Rscript

cause.decode <- ...

con <- file("stdin", open="r")

current.key <- NA
cumulative.age <- 0
count <- 0

print.results <- function(k, n, d) {
  write(paste(cause.decode(k),n/d,sep="\t"),stdout())
}

while(length(line <- readLines(con, n=1)) > 0) {

  parsed <- strsplit(line, "\t")
  key <- parsed[[1]][1]
  value <- type.convert(parsed[[1]][2], as.is=TRUE)

  if (is.na(current.key)) {
    current.key <- key
  } else if (current.key != key) {
    print.results(current.key, cumulative.age, count)
    current.key <- key
    cumulative.age <- 0
    count <- 0
  }

  if (!is.na(value)) {
    cumulative.age <- cumulative.age + value
    count <- count + 1
  }
}

close(con)
print.results(current.key, cumulative.age, count)
```

This script will read each line of input (the output from the map stage). It takes advantage of the fact that all the records for each key are sent to exactly one reduce task, and the data is provided in order. The function splits each input line into a key and value, and then tabulates the cumulative number of records seen and total ages. Whenever the key changes, the `reduce` function will output the results.

We'll make both scripts executable:

```
$ chmod +x map.R
$ chmod +x reduce.R
```

Finally, we will use Hadoop to chain together this job. We need to specify the input data directory, the output data directory, the name of the mapper executable, the name of the reducer executable, and the name of any files that need to be sent to all the nodes. Here's what it looks like when we put this all together (output edited for brevity and clarity):

```
$ hadoop jar $HADOOP_HOME/contrib/streaming/hadoop-streaming-*.jar \
  -input mort09 \
  -output averagebycondition \
  -mapper map.R \
  -reducer reduce.R \
  -file map.R \
  -file reduce.R
...
12/08/02 23:49:11 mapred.FileInputFormat: Total input paths to process : 1
12/08/02 23:49:13 streaming.StreamJob: getLocalDirs(): [/tmp/
  hadoop-jadler/mapred/local]
12/08/02 23:49:13 streaming.StreamJob: Running job: job_201208030115_0005
...
12/08/03 00:03:15 streaming.StreamJob:  map 100%  reduce 97%
12/08/03 00:03:18 streaming.StreamJob:  map 100%  reduce 98%
12/08/03 00:03:25 streaming.StreamJob:  map 100%  reduce 100%
12/08/03 00:03:28 streaming.StreamJob: Job complete: job_201208030115_0005
12/08/03 00:03:28 streaming.StreamJob: Output: averagebycondition
```

We can now fetch the results from HDFS using the `hadoop fs -cat` command:

```
$ fs -cat averagebycondition/part-00000
Tuberculosis      68.7895716945996
Malignant neoplasms of cervix uteri, corpus uteri and ovary
Malignant neoplasm of prostate      78.8757602703183
Malignant neoplasms of urinary tract      73.6232744438881
Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma      72.7357622055727
Leukemia      70.3787303549355
Other malignant neoplasms      68.9533836045577
Diabetes mellitus      72.2713882749796
Alzheimer's disease      86.3567794679693
Syphilis      65.7647058823529
Hypertensive heart disease with or without renal disease      73.3070619826703
Ischemic heart diseases      77.3131372113333
Other diseases of heart      77.9667230873392
Essential      78.8974886465086
Cerebrovascular diseases      78.7811490083932
Atherosclerosis      83.5731707317073
Other diseases of circulatory system      76.0453367875648
Influenza and pneumonia      77.2984175390966
Chronic lower respiratory diseases      76.5816602021584
Peptic ulcer      74.906239460371
Human immunodeficiency virus      48.1772741713439
Chronic liver disease and cirrhosis      59.8160532932763
Nephritis, nephrotic syndrome, and nephrosis      77.1696725831818
Pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium      31.6104166666667
Certain conditions originating in the perinatal period      0.104190432732527
Birth defects      20.0559306661292
Sudden infant death syndrome      0
Other      71.5369307614645
```

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| All other diseases                                      | 75.821365783781  |
| Motor vehicle accidents                                 | 42.4689925669931 |
| All other and unspecified accidents and adverse effects | 57.7371714053424 |
| Intentional self-harm                                   | 46.7301651663828 |
| Assault   | 33.3116436324812 |
| All other external causes                               | 43.0446477584629 |
| Malignant neoplasm of stomach                           | 70.268135986437  |
| Malignant neoplasms of colon, rectum and anus           | 71.8581289805881 |
| Malignant neoplasm of pancreas                          | 71.4979390404621 |
| Malignant neoplasms of trachea, bronchus and lung       | 70.8628864611438 |
| Malignant neoplasm of breast                            | 67.9600389152377 |

## Learning More

Hadoop is a big, complicated system; this chapter has touched on only a few core concepts and showed how to use it with R. The best place to start is the official [Apache Hadoop website](#). If you want to read a good overview of Hadoop, complete with some case studies, Tom White's book [\*Hadoop: The Definitive Guide\*](#) is an excellent choice. To learn how to administer a Hadoop cluster, see Eric Sammer's book [\*Hadoop Operations\*](#).

Several companies provide commercial support for Hadoop including [Cloudera](#) and [Hortonworks](#).

## Other Packages for Parallel Computation with R

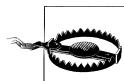
### Segue

The `segue` package by JD Long is a great choice for running simple parallel programs; it's intended to be a gentle introduction to parallel computation. `Segue` runs programs in the cloud using AWS's Elastic MapReduce service. (This is a distinct product from EC2, which I used to install my own private Hadoop cluster.) It borrows some Hadoop infrastructure, but it isn't a full map/reduce package. `Segue` is modeled on the `apply` function in R; you use it to apply a function to a data set across a set of computers in the cloud. Let's show how it works.

The `segue` package is hosted on Google Code, not CRAN. To install it, you can use the `install_url` command in the `devtools` package:

```
> library(devtools)
> # At the time I wrote this book, the current version was 0.05;
> # make sure to change the link to get the latest version:
> install_url("http://segue.googlecode.com/files/segue_0.05.tar.gz")
```

You'll need an [Amazon Web Services](#) account to use it.



You will be billed by the hour for using AWS. Make sure that you understand how you will be charged and how to use AWS before you start.

You'll need to get your Access Key ID and Secret Access Key from AWS's Security Credentials page.

```
> library(segue)
Loading required package: rJava
Loading required package: caTools
Loading required package: bitops
Segue did not find your AWS credentials. Please run the setCredentials()
function.
> # set aws.access.id to your amazon access id, aws.secret.key to your key
> setCredentials(aws.access.id, aws.secret.key)
```

To use segue, you first need to create a cluster object with `createCluster`:

```
createCluster(numInstances=2, cranPackages, customPackages,
  filesOnNodes, rObjectsOnNodes, enableDebugging=FALSE,
  instancesPerNode, masterInstanceType="m1.large",
  slaveInstanceType="m1.large", location="us-east-1c", ec2KeyName,
  copy.image=FALSE, otherBootstrapActions, sourcePackagesToInstall,
  masterBidPrice, slaveBidPrice)
```

To calculate the results, use the function `emrlapply` (which stands for “Elastic Map Reduce lapply”):

```
emrlapply(clusterObject, X, FUN, taskTimeout=10, ...)
```

When you're done, make sure to call `stopCluster` to terminate the EMR cluster (and stop Amazon from billing you):

```
stopCluster(clusterObject)
```

## doMC

In “[Looping Extensions](#)” on page 74, we showed some extensions to R’s built-in looping functions. (Specifically, we showed how to use the `foreach` package and `foreach` function.) Revolution Computing developed these extensions to help facilitate parallel computation. Revolution Computing has also released a package called `doMC` that facilitates running R code on multiple cores.

To write code that takes advantage of multiple cores, you need to initialize the `doMC` package:

```
> library(doMC)
> registerDoMC()
```

This will allow the `%dopar%` operator (and related functions) in the `foreach` package to run in parallel. Revolution Computing has additional tools available in its enterprise version. See its website for more information.

## Where to Learn More

If you’d like to learn more about high-performance computing with R, a good place to start is with the [CRAN Task View page on High Performance Computing](#).

Q. Ethan McCallum has written a whole book on parallel computing with R, [Parallel R: Data Analysis in the Distributed World](#).



# A

---

## R Reference

### base

This package contains the basic functions that let R function as a language: arithmetic, input/output, basic programming support, and so on. Its contents are available through inheritance from any environment.

### Functions

| Function | Description   |
|----------|---|
| !        | Not operator.   |
| !=       | Not equal operator.   |
| \$, \$<- | Select or set named element from a list.  |
| %%       | Modulo operator.  |
| %*%      | Binary operator to multiply two matrices, if they are conformable.  |
| %/%      | Integer division operator.  |
| %in%     | Binary operator that returns a logical vector indicating if there is a match or not for its left operand.     |
| %o%      | Operator to calculate the outer product of two arrays.  |
| %x%      | Operator to calculate the Kronecker product of two arrays.  |
| &        | Operator that performs elementwise logical AND.   |
| &&       | Operator that performs logical AND, evaluating expressions from left to right until the result is determined. |
| *        | Multiplication operator.  |
| +        | Addition operator.  |
| -        | Unary negation or binary subtraction operator.  |
| /        | Binary division operator.   |
| :        | Generates regular sequences.  |

| Function             | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| ::                   | Accesses an exported variable in a namespace.  |
| :::                  | Accesses an internal variable in a namespace.  |
| <                    | Less-than operator.  |
| >                    | Greater-than operator.   |
| >=                   | Greater-than-or-equal-to operator.   |
| <=                   | Less-than-or-equal-to operator.  |
| ==                   | Equality operator.   |
| @                    | Extracts the contents of an slot in an object with a formal (S4) class structure.  |
| Arg                  | Returns argument of a complex value.   |
| Conj                 | Returns conjugate of a complex value.  |
| Cstack_info          | Reports information on the C stack size and usage (if available).  |
| Encoding, Encoding<- | Read or set the declared encodings for a character vector.   |
| Filter               | Extracts the elements of a vector for which a predicate (logical) function gives true.   |
| Find                 | Returns the first or last element in a vector for which a condition is true.   |
| I                    | Changes the class of an object to indicate that it should be treated "as is."  |
| ISODate, ISOdatetime | Functions to convert between character representations and objects of classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times.                   |
| Im                   | Extracts the imaginary part of a complex value.  |
| La.svd               | Computes the singular-value decomposition of a rectangular matrix.   |
| Map                  | Applies a function to the corresponding elements of given vectors.   |
| Mod                  | Returns the modulus of a complex number.   |
| NCOL, NROW           | nrow and ncol return the number of rows or columns present in x. NCOL and NROW do the same, treating a vector as one-column matrix.                            |
| Negate               | Creates the negation of a given function.  |
| NextMethod           | For S3 generic functions, dispatches to the method for the next class in the object's class vector.  |
| Position             | Gives the position of an element in a matrix for which a predicate (logical) function is true.   |
| R.Version            | Provides detailed information about the version of R running.  |
| R.home               | Returns the R home directory.  |
| RNGkind              | Allows you to query or set the kind of random number generator (RNG) in use.   |
| RNGversion           | Can be used to set the random number generators as they were in an earlier R version (for reproducibility).  |
| R_system_version     | Simple S3 class for representing numeric versions, including package versions, and associated methods.   |
| Re                   | Returns the real part of a complex number.   |
| Recall               | Used as a placeholder for the name of the function in which it is called. It allows the definition of recursive functions that still work after being renamed. |

| Function            | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Reduce              | Uses a binary function to successively combine the elements of a given vector and a possibly given initial value.   |
| Sys.Date, Sys.time  | Return the system's idea of the current date with and without time.   |
| Sys.chmod           | Provides a low-level interface to the computer's file system.   |
| Sys.getenv          | Obtains the values of the environment variables.  |
| Sys.getlocale       | Gets details of or sets aspects of the locale for the R process.  |
| Sys.getpid          | Gets the process ID of the R session.   |
| Sys.glob            | Performs wildcard expansion (also known as "globbing") on file paths.   |
| Sys.info            | Reports system and user information.  |
| Sys.localeconv      | Gets details of the numerical and monetary representations in the current locale.   |
| Sys.setenv          | Sets environment variables (for other processes called from within R or future calls to <code>Sys.getenv</code> from this R process).   |
| Sys.setlocale       | Gets details of or sets aspects of the locale for the R process.  |
| Sys.sleep           | Suspends execution of R expressions for a given number of seconds.  |
| Sys.timezone        | Returns the current time zone.  |
| Sys.umask           | Provides a low-level interface to the computer's file system.   |
| Sys.unsetenv        | Removes environment variables.  |
| Sys.which           | Interface to the system command <code>which</code> .  |
| UseMethod           | Dispatches to the appropriate method for an S3 generic function.  |
| Vectorize           | Returns a new function that acts as if <code>mapply</code> was called.  |
| $\wedge$            | Exponentiation operator.  |
| abbreviate          | Abbreviates strings to at least <code>minlength</code> characters, such that they remain <i>unique</i> (if they were), unless <code>strict=TRUE</code> .  |
| abs                 | Absolute value.   |
| acos                | Computes the arccosine.   |
| acosh               | Computes the hyperbolic arccosine.  |
| addNA               | Modifies a factor by turning NA into an extra level (so that NA values are counted in tables, for instance).  |
| addTaskCallback     | Registers an R function that is to be called each time a top-level task is completed.   |
| agrep               | Searches for approximate matches to <code>pattern</code> (the first argument) within the string <code>x</code> (the second argument) using the Levenshtein edit distance.   |
| alist               | Function to construct, coerce, and check for both kinds of R lists.   |
| all                 | Given a set of logical vectors, are all of the values true?   |
| all.equal           | <code>all.equal(x, y)</code> is a utility to compare R objects <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> testing "nearequality." If they are different, comparison is still made to some extent, and a report of the differences is returned. |
| all.names, all.vars | Return a character vector containing all the names that occur in an expression or call.   |
| any                 | Given a set of logical vectors, is at least one of the values true?   |

| Function               | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| anyDuplicated          | Determines which elements of a vector or data frame are duplicates of elements with smaller subscripts and returns a logical vector indicating which elements (rows) are duplicates. |
| aperm                  | Transposes an array by permuting its dimensions and optionally resizing it.  |
| append                 | Adds elements to a vector.   |
| apply                  | Returns a vector or array or list of values obtained by applying a function to margins of an array.  |
| args                   | Displays the argument names and corresponding default values of a function or primitive.   |
| array                  | Creates arrays.  |
| as.Date                | Function to convert between character representations and objects of class "Date" representing calendar dates.   |
| as.POSIXct, as.POSIXlt | Functions to manipulate objects of classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times.  |
| as.array               | Coerces to arrays.   |
| as.call                | Coerces to "call" objects.   |
| as.character           | Coerces to "character" objects.  |
| as.complex             | Coerces to "complex" objects.  |
| as.data.frame          | Coerces to "data.frame" objects.   |
| as.difftime            | Coerces to "difftime" objects.   |
| as.double              | Coerces to "double" objects.   |
| as.environment         | Converts a number or a character string to the corresponding environment on the search path.   |
| as.expression          | Coerces to "expression" objects.   |
| as.factor              | Coerces to "factor".   |
| as.function            | Coerces to "function".   |
| as.hexmode             | Coerces to "hexmode".  |
| as.integer             | Creates or tests for objects of type "integer".  |
| as.list                | Coerces to "list".   |
| as.logical             | Coerces to "logical" objects.  |
| as.matrix              | Coerces to "matrix" objects.   |
| as.name                | Coerces to "name" objects.   |
| as.null                | Ignores its argument and returns the value NULL.   |
| as.numeric             | Coerces to "numeric".  |
| as.numeric_version     | Coerces to "numeric_version".  |
| as.octmode             | Coerces to "octmode".  |
| as.ordered             | Coerces to ordered factors.  |
| as.package_version     | Coerces to "package_version" object.   |
| as.pairlist            | Coerces to "pairlist" object.  |

| Function                          | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| as.raw                            | Coerces to type "raw".  |
| as.real                           | Coerces to type "real".   |
| as.symbol                         | Coerces to "symbol".  |
| as.table                          | Coerces to "table".   |
| as.vector                         | Coerces to "vector".  |
| asS4                              | Tests whether the object is an instance of an S4 class.   |
| asin                              | Computes the arcsine.   |
| asinh                             | Computes the hyperbolic arcsine.  |
| assign                            | Assigns a value to a name in an environment.  |
| atan                              | Computes the arctangent.  |
| atan2                             | Computes the two-argument arctangent.   |
| atanh                             | Computes the hyperbolic arctangent.   |
| attach                            | Attaches a database (usually a list, data frame, or environment) to the R search path. This means that the database is searched by R when evaluating a variable, so objects in the database can be accessed by simply giving their names. |
| attachNamespace                   | Function to load and unload namespaces.   |
| attr, attr<-                      | Get or set specific attributes of an object.  |
| attributes, attributes<-          | Access an object's attributes.  |
| autoload, autoloader              | autoload creates a promise-to-evaluate <code>autoloader</code> and stores it with name name in the <code>.AutoloadEnv</code> environment.   |
| backsolve                         | Solves a system of linear equations where the coefficient matrix is upper or lower triangular.  |
| baseenv                           | Gets, sets, tests for, and creates environments.  |
| basename                          | Removes all of the path up to the last path separator (if any).   |
| bessel, besselJ, besselK, besselY | Bessel functions of integer and fractional order, of first and second kind, $J(v)$ and $Y(v)$ , and modified Bessel functions (of first and third kind), $I(v)$ and $K(v)$ .  |
| beta                              | Special mathematical function related to the beta and gamma functions.  |
| bindingIsActive, bindingIsLocked  | These functions represent an experimental interface for adjustments to environments and bindings within environments. They allow for locking environments as well as individual bindings and for linking a variable to a function.        |
| bindtextdomain                    | If native language support was enabled in this build of R, attempts to translate character vectors or sets where the translations are to be found.  |
| body, body<-                      | Get or set the body of a function.  |
| bquote                            | Analog of the LISP backquote, macro. <code>bquote</code> quotes its argument except that terms wrapped in <code>.()</code> are evaluated in the specified <code>where</code> environment.   |
| break                             | Basic control-flow constructs of the R language. They function in much the same way as control statements in any Algol-like language. They are all reserved words.  |
| browser                           | Interrupts the execution of an expression and allows the inspection of the environment where <code>browser</code> was called from.  |

| Function                | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| builtins                | Returns the names of all the built-in objects. These are fetched directly from the symbol table of the R interpreter.  |
| by                      | An object-oriented wrapper for tapply applied to data frames.  |
| bzfile                  | Function to create, open, and close connections.   |
| c                       | Combines its arguments.  |
| call                    | Creates or tests for objects of mode "call".   |
| callCC                  | Downward-only version of Scheme's call with current continuation.  |
| capabilities            | Reports on the optional features that have been compiled into this build of R.   |
| casefold                | Translates characters in character vectors, in particular, from upper- to lowercase or vice versa.   |
| cat                     | Outputs the objects, concatenating the representations. cat performs much less conversion than print.  |
| cbind                   | Takes a sequence of vector, matrix, or data frame arguments and combines by columns.   |
| ceiling                 | Takes a single numeric argument x and returns a numeric vector containing the smallest integers not less than the corresponding elements of x.   |
| char.expand             | Seeks a unique match of its first argument among the elements of its second. If successful, it returns this element; otherwise, it performs an action specified by the third argument. |
| charToRaw               | Conversion and manipulation of objects of type "raw".  |
| character               | Creates or tests for objects of type "character".  |
| charmatch               | Seeks matches for the elements of its first argument among those of its second.  |
| chartr                  | Translates characters in character vectors, in particular, from upper- to lowercase or vice versa.   |
| check_tzones            | Description of the classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times (to the nearest second).  |
| chol                    | Computes the Choleski factorization of a real, symmetric, positive-definite square matrix.   |
| chol2inv                | Inverts a symmetric, positive-definite square matrix from its Choleski decomposition. Equivalently, computes $(X'X)^{-1}$ from the (R part) of the QR-decomposition of X.              |
| choose                  | Special mathematical function related to the beta and gamma functions.   |
| class, class<-          | The function class prints the vector of names of classes an object inherits from. Correspondingly, class<- sets the classes an object inherits from.                                   |
| close, close.connection | Close connections.   |
| closeAllConnections     | Displays aspects of connections.   |
| col                     | Returns a matrix of integers, indicating their column number in a matrix-like object or a factor of column labels.   |
| colMeans                | Forms row and column means for numeric arrays.   |
| colSums                 | Forms row and column sums for numeric arrays.  |
| colnames, colnames<-    | Retrieve or set the row or column names of a matrix-like object.   |

| Function  | Description   |
|---|---|
| commandArgs   | Provides access to a copy of the command-line arguments supplied when this R session was invoked.   |
| comment, comment<-  | Set and query a <i>comment</i> attribute for any R objects.   |
| computeRestarts   | Provides a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.  |
| conditionCall,<br>conditionCall.condition,<br>conditionMessage,<br>conditionMessage.condition | Provide a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.   |
| conflicts   | Reports on objects that exist with the same name in two or more places on the search path, usually because an object in the user's workspace or a package is masking a system object of the same name. This helps discover unintentional masking. |
| contributors  | The R Who's Who, describing who made significant contributions to the development of R.   |
| crossprod   | Given matrices <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> as arguments, returns a matrix cross-product. This is formally equivalent to (but usually slightly faster than) the call <i>t(x) %*% y</i> .   |
| cummax, cummin, cumprod, cumsum   | Returns a vector whose elements are the cumulative sums, products, minima, or maxima of the elements of the argument.   |
| cut   | Divides the range of <i>x</i> into intervals and codes the values in <i>x</i> according to which interval they fall. The leftmost interval corresponds to level 1, the next leftmost to level 2 and so on.  |
| cut.Date, cut.POSIXt  | Method for <i>cut</i> applied to date-time objects.   |
| dQuote  | Single- or double-quote text by combining with appropriate single or double left and right quotation marks.   |
| data.class  | Determines the class of an arbitrary R object.  |
| data.frame  | Creates data frames.  |
| data.matrix   | Returns the matrix obtained by converting all the variables in a data frame to numeric mode and then binding them together as the columns of a matrix. Factors and ordered factors are replaced by their internal codes.                          |
| date  | Returns a character string of the current system date and time.   |
| debug   | Sets, unsets, or queries the debugging flag on a function.  |
| default.stringsAsFactors  | Creates data frames, tightly coupled collections of variables that share many of the properties of matrices and lists, used as the fundamental data structure by most of R's modeling software.   |
| delayedAssign   | Creates a <i>promise</i> to evaluate a given expression if its value is requested. This provides direct access to the <i>lazy evaluation</i> mechanism used by R for the evaluation of (interpreted) functions.                                   |
| deparse   | Turns unevaluated expressions into character strings.   |
| det, determinant  | <i>det</i> calculates the determinant of a matrix. <i>determinant</i> is a generic function that returns separately the modulus of the determinant, optionally on the logarithm scale, and the sign of the determinant.                           |

| Function  | Description   |
|---|---|
| detach  | Detaches a database, i.e., removes it from the <code>search()</code> path of available R objects. Usually, this is either a <code>data.frame</code> that has been attached or a package that was required previously. |
| dget  | Writes an ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) text representation of an R object to a file or connection or uses one to re-create the object.  |
| diag, diag<-  | Extract or replace the diagonal of a matrix or construct a diagonal matrix.   |
| diff, diff.Date, diff.POSIXt,<br>diff.default   | Return suitably lagged and iterated differences.  |
| difftime  | Creates, prints, and rounds time intervals.   |
| digamma   | Special mathematical function related to the beta and gamma functions.  |
| dim, dim.data.frame, dim<-,<br>dimnames,<br>dimnames.data.frame,<br>dimnames<-,<br>dimnames<-data.frame | Retrieve or set the dimension of an object.   |
| dir, dir.create   | Produce a character vector of the names of files in the named directory.  |
| dirname   | Returns the part of the path up to (but excluding) the last path separator, or ". " if there is no path separator.  |
| do.call   | Constructs and executes a function call from a name or a function and a list of arguments to be passed to it.   |
| double  | Creates, coerces to, or tests for a double-precision vector.  |
| dput  | Writes an ASCII text representation of an R object to a file or connection or uses one to re-create the object.   |
| drop  | Deletes the dimensions of an array that has only one level.   |
| dump  | Takes a vector of names of R objects and produces text representations of the objects on a file or connection. A dump file can usually be sourced into another R (or S) session.                                      |
| duplicated  | Determines which elements of a vector or data frame are duplicates of elements with smaller subscripts and returns a logical vector indicating which elements (rows) are duplicates.                                  |
| dyn.load, dyn.unload  | Load or unload DLLs (also known as shared objects) and test whether a C function or FORTRAN subroutine is available.  |
| eapply  | Applies FUN to the named values from an environment and returns the results as a list.  |
| eigen   | Computes eigenvalues and eigenvectors of real or complex matrices.  |
| emptyenv  | Gets, sets, tests for, and creates environments.  |
| encodeString  | Escapes the strings in a character vector in the same way <code>print.default</code> does and optionally fits the encoded strings within a field width.   |
| env.profile   | This function is intended to assess the performance of hashed environments.   |
| environment, environment<-  | Gets or sets the environment associated with a function or formula.   |
| environmentIsLocked   | Returns a logical environment indicating if an environment is locked.   |
| environmentName   | Returns the name of an environment.   |

| Function                            | Description   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| eval, eval.parent, evalq            | Evaluate an R expression in a specified environment.  |
| exists                              | Looks for an R object of a given name.  |
| exp                                 | Computes the exponential function.  |
| expand.grid                         | Creates a data frame from all combinations of the supplied vectors or factors.  |
| expm1                               | Computes $e^x - 1$ accurately for $x << 1$ .  |
| expression                          | Creates objects of mode "expression".   |
| factor                              | Used to encode a vector as a factor.  |
| factorial                           | Special mathematical function related to the beta and gamma functions.  |
| fifo                                | Creates a FIFO connection.  |
| file                                | Creates a file connection.  |
| file.access                         | Utility function to access information about files on the user's file systems.  |
| file.append                         | Provides a low-level interface to the computer's file system.   |
| file.choose                         | Chooses a file interactively.   |
| file.copy, file.create, file.exists | Provide a low-level interface to the computer's file system.  |
| file.info                           | Utility function to extract information about files on the user's file systems.   |
| file.path                           | Constructs the path to a file from components in a platform-independent way.  |
| file.remove, file.rename            | Provides a low-level interface to the computer's file system.   |
| file.show                           | Displays one or more files.   |
| file.symlink                        | Provides a low-level interface to the computer's file system.   |
| findInterval                        | Finds the indices of $x$ in $\text{vec}$ , where $\text{vec}$ must be sorted (nondecreasingly).   |
| findRestart                         | Provides a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.  |
| floor                               | Takes a single numeric argument $x$ and returns a numeric vector containing the largest integers not greater than the corresponding elements of $x$ . |
| flush, flush.connection             | Functions to create, open, and close connections.   |
| force                               | Forces the evaluation of a function argument.   |
| formals, formals<-                  | Get or set the formal arguments of a function.  |
| format, format.AsIs                 | Format an R object for pretty printing.   |
| formatC                             | Formats numbers individually and flexibly, using C-style format specifications.   |
| formatDL                            | Formats vectors of items and their descriptions as two-column tables or LaTeX-style description lists.  |
| forwardsolve                        | Solves a system of linear equations where the coefficient matrix is upper or lower triangular.  |
| function                            | Provides the base mechanisms for defining new functions in the R language.  |
| gamma                               | Special mathematical function related to the beta and gamma functions.  |
| gc                                  | Causes garbage collection to take place.  |
| gc.time                             | Reports the time spent in garbage collection so far in the R session while GC timing was enabled.   |

| Function  | Description   |
|---|---|
| gcinfo  | Sets a flag so that automatic collection is either silent ( <code>verbose=FALSE</code> ) or prints memory usage statistics ( <code>verbose=TRUE</code> ).   |
| gctorture   | Provokes garbage collection on (nearly) every memory allocation. Intended to ferret out memory protection bugs. Also makes R run very slowly, unfortunately.  |
| get   | Searches for an R object with a given name and returns it.  |
| getAllConnections   | Displays aspects of connections.  |
| getCConverterDescriptions,<br>getCConverterStatus   | Provide facilities to manage the extensible list of converters used to translate R objects into C pointers for use in .C calls. The number and a description of each element in the list can be retrieved. One can also query and set the activity status of individual elements, temporarily ignoring them. And one can remove individual elements.                  |
| getConnection   | Displays aspects of connections.  |
| getDLLRegisteredRoutines,<br>getDLLRegistered<br>Routines.DLLInfo,<br>getDLLRegistered<br>Routines.character                    | These functions allow us to query the set of routines in a DLL that are registered with R to enhance dynamic lookup, error handling when calling native routines, and potentially security in the future. These functions provide a description of each of the registered routines in the DLL for the different interfaces, i.e., .C, .Call, .Fortran, and .External. |
| getExportedValue  | Function to support reflection on namespace objects.  |
| getHook   | Allows users to set actions to be taken before packages are attached/detached and namespaces are (un)loaded.  |
| getLoadedDLLs   | Provides a way to get a list of all the DLLs (see <code>dyn.load</code> ) that are currently loaded in the R session.   |
| getNamespace,<br>getNamespaceExports,<br>getNamespaceImports,<br>getNamespaceName,<br>getNamespaceUsers,<br>getNamespaceVersion | Functions to support reflection on namespace objects.   |
| getNativeSymbolInfo   | Finds and returns as comprehensive a description of one or more dynamically loaded or “exported” built-in native symbols.   |
| getNumCConverters   | Used to manage the extensible list of converters used to translate R objects into C pointers for use in .C calls. Returns an integer giving the number of elements in a specified list, both active and inactive.   |
| getOption   | Allows the user to set and examine a variety of global <i>options</i> that affect the way in which R computes and displays its results.   |
| getRversion   | A simple S3 class for representing numeric versions, including package versions and associated methods.   |
| getSrcLines   | This function is for working with source files.   |
| getTaskCallbackNames  | Provides a way to get the names (or identifiers) for the currently registered task callbacks that are invoked at the conclusion of each top-level task. These identifiers can be used to remove a callback.   |
| geterrmessage   | Gives the last error message.   |
| gettext   | If native language support was enabled in this build of R, attempts to translate character vectors or set where the translations are to be found.   |

| Function                                     | Description  |
|--|--|
| gettextf                                     | A wrapper for the C function <code>sprintf</code> that returns a character vector containing a formatted combination of text and variable values.  |
| getwd  | Returns an absolute filename representing the current working directory of the R process.  |
| gl   | Generates factors by specifying the pattern of their levels.   |
| globalenv                                    | Gets, sets, tests for, and creates environments.   |
| gregexpr, grep, grepl, gsub                  | <code>grep</code> searches for matches to <code>pattern</code> (its first argument) within the character vector <code>x</code> (second argument). <code>grep1</code> is an alternative way to return the results. <code>regexpr</code> and <code>gregexpr</code> return results, too, but they return more detail in a different format. |
| gsub   | <code>sub</code> and <code>gsub</code> perform replacement of matches determined by regular expression matching.   |
| gzcon  | Provides a modified connection that wraps an existing connection and decompresses reads or compresses writes through that connection. Standard gzip headers are assumed.   |
| gzfile                                       | Function to create, open, and close connections.   |
| iconv, iconvlist                             | These use system facilities to convert a character vector between encodings: the "i" stands for "internationalization."  |
| icuSetCollate                                | Controls the way collation is done by ICU (an optional part of the R build).   |
| identical                                    | The safe and reliable way to test two objects for being <i>exactly</i> equal. It returns TRUE in this case, FALSE in every other case.   |
| identity                                     | A trivial identity function returning its argument.  |
| ifelse                                       | Returns a value with the same shape as <code>test</code> that is filled with elements selected from either yes or no, depending on whether the element of <code>test</code> is TRUE or FALSE.  |
| inherits                                     | Indicates whether its first argument inherits from any of the classes specified in the <code>what</code> argument.   |
| intToBits                                    | Conversion and manipulation of objects of type "raw".  |
| intToUtf8                                    | Conversion of UTF-8 encoded character vectors to and from integer vectors.   |
| integer                                      | Creates or tests for objects of type "integer".  |
| interaction                                  | Computes a factor that represents the interaction of the given factors. The result of <code>interaction</code> is always unordered.  |
| interactive                                  | Returns TRUE when R is being used interactively and FALSE otherwise.   |
| intersect                                    | Performs set union, intersection, (asymmetric!) difference, equality, and membership on two vectors.   |
| inverse.rle                                  | Computes the lengths and values of runs of equal values in a vector—or the reverse operation.  |
| invisible                                    | Returns a (temporarily) invisible copy of an object.   |
| invokeRestart,<br>invokeRestartInteractively | Provide a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.  |
| is.R   | Tests if running under R.  |

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| is.array  | Creates or tests for arrays.   |
| is.atomic   | Returns TRUE if $x$ is an atomic vector (or NULL) and FALSE otherwise.   |
| is.call   | Tests for objects of mode "call".  |
| is.character                                      | Tests for objects of type "character".   |
| is.complex  | Tests for objects of type "complex".   |
| is.data.frame                                     | Tests if an object is a data frame.  |
| is.double   | Tests for a double-precision vector.   |
| is.element  | Tests if an element is a member of a set.  |
| is.environment                                    | Tests if an object is an environment.  |
| is.expression                                     | Tests if an object is an "expression".   |
| is.factor   | Returns a logical value indicating if an object is a factor.   |
| is.finite, is.infinite                            | Return a vector of the same length as $x$ , indicating which elements are finite (not infinite and not missing).   |
| is.function                                       | Checks whether its argument is a (primitive) function.   |
| is.integer  | Creates or tests for objects of type "integer".  |
| is.language                                       | Returns TRUE if $x$ is a variable name, a call, or an expression.  |
| is.list   | Tests if an object is a list.  |
| is.loaded   | Tests whether a C function or FORTRAN subroutine is available.   |
| is.logical  | Tests for objects of type "logical".   |
| is.matrix   | Tests if its argument is a (strict) matrix.  |
| is.na, is.na<-                                    | The generic function <code>is.na</code> indicates which elements in an object are missing. The generic function <code>is.na&lt;-</code> sets elements to NA. |
| is.name   | Returns TRUE or FALSE, depending on whether the argument is a name or not.   |
| is.nan  | Tests if an object is a NaN (meaning "not a number").  |
| is.null   | Returns TRUE if its argument is NULL and FALSE otherwise.  |
| is.numeric, is.numeric.Date,<br>is.numeric.POSIXt | A general test of an object being interpretable as numbers.  |
| is.numeric_version                                | A simple S3 class for representing numeric versions, including package versions, and associated methods.   |
| is.ordered  | Tests if an object is an ordered factor.   |
| is.package_version                                | Tests for a package_version object.  |
| is.pairlist                                       | Tests for a pairlist object.   |
| is.primitive                                      | Checks whether its argument is a (primitive) function.   |
| is.qr   | Tests whether an object is the QR-decomposition of a matrix (created by the <code>qr</code> function).   |
| is.raw  | Tests for objects of type "raw".   |
| is.recursive                                      | Returns TRUE if $x$ has a recursive (listlike) structure and FALSE otherwise.  |

| Function  | Description   |
|---|---|
| is.symbol   | <code>is.symbol</code> (and the identical <code>is.name</code> ) returns TRUE or FALSE, depending on whether the argument is a name or not.   |
| is.table  | <code>table</code> uses the cross-classifying factors to build a contingency table of the counts at each combination of factor levels.  |
| is.unsorted   | Tests if an object is not sorted, without the cost of sorting it.   |
| is.vector   | Returns TRUE if <code>x</code> is a vector (of mode logical, integer, real, complex, character, raw or a list if not specified) or expression and FALSE otherwise.  |
| isIncomplete, isOpen                                    | Functions to create, open, and close connections.   |
| isRestart   | Provides a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.  |
| isS4  | Tests whether the object is an instance of an S4 class.   |
| isSeekable  | Function to reposition connections.   |
| isSymmetric, isSymmetric.matrix                         | Generic functions to test if <code>object</code> is symmetric or not. Currently, only a matrix method is implemented.   |
| isTRUE  | This operator acts on logical vectors.  |
| isdebugged  | Sets, unsets, or queries the debugging flag on a function.  |
| jitter  | Adds a small amount of noise to a numeric vector.   |
| julian, julian.Date, julian.POSIXt                      | Extract the weekday, month, or quarter, or the Julian time (days since some origin). These are generic functions: the methods for the internal date-time classes are documented here.   |
| kappa, kappa.defaultm,<br>kappa.lm, kappa.qr, kappa.tri | The condition number of a regular (square) matrix is the product of the norm of the matrix and the norm of its inverse (or pseudoinverse) and hence depends on the kind of matrix norm. <code>kappa()</code> computes an estimate of the 2-norm condition number of a matrix or of the <code>R</code> matrix of a <i>QR</i> -decomposition, perhaps of a linear fit. The 2-norm condition number can be shown to be the ratio of the largest to the smallest <i>nonzero</i> singular value of the matrix. |
| kronecker   | Computes the generalized Kronecker product of two arrays, <code>X</code> and <code>Y</code> . <code>\%&gt;%\%</code> is an alias for <code>kronecker</code> (where <code>FUN</code> is hardwired to <code>"*"</code> ).   |
| l10n_info   | Reports on localization information.  |
| labels  | Finds a suitable set of labels from an object for use in printing or plotting, for example.   |
| lapply  | Returns a list of the same length as <code>X</code> , each element of which is the result of applying <code>FUN</code> to the corresponding element of <code>X</code> .   |
| lazyLoad  | Lazy loads a database of R objects.   |
| lbeta, lchoose  | Special mathematical functions related to the beta and gamma functions.   |
| length, length<-, length<-factor                        | Get or set the length of vectors (including lists) and factors and of any other R object for which a method has been defined.   |
| levels, levels.default, levels<-,<br>levels<-factor     | Provide access to the <code>levels</code> attribute of a variable.  |
| lfactorial, lgamma                                      | Special mathematical functions related to the beta and gamma functions.   |
| library   | <code>library</code> and <code>require</code> load add-on packages.   |

| Function              | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| library.dynam         | Loads a specified file of compiled code if it has not been loaded already, or unloads it.   |
| library.dynam.unload  | Loads a specified file of compiled code if it has not been loaded already, or unloads it.   |
| licence               | The license terms under which R is distributed.   |
| list                  | Function to construct, coerce, and check for both kinds of R lists.   |
| list.files            | Produces a character vector of the names of files in the named directory.   |
| load                  | Reloads data sets written with the function save.   |
| loadNamespace         | Loads the specified namespace and registers it in an internal database.   |
| loadedNamespaces      | Returns a character vector of the names of the loaded namespaces.   |
| loadingName spaceInfo | Returns a list of the arguments that would be passed to .onLoad when a namespace is being loaded.   |
| local                 | Evaluates an R expression in a specified environment.   |
| lockBinding           | Locks individual bindings in a specified environment.   |
| lockEnvironment       | Locks its environment argument, which must be a normal environment (not base).  |
| log                   | Computes logarithms, by default natural logarithms.   |
| log10                 | Computes common (i.e., base 10) logarithms.   |
| log1p                 | Computes $\log(1 + x)$ accurately for $ x  << 1$ (and less accurately when $x \approx -1$ ).  |
| log2                  | Computes binary (i.e., base 2) logarithms.  |
| logical               | Creates or tests for objects of type "logical" and the basic logical constants.   |
| lower.tri             | Returns a matrix of logicals the same size of a given matrix with entries TRUE in the lower or upper triangle.  |
| ls                    | ls and objects return a vector of character strings giving the names of the objects in a specified environment.                                       |
| make.names            | Makes syntactically valid names out of character vectors.   |
| make.unique           | Makes the elements of a character vector unique by appending sequence numbers to duplicates.  |
| makeActiveBinding     | Installs FUN so that getting the value of sym calls FUN with no arguments and assigning to sym calls FUN with one argument, the value to be assigned. |
| mapply                | A multivariate version of sapply. mapply applies FUN to the first elements of each ... argument, the second elements, the third elements, and so on.  |
| margin.table          | For a contingency table in array form, computes the sum of table entries for a given index.   |
| mat.or.vec            | Creates an nx by nc zero matrix if nc is greater than 1, and a zero vector of length nx if nc equals 1.   |
| match                 | Returns a vector of the positions of (first) matches of its first argument in its second.   |
| match.arg             | Matches arg against a table of candidate values as specified by choices, where NULL means to take the first one.                                      |
| match.call            | Returns a call in which all the specified arguments are specified by their full names.  |

| Function                                  | Description  |
|---|--|
| match.fun                                 | When called inside functions that take a function as argument, extracts the desired function object while avoiding undesired matching to objects of other types.   |
| matrix                                    | Creates a matrix from a given set of values. <code>as.matrix</code> attempts to turn its argument into a matrix. <code>is.matrix</code> tests if its argument is a (strict) matrix.  |
| max                                       | Returns the (parallel) maxima and minima of the input values.  |
| max.col                                   | Finds the maximum position for each row of a matrix, breaking ties at random.  |
| mean                                      | Generic function for the (trimmed) arithmetic mean.  |
| memory.profile                            | Lists the usage of the cons cells by SEXPREC type.   |
| merge, merge.data.frame,<br>merge.default | Merge two data frames by common columns or row names or perform other versions of database <i>join</i> operations.   |
| message                                   | Generates a diagnostic message from its arguments.   |
| mget                                      | Searches for an R object with a given name and returns it.   |
| min                                       | Returns the (parallel) maxima and minima of the input values.  |
| missing                                   | Tests whether a value was specified as an argument to a function.  |
| mode, mode<-                              | Get or set the type of storage mode of an object.  |
| months                                    | Extracts the months from an object.  |
| mostattributes<-                          | The <code>mostattributes</code> assignment takes special care of the <code>dim</code> , <code>names</code> , and <code>dimnames</code> attributes and assigns them only when valid, whereas an <code>attributes</code> assignment would give an error if any were not. |
| names, names<-                            | Functions to get or set the names of an object.  |
| nargs                                     | When used inside a function body, returns the number of arguments supplied to that function, <i>including</i> positional arguments left blank.   |
| nchar                                     | Takes a character vector as an argument and returns a vector whose elements contain the sizes of the corresponding elements of <code>x</code> .  |
| ncol, nrow                                | Return the number of rows or columns present in <code>x</code> .   |
| new.env                                   | Gets, sets, tests for, and creates environments.   |
| gettext                                   | If native language support was enabled in this build of R, attempts to translate character vectors or set where the translations are to be found.  |
| nlevels                                   | Returns the number of levels that its argument has.  |
| noquote                                   | Prints character strings without quotes.   |
| numeric                                   | Creates or coerces objects of type "numeric". <code>is.numeric</code> is a more general test of an object being interpretable as numbers.  |
| numeric_version                           | A simple S3 class for representing numeric versions, including package versions, and associated methods.   |
| nzchar                                    | A fast way to find out if elements of a character vector are nonempty strings.   |
| objects                                   | <code>ls</code> and <code>objects</code> return a vector of character strings giving the names of the objects in a specified environment.  |
| oldClass, oldClass<-                      | Get and set the <code>class</code> attribute.  |
| on.exit                                   | Records the expression given as its argument as needing to be executed when the current function exits (either naturally or as the result of an error).  |

| Function                       | Description  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| open, open.connection          | Functions to create, open, and close connections.  |
| open_srcfile, open_srcfilecopy | These functions are for working with source files.   |
| options                        | Allows the user to set and examine a variety of global <i>options</i> that affect the way in which R computes and displays its results.  |
| order                          | Returns a permutation that rearranges its first argument into ascending or descending order, breaking ties by further arguments.   |
| ordered                        | Used to create ordered factors.  |
| outer                          | The outer product of the arrays X and Y is the array A with dimension c(dim(X), dim(Y)), where element A[c(arrayindex.x, arrayindex.y)] = FUN(X[arrayindex.x], Y[arrayindex.y], ...).  |
| packBits                       | Conversion and manipulation of objects of type "raw".  |
| packageEvent                   | setHook provides a general mechanism for users to register hooks, a list of functions to be called from system (or user) functions. The initial set of hooks is associated with events on packages/name spaces: these hooks are named via calls to packageEvent. |
| packageStartup                 | Message  |
| package_version                | Generates a diagnostic message from its arguments.   |
| pairlist                       | Creates a package_version object (a simple S3 class for representing numeric versions, including package versions, and associated methods).  |
| parent.env, parent.env<-       | Function to construct, coerce, and check for both kinds of R lists.  |
| parent.frame                   | Get, set, test for, and create environments.   |
| parse                          | Provides access to environments ("frames" in S terminology) associated with functions farther up the calling stack.  |
| parseNamespaceFile             | Returns the parsed but unevaluated expressions in a list.  |
| paste                          | Internal namespace support function. Not intended to be called directly.   |
| path.expand                    | Concatenates vectors after converting to character.  |
| pipe                           | Expands a path name, for example, by replacing a leading tilde with the user's home directory (if defined on that platform).   |
| pmatch                         | Function to create, open, and close connections.   |
| pmax, pmax.int, pmin, pmin.int | Seeks matches for the elements of its first argument among those of its second.  |
| polyroot                       | Return the (parallel) maxima and minima of the input values.   |
| pos.to.env                     | Finds zeros of a real or complex polynomial.   |
| pretty                         | Returns the environment at a specified position in the search path.  |
| prettyNum                      | Computes a sequence of about n+1 equally spaced "round" values that cover the range of the values in x. The values are chosen so that they are 1, 2, or 5 times a power of 10.   |
| print                          | Formats numbers individually and flexibly, using C-style format specifications.  |
| prmatrix                       | Prints its argument and returns it <i>invisibly</i> (via invisible(x)).  |
| proc.time                      | An earlier method for printing matrices, provided for S compatibility.   |
| has already taken.             | Determines how much real and CPU time (in seconds) the currently running R process   |

| Function                             | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| prod                                 | Returns the product of all the values present in its arguments.   |
| prop.table                           | This is really <code>sweep(x, margin, margin.table(x, margin), "/")</code> for newbies, except that if <code>margin</code> has length 0, then one gets <code>x/sum(x)</code> .  |
| psigamma                             | Special mathematical function related to the beta and gamma functions.  |
| pushBack, pushBackLength             | Functions to push back text lines onto a connection and to inquire about how many lines are currently pushed back.  |
| q                                    | Alias for quit.   |
| qr                                   | Computes the <i>QR</i> -decomposition of a matrix. It provides an interface to the techniques used in the LINPACK routine DQRDC or the LAPACK routines DGEPQ3 and (for complex matrices) ZGEPQ3.  |
| qr.coef                              | Returns the coefficients obtained when fitting <code>y</code> to the matrix with <i>QR</i> -decomposition <code>qr</code> .   |
| qr.qy                                | Returns <code>Q %*% y</code> , where <code>Q</code> is the (complete) <code>Q</code> matrix.  |
| qr.qty                               | Returns <code>t(Q) %*% y</code> , where <code>Q</code> is the (complete) <code>Q</code> matrix.   |
| qr.resid                             | Returns the residuals obtained when fitting <code>y</code> to the matrix with <i>QR</i> -decomposition <code>qr</code> .  |
| qr.solve                             | Solves systems of equations via the <i>QR</i> -decomposition: if <code>a</code> is a <i>QR</i> -decomposition, it is the same as <code>solve.qr</code> , but if <code>a</code> is a rectangular matrix, the <i>QR</i> -decomposition is computed first. |
| qr.fitted                            | Returns the fitted values obtained when fitting <code>y</code> to the matrix with <i>QR</i> -decomposition <code>qr</code> .  |
| qr.Q, qr.R, qr.X                     | Returns the original matrix from which the object was constructed or the components of the decomposition.   |
| quarters                             | Extracts the quarter from an object.  |
| quit                                 | The function <code>quit</code> or its alias <code>q</code> terminates the current R session.  |
| quote                                | Simply returns its argument. The argument is not evaluated and can be any R expression.   |
| range                                | Returns a vector containing the minimum and maximum of all the given arguments.   |
| rank                                 | Returns the sample ranks of the values in a vector. Ties (i.e., equal values) and missing values can be handled in several ways.  |
| rapply                               | A recursive version of <code>lapply</code> .  |
| raw                                  | Creates or tests for objects of type "raw".   |
| rawConnection,<br>rawConnectionValue | Input and output raw connections.   |
| rawShift, rawToBits, rawToChar       | Conversion and manipulation of objects of type "raw".   |
| rbind                                | Takes a sequence of vector, matrix, or data frame argument and combines by rows, respectively.  |
| rcond                                | Computes the 1- and inf-norm condition numbers for a matrix, also for complex matrices, using standard LAPACK routines.   |
| read.dcf                             | Reads or writes an R object from/to a file in Debian control file format.   |
| readBin                              | Reads binary data from a connection or writes binary data to a connection.  |

| Function               | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| readChar               | Transfers character strings to and from connections, without assuming they are null terminated on the connection.  |
| readLines              | Reads some or all text lines from a connection.  |
| readline               | Reads a line from the terminal.  |
| real                   | This function is the same as its <code>double</code> equivalents and is provided for backward compatibility only.  |
| reg.finalizer          | Registers an R function to be called upon garbage collection of objects or (optionally) at the end of an R session.  |
| regexp                 | Searches for matches to <code>pattern</code> (its first argument) within the character vector <code>x</code> (second argument), and returns detailed results.  |
| remove, rm             | Used to remove objects.  |
| removeCConverter       | Returns TRUE if an element in the converter list was identified and removed. (This function provides facilities to manage the extensible list of converters used to translate R objects into C pointers for use in .C calls.)                          |
| removeTaskCallback     | Un-registers a function that was registered earlier via <code>addTaskCallback</code> .   |
| rep, rep.int           | <code>rep</code> replicates the values in <code>x</code> . It is a generic function, and the (internal) default method is described here. <code>rep.int</code> is a faster simplified version for the most common case.                                |
| replace                | Replaces the values in <code>x</code> with indices given in <code>list</code> by those given in <code>values</code> . If necessary, the values in <code>values</code> are recycled.  |
| replicate              | A wrapper for the common use of <code>sapply</code> for repeated evaluation of an expression (which will usually involve random number generation).  |
| require                | <code>library</code> and <code>require</code> load add-on packages.  |
| retracemem             | Marks an object so that a message is printed whenever the internal function <code>duplicate</code> is called. This happens when two objects share the same memory and one of them is modified. It is a major cause of hard-to-predict memory use in R. |
| return                 | Provides the base mechanisms for defining new functions in the R language.   |
| rev                    | Provides a reversed version of its argument. It is generic function with a default method for vectors and one for <code>dendrograms</code> .   |
| rle                    | Computes the lengths and values of runs of equal values in a vector—or the reverse operation.  |
| round                  | Rounds the values in its first argument to the specified number of decimal places (default 0).   |
| round.POSIXt           | Rounds or truncates date-time objects.   |
| row                    | Returns a matrix of integers indicating their row number in a matrix-like object or a factor indicating the row labels.  |
| row.names, row.names<- | Get or set the row names attribute from an object (such as a data frame).  |
| rowMeans, rowSums      | Form row and column sums and means for numeric arrays.   |
| rownames, rownames<-   | Retrieve or set the row or column names of a matrix-like object.   |
| rowsum                 | Computes column sums across rows of a matrix-like object for each level of a grouping variable.  |

| Function                          | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| sQuote                            | Single- or double-quote text by combining with appropriate single or double left and right quotation marks.   |
| sample                            | Takes a sample of specified size from the elements of <code>x</code> using either with or without replacement.  |
| sapply                            | A user-friendly version of <code>lapply</code> by default returning a vector or matrix if appropriate.  |
| save                              | Writes an external representation of R objects to a specified file. The objects can be read back from the file at a later date by using the function <code>load</code> (or <code>data</code> in some cases).  |
| save.image                        | Just a shortcut for "save my current workspace," i.e., <code>save(list = ls(all=TRUE), file = ".RData")</code> . It is also what happens with <code>q("yes")</code> .   |
| saveNamespacelimage               | Low-level namespace support function.   |
| scale                             | A generic function whose default method centers and/or scales the columns of a numeric matrix.  |
| scan                              | Reads data into a vector or list from the console or file.  |
| search                            | Gives a list of attached <i>packages</i> (see <code>library</code> ), and R objects, usually <code>data.frames</code> .   |
| searchpaths                       | Gives a similar character vector to <code>search</code> , with the entries for packages being the path to the package used to load the code.  |
| seek, seek.connection             | Functions to reposition connections.  |
| seq, seq.int, seq_along, seq_len  | Generate regular sequences. <code>seq</code> is a standard generic with a default method. <code>seq.int</code> is an internal generic that can be much faster but has a few restrictions. <code>seq_along</code> and <code>seq_len</code> are very fast primitives for two common cases.  |
| sequence                          | For each element of <code>nvec</code> , the sequence <code>seq_len(nvec[i])</code> is created. These are concatenated and the result returned.  |
| serialize                         | A simple low-level interface for serializing to connections.  |
| set.seed                          | The recommended way to specify seeds for random number generation.  |
| setCConverterStatus               | Provides facilities to manage the extensible list of converters used to translate R objects into C pointers for use in .C calls. The number and a description of each element in the list can be retrieved. One can also query and set the activity status of individual elements, temporarily ignoring them. And one can remove individual elements. |
| setHook                           | Allows users to set actions to be taken before packages are attached/detached and namespaces are (un)loaded.  |
| setSessionTimeLimit, setTimeLimit | Functions to set CPU and/or elapsed time limits for top-level computations or the current session.  |
| setdiff, setequal                 | Perform <code>setunion</code> , <code>intersection</code> , (asymmetric!) <code>difference</code> , <code>equality</code> , and <code>membership</code> on two vectors.   |
| setwd                             | Used to set the working directory to <code>dir</code> .   |
| shQuote                           | Quotes a string to be passed to an operating system shell.  |
| showConnections                   | Displays aspects of connections.  |

| Function   | Description   |
|--|---|
| sign   | Returns a vector with the signs of the corresponding elements of $x$ (the sign of a real number is 1, 0, or -1 if the number is positive, zero, or negative, respectively).   |
| signalCondition  | Provides a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.  |
| signif   | Rounds the values in its first argument to the specified number of significant digits.  |
| simpleCondition, simpleError, simpleMessage, simpleWarning | Provide a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.   |
| sin  | Computes the sine.  |
| sinh   | Computes the hyperbolic sine.   |
| sink, sink.number  | <code>sink</code> diverts R output to a connection. <code>sink.number()</code> reports how many diversions are in use. <code>sink.number(type = "message")</code> reports the number of the connection currently being used for error messages. |
| slice.index  | Returns a matrix of integers indicating the number of their slice in a given array.   |
| socketConnection   | Function to create, open, and close connections.  |
| socketSelect   | Waits for the first of several socket connections to become available.  |
| solve  | This generic function solves the equation $a \setminus \%*\% x = b$ for $x$ , where $b$ can be either a vector or a matrix.   |
| solve.qr   | The method of <code>solve</code> for <code>qr</code> objects.   |
| sort   | Sorts (or <i>orders</i> ) a vector or factor (partially) into ascending (or descending) order.  |
| source   | Causes R to accept its input from the named file or URL (the name must be quoted) or connection.  |
| split, split<-   | <code>split</code> divides the data in the vector $x$ into the groups defined by $f$ . The replacement forms replace values corresponding to such a division.   |
| sprintf  | A wrapper for the C function <code>sprintf</code> that returns a character vector containing a formatted combination of text and variable values.   |
| sqrt   | Computes miscellaneous mathematical functions. The naming follows the standard for computer languages such as C or FORTRAN.   |
| srcfile  | This function is for working with source files.   |
| srcfilecopy  | This function is for working with source files.   |
| srcref   | This function is for working with source files.   |
| standardGeneric  | Dispatches the method defined for a generic function $f$ , using the actual arguments in the frame from which it is called.   |
| stderr   | Displays aspects of connections.  |
| stdin  | Displays aspects of connections.  |
| stdout   | Displays aspects of connections.  |
| stop   | Stops execution of the current expression and executes an error action.   |
| stopifnot  | If any of the expressions in $\dots$ are not all TRUE, then <code>stop</code> is called, producing an error message indicating the <i>first</i> of the elements of $\dots$ which were not true.   |
| storage.mode, storage.mode<-                               | Get or set the type of storage mode of an object.   |

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| strftime, strptime  | Functions to convert between character representations and objects of classes "POSIXlt" and "POSIXct" representing calendar dates and times.           |
| strsplit  | Splits the elements of a character vector <i>x</i> into substrings according to the presence of substring <i>split</i> within them.                    |
| strtrim   | Trims character strings to specified display widths.   |
| structure   | Returns a given object with further attributes set.  |
| strwrap   | Wraps character strings to format paragraphs.  |
| sub   | Performs replacement of matches determined by regular expression matching.   |
| subset  | Returns subsets of vectors, matrices, or data frames that meet conditions.   |
| substitute  | Returns the parse tree for the (unevaluated) expression <i>expr</i> , substituting any variables bound in <i>env</i> .                                 |
| substr, substr<-, substring,<br>substring<-   | Extract or replace substrings in a character vector.   |
| sum   | Returns the sum of all the values present in its arguments.  |
| summary   | A generic function used to produce summaries of the results of various model fitting.  |
| suppressMessages,<br>suppressPackageStartupMessages   | Generate a diagnostic message from their arguments.  |
| suppressWarnings  | Generates a warning message that corresponds to its argument(s) and (optionally) the expression or function from which it was called.                  |
| svd   | Computes the singular-value decomposition of a rectangular matrix.   |
| sweep   | Returns an array obtained from an input array by sweeping out a summary statistic.   |
| switch  | Evaluates EXPR and accordingly chooses one of the additional arguments (in . . .).   |
| sys.call, sys.calls, sys.frame,<br>sys.frames, sys.function,<br>sys.nframe, sys.on.exit,<br>sys.parent, sys.parents | Provide access to environments ("frames" in S terminology) associated with functions farther up the calling stack.                                     |
| sys.source  | Parses expressions in a given file and then successively evaluates them in the specified environment.  |
| sys.status  | Provides access to environments ("frames" in S terminology) associated with functions farther up the calling stack.                                    |
| system  | Invokes the OS command specified by command.   |
| system.file   | Finds the full filenames of files in packages, etc.  |
| system.time   | Returns CPU (and other) times that <i>expr</i> used.   |
| t   | Given a matrix or <i>data.frame</i> <i>x</i> , <i>t</i> returns the transpose of <i>x</i> . Methods include <i>t.data.frame</i> and <i>t.default</i> . |
| table   | Uses the cross-classifying factors to build a contingency table of the counts at each combination of factor levels.                                    |
| tabulate  | Takes the integer-valued vector <i>bin</i> and counts the number of times each integer occurs in it.   |
| tan   | Computes the tangent.  |

| Function                            | Description   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| tanh                                | Computes the hyperbolic tangent.  |
| tapply                              | Applies a function to each cell of a ragged array, i.e., to each (nonempty) group of values given by a unique combination of the levels of certain factors.   |
| taskCallbackManager                 | Provides an entirely S-language mechanism for managing callbacks or actions that are invoked at the conclusion of each top-level task. Essentially, we register a single R function from this manager with the underlying native task-callback mechanism, and this function handles invoking the other R callbacks under the control of the manager. The manager consists of a collection of functions that access shared variables to manage the list of user-level callbacks. |
| tcrossprod                          | Given matrices x and y as arguments, returns a matrix cross-product. This is formally equivalent to (but usually slightly faster than) the call <code>x %*% t(y)</code> ( <code>tcrossprod</code> ).  |
| tempdir, tempfile                   | <code>tempfile</code> returns a vector of character strings that can be used as names for temporary files.  |
| textConnection, textConnectionValue | Input and output text connections.  |
| toString                            | This is a helper function for <code>format</code> to produce a single-character string describing an R object.  |
| tolower                             | Translates characters in character vectors, in particular from uppercase to lowercase.  |
| topenv                              | Finds the top-level environment.  |
| toupper                             | Translates characters in character vectors, in particular from uppercase to lowercase.  |
| trace                               | A call to <code>trace</code> allows you to insert debugging code (e.g., a call to <code>browser</code> or <code>recover</code> ) at chosen places in any function. A call to <code>untrace</code> cancels the tracing.  |
| traceback                           | By default, <code>traceback()</code> prints the call stack of the last uncaught error, i.e., the sequence of calls that led to the error.   |
| tracemem                            | Marks an object so that a message is printed whenever the internal function <code>duplicate</code> is called.   |
| tracingState                        | Tracing can be temporarily turned on or off globally by calling <code>tracingState</code> .   |
| transform                           | Returns a new data frame by applying a set of transformations to an existing data frame.  |
| trigamma                            | Special mathematical functions related to the beta and gamma functions.   |
| trunc                               | Takes a single numeric argument <code>x</code> and returns a numeric vector containing the integers formed by truncating the values in <code>x</code> toward 0.   |
| truncate, truncate.connection       | Functions to reposition connections.  |
| try                                 | A wrapper to run an expression that might fail and allow the user's code to handle error recovery.  |
| tryCatch                            | Provides a mechanism for handling unusual conditions, including errors and warnings.  |
| typeof                              | Determines the (R internal) type of storage mode of any object.   |
| unclass                             | Returns (a copy of) its argument with its class attribute removed.  |
| undebug                             | Sets, unsets, or queries the debugging flag on a function.  |

| Function             | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| union                | Performs <i>set union</i> , intersection, (asymmetric!) difference, equality, and membership on two vectors.  |
| unique               | Returns a vector, data frame, or array like <i>x</i> but with duplicate elements/rows removed.  |
| units, units<-       | Extracts units from a difftime object.  |
| unix.time            | Returns CPU (and other) times that <i>expr</i> used.  |
| unlink               | Deletes the file(s) or directories specified by <i>x</i> .  |
| unlist               | Given a list structure <i>x</i> , simplifies it to produce a vector that contains all the atomic components that occur in <i>x</i> .  |
| unloadNamespace      | Function to load and unload namespaces.   |
| unlockBinding        | Unlocks individual bindings in a specified environment.   |
| uname                | Removes the names or dimnames attribute of an R object.   |
| unserialize          | A simple low-level interface for unserializing to connections.  |
| unsplit              | Reverses the effect of <i>split</i> .   |
| untrace              | A call to <i>trace</i> allows you to insert debugging code (e.g., a call to <i>browserv</i> or <i>recover</i> ) at chosen places in any function. A call to <i>untrace</i> cancels the tracing. |
| untracemem           | Undoes a call to <i>tracemem</i> .  |
| unz                  | Function to create, open, and close connections.  |
| upper.tri            | Returns a matrix of logicals the same size of a given matrix with entries TRUE in the lower or upper triangle.  |
| url                  | Function to create, open, and close connections.  |
| utf8ToInt            | Conversion of UTF-8 encoded character vectors to and from integer vectors.  |
| vector               | Produces a vector of a given length and mode.   |
| warning              | Generates a warning message that corresponds to its argument(s) and (optionally) the expression or function from which it was called.   |
| warnings             | warnings and its print method print the variable last.warning in a pleasing form.   |
| weekdays             | Extracts the weekdays from an object.   |
| which                | Gives the TRUE indices of a logical object, allowing for array indices.   |
| which.max, which.min | Determines the location, i.e., index of the (first) minimum or maximum of a numeric vector.   |
| with                 | Evaluates an R expression in an environment constructed from data, possibly modifying the original data.  |
| withCallingHandlers  | Calling handlers are established by <i>withCallingHandlers</i> .  |
| withRestarts         | Restarts are used for establishing recovery protocols. They can be established using <i>withRestarts</i> .  |
| withVisible          | Evaluates an expression, returning it in a two-element list containing its value and a flag showing whether it would automatically print.   |
| within               | Evaluates an R expression in an environment constructed from data, possibly modifying the original data.  |

| Function           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| write              | The data (usually a matrix) <code>x</code> is written to file <code>file</code> . If the object is a two-dimensional matrix, you need to transpose it to get the columns in <code>file</code> the same as those in the internal representation. |
| write.dcf          | Reads or writes an R object from/to a file in Debian control file format.   |
| writeBin           | Reads binary data from a connection or writes binary data to a connection.  |
| writeChar          | Transfers character strings to and from connections, without assuming they are null terminated on the connection.   |
| writeLines         | Writes text lines to a connection.  |
| xor                | This operator acts on logical vectors.  |
| xpdrows.data.frame | Auxiliary function for use with data frames.  |
| xtfrm              | A generic auxiliary function that produces a numeric vector that will sort in the same order as <code>x</code> .  |
| zapsmall           | Determines a <code>digits</code> argument <code>dr</code> for calling <code>round(x, digits = dr)</code> such that values close to 0 (compared with the maximal absolute value) are “zapped,” i.e., treated as 0.                               |
| ~                  | Tilde is used to separate the left- and right-hand sides in model formula.  |

## Data Sets

| Dataset                              | Class       | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|---|
| F                                    | logical     | Alias for FALSE.  |
| LETTERS                              | character   | Constants built into R.   |
| R.version, version                   | simple.list | <code>R.Version()</code> provides detailed information about the version of R running. <code>R.version</code> is a variable (a list) holding this information (and <code>version</code> is a copy of it for S compatibility). |
| R.version.string                     | character   | <code>R.version.string</code> is a copy of <code>R.version\$version.string</code> .   |
| T                                    | logical     | Alias for TRUE.   |
| letters,<br>month.abb,<br>month.name | character   | Vectors of constants built into R.  |
| pi                                   | numeric     | Alias for the constant pi.  |

## boot

This package provides functions for bootstrap resampling.

## Functions

| Function    | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| EEF.profile | Calculates the log-likelihood for a mean using an empirical exponential family likelihood. |

| Function                               | Description  |
|--|--|
| EL.profile                             | Calculates the log-likelihood for a mean using an empirical likelihood.  |
| abc.ci                                 | Calculates equitailed two-sided nonparametric approximate bootstrap confidence intervals for a parameter, given a set of data and an estimator of the parameter, using numerical differentiation.  |
| boot                                   | Generates R bootstrap replicates of a statistic applied to data.   |
| boot.array                             | Takes a bootstrap object calculated by one of the functions boot, censboot, or tilt.boot and returns the frequency (or index) array for the bootstrap resamples.   |
| boot.ci                                | Generates five different types of equitailed two-sided nonparametric confidence intervals. These are the first-order normal approximation, the basic bootstrap interval, the Studentized bootstrap interval, the bootstrap percentile interval, and the adjusted bootstrap percentile (BCa) interval. All or a subset of these intervals can be generated. |
| censboot                               | Applies types of bootstrap resampling that have been suggested to deal with right-censored data. It can also perform model-based resampling using a Cox regression model.  |
| control                                | Finds control variate estimates from a bootstrap output object.  |
| corr                                   | Calculates the weighted correlation given a data set and a set of weights.   |
| cum3                                   | Calculates an estimate of the third cumulant, or skewness, of a vector. Also, if more than one vector is specified, a product-moment of order 3 is estimated.  |
| cv.glm                                 | Calculates the estimated $K$ -fold cross-validation prediction error for generalized linear models.  |
| empinf                                 | Calculates the empirical influence values for a statistic applied to a data set.   |
| envelope                               | Calculates overall and pointwise confidence envelopes for a curve based on bootstrap replicates of the curve evaluated at a number of fixed points.  |
| exp.tilt                               | Calculates exponentially tilted multinomial distributions such that the resampling distributions of the linear approximation to a statistic have the required means.   |
| freq.array                             | Takes a matrix of indices for nonparametric bootstrap resamples and returns the frequencies of the original observations in each resample.   |
| glm.diag                               | Calculates jackknife deviance residuals, standardized deviance residuals, standardized Pearson residuals, approximate Cook statistic, leverage, and estimated dispersion.  |
| glm.diag.plots                         | Makes plot of jackknife deviance residuals against linear predictor, normal scores plots of standardized deviance residuals, plot of approximate Cook statistics against leverage/(1 – leverage), and case plot of Cook statistic.   |
| imp.moments, imp.prob,<br>imp.quantile | Central moment, tail probability, and quantile estimates for a statistic under importance resampling.  |
| imp.weights                            | Calculates the importance sampling weight required to correct for simulation from a distribution with probabilities $p$ when estimates are required assuming that simulation was from an alternative distribution with probabilities $q$ .   |
| inv.logit                              | Given a numeric object, returns the inverse logit of the values.   |
| jack.after.boot                        | Calculates the jackknife influence values from a bootstrap output object and plots the corresponding jackknife-after-bootstrap plot.   |
| k3.linear                              | Estimates the skewness of a statistic from its empirical influence values.   |

| Function      | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| lik.CI        | Function for use with the practicals in Davison and Hinkley (1997), <i>Bootstrap Methods and Their Applications</i> , Cambridge Series in Statistical and Probabilistic Mathematics, No. 1.  |
| linear.approx | Takes a bootstrap object and, for each bootstrap replicate, calculates the linear approximation to the statistic of interest for that bootstrap sample.  |
| logit         | Calculates the logit of proportions.   |
| nested.corr   | Function for use with the practicals in Davison and Hinkley (1997), <i>Bootstrap Methods and Their Applications</i> , Cambridge Series in Statistical and Probabilistic Mathematics, No. 1.  |
| norm.ci       | Using the normal approximation to a statistic, calculates equitailed two-sided confidence intervals.   |
| saddle        | Calculates a saddlepoint approximation to the distribution of a linear combination of $W$ at a particular point $u$ , where $W$ is a vector of random variables.   |
| saddle.distn  | Approximates an entire distribution using saddlepoint methods.   |
| simplex       | This function will optimize the linear function $a^T x$ subject to the constraints $A_1 x \leq b_1$ , $A_2 x \geq b_2$ , $A_3 x = b_3$ , and $x \geq 0$ . Either maximization or minimization is possible, but the default is minimization.  |
| smooth.f      | Uses the method of frequency smoothing to find a distribution on a data set that has a required value, $\theta$ , of the statistic of interest.  |
| tilt.boot     | This function will run an initial bootstrap with equal resampling probabilities (if required) and will use the output of the initial run to find resampling probabilities that put the value of the statistic at required values. It then runs an importance resampling bootstrap using the calculated probabilities as the resampling distribution. |
| tsboot        | Generates R bootstrap replicates of a statistic applied to a time series. The replicate time series can be generated using fixed or random block lengths or can be model-based replicates.   |
| var.linear    | Estimates the variance of a statistic from its empirical influence values.   |

## Data Sets

| Data Set | Class      | Description   |
|----------|------------|---|
| acme     | data.frame | The acme data frame has 60 rows and 3 columns. The excess returns for the Acme Cleveland Corporation, along with those for all stocks listed on the New York and American Stock Exchanges, were recorded over a five year period. These excess returns are relative to the return on a riskless investment such as U.S. Treasury bills. |

| Data Set   | Class      | Description  |
|------------|------------|--|
| aids       | data.frame | The <code>aids</code> data frame has 570 rows and 6 columns. Although all cases of AIDS in England and Wales must be reported to the Communicable Disease Surveillance Centre, there is often a considerable delay between the time of diagnosis and the time of reporting. In estimating the prevalence of AIDS, account must be taken of the unknown number of cases that have been diagnosed but not reported. The data set here records the reported cases of AIDS diagnosed from July 1983 until the end of 1992. The data is cross-classified by the date of diagnosis and the time delay in the reporting of the cases.   |
| aircondit  | data.frame | Proschan reported on the times between failures of the air-conditioning equipment in 10 Boeing 720 aircraft. The <code>aircondit</code> data frame contains the intervals for the ninth aircraft, while <code>aircondit7</code> contains those for the seventh aircraft. Both data frames have just one column. Note that the data has been sorted into increasing order.  |
| aircondit7 | data.frame | Proschan reported on the times between failures of the air-conditioning equipment in 10 Boeing 720 aircraft. The <code>aircondit</code> data frame contains the intervals for the ninth aircraft, while <code>aircondit7</code> contains those for the seventh aircraft. Both data frames have just one column. Note that the data has been sorted into increasing order.  |
| amis       | data.frame | The <code>amis</code> data frame has 8,437 rows and 4 columns. In a study into the effect that warning signs have on speeding patterns, Cambridgeshire County Council considered 14 pairs of locations. The locations were paired to account for factors such as traffic volume and type of road. One site in each pair had a sign erected warning of the dangers of speeding and asking drivers to slow down. No action was taken at the second site. Three sets of measurements were taken at each site. Each set of measurements was nominally of the speeds of 100 cars, but not all sites have exactly 100 measurements. These speed measurements were taken before the erection of the sign, shortly after the erection of the sign, and again after the sign had been in place for some time. |
| aml        | data.frame | The <code>aml</code> data frame has 23 rows and 3 columns. A clinical trial to evaluate the efficacy of maintenance chemotherapy for acute myelogenous leukemia was conducted by Embury et al. at Stanford University. After reaching a stage of remission through treatment by chemotherapy, patients were randomized into two groups. The first group received maintenance chemotherapy, and the second group did not. The aim of the study was to see if maintenance chemotherapy increased the length of the remission. The data here formed a preliminary analysis that was conducted in October 1974.  |
| beaver     | ts         | The <code>beaver</code> data frame has 100 rows and 4 columns. It is a multivariate time series of class "ts" and also inherits from class "data.frame". This data set is part of a long study into body temperature regulation in beavers. Four adult female beavers were live-trapped and had a temperature-sensitive radio transmitter surgically implanted. Readings were taken every 10 minutes. The location of the beaver was also recorded, and her activity level was dichotomized by whether she was in the retreat or outside of it, since high-intensity activities occur only outside of the retreat. The data in this data frame comes from those readings for one of the beavers on a day in autumn.  |

| Data Set   | Class      | Description   |
|------------|------------|---|
| bigcity    | data.frame | The <code>bigcity</code> data frame has 49 rows and 2 columns. The <code>city</code> data frame has 10 rows and 2 columns. The measurements are the populations (in thousands) of 49 U.S. cities in 1920 and 1930. The 49 cities are a random sample taken from the 196 largest cities in 1920. The <code>city</code> data frame consists of the first 10 observations in <code>bigcity</code> .  |
| brambles   | data.frame | The <code>brambles</code> data frame has 823 rows and 3 columns. The location of living bramble canes in a 9 m square plot was recorded. We take 9 m to be the unit of distance so that the plot can be thought of as a unit square. The bramble canes were also classified by their age.   |
| breslow    | data.frame | The <code>breslow</code> data frame has 10 rows and 5 columns. In 1961, Doll and Hill sent out a questionnaire to all men on the British Medical Register inquiring about their smoking habits. Almost 70% of the men replied. Death certificates were obtained from medical practitioners, and causes of death were assigned on the basis of these certificates. The <code>breslow</code> data set contains the person-years of observations and deaths from coronary artery disease accumulated during the first 10 years of the study.   |
| calcium    | data.frame | The <code>calcium</code> data frame has 27 rows and 2 columns. Howard Grimes of the Botany Department, North Carolina State University, conducted an experiment for biochemical analysis of intracellular storage and transport of calcium across a plasma membrane. Cells were suspended in a solution of radioactive calcium for a certain length of time, and then the amount of radioactive calcium that was absorbed by the cells was measured. The experiment was repeated independently with nine different kinds of suspension, each replicated three times.  |
| cane       | data.frame | The <code>cane</code> data frame has 180 rows and 5 columns. The data frame represents a randomized block design with 45 varieties of sugarcane and 4 blocks. The aim of the experiment was to classify the varieties into resistant, intermediate, and susceptible to a disease called "coal of sugarcane" ( <i>carvão da cana-de-açúcar</i> ). This is a disease that is common in sugar-cane plantations in certain areas of Brazil. For each plot, 50 pieces of sugarcane stem were put in a solution containing the disease agent, and then some were planted in the plot. After a fixed period of time, the total number of shoots and the number of diseased shoots were recorded. |
| capability | data.frame | The <code>capability</code> data frame has 75 rows and 1 column. The data consists of simulated successive observations from a process in equilibrium. The process is assumed to have specification limits (5.49, 5.79).  |
| catsM      | data.frame | The <code>catsM</code> data frame has 97 rows and 3 columns. One hundred and forty-four adult (over 2 kg in weight) cats used for experiments with the drug digitalis had their heart and body weight recorded. Forty-seven of the cats were female, and 97 were male. The <code>catsM</code> data frame consists of the data for the male cats. The full data can be found in data set <code>\link[MASS]{cats}</code> in package MASS.   |
| cav        | data.frame | The <code>cav</code> data frame has 138 rows and 2 columns. The data gives the positions of the individual caveolae in a square region with sides of length 500 units. This grid was originally on a 2.65 $\mu\text{m}$ square of muscle fiber. The data consist of those points falling in the lower-left quarter of the region used for the data set <code>caveolae.dat</code> .  |
| cd4        | data.frame | The <code>cd4</code> data frame has 20 rows and 2 columns. CD4 cells are carried in the blood as part of the human immune system. One of the effects of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is that these cells die. The count of CD4 cells is used in determining the onset of full-blown AIDS in a patient. In this study of the effectiveness of a new antiviral drug on HIV, 20 HIV-positive patients had their CD4 counts recorded  |

| Data Set    | Class      | Description   |
|-------------|------------|---|
|             |            | and then were put on a course of treatment with this drug. After using the drug for 1 year, their CD4 counts were again recorded. The aim of the experiment was to show that patients taking the drug had increased CD4 counts, which is not generally seen in HIV-positive patients.   |
| cd4.nested  | boot       | This is an example of a nested bootstrap for the correlation coefficient of the cd4 data frame.   |
| channing    | data.frame | The channing data frame has 462 rows and 5 columns. Channing House is a retirement center in Palo Alto, California. The data was collected between the opening of the house in 1964 until July 1, 1975. During that time, 97 men and 365 women passed through the center. For each of these, their age on entry and also on leaving or death was recorded. A large number of the observations were censored mainly due to the resident being alive on July 1, 1975, when the data was collected. Over the course of the study, 130 women and 46 men died at Channing House. Differences between the survival of the sexes, taking age into account, was one of the primary concerns of this study.  |
| city        | data.frame | The bigcity data frame has 49 rows and 2 columns. The city data frame has 10 rows and 2 columns. The measurements are the populations (in thousands) of 49 U.S. cities in 1920 and 1930. The 49 cities are a random sample taken from the 196 largest cities in 1920. The city data frame consists of the first 10 observations in bigcity.   |
| claridge    | data.frame | The claridge data frame has 37 rows and 2 columns. The data comes from an experiment that was designed to look for a relationship between a certain genetic characteristic and handedness. The 37 subjects were women who had a son with mental retardation due to inheriting a defective X-chromosome. For each such mother, a genetic measurement of her DNA was made. Larger values of this measurement are known to be linked to the defective gene, and it was hypothesized that larger values might also be linked to a progressive shift away from right-handedness. Each woman also filled in a questionnaire regarding which hand she used for various tasks. From these questionnaires, a measure of hand preference was found for each mother. The scale of this measure goes from 1, indicating women who always favor their right hand, to 8, indicating women who always favor their left hand. Between these two extremes are women who favor one hand for some tasks and the other for other tasks. |
| cloth       | data.frame | The cloth data frame has 32 rows and 2 columns.   |
| co.transfer | data.frame | The co.transfer data frame has 7 rows and 2 columns. Seven smokers with chickenpox had their levels of carbon monoxide transfer measured upon being admitted to the hospital and then again after 1 week. The main question was whether 1 week of hospitalization had changed the carbon monoxide transfer factor.  |
| coal        | data.frame | The coal data frame has 191 rows and 1 column. This data frame gives the dates of 191 explosions in coal mines that resulted in 10 or more fatalities. The time span of the data is from March 15, 1851, until March 22, 1962.  |
| darwin      | data.frame | The darwin data frame has 15 rows and 1 column. Charles Darwin conducted an experiment to examine the superiority of cross-fertilized plants over self-fertilized plants. Fifteen pairs of plants were used. Each pair consisted of one cross-fertilized plant and one self-fertilized plant that germinated at the same time and grew in the same pot. The plants were measured at a fixed time after planting, and the differences in heights between the cross- and self-fertilized plants were recorded in eighths of an inch.  |

| Data Set | Class      | Description   |
|----------|------------|---|
| dogs     | data.frame | The dogs data frame has 7 rows and 2 columns. Data on the cardiac oxygen consumption and left ventricular pressure was gathered on seven domestic dogs.   |
| downs.bc | data.frame | The downs . bc data frame has 30 rows and 3 columns. Down syndrome is a genetic disorder caused by an extra chromosome 21 or a part of chromosome 21 being translocated to another chromosome. The incidence of Down syndrome is highly dependent on the mother's age and rises sharply after age 30. In the 1960s, a large-scale study of the effect of maternal age on the incidence of Down syndrome was conducted at the British Columbia Health Surveillance Registry. This data frame consists of the data that was collected in that study. Mothers were classified by age. Most groups correspond to the age in years, but the first group comprises all mothers aged 15–17, and the last is those aged 46–49. No data for mothers over 50 or below 15 was collected. |
| ducks    | data.frame | The ducks data frame has 11 rows and 2 columns. Each row of the data frame represents a male duck that is a second-generation cross between a mallard and a pintail. For 11 such ducks, a behavioral index and plumage index were calculated. These were measured on scales devised for this experiment, which was to examine whether there was any link between which species the ducks resembled physically and which they resembled in behavior. The scale for physical appearance ranged from 0 (identical in appearance to a mallard) to 20 (identical to a pintail). The behavioral traits of the ducks were on a scale of 0 to 15, with lower numbers indicating more mallard-like behavior.   |
| fir      | data.frame | The fir data frame has 50 rows and 3 columns. The number of balsam-fir seedlings in each quadrant of a grid of 50 5-foot-square quadrants were counted. The grid consisted of 5 rows of 10 quadrants in each row.   |
| frets    | data.frame | The frets data frame has 25 rows and 4 columns. The data consists of measurements of the length and breadth of the heads of pairs of adult brothers in 25 randomly sampled families. All measurements are expressed in millimeters.   |
| grav     | data.frame | The gravity data frame has 81 rows and 2 columns. The grav data set has 26 rows and 2 columns. Between May 1934 and July 1935, the U.S. National Bureau of Standards conducted a series of experiments to estimate the acceleration due to gravity, $g$ , at Washington, D.C. Each experiment produced a number of replicate estimates of $g$ using the same methodology. Although the basic method remained the same for all experiments, that of the reversible pendulum, there were changes in configuration. The gravity data frame contains the data from all eight experiments. The grav data frame contains the data from experiments 7 and 8. The data is expressed as deviations from 980.000 in centimeters per second squared.                                     |
| gravity  | data.frame | The gravity data frame has 81 rows and 2 columns. The grav data set has 26 rows and 2 columns. Between May 1934 and July 1935, the U.S. National Bureau of Standards conducted a series of experiments to estimate the acceleration due to gravity, $g$ , at Washington, D.C. Each experiment produced a number of replicate estimates of $g$ using the same methodology. Although the basic method remained the same for all experiments, that of the reversible pendulum, there were changes in configuration. The gravity data frame contains the data from all eight experiments. The grav data frame contains the data from experiments 7 and 8. The data is expressed as deviations from 980.000 in centimeters per second squared.                                     |
| hirose   | data.frame | The hirose data frame has 44 rows and 3 columns. PET film is used in electrical insulation. In this accelerated life test, the failure times for 44 samples in gas-insulated transformers were estimated. Four different voltage levels were used.  |

| Data Set | Class      | Description   |
|----------|------------|---|
| islay    | data.frame | The <code>islay</code> data frame has 18 rows and 1 column. Measurements were taken of paleocurrent azimuths from the Jura Quartzite on the Scottish island of Islay.   |
| manaus   | ts         | The <code>manaus</code> time series is of class "ts" and has 1,080 observations on one variable. The data values are monthly averages of the daily stages (heights) of the Rio Negro at Manaus. Manaus is 18 km upstream from the confluence of the Rio Negro with the Amazon, but because of the tiny slope of the water surface and the lower courses of its flatland affluents, they may be regarded as a good approximation of the water level in the Amazon at the confluence. The data here covers 90 years from January 1903 until December 1992. The Manaus gauge is tied in with an arbitrary benchmark of 100 m set in the steps of the Municipal Prefecture; gauge readings are usually referred to sea level, on the basis of a mark on the steps leading to the Parish Church (Matriz), which is assumed to lie at an altitude of 35.874 m according to observations made many years ago under the direction of Samuel Pereira, an engineer in charge of the Manaus Sanitation Committee. Whereas such an altitude cannot, by any means, be considered to be a precise datum point, observations have been provisionally referred to it. The measurements are in meters. |
| melanoma | data.frame | The <code>melanoma</code> data frame has 205 rows and 7 columns. The data consists of measurements made on patients with malignant melanoma. Each patient had his or her tumor surgically removed at the Department of Plastic Surgery, University Hospital of Odense, Denmark, during the period 1962–1977. The surgery consisted of complete removal of the tumor together with about 2.5 cm of the surrounding skin. Among the measurements taken were the thickness of the tumor and whether it was ulcerated or not. These are thought to be important prognostic variables in that patients with a thick and/or ulcerated tumor have an increased chance of death from melanoma. Patients were followed until the end of 1977.  |
| motor    | data.frame | The <code>motor</code> data frame has 94 rows and 4 columns. The rows were obtained by removing replicate values of <code>time</code> from the data set <code>mcycle</code> . Two extra columns were added to allow for strata with a different residual variance in each stratum.  |
| neuro    | matrix     | <code>neuro</code> is a matrix containing times of observed firing of a neuron in windows of 250 ms on either side of the application of a stimulus to a human subject. Each row of the matrix is a replication of the experiment, and there are a total of 469 replicates.   |
| nitrofen | data.frame | The <code>nitrofen</code> data frame has 50 rows and 5 columns. Nitrofen is a herbicide that was used extensively for the control of broad-leaved and grass weeds in cereals and rice. Although it is relatively nontoxic to adult mammals, nitrofen is a significant teratogen and mutagen. It is also acutely toxic and reproductively toxic to cladoceran zooplankton. Nitrofen is no longer in commercial use in the United States, having been the first pesticide to be withdrawn due to teratogenic effects. The data here comes from an experiment to measure the reproductive toxicity of nitrofen on a species of zooplankton ( <i>Ceriodaphnia dubia</i> ). Fifty animals were randomized into batches of 10, and each batch was put in a solution with a measured concentration of nitrofen. Then the number of live offspring in each of the three broods of each animal was recorded.   |
| nodal    | data.frame | The <code>nodal</code> data frame has 53 rows and 7 columns. The treatment strategy for a patient diagnosed with prostate cancer depends highly on whether the cancer has spread to the surrounding lymph nodes. It is common to operate on the patient to get samples from the nodes, which can then be analyzed under a microscope, but clearly it would be preferable if an accurate assessment of nodal involvement could be made without surgery. For a sample of 53 prostate cancer patients, a number of   |

| Data Set  | Class      | Description  |
|-----------|------------|--|
| nuclear   | data.frame | possible predictor variables were measured before surgery. The patients then had surgery to determine nodal involvement. The point of the study was to see if nodal involvement could be accurately predicted from the predictor variables and which ones were most important.   |
| paulsen   | data.frame | The nuclear data frame has 32 rows and 11 columns. The data relates to the construction of 32 light-water reactor (LWR) plants constructed in the United States in the late 1960s and early 1970s. The data was collected with the aim of predicting the cost of construction of additional LWR plants. Six of the power plants had partial turnkey guarantees, and it is possible that, for these plants, some manufacturers' subsidies may be hidden in the quoted capital costs.  |
| poisons   | data.frame | The paulsen data frame has 346 rows and 1 column. Sections were prepared from the brains of adult guinea pigs. Spontaneous currents that flowed into individual brain cells were then recorded and the peak amplitude of each current measured. The aim of the experiment was to see if the current flow was quantal in nature (i.e., that it is not a single burst but instead is built up of many smaller bursts of current). If the current was indeed quantal, then it would be expected that the distribution of the current amplitude would be multimodal with modes at regular intervals. The modes would be expected to decrease in magnitude for higher current amplitudes.   |
| polar     | data.frame | The poisons data frame has 48 rows and 3 columns. The data form a $3 \times 4$ factorial experiment, the factors being three poisons and four treatments. Each combination of the two factors was used on four animals, the allocation to animals having been completely randomized.   |
| remission | data.frame | The polar data frame has 50 rows and 2 columns. The data consists of the pole positions from a paleomagnetic study of New Caledonian laterites.  |
| salinity  | data.frame | The remission data frame has 27 rows and 3 columns.  |
| survival  | data.frame | The salinity data frame has 28 rows and 4 columns. Biweekly averages of the water salinity and river discharge in Pamlico Sound, North Carolina, were recorded between the years 1972 and 1977. The data in this set consists only of those measurements in March, April, and May.   |
| tau       | data.frame | The survival data frame has 14 rows and 2 columns. The data measured the survival percentages of batches of rats who were given varying doses of radiation. At each of six doses there were two or three replications of the experiment.   |
|           |            | The tau data frame has 60 rows and 2 columns. The tau particle is a heavy electron-like particle discovered in the 1970s by Martin Perl at the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center. Soon after its production, the tau particle decays into various collections of more stable particles. About 86% of the time, the decay involves just one charged particle. This rate has been measured independently 13 times. The one-charged-particle event is made up of four major modes of decay as well as a collection of other events. The four main types of decay are denoted rho, pi, e, and mu. These rates have been measured independently 6, 7, 14, and 19 times, respectively. Due to physical constraints, each experiment can estimate only the composite one-charged-particle decay rate or the rate of one of the major modes of decay. Each experiment consists of a major research project involving many years' work. One of the goals of the experiments was to estimate the rate of decay due to events other than the four main modes of decay. These are uncertain events and so cannot themselves be observed directly. |

| Data Set | Class      | Description   |
|----------|------------|---|
| tuna     | data.frame | The <code>tuna</code> data frame has 64 rows and 1 column. The data comes from an aerial line transect survey of southern bluefin tuna in the Great Australian Bight. An aircraft with two spotters on board flew randomly allocated line transects. Each school of tuna sighted was counted and its perpendicular distance from the transect measured. The survey was conducted in summer when tuna tend to stay on the surface.   |
| urine    | data.frame | The <code>urine</code> data frame has 79 rows and 7 columns. Seventy-nine urine specimens were analyzed in an effort to determine if certain physical characteristics of the urine might be related to the formation of calcium oxalate crystals.   |
| wool     | ts         | <code>wool</code> is a time series of class "ts" and contains 309 observations. Each week that the market was open, the Australian Wool Corporation set a floor price that determined its policy on intervention and was therefore a reflection of the overall price of wool for the week in question. Actual prices paid varied considerably about the floor price. The series here is the log of the ratio between the price for fine-grade wool and the floor price, each market week between July 1976 and June 1984. |

## class

This package provides functions for classification.

## Functions

| Function         | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| SOM, batchSOM    | Kohonen's self-organizing maps (SOMs) are a crude form of multidimensional scaling.  |
| condense         | Condenses training set for $k$ -nearest-neighbor ( $k$ -NN) classifier.  |
| knn              | $k$ -nearest-neighbor classification for test set from training set. For each row of the test set, the $k$ -nearest (in Euclidean distance) training set vectors are found, and the classification is decided by majority vote, with ties broken at random. If there are ties for the $k$ th nearest vector, then all candidates are included in the vote. |
| knn.cv           | $k$ -nearest-neighbor cross-validatory classification from training set.   |
| knn1             | Nearest-neighbor classification for test set from training set. For each row of the test set, the nearest neighbor (by Euclidean distance) training set vector is found, and its classification used. If there is more than one nearest neighbor, a majority vote is used, with ties broken at random.   |
| lvq1, lvq2, lvq3 | Moves examples in a codebook to better represent the training set.   |
| lvqinit          | Constructs an initial codebook for learning vector quantization (LVQ) methods.   |
| lvqtest          | Classifies a test set by 1-NN from a specified LVQ codebook.   |
| multiedit        | Multiedit for $k$ -NN classifier.  |
| olvq1            | Moves examples in a codebook to better represent the training set.   |
| reduce.nn        | Reduces training set for a $k$ -NN classifier. Used after condense.  |
| somgrid          | Plotting functions for SOM results.  |

# cluster

This package provides functions for cluster analysis.

## Functions

| Function               | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| agnes                  | Computes agglomerative hierarchical clustering of the data set.   |
| bannerplot             | Draws a “banner,” i.e., basically a horizontal barplot visualizing the (agglomerative or divisive) hierarchical clustering or another binary dendrogram structure.  |
| clara                  | Computes a “clara” object, a list representing a clustering of the data into $k$ clusters.  |
| clusplot               | Draws a two-dimensional (2D) “clusplot” on the current graphics device.   |
| coef.hclust            | Computes the “agglomerative coefficient,” measuring the clustering structure of the data set.   |
| daisy                  | Computes all the pairwise dissimilarities (distances) between observations in the data set.   |
| diana                  | Computes a divisive hierarchical clustering of the data set, returning an object of class diana.  |
| ellipsoidPoints        | Computes points on the ellipsoid boundary, mostly for drawing.  |
| ellipsoidhull          | Computes the “ellipsoid hull” or “spanning ellipsoid,” i.e., the ellipsoid of minimal volume (“area” in 2D) such that all given points lie just inside or on the boundary of the ellipsoid.   |
| fanny                  | Computes a fuzzy clustering of the data into $k$ clusters.  |
| lower.to.upper.tri.ind | Computes index vectors for extracting or reordering of lower or upper triangular matrices that are stored as contiguous vectors.  |
| mona                   | Returns a list representing a divisive hierarchical clustering of a data set with binary variables only.  |
| pam                    | Partitioning (clustering) of the data into $k$ clusters “around medoids,” a more robust version of $k$ -means clustering.   |
| pltree                 | Generic function drawing a clustering tree (“dendrogram”) on the current graphics device. There is a twins method; see pltree.twins for usage and examples.   |
| predict.ellipsoid      | Computes points on the ellipsoid boundary, mostly for drawing.  |
| silhouette             | Computes silhouette information according to a given clustering in $k$ clusters.  |
| sizeDiss               | Returns the number of observations ( <i>sample size</i> ) corresponding to a dissimilarity-like object or, equivalently, the number of rows or columns of a matrix when only the lower or upper triangular part (without diagonal) is given. It is nothing else but the inverse function of $f(n) = n(n - 1)/2$ . |
| sortSilhouette         | Computes silhouette information according to a given clustering in $k$ clusters.  |
| upper.to.lower.tri.ind | Computes index vectors for extracting or reordering of lower or upper triangular matrices that are stored as contiguous vectors.  |

| Function | Description   |
|----------|---|
| volume   | Computes the volume of a planar object. This is a generic function and a method for <code>ellipsoid</code> objects. |

## Data Sets

| Data Set     | Class      | Description   |
|--------------|------------|---|
| agriculture  | data.frame | Gross national product (GNP) per capita and percentage of the population working in agriculture for each country belonging to the European Union in 1993.                           |
| animals      | data.frame | This data set considers 6 binary attributes for 20 animals.   |
| chorSub      | matrix     | This is a small rounded subset of the C-horizon data.   |
| flower       | data.frame | This data set consists of 8 characteristics for 18 popular flowers.   |
| plant-Traits | data.frame | This data set constitutes a description of 136 plant species according to biological attributes (morphological or reproductive).  |
| pluton       | data.frame | The <code>pluton</code> data frame has 45 rows and 4 columns, containing percentages of isotopic composition of 45 plutonium batches.   |
| ruspini      | data.frame | The <code>Ruspini</code> data set, consisting of 75 points in 4 groups, is popular for illustrating clustering techniques.  |
| votes.repub  | data.frame | A data frame with the percents of votes given to the Republican candidates in presidential elections from 1856 to 1976. Rows represent the 50 states, and columns the 31 elections. |
| xclara       | data.frame | An artificial data set consisting of 3,000 points in 3 well-separated clusters of size 1,000 each.  |

## codetools

This package provides tools for analyzing R code. It is mainly intended to support the other tools in this package and byte code compilation. See the help file for more information.

## foreign

This package provides functions for reading data stored by Minitab, S, SAS, SPSS, Stata, Systat, dBase, and so forth.

## Functions

| Function                  | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>data.restore</code> | Reads binary data files or <code>data.dump</code> files that were produced in S version 3.                  |
| <code>lookup.xport</code> | Scans a file as a SAS XPORT format library and returns a list containing information about the SAS library. |
| <code>read.S</code>       | Reads binary data files or <code>data.dump</code> files that were produced in S version 3.                  |
| <code>read.arff</code>    | Reads data from Weka Attribute-Relation File Format (ARFF) files.   |

| Function      | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| read.dbf      | Reads a DBF file into a data frame, converting character fields to factors and trying to respect NULL fields.  |
| read.dta      | Reads a file in Stata version 5–10 binary format into a data frame.  |
| read.epiinfo  | Reads data files in the .REC format used by Epi Info versions 6 and earlier and by EpiData. Epi Info is a public-domain database and statistics package produced by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and EpiData is a freely available data entry and validation system. |
| read.mtp      | Returns a list with the data stored in a file as a Minitab portable worksheet.   |
| read.octave   | Reads a file in Octave text data format into a list.   |
| read.spss     | Reads a file stored by the SPSS save or export commands.   |
| read.ssd      | Generates a SAS program to convert the ssd contents to SAS transport format and then uses <code>read.xport</code> to obtain a data frame.  |
| read.systat   | Reads a rectangular data file stored by the Systat SAVE command as (legacy) *.sys or, more recently, *.syd files.  |
| read.xport    | Reads a file as a SAS XPORT format library and returns a list of data.frames.  |
| write.arff    | Writes data into Weka Attribute-Relation File Format (ARFF) files.   |
| write.dbf     | Tries to write a data frame to a DBF file.   |
| write.dta     | Writes the data frame to file in the Stata binary format. Does not write array variables unless they can be drop-ed to a vector.   |
| write.foreign | Exports simple data frames to other statistical packages by writing the data as free-format text and writing a separate file of instructions for the other package to read the data.   |

## grDevices

This package provides functions for graphics devices and support for base and grid graphics.

### Functions

| Function          | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| CIDFont           | Used to define the translation of an R graphics font family name to a Type 1 or CID font description, used by both the <code>postscript</code> and the <code>pdf</code> graphics devices. |
| Type1Font         | Used to define the translation of an R graphics font family name to a Type 1 or CID font description, used by both the <code>postscript</code> and the <code>pdf</code> graphics devices. |
| X11               | Starts a graphics device driver for the X Window System (version 11). This can be done only on machines/accounts that have access to an X server.   |
| X11.options       | Sets options for an X11 device.   |
| X11Font, X11Fonts | Handle the translation of a device-independent R graphics font family name to an X11 font description.  |
| as.graphicsAnnot  | Coerces an R object into a form suitable for graphics annotation.   |

| Function                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| bitmap                      | Generates a graphics file. <code>dev2bitmap</code> copies the current graphics device to a file in a graphics format.  |
| bmp                         | Graphics device for generating BMP(bitmap) files.  |
| boxplot.stats               | This function is typically called by another function to gather the statistics necessary for producing box plots, but may be invoked separately.   |
| cairo_pdf                   | A Cairo-based graphics device for generating PDF files.  |
| cairo_ps                    | A Cairo-based graphics device for generating PostScript files.   |
| check.options               | Utility function for setting options with some consistency checks. The <code>attributes</code> of the new settings in <code>new</code> are checked for consistency with the <code>model</code> (often default) list in name <code>.opt</code> .                          |
| chull                       | Computes the subset of points that lie on the convex hull of the set of points specified.  |
| cm                          | Translates from inches to centimeters (cm).  |
| cm.colors                   | Creates a vector of $n$ contiguous colors.   |
| col2rgb                     | R color to RGB (red/green/blue) conversion.  |
| colorConverter              | Specifies color spaces for use in <code>convertColor</code> .  |
| colorRamp, colorRampPalette | These functions return functions that interpolate a set of given colors to create new colorpalettes (like <code>topo.colors</code> ) and color ramps, functions that map the interval [0, 1] to colors (like gray).  |
| colors, colours             | Returns the built-in color names that R knows about.   |
| contourLines                | Calculates contour lines for a given set of data.  |
| convertColor                | Converts colors between standard color space representations. This function is experimental.   |
| densCols                    | Produces a vector containing colors that encode the local densities at each point in a scatter plot.   |
| dev.control                 | Allows the user to control the recording of graphics operations in a device.   |
| dev.copy                    | Copies the graphics contents of the current device to the device specified by <code>which</code> or to a new device that has been created by the function specified by <code>device</code> (it is an error to specify both <code>which</code> and <code>device</code> ). |
| dev.copy2eps                | Copies the graphics contents of the current device to an Encapsulated PostScript Format (EPSF) output file in portrait orientation ( <code>horizontal = FALSE</code> ).  |
| dev.copy2pdf                | Copies the graphics contents of the current device to a PDF output file in portrait orientation ( <code>horizontal = FALSE</code> ).   |
| dev.cur                     | Returns a named integer vector of length 1, giving the number and name of the active device, or 1, the null device, if none is active.   |
| dev.interactive             | Tests if the current graphics device (or that which would be opened) is interactive.   |
| dev.list                    | Returns the numbers of all open devices, except device 1, the null device. This is a numeric vector with a <code>names</code> attribute giving the device names, or NULL if there is no open device.   |
| dev.new                     | Opens a new graphics device.   |
| dev.next                    | Returns the number and name of the next device in the list of devices.   |
| dev.off                     | Shuts down the specified (by default the current) graphics device.   |

| Function           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| dev.prev           | Returns the number and name of the previous device in the list of devices.  |
| dev.print          | Copies the graphics contents of the current device to a new device that has been created by the function specified by <code>device</code> and then shuts the new device.  |
| dev.set            | Makes the specified graphics device the active device.  |
| dev.size           | Finds the dimensions of the device surface of the current device.   |
| dev2bitmap         | <code>bitmap</code> generates a graphics file. <code>dev2bitmap</code> copies the current graphics device to a file in a graphics format.   |
| devAskNewPage      | Used to control (for the current device) whether the user is prompted before starting a new page of output.   |
| devicesInteractive | Tests if the current graphics device (or that which would be opened) is interactive.  |
| embedFonts         | Runs Ghostscript to process a PDF or PostScript file and embed all fonts in the file.   |
| extendrange        | Extends a numeric range by a small percentage, i.e., fraction, <i>on both sides</i> .   |
| getGraphicsEvent   | Waits for input from a graphics window in the form of a mouse or keyboard event.  |
| graphics.off       | Provides control over multiple graphics devices.  |
| gray               | Creates a vector of colors from a vector of gray levels.  |
| gray.colors        | Creates a vector of n gamma-corrected gray colors.  |
| grey               | Creates a vector of colors from a vector of gray levels.  |
| grey.colors        | Creates a vector of n gamma-corrected gray colors.  |
| hcl                | Creates a vector of colors from vectors specifying hue, chroma, and luminance.  |
| heat.colors        | Creates a vector of n contiguous colors.  |
| hsv                | Creates a vector of colors from vectors specifying hue, saturation, and value.  |
| jpeg               | Creates a graphics device for generating JPEG format files.   |
| make.rgb           | Specifies color spaces for use in <code>convertColor</code> .   |
| n2mfrow            | Easy setup for plotting multiple figures (in a rectangular layout) on one page. This computes a sensible default for <code>par(mfrow)</code> .  |
| nclass.FD          | Computes the number of classes for a histogram using the Freedman-Diaconis choice based on the interquartile range (IQR), unless that's 0, where it reverts to <code>mad(x, constant = 2)</code> , and when that is 0 as well, returns 1. |
| nclass.Sturges     | Computes the number of classes for a histogram using Sturges' formula, implicitly basing bin sizes on the range of the data.  |
| nclass.scott       | Computes the number of classes for a histogram using Scott's choice for a normal distribution based on the estimate of the standard error, unless that is 0 where it returns 1.   |
| palette            | Views or manipulates the color palette that is used when a <code>col=</code> has a numeric index.   |
| pdf                | Starts the graphics device driver for producing PDF graphics.   |
| pdf.options        | The auxiliary function <code>pdf.options</code> can be used to set or view (if called without arguments) the default values for some of the arguments to <code>pdf</code> .   |
| pdffonts           | Lists existing mapping for PDF fonts or creates new mappings.   |
| pictex             | Produces graphics suitable for inclusion in TeX and LaTeX documents.  |

| Function               | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| png                    | Creates a new graphics device for producing Portable Network Graphics (PNG) files.   |
| postscript             | Starts the graphics device driver for producing PostScript graphics.   |
| postscriptFonts        | Lists existing mapping for PostScript fonts or creates new mappings.   |
| ps.options             | The auxiliary function <code>ps.options</code> can be used to set or view (if called without arguments) the default values for some of the arguments to <code>postscript</code> .              |
| quartz                 | Starts a graphics device driver for the Mac OS X system.   |
| quartz.options         | Sets options for a quartz device.  |
| quartzFont             | Translates from a device-independent R graphics font family name to a quartz font description.   |
| quartzFonts            | Lists existing mappings of device-independent R graphics to a quartz font description, or defines new mappings.  |
| rainbow                | Creates a vector of n contiguous colors.   |
| recordGraphics         | Records arbitrary code on the graphics engine display list. Useful for encapsulating calculations with graphical output that depends on the calculations. Intended <i>only</i> for expert use. |
| recordPlot, replayPlot | Functions to save the current plot in an R variable and to replay it.  |
| rgb                    | Creates colors corresponding to the given intensities (between 0 and max) of the red, green, and blue primaries.   |
| rgb2 hsv               | Transforms colors from RGB space (red/green/blue) into HSV space (hue/saturation/value).   |
| savePlot               | Saves the current page of a Cairo X11() device to a file.  |
| setEPS                 | A wrapper to <code>ps.options</code> that sets defaults appropriate for figures for inclusion in documents (the default size is 7 inches square unless width or height is supplied).           |
| setPS                  | A wrapper to <code>ps.options</code> to set defaults appropriate for figures for spooling to a PostScript printer.   |
| svg                    | Creates a new graphics device for outputting graphics in Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG) format.  |
| terrain.colors         | Creates a vector of n contiguous colors.   |
| tiff                   | Creates a new graphics device for outputting graphics in Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) format.   |
| topo.colors            | Creates a vector of n contiguous colors.   |
| trans3d                | Projection of three-dimensional to two-dimensional points using a $4 \times 4$ viewing transformation matrix.  |
| x11                    | A synonym for X11 (which opens a new X11 device for plotting graphics).  |
| xfig                   | Starts the graphics device driver for producing XFig (version 3.2) graphics.   |
| xy.coords              | Used by many functions to obtain x and y coordinates for plotting. The use of this common mechanism across all relevant R functions produces a measure of consistency.                         |
| xyTable                | Given (x, y) points, determines their multiplicity—checking for equality only up to some (crude kind of) noise. Note that this is a special kind of 2D binning.                                |

| Function   | Description   |
|------------|---|
| xyz.coords | Utility for obtaining consistent x, y, and z coordinates and labels for three-dimensional (3D) plots. |

## Data Sets

| Data Set    | Class     | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|---|
| Hershey     | list      | If the family graphical parameter (see <code>par</code> ) has been set to one of the Hershey fonts, Hershey vector fonts are used to render text. When using the <code>text</code> and <code>contour</code> functions, Hershey fonts may be selected via the <code>vfont</code> argument, which is a character vector of length 2. This allows Cyrillic to be selected, which is not available via the font families. |
| blues9      | character | <code>densCols</code> produces a vector containing colors that encode the local densities at each point in a scatter plot.  |
| colorspaces | list      | Converts colors between standard color space representations. This function is experimental.  |

## graphics

This package contains functions for base graphics. Base graphics are traditional S graphics, as opposed to the newer grid graphics.

## Functions

| Function       | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Axis           | Generic function to add a suitable axis to the current plot.   |
| abline         | Adds one or more straight lines through the current plot.  |
| arrows         | Draws arrows between pairs of points.  |
| assocplot      | Produces a Cohen-Friendly association plot indicating deviations from independence of rows and columns in a two-dimensional contingency table.   |
| axTicks        | Computes pretty tick mark locations, the same way as R does internally. This is only nontrivial when <code>log</code> coordinates are active. By default, gives the <code>at</code> values that <code>axis(side)</code> would use. |
| axis           | Adds an axis to the current plot, allowing the specification of the side, position, labels, and other options.   |
| barplot        | Creates a bar plot with vertical or horizontal bars.   |
| box            | Draws a box around the current plot in a given color and line type. The <code>bty</code> parameter determines the type of box drawn. See <code>par</code> for details.   |
| boxplot        | Produces box-and-whisker plot(s) of the given (grouped) values.  |
| boxplot.matrix | Interprets the columns (or rows) of a matrix as different groups and draws a box plot for each.  |
| bxp            | Draws box plots based on the given summaries in <code>z</code> . It is usually called from within <code>boxplot</code> , but can be invoked directly.  |

| Function               | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| cdplot                 | Computes and plots conditional densities describing how the conditional distribution of a categorical variable <i>y</i> changes over a numeric variable <i>x</i> .   |
| clip                   | Sets clipping region in user coordinates.  |
| close.screen           | Removes the specified screen definition(s) created by <code>split.screen</code> .  |
| co.intervals           | Produces two variants of the conditioning plots.   |
| contour                | Creates a contour plot or adds contour lines to an existing plot. Methods include <code>contour.default</code> .   |
| coplot                 | Produces two variants of the conditioning plots.   |
| curve                  | Draws a curve corresponding to a given function or, for <code>curve()</code> , also an expression (in <i>x</i> ) over the interval [ <code>from</code> , <code>to</code> ].  |
| dotchart               | Draws a Cleveland dot plot.  |
| erase.screen           | Used to clear a single screen (when using <code>split.screen</code> ), which it does by filling with the background color.   |
| filled.contour         | Produces a contour plot with the areas between the contours filled in solid color (Cleveland calls this a level plot).   |
| fourfoldplot           | Creates a fourfold display of a 2-by-2-by- <i>k</i> contingency table on the current graphics device, allowing for the visual inspection of the association between two dichotomous variables in one or several populations (strata).  |
| frame                  | This function ( <code>frame</code> is an alias for <code>plot.new</code> ) causes the completion of plotting in the current plot (if there is one) and an advance to a new graphics frame.   |
| grconvertX, grconvertY | Convert between graphics coordinate systems.   |
| grid                   | Adds an <i>nx</i> -by- <i>ny</i> rectangular grid to an existing plot.   |
| hist                   | The generic function <code>hist</code> computes a histogram of the given data values. If <code>plot=TRUE</code> , the resulting object of <code>\link[base]{class "histogram"}</code> is plotted by <code>plot.histogram</code> , before it is returned. Methods include <code>hist.default</code> .       |
| identify               | Reads the position of the graphics pointer when the (first) mouse button is pressed. It then searches the coordinates given in <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> for the point closest to the pointer. If this point is close enough to the pointer, then its index will be returned as part of the value of the call. |
| image                  | Creates a grid of colored or grayscale rectangles with colors corresponding to the values in <i>z</i> .  |
| layout, layout.show    | <code>layout</code> divides the device up into as many rows and columns as there are in matrix <i>mat</i> , with the column widths and the row heights specified in the respective arguments.  |
| lcm                    | <code>layout</code> divides the device up into as many rows and columns as there are in matrix <i>mat</i> , with the column widths and the row heights specified in the respective arguments.  |
| legend                 | Used to add legends to plots. Note that a call to the function <code>locator(1)</code> can be used in place of the <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> arguments.  |
| lines                  | A generic function taking coordinates given in various ways and joining the corresponding points with line segments. Methods include <code>lines.default</code> and <code>lines.ts</code> .  |

| Function                     | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| locator                      | Reads the position of the graphics cursor when the (first) mouse button is pressed.  |
| matlines, matplot, matpoints | Plot the columns of one matrix against the columns of another.   |
| mosaicplot                   | Plots a mosaic on the current graphics device.   |
| mtext                        | Text is written in one of the four margins of the current figure region or one of the outer margins of the device region.  |
| pairs                        | A matrix of scatter plots is produced.   |
| panel.smooth                 | An example of a simple useful panel function to be used as an argument in, e.g., coplot or pairs.  |
| par                          | Used to set or query graphical parameters.   |
| persp                        | Draws perspective plots of surfaces over the x–y plane.  |
| pie                          | Draws a pie chart.   |
| plot                         | Generic function for plotting R objects.   |
| plot.design                  | Plots univariate effects of one or more factors, typically for a designed experiment as analyzed by aov().   |
| plot.new                     | This function (plot.new is an alias for frame) causes the completion of plotting in the current plot (if there is one) and an advance to a new graphics frame.   |
| plot.window                  | Sets up the world coordinate system for a graphics window. It is called by higher-level functions such as plot.default (after plot.new).   |
| plot.xy                      | This is the internal function that does the basic plotting of points and lines. Usually, one should use the higher-level functions instead and refer to their help pages for explanation of the arguments. |
| points                       | A generic function to draw a sequence of points at the specified coordinates. The specified character(s) are plotted, centered at the coordinates. Methods include points.default.                         |
| polygon                      | Draws the polygons whose vertices are given in x and y.  |
| rect                         | Draws a rectangle (or sequence of rectangles) with the given coordinates, fill, and border colors.   |
| rug                          | Adds a rug representation (1D plot) of the data to the plot.   |
| screen                       | Used to select which screen to draw in (when using split.screen).  |
| segments                     | Draws line segments between pairs of points.   |
| smoothScatter                | Produces a smoothed color density representation of the scatter plot, obtained through a kernel density estimate.  |
| spineplot                    | Spine plots are a special case of mosaic plots and can be seen as a generalization of stacked (or highlighted) bar plots. Analogously, spinograms are an extension of histograms.                          |
| split.screen                 | Defines a number of regions within the current device that can, to some extent, be treated as separate graphics devices. It is useful for generating multiple plots on a single device.                    |
| stars                        | Draws star plots or segment diagrams of a multivariate data set. With one single location, also draws “spider” (or “radar”) plots.   |
| stem                         | Produces a stem-and-leaf plot of the values in x.  |

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| strheight   | Computes the height of the given strings or mathematical expressions $s[i]$ on the current plotting device in <i>user coordinates, inches</i> , or as a fraction of the figure width <code>par("fin")</code> .   |
| stripchart  | Produces one-dimensional scatter plots (or dot plots) of the given data. These plots are a good alternative to box plots when sample sizes are small.  |
| strwidth  | Computes the width of the given strings or mathematical expressions $s[i]$ on the current plotting device in <i>user coordinates, inches</i> , or as a fraction of the figure width <code>par("fin")</code> .  |
| sunflowerplot   | Multiple points are plotted as “sunflowers” with multiple leaves (“petals”) such that overplotting is visualized instead of accidental and invisible.  |
| symbols   | Draws symbols on a plot. One of six symbols, <i>circles</i> , <i>squares</i> , <i>rectangles</i> , <i>stars</i> , <i>thermometers</i> , and <i>boxplots</i> , can be plotted at a specified set of $x$ and $y$ coordinates.  |
| text  | Draws the strings given in the vector <code>labels</code> at the coordinates given by $x$ and $y$ . $y$ may be missing since <code>xy.coords(x, y)</code> is used for construction of the coordinates.   |
| title   | Used to add labels to a plot.  |
| <code>xinch</code> , <code>xyinch</code> , <code>yinch</code> | <code>xinch</code> and <code>yinch</code> convert the specified number of inches given as their arguments into the correct units for plotting with graphics functions. Usually, this makes sense only when normal coordinates are used, i.e., <i>no log scale</i> (see the <code>log</code> argument to <code>par</code> ). <code>xyinch</code> does the same for a pair of numbers $xy$ , simultaneously. |
| <code>xspline</code>  | Draws an X-spline, a curve drawn relative to control points.   |

## grid

This package is a low-level graphics system that provides a great deal of control and flexibility in the appearance and arrangement of graphical output. It does not provide high-level functions that create complete plots. What it does provide is a basis for developing such high-level functions (e.g., the `lattice` package), the facilities for customizing and manipulating lattice output, the ability to produce high-level plots or non-statistical images from scratch, and the ability to add sophisticated annotations to the output from base graphics functions (see the `gridBase` package). For more information, see the help files for `grid`.

## KernSmooth

This package provides functions for kernel smoothing.

### Functions

| Function          | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| <code>bkde</code> | Returns $x$ and $y$ coordinates of the binned kernel density estimate of the probability density of the data. |

| Function | Description   |
|----------|---|
| bkde2D   | Returns the set of grid points in each coordinate direction, and the matrix of density estimates over the mesh induced by the grid points. The kernel is the standard bivariate normal density. |
| bkfe     | Returns an estimate of a binned approximation to the kernel estimate of the specified density function. The kernel is the standard normal density.  |
| dphi     | Uses direct plug-in methodology to select the bin width of a histogram.   |
| dpik     | Uses direct plug-in methodology to select the bandwidth of a kernel density estimate.   |
| dpill    | Uses direct plug-in methodology to select the bandwidth of a local linear Gaussian kernel regression estimate.  |
| locpoly  | Estimates a probability density function, regression function, or their derivatives using local polynomials. A fast binned implementation over an equally spaced grid is used.                  |

## **lattice**

Trellis graphics is a framework for data visualization developed at Bell Labs by Richard Becker, William Cleveland, et al., extending ideas presented in Bill Cleveland's 1993 book *Visualizing Data*.

**lattice** is best thought of as an implementation of Trellis graphics for R. It is built upon the grid graphics engine and requires the grid add-on package. It is not (readily) compatible with traditional R graphics tools. The public interface is based on the implementation in S-PLUS but features several extensions, in addition to incompatibilities introduced through the use of grid. To the extent possible, care has been taken to ensure that existing Trellis code written for S-PLUS works unchanged (or with minimal change) in **lattice**. If you are having problems porting S-PLUS code, read the entry for panel in the documentation for **xypplot**. Most high-level Trellis functions in S-PLUS are implemented, with the exception of piechart.

## **Functions**

| Function                       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Rows                           | Convenience function to extract a subset of a list. Usually used in creating keys.                        |
| as.shingle, as.factorOrShingle | Functions to handle shingles.   |
| axis.default                   | Default function for drawing axes in lattice plots.   |
| banking                        | Calculates banking slope.   |
| barchart                       | Draws bar charts.   |
| bwplot                         | Draws box plots.  |
| canonical.theme                | Initialization of a display device with appropriate graphical parameters.                                 |
| cloud                          | Generic function to draw 3D scatter plots and surfaces. The "formula" methods do most of the actual work. |
| col.whitebg                    | Initialization of a display device with appropriate graphical parameters.                                 |

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| contourplot   | Draws level plots and contour plots.   |
| current.column  | Returns an integer index specifying which column in the layout is currently active.  |
| current.panel.limits  | Used to retrieve a panel's x and y limits.   |
| current.row   | Returns an integer index specifying which row in the layout is currently active.   |
| densityplot   | Draws histograms and kernel density plots, possibly conditioned on other variables.  |
| diag.panel.splom  | This is the default superpanel function for <code>splom</code> .   |
| do.breaks   | Draws histograms and kernel density plots, possibly conditioned on other variables.  |
| dotplot   | Draws Cleveland dot plots.   |
| draw.colorkey   | Produces (and possibly draws) a grid frame grob, which is a color key that can be placed in other grid plots. Used in <code>levelplot</code> .   |
| draw.key  | Produces (and possibly draws) a grid frame grob, which is a legend (aka key) that can be placed in other grid plots.   |
| equal.count   | Function to handle shingles.   |
| histogram   | Draws histograms and kernel density plots, possibly conditioned on other variables.  |
| is.shingle  | Function to handle shingles.   |
| larrow, llines, lplot.xy, lpoints,<br>lpolygon, lrect, lsegments, ltext,<br>panel.points, panel.polygon,<br>panel.rect, panel.segments,<br>panel.text | These functions are intended to replace common low-level traditional graphics functions, primarily for use in panel functions. The originals cannot be used (at least not easily) because lattice panel functions need to use grid graphics. Low-level drawing functions in grid can be used directly as well and are often more flexible. These functions are provided for convenience and portability. |
| latticegetOption, lattice.options   | Functions to handle settings used by <code>lattice</code> . Their main purpose is to make code maintenance easier, and users normally should not need to use these functions. However, fine control at this level may be useful in certain cases.  |
| latticeParseFormula   | Used by high-level lattice functions like <code>xypplot</code> to parse the formula argument and evaluate various components of the data.  |
| level.colors  | Calculates false colors from a numeric variable (including factors, using their numeric codes) given a color scheme and break points.  |
| levelplot   | Draws level plots and contour plots.   |
| ltransform3dMatrix,<br>ltransform3dto3d   | These are (related to) the default panel functions for <code>cloud</code> and <code>wireframe</code> .   |
| make.groups   | Combines two or more vectors, possibly of different lengths, producing a data frame with a second column indicating which of these vectors that row came from. This is mostly useful for getting data into a form suitable for use in high-level lattice functions.  |
| oneway  | Fits a one-way model to univariate data grouped by a factor, the result often being displayed using <code>xfss</code> .  |
| packet.number   | A function that identifies which packet each observation in the data is part of.   |
| packet.panel.default  | Default function in <code>lattice</code> to determine, given the column, row, page, and other relevant information, the packet (if any) that should be used in a panel.  |
| panel.3dscatter, panel  | Default panel functions controlling <code>cloud</code> and <code>wireframe</code> displays.  |
| panel.abline  | Adds a line of the form $y = a + bx$ or vertical and/or horizontal lines.  |

| Function          | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| panel.average     | Treats one of $x$ and $y$ as a factor (according to the value of horizontal), calculates FUN applied to the subsets of the other variable determined by each unique value of the factor, and joins them by a line.  |
| panel.arrows      | Draws arrows in a panel.  |
| panel.axis        | The function used by lattice to draw axes. It is typically not used by users, except those wishing to create advanced annotation. Keep in mind issues of clipping when trying to use it as part of the panel function. current.panel.limits can be used to retrieve a panel's $x$ and $y$ limits.   |
| panel.barchart    | Default panel function for barchart.  |
| panel.brush.splom | panel.link.splom is meant for use with splom and requires a panel to be chosen using trellis.focus before it is called. Clicking on a point causes that and the corresponding projections in other pairwise scatter plots to be highlighted.  |
| panel.bwplot      | Default panel function for bwplot.  |
| panel.cloud       | Default panel function controlling cloud and wireframe displays.  |
| panel.contourplot | Default panel function for levelplot.   |
| panel.curve       | Adds a curve, similar to what curve does with add=TRUE. Graphical parameters for the line are obtained from the add.line setting.   |
| panel.densityplot | Default panel function for densityplot.   |
| panel.dotplot     | Default panel function for dotplot.   |
| panel.error       | Default handler used when an error occurs while executing a panel function.   |
| panel.fill        | Fills the panel with a specified color.   |
| panel.grid        | Draws a reference grid.   |
| panel.histogram   | Default panel function for histogram.   |
| panel.identify    | Similar to identify. When called, it waits for the user to identify points (in the panel being drawn) via mouse clicks.   |
| panel.levelplot   | Default panel function for levelplot.   |
| panel.linejoin    | panel.linejoin is an alias for panel.average that was retained for back-compatibility and may go away in the future.  |
| panel.lines       | Plots lines in a panel.   |
| panel.link.splom  | The classic Trellis paradigm is to plot the whole object at once, without the possibility of interacting with it afterward. However, by keeping track of the grid viewports where the panels and strips are drawn, it is possible to go back to them afterward and enhance them one panel at a time. This function provides convenient interfaces to help in this. Note that this is still experimental and the exact details may change in the future. |
| panel.lmline      | panel.lmline( $x$ , $y$ ) is equivalent to panel.abline(lm( $y \sim x$ )).  |
| panel.loess       | Adds a smooth curve (fitted by loess).  |
| panel.mathdensity | Plots a (usually theoretical) probability density function.   |
| panel.number      | Returns an integer counting which panel is being drawn (starting from 1 for the first panel, aka the panel order).  |
| panel.pairs       | Default superpanel function for splom.  |

| Function   | Description   |
|--|---|
| panel.parallel   | Default panel function for <code>parallel</code> .  |
| panel.qq   | Default panel function for <code>qq</code> .  |
| panel.qqmath   | Default panel function for <code>qqmath</code> .  |
| panel.qqmathline   | Useful panel function with <code>qqmath</code> . Draws a line passing through the points (usually) determined by the 0.25 and 0.75 quantiles of the sample and the theoretical distribution.  |
| panel.refline  | Similar to <code>panel.abline</code> , but uses the “reference.line” settings for the defaults.   |
| panel.rug  | Adds a rug representation of the (marginal) data to the panel.  |
| panel.smoothScatter  | Allows the user to place <code>smoothScatter</code> plots in lattice graphics.  |
| panel.splom  | Default panel function for <code>splom</code> .   |
| panel.stripplot  | Default panel function for <code>stripplot</code> . Also see <code>panel.superpose</code> .   |
| panel.superpose,<br>panel.superpose.2  | These are panel functions for Trellis displays, which are useful when a grouping variable is specified for use within panels. The <code>x</code> (and <code>y</code> where appropriate) variables are plotted with different graphical parameters for each distinct value of the grouping variable.   |
| panel.tmd.default,<br>panel.tmd.qqmath   | Default panel functions for <code>tmd</code> .  |
| panel.violin   | This is a panel function that can create a violin plot. It is typically used in a high-level call to <code>bwplot</code> .  |
| panel.wireframe  | Default panel functions controlling <code>cloud</code> and <code>wireframe</code> displays.   |
| panel.xyplot   | Default panel function for <code>xyplot</code> .  |
| parallel   | Draws conditional scatter plot matrices and parallel coordinate plots.  |
| prepanel.default.bwplot,<br>prepanel.default.cloud,<br>prepanel.default.densityplot,<br>prepanel.default.histogram,<br>prepanel.default.levelplot,<br>prepanel.default.parallel,<br>prepanel.default.qq,<br>prepanel.default.qqmath,<br>prepanel.default.splom,<br>prepanel.default.xyplot | These prepanel functions are used as fallback defaults in various high-level plot functions in <code>lattice</code> . These are rarely useful to normal users, but may be helpful in developing new displays.   |
| prepanel.lmline, prepanel.loess,<br>prepanel.qqmathline  | These are predefined prepanel functions available in <code>lattice</code> .   |
| prepanel.tmd.default,<br>prepanel.tmd.qqmath   | <code>tmd</code> creates Tukey mean-difference plots from a <code>trellis</code> object returned by <code>xyplot</code> , <code>qq</code> , or <code>qqmath</code> . The <code>prepanel</code> and <code>panel</code> functions are used as appropriate. The <code>formula</code> method for <code>tmd</code> is provided for convenience and simply calls <code>tmd</code> on the object created by calling <code>xyplot</code> on that formula. |
| qq   | Quantile-quantile plots for comparing two distributions.  |
| qqmath   | Quantile-quantile plot of a sample and a theoretical distribution.  |
| rfs  | Plots fitted values and residuals (via <code>qqmath</code> ) on a common scale for any object that has methods for fitted values and residuals.   |

| Function  | Description   |
|---|---|
| <code>shingle</code>  | Function to handle shingle.   |
| <code>show.settings</code>                                  | Function used to query, display, and modify graphical parameters for fine control of Trellis displays. Modifications are made to the settings for the currently active device only.   |
| <code>simpleKey</code>                                      | Simple interface to generate a list appropriate for <code>draw.key</code> .   |
| <code>simpleTheme</code>                                    | Simple interface to generate a list appropriate as a theme, typically used as the <code>par.settings</code> argument in a high-level call.  |
| <code>splom</code>  | Draws conditional scatter plot matrices and parallel coordinate plots.  |
| <code>standard.theme</code>                                 | Initialization of a display device with appropriate graphical parameters.   |
| <code>strip.custom</code>                                   | Provides a convenient way to obtain new strip functions that differ from <code>strip.default</code> only in the default values of certain arguments.  |
| <code>strip.default</code>                                  | Function that draws the strips by default in Trellis plots. Users can write their own strip functions, but most commonly this involves calling <code>strip.default</code> with slightly different arguments.  |
| <code>striplot</code>                                       | Draws strip plots in <code>lattice</code> .   |
| <code>tmd</code>  | <code>tmd</code> creates Tukey mean-difference plots from a <code>Trellis</code> object returned by <code>xyplot</code> , <code>qq</code> , or <code>qqmath</code> . The <code>formula</code> method for <code>tmd</code> is provided for convenience and simply calls <code>tmd</code> on the object created by calling <code>xyplot</code> on that formula. |
| <code>trellis.currentLayout</code>                          | Returns a matrix with as many rows and columns as in the layout of panels in the current plot.  |
| <code>trellis.device</code>                                 | Initialization of a display device with appropriate graphical parameters.   |
| <code>trellis.focus</code> , <code>trellis.grobname</code>  | <code>trellis.focus</code> can be used to move to a particular panel or strip, identified by its position in the array of panels.   |
| <code>trellis.last.object</code>                            | Updates method for objects of class " <code>Trellis</code> " and is a way to retrieve the last printed <code>Trellis</code> object (that was saved).  |
| <code>trellis.panelArgs</code>                              | Once a panel or strip is in focus (e.g., by using <code>trellis.switchFocus</code> ), <code>trellis.panelArgs</code> can be used to retrieve the arguments that were available to the panel function at that position.  |
| <code>trellis.par.get</code> , <code>trellis.par.set</code> | Functions used to query, display, and modify graphical parameters for fine control of Trellis displays. Modifications are made to the settings for the currently active device only.  |
| <code>trellis.switchFocus</code>                            | A convenience function to switch from one viewport to another, while preserving the current row and column.   |
| <code>trellis.unfocus</code>                                | Unsets the focus and makes the top-level viewport the current viewport.   |
| <code>trellis.vpname</code>                                 | Returns the name of a viewport.   |
| <code>which.packet</code>                                   | Returns the combination of levels of the conditioning variables in the form of a numeric vector as long as the number of conditioning variables, with each element an integer indexing the levels of the corresponding variable.  |
| <code>wireframe</code>                                      | Generic function to draw 3D scatter plots and surfaces. The "formula" methods do most of the actual work.   |

| Function   | Description  |
|--|--|
| <code>xscale.components.default</code> ,<br><code>yscale.components.default</code> | Return a list of the form suitable as the components argument of <code>axis.default</code> . |
| <code>xyplot</code>  | Produces conditional scatter plots.  |

## Data Sets

| Data Set                   | Class                   | Description  |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <code>barley</code>        | <code>data.frame</code> | Total yield in bushels per acre for 10 varieties at 6 sites in each of 2 years.  |
| <code>environmental</code> | <code>data.frame</code> | Daily measurements of ozone concentration, wind speed, temperature, and solar radiation in New York City from May to September of 1973.  |
| <code>ethanol</code>       | <code>data.frame</code> | Ethanol fuel was burned in a single-cylinder engine. For various settings of the engine compression and equivalence ratio, the emissions of nitrogen oxides were recorded.   |
| <code>melanoma</code>      | <code>data.frame</code> | This data from the Connecticut Tumor Registry presents age-adjusted numbers of melanoma skin cancer incidences per 100,000 people in Connecticut for the years 1936–1972.  |
| <code>singer</code>        | <code>data.frame</code> | Heights, in inches, of the singers in the New York Choral Society in 1979. The data is grouped according to voice part. The vocal range for each voice part increases in pitch according to the following order: Bass 2, Bass 1, Tenor 2, Tenor 1, Alto 2, Alto 1, Soprano 2, Soprano 1. |

## MASS

This is the main package of Venables and Ripley's MASS.

## Functions

| Function                   | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>Null</code>          | Given a matrix M, finds a matrix N giving a basis for the null space. That is, $t(N) \setminus %* \% M$ is the 0, and N has the maximum number of linearly independent columns. |
| <code>Shepard</code>       | One form of nonmetric multidimensional scaling.   |
| <code>addterm</code>       | Tries fitting all models that differ from the current model by adding a single term from those supplied, maintaining marginality.   |
| <code>area</code>          | Integrates a function of one variable over a finite range using a recursive adaptive method. This function is mainly for demonstration purposes.                                |
| <code>as.fractions</code>  | Finds rational approximations to the components of a real numeric object using a standard continued fraction method.  |
| <code>bandwidth.nrd</code> | A well-supported rule of thumb for choosing the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.   |
| <code>bcv</code>           | Uses biased cross-validation to select the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.  |

| Function                  | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| boxcox                    | Computes and optionally plots profile log-likelihoods for the parameter of the Box-Cox power transformation.  |
| con2tr                    | Converts lists to data frames for use by <code>lattice</code> .   |
| contr.sdif                | A coding for unordered factors based on successive differences.   |
| corresp                   | Finds the principal canonical correlation and corresponding row and column scores from a correspondence analysis of a two-way contingency table.  |
| cov.mcd, cov.mve, cov.rob | Compute a multivariate location and scale estimate with a high breakdown point. This can be thought of as estimating the mean and covariance of the <i>good</i> part of the data. <code>cov.mve</code> and <code>cov.mcd</code> are compatibility wrappers. |
| cov.trob                  | Estimates a covariance or correlation matrix assuming the data came from a multivariate <i>t</i> -distribution: this provides some degree of robustness to outliers without giving a high breakdown point.  |
| denumerate                | <code>log1m</code> allows dimension numbers to be used in place of names in the formula. <code>denumerate</code> modifies such a formula into one that <code>terms</code> can process.  |
| dose.p                    | Calibrates binomial assays, generalizing the calculation of LD50.   |
| dropterm                  | Tries fitting all models that differ from the current model by dropping a single term, maintaining marginality.   |
| eqscplot                  | Version of a scatter plot with scales chosen to be equal on both axes, i.e., 1 cm represents the same units on each.  |
| fitdistr                  | Maximum likelihood fitting of univariate distributions, allowing parameters to be held fixed, if desired.   |
| fractions                 | Finds rational approximations to the components of a real numeric object using a standard continued fraction method.  |
| gamma.dispersion          | A front end to <code>gamma.shape</code> for convenience. Finds the reciprocal of the estimate of the shape parameter only.  |
| gamma.shape               | Finds the maximum likelihood estimate of the shape parameter of the gamma distribution after fitting a Gamma generalized linear model.  |
| ginv                      | Calculates the Moore-Penrose generalized inverse of a matrix X.   |
| glm.convert               | Modifies an output object from <code>glm.nb()</code> to one that looks like the output from <code>glm()</code> with a negative binomial family. This allows it to be updated keeping the theta parameter fixed.   |
| glm.nb                    | A modification of the system function <code>glm()</code> to include estimation of the additional parameter, theta, for a negative binomial generalized linear model.  |
| glmmPQL                   | Fits a generalized linear mixed model (GLMM) with multivariate normal random effects, using penalized quasi-likelihood.   |
| hist.FD                   | Plots a histogram with automatic bin width selection, using the Scott or Freedman-Diaconis formula.   |
| hist.scott                | Plots a histogram with automatic bin width selection, using the Scott or Freedman-Diaconis formula.   |
| huber                     | Finds the Huber M-estimator of location with the median absolute deviation (MAD) scale.   |

| Function                            | Description   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| hubers                              | Finds the Huber M-estimator for location with scale specified, scale with location specified, or both if neither is specified.  |
| is.fracions                         | Finds rational approximations to the components of a real numeric object using a standard continued fraction method.  |
| isoMDS                              | One form of nonmetric multidimensional scaling.   |
| kde2d                               | Two-dimensional kernel density estimation with an axis-aligned bivariate normal kernel, evaluated on a square grid.   |
| lda                                 | Linear discriminant analysis.   |
| ldahist                             | Plots histograms or density plots of data on a single Fisher linear discriminant.   |
| lm.gls                              | Fits linear models by generalized least squares.  |
| lm.ridge                            | Fits a linear model by ridge regression.  |
| lmsreg                              | Fits a regression to the <i>good</i> points in the data set, thereby achieving a regression estimator with a high breakdown point. ( <code>lmsreg</code> is a compatibility wrapper for <code>lqs</code> .)                       |
| lmwork                              | The standardized residuals. These are normalized to unit variance, fitted including the current data point.   |
| loglm                               | Provides a front end to the standard function, <code>loglin</code> , to allow log-linear models to be specified and fitted in a manner similar to that of other fitting functions, such as <code>glm</code> .                     |
| logtrans                            | Finds and optionally plots the marginal (profile) likelihood for alpha for a transformation model of the form $\log(y + \alpha) \sim x_1 + x_2 + \dots$   |
| lqs, lqs.formula                    | Fit a regression to the <i>good</i> points in the data set, thereby achieving a regression estimator with a high breakdown point. <code>lmsreg</code> and <code>ltsreg</code> are compatibility wrappers.                         |
| ltsreg                              | A compatibility wrapper for <code>lqs</code> .  |
| mca                                 | Computes a multiple-correspondence analysis of a set of factors.  |
| mvrnorm                             | Produces one or more samples from the specified multivariate normal distribution.   |
| negative.binomial                   | Specifies the information required to fit a negative binomial generalized linear model, with known <code>theta</code> parameter, using <code>glm()</code> .   |
| parcoord                            | Parallel coordinates plot.  |
| polr                                | Fits a logistic or probit regression model to an ordered factor response. The default logistic case is <i>proportional odds logistic regression</i> , after which the function is named.  |
| psi.bisquare, psi.hampel, psi.huber | Psi functions for <code>rlm</code> .  |
| qda                                 | Fits quadratic discriminant analysis models.  |
| rational                            | Finds rational approximations to the components of a real numeric object using a standard continued fraction method.  |
| renumberate                         | <code>renumberate</code> converts a formula written using the conventions of <code>loglm</code> into one that <code>terms</code> is able to process. <code>renumberate</code> converts it back again to a form like the original. |
| rlm                                 | Fits a linear model by robust regression using an <i>M</i> -estimator.  |

| Function                     | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| rms.curv                     | Calculates the root mean square parameter effects and intrinsic relative curvatures, $c^0$ and $c^1$ , for a fitted nonlinear regression. |
| rmebin                       | Generates random outcomes from a negative binomial distribution, with mean $\mu$ and variance $\mu + \mu^2/\theta$ .                      |
| sammon                       | One form of nonmetric multidimensional scaling.   |
| select                       | Fits a linear model by ridge regression.  |
| stdres                       | The standardized residuals. These are normalized to unit variance, fitted including the current data point.                               |
| stepAIC                      | Performs stepwise model selection by AIC.   |
| studres                      | Extracts the Studentized residuals from a linear model.   |
| theta.md, theta.ml, theta.mm | Given the estimated mean vector, estimate the $\theta$ of the negative binomial distribution.   |
| truehist                     | Creates a histogram on the current graphics device.   |
| ucv                          | Uses unbiased cross-validation to select the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.  |
| width.SJ                     | Uses the method of Sheather and Jones to select the bandwidth of a Gaussian kernel density estimator.                                     |
| write.matrix                 | Writes a matrix or data frame to a file or the console, using column labels and a layout respecting columns.                              |

## Data Sets

| Data Set  | Class      | Description   |
|-----------|------------|---|
| Aids2     | data.frame | Data on patients diagnosed with AIDS in Australia before July 1, 1991.  |
| Animals   | data.frame | Average brain and body weights for 28 species of land animals.  |
| Boston    | data.frame | The Boston data frame has 506 rows and 14 columns.  |
| Cars93    | data.frame | The Cars93 data frame has 93 rows and 27 columns.   |
| Cushings  | data.frame | Cushing's syndrome is a hypertensive disorder associated with oversecretion of cortisol by the adrenal gland. The observations are urinary excretion rates of two steroid metabolites.  |
| DDT       | numeric    | A numeric vector of 15 measurements by different laboratories of the pesticide DDT in $\text{ng}/\text{kg}$ , in ppm (parts per million), using the multiple pesticide residue measurement.   |
| GAGurine  | data.frame | Data was collected on the concentration of the chemical glycosaminoglycan (GAG) in the urine of 314 children aged 0 to 17 years. The aim of the study was to produce a chart to help a pediatrician to assess if a child's GAG concentration is "normal." |
| Insurance | data.frame | The data given in data frame Insurance consists of the numbers of policyholders of an insurance company who were exposed to risk, and the numbers of car insurance claims made by those policyholders in the third quarter of 1973.                       |
| Melanoma  | data.frame | The Melanoma data frame has data on 205 patients in Denmark with malignant melanoma.  |

| Data Set | Class      | Description   |
|----------|------------|---|
| OME      | data.frame | Experiments were performed on children on their ability to differentiate a signal in broadband noise. The noise was played from a pair of speakers, and a signal was added to just one channel; the subject had to turn his/her head to the channel with the added signal. The signal was either coherent (the amplitude of the noise was increased for a period) or incoherent (independent noise was added for the same period to form the same increase in power). The threshold used in the original analysis was the stimulus loudness needed to get 75% correct responses. Some of the children had suffered from otitis media with effusion (OME). |
| Pima.te  | data.frame | A population of women who were at least 21 years old, of Pima Indian heritage, and living near Phoenix, Arizona, was tested for diabetes according to World Health Organization criteria. The data was collected by the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. A total of 532 complete records were used, after dropping the (mainly missing) data on serum insulin.   |
| Pima.tr  | data.frame | A population of women who were at least 21 years old, of Pima Indian heritage, and living near Phoenix, Arizona, was tested for diabetes according to World Health Organization criteria. The data was collected by the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. A total of 532 complete records were used, after dropping the (mainly missing) data on serum insulin.   |
| Pima.tr2 | data.frame | A population of women who were at least 21 years old, of Pima Indian heritage, and living near Phoenix, Arizona, was tested for diabetes according to World Health Organization criteria. The data was collected by the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. A total of 532 complete records were used, after dropping the (mainly missing) data on serum insulin.   |
| Rabbit   | data.frame | Five rabbits were studied on two occasions after treatment with saline (control) and after treatment with the 5-HT <sub>3</sub> antagonist MDL 72222. After each treatment, ascending doses of phenylbiguanide were injected intravenously at 10-minute intervals and the responses of mean blood pressure measured. The goal was to test whether the cardiogenic chemoreflex elicited by phenylbiguanide depends on the activation of 5-HT <sub>3</sub> receptors.   |
| Rubber   | data.frame | Data frame from accelerated testing of tire rubber.   |
| SP500    | numeric    | Returns of the Standard & Poor's 500 Index in the 1990s.  |
| Sitka    | data.frame | The Sitka data frame has 395 rows and 4 columns. It gives repeated measurements on the log size of 79 Sitka spruce trees, 54 of which were grown in ozone-enriched chambers and 25 of which were controls. The size was measured five times in 1988, at roughly monthly intervals.  |
| Sitka89  | data.frame | The Sitka89 data frame has 632 rows and 4 columns. It gives repeated measurements on the log size of 79 Sitka spruce trees, 54 of which were grown in ozone-enriched chambers and 25 of which were controls. The size was measured eight times in 1989, at roughly monthly intervals.   |
| Skye     | data.frame | The Skye data frame has 23 rows and 3 columns.  |
| Traffic  | data.frame | An experiment was performed in Sweden in 1961–1962 to assess the effect of a speed limit on the highway accident rate. The experiment was conducted on 92 days in each year, matched so that day $j$ in 1962 was comparable to day $j$ in 1961. On some days, the speed limit was in effect and enforced, while on other days there was no speed limit and cars tended to be driven faster. The speed limit days tended to be in contiguous blocks.   |

| Data Set  | Class      | Description   |
|-----------|------------|---|
| UScereal  | data.frame | The UScereal data frame has 65 rows and 11 columns. The data comes from the 1993 American Statistical Association (ASA) Statistical Graphics Exposition and is taken from the mandatory Food and Drug Administration (FDA) food label. The data has been normalized here to a portion of 1 American cup.                                |
| UScrime   | data.frame | Criminologists are interested in the effect of punishment regimes on crime rates. This has been studied using the aggregate data on 47 states of the United States for 1960 given in this data frame. The variables seem to have been rescaled to convenient numbers.   |
| VA        | data.frame | Veteran's Administration lung cancer trial from Kalbfleisch and Prentice.   |
| abbey     | numeric    | A numeric vector of 31 determinations of nickel content (ppm) in a Canadian syenite rock.   |
| accdeaths | ts         | A regular time series giving the monthly totals of accidental deaths in the United States.  |
| anorexia  | data.frame | The anorexia data frame has 72 rows and 3 columns. Weight change data for young female anorexia patients.   |
| bacteria  | data.frame | Tests of the presence of the bacteria <i>H. influenzae</i> in children with otitis media in the Northern Territory of Australia.  |
| beav1     | data.frame | Reynolds describes a small part of a study of the long-term temperature dynamics of the beaver ( <i>Castor canadensis</i> ) in north-central Wisconsin. Body temperature was measured by telemetry every 10 minutes for four females, but data from a period of less than a day for each of two animals is used here.                   |
| beav2     | data.frame | Reynolds describes a small part of a study of the long-term temperature dynamics of the beaver ( <i>Castor canadensis</i> ) in north-central Wisconsin. Body temperature was measured by telemetry every 10 minutes for four females, but data from a period of less than a day for each of two animals is used here.                   |
| biopsy    | data.frame | This breast cancer database was obtained from the University of Wisconsin Hospitals, Madison, from Dr. William H. Wolberg. He assessed biopsies of breast tumors for 699 patients up to July 15, 1992; each of nine attributes has been scored on a scale of 1 to 10, and the outcome is also known. There are 699 rows and 11 columns. |
| birthwt   | data.frame | The birthwt data frame has 189 rows and 10 columns. The data was collected at Baystate Medical Center, Springfield, Massachusetts, during 1986.   |
| cabbages  | data.frame | The cabbages data set has 60 observations and 4 variables.  |
| caith     | data.frame | Data on the cross-classification of people in Caithness, Scotland, by eye and hair color. This region of the United Kingdom is particularly interesting, as there is a mixture of people of Nordic, Celtic, and Anglo-Saxon origin.   |
| cats      | data.frame | The heart and body weights of samples of male and female cats used for digitalis experiments. The cats were all adult, over 2 kg in body weight.  |
| cement    | data.frame | Experiment on the heat evolved in the setting of each of 13 cements.  |
| chem      | numeric    | A numeric vector of 24 determinations of copper in wholemeal flour, in parts per million.   |
| coop      | data.frame | Seven specimens were sent to six laboratories in three separate batches and each analyzed for analyte. Each analysis was duplicated.  |
| cpus      | data.frame | A relative performance measure and characteristics of 209 CPUs.   |

| Data Set | Class      | Description  |
|----------|------------|--|
| crabs    | data.frame | The <code>crabs</code> data frame has 200 rows and 8 columns, describing 5 morphological measurements on 50 crabs, each of 2 color forms and both sexes, of the species <i>Leptograpsus variegatus</i> , collected at Fremantle, Western Australia.  |
| deaths   | ts         | A time series giving the monthly deaths from bronchitis, emphysema, and asthma in the United Kingdom, 1974–1979, for both sexes.   |
| drivers  | ts         | A regular time series giving the monthly totals of car drivers in Great Britain killed or seriously injured from January 1969 to December 1984. Compulsory wearing of seat belts was introduced on January 31, 1983.   |
| eagles   | data.frame | Knight and Skagen collected data during a field study on the foraging behavior of wintering bald eagles in Washington state. The data concerned 160 attempts by one (pirating) bald eagle to steal a chum salmon from another (feeding) bald eagle.  |
| epil     | data.frame | Thall and Vail give a data set on 2-week seizure counts for 59 epileptics. The number of seizures was recorded for a baseline period of eight weeks, and then patients were randomly assigned to a treatment group or a control group. Counts were then recorded for four successive two-week periods. The subjects' age is the only covariate.  |
| farms    | data.frame | The <code>farms</code> data frame has 20 rows and 4 columns. The rows are farms on the Dutch island of Terschelling, and the columns are factors describing the management of grassland.   |
| fgl      | data.frame | The <code>fgl</code> data frame has 214 rows and 10 columns. It was collected by B. German on fragments of glass collected in forensic work.   |
| forbes   | data.frame | A data frame with 17 observations on the boiling point of water and barometric pressure, in inches of mercury.   |
| galaxies | numeric    | A numeric vector of velocities, in kilometers/second, of 82 galaxies from 6 well-separated conic sections of an un-filled survey of the Corona Borealis region. Multimodality in such surveys is evidence for voids and superclusters in the far universe.   |
| gehan    | data.frame | A data frame from a trial of 42 leukemia patients. Some were treated with the drug 6-mercaptopurine, and the rest were controls. The trial was designed as matched pairs, both withdrawn from the trial when either came out of remission.   |
| genotype | data.frame | Data from a foster feeding experiment with rat mothers and litters of four different genotypes: A, B, I and J. Rat litters were separated from their natural mothers at birth and given to foster mothers to rear.   |
| geyser   | data.frame | A version of the eruptions data from the Old Faithful geyser in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming. This version comes from Azzalini and Bowman and is of continuous measurement from August 1 to August 15, 1985. Some nocturnal duration measurements were coded as 2, 3, or 4 minutes, having originally been described as "short," "medium," or "long."  |
| gilgais  | data.frame | This data set was collected on a line transect survey in gilgai territory in New South Wales, Australia. Gilgais are natural gentle depressions in otherwise flat land, and sometimes they seem to be regularly distributed. The data collection was stimulated by the question: are these patterns reflected in soil properties? At each of 365 sampling locations on a linear grid of 4 meters, spacing, samples were taken at depths 0–10 cm, 30–40 cm, and 80–90 cm below the surface. pH, electrical conductivity, and chloride content were measured on a 1:5 soil:water extract from each sample. |

| Data Set  | Class      | Description  |
|-----------|------------|--|
| hills     | data.frame | The record times in 1984 for 35 Scottish hill races.   |
| housing   | data.frame | The <code>housing</code> data frame has 72 rows and 5 variables.   |
| immer     | data.frame | The <code>immer</code> data frame has 30 rows and 4 columns. Five varieties of barley were grown in six locations in 1931 and in 1932.   |
| leuk      | data.frame | A data frame of data from 33 leukemia patients.  |
| mammals   | data.frame | A data frame with average brain and body weights for 62 species of land mammals.   |
| mcycle    | data.frame | A data frame giving a series of measurements of head acceleration in a simulated motorcycle accident; used to test crash helmets.  |
| menarche  | data.frame | Proportions of female children at various ages during adolescence who have reached menarche.   |
| michelson | data.frame | Measurements of the speed of light in air, made between June 5, and July 2, 1879. The data consists of 5 experiments, each consisting of 20 consecutive runs. The response is the speed of light, in kilometers/second, less 299,000. The currently accepted value, on this scale of measurement, is 734.5.  |
| minn38    | data.frame | Minnesota high school graduates of 1938 were classified according to four factors. The <code>minn38</code> data frame has 168 rows and 5 columns.  |
| motors    | data.frame | The <code>motors</code> data frame has 40 rows and 3 columns. It describes an accelerated life test at each of four temperatures of 10 motorettes and has rather discrete times.   |
| muscle    | data.frame | The purpose of this experiment was to assess the influence of calcium in solution on the contraction of heart muscle in rats. The left auricle of 21 rat hearts was isolated, and on several occasions a constant-length strip of tissue was electrically stimulated and dipped into various concentrations of calcium chloride solution, after which the shortening of the strip was accurately measured as the response. |
| newcomb   | numeric    | A numeric vector giving the “Third Series” of measurements of the passage time of light recorded by Newcomb in 1882. The given values divided by 1,000 plus 24 give the time, in millionths of a second, for light to traverse a known distance. The “true” value is now considered to be 33.02.   |
| nlschools | data.frame | Snijders and Bosker use as a running example a study of 2,287 eighth-grade pupils (aged about 11) in 132 classes in 131 schools in the Netherlands. Only the variables used in their examples are supplied.  |
| npk       | data.frame | A classical N, P, K (nitrogen, phosphate, potassium) factorial experiment on the growth of peas conducted on six blocks. Each half of a fractional factorial design confounding the NPK interaction was used on three of the plots.  |
| npr1      | data.frame | Data on the locations, porosity, and permeability (a measure of oil flow) on 104 oil wells in the U.S. Naval Petroleum Reserve No. 1 in California.  |
| oats      | data.frame | The yield of oats from a split-plot field trial using three varieties and four levels of manurial treatment. The experiment was laid out in six blocks of three main plots, each split into four subplots. The varieties were applied to the main plots and the manurial treatments to the subplots.   |
| painters  | data.frame | The subjective assessment, on an integer scale of 0 to 20, of 54 classical painters. The painters were assessed on four characteristics: composition, drawing, color, and expression. The data is due to the 18th-century art critic, de Piles.  |

| Data Set | Class      | Description  |
|----------|------------|--|
| petrol   | data.frame | The yield of a petroleum refining process with four covariates. The crude oil appears to come from only 10 distinct samples. This data was originally used by Prater to build an estimation equation for the yield of the refining process of crude oil to gasoline.   |
| phones   | list       | A list object with the annual number of telephone calls in Belgium.  |
| quine    | data.frame | The quine data frame has 146 rows and 5 columns. Children from Walgett, New South Wales, Australia, were classified by culture, age, sex, and learner status, and the number of days absent from school in a particular school year was recorded.  |
| road     | data.frame | A data frame with the annual deaths in road accidents for half the U.S. states.  |
| rotifer  | data.frame | The data give the numbers of rotifers falling out of suspension for different fluid densities.   |
| ships    | data.frame | Data frame giving the number of damage incidents and aggregate months of service by ship type, year of construction, and period of operation.  |
| shoes    | list       | A list of two vectors, giving the wear of shoes of materials A and B for one foot each of 10 boys.   |
| shrimp   | numeric    | A numeric vector with 18 determinations by different laboratories of the amount (percentage of the declared total weight) of shrimp in shrimp cocktail.  |
| shuttle  | data.frame | The shuttle data frame has 256 rows and 7 columns. The first six columns are categorical variables giving example conditions; the seventh is the decision. The first 253 rows are the training set, the last 3 the test conditions.  |
| snails   | data.frame | Groups of 20 snails were held for periods of 1, 2, 3, or 4 weeks under carefully controlled conditions of temperature and relative humidity. There were two species of snail, A and B, and the experiment was designed as a 4-by-3-by-4-by-2 completely randomized design. At the end of the exposure time, the snails were tested to see if they had survived; the process itself is fatal for the animals. The object of the exercise was to model the probability of survival in terms of the stimulus variables and, in particular, to test for differences among species. The data are unusual in that, in most cases, fatalities during the experiment were fairly small.          |
| steam    | data.frame | Temperature and pressure in a saturated steam-driven experimental device.  |
| stormer  | data.frame | The stormer viscometer measures the viscosity of a fluid by measuring the time taken for an inner cylinder in the mechanism to perform a fixed number of revolutions in response to an actuating weight. The viscometer is calibrated by measuring the time taken with varying weights while the mechanism is suspended in fluids of accurately known viscosity. The data comes from such a calibration, and theoretical considerations suggest a nonlinear relationship among time, weight, and viscosity of the form $\text{Time} = (\text{B1} * \text{Viscosity}) / (\text{Weight} - \text{B2}) + \text{E}$ , where B1 and B2 are unknown parameters to be estimated, and E is error. |
| survey   | data.frame | This data frame contains the responses of 237 Statistics I students at the University of Adelaide to a number of questions.  |
| synth.te | data.frame | The synth.te data frame has 250 rows and 3 columns. The synth.te data frame has 100 rows and 3 columns. It is intended that synth.tr be used for training and synth.te for testing.  |
| synth.tr | data.frame | The synth.tr data frame has 250 rows and 3 columns. The synth.te data frame has 100 rows and 3 columns. It is intended that synth.tr be used for training and synth.te for testing.  |

| Data Set  | Class      | Description   |
|-----------|------------|---|
| topo      | data.frame | The topo data frame has 52 rows and 3 columns of topographic heights within a 310-foot square.  |
| waders    | data.frame | The waders data frame has 15 rows and 19 columns. The entries are counts of waders in summer.   |
| whiteside | data.frame | Derek Whiteside of the UK Building Research Station recorded the weekly gas consumption and average external temperature at his own house in southeast England for two heating seasons, one of 26 weeks before, and one of 30 weeks after cavity-wall insulation was installed. The object of the exercise was to assess the effect of the insulation on gas consumption. |
| wtloss    | data.frame | This data frame gives the weight, in kilograms, of an obese patient at 52 time points over an 8-month period of a weight rehabilitation program.  |

## methods

This package contains formally defined methods and classes for R objects, plus other programming tools.

## Functions

| Function              | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| @<-                   | Gets or sets information about the individual slots in an object.  |
| MethodAddCoerce       | Possibly modifies one or more methods to explicitly coerce this argument to methodClass, the class for which the method is explicitly defined.   |
| Quote                 | These are utilities, currently in the <code>methods</code> package, that either provide some functionality needed by the package (e.g., element matching by name) or add compatibility with S-PLUS, or both. |
| S3Class, S3Class<-    | S3Class extracts or replaces the S3-style class from an S4 class that was created from an S3 class through <code>setOldClass</code> .  |
| S3Part, S3Part<-      | The function S3Part extracts or replaces the S3 part of such an object.  |
| addNextMethod         | Generic function that finds the next method for the signature of the method definition method and caches that method in the method definition.   |
| allNames              | Returns the character vector of names (unlike <code>names()</code> , never returns <code>NULL</code> ) for a method.   |
| as, as<-              | Manage the relations that allow coercing an object to a given class.   |
| asMethodDefinition    | Turns a function definition into an object of class <code>MethodDefinition</code> , corresponding to the given signature (by default, generates a default method with empty signature).                      |
| assignClassDef        | Assigns the definition of the class to the specially named object.   |
| assignMethodsMetaData | Utility to assign the metadata object recording the methods defined in a particular package.   |
| balanceMethodsList    | Called from <code>setMethod</code> to ensure that all nodes in the list have the same depth (i.e., the same number of levels of arguments).  |
| body<-                | Sets the body of a method.   |

| Function                                | Description  |
|---|--|
| cacheGenericsMetaData,<br>cacheMetaData | Utilities for ensuring that the internal information about class and method definitions is up to date. Should normally be called automatically whenever needed (e.g., when a method or class definition changes or when a package is attached or detached).  |
| cacheMethod                             | Stores the definition for this function and signature in the method metadata for the function.   |
| callGeneric                             | The name and package of the current generic function is stored in the environment of the method definition object.   |
| callNextMethod                          | A call to <code>callNextMethod</code> can appear only inside a method definition. It then results in a call to the first inherited method after the current method, with the arguments to the current method passed down to the next method. The value of that method call is the value of <code>callNextMethod</code> .   |
| canCoerce                               | Tests if an object can be coerced to a given S4 class.   |
| cbind2                                  | Combines two matrix-like R objects by columns ( <code>cbind2</code> ) or rows ( <code>rbind2</code> ). These are (S4) generic functions with default methods.  |
| checkSlotAssignment                     | Checks that the value provided is allowed for this slot, by consulting the definition of the class. Called from the C code that assigns slots.   |
| classMetaName                           | A name for the object storing this class's definition.   |
| classesToAM                             | Given a vector of class names or a list of class definitions, returns an adjacency matrix of the superclasses of these classes; i.e., a matrix with class names as the row and column names and with element $[i, j]$ being 1 if the class in column $j$ is a direct superclass of the class in row $i$ , and 0 otherwise. |
| coerce, coerce<-                        | Manage the relations that allow coercing an object to a given class.   |
| completeClassDefinition                 | Completes the definition of Class, relative to the class definitions visible from environment <code>where</code> . If <code>doExtends</code> is TRUE, completes the super- and subclass information.   |
| completeExtends                         | Completes the <code>extends</code> information in the class definition, by following transitive chains.  |
| completeSubclasses                      |  |
| conformMethod                           | If the formal arguments, <code>mnames</code> , are not identical to the formal arguments to the function, <code>fnames</code> , <code>conformMethod</code> determines whether the signature and the two sets of arguments conform and returns the signature, possibly extended.  |
| defaultDumpName                         | Default name to be used for dumping a method.  |
| defaultPrototype                        | The prototype for a class that will have slots, is not a virtual class, and does not extend one of the basic classes. Both its class and its (R internal) type, <code>typeof()</code> , are "S4."  |
| doPrimitiveMethod                       | Performs a primitive call to built-in function name the definition and call provided, and carried out in the specified environment.  |
| dumpMethod                              | Dumps the method for this generic function and signature.  |
| dumpMethods                             | Dumps all the methods for this generic.  |
| elNamed, elNamed<-                      | Get or set the element of the vector corresponding to <code>name</code> .  |
| existsFunction                          | Is there a function of this name? If <code>generic</code> is FALSE, then generic functions are not counted.  |

| Function                     | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| existsMethod                 | Tests for the existence of a method corresponding to a given generic function and signature.   |
| extends                      | Function to test inheritance relationships between an object and a class ( <code>is</code> ) or between two classes ( <code>extends</code> ) and to establish such relationships ( <code>setIs</code> , an explicit alternative to the <code>contains=</code> argument to <code>setClass</code> ).                 |
| findClass                    | Function to find and manipulate class definitions.   |
| findFunction                 | Returns a list of either the positions on the search list or the current top-level environment on which a function object for name exists.   |
| findMethod                   | Returns the package(s) in the search list (or in the packages specified by the <code>where</code> argument) that contain a method for this function and signature.   |
| findMethodSignatures         | Returns a character matrix whose rows are the class names from the signature of the corresponding methods; it operates either from a list returned by <code>findMethods</code> or by computing such a list itself, given the same arguments as <code>findMethods</code> .  |
| findMethods                  | Returns a list of the method definitions currently existing for generic function <code>f</code> , limited to the methods defined in environment <code>where</code> if that argument is supplied and possibly limited to those including one or more of the specified <code>classes</code> in the method signature. |
| findUnique                   | Returns the list of environments (or equivalent) having an object named <code>what</code> , using environment <code>where</code> and its parent environments.  |
| fixPre1.8                    | Beginning with R version 1.8.0, the class of an object contains the identification of the package in which the class is defined. The function <code>fixPre1.8</code> fixes and reassigns objects missing that information (typically because they were loaded from a file saved with a previous version of R).     |
| formalArgs                   | Returns the names of the formal arguments of this function.  |
| functionBody, functionBody<- | These are utilities, currently in the <code>methods</code> package, that either provide some functionality needed by the package (e.g., element matching by name) or add compatibility with S-PLUS, or both.   |
| generic.skeleton             | Utility functions to support the definition and use of formal methods. Most of these functions will not normally be called directly by the user.   |
| getAllSuperClasses           | Gets the names of all the classes that this class definition extends.  |
| getClass, getClassDef        | Get the definition of a class.   |
| getClasses                   | Function to find and manipulate class definitions.   |
| getDataPart                  | Utility called to implement <code>object@.Data</code> .  |
| getFromClassDef              | Extracts one of the intrinsically defined class definition properties (". <code>Properties</code> ", etc.). Strictly a utility function.   |
| getFunction                  | These are utilities, currently in the <code>methods</code> package, that either provide some functionality needed by the package (e.g., element matching by name) or add compatibility with S-PLUS, or both.   |
| getGeneric                   | Returns the definition of the function named <code>f</code> as a generic.  |

| Function                      | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| getGenerics                   | Returns the names of the generic functions that have methods defined on where; this argument can be an environment or an index into the search list.  |
| getGroup                      | Returns the groups to which this generic belongs, searching from environment where (the global environment normally by default).  |
| getGroupMembers               | Returns all the members of the group generic function named <code>group</code> .  |
| getMethod                     | Returns the method corresponding to a given generic function and signature.   |
| getMethods                    | An older alternative to <code>findMethods</code> , returning information in the form of an object of class <code>MethodsList</code> , previously used for method dispatch.  |
| getMethodsForDispatch         | Support routine for computations on formal methods.   |
| getMethodsMetaData            | Utility to get the metadata object recording the methods defined in a particular package.   |
| getPackageName                | Returns the package associated with a particular environment or position on the search list, or the package containing a particular function.   |
| getSlots                      | Returns a named character vector. The names are the names of the slots; the values are the classes of the corresponding slots.  |
| getValidity                   | The validity of <code>object</code> related to its class definition is tested. If the object is valid, <code>TRUE</code> is returned; otherwise, either a vector of strings describing validity failures is returned or an error is generated (according to whether <code>test</code> is <code>TRUE</code> ). |
| hasArg                        | Returns <code>TRUE</code> if name corresponds to an argument in the call, either a formal argument to the function or a component of <code>...</code> , and <code>FALSE</code> otherwise.   |
| hasMethod                     | Tests for the existence of a method corresponding to a given generic function and signature.  |
| hasMethods                    | Returns <code>TRUE</code> or <code>FALSE</code> according to whether there is a nonempty table of methods for function <code>f</code> in the environment or search position <code>where</code> (or anywhere on the search list if <code>where</code> is missing).   |
| implicitGeneric               | Returns the implicit generic version.   |
| initialize                    | Given the name or the definition of a class, plus optionally data to be included in the object, <code>initialize</code> returns an object from that class.  |
| is                            | Function to test inheritance relationships between an object and a class ( <code>is</code> ) or between two classes ( <code>extends</code> ) and to establish such relationships ( <code>setIs</code> , an explicit alternative to the <code>contains=</code> argument to <code>setClass</code> ).            |
| isClass                       | Function to find and manipulate class definitions.  |
| isClassDef                    | Is object a representation of a class?  |
| isClassUnion                  | Tests if a class is a "ClassUnion".   |
| isGeneric                     | Is there a function named <code>f</code> , and, if so, is it a generic?   |
| isGroup                       | Manages collections of methods associated with a generic function, as well as providing information about the generic functions themselves.   |
| isSealedClass, isSealedMethod | Check for either a method or a class that has been <code>sealed</code> when it was defined and therefore cannot be redefined.   |
| isVirtualClass                | Is the named class a virtual class?   |

| Function                   | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| isXS3Class                 | Old-style (S3) classes may be registered as S4 classes (by calling <code>setOldClass</code> ), and many have been. These classes can then be contained in (i.e., superclasses of) regular S4 classes, allowing formal methods and slots to be added to the S3 behavior. The function <code>S3Part</code> extracts or replaces the S3 part of such an object. <code>S3Class</code> extracts or replaces the S3-style class. <code>S3Class</code> also applies to objects from an S4 class with <code>S3methods=TRUE</code> in the call to <code>setClass</code> . |
| listFromMethods            | Support routine for computations on formal methods.  |
| makeClassRepresentation    | Constructs an object of class <code>classRepresentation</code> to describe a particular class. Mostly a utility function, but you can call it to create a class definition without assigning it, as <code>setClass</code> would do.  |
| makeExtends                | Converts the argument to a list defining the extension mechanism.  |
| makeGeneric                | Makes a generic function object corresponding to the given function name, optional definition, and optional default method.  |
| makePrototypeFromClassDef  | Makes the prototype implied by the class definition.   |
| makeStandardGeneric        | A utility function that makes a valid function calling <code>standardGeneric</code> for name <code>f</code> .  |
| matchSignature             | Matches the signature object (a partially or completely named subset of the signature arguments of the generic function object <code>FUN</code> ) and returns a vector of all the classes in the order specified by <code>fun@signature</code> .   |
| metaNameUndo               | As its name implies, this function undoes the name mangling used to produce metadata object names and returns an object of class <code>ObjectsWithPackage</code> .   |
| method.skeleton            | Writes a source file containing a call to <code>setMethod</code> to define a method for the generic function and signature supplied. By default, the method definition is in line in the call but can be made an external (previously assigned) function.  |
| methodSignatureMatrix      | Returns a matrix with the contents of the specified slots as rows.   |
| methodsPackageMetaName     | A name-mangling device to hide metadata defining method and class information.   |
| missingArg                 | Returns TRUE if the symbol supplied is missing from the call corresponding to the environment supplied (by default, environment of the call to <code>missingArg</code> ).  |
| new                        | Given the name or the definition of a class, plus optionally data to be included in the object, <code>new</code> returns an object from that class.  |
| newBasic                   | The implementation of the function <code>new</code> for basic classes that don't have a formal definition.   |
| newClassRepresentation     | Various functions to support the definition and use of formal classes. Most of them are rarely suitable to be called directly. Others are somewhat experimental and/or partially implemented only. Do refer to <code>setClass</code> for normal code development.  |
| newEmptyObject             | Utility function to create an empty object into which slots can be set.  |
| packageName                | Returns the character-string name of the package (without the extraneous "package:" found in the search list).   |
| packageSlot, packageSlot<- | Return or set the package name slot (currently an attribute, not a formal slot, but this may change someday).  |
| possibleExtends            | Finds the information that says whether one class extends another, directly or indirectly.   |
| prohibitGeneric            | Prevents your function from being made generic.  |

| Function                                      | Description   |
|---|---|
| <code>promptClass</code>                      | Creates a help file for a class definition containing all relevant slot and method information for a class, with minimal markup for Rd processing; no QC facilities at present.   |
| <code>promptMethods</code>                    | Generates a shell of documentation for the methods of a generic function.   |
| <code>prototype</code>                        | In calls to <code>setClass</code> , this function constructs the <code>prototype</code> argument.   |
| <code>rbind2</code>                           | Combines two matrix-like R objects by columns ( <code>cbind2</code> ) or rows ( <code>rbind2</code> ). These are (S4) generic functions with default methods.   |
| <code>reconcileProperties AndPrototype</code> | Makes a list or a structure look like a prototype for the given class.  |
| <code>registerImplicit Generics</code>        | Saves a set of implicit generic definitions in the cached table of the current session.   |
| <code>rematchDefinition</code>                | If the specified method in a call to <code>setMethod</code> specializes the argument list (by replacing . . .), then <code>rematchDefinition</code> constructs the actual method stored.  |
| <code>removeClass</code>                      | Function to find and manipulate class definitions.  |
| <code>removeGeneric</code>                    | Removes all the methods for the generic function of this name and the function itself.  |
| <code>removeMethod</code>                     | Creates and saves a formal method for a given function and list of classes.   |
| <code>removeMethods</code>                    | Removes all the methods for the generic function of this name.  |
| <code>representation</code>                   | In calls to <code>setClass</code> , this function constructs the <code>representation</code> argument.  |
| <code>requireMethods</code>                   | Requires a subclass to implement methods for the generic functions for this signature.  |
| <code>resetClass</code>                       | Function to find and manipulate class definitions.  |
| <code>resetGeneric</code>                     | Support routine for computations on formal methods.   |
| <code>sealClass</code>                        | Function to find and manipulate class definitions.  |
| <code>selectMethod</code>                     | Returns a method corresponding to a given generic function and signature.   |
| <code>selectSuperClasses</code>               | Returns superclasses of <code>ClassDef</code> , possibly only nonvirtual or direct or simple ones. This function is designed to be fast and, consequently, works only with the <code>contains</code> slot of the corresponding class definitions. |
| <code>sessionData</code>                      | Returns the index of the session data in the search list, attaching it if it is not attached.   |
| <code>setAs</code>                            | Manages the relations that allow coercing an object to a given class.   |
| <code>setClass</code>                         | Creates a class definition, specifying the representation (the slots) and/or the classes contained in this one (the superclasses), plus other optional details.   |
| <code>setClassUnion</code>                    | A class may be defined as the <i>union</i> of other classes, i.e., as a virtual class defined as a superclass of several other classes. This function creates class unions.   |
| <code>setDataPart</code>                      | Utility called to implement <code>object@.Data</code> . Calls to <code>setDataPart</code> are also used to merge the data part of a superclass prototype.   |
| <code>setGeneric</code>                       | Creates a new generic function of the given name, i.e., a function that dispatches methods according to the classes of the arguments, from among the formal methods defined for this function.  |
| <code>setGenericImplicit</code>               | Turns a generic implicit.   |
| <code>setGroupGeneric</code>                  | Creates a new generic function of the given name, i.e., a function that dispatches methods according to the classes of the arguments, from among the formal methods defined for this function.  |

| Function            | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| setIs               | Function to test inheritance relationships between an object and a class ( <code>is</code> ) or between two classes ( <code>extends</code> ) and to establish such relationships ( <code>setIs</code> , an explicit alternative to the <code>contains=</code> argument to <code>setClass</code> ).   |
| setMethod           | Creates and saves a formal method for a given function and list of classes.  |
| setOldClass         | Registers an old-style ("S3") class as a formally defined class. The <code>Classes</code> argument is the character vector used as the <code>class</code> attribute; in particular, if there is more than one string, then old-style class inheritance is mimicked. Registering via <code>setOldClass</code> allows S3 classes to appear in method signatures, as a slot in an S4 class or as a superclass of an S4 class.   |
| setPackageName      | Used to establish a package name in an environment that would otherwise not have one. This allows you to create classes and/or methods in an arbitrary environment, but it is usually preferable to create packages by the standard R programming tools ( <code>package.skeleton</code> , etc.).   |
| setPrimitiveMethods | Utility functions to support the definition and use of formal methods. Most of these functions will not normally be called directly by the user.   |
| setReplaceMethod    | Manages collections of methods associated with a generic function, as well as providing information about the generic functions themselves.  |
| setValidity         | Sets the <code>validity</code> method of a class (but more normally, this method will be supplied as the <code>validity</code> argument to <code>setClass</code> ).  |
| show                | Displays the object, by printing, plotting, or whatever suits its class. This function exists to be specialized by methods. The default method calls <code>showDefault</code> . Formal methods for <code>show</code> will usually be invoked for automatic printing (see the details).   |
| showClass           | Prints the information about a class definition.   |
| showDefault         | Utility used to enable <code>show</code> methods to be called by the automatic printing (via <code>print.default</code> ).   |
| showExtends         | Prints the elements of the list of extensions; for <code>printTo = FALSE</code> , returns a list with components <code>what</code> and <code>how</code> ; this is used, e.g., by <code>promptClass()</code> .  |
| showMethods         | Shows a summary of the methods for one or more generic functions, possibly restricted to those involving specified classes.  |
| sigToEnv            | Turns the signature (a named vector of classes) into an environment with the classes assigned to the names.  |
| signature           | Returns a named list of classes to be matched to arguments of a generic function.  |
| slot, slot<-        | Return or set information about the individual slots in an object.   |
| slotNames           | Returns or sets information about the individual slots in an object.   |
| slotsFromS3         | Old-style (S3) classes may be registered as S4 classes (by calling <code>setOldClass</code> ), and many have been. These classes can then be contained in (i.e., superclasses of) regular S4 classes, allowing formal methods and slots to be added to the S3 behavior. The function <code>S3Part</code> extracts or replaces the S3 part of such an object. <code>S3Class</code> extracts or replaces the S3-style class. <code>S3Class</code> also applies to objects from an S4 class with <code>S3methods=TRUE</code> in the call to <code>setClass</code> . |
| substituteDirect    | Substitutes for the variables named in the second argument the corresponding objects; substituting into <code>object</code> .  |

| Function               | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| standardGeneric        | Dispatches a method from the current function call for the generic function.  |
| substituteFunctionArgs | Utility function to support the definition and use of formal methods. Most of these functions will not normally be called directly by the user.   |
| superClassDepth        | superClassDepth, which is called from getAllSuperClasses, returns the same information, but as a list with components label and depth, the latter for the number of generations back each class is in the inheritance tree.   |
| testInheritedMethods   | A set of distinct inherited signatures is generated to test inheritance for all the methods of a specified generic function. If method selection is ambiguous for some of these, a summary of the ambiguities is attached to the returned object. This test should be performed by package authors <i>before</i> releasing a package. |
| testVirtual            | Tests for a virtual class.  |
| traceOff, traceOn      | The functions traceOn and traceOff have been replaced by extended versions of the functions trace and untrace and should not be used.   |
| tryNew, trySilent      | Tries to generate a new element from this class, but if the attempt fails (e.g., when the class is undefined or virtual) just returns NULL.   |
| unRematchDefinition    | Using knowledge of how rematchDefinition works, unRematchDefinition reverses the procedure; if given a function or method definition that does not correspond to this form, it just returns its argument.   |
| validObject            | The validity of an object related to its class definition is tested. If the object is valid, then TRUE is returned; otherwise, either a vector of strings describing the validity failures is returned or an error is generated (according to whether test is TRUE).  |
| validSlotNames         | Returns names unless one of the names is reserved, in which case there is an error. (As of this writing, "class" is the only reserved slot name.)   |

## mgcv

This package provides functions for generalized additive modeling and generalized additive mixed modeling. The term GAM is taken to include any GLM estimated by quadratically penalized (possibly quasi-) likelihood maximization. For more information on this package, see the help file.

## nlme

This package provides functions for linear and nonlinear mixed-effects models. See the help file for more information.

## nnet

This package provides functions for feed-forward neural networks and multinomial log-linear models.

## Functions

| Function     | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| class.ind    | Generates a class indicator function from a given factor.  |
| multinom     | Fits multinomial log-linear models via neural networks.  |
| nnet         | Fits single-hidden-layer neural network, possibly with skip-layer connections.   |
| nnetHess     | Evaluates the Hessian (matrix of second derivatives) of the specified neural network. Normally called via argument Hess=TRUE to nnet or via vcov.multinom. |
| which.is.max | Finds the maximum position in a vector, breaking ties at random.   |

## rpart

This package provides functions for recursive partitioning and regression trees.

## Functions

| Function      | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| meanvar       | Creates a plot on the current graphics device of the deviance of the node divided by the number of observations at the node. Also returns the node number.   |
| na.rpart      | Handles missing values in an rpart object.   |
| path.rpart    | Returns a names list, where each element contains the splits on the path from the root to the selected nodes.  |
| plotcp        | Gives a visual representation of the cross-validation results in an rpart object.  |
| post          | Generates a PostScript presentation plot of an rpart object.   |
| printcp       | Displays the cp table for a fitted rpart object.   |
| prune         | Determines a nested sequence of subtrees of the supplied rpart object by recursively snipping off the least important splits, based on the complexity parameter (cp).  |
| rpart         | Fits an rpart model.   |
| rpart.control | Various parameters that control aspects of the rpart fit.  |
| rpconvert     | rpart objects changed (slightly) in their internal format in order to accommodate the changes for user-written split functions. This routine updates an old object to the new format.  |
| rsq.rpart     | Produces two plots. The first plots the <i>r</i> -square (apparent and apparent – from cross-validation) versus the number of splits. The second plots the relative error (cross-validation) $+/- 1 - SE$ from cross-validation versus the number of splits.   |
| snip.rpart    | Creates a “snipped” rpart object, containing the nodes that remain after selected subtrees have been snipped off. The user can snip nodes using the toss argument or interactively by clicking the mouse button on specified nodes within the graphics window. |
| xpred.rpart   | Gives the predicted values for an rpart fit, under cross-validation, for a set of complexity parameter values.   |

## Data Sets

| Data Set       | Class      | Description   |
|----------------|------------|---|
| car.test.frame | data.frame | The <code>car.test.frame</code> data frame has 60 rows and 8 columns, giving data on makes of cars taken from the April 1990 issue of <i>Consumer Reports</i> . This is part of a larger data set, some columns of which are given in <code>cu.summary</code> . |
| cu.summary     | data.frame | The <code>cu.summary</code> data frame has 117 rows and 5 columns, giving data on makes of cars taken from the April 1990 issue of <i>Consumer Reports</i> .  |
| kyphosis       | data.frame | The <code>kyphosis</code> data frame has 81 rows and 4 columns, representing data on children who have had corrective spinal surgery.   |
| solder         | data.frame | The <code>solder</code> data frame has 720 rows and 6 columns, representing a balanced subset of a designed experiment varying 5 factors on the soldering of components on printed-circuit boards.  |

## spatial

This package provides functions for Kriging and point pattern analysis.

## Functions

| Function       | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Kaver          | Forms the average of a series of (usually simulated) K functions.   |
| Kenvl          | Computes envelope (upper and lower limits) and average of simulations of K functions.   |
| Kfn            | Actually computes $L = \sqrt{K/\pi}$ .  |
| Psim           | Simulates binomial spatial point process.   |
| SSI            | Simulates SSI (sequential spatial inhibition) point process.  |
| Strauss        | Simulates Strauss spatial point process.  |
| anova.trls     | Computes analysis of variance tables for one or more fitted trend surface model objects; where <code>anova.trls</code> is called with multiple objects, it passes on the arguments to <code>anovalist.trls</code> . |
| anovalist.trls | Computes analysis of variance tables for one or more fitted trend surface model objects; where <code>anova.trls</code> is called with multiple objects, it passes on the arguments to <code>anovalist.trls</code> . |
| correlogram    | Computes spatial correlograms of spatial data or residuals.   |
| expcov         | Spatial covariance function for use with <code>surf.gls</code> .  |
| gaucov         | Spatial covariance function for use with <code>surf.gls</code> .  |
| plot.trls      | Provides the basic quantities used in forming a variety of diagnostics for checking the quality of regression fits for trend surfaces calculated by <code>surf.ls</code> .  |
| ppgetregion    | Retrieves the rectangular domain ( $x_1, x_u$ ) x ( $y_1, y_u$ ) from the underlying C code.  |
| ppinit         | Reads a file in standard format and creates a point process object.   |

| Function       | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| pplik          | Pseudolikelihood estimation of a Strauss spatial point process.  |
| ppregion       | Sets the rectangular domain ( $x_1$ , $x_u$ ) x ( $y_1$ , $y_u$ ).   |
| predict.trls   | Predicted values based on trend surface model object.  |
| prmat          | Evaluates Kriging surface over a grid.   |
| semat          | Evaluates Kriging standard error of prediction over a grid.  |
| sphercov       | Spatial covariance function for use with <code>surf.gls</code> .   |
| surf.gls       | Fits a trend surface by generalized least squares.   |
| surf.ls        | Fits a trend surface by least squares.   |
| trls.influence | Provides the basic quantities used in forming a variety of diagnostics for checking the quality of regression fits for trend surfaces calculated by <code>surf.ls</code> . |
| trmat          | Evaluates trend surface over a grid.   |
| variogram      | Computes spatial (semi-)variogram of spatial data or residuals.  |

## splines

This package provides functions for working with regression splines using the B-spline basis, `bs`, and the natural cubic spline basis, `ns`.

## Functions

| Function                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <code>as.polySpline</code>  | Creates the piecewise polynomial representation of a spline object.  |
| <code>asVector</code>       | This is a generic function. Methods for this function coerce objects of given classes to vectors.  |
| <code>backSpline</code>     | Creates a monotone inverse of a monotone natural spline.   |
| <code>bs</code>             | Generates the B-spline basis matrix for a polynomial spline.   |
| <code>interpSpline</code>   | Creates an interpolation spline, either from <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> vectors or from a formula/data.frame combination.         |
| <code>ns</code>             | Generates the B-spline basis matrix for a natural cubic spline.  |
| <code>periodicSpline</code> | Creates a periodic interpolation spline, either from <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> vectors or from a formula/data.frame combination. |
| <code>polySpline</code>     | Creates the piecewise polynomial representation of a spline object.  |
| <code>spline.des</code>     | Evaluates the design matrix for the B-splines defined by <code>knots</code> at the values in <code>x</code> .                            |
| <code>splineDesign</code>   | Evaluates the design matrix for the B-splines defined by <code>knots</code> at the values in <code>x</code> .                            |
| <code>splineKnots</code>    | Returns the knot vector corresponding to a spline object.  |
| <code>splineOrder</code>    | Returns the order of a spline object.  |
| <code>xyVector</code>       | Creates an object to represent a set of <code>x-y</code> pairs.  |

# stats

This package contains functions to perform a wide variety of statistical analyses.

## Functions

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| AIC   | Generic function for calculating the Akaike information criterion for one or several fitted model objects for which a log-likelihood value can be obtained, according to the formula $-2 * \log\text{-likelihood} + k * n_{\text{par}}$ , where $n_{\text{par}}$ represents the number of parameters in the fitted model, and $k = 2$ for the usual AIC, or $k = \log(n)$ ( $n$ is the number of observations) for the so-called Bayesian information criterion (BIC) or Schwarz's Bayesian criterion (SBC). |
| ARMAacf   | Computes the theoretical autocorrelation function or partial autocorrelation function for an autoregressive moving average (ARMA) process.   |
| ARMAtoMA  | Converts an ARMA process to an infinite moving average (MA) process.   |
| Box.test  | Computes the Box-Pierce or Ljung-Box test statistic for examining the null hypothesis of independence in a given time series. These are sometimes known as "portmanteau" tests.  |
| C   | Sets the "contrasts" attribute for the factor.   |
| D   | Computes derivatives of simple expressions, symbolically.  |
| Gamma   | Family object for Gamma distributions (used by functions such as <code>glm</code> ).   |
| HoltWinters   | Computes Holt-Winters filtering of a given time series. Unknown parameters are determined by minimizing the squared prediction error.  |
| IQR   | Computes the interquartile range of the x values.  |
| KalmanForecast, KalmanLike, KalmanRun, KalmanSmooth | Use Kalman filtering to find the (Gaussian) log-likelihood, or for forecasting or smoothing.   |
| NLSstAsymptotic                                     | Fits the asymptotic regression model, in the form $b0 + b1 * (1 - \exp(-\exp(lrc) * x))$ , to the xy data. This can be used as a building block in determining starting estimates for more complicated models.   |
| NLSstClosestX                                       | Uses inverse linear interpolation to approximate the x value at which the function represented by xy is equal to yval.   |
| NLSstLfAsymptote                                    | Provides an initial guess at the horizontal asymptote on the left side (i.e., small values of x) of the graph of y versus x from the xy object. Primarily used within <code>initial</code> functions for self-starting nonlinear regression models.  |
| NLSstRtAsymptote                                    | Provides an initial guess at the horizontal asymptote on the right side (i.e., large values of x) of the graph of y versus x from the xy object. Primarily used within <code>initial</code> functions for self-starting nonlinear regression models.   |
| PP.test   | Computes the Phillips-Perron test for the null hypothesis that x has a unit root against a stationary alternative.   |
| SSD   | Function to compute the matrix of residual sums of squares and products, or the estimated variance matrix for multivariate linear models.  |

| Function     | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| SSasymp      | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the asymptotic regression function and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Asym, RO, and lrc for a given set of data.   |
| SSasympOff   | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates an alternative parametrization of the asymptotic regression function and the gradient with respect to those parameters. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters Asym, lrc, and co.  |
| SSasympOrig  | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the asymptotic regression function through the origin and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Asym and lrc for a given set of data.   |
| SSbiexp      | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the biexponential model function and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters A1, lrc1, A2, and lrc2.  |
| SSfol        | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the first-order compartment function and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters lKe, lKa, and lCl.   |
| SSfpl        | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the four-parameter logistic function and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters A, B, xmid, and scal for a given set of data.  |
| SSgompertz   | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the Gompertz growth model and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters Asym, b2, and b3.   |
| SSlogis      | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the logistic function and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that creates initial estimates of the parameters Asym, xmid, and scal.   |
| SSmicmen     | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the Michaelis-Menten model and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Vm and K.  |
| SSweibull    | This <code>selfStart</code> model evaluates the Weibull model for growth curve data and its gradient. It has an <code>initial</code> attribute that will evaluate initial estimates of the parameters Asym, Drop, lrc, and pwr for a given set of data.   |
| StructTS     | Fits a structural model for a time series by maximum likelihood.  |
| TukeyHSD     | Creates a set of confidence intervals on the differences between the means of the levels of a factor with the specified family-wise probability of coverage. The intervals are based on the Studentized range statistic, Tukey's honest significant difference method. There is a <code>plot</code> method.             |
| TukeyHSD.aov | Creates a set of confidence intervals on the differences between the means of the levels of a factor with the specified family-wise probability of coverage. The intervals are based on the Studentized range statistic, Tukey's honest significant difference method. There is a <code>plot</code> method.             |
| acf          | The function <code>acf</code> computes (and by default plots) estimates of the autocovariance or autocorrelation function. The function <code>pacf</code> is the function used for partial autocorrelations. The function <code>ccf</code> computes the cross-correlation or cross-covariance of two univariate series. |
| acf2AR       | Computes an AR process exactly fitting an autocorrelation function.   |

| Function      | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| add.scope     | add.scope and drop.scope compute those terms that can be individually added to or dropped from a model while respecting the hierarchy of terms.  |
| add1          | Computes all the single terms in the scope argument that can be added to or dropped from the model, fits those models, and computes a table of the changes in fit.   |
| addmargins    | For a given table, one can specify which of the classifying factors to expand by one or more levels to hold margins to be calculated. One may, for example, form sums and means over the first dimension and medians over the second. The resulting table will then have two extra levels for the first dimension and one extra level for the second. The default is to sum over all margins in the table. Other possibilities may give results that depend on the order in which the margins are computed. This is flagged in the printed output from the function. |
| aggregate     | Splits the data into subsets, computes summary statistics for each, and returns the result in a convenient form.   |
| alias         | Finds aliases (linearly dependent terms) in a linear model specified by a formula.   |
| anova         | Computes analysis of variance (or deviance) tables for one or more fitted model objects.   |
| anova.lmlist  | Computes an analysis of variance table for one or more linear model fits.  |
| ansari.test   | Performs the Ansari-Bradley two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters.  |
| aov           | Fits an analysis of variance model by a call to lm for each stratum.   |
| approx        | Returns a list of points that linearly interpolate given data points, or a function performing the linear (or constant) interpolation.   |
| approxfun     | Returns a list of points that linearly interpolate given data points, or a function performing the linear (or constant) interpolation.   |
| ar            | Fits an autoregressive time series model to the data, by default selecting the complexity by AIC.  |
| arima         | Fits an ARIMA model to a univariate time series.   |
| arima.sim     | Simulates from an ARIMA model.   |
| arima0        | Fits an ARIMA model to a univariate time series and forecasts from the fitted model.   |
| as.dendrogram | Coerces an object to class "dendrogram" (which provides general functions for handling treelike structures).   |
| as.dist       | Coerces to a dist object (a matrix returned by the dist function).   |
| as.formula    | The generic function formula and its specific methods provide a way of extracting formulas that have been included in other objects. as.formula is almost identical, additionally preserving attributes when object already inherits from "formula".   |
| as.hclust     | Converts objects from other hierarchical clustering functions to class "hclust".   |
| as.stepfun    | Given the vectors (x[1],...,x[n]) and (y[0],y[1],...,y[n]) (one value more!), step fun(x, y,...) returns an interpolating "step" function, say fn. That is, fn(t) = c_{i-1}(t) (constant) for t in (x[i], x[i+1]) and at the abscissa values, if (by default) right = FALSE, fn(x_i) = y_{i-1}(fn(x[i])) = y[i] and for right = TRUE, fn(x[i]) = y[i-1], for i=1,...,n.  |
| as.ts         | Coerces an object to a ts object.  |

| Function   | Description   |
|--|---|
| asOneSidedFormula  | Names, expressions, numeric values, and character strings are converted to one-sided formulas. If <code>object</code> is a formula, it must be one sided, in which case it is returned unaltered.   |
| ave  | Subsets of <code>x[ ]</code> are averaged, where each subset consists of those observations with the same factor levels.  |
| bandwidth.kernel   | Returns the equivalent bandwidth for a <code>tskernel</code> object.  |
| bartlett.test  | Performs Bartlett's test of the null that the variances in each of the groups (samples) are the same.   |
| binom.test   | Performs an exact test of a simple null hypothesis about the probability of success in a Bernoulli experiment.  |
| binomial   | Family function for binomial distributions (used by functions such as <code>glm</code> ).   |
| biplot   | Plots a biplot on the current graphics device.  |
| <code>bw.SJ</code> , <code>bw.bcv</code> , <code>bw.nrd</code> , <code>bw.nrd0</code> ,<br><code>bw.ucv</code> | Bandwidth selectors for Gaussian kernels in <code>density</code> .  |
| cancor   | Computes the canonical correlations between two data matrices.  |
| case.names   | Simple utility returning (nonmissing) case names and (noneliminated) variable names.  |
| ccf  | The function <code>acf</code> computes (and by default plots) estimates of the autocovariance or autocorrelation function. The function <code>pacf</code> is the function used for partial autocorrelations. The function <code>ccf</code> computes the cross-correlation or cross-covariance of two univariate series. |
| chisq.test   | Performs chi-squared contingency table tests and goodness-of-fit tests.   |
| clearNames   | Sets the <code>names</code> attribute of <code>object</code> to <code>NULL</code> and returns the <code>object</code> .   |
| cmdscale   | Classical multidimensional scaling of a data matrix. Also known as <i>principal coordinates analysis</i> .  |
| coef, coefficients   | <code>coef</code> is a generic function that extracts model coefficients from objects returned by modeling functions. <code>coefficients</code> is an alias for it.   |
| complete.cases   | Returns a logical vector indicating which cases are complete, i.e., have no missing values.   |
| confint  | Computes confidence intervals for one or more parameters in a fitted model.   |
| constrOptim  | Minimizes a function subject to linear inequality constraints using an adaptive barrier algorithm.  |
| contr.SAS, contr.helmer,<br>contr.poly, contr.sum, contr.treat-<br>ment  | Return a matrix of contrasts.   |
| contrasts, contrasts<-   | Set and view the contrasts associated with a factor.  |
| convolve   | Uses the fast Fourier transform to compute the several kinds of convolutions of two sequences.  |
| cooks.distance   | Computes "Cook's distance" on a model object.   |
| cophenetic   | Computes the cophenetic distances for a hierarchical clustering.  |

| Function        | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| cor             | Computes the correlation of two vectors, or the columns of two matrices.  |
| cor.test        | Tests for association between paired samples, using one of Pearson's product-moment correlation coefficient, Kendall's tau, or Spearman's rho.  |
| cov             | Computes the covariance of two vectors, or the columns of two matrices.   |
| cov.wt          | Returns a list containing estimates of the weighted covariance matrix and the mean of the data and optionally of the (weighted) correlation matrix.   |
| cov2cor         | <code>var</code> , <code>cov</code> , and <code>cor</code> compute the variance of <code>x</code> and the covariance or correlation of <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> if these are vectors. If <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> are matrices, then the covariances (or correlations) between the columns of <code>x</code> and the columns of <code>y</code> are computed. <code>cov2cor</code> scales a covariance matrix into the corresponding correlation matrix <i>efficiently</i> . |
| covratio        | Returns the covariance ratio (for regression diagnostics) on a model object.  |
| cpgram          | Plots a cumulative periodogram.   |
| cutree          | Cuts a tree, e.g., resulting from <code>hclust</code> , into several groups by specifying either the desired number(s) of groups or the cut height(s).  |
| cycle           | <code>time</code> creates the vector of times at which a time series was sampled. <code>cycle</code> gives the positions in the cycle of each observation. <code>frequency</code> returns the number of samples per unit time, and <code>deltat</code> gives the time interval between observations (see <code>ts</code> ).   |
| dbeta           | Density function for the beta distribution.   |
| dbinom          | Density function for the binomial distribution.   |
| dcauchy         | Density function for the Cauchy distribution.   |
| dchisq          | Density function for the chi-squared distribution.  |
| decompose       | Decomposes a time series into seasonal, trend, and irregular components using moving averages. Deals with additive or multiplicative seasonal components.   |
| delete.response | Returns a <code>terms</code> object for the same model but with no response variable.   |
| deltat          | <code>time</code> creates the vector of times at which a time series was sampled. <code>cycle</code> gives the positions in the cycle of each observation. <code>frequency</code> returns the number of samples per unit time, and <code>deltat</code> gives the time interval between observations (see <code>ts</code> ).   |
| dendrapply      | Applies function <code>FUN</code> to each node of a <code>dendrogram</code> recursively. When <code>y &lt;- dendrapply(x, fn)</code> , then <code>y</code> is a dendrogram of the same graph structure as <code>x</code> and for each node, <code>y.node[j] &lt;- FUN(x.node[j], ...)</code> (where <code>y.node[j]</code> is an (invalid!) notation for the <code>j</code> th node of <code>y</code> ).  |
| density         | The (S3) generic function <code>density</code> computes kernel density estimates. Its default method does so with the given kernel and bandwidth for univariate observations.   |
| density.default | The (S3) generic function <code>density</code> computes kernel density estimates. Its default method does so with the given kernel and bandwidth for univariate observations.   |
| deriv, deriv3   | Compute derivatives of simple expressions, symbolically.  |
| deviance        | Returns the deviance of a fitted model object.  |
| dexp            | Density function for the exponential distribution.  |

| Function    | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| df          | Density, distribution function, quantile function, and random generation for the <i>F</i> -distribution with <i>df1</i> and <i>df2</i> degrees of freedom (and optional noncentrality parameter <i>ncp</i> ).   |
| df.kernel   | The "tskernel" class is designed to represent discrete symmetric normalized smoothing kernels. These kernels can be used to smooth vectors, matrices, or time series objects. There are <i>print</i> , <i>plot</i> , and [ <i> methods for these kernel objects.</i>  |
| df.residual | Returns the residual degrees of freedom extracted from a fitted model object.   |
| dfbeta      | Returns dfbeta for a model object (for regression diagnostics).   |
| dfbetas     | Returns dfbetas for a model object (for regression diagnostics).  |
| dffits      | Returns dffits for a model object (for regression diagnostics).   |
| dgamma      | Density function for the gamma distribution.  |
| dgeom       | Density, distribution function, quantile function, and random generation for the geometric distribution with parameter <i>prob</i> .  |
| dhyper      | Density function for the hypergeometric distribution.   |
| diff.ts     | Methods for objects of class "ts", typically the result of <i>ts</i> .  |
| diffinv     | Computes the inverse function of the lagged differences function <i>diff</i> .  |
| dist        | Computes and returns the distance matrix computed by using the specified distance measure to compute the distances between the rows of a data matrix.   |
| dlnorm      | Density function for the log-normal distribution.   |
| dlogis      | Density function for the logistic distribution.   |
| dmultinom   | Generates multinomially distributed random number vectors and computes multinomial probabilities.   |
| dnbino      | Density function for the negative binomial distribution.  |
| dnorm       | Density function for the normal distribution.   |
| dpois       | Density function for the Poisson distribution.  |
| drop.scope  | <i>add.scope</i> and <i>drop.scope</i> compute those terms that can be individually added to or dropped from a model while respecting the hierarchy of terms.   |
| drop.terms  | <i>delete.response</i> returns a <i>terms</i> object for the same model, but with no response variable. <i>drop.terms</i> removes variables from the right-hand side of the model. There is also a "[.terms" method to perform the same function (with <i>keep.response=TRUE</i> ). <i>reformulate</i> creates a formula from a character vector. |
| drop1       | Computes all the single terms in the <i>scope</i> argument that can be added to or dropped from the model, fits those models, and computes a table of the changes in fit.   |
| dsignrank   | Density, distribution function, quantile function, and random generation for the distribution of the Wilcoxon signed rank statistic obtained from a sample with size <i>n</i> .   |
| dt          | Density, distribution function, quantile function, and random generation for the <i>t</i> -distribution with <i>df</i> degrees of freedom (and optional noncentrality parameter <i>ncp</i> ).   |

| Function              | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| dummy.coef            | Extracts coefficients in terms of the original levels of the coefficients rather than the coded variables.   |
| dunif                 | Density function for the uniform distribution.   |
| dweibull              | Density function for the Weibull distribution.   |
| dwilcox               | Density function for the distribution of the Wilcoxon rank-sum statistic.  |
| ecdf                  | Computes or plots an empirical cumulative distribution function.   |
| eff.aovlist           | Computes the efficiencies of fixed-effects terms in an analysis of variance model with multiple strata.  |
| effects               | Returns (orthogonal) effects from a fitted model, usually a linear model. This is a generic function, but currently has a method only for objects inheriting from classes "lm" and "glm".  |
| embed                 | Embeds the time series $x$ into a low-dimensional Euclidean space.   |
| end                   | Extracts and encodes the times the first and last observations were taken. Provided only for compatibility with S version 2.   |
| estVar                | Function to compute matrix of residual sums of squares and products, or the estimated variance matrix for multivariate linear models.  |
| expand.model.frame    | Evaluates new variables as if they had been part of the formula of the specified model. This ensures that the same <code>na.action</code> and <code>subset</code> arguments are applied and allows, for example, $x$ to be recovered for a model using <code>sin(x)</code> as a predictor. |
| extractAIC            | Computes the (generalized) Akaike information criterion for a fitted parametric model.   |
| factanal              | Performs maximum likelihood factor analysis on a covariance matrix or data matrix.   |
| family                | <code>family</code> objects provide a convenient way to specify the details of the models used by functions such as <code>glm</code> . See the documentation for <code>glm</code> for the details on how such model fitting takes place.   |
| fft                   | Performs the fast Fourier transform of an array.   |
| filter                | Applies linear filtering to a univariate time series or to each series separately of a multivariate time series.   |
| fisher.test           | Performs Fisher's exact test for testing the null of independence of rows and columns in a contingency table with fixed marginals.   |
| fitted, fitted.values | <code>fitted</code> is a generic function that extracts fitted values from objects returned by modeling functions. <code>fitted.values</code> is an alias for it.  |
| fivenum               | Returns Tukey's five-number summary (minimum, lower-hinge, median, upper-hinge, maximum) for the input data.   |
| fligner.test          | Performs a Fligner-Killeen (median) test of the null that the variances in each of the groups (samples) are the same.  |
| formula               | The generic function <code>formula</code> and its specific methods provide a way of extracting formulas that have been included in other objects.  |
| frequency             | Returns the number of samples per unit time from a <code>ts</code> object.   |
| friedman.test         | Performs a Friedman rank-sum test with unreplicated blocked data.  |
| ftable                | Creates "flat" contingency tables.   |

| Function                     | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| gaussian                     | Family object for Gaussian functions (used by functions such as <code>glm</code> ).   |
| getInitial                   | Evaluates initial parameter estimates for a nonlinear regression model.   |
| get_all_vars                 | Returns a <code>data.frame</code> containing the variables used in <code>formula</code> plus those specified. Unlike <code>model.frame.default</code> , it returns the input variables and not those resulting from function calls in <code>formula</code> .  |
| glm                          | Used to fit generalized linear models, specified by giving a symbolic description of the linear predictor and a description of the error distribution.  |
| glm.control                  | Auxiliary function as user interface for <code>glm</code> fitting. Typically used only when calling <code>glm</code> or <code>glm.fit</code> .  |
| glm.fit                      | <code>glm</code> is used to fit generalized linear models, specified by giving a symbolic description of the linear predictor and a description of the error distribution.  |
| hasTsp                       | <code>tsp</code> returns the <code>tsp</code> attribute (or <code>NULL</code> ). It is included for compatibility with S version 2. <code>tsp&lt;-</code> sets the <code>tsp</code> attribute. <code>hasTsp</code> ensures <code>x</code> has a <code>tsp</code> attribute, by adding one if needed.  |
| hat, hatvalues, hatvalues.lm | Return the <code>hat</code> matrix for a model object (for regression diagnostics).   |
| hclust                       | Hierarchical cluster analysis on a set of dissimilarities and methods for analyzing it.   |
| heatmap                      | Plots a heat map object (an image with an accompanying dendrogram).   |
| influence                    | Provides the basic quantities that are used in forming a wide variety of diagnostics for checking the quality of regression fits.   |
| influence.measures           | Produces a class "infl" object tabular display showing the DFBETAS for each model variable, DFFITS, covariance ratios, Cook's distances, and the diagonal elements of the <code>hat</code> matrix.  |
| integrate                    | Adaptive quadrature of functions of one variable over a finite or infinite interval.  |
| interaction.plot             | Plots the mean (or other summary) of the response for two-way combinations of factors, thereby illustrating possible interactions.  |
| inverse.gaussian             | Family object for inverse Gaussian distributions (used by functions such as <code>glm</code> ).   |
| is.empty.model               | R model notation allows models with no intercept and no predictors. These require special handling internally. <code>is.empty.model()</code> checks whether an object describes an empty model.   |
| is.leaf                      | Class "dendrogram" provides general functions for handling treelike structures. It is intended as a replacement for similar functions in hierarchical clustering and classification/regression trees, such that all of these can use the same engine for plotting or cutting trees. The code is still in the testing stage, and the API may change in the future. |
| is.mts                       | Tells whether an object is of class <code>mts</code> .  |
| is.stepfun                   | Tells whether an object is a function of class <code>stepfun</code> .   |
| is.ts                        | Tells whether an object is of class <code>ts</code> .   |
| is.tskernel                  | Tells whether an object is of class <code>tskernel</code> .   |
| isoreg                       | Computes the isotonic (monotonically increasing nonparametric) least squares regression that is piecewise constant.   |
| kernapply                    | Computes the convolution between an input sequence and a specific kernel.   |
| kernel                       | Constructs a general kernel or named specific kernels (returns a "tskernel" object).  |

| Function      | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| kmeans        | Performs $k$ -means clustering on a data matrix.   |
| knots         | Extracts the knots from a step function (returned by <code>stepfun</code> ).   |
| kruskal.test  | Performs a Kruskal-Wallis rank-sum test.   |
| ks.test       | Performs one- or two-sample Kolmogorov-Smirnov tests.  |
| ksmooth       | The Nadaraya-Watson kernel regression estimate.  |
| lag           | Computes a lagged version of a time series, shifting the time base back by a given number of observations.   |
| lag.plot      | Plots time series against lagged versions of themselves. Helps visualizing "autodependence" even when autocorrelations vanish.   |
| line          | Fits a line robustly.  |
| lines.ts      | Plotting method for objects inheriting from class "ts".  |
| lm            | <code>lm</code> is used to fit linear models. It can be used to carry out regression, single-stratum analysis of variance, and analysis of covariance (although <code>aov</code> may provide a more convenient interface for these). |
| lm.fit        | Basic computing engines called by <code>lm</code> and used to fit linear models. These should usually <i>not</i> be used directly unless by experienced users.   |
| lm.influence  | Provides the basic quantities that are used in forming a wide variety of diagnostics for checking the quality of regression fits.  |
| lm.wfit       | Basic computing engines called by <code>lm</code> and used to fit linear models. These should usually <i>not</i> be used directly unless by experienced users.   |
| loadings      | Extracts or prints loadings in factor analysis (or principal components analysis).   |
| loess         | Fits a polynomial surface determined by one or more numerical predictors, using local fitting.   |
| loess.control | Sets control parameters for <code>loess</code> fits.   |
| loess.smooth  | Plots and adds a smooth curve computed by <code>loess</code> to a scatter plot.  |
| logLik        | Extracts the log-likelihood value from an object (usually a model).  |
| loglin        | Used to fit log-linear models to multidimensional contingency tables by iterative proportional fitting.  |
| lowess        | Performs the computations for locally weighted scatter plot smoothing (LOWESS), smoother which uses locally weighted polynomial regression.  |
| ls.diag       | Computes basic statistics, including standard errors, $t$ -, and $p$ -values, for the regression coefficients.   |
| ls.print      | Computes basic statistics, including standard errors, $t$ -, and $p$ -values, for the regression coefficients and prints them if <code>print.it</code> is TRUE.  |
| lsfit         | Finds the least squares estimate of $\beta$ in the model $Y = X\beta + \varepsilon$ .  |
| mad           | Computes the median absolute deviation, i.e., the (lo-/hi-) median of the absolute deviations from the median and (by default) adjusts by a factor for asymptotically normal consistency.  |
| mahalanobis   | Returns the squared Mahalanobis distance of all rows in $x$ and the vector $\mu = \text{center}$ with respect to $\Sigma = \text{cov}$ . This is (for vector $x$ ) defined as $D^2 = (x - \mu)' \Sigma^{-1} (x - \mu)$ .             |

| Function        | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| make.link       | This function is used with the <code>family</code> functions in <code>glm()</code> . Given the name of a link, it returns a link function, an inverse link function, the derivative $d\mu/d\eta$ and a function for domain checking. |
| makeARIMA       | Uses Kalman filtering to find the (Gaussian) log-likelihood, or for forecasting or smoothing.  |
| makepredictcall | Utility to help <code>model.frame.default</code> create the right matrices when predicting from models with terms like <code>poly</code> or <code>ns</code> .  |
| manova          | A class for the multivariate analysis of variance.   |
| mantelhaen.test | Performs a Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel chi-squared test of the null that two nominal variables are conditionally independent in each stratum, assuming that there is no three-way interaction.   |
| mauchly.test    | Tests whether a Wishart-distributed covariance matrix (or transformation thereof) is proportional to a given matrix.   |
| mcnemar.test    | Performs McNemar's chi-squared test for symmetry of rows and columns in a two-dimensional contingency table.   |
| median          | Computes the sample median.  |
| median.default  | Computes the sample median.  |
| medpolish       | Fits an additive model using Tukey's median polish procedure.  |
| model.extract   | Returns the response, offset, subset, weights, or other special components of a model frame passed as optional arguments to <code>model.frame</code> .   |
| model.frame     | <code>model.frame</code> (a generic function) and its methods return a <code>data.frame</code> with the variables needed to use <code>formula</code> and <code>any...</code> arguments.  |
| model.matrix    | Creates a design matrix.   |
| model.offset    | Returns the offset of a model frame.   |
| model.response  | Returns the response of a model frame.   |
| model.tables    | Computes summary tables for model fits, especially complex <code>aov</code> fits.  |
| model.weights   | Returns the weights of a model frame.  |
| monthplot       | Plots seasonal (or other) subseries from a time series.  |
| mood.test       | Performs Mood's two-sample test for a difference in scale parameters.  |
| mvfft           | Performs the fast Fourier transform of an array.   |
| na.action       | Extracts information on the NA action used to create an object.  |
| na.contiguous   | Finds the longest consecutive stretch of nonmissing values in a time series object. (In the event of a tie, the first such stretch.)   |
| na.exclude      | <code>na.exclude</code> returns the object with incomplete cases removed and with the <code>na.action</code> attribute set to "exclude". (Usually used as an <code>na.action</code> argument for a modeling function.)               |
| na.fail         | Returns the object if it does not contain any missing values and signals an error otherwise. (Usually used as an <code>na.action</code> argument for a modeling function.)   |
| na.omit         | Returns the object with incomplete cases removed. (Usually used as an <code>na.action</code> argument for a modeling function.)  |

| Function             | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| na.pass              | Returns an object unchanged. (Usually used as an <code>na.action</code> argument for a modeling function.)   |
| napredict            | Uses missing value information to adjust residuals and predictions.  |
| naprint              | Uses missing value information to report the effects of an <code>na.action</code> .  |
| naresid              | Uses missing value information to adjust residuals and predictions.  |
| nextn                | Returns the smallest integer, greater than or equal to <code>n</code> , that can be obtained as a product of powers of the values contained in <code>factors</code> .  |
| nlm                  | Carries out a minimization of the function <code>f</code> using a Newton-type algorithm.   |
| nlmnb                | Unconstrained and constrained optimization using PORT routines.  |
| nls                  | Determines the nonlinear (weighted) least squares estimates of the parameters of a nonlinear model.  |
| nls.control          | Allows the user to set some characteristics of the nonlinear least squares algorithm.  |
| numericDeriv         | Numerically evaluates the gradient of an expression.   |
| offset               | An offset is a term to be added to a linear predictor, such as in a generalized linear model, with known coefficient 1 rather than an estimated coefficient.   |
| oneway.test          | Tests whether two or more samples from normal distributions have the same means. The variances are not necessarily assumed to be equal.  |
| optim                | General-purpose optimization based on Nelder-Mead, quasi-Newton, and conjugate-gradient algorithms. It includes an option for box-constrained optimization and simulated annealing.  |
| optimise, optimize   | The function <code>optimise</code> searches the interval from <code>lower</code> to <code>upper</code> for a minimum or maximum of the function <code>f</code> with respect to its first argument. <code>optimise</code> is an alias for <code>optimize</code> . |
| order.dendrogram     | Returns the order (index) or the "label" attribute for the leaves in a dendrogram. These indices can then be used to access the appropriate components of any additional data.   |
| p.adjust             | Given a set of <i>p</i> -values, returns <i>p</i> -values adjusted using one of several methods.   |
| pacf                 | Computes partial autocorrelations.   |
| pairwise.prop.test   | Calculates pairwise comparisons between pairs of proportions with correction for multiple testing.   |
| pairwise.t.test      | Calculates pairwise comparisons between group levels with corrections for multiple testing.  |
| pairwise.table       | Creates a table of <i>p</i> -values for pairwise comparisons with corrections for multiple testing.  |
| pairwise.wilcox.test | Calculates pairwise comparisons between group levels with corrections for multiple testing.  |
| pbeta                | Distribution function for the beta distribution.   |
| pbinom               | Distribution function for the binomial distribution.   |
| pbirthday            | Computes the probability of a coincidence for a generalized birthday paradox problem.  |
| pcauchy              | Distribution function for the Cauchy distribution.   |

| Function   | Description   |
|--|---|
| pchisq   | Distribution function for the chi-squared distribution.   |
| pexp   | Distribution function for the exponential distribution.   |
| pf   | Distribution function for the <i>F</i> -distribution.   |
| pgamma   | Distribution function for the gamma distribution.   |
| pgeom  | Distribution function for the geometric distribution.   |
| phyper   | Distribution function for the hypergeometric distribution.  |
| plclust  | Hierarchical cluster analysis on a set of dissimilarities and methods for analyzing it.   |
| plnorm   | Distribution function for the log-normal distribution.  |
| plogis   | Distribution function for the logistic distribution.  |
| plot.TukeyHSD                                      | Creates a set of confidence intervals on the differences between the means of the levels of a factor with the specified family-wise probability of coverage. The intervals are based on the Studentized range statistic, Tukey's honest significant difference method. There is a <code>plot</code> method. |
| plot.density                                       | The <code>plot</code> method for density objects.   |
| plot.ecdf  | Computes or plots an empirical cumulative distribution function.  |
| plot.lm  | Plots diagnostics for an <code>lm</code> object.  |
| plot.mlm   | Plots diagnostics for an <code>mlm</code> object.   |
| plot.spec, plot.spec.coherency,<br>plot.spec.phase | Plotting methods for objects of class "spec". For multivariate time series, they plot the marginal spectra of the series or pairs plots of the coherency and phase of the cross-spectra.  |
| plot.stepfun                                       | Method of the generic <code>plot</code> for <code>stepfun</code> objects and utility for plotting piecewise-constant functions.   |
| plot.ts  | Plotting method for objects inheriting from class "ts".   |
| pnbinom  | Distribution function for the negative binomial distribution.   |
| pnorm  | Distribution function for the normal distribution.  |
| poisson  | Family objects for Poisson distributions (used by functions such as <code>glm</code> ).   |
| poisson.test                                       | Performs an exact test of a simple null hypothesis about the rate parameter in a Poisson distribution or for the ratio between two rate parameters.   |
| poly, polym  | Return or evaluate orthogonal polynomials of degree 1 to degree over the specified set of points <code>x</code> . These are all orthogonal to the constant polynomial of degree 0. Alternatively, evaluate raw polynomials.   |
| power  | Creates a link object based on the link function $\eta = \mu^{\lambda}$ .   |
| power.anova.test                                   | Computes power of test or determines parameters to obtain target power.   |
| power.prop.test                                    | Computes power of test or determines parameters to obtain target power.   |
| power.t.test                                       | Computes power of test or determines parameters to obtain target power.   |
| ppoints  | Generates the sequence of probability points $(1:m - a)/(m + (1-a)-a)$ , where <code>m</code> is either <code>n</code> , if <code>length(n)==1</code> , or <code>length(n)</code> .   |
| ppois  | Distribution function for the Poisson distribution.   |
| ppr  | Fits a projection pursuit regression model.   |

| Function        | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| prcomp          | Performs a principal components analysis on the given data matrix and returns the results as an object of class <code>prcomp</code> .  |
| predict         | Generic function for predictions from the results of various model-fitting functions.  |
| preplot         | Computes an object to be used for plots relating to the given model object.  |
| princomp        | Performs a principal components analysis on the given numeric data matrix and returns the results as an object of class <code>princomp</code> .  |
| printCoefmat    | Utility function to be used in higher-level <code>print</code> methods, such as <code>print.summary.lm</code> , <code>print.summary.glm</code> , and <code>print.anova</code> . The goal is to provide a flexible interface with smart defaults such that often only <code>x</code> needs to be specified.                 |
| profile         | Investigates the behavior of an objective function near the solution.  |
| proj            | Returns a matrix or list of matrices giving the projections of the data onto the terms of a linear model. It is most frequently used for <code>aov</code> models.  |
| promax          | These functions “rotate” loading matrices in factor analysis.  |
| prop.test       | Used for testing the null that the proportions (probabilities of success) in several groups are the same or that they equal certain given values.  |
| prop.trend.test | Performs a chi-squared test for trend in proportions, i.e., a test asymptotically optimal for local alternatives where the log odds vary in proportion with <code>score</code> . By default, <code>score</code> is chosen as the group numbers.  |
| psignrank       | Distribution function for the distribution of the Wilcoxon signed rank statistic.  |
| pt              | Distribution function for the <i>t</i> -distribution.  |
| ptukey          | Distribution function for the Studentized range.   |
| punif           | These functions provide information about the uniform distribution on the interval from <code>min</code> to <code>max</code> . <code>dunif</code> gives the density, <code>punif</code> gives the distribution function, <code>qunif</code> gives the quantile function, and <code>runif</code> generates random deviates. |
| pweibull        | Distribution function for the Weibull distribution.  |
| pwilcox         | Distribution function for the distribution of the Wilcoxon rank-sum statistic.   |
| qbeta           | Quantile function for the beta distribution.   |
| qbinom          | Quantile function for the binomial distribution.   |
| qbirthday       | Computes the number of observations needed to have a specified probability of coincidence for a generalized birthday paradox problem.  |
| qcauchy         | Quantile function for the Cauchy distribution.   |
| qchisq          | Quantile function for the chi-squared distribution.  |
| qexp            | Quantile function for the exponential distribution.  |
| qf              | Quantile function for the <i>F</i> -distribution.  |
| qgamma          | Quantile function for the gamma distribution.  |
| qgeom           | Quantile function for the geometric distribution.  |
| qhyper          | Quantile function for the hypergeometric distribution.   |
| qlnorm          | Quantile function for the log-normal distribution.   |
| qlogis          | Quantile function for the logistic distribution.   |

| Function         | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| qnbinom          | Quantile function for the negative binomial distribution.  |
| qnorm            | Quantile function for the normal distribution.   |
| qpois            | Quantile function for the Poisson distribution.  |
| qqline           | Adds a line to a normal Q-Q plot (usually generated by qqnorm or qqplot) that passes through the first and third quartiles.  |
| qqnorm           | Generic function the default method of which produces a normal Q-Q plot of the values in $y$ .   |
| qqplot           | Produces a Q-Q plot of two data sets.  |
| qsignrank        | Density, distribution function, quantile function, and random generation for the distribution of the Wilcoxon signed rank statistic obtained from a sample with size $n$ .   |
| qt               | Quantile function for the $t$ -distribution.   |
| qtukey           | Function of the distribution of the Studentized range, $R/s$ , where $R$ is the range of a standard normal sample and $df \sim \chi^2$ is independently distributed as chi-squared with $df$ degrees of freedom; see <code>pchisq</code> . |
| quade.test       | Performs a Quade test with unreplicated blocked data.  |
| quantile         | The generic function <code>quantile</code> produces sample quantiles corresponding to the given probabilities. The smallest observation corresponds to a probability of 0 and the largest to a probability of 1.                           |
| quantile.default | The generic function <code>quantile</code> produces sample quantiles corresponding to the given probabilities. The smallest observation corresponds to a probability of 0 and the largest to a probability of 1.                           |
| quasi            | Family object for the quasi distribution (used by functions such as <code>g1m</code> ).  |
| quasibinomial    | Family object for the quasibinomial distribution (used by functions such as <code>g1m</code> ).  |
| quasipoisson     | Family object for the quasi-Poisson distribution (used by functions such as <code>g1m</code> ).  |
| qunif            | Quantile function for the uniform distribution.  |
| qweibull         | Quantile function for the Weibull distribution.  |
| qwilcox          | Quantile function for the Wilcoxon rank-sum statistic.   |
| r2dtable         | Generates random two-way tables with given marginals using Patefield's algorithm.  |
| rbeta            | Random number generation for the beta distribution.  |
| rbinom           | Random number generation for the binomial distribution.  |
| rcauchy          | Random number generation for the Cauchy distribution.  |
| rchisq           | Random number generation for the chi-squared distribution.   |
| read.ftable      | Reads, writes, and coerces "flat" contingency tables.  |
| rect.hclust      | Draws rectangles around the branches of a dendrogram, highlighting the corresponding clusters. First, the dendrogram is cut at a certain level, and then a rectangle is drawn around selected branches.                                    |
| reformulate      | Creates a formula from a character vector.   |

| Function       | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| relevel        | The levels of a factor are reordered so that the level specified by <code>ref</code> is first, and the others are moved down. This is useful for <code>contr.treatment</code> contrasts, which take the first level as the reference. |
| reorder        | <code>reorder</code> is a generic function. Its "factor" method reorders the levels of a factor depending on values of a second variable, usually numeric. The "character" method is a convenient alias.                              |
| replications   | Returns a vector or a list of the number of replicates for each term in the formula.  |
| reshape        | Reshapes a data frame between "wide" format with repeated measurements in separate columns of the same record and "long" format with the repeated measurements in separate records.   |
| resid          | Generic function that extracts model residuals from objects returned by modeling functions. The abbreviated form <code>resid</code> is an alias for <code>residuals</code> .  |
| residuals      | Generic function that extracts model residuals from objects returned by modeling functions.   |
| rexp           | Random generation for the exponential distribution.   |
| rf             | Random generation for the <i>F</i> -distribution.   |
| rgamma         | Random generation for the gamma distribution.   |
| rgeom          | Random generation for the geometric distribution.   |
| rhyper         | Random generation for the hypergeometric distribution.  |
| rlnorm         | Random generation for the log-normal distribution.  |
| rlogis         | Random generation for the logistic distribution.  |
| rmultinom      | Generates multinomially distributed random number vectors and computes multinomial probabilities.   |
| rbinom         | Random generation for the negative binomial distribution.   |
| rnorm          | Random generation for the normal distribution.  |
| rpois          | Random generation for the Poisson distribution.   |
| rsignrank      | Random generation for the distribution of the Wilcoxon signed rank statistic.   |
| rstandard      | Returns the standardized residuals from a model object.   |
| rstudent       | Returns the Studentized residuals from a model object.  |
| rt             | Random generation for the <i>t</i> -distribution.   |
| runif          | Generates random numbers from the uniform distribution.   |
| runmed         | Computes running medians of odd span. This is the "most robust" scatter plot smoothing possible. For efficiency (and historical reasons), you can use one of two different algorithms giving identical results.                       |
| rweibull       | Random generation for the Weibull distribution.   |
| rwilcox        | Random generation for the distribution of the Wilcoxon rank-sum statistic.  |
| scatter.smooth | Plots and adds a smooth curve computed by <code>loess</code> to a scatter plot.   |
| screenplot     | Plots the variances against the number of the principal component. This is also the <code>plot</code> method for classes "princomp" and "prcomp".   |
| sd             | Computes the standard deviation of the values in <code>x</code> .   |

| Function      | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| se.contrast   | Returns the standard errors for one or more contrasts in an aov object.  |
| selfStart     | Constructs self-starting nonlinear models.   |
| setNames      | This is a convenience function that sets the names on an object and returns the object. It is most useful at the end of a function definition where one is creating the object to be returned and would prefer not to store it under a name just so the names can be assigned.                                       |
| shapiro.test  | Performs the Shapiro-Wilk test of normality.   |
| simulate      | Simulates one or more responses from the distribution corresponding to a fitted model object.  |
| smooth        | Tukey's smoothers, $3RS3R$ , $3RSS$ , $3R$ , etc.  |
| smooth.spline | Fits a cubic smoothing spline to the supplied data.  |
| smoothEnds    | Smooths end points of a vector $y$ using subsequently smaller medians and Tukey's end point rule at the very end.  |
| sortedXyData  | This is a constructor function for the class of sortedXyData objects. These objects are mostly used in the initial function for a self-starting nonlinear regression model, which will be of the selfStart class.  |
| spec.ar       | Fits an AR model to $x$ (or uses the existing fit) and computes (and by default plots) the spectral density of the fitted model.   |
| spec.pgram    | Calculates the periodogram using a fast Fourier transform and optionally smooths the result with a series of modified Daniell smoothers (moving averages giving half weight to the end values).  |
| spec.taper    | Applies a cosine-bell taper to a time series.  |
| spectrum      | Estimates the spectral density of a time series.   |
| spline        | Performs cubic spline interpolation of given data points, returning either a list of points obtained by the interpolation or a <i>function</i> performing the interpolation. Returns a list containing components $x$ and $y$ , which give the ordinates where interpolation took place and the interpolated values. |
| splinefun     | Performs cubic spline interpolation of given data points, returning either a list of points obtained by the interpolation or a <i>function</i> performing the interpolation. Returns a function with formal arguments $x$ and $deriv$ , the latter defaulting to 0.  |
| splinefunH    | Performs Hermite spline interpolation of given data points, returning either a list of points obtained by the interpolation or a <i>function</i> performing the interpolation.   |
| start         | Extracts and encodes the times the first and last observations were taken. Provided only for compatibility with S version 2.   |
| stat.anova    | Utility function, used in lm and glm methods for anova(..., test != NULL) and should not be used by the average user.  |
| step          | Selects a formula-based model by AIC.  |
| stepfun       | Returns an interpolating step function from two sets of vectors.   |
| stl           | Decomposes a time series into seasonal, trend, and irregular components using loess.   |
| supsmu        | Smooths the $(x, y)$ values by Friedman's supersmoother.   |

| Function           | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| symnum             | Symbolically encodes a given numeric or logical vector or array. Particularly useful for visualization of structured matrices, e.g., correlation, sparse, or logical ones.   |
| t.test             | Performs one- and two-sample <i>t</i> -tests on vectors of data.   |
| termplot           | Plots regression terms against their predictors, optionally with standard errors and partial residuals added.  |
| terms              | Generic function that can be used to extract <i>terms</i> objects from various kinds of R data objects.  |
| time               | Creates the vector of times at which a time series was sampled.  |
| toeplitz           | Forms a symmetric Toeplitz matrix given its first row.   |
| ts                 | Used to create time series objects.  |
| ts.intersect       | Binds time series that have a common frequency. <code>ts.intersect</code> is restricted to the time covered by all the series.   |
| ts.plot            | Plots several time series on a common plot. Unlike <code>plot.ts</code> , the series can have different time bases, but they should have the same frequency.   |
| ts.union           | Binds time series that have a common frequency. <code>ts.union</code> pads with NAs to the total time coverage.  |
| tsSmooth           | Performs fixed-interval smoothing on a univariate time series via a state-space model.   |
| tsdiag             | Generic function to plot time series diagnostics.  |
| tsp, tsp<-         | <code>tsp</code> returns the <code>tsp</code> attribute (or <code>NULL</code> ). It is included for compatibility with S version 2. <code>tsp&lt;-</code> sets the <code>tsp</code> attribute.   |
| uniroot            | Searches the interval from <code>lower</code> to <code>upper</code> for a root (i.e., 0) of the function <code>f</code> with respect to its first argument.  |
| update             | Updates and (by default) refits a model. It does this by extracting the call stored in the object, updating the call and (by default) evaluating that call.  |
| var                | Computes the variance of a vector.   |
| var.test           | Performs an <i>F</i> -test to compare the variances of two samples from normal populations.  |
| variable.names     | Simple utility returning (nonmissing) case names and (non-eliminated) variable names.  |
| varimax            | These functions “rotate” loading matrices in factor analysis.  |
| vcov               | Returns the variance-covariance matrix of the main parameters of a fitted model object.  |
| weighted.mean      | Computes a weighted mean of a numeric vector.  |
| weighted.residuals | Computes weighted residuals from a linear model fit.   |
| weights            | All these functions are methods for class " <code>lm</code> " objects.   |
| wilcox.test        | Performs one- and two-sample Wilcoxon tests on vectors of data; the latter is also known as the Mann-Whitney test.   |
| window, window<-   | <code>window</code> is a generic function that extracts the subset of the object <code>x</code> observed between the times <code>start</code> and <code>end</code> . If a frequency is specified, the series is then resampled at the new frequency. |

| Function     | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| write.ftable | Reads, writes, and coerces “flat” contingency tables.   |
| xtabs        | Creates a contingency table from cross-classifying factors, usually contained in a data frame, using a formula interface. |

## Data Set

| Data Set         | Class     | Description                   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| p.adjust.methods | character | Allowed methods for p.adjust. |

## stats4

This package contains statistical functions using S4 methods and classes.

## Functions

| Function | Description   |
|----------|---|
| AIC      | Calculates the Akaike information criterion for one or several fitted model objects for which a log-likelihood value can be obtained.   |
| BIC      | Calculates the Bayesian information criterion (BIC), also known as Schwarz’s Bayesian criterion (SBC), for one or several fitted model objects for which a log-likelihood value can be obtained, according to the formula $-2 * \log\text{-likelihood} + n_{\text{par}} * \log(n_{\text{obs}})$ , where $n_{\text{par}}$ represents the number of parameters and $n_{\text{obs}}$ the number of observations in the fitted model. |
| coef     | Extracts model coefficients from objects returned by modeling functions.  |
| confint  | Computes confidence intervals for one or more parameters in a fitted model.   |
| logLik   | Extracts the log-likelihood from a model object.  |
| mle      | Estimates parameters by the method of maximum likelihood.   |
| plot     | Generic function for plotting an R object.  |
| profile  | Investigates behavior of objective function near the solution represented by fitted.  |
| summary  | Generic function used to produce result summaries of the results of various model-fitting functions.  |
| update   | Updates and (by default) refits a model.  |
| vcov     | Returns the variance-covariance matrix of the main parameters of a fitted model object.   |

## survival

This package contains functions for survival analysis.

## Functions

| Function        | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Surv            | Creates a survival object, usually used as a response variable in a model formula.  |
| aareg           | Returns an object of class "aareg" that represents an Aalen model.  |
| attrassign      | The "assign" attribute on model matrices describes which columns come from which terms in the model formula.  |
| basehaz         | Computes the baseline survival curve for a Cox model.   |
| cch             | Returns estimates and standard errors from relative risk regression fit to data from case-cohort studies, cohort data, and Borgan II, a generalization of the Lin-Ying estimator. |
| clogit          | Estimates a logistic regression model by maximizing the conditional likelihood.   |
| cluster         | A special function used in the context of survival models. It identifies correlated groups of observations and is used on the right-hand side of a formula.                       |
| cox.zph         | Tests the proportional hazards assumption for a Cox regression model fit (coxph).   |
| coxph           | Fits a Cox proportional hazards regression model.   |
| coxph.control   | Used to set various numeric parameters controlling a Cox model fit. Typically, it would be used only in a call to coxph.  |
| coxph.detail    | Returns the individual contributions to the first and second derivative matrix at each unique event time.   |
| coxph.fit       | Internal survival function.   |
| dsurvreg        | Density, cumulative probability, and quantiles for the set of distributions supported by the survreg function.  |
| format.Surv     | Creates a survival object, usually used as a response variable in a model formula.  |
| frailty         | Adds a simple random-effects term to a Cox or survreg model.  |
| is.Surv         | Tests for a survival object.  |
| is.na.Surv      | Tests for NA values in a survival object.   |
| is.na.ratetable | Matches variable names in data to those in a rate table for survexp.  |
| is.ratetable    | Verifies not only the <code>class</code> attribute but also the structure of the object.  |
| labels.survreg  | Finds a suitable set of labels from a survival object for use in printing or plotting, for example.   |
| pspline         | Specifies a penalized spline basis for the predictor.   |
| psurvreg        | Density, cumulative probability, and quantiles for the set of distributions supported by the survreg function.  |
| pyears          | Computes the person-years of follow-up time contributed by a cohort of subjects, stratified into subgroups.   |
| qsurvreg        | Density, cumulative probability, and quantiles for the set of distributions supported by the survreg function.  |
| ratetable       | Matches variable names in data to those in a rate table for survexp.  |
| ridge           | Specifies a ridge regression term when used in a coxph or survreg model formula.  |

| Function          | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| strata            | This is a special function used in the context of the Cox survival model. It identifies stratification variables when they appear on the right-hand side of a formula.   |
| survConcordance   | Computes the concordance between a right-censored survival time and a single continuous covariate.   |
| survSplit         | Given a survival data set and a set of specified cut times, splits each record into multiple subrecords at each cut time. The new data set will be in “counting process” format, with a start time, stop time, and event status for each record. |
| survdiff          | Tests if there is a difference between two or more survival curves using the $G^0$ family of tests, or for a single curve against a known alternative.   |
| survexp           | Returns either the expected survival of a cohort of subjects or the individual expected survival for each subject.   |
| survfit           | Computes an estimate of a survival curve for censored data using either the Kaplan-Meier or the Fleming-Harrington method or computes the predicted survivor function.   |
| survobrien        | O’Brien’s test for association of a single variable with survival.   |
| survreg           | Fits a parametric survival regression model. These are location-scale models for an arbitrary transform of the time variable; the most common cases use a log transformation, leading to accelerated failure time models.                        |
| survreg.control   | Checks and packages the fitting options for survreg.   |
| survreg.fit       | Internal survival function.  |
| survregDtest      | This routine is called by survreg to verify that a distribution object is valid.   |
| tcut              | Attaches categories for person-year calculations to a variable without losing the underlying continuous representation.  |
| untangle.specials | Given a terms structure and a desired special name, this returns an index appropriate for subscripting the terms structure and another appropriate for the data frame.   |

## Data Sets

| Data Set | Class      | Description   |
|----------|------------|---|
| aml      | data.frame | Survival in patients with acute myelogenous leukemia. The question at the time was whether the standard course of chemotherapy should be extended (“maintenance”) for additional cycles.  |
| bladder  | data.frame | Data on recurrences of bladder cancer, used by many people to demonstrate methodology for recurrent event modeling. Bladder1 is the full data set from the study. This data set contains only the 85 subjects with nonzero follow-up who were assigned to either thiotepa or placebo.         |
| bladder1 | data.frame | Data on recurrences of bladder cancer, used by many people to demonstrate methodology for recurrent event modeling. Bladder1 is the full data set from the study. It contains all three treatment arms and all recurrences for 118 subjects; the maximum observed number of recurrences is 9. |

| Data Set              | Class      | Description  |
|-----------------------|------------|--|
| bladder2              | data.frame | Data on recurrences of bladder cancer, used by many people to demonstrate methodology for recurrent event modeling. Bladder2 uses the same subset of subjects as bladder, but formatted in the (start, stop) or Anderson-Gill style. |
| cancer                | data.frame | Survival in patients with advanced lung cancer from the North Central Cancer Treatment Group. Performance scores rate how well the patient can perform normal daily activities.  |
| cgd                   | data.frame | Data is from a placebo-controlled trial of gamma interferon in chronic granulomatous disease (CGD).  |
| colon                 | data.frame | Data from one of the first successful trials of adjuvant chemotherapy for colon cancer.  |
| heart, jasa, jasa1    | data.frame | Survival of patients on the waiting list for the Stanford heart transplant program.  |
| kidney                | data.frame | Data on the recurrence times to infection, at the point of insertion of the catheter, for kidney patients using portable dialysis equipment.   |
| leukemia              | data.frame | Survival in patients with acute myelogenous leukemia. The question at the time was whether the standard course of chemotherapy should be extended ("maintenance") for additional cycles.   |
| lung                  | data.frame | Survival in patients with advanced lung cancer from the North Central Cancer Treatment Group. Performance scores rate how well the patient can perform normal daily activities.  |
| mgus, mgus1,<br>mgus2 | data.frame | Natural history of 241 subjects with monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS).  |
| nwtco                 | data.frame | Missing data/measurement error example. Tumor histology predicts survival, but prediction is stronger with central lab histology than with the local institution determination.  |
| ovarian               | data.frame | Survival in a randomized trial comparing two treatments for ovarian cancer.  |
| pbc                   | data.frame | This data is from the Mayo Clinic trial in primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) of the liver conducted between 1974 and 1984.   |
| pbcseq                | data.frame | This data is a continuation of the PBC data set and contains the follow-up laboratory data for each study patient.   |
| rats                  | data.frame | Forty-eight rats were injected with a carcinogen and then randomized to either drug or placebo. The number of tumors ranged from 0 to 13; all rats were censored at 6 months after randomization.                                    |
| stanford2             | data.frame | This contains the Stanford heart transplant data in a different format. The main data set is in <code>heart</code> .   |
| survexp.mn            | ratetable  | Census data sets for the expected-survival and person-year functions.  |
| survexp.mnwhite       | ratetable  | Census data sets for the expected-survival and person-year functions.  |
| survexp.us            | ratetable  | Census data sets for the expected-survival and person-year functions.  |
| survexp.usr           | ratetable  | Census data sets for the expected-survival and person-year functions.  |
| survreg.distributions | list       | List of distributions for accelerated failure models. These are location-scale families for some transformation of time.   |
| tobin                 | data.frame | Economists fit a parametric censored data model called the <i>tobit</i> . The data come from Tobin's original paper.   |

| Data Set | Class      | Description  |
|----------|------------|--|
| veteran  | data.frame | Randomized trial of two treatment regimens for lung cancer. This is a standard survival analysis data set. |

## tcltk

The package contains interface and language bindings to Tcl/Tk GUI elements. Please see the online help for more details.

## tools

This package provides tools for developing packages.

### Functions

| Function         | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Rd2HTML          | This (experimental) function converts from an R help page to an HTML document.   |
| Rd2ex            | This (experimental) function converts from an R help page to the format used by example.   |
| Rd2latex         | This (experimental) function converts from an R help page to a LaTeX document.   |
| Rd2txt           | This (experimental) function converts from an R help page to a text document.  |
| Rd_db            | Builds a simple database of all R documentation (Rd) sources in a package, as a list of character vectors with the lines of the Rd files in the package.   |
| Rdiff            | Given two R output files, computes differences, ignoring headers, footers, and some encoding differences.  |
| Rdindex          | Prints a two-column index table with names and titles from given R documentation files to a given output file or connection. The titles are nicely formatted between two column positions (typically 25 and 72). |
| buildVignettes   | Runs Sweave and <code>texi2dvi</code> on all vignettes of a package.   |
| checkDocFiles    | Checks, for all Rd files in a package, whether all arguments shown in the usage sections of the Rd file are documented in its arguments section.   |
| checkDocStyle    | Investigates how (S3) methods are shown in the usages of the Rd files in a package.  |
| checkFF          | Performs checks on calls to compiled code from R code.   |
| checkMD5sums     | Checks the files against a file "MD5."   |
| checkNEWS        | Reads R's NEWS file or a similarly formatted one. This is an experimental feature, new in R 2.4.0, and may change in several ways.   |
| checkRd          | These experimental functions take the output of the <code>parse_Rd</code> function and check it or produce a help page from it. Their interfaces (and existence!) are subject to change.                         |
| checkReplaceFuns | Checks whether replacement functions or S3/S4 replacement methods in the package R code have their final argument named value.   |

| Function              | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| checkS3methods        | Checks whether all S3 methods defined in the package Rcode have all arguments of the corresponding generic, with positional arguments of the generics in the same positions for the method.  |
| checkTnF              | Checks the specified R package or code file for occurrences of T or F and gathers the expressions containing these.  |
| checkVignettes        | Checks all Sweave files of a package by running Sweave and/or Stangle on them.   |
| codoc                 | Compares names and optionally also corresponding positions and default values of the arguments of functions.   |
| codocClasses          | Finds inconsistencies between actual and documented “structure” of R objects in a package. codoc compares names and optionally also corresponding positions and default values of the arguments of functions. codocClasses and codocData compare slot names of S4 classes and variable names of data sets, respectively. |
| codocData             | Compares slot names of S4 classes.   |
| delimMatch            | Matches delimited substrings in a character vector, with proper nesting.   |
| dependsOnPkgs         | Finds “reverse” dependencies of packages, i.e., those packages that depend on this one and (optionally) so on recursively.   |
| encoded_text_to_latex | Translates non-ASCII characters in text to LaTeX escape sequences.   |
| file_path_as_absolute | Turns a possibly relative file path absolute, performing tilde expansion, if necessary.  |
| file_path_sans_ext    | Returns the file paths without extension.  |
| findHTMLlinks         | Finds HTML links in an R help file.  |
| getDepList            | Given a dependency matrix, creates a DependsList object for that package, which will include the dependencies for that matrix, which ones are installed, which unresolved dependencies were found online, which unresolved dependencies were not found online, and any R dependencies.                                   |
| installFoundDepends   | Takes the Found element of a pkgDependsList object and attempts to install all the listed packages from the specified repositories.  |
| list_files_with_exts  | Returns the paths or names of the files in directory dir with extensions matching one of the elements of exts.   |
| list_files_with_type  | Returns the paths of the files in dir of the given “type,” as determined by the extensions recognized by R.  |
| md5sum                | Computes the 32-byte MD5 checksums of one or more files.   |
| package.dependencies  | Parses and checks the dependencies of a package against the currently installed version of R (and other packages).   |
| parse_Rd              | Reads an Rd file and parses it, for processing by other functions. It is <i>experimental</i> .   |
| pkgDepends            | Convenience function that wraps getDepList and takes as input a package name.  |
| pkgVignettes          | Runs Sweave and texi2dvi on all vignettes of a package.  |
| read.00Index          | Reads item/description information from 00Index-style files.   |
| readNEWS              | Read R’s NEWS file or a similarly formatted one. This is an experimental feature, new in R 2.4.0, and may change in several ways.  |

| Function                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| showNonASCII                      | Prints elements of a character vector that contain non-ASCII bytes, printing such bytes as an escape like <fc>.  |
| testInstalledBasic                | Allows an installed package to be tested by running the basic tests.   |
| testInstalledPackage              | Allows an installed package to be tested.  |
| testInstalledPackages             | Allows all base and recommended packages to be tested.   |
| texi2dvi                          | Runs <code>latex</code> and <code>bibtex</code> until all cross-references are resolved and creates either a device independent (DVI) or a PDF file.   |
| undoc                             | Finds the objects in a package that are undocumented, in the sense that they are visible to the user (or data objects or S4 classes provided by the package), but no documentation entry exists.   |
| vignetteDepends                   | Given a vignette name, creates a <code>DependsList</code> object that reports information about the packages the vignette depends on.  |
| write_PACKAGES                    | Generates <code>PACKAGES</code> and <code>PACKAGES.gz</code> files for a repository of source or Mac/Windows binary packages.  |
| xgettext, xgettext2pot, xngettext | For each file in the <code>R</code> directory (including system-specific subdirectories) of a package, extract the unique arguments passed to <code>stop</code> , <code>warning</code> , <code>message</code> , <code>gettext</code> , and <code>gettextf</code> , or to <code>ngettext</code> . |

## Data Sets

| Data Set                        | Class                   | Description   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| <code>Adobe_glyphs</code>       | <code>data.frame</code> | A data frame that gives Adobe glyph names for Unicode points.           |
| <code>charset_to_Unicode</code> | <code>hexmode</code>    | A matrix of Unicode points with columns for the common 8-bit encodings. |

## utils

This package contains a variety of utility functions for R, including package management, file reading and writing, and editing.

## Functions

| Function                  | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <code>?</code>            | Documentation on a topic.   |
| <code>RShowDoc</code>     | Utility function to find and display R documentation.   |
| <code>RSiteSearch</code>  | Searches for keywords or phrases in the R-help mailing list archives, help pages, vignettes, or task views, using the search engine at <a href="http://search.r-project.org">http://search.r-project.org</a> , and displays the results in a web browser. |
| <code>Rprof</code>        | Enables or disables profiling of the execution of R expressions.  |
| <code>Rprofmem</code>     | Enables or disables reporting of memory allocation in R.  |
| <code>Rtangle</code>      | A driver for <code>Stangle</code> that extracts R code chunks.  |
| <code>RtangleSetup</code> | A driver for <code>Stangle</code> that extracts R code chunks.  |

| Function            | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| RtangleWritedoc     | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| RweaveChunkPrefix   | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| RweaveEvalWithOpt   | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| RweaveLatex         | A driver for Sweave that translates R code chunks in LaTeX files.   |
| RweaveLatexFinish   | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| RweaveLatexOptions  | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| RweaveLatexSetup    | A driver for Sweave that translates R code chunks in LaTeX files.   |
| RweaveLatexWritedoc | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| RweaveTryStop       | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.                 |
| Stangle             | A front end to Sweave using a simple driver by default, which discards the documentation and concatenates all code chunks the current S engine understands.   |
| Sweave              | Sweave provides a flexible framework for mixing text and S code for automatic report generation. The basic idea is to replace the S code with its output, such that the final document only contains the text and the output of the statistical analysis. |
| SweaveSyntConv      | This function converts the syntax of files in Sweave format to another Sweave syntax definition.  |
| URLdecode           | Function to decode characters in URLs.  |
| URLEncoder          | Function to encode characters in URLs.  |
| View                | Invokes a spreadsheet-style data viewer on a matrix-like R object.  |
| alarm               | Gives an audible or visual signal to the user.  |
| apropos             | apropos() returns a character vector giving the names of all objects in the search list matching a specified value.   |
| argsAnywhere        | Returns the arguments for all functions with a name matching its argument, whether visible on the search path, registered as an S3 method, or in a namespace but not exported.  |
| as.person           | A class and utility method for holding information about persons such as name and email address.  |

| Function  | Description  |
|---|--|
| as.personList   | A class and utility method for holding information about persons such as name and email address.   |
| as.relistable   | <code>relist()</code> is an S3 generic function with a few methods in order to allow easy inversion of <code>unlist(obj)</code> when that is used with an object of (S3) class "relistable".   |
| as.roman  | Manipulates integers as Roman numerals.  |
| assignInNamespace   | Utility function to access and replace the nonexported functions in a namespace, for use in developing packages with namespaces.   |
| available.packages  | Used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.   |
| browseEnv   | Opens a browser with list of objects currently in the <code>sys.frame()</code> environment.  |
| browseURL   | Loads a given URL into a web browser.  |
| browseVignettes   | Lists available vignettes in an HTML browser with links to PDF, LaTeX/noweb source, and (tangled) R code (if available).   |
| bug.report  | Invokes an editor to write a bug report and optionally mail it to the automated r-bugs repository at <a href="mailto:r-bugs@r-project.org">r-bugs@r-project.org</a> . Some standard information on the current version and configuration of R are included automatically.  |
| capture.output  | Evaluates its arguments with the output being returned as a character string or sent to a file. Related to <code>sink</code> in the same way that <code>with</code> is related to <code>attach</code> .  |
| checkCRAN   | Functions helping to maintain CRAN, some of which may also be useful to administrators of other repository networks.   |
| chooseCRANmirror  | Interacts with the user to choose a CRAN mirror.   |
| citEntry  | Creates "citation" objects, which are modeled after BibTeX entries.  |
| citFooter   | Creates a footer in a CITATION file.   |
| citHeader   | Creates a header in a CITATION file.   |
| citation  | Shows how to cite R and R packages in publications.  |
| close.socket  | Closes the socket and frees the space in the file descriptor table. The port may not be freed immediately.   |
| combn   | Generates all combinations of the elements of <code>x</code> taken <code>m</code> at a time. If <code>x</code> is a positive integer, returns all combinations of the elements of <code>seq(x)</code> taken <code>m</code> at a time. If argument <code>FUN</code> is not <code>NULL</code> , applies a function given by the argument to each point. If <code>simplify</code> is <code>FALSE</code> , returns a list; otherwise, returns an array, typically a matrix. . . . are passed unchanged to the <code>FUN</code> function, if specified. |
| compareVersion  | Compares two package version numbers to see which is later.  |
| contrib.url   | Used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.   |
| count.fields  | Counts the number of fields, as separated by <code>sep</code> , in each of the lines of <code>file</code> read.  |
| data  | Loads specified data sets or lists the available data sets.  |
| data.entry, dataentry, de, de.ncols, de.restore, de.setup | Spreadsheet-like editors for entering or editing data.   |

| Function           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| debugger           | Function to dump the evaluation environments (frames) and to examine dumped frames.   |
| demo               | User-friendly interface for running some demonstration R scripts. <code>demo()</code> gives the list of available topics.   |
| download.file      | Used to download a file from the Internet.  |
| download.packages  | Used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.  |
| dump.frames        | Function to dump the evaluation environments (frames) and to examine dumped frames.   |
| edit               | Invokes an editor on an R object.   |
| emacs              | Invokes the text editor emacs on an R object.   |
| example            | Runs all the R code from the <i>Examples</i> part of R's online help.   |
| file.edit          | Edits one or more files in a text editor.   |
| file_test          | Utility for shell-style file tests.   |
| find               | Returns a character vector giving the names of all objects in the search list matching a given value.   |
| fix                | Invokes <code>edit</code> on <code>x</code> and assigns the new (edited) version of <code>x</code> in the user's workspace.   |
| fixInNamespace     | Utility function to access and replace the nonexported functions in a namespace, for use in developing packages with namespaces.  |
| flush.console      | On the Mac OS X and Windows GUIs, ensures that the display of output in the console is current, even if output buffering is on. (This does nothing except on console-based versions of R.)  |
| formatOL, formatUL | Format unordered (itemize) and ordered (enumerate) lists.   |
| getAnywhere        | Locates and returns all objects with a name matching its argument, whether visible on the search path, registered as an S3 method, or in a namespace but not exported.  |
| getCRANmirrors     | Interacts with the user to choose a CRAN mirror.  |
| getFromNamespace   | Utility function to access and replace the nonexported functions in a namespace, for use in developing packages with namespaces.  |
| getS3method        | Gets a method for an S3 generic, possibly from a namespace.   |
| getTxtProgressBar  | Text progress bar in the R console.   |
| glob2rx            | Changes <i>wildcard</i> (aka <i>globbing</i> ) patterns into the corresponding regular expressions ( <code>regexp</code> ).   |
| head               | Returns the first or last parts of a vector, matrix, table, data frame, or function. Since <code>head()</code> and <code>tail()</code> are generic functions, they may also have been extended to other classes.                                |
| help               | The primary interface to R's help system.   |
| help.request       | Prompts users to check that they have done all that is expected of them before sending a post to the R-help mailing list, provides a template for the post with session information included, and optionally sends the email (on Unix systems). |

| Function                   | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
| help.search                | Allows for searching the help system for documentation matching a given character string in the (file) name, alias, title, concept, or keyword entries (or any combination thereof), using either fuzzy matching or regular expression matching. Names and titles of the matched help entries are displayed nicely formatted.       |
| help.start                 | Starts the hypertext (currently HTML) version of R's online documentation.  |
| history                    | Loads or saves or displays the commands history.  |
| index.search               | Used to search the indexes for help files, possibly under aliases.  |
| install.packages           | Used to automatically compare version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.  |
| installed.packages         | Finds (or retrieves) details of all packages installed in the specified libraries.  |
| is.relistable              | <code>relist()</code> is an S3 generic function with a few methods in order to allow easy inversion of <code>unList(obj)</code> when that is used with an object of (S3) class "relistable".  |
| limitedLabels              | Allows the user to browse directly on any of the currently active function calls and is suitable as an error option. The expression options(error=recover) will make this the error option.   |
| loadhistory                | Loads or saves or displays the commands history.  |
| localeToCharset            | Aims to find a suitable coding for the locale named, by default the current locale, and if it is a UTF-8 locale, a suitable single-byte encoding.   |
| ls.str, lsf.str            | <code>ls.str</code> and <code>lsf.str</code> are variations of <code>ls</code> applying <code>str()</code> to each matched name.  |
| make.packages.html         | Updates HTML documentation files.   |
| make.socket                | With <code>server = FALSE</code> , attempts to open a client socket to the specified port and host. With <code>server = TRUE</code> , listens on the specified port for a connection and then returns a server socket. It is a good idea to use <code>on.exit</code> to ensure that a socket is closed, as you get only 64 of them. |
| makeRweaveLatex CodeRunner | These functions are handy for writing Sweave drivers and currently not documented. Look at the source code of the Sweave Latex driver (in this package) or the HTML driver (in the R2HTML package from CRAN) to see how they can be used.   |
| memory.limit               | Gets or sets the memory limit on Microsoft Windows platforms.   |
| memory.size                | Checks the current memory usage on Microsoft Windows platforms.   |
| menu                       | Presents the user with a menu of choices labeled from 1 to the number of choices. To exit without choosing an item, select 0.   |
| methods                    | Lists all available methods for an S3 generic function or all methods for a class.  |
| mirror2html                | Functions helping to maintain CRAN, some of which may also be useful to administrators of other repository networks.  |
| modifyList                 | Modifies a possibly nested list recursively by changing a subset of elements at each level to match a second list.  |
| new.packages               | Used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.  |

| Function                                     | Description  |
|--|--|
| normalizePath                                | Converts file paths to canonical form for the platform, to display them in a user-understandable form.   |
| nsl  | Interface to <code>gethostbyname</code> .  |
| object.size                                  | Provides an estimate of the memory that is being used to store an R object.  |
| old.packages                                 | Used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.   |
| package.skeleton                             | Automates some of the setup for a new source package. It creates directories; saves functions, data, and R code files to appropriate places; and creates skeleton help files and a <i>Read-and-delete-me</i> file describing further steps in packaging. |
| packageDescription                           | Parses and returns the <i>DESCRIPTION</i> file of a package.   |
| packageStatus                                | Summarizes information about installed packages and packages available at various repositories, and automatically upgrades outdated packages.  |
| page   | Displays a representation of the object named by <code>x</code> in a pager via <code>file.show</code> .  |
| person                                       | Creates a “person” object.   |
| personList                                   | Creates a “personList” object.   |
| pico   | Invokes a text editor on an R object.  |
| prompt                                       | Facilitates the construction of files documenting R objects.   |
| promptData                                   | Generates a shell of documentation for a data set.   |
| promptPackage                                | Generates a shell of documentation for an installed or source package.   |
| read.DIF                                     | Reads a file in Data Interchange Format (DIF) and creates a data frame from it. DIF is a format for data matrices such as single spreadsheets.   |
| read.csv, read.csv2, read.delim, read.delim2 | Read a file in table format and create a data frame from it, with cases corresponding to lines and variables to fields in the file.  |
| read.fortran                                 | Reads fixed-format data files using FORTRAN-style format specifications.   |
| read.fwf                                     | Reads a table of fixed-width-formatted data into a <code>data.frame</code> .   |
| read.socket                                  | <code>read.socket</code> reads a string from the specified socket; <code>write.socket</code> writes to the specified socket. There is very little error checking done by either.   |
| read.table                                   | Reads a file in table format and creates a data frame from it, with cases corresponding to lines and variables to fields in the file.  |
| readCitationFile                             | The <i>CITATION</i> file of R packages contains an annotated list of references that should be used for citing the packages.   |
| recover                                      | Allows the user to browse directly on any of the currently active function calls and is suitable as an error option. The expression <code>options(error=recover)</code> will make this the error option.   |
| relist                                       | <code>relist()</code> is an S3 generic function with a few methods in order to allow easy inversion of <code>unlist(obj)</code> when that is used with an object of (S3) class “ <code>relistable</code> ”.  |
| remove.packages                              | Removes installed packages/bundles and updates index information as necessary.   |
| rtags  | Provides etags-like indexing capabilities for R code, using R’s own parser.  |
| savehistory                                  | Loads or saves or displays the commands history.   |

| Function              | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| select.list           | Selects item(s) from a character vector.   |
| sessionInfo           | Prints version information about R and attached or loaded packages.  |
| setRepositories       | Interacts with the user to choose the package repositories to be used.   |
| setTxtProgressBar     | Text progress bar in the R console.  |
| stack                 | Stacking vectors concatenates multiple vectors into a single vector along with a factor indicating where each observation originated; unstacking reverses this.                        |
| str                   | Compactly displays the internal structure of an R object; the idea is to give reasonable output for <i>any</i> R object.   |
| strOptions            | strOptions() is a convenience function for setting options(str = .).   |
| summaryRprof          | Summarizes the output of the Rprof function to show the amount of time used by different R functions.  |
| tail                  | Returns the first or last parts of a vector, matrix, table, data frame, or function. Since head() and tail() are generic functions, they may also have been extended to other classes. |
| timestamp             | Writes a timestamp (or other message) into the history and echoes it to the console.   |
| toBibtex              | Converts R objects to character vectors with BibTeX markup.  |
| toLatex               | Converts R objects to character vectors with LaTeX markup.   |
| txtProgressBar        | Text progress bar in the R console.  |
| type.convert          | Converts a character vector to logical, integer, numeric, complex, or factor, as appropriate.  |
| unstack               | Stacking vectors concatenates multiple vectors into a single vector along with a factor indicating where each observation originated; unstacking reverses this.                        |
| unzip                 | Extracts files from or lists a zip archive.  |
| update.packageStatus  | Summarizes information about installed packages and packages available at various repositories and automatically upgrades outdated packages.   |
| update.packages       | Used to automatically compare the version numbers of installed packages with the newest available version on the repositories and update outdated packages on the fly.                 |
| upgrade               | Summarizes information about installed packages and packages available at various repositories and automatically upgrades outdated packages.   |
| url.show              | Extension of file.show to display text files from a remote server.   |
| vi                    | Invokes a text editor on an R object.  |
| vignette              | Views a specified vignette or lists the available ones.  |
| write.csv, write.csv2 | Convenience wrapper to write.table for producing CSV files from an R object.   |
| write.socket          | read.socket reads a string from the specified socket; write.socket writes to the specified socket. There is very little error checking done by either.                                 |
| write.table           | Prints its required argument x (after converting it to a data frame if it is not one, nor a matrix) to a file or connection.   |
| wsbrowser             | The browseEnv function opens a browser with list of objects currently in the sys.frame() environment.  |

| Function         | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| xedit            | Invokes the xedit editor on an R object.  |
| xemacs           | Invokes the xemacs editor on an R object.   |
| zip.file.extract | Extracts the file named <code>file</code> from the zip archive, if possible, and writes it in a temporary location. |





---

## Bibliography

- [Adler2006] Joseph Adler, *Baseball Hacks: Tips and Tools for Analyzing and Winning with Statistics*, O'Reilly Media, 9780596009427
- [Albert2009] Jim Albert, *Bayesian Computation with R*, Springer, 9780387922973
- [Bivand2008] Roger Bivand, *Applied Spatial Data Analysis with R*, Springer, 9780387781709
- [Chambers2008] John Chambers, *Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R*, Springer, 9780387759357
- [Chatfield2003] Chris Chatfield, *The Analysis of Time Series*, Sixth Edition, Chapman and Hall/CRC, 9781584883173
- [Cleveland1993] William Cleveland, *Visualizing Data*, Hobart Press, 9780963488404
- [Dalgaard2008] Peter Dalgaard, *Introductory Statistics with R*, Second Edition, Springer, 9780387790534
- [Dobson2008] Anette Dobson and Adrian Barnett, *An Introduction to Generalized Linear Models*, Third Edition, Chapman and Hall/CRC, 9781584889502
- [Drake1967] Alvin Drake, *Fundamentals of Applied Probability Theory*, McGraw-Hill, 070178151
- [Ewens2005] Warren Ewens and Gregory Grant, *Statistical Methods in Bioinformatics: An Introduction*, Second Edition, Springer, 9780387400822
- [Foulkes2009] Andrea Foulkes, *Applied Statistical Genetics with R: For Population-Based Association Studies*, Springer, 9780387895536
- [Gelman2003] Andrew Gelman, John Carlin, Hal Stern, and Donald Rubin, *Bayesian Data Analysis*, Second Edition, Chapman and Hall/CRC, 9781584883883

- [Gentleman2005] Robert Gentleman, Vincent Carey, Wolfgang Huber, Rafael Irizarry, and Sandrine Dudoit, *Bioinformatics and Computational Biology Solutions Using R and Bioconductor*, Springer, 9780387251462
- [Greene2007] William Greene, *Econometric Analysis*, Sixth Edition, Prentice Hall, 9780135132456
- [Hahne2008] Florian Hahne, Wolfgang Huber, Robert Gentleman, and Seth Falcon, *Bioconductor Case Studies*, Springer, 9780387772394
- [Hastie2009] Trevor Hastie, Robert Tibshirani, and Jerome Friedman, *The Elements of Statistical Learning: Data Mining, Inference, and Prediction*, Second Edition, Springer, 9780387848570
- [Friedman2008] Trevor Hastie, Robert Tibshirani, and Jerome Friedman Regularization Paths for Generalized Linear Models via Coordinate Descent <http://www.stanford.edu/~hastie/Papers/glmnet.pdf>
- [RADMIN2009] The R Development Core Team, *R Installation and Administration* Version 2.9.2 (2009-08-24), 3900051097, <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-admin.html>
- [RDDATA2009] The R Development Core Team, *R Data Import/Export* Version 2.9.2 (2009-08-24), 3900051100, <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-data.html>
- [REXT2009] The R Development Core Team, *Writing R Extensions* Version 2.9.2 (2009-08-24), 3900051119, <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-exts.html>
- [RInternals2009] The R Development Core Team, *R Internals* Version 2.9.2 (2009-08-24), 3900051143, <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-ints.html>
- [RIntro2009] W. Venables and D. Smith, The R Development Core Team, *An Introduction to R* Version 2.9.2 (2009-08-24), 3900051127, <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-intro.html>
- [RLang2009] The R Development Core Team, *R Language Definition* Version 2.9.2 (2009-08-24), 3900051135, <http://cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-lang.html>
- [Sarkar2008] Deepayan Sarkar, *Lattice: Multivariate Data Visualization with R*, Springer, 9780387759685
- [Venables2002] W. Venables and B. Ripley, *Modern Applied Statistics with S*, Fourth Edition, Springer, 9780387954578
- [Wickham2009] Hadley Wickham, *ggplot2: Elegant Graphics for Data Analysis*, Springer, 9780387981406

# Index

## Symbols

# (pound sign), comments, 21  
\$ (dollar sign) operator, 27  
%do% operator, 75  
%dopar% operator, 75  
() parentheses, expressions, 70  
(OLS) ordinary least squares regression, 412  
\* (asterisk), formulas, 93  
+ (plus sign)  
  formulas, 93  
  incomplete line, 12  
  operator, 28  
-Inf value, 56  
...  
  lattice function argument, 313  
  object type, 85  
.GlobalEnv function, 103  
: operator, 87  
<<- operator, 118  
= (equals sign), assignment operator, 23  
> (greater-than sign), prompt, 12  
[] square brackets, bracket notation for  
  subsets, 188  
^ (caret), formulas, 93  
` ` (backquotes)  
  help, 35

symbols, 65  
{ } curly braces, expressions, 70  
| (vertical bar), formulas, 93  
~ (tilde), formulas, 93  
"" (double quotes), character objects, 64

## A

abbreviate, lattice axes argument, 315  
abline function, 260, 415  
acf function, 221, 495  
Actual Technologies, ODBC drivers, 158  
ada function, 481  
add.line trellis parameter group, 317  
add.text trellis parameter group, 317  
adding objects to environments, 107  
aesthetic properties, 330  
Affymetrix, 526  
aggregate function, 192  
aggregating tables, 193  
alignment and spacing in graphics, 252  
alist function, 116  
allow.multiple, lattice function argument, 312  
AnnotatedDataFrame, 543  
annotation, 248  
anonymous functions, 114  
ANOVA

We'd like to hear your suggestions for improving our indexes. Send email to [index@oreilly.com](mailto:index@oreilly.com).

about, 378–381  
function, 407  
test design, 400  
Ansari-Bradley two-sample test, 388  
any, object type, 85  
apriori function, 485  
ar function, 496  
ARFF file format, 155  
arguments  
    about, 21  
    chart functions, 247  
    common distribution-type arguments, 366  
    functions, 52, 111  
    functions as, 113–117  
        anonymous functions, 114  
        properties, 115  
    named order and name arguments, 117  
arima function, 498  
arrays  
    about, 24, 89  
    functions, 180  
as.table, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
aspect, lattice function argument, 312  
AssayData, 543  
assign function, 102  
assignment operators  
    `<-`, 22  
    `=` (equals sign), 23  
assignments  
    about, 69  
    objects, 54  
assocplot function, 232  
assumptions, least squares regression, 412  
asterisk (\*), formulas, 93  
at, lattice axes argument, 314  
attach function, 103, 107  
attributes, 96–100  
auto.key, lattice function argument, 312  
autocorrelation  
    acf function, 221  
    afc function, 495  
    durbin.watson function, 413  
available.packages command, 44  
axes in graphics, 252  
axis function, 263  
axis, trellis.skeleton argument, 314  
axis.components trellis parameter group, 318  
axis.line trellis parameter group, 317  
axis.text trellis parameter group, 317  
axs, lattice axes argument, 315

## B

background trellis parameter group, 317  
backquotes (` `)  
    help, 35  
    symbols, 65  
bagging  
    classification tree models, 480  
    regression, 446  
bar charts, 222–226, 271, 276–279  
barplot function, 222, 271  
bartlett.test function, 377  
base package, 573–596  
    about, 39  
    data sets, 596  
    functions, 573–596  
baseenv function, 103  
basic classes, list of, 134  
basis functions, 450, 462  
batch mode, 13  
Bernoulli trial, 389  
beta probability distribution function, 367  
between, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
bias units, 456  
bigglm function, 423, 517  
biglm function, 412  
binaries (see byte code compiler; high-performance R binaries)  
binary operators, 66  
binning data, 185  
binom.test function, 390  
binomial  
    probability distribution function, 367  
    tests, 389  
Bioconductor, 525–547  
    about, 41  
    data structures, 541–546  
        AnnotatedDataFrame, 543  
        AssayData, 543  
        eSet, 541  
        MIAME, 544

other classes, 545  
example, 525–537  
    analyzing expression data, 533–537  
    loading from GEO, 530  
    loading raw expression data, 526–529  
    matching phenotype data, 532  
packages, 537  
vignettes, 546  
birthday probability distribution function, 367  
bivariate trellis plots, 297–305  
    box plots, 300  
    quantile-quantile plots, 305  
scatter plot matrices, 304  
    scatter plots, 297  
blackboost function, 447  
body function, 116  
boosting  
    classification tree models, 481  
    regression, 447  
boot  
    function, 361  
    package, 596–605  
        data sets, 598–605  
        functions, 596–598  
bootstrap aggregation, 446  
bootstrapping, 361  
box function, 264  
box plots, 242, 300  
box.3d trellis parameter group, 318  
box.dot trellis parameter group, 317  
box.ratio, lattice function argument, 312  
box.rectangle trellis parameter group, 317  
box.umbrella trellis parameter group, 317  
brackets  
    bracket notation, 188  
    single and double bracket operators, 515  
break keyword, 72  
built-in functions, 508  
builtin object type, 85  
byte code compiler, 518–520  
    inspecting byte code, 519  
    just-in-time compilation, 520  
manual compilation, 518  
bytecode objects, 84

## C

c function, 86, 141  
c(...) function, 20  
call stack, 104  
caret (^), formulas, 93  
CART (classification and regression trees), 439  
cast  
    about, 202  
    using, 204  
categorical data, 227–232  
Cauchy probability distribution function, 367  
cbind function, 174  
ccf function, 496  
cdplot function, 228  
cex function, 315  
cex, lattice axes argument, 314  
channels, RODBC, 162, 167  
character  
    object type, 84  
    vectors, 20, 64  
charts (see graphics)  
chi-squared probability distribution function, 367  
chisq.test function, 392  
Christian Werner Software, ODBC drivers, 159  
class attribute, 97  
class package, 39, 605  
classes, 129–135  
    (see also objects)  
    about, 27, 99  
    basic classes, 134  
    coercion, 131  
    defined, 83  
    defining, 129  
    methods, 131–134  
    objects, 130, 131  
    old-school OOP (S3), 135  
    slots, 130  
    using S3 classes in S4 classes, 137  
classification and regression trees (CART), 439  
classification models, 467–484

linear classification models, 467–476  
    LDA, 472–476  
    log-linear models, 476  
    logistic regression, 467–472  
machine learning algorithms for  
    classification, 477–484  
    k nearest neighbors, 477  
    neural networks, 482  
    random forests, 483  
    SVMs, 483  
    tree models, 478–482  
cleaning data, 205  
cleaning up memory, 516  
clip trellis parameter group, 317  
closure object type, 85  
cloud  
    function, 271, 272, 308  
    Hadoop, 556  
cluster of servers, Hadoop, 553  
cluster package, 39  
    data sets, 607  
    functions, 606  
clustering, 490–494  
    algorithms, 491  
    distance measures, 490  
cmpfun function, 518  
code style standards, 80  
codetools package, 39, 607  
coef function, 405  
coef.glmnet function, 426  
coercion  
    about, 56  
    classes, 131  
col, lattice axes argument, 314  
colors in graphics, 252  
command line  
    about, 11  
    batch mode, 13  
    editing with, 13  
    entering data with, 141  
    finding and installing packages, 44  
comment attribute, 97  
comments, 21  
comparing  
    means, 372–376  
    means across more than two groups  
        (ANOVA), 378–381  
    more than two means, 387  
paired data, 376  
two means, 385  
two populations, 377  
variances, 387  
compiler  
    package, 39  
    R byte code compiler, 518–520  
complex numbers  
    about, 64  
    object type, 84  
composition, 122  
compound  
    built-in types, 134  
    objects, 83  
Comprehensive R Archive Network  
    (CRAN), 41  
conditional  
    density, 228  
    statements, 71  
confint function, 407  
connections, 96  
console (see R console)  
constants, 63–66  
    character vectors, 64  
    numeric vectors, 63  
    symbols, 65  
contingency tables, 229, 390  
continuous data, 371–388  
    non-parametric tests, 385–388  
        comparing more than two means,  
            387  
        comparing two means, 385  
        comparing variances, 387  
        difference in scale parameters, 388  
    normal distribution-based tests, 372–  
        385  
        comparing means, 372–376  
        comparing means across more than  
            two groups (ANOVA),  
            378–381  
        comparing paired data, 376  
        comparing two populations, 377  
        correlation tests, 384  
        pairwise t-tests between multiple  
            groups, 381  
        testing for normality, 382

- testing if a data vector came from an arbitrary distribution, 382
- testing if two data vectors came from the same distribution, 383
- contour function, 238, 271
- contourplot function, 271, 272, 307
- control structures, 71–75
- conditional statements, 71
  - loops, 72–75
- coordinates, 331
- cor function, 355
- cor.test function, 384
- correlation
- about, 354
  - tests, 384
- correlogram, 221
- counting values, 194–196
- covariance
- about, 354
  - function, 356
- cox.zph function, 433
- coxph function, 432
- CRAN (Comprehensive R Archive Network), 41
- cross-correlation, 496
- CSV files, 149
- curly braces {}, expressions, 70
- curve function, 259
- cut function, 186, 302
- D**
- daisy function, 491
- data, 141–172, 173–208
- (see also exporting data; importing)
- binning, 185
  - categorical data, 227–232
  - cleaning, 205
  - combining data sets, 173–179
    - merging data by common fields, 177
    - pasting together data structures, 174
  - continuous data, 371–388
  - discrete data, 388–396
  - duplicates, 205
  - entering, 141–145
- with commands, 141
- edit GUI, 142
- exporting, 155
- expression data, 533–537
- Hadoop, 172
- importing, 146–155
- databases, 156–172
  - other software, 154
  - text files, 146–154
- lattice function argument, 312
- reshaping, 196–205
- saving, 145
  - sorting, 206–208
  - subsets, 187–190
    - bracket notation, 188
    - random sampling, 189
    - subset function, 188
- summarizing functions, 190–205
- aggregating tables with rowsum, 193
  - counting values, 194–196
  - reshaping functions, 196–205
  - tapply function, 190–192
- tabular data, 390–396
- three-dimensional data, 232
- time series, 495–500
- about, 94
  - autocorrelation functions, 495
  - models, 496–500
  - OOP, 122
  - plotting, 220
- transformations, 179–184
- applying a function to each element of an object, 180–184
  - reassigning variables, 179
  - transform function, 179
- Data Direct, ODBC drivers, 158
- data frames
- about, 26, 91
  - reshaping, 197–202
  - transposing, 197
- data mining, 485
- data sets
- base package, 596
  - boot package, 598–605
  - cluster package, 607
  - datasets package, 39
  - grDevices package, 612

lattice package, 621  
MASS package, 624–630  
rpart package, 639  
stats package, 658  
survival package, 660  
tools package, 664  
data structures, 75–79  
about, 24–27  
Bioconductor, 541–546  
    >AnnotatedDataFrame, 543  
    >AssayData, 543  
    >eSet, 541  
    >MIAME, 544  
    other classes, 545  
indexing by integer vector, 76  
indexing by logical vector, 78  
indexing by name, 79  
operators, 75  
    pasting together, 174  
data types, trellis functions, 271  
data.dump file format, 155  
data.frame function, 142  
databases  
    importing, 156–172  
        DBI, 167–171  
        export then import, 156  
        packages, 156  
        RODBC, 157–167  
        TSBDI, 172  
    querying large data sets, 516  
dates, 95  
dbClearResult function, 171  
dbConnect function, 168  
dbDisconnect function, 171  
dbExistsTable function, 171  
DBF file format, 155  
dbGetException function, 171  
dbGetInfo function, 169  
dbGetQuery function, 170  
DBI, 167–171  
    about, 156  
    cleaning up, 171  
    getting information, 168  
    opening a connection, 168  
    querying, 170  
dbListConnections function, 169  
dbListFields function, 170  
dbListTables function, 169  
dbReadTable function, 171  
dbRemoveTable function, 171  
dbSendQuery function, 170  
dbUnloadDriver function, 171  
dbWriteTable function, 171  
default.scales, lattice function argument, 313  
delayedAssign function, 102  
delimited files, importing, 146–150  
delimiters, 146  
dendrogram, 237  
density  
    function, 271  
    plots, 285  
densityplot function, 271  
deparse function, 61  
Depends, 47  
descriptive models, 28  
detach function, 103  
dev.off function, 247  
deviance function, 409  
devtools library, 45  
dim attribute, 97  
dimnames attribute, 97  
discrete data, 388–396  
    binomial tests, 389  
    non-parametric tabular data tests, 396  
    proportion tests, 388  
    tabular data tests, 390–395  
dist function, 490  
distance measures, clustering, 490  
distributions  
    common distribution-type arguments, 366  
    distribution function families, 366  
    normal distribution, 363  
    plotting, 239  
dollar sign (\$) operator, 27  
doMC package, 572  
dot plots, 280  
dot.line trellis parameter group, 317  
dot.symbol trellis parameter group, 317  
dotchart function, 271  
dotplot function, 34, 271, 280  
double object type, 84  
double quotes (""), character objects, 64  
download.packages command, 44  
draw, lattice axes argument, 314

drivers, ODBC, 158  
drop.unused.levels, lattice function  
    argument, 313  
dumpMethod function, 133  
dumpMethods function, 133  
duplicates, data, 205  
durbin.watson function, 413

**E**

earth function, 450  
Easysoft, ODBC drivers, 158  
eclat function, 488  
edit function, 142  
editing, command-line, 13  
effects function, 408  
elasticnet, 419  
elements  
    applying a function to each element of  
        an object, 180–184  
    vector, 22  
Emacs, 17  
empty environment, 104  
emptyenv function, 103  
enableJIT function, 520  
encapsulation, 122  
enet function, 420  
environments, 101–110  
    about, 102  
    exceptions, 108–110  
        catching errors, 109  
        signaling errors, 108  
functions, 104–108  
    adding objects to, 107  
    call stack, 104  
    environment function, 103  
    evaluating, 105  
global environment, 103  
object type, 85  
environment objects in place of vectors,  
    515  
side effects, 118  
    symbols, 52, 101  
Epi Info file format, 155  
equals sign (=), assignment operator, 23  
Erlang's B formula, 508  
errors  
    catching errors, 109  
    signaling errors, 108

eSet, 541  
ESS (Emacs Speaks Statistics), 17  
estimators, bootstrapping, 361  
eval.parent function, 106  
evalq function, 106  
evaluating functions in different  
    environments, 105

Excel  
    about, 14  
    charts, 30  
    text files, 149  
exceptions, 108–110  
    catching errors, 109  
    signaling errors, 108  
exists function, 102  
existsMethod function, 133  
experimental design example, 397  
exponential probability distribution  
    function, 367  
exporting data  
    about, 155  
    export then import, 156  
expressions, 69  
    (see also functions; operators;  
        operations)  
    about, 51, 69  
    analyzing data from, 533–537  
    character vectors, 20  
    object type, 85  
    R interpreter, 58  
externalptr object type, 86

## F

F-distribution probability distribution  
    function, 367  
faceting options, 347  
facets, 331  
factanal function, 360  
factors  
    about, 89  
    analysis, 360  
Fibonacci sequence, 20  
fields, merging data by common fields,  
    177  
findFunction function, 133  
findMethod function, 134  
fisher.test function, 391  
fitted function, 406

fix function, 142  
fixed-width files, importing, 150  
Fligner-Killeen (median) test, 387  
font  
  lattice axes argument, 314  
  specifying, 252  
fontface, lattice axes argument, 314  
fontfamily, lattice axes argument, 314  
fontsize trellis parameter group, 317  
foreach loops, 74  
foreign package, 39, 607  
forests  
  random forests for classification, 483  
  random forests for regression, 448  
formals function, 116  
format, lattice axes argument, 315  
formula function, 405  
formulas, 28, 92  
frames, defined, 101  
Friedman rank sum test, 396  
Friedman's supersmoother function, 459  
from.dfs function, 562  
functions, 111–119  
  about, 21, 52, 84, 111  
  applying to  
    arrays, 180  
    lists and vectors, 182  
  arguments  
    about, 111  
    functions as, 113–117  
    named order and name arguments, 117  
base package, 573–596  
big data sets, 517  
boot package, 596–598  
built-in functions, 508  
built-in types, 134  
class package, 605  
cluster package, 606  
coercion, 56  
environments, 104–108  
  adding objects to, 107  
  call stack, 104  
  evaluating, 105  
graphics functions, 257–265  
graphics packages, 612–615  
grDevices package, 608–612  
helper functions for specifying linear regression models, 404  
KernSmooth package, 615  
lattice, 270, 272–311, 312, 322  
lattice package, 616–621  
lm function, 410–415  
MASS package, 621–624  
methods package, 630–637  
nnet package, 638  
R interpreter, 58  
return values, 113  
rpart package, 638  
side effects, 118  
  changes to other environments, 118  
  graphics, 119  
  I/O, 119  
spatial package, 639  
splines package, 640  
stats package, 641–658  
stats4 package, 658  
summarizing functions, 190–205  
survival package, 659  
tools package, 662  
utils package, 664–671

## G

gam function, 462  
gamma probability distribution function, 367  
gc function, 505, 516  
generalized  
  additive models, 462  
  linear models (GLMs), 421–424  
generic functions  
  about, 27, 125  
  coercion, 56  
  S3 classes, 136  
GEO, loading data from, 530  
geometric  
  functions, 344  
  objects, 330  
  probability distribution function, 367  
get function, 102  
getCompilerOption function, 519  
getMethod function, 133  
ggplot2, 325–347  
  about, 325–328

example: Medicare data, 333–342  
grammar, 328  
qplot function, 342  
using, 343–347  
glm function, 422, 469  
glmnet package, 424  
global environment, 103  
globalenv function, 103  
graphics, 213–265, 325–347  
(see also lattice graphics)  
about, 30  
bar charts, 222–226  
basic functions, 257–265  
abline function, 260  
axis function, 263  
box function, 264  
curve function, 259  
legend function, 261  
lines function, 258  
mtext function, 264  
points function, 258  
polygon function, 261  
segments function, 261  
text function, 259  
title function, 263  
trans3d function, 265  
box plots, 242  
categorical data, 227–232  
common arguments to chart functions,  
    247  
distributions, 239  
ggplot2, 325–347  
    about, 325–328  
    example: Medicare data, 333–342  
    grammar, 328  
    qplot function, 342  
    using, 343–347  
graphical parameters, 247–257  
    annotation, 248  
    axes, 252  
    colors, 252  
    line properties in graphics, 252  
    list of, 253–257  
    margins, 248  
    multiple plots, 249  
    points, 252  
    text properties, 251  
graphics devices, 246  
package, 39, 612–615  
pie charts, 226  
scatter plots, 214–220  
side effects, 119  
three-dimensional data, 232  
time series, 220  
grDevices package, 608–612  
    about, 39  
    data sets, 612  
    functions, 608–612  
greater-than sign (>), prompt, 12  
grid package, 39, 615  
grid.pars trellis parameter group, 317  
groups  
    lattice function argument, 312  
    Trellis, 278  
GUIs (see R GUIs)

## H

Hadoop, 549–571  
    about, 172  
    cluster of servers, 553  
    distributed data storage, 552  
Java framework, 553  
Map/Reduce, 550  
RHadoop, 554–568  
    example application, 559–566  
    installing locally, 555–559  
    rnr function, 566  
    streaming, 568–570  
HAMD (Hamilton Rating Scale for  
    Depression), 397  
hasMethod function, 133  
heatmap function, 237  
help system, 35  
heteroscedasticity, 413  
high-performance R binaries, 520–524  
    Linux and Unix, 523  
    Mac OS X, 524  
    Revolution R, 520  
    Windows, 521  
histograms  
    about, 282  
    function, 271  
    plotting, 239  
horizontal, lattice function argument,  
    312

hypergeometric probability distribution function, 368

## I

I/O, side effects, 119  
IDE (Integrated Development Environment), RStudio, 15  
identify function, 216  
image function, 236, 271  
immutable objects, 54  
importing, 146–155  
  databases, 156–172  
    DBI, 167–171  
    export then import, 156  
    packages, 156  
    RODBC, 157–167  
    TSBDI, 172  
  from GEO, 530  
  other software, 154  
raw expression data, 526–529  
text files, 146–154  
  delimited files, 146–150  
  fixed-width files, 150  
  other functions to parse data, 152  
index.cond, trellis.skeleton argument, 314  
indexing  
  by element name, 79  
  by integer vector, 76  
  by logical vector, 78  
indices, vectors, 22  
Inf value, 56  
influence function, 407  
inheritance, 122  
inspect function, 489  
install.packages, 44  
installation, 3–6  
  Linux and Unix, 5  
  Mac OS X, 5  
  packages, 42–45  
  RExcel, 14  
  RHadoop, 555–559  
  RODBC, 157  
  Windows, 4  
installed.packages command, 44  
integers  
  factors, 90  
  object type, 84

R expressions, 64  
vectors, indexing by, 76  
Integrated Development Environment (IDE), RStudio, 15  
internal objects, about, 84  
interpreter, 11, 57  
interquartile range, 242  
IQR function, 352  
isGeneric function, 133  
isGroup function, 133  
iterative algorithms, 507  
iterators, 74

## J

Java framework, Hadoop, 553  
just-in-time compilation, 520

## K

k nearest neighbors, 477  
Kendall's tau, 354  
kernel smoothing, 436  
KernSmooth package, 39, 615  
key, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
kmeans function, 491  
knn function, 477  
Kolmogorov-Smirnov test, 382  
Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test, 387  
ks.test function, 383  
ksvm, 465

## L

labeled.array function, 510  
labels, lattice axes argument, 314  
language, object type, 85  
lars function, 419  
lasso, 418  
lattice graphics, 267–323  
  about, 267–272  
  customizing, 312–322  
    axes, 314  
    function arguments, 312  
    parameters, 315–319  
    plot.trellis, 319  
    simpleKey, 321  
    strip.default, 320  
    trellis.skeleton, 313  
  functions, 272–311, 322

about, 270  
bivariate trellis plots, 297–305  
low-level graphics functions, 322  
panel functions, 323  
rfs function, 310  
trivariate trellis plots, 305–310  
univariate trellis plots, 273–296

**lattice** package, 616–621  
about, 39  
data sets, 621  
functions, 616–621

**lattice.options**, lattice function argument, 313

**layout**, trellis.skeleton argument, 313

**layout.heights** trellis parameter group, 318

**layout.widths** trellis parameter group, 318

**LazyData**, 46

**LazyLoad**, 46

**LDA** (Linear discriminant analysis), 472–476

least angle regression, 418

least squares regression  
assumptions, 412  
nonlinear least squares, 427

legend  
function, 261

**trellis.skeleton** argument, 313

**levelplot** function, 271, 272, 305

levels, factors, 89, 97

libraries  
devtools library, 45  
maptree library, 479  
plyr library, 183  
reshape library, 202  
RODBC library, 166  
survival library, 428

**library()** command, 40

limits, lattice axes argument, 314

line properties in graphics, 252

linear classification models, 467–476  
LDA, 472–476  
log-linear models, 476  
logistic regression, 467–472

Linear discriminant analysis (LDA), 472–476

linear models, 401–410

analyzing the fit, 407  
fitting a model, 403  
GLMs, 421–424  
helper functions for specifying the model, 404  
predicting values, 406  
refining the model, 410  
viewing, 404

linear predictors, 421

**lines** function, 258

**Linux**  
data editor, 144  
high-performance R binaries, 523  
installing R, 5  
loading packages, 40  
R GUI, 9

listings of packages, 38

lists  
about, 25  
applying functions to, 182  
object type, 84  
objects, 87

**lm** function, 29, 380, 403, 410–415, 411, 469  
assumptions of least squares regression, 412

**lm**, **lqs** and **rim**, 415  
resistant regression, 414  
robust regression, 414

**lm.ridge** function, 418

**lmRob** function, 415

loading, 146  
(see also importing)  
function, 145  
objects, 145  
packages, 40

**local** function, 106

**locator** function, 216

**locfit** function, 437

**locpoly** function, 436

**loess** function, 435

**log**, lattice axes argument, 315

log-linear models, 476

log-normal probability distribution function, 368

logical  
object type, 84  
vectors, 23

- logistic  
  probability distribution function, 368  
  regression, 467–472
- loglm function, 476
- lookup performance, 509–515  
  environment objects in place of vectors, 515
- R objects, 510–515
- loops, 72–75
- lqs, 415
- ## M
- Mac OS X  
  data editor, 142  
  finding and installing packages, 43  
  high-performance R binaries, 524  
  installing R, 5  
  loading packages, 40  
  R GUI, 8  
  SQLite ODBC example, 159
- machine learning algorithms  
  clustering, 490–494  
  algorithms, 491  
  distance measures, 490  
  market basket analysis, 485–490
- machine learning algorithms for  
  classification, 477–484
- k nearest neighbors, 477
- neural networks, 482
- random forests, 483
- SVMs, 483
- tree models, 478–482  
  bagging, 480  
  boosting, 481
- machine learning algorithms for  
  regression, 437–465
- generalized additive models, 462
- MARS, 450–455
- neural networks, 455–459
- projection pursuit regression, 459–461
- regression tree models, 439–450  
  bagging, 446  
  boosting, 447  
  patient rule induction method, 446  
  random forests, 448  
  recursive partitioning trees, 439–446
- SVMs, 464
- main, trellis.skeleton argument, 313
- make.groups function, 187, 402
- manual compilation, 518
- Map/Reduce, Hadoop, 550
- mappings, 330
- mapply function, 183
- mapreduce function, 561, 566
- maptree library, 479
- margins, 248
- market basket analysis, 485–490
- MARS, 450–455
- MASS package, 621–630  
  about, 39  
  data sets, 624–630  
  functions, 621–624
- matplot function, 218
- matrices  
  about, 88  
  reshaping, 197–202  
  scatter plot matrices, 304  
  transposing, 197
- max function, 351
- MDA (mixture discriminant analysis), 475
- mean function, 351
- means  
  comparing, 372–376  
  comparing means across more than  
    two groups (ANOVA), 378–381  
  comparing two means, 385
- Medicare data example, 333–342
- medoids, 493
- melt  
  about, 202  
  using, 203
- melt.data.frame function, 203
- mem.limits function, 517
- memory usage  
  cleaning up, 516  
  measuring R performance, 505–507  
  preallocating, 516
- memory.profile function, 506
- merging data by common data fields, 177
- message function, 109
- metadata, 533
- methods, 131–134

about, 27  
classes, 132  
coercion, 131  
managing, 133  
old-school OOP (S3), 136, 137  
package, 39, 630–637  
`mgcv` package, 39, 637  
**MIAME** (Minimum Information About a Microarray Experiment), 544  
**Microsoft Excel**  
about, 14  
charts, 30  
text files, 149  
**Microsoft Windows**  
data editor, 142  
devices, 246  
finding and installing packages, 42  
high-performance R binaries, 521  
installing R, 4  
loading packages, 40  
R GUI, 8  
SQLite ODBC example, 161  
**Microsoft**, ODBC drivers, 158  
**min** function, 351  
**Minimum Information About a Microarray Experiment (MIAME)**, 544  
**Minitab** file format, 155  
**minlength**, *lattice* axes argument, 315  
**mixture discriminant analysis (MDA)**, 475  
**models**, 28–30  
(see also classification models; linear classification models; linear models; non-linear models; regression model; regression tree models)  
log-linear models, 476  
survival models, 428–433  
time series models, 496–500  
`mosaicplot` function, 229  
`mtext` function, 264  
multicollinearity, 417  
`multinom` function, 470  
multinomial distribution probability distribution function, 368  
multiple inheritance, 123  
**MySQL**  
ODBC drivers, 158  
text files, 150

## N

NA value, 55  
named arguments, 117  
names  
attribute, 97  
indexing by element name, 79  
lists, 87  
namespaces, trellis, 315  
NaN value, 56  
`ncvTest` function, 413  
negative binomial probability distribution function, 368  
neural networks, 455–459, 482  
`new.env` function, 103  
`new.packages` command, 44  
`next` command, 72  
**NHTSA** (National Highway Traffic Safety Administration), 280  
`nlme` package, 39, 637  
`nls` function, 427  
`nnet`  
function, 457  
package, 39, 637  
non-parametric tests, 385–388  
comparing  
more than two means, 387  
two means, 385  
variances, 387  
difference in scale parameters, 388  
tabular data, 396  
nonlinear models, 420–428  
`glmnet` package, 424  
GLMs, 421–424  
nonlinear least squares, 427  
normal distribution, 363  
normal distribution-based tests, 372–385  
comparing  
means, 372–376  
means across more than two groups (ANOVA), 378–381  
paired data, 376  
two populations, 377  
correlation tests, 384  
pairwise t-tests between multiple groups, 381  
testing

for normality, 382  
if a data vector came from an arbitrary distribution, 382  
if two data vectors came from the same distribution, 383  
normal probability distribution function, 368  
normality, testing for, 382  
NULL  
    object type, 85  
    value, 56  
numeric vectors, 63

## 0

object.size function, 506  
objects, 83–100  
    (see also classes)  
    about, 27, 52, 55  
    adding to environments, 107  
    AnnotatedDataFrame, 543  
    applying a function to each element, 180–184  
    arrays, 89  
    AssayData, 543  
    assignment statements, 54  
    attributes, 96–100  
    combining with grouping variable, 187  
    connections, 96  
    data frames, 91  
    dates and times, 95  
    environment objects in place of vectors, 515  
    factors, 89  
    formulas, 92  
    function, 102  
    geometric objects, 330  
    lists, 87  
    lookup performance, 510–515  
    matrices, 88  
    primitive object types, 83–86  
    saving and loading, 145  
    shingles, 95  
    time series, 94  
    vectors, 86  
Octave file format, 155  
ODBC (see RODBC)

odbcClose function, 167  
odbcCloseAll function, 167  
odbcColumns function, 167  
odbcConnect function, 162  
odbcFetchResults function, 167  
odbcGetErrMsg function, 167  
odbcGetInfo function, 163  
odbcPrimaryKeys function, 167  
odbcQuery function, 167  
odbcTables function, 167  
old.packages command, 44  
OOP (object-oriented programming), 121–137  
    about, 122  
    classes, 129–135  
        basic classes, 134  
        coercion, 131  
        defining, 129  
        methods, 131–134  
        objects, 130, 131  
        slots, 130  
    example, 123–128  
    old-school OOP (S3), 135–137  
        classes, 135, 137  
        methods, 136, 137  
OpenLink Software, ODBC drivers, 159  
operations, 19  
    (see also functions)  
operators, 66–69  
    assignments, 69  
    data structures, 75  
    examples of, 21  
    order of operations, 67  
optimization, 503–524  
    high-performance R binaries, 520–524  
        Linux and Unix, 523  
        Mac OS X, 524  
        Revolution R, 520  
        Windows, 521  
    measuring R performance, 503–507  
        memory usage, 505–507  
        profiling, 504, 506  
        timing, 503  
    R byte code compiler, 518–520  
        inspecting byte code, 519  
        just-in-time compilation, 520  
        manual compilation, 518  
    R code, 507–517

cleaning up memory, 516  
databases to query large data sets,  
    516  
functions for big data sets, 517  
lookup performance, 509–515  
preallocating memory, 516  
vector operations, 507

Oracle, ODBC drivers, 158

order  
    arguments, 117  
    function, 207  
    of operations, 67

ordinary least squares (OLS) regression,  
    412

OS X (see Mac OS X)

outer, lattice function argument, 312

**P**

pacf function, 495

package management systems, installing  
    R, 5

package.skeleton function, 45

packages, 37–47  
    about, 37  
    base package, 573–596  
        data sets, 596  
        functions, 573–596  
    Bioconductor, 537  
    boot package, 596–605  
        data sets, 598–605  
        functions, 596–598  
    class package, 605  
    cluster package, 606  
        data sets, 607  
        functions, 606  
    codetools package, 607  
    custom packages, 45–47  
        building, 47  
        creating, 45  
DBI, 167–171  
foreign package, 607  
graphics package, 612–615  
grDevices package, 608–612  
    data sets, 612  
    functions, 608–612  
grid package, 615  
importing databases, 156  
KernSmooth package, 615

lattice package, 616–621  
    data sets, 621  
    functions, 616–621  
listings of, 38  
loading, 40  
MASS package, 621–630  
    data sets, 624–630  
    functions, 621–624  
methods package, 630–637

mgcv package, 637

nlme package, 637

nnet package, 637

repositories, 41–45  
    finding and installing packages, 42–45  
    Web, 42

rpart package, 638  
    data sets, 639  
    functions, 638

spatial package, 639

splines package, 640

stats package, 641–658  
    data set, 658  
    functions, 641–658

stats4 package, 658

survival package, 658–662  
    data sets, 660  
    functions, 659

tcltk package, 662

tools package, 662  
    data sets, 664  
    functions, 662

utils package, 664–671

page, trellis.skeleton argument, 313

pairlists object type, 84

pairs function, 271

pairwise t-tests between multiple groups,  
    381

pam function, 493

panel functions  
    about, 268  
    custom, 272

panel, lattice function argument, 312

par function, 248, 253, 315

par.main.text trellis parameter group,  
    318

par.settings, trellis.skeleton argument,  
    314

`par.strip.text`, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
`par.sub.text` trellis parameter group, 318  
`par.xlab.text` trellis parameter group, 318  
`par.ylab.text` trellis parameter group, 318  
`par.zlab.text` trellis parameter group, 318  
parallel computing, 549  
package, 39  
parameters difference in scale parameters, 388 graphical, 253–257 lattice graphics, 315–319  
`parent.env` function, 103  
`parent.frame` function, 105  
parentheses (), expressions, 70  
partial least square regression, 420  
`paste` function, 174  
patient rule induction method (PRIM), 446  
`pcr` function, 420  
Pearson correlation statistic, 354  
performance (see optimization)  
Perl reprocessing data files, 151 translating files, 274  
`persp` function, 234, 271  
pie charts, 226  
piecewise linear functions, 450  
`plot` function, 214, 220, 409  
`plot.args`, trellis.skeleton argument, 314  
`plot.density` function, 271  
`plot.earth` function, 454  
`plot.glmnet` function, 427  
`plot.polygon` trellis parameter group, 317  
`plot.symbol` trellis parameter group, 317  
`plot.trellis`, 319  
`plotcp` function, 444  
`plotmo` function, 454  
plotting functions, 272–311 bivariate trellis plots, 297–305 box plots, 300 quantile-quantile plots, 305 scatter plot matrices, 304 scatter plots, 297  
`rfs` function, 310 trivariate trellis plots, 305–310 cloud plots, 308  
contour plots, 307 level plots, 305 wire-frame plots, 310 univariate trellis plots, 273–296 bar charts, 276–279 density plots, 285 dot plots, 280 histograms, 282 quantile-quantile plots, 288–296 strip plots, 286  
`plsR` function, 420 plus sign (+) formulas, 93 incomplete line, 12 operator, 28  
`plyr` library, 183  
`png` function, 247  
`pnorm` function, 363 points function, 258 in graphics, 252  
Poisson probability distribution function, 368  
`polr` function, 472  
`poly` function, 404  
`Polygon` function, 261 polymorphism, 122 polynomial surfaces, fitting, 435 position functions, 347 positional adjustments, 331  
POSIXct, 95  
POSIXlt, 95 PostgreSQL, ODBC drivers, 158 pound sign (#), comments, 21 power tests, 397–400 ANOVA test design, 400 experimental design example, 397 proportion test design, 398 t-test design, 398  
`power.anova.test` function, 400  
`power.prop.test` function, 398  
`power.t.test` function, 398  
`ppr` function, 459  
`prcomp` function, 357 preallocating memory, 516  
`predict` function, 406, 498 predictive models, 28  
prepanel, `lattice` function argument, 312

PRIM (patient rule induction method), 446  
primitive  
  functions, 59  
  object types, 83–86  
principal components  
  analysis, 357–360  
  regression, 420  
princomp function, 358  
printcp function, 479  
probability distributions, 363–369  
  common distribution-type arguments, 366  
  distribution function families, 366  
  normal distribution, 363  
profiling  
  measuring R performance, 504  
  memory usage, 506  
projection pursuit regression, 459–461  
promise object type, 85  
prompt, 12  
prop.test function, 388  
properties  
  functions as arguments, 115  
  text, 251  
proportion tests  
  about, 388  
  design, 398

## Q

QDA (quadratic discriminant analysis), 473  
qnorm function, 364  
qplot function, 342  
qq function, 271  
qqmath function, 271, 290  
qqnorm function, 241, 271  
qqplot function, 242, 271  
quantile function, 352  
quantile-quantile plots  
  about, 241  
  bivariate, 305  
  univariate, 288–296  
quasi function, 423  
querying, DBI, 170

**R**  
R console  
  about, 11  
  finding and installing packages, 43  
R data editor versus spreadsheets, 144  
R GUIs, 7–11  
  Linux and Unix, 9  
  Mac OS X, 8  
  Windows, 8  
R language, 51–61  
  built-in types, 134  
  coercion, 56  
  example, 59  
  expressions, 51  
  functions, 52  
  interpreter, 57  
  objects  
    about, 52, 55, 83  
    assignment statements, 54  
  special values, 55  
  symbols, 52  
R Productivity Environment, 11  
R Studio, 11  
R-Forge, 42  
random  
  forests  
    classification, 483  
    function, 449  
    regression, 448  
  sampling, 189  
range function, 352  
rApache, 17  
raw object type, 84  
rbind function, 174  
rbsurv function, 534  
Rcmdr, 10  
read.csv function, 148  
read.delim function, 148  
read.fwf function, 150  
read.table function, 146  
ReadAffy function, 526  
readLines function, 152  
reassigning variables, 179  
recursive partitioning trees, 439–446  
regions trellis parameter group, 317  
regression model, 401–465  
  linear model example, 401–410

analyzing the fit, 407  
fitting a model, 403  
helper functions for specifying the model, 404  
predicting values, 406  
refining the model, 410  
viewing, 404

`lm` function, 410–415  
assumptions of least squares regression, 412  
`lm`, `lqs` and `rim`, 415  
resistant regression, 414  
robust regression, 414

logistic regression, 467–472

machine learning algorithms for regression, 437–465  
generalized additive models, 462  
`MARS`, 450–455  
neural networks, 455–459  
projection pursuit regression, 459–461  
regression tree models, 439–450  
`SVMs`, 464

nonlinear models, 420–428  
`glmnet` package, 424  
`GLMs`, 421–424  
nonlinear least squares, 427  
smoothing, 433–437  
fitting polynomial surfaces, 435  
kernel smoothing, 436  
splines, 433

subset selection and shrinkage methods, 416–420  
`elasticnet`, 419  
lasso and least angle regression, 418

principal components regression and partial least square regression, 420

ridge regression, 417

stepwise variable selection, 416

survival models, 428–433

regression tree models, 439–450  
bagging, 446  
boosting, 447  
patient rule induction method, 446  
random forests, 448  
recursive partitioning trees, 439–446

relation, lattice axes argument, 314  
relationships, variables, 28  
remove function, 102  
`remove.packages` command, 44  
`removeGeneric` function, 133  
`removeMethods` function, 133  
repositories, 41–45  
finding and installing packages, 42–45  
Web, 42

reshaping data, 196–205

residuals  
about, 410  
function, 406

resistant regression, 414

`retracemen` function, 507

return values, functions, 113

Revolution R, 520

RExcel, 14

`rfs` function, 310

RGB (red/green/blue) components, 252

RHadoop, 554–568  
example application, 559–566  
installing locally, 555–559  
`rnr` function, 566

ridge functions, 459

ridge regression, 417

`rim`, 415

Rkward, 10

`rlm` function, 414

`rm` function, 103, 517

`rnr` function, 566

`rnorm` function, 365

robust regression, 414

RODBC, 157–167  
about, 156  
installation, 157–161  
library, 166  
using, 162–167

`rot`, lattice axes argument, 315

rotation, in graphics, 252

`row.names` attribute, 97

`rowsum` function, 193

`rpart`  
function, 440  
model, 480  
package  
about, 39, 638  
data sets, 639

functions, 638  
Rprof function, 504  
Rprofmem function, 506  
RScript command, 14  
Rserve, 17  
Rtools, 521

**S**

S3 binary file format, 155  
S4 object type, 84  
sampling  
  function, 438  
  random sampling, 189  
San Francisco real estate prices data set,  
  294  
sapply function, 113, 182  
SAS Permanent Dataset file format, 155  
SAS XPORT File file format, 155  
save function, 107, 145  
save.image function, 145  
saving objects, 145  
scale  
  functions, 346  
  parameters, difference in, 388  
scales  
  about, 331  
  lattice function argument, 312  
scan function, 153  
scatter plots  
  bivariate trellis plots, 297  
  lattice, 269  
  matrices, 304  
  using, 214–220  
scripts, executing, 14  
search function, 102  
searchpaths function, 102  
segments function, 261  
segue package, 571  
selectMethod function, 133  
seq function, 87  
servers  
  Hadoop, 553  
  Rserve, 17  
setAs function, 131  
setClass function, 129  
setClassUnion function, 130  
setCompilerOptions function, 519  
setGeneric function, 125, 132, 133  
setIs function, 130  
setMethod function, 133  
setOldClass function, 137  
setRepositories command, 44  
setValidity function, 124, 130  
shade.colors trellis parameter group, 317  
Shapiro-Wilk test, 382  
shingles, 95, 185  
show.settings function, 316  
showMethods function, 134  
shrinkage methods (see subset selection  
  and shrinkage methods)  
side effects, 118  
sigmoid function, 457  
signaling errors, 108  
simpleKey function, 321  
skip, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
slots, classes, 130  
smooth.spline function, 433  
smoothing, 433–437  
  fitting polynomial surfaces, 435  
  kernel smoothing, 436  
  splines, 433  
smoothScatter function, 219, 355  
sorting data, 206–208  
source code, building R from, 4  
spatial package, 39, 639  
Spearman correlation statistic, 354  
special  
  built-in types, 134  
  object type, 85  
  objects, 83  
  values, 55  
splinefun function, 434  
splines  
  about, 433  
  function, 433  
  package, 39, 640  
splom function, 271, 304  
spreadsheets versus the R data editor,  
  144  
SPSS file format, 155  
sqlColumns function, 163  
sqlFetch function, 164  
sqlGetResults function, 166  
SQLite  
  ODBC on Mac OS X example, 159  
  ODBC on Windows example, 161

sqlPrimaryKeys function, 164  
sqlQuery function, 166  
sqlTables function, 163  
sqrt function, 64  
square brackets [], bracket notation for subsets, 188  
standards, code style, 80  
Stata file format, 155  
statistical tests, 371–396  
    continuous data, 371–388  
    non-parametric tests, 385–388  
    normal distribution-based tests, 372–385  
    discrete data, 388–396  
        binomial tests, 389  
        non-parametric tabular data tests, 396  
        proportion tests, 388  
        tabular data tests, 390–395  
statistical transformations, 331  
stats package, 641–658  
    about, 39  
    data set, 658  
    functions, 641–658  
stats4 package, 39, 658  
stem function, 353  
step function, 417  
stepAIC function, 417  
stepwise variable selection, 416  
stop function, 108  
str function, 353  
strata function, 474  
streaming, Hadoop, 568–570  
strings, 21  
strip, lattice function argument, 312  
strip.background trellis parameter group, 317  
strip.border trellis parameter group, 317  
strip.default, 320  
strip.left, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
strip.shingle trellis parameter group, 317  
stripchart function, 271  
stripplot function, 271, 286  
studentized range distribution probability distribution function, 369  
student's t-distribution probability distribution function, 368  
sub, trellis.skeleton argument, 313  
subscripts, lattice function argument, 313  
subset selection and shrinkage methods, 416–420  
    elasticnet, 419  
    lasso and least angle regression, 418  
    principal components regression and partial least square regression, 420  
    ridge regression, 417  
    stepwise variable selection, 416  
subset, lattice function argument, 313  
subsets, 187–190  
    bracket notation, 188  
    function, 353  
    random sampling, 189  
    subset function, 188  
summary  
    function, 29, 352, 405, 489  
    statistics, 351–353  
summaryRprof function, 504  
superpose.line trellis parameter group, 317  
superpose.polygon trellis parameter group, 317  
superpose.symbol trellis parameter group, 317  
surrogate variables, 440  
survexp function, 431  
survfit function, 428  
survival  
    models, 428–433  
    package, 658–662  
        about, 40  
        data sets, 660  
        functions, 659  
survreg function, 430  
SVMs (support vector machines)  
    machine learning algorithms for classification, 483  
    machine learning algorithms for regression, 464  
symbols  
    about, 52, 65, 101  
    object type, 85  
syntactic sugar, 60  
syntax, 63–81  
    code style standards, 80  
    constants, 63–66

character vectors, 64  
numeric vectors, 63  
symbols, 65  
control structures, 71–75  
conditional statements, 71  
loops, 72–75  
data structures, 75–79  
indexing by integer vector, 76  
indexing by logical vector, 78  
indexing by name, 79  
operators, 75  
expressions, 69  
operators, 66–69  
assignments, 69  
order of operations, 67  
`sys.call` function, 105  
`sys.calls` function, 105  
`sys.frame` function, 105  
`sys.frames` function, 105  
`sys.function` function, 105  
`sys.nframe` function, 105  
`sys.on.exit` function, 105  
`sys.parent` function, 105  
`sys.parents` function, 105  
`sys.status` function, 105  
Systat file format, 155

**T**

`t` function, 197  
`t`-tests  
    function, 372  
    pairwise t-tests between multiple groups, 381  
    power tests design, 398  
tables  
    aggregating, 193  
    data tests, 390–396  
    function, 194  
`tabulate` function, 194  
`tapply` function, 190–192, 306  
`tck`, lattice axes argument, 314  
`tcltk` package, 40, 662  
tests, 371–396  
    (see also power tests; statistical tests)  
    binomial tests, 389  
    non-parametric tests, 385–388  
        comparing more than two means, 387  
    comparing two means, 385  
    comparing variances, 387  
    difference in scale parameters, 388  
    tabular data, 396  
normal distribution-based tests, 372–385  
    comparing means, 372–376  
    comparing means across more than two groups (ANOVA), 378–381  
    comparing paired data, 376  
    comparing two populations, 377  
    correlation tests, 384  
    pairwise t-tests between multiple groups, 381  
    testing for normality, 382  
    testing if a data vector came from an arbitrary distribution, 382  
    testing if two data vectors came from the same distribution, 383  
power tests, 397–400  
    ANOVA test design, 400  
    experimental design example, 397  
    proportion test design, 398  
    t-test design, 398  
    proportion tests, 388  
    tabular data tests, 390–395

`text`  
    function, 217, 259  
    importing, 146–154  
        delimited files, 146–150  
        fixed-width files, 150  
        other functions to parse data, 152  
    properties, 251  
three-dimensional data, 232  
`tick.number`, lattice axes argument, 314  
`tilde (~)`, formulas, 93  
time series, 495–500  
    about, 94  
    autocorrelation functions, 495  
    models, 496–500  
    OOP, 122  
    plotting, 220  
times and dates, 95  
timing, measuring R performance, 503  
`title` function, 263

tools package  
  about, 40, 662  
  data sets, 664  
  functions, 662

tracemem function, 507

trans3d function, 265

transformations, 179–184  
  applying a function to each element of an object, 180–184  
  reassigning variables, 179  
  transform function, 179

transposing matrices and data frames, 197

tree models, 439  
  (see also regression tree models)  
  classification, 478–482  
    bagging, 480  
    boosting, 481  
  regression, 439–450  
    bagging, 446  
    boosting, 447  
    patient rule induction method, 446  
    random forests, 448  
    recursive partitioning trees, 439–446

Trellis graphics, 267

trellis.par.get function, 315, 316

trellis.par.set function, 315

trellis.skeleton, 313

trivariate trellis plots, 305–310  
  cloud plots, 308  
  contour plots, 307  
  level plots, 305  
  wire-frame plots, 310

try function, 109

tryCatch function, 110

ts function, 94

ts.plot function, 498

TSBDI, 172

tsp attribute, 97

type, defined, 83

typeface, 252

typeof function, 60, 99

**U**

  unary operators, 67

uniform distribution probability distribution function, 369

unique function, 206

univariate trellis plots, 273–296  
  bar charts, 276–279  
  density plots, 285  
  dot plots, 280  
  histograms, 282  
  quantile-quantile plots, 288–296  
  strip plots, 286

Unix  
  high-performance R binaries, 523  
  installing R, 5  
  R GUI, 9

unstack function, 198

untracem function, 507

update.packages command, 44

UseMethod function, 136

user interfaces, 7–17  
  batch mode, 13  
  edit GUI, 142  
  Microsoft Excel, 14  
  other ways to run R, 17  
  R console, 11  
  R GUIs, 7–11  
    Linux and Unix, 9  
    Mac OS X, 8  
    Windows, 8  
  RStudio, 15

utils package, 40, 664–671

**V**

validObject function, 124

values  
  counting, 194–196  
  predicting with linear regression models, 406  
  return values, 113  
  special values, 55

var.test function, 377

variables  
  about, 22  
  combining objects with grouping variable, 187  
  reassigning, 179  
  relationships, 28  
  stepwise variable selection, 416

variance-covariance matrix, 408

vcov function, 408

vectors

about, 19, 83  
applying functions to, 182  
built-in types, 134  
character vectors, 64  
correlation, 384  
elements, 22  
environment objects in place of, 515  
indexing  
    by integer vector, 76  
    by logical vector, 78  
indices, 22  
length attribute, 87  
logical vectors, 23  
modifying, 55  
numeric vectors, 63  
objects, 86  
operations for optimizing R code, 507  
testing  
    if a data vector came from an  
        arbitrary distribution,  
        382  
    if two data vectors came from the  
        same distribution, 383  
vector operations versus conditional  
statements, 71

versions, 3  
vertical bar (|), formulas, 93  
vignettes  
    about, 36  
    Bioconductor, 546  
visualization (see graphics; lattice  
graphics)

## W

warning function, 109  
weakref object type, 86  
Web  
    applications, 17  
    repositories, 42  
Weibull probability distribution function,  
    369  
while loops, 73  
Wilcoxon  
    rank sum probability distribution  
        function, 369  
    signed rank probability distribution  
        function, 369  
test, 385

Windows  
    data editor, 142  
    devices, 246  
    finding and installing packages, 42  
    high-performance R binaries, 521  
    installing R, 4  
    loading packages, 40  
    R GUI, 8  
    SQLite ODBC example, 161  
wireframe function, 271, 272, 310  
with function, 107  
within function, 107  
write.table function, 155

## X

X Windows data editor, 144  
x, lattice function argument, 312  
xlab, lattice function argument, 312  
xlab.default, trellis.skeleton argument,  
    313  
xlim, lattice function argument, 313  
xplot function, 271  
xscale.components, trellis.skeleton  
    argument, 314  
xtabs function, 196  
xyplot function, 271, 297, 402

## Y

ylab, lattice function argument, 312  
ylab.default, trellis.skeleton argument,  
    313  
ylim, lattice function argument, 313  
yscale.components, trellis.skeleton  
    argument, 314



## About the Author

---

Joseph Adler has many years of experience in data mining and data analysis at companies including DoubleClick, American Express, and VeriSign. He graduated from MIT with an Sc.B and M.Eng in Computer Science and Electrical Engineering. He is the inventor of several patents for computer security and cryptography, and the author of *Baseball Hacks*. Currently, he is a senior data scientist at LinkedIn.

## Colophon

---

The animal on the cover of *R in a Nutshell* is a harpy eagle (*Harpia harpyja*). Black feathers line the top half of the bird, while white feathers mostly make up the balance, although the underside of its wings may be striped black and white. Unlike other species of birds, male and female harpy eagles appear virtually identical.

These eagles—the most powerful, carnivorous raptors in the Americas—typically inhabit tropical rain forests. They prey upon animals that live in trees: sloths, monkeys, opossums, and even other birds, such as macaws.

The eagle is named after the harpies of ancient Greek mythology, female wind spirits who were said to be human from the chest to their ankles and eagle from the neck up. Mythological harpies tormented people as they carried them to the underworld with their clawed feet; perhaps similarly, harpy eagles' talons violently pierce and subdue their prey before the eagles carry them back to their nests.

Harpy eagles also inspire modern-day life: the eagle is the national bird of Panama and is pictured on the country's coat of arms. The bird also inspired the design of Fawkes the Phoenix in the Harry Potter film series.

The cover image is from *Cassell's Natural History*. The cover font is Adobe ITC Garamond. The text font is Linotype Birka; the heading font is Adobe Myriad Condensed; and the code font is LucasFont's TheSansMonoCondensed.

